

LEARN TO READ LATIN

Andrew Keller

Colgate University

Stephanie Russell

Collegiate School

Yale University Press New Haven & London

Erratum for Textbook

Page 27	Remove pugnō from Derivatives and Cognates list.
Page 49	Add pugnō to Derivatives and Cognates list. Derivatives are " <i>pugnacious</i> " and " <i>impugn</i> "; cognate is " <i>pygmy</i> ."
Page 196, #3	Change meaning provided for dūcō to "bring home"
Page 207	In the gloss for Erīnys , add (= Erīnyis) after Erīnyos .
Page 233, #23	In the attribution, change "Cicero" to Caesar" and italicize the title of the work.
Page 242, #8	Change gloss entry " caelestis, caelestis, -ium " to caelestis, caeleste .
Page 262	In the example beginning haec enim est , deitalicize stabilis , and change the translation to read "no trust of constant goodwill."
Page 334, #19	Add a macron the -e- of nātiōnēs .
Page 337, #40	Remove macron from nesciō . Add a semicolon and three dots. after nescio .
Page 337, #41	In the attribution, add a comma after Juvenal.
Page 382, #17	Change meanings given for praeclārus, -a, -um to "very famous; excellent, oustanding."
Page 406	In line 20, add a macron to the first -a- of vāpulat . Also add a macron to the first -a- of the three principal parts vāpulō, vāpulāre, vāpulāvī, --- .
Page 448, #5	In line 2, remove the colon from the end of the sentence and in the same line place a colon after ūteris .
Page 464	In line 7 of reading, remove macron from the -u- of cōnātus .
Page 523	In the gloss for pavor, pavōris , remove "pl."
Page 538	Add "proceed" to the meanings given for gradior .

The authors thank Dr. Hans-Friedrich Mueller of the University of Florida and Dr. John Miller of the University of Virginia for reviewing their manuscript.

Copyright © 2004 by Yale University.

All rights reserved.

This book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, including illustrations, in any form (beyond that copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publishers.

Publisher: Mary Jane Peluso

Production Controller: Aldo R. Cupo

Editorial Assistant: Gretchen Rings

Designer: James J. Johnson

Marketing Manager: Timothy Shea

Set in E & F Scala type by Integrated Publishing Solutions.

Printed in the United States of America.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Keller, Andrew, 1960—

Learn to read Latin / Andrew Keller, Stephanie Russell.

p. cm. — (Yale language series)

Includes bibliographical references and indexes.

ISBN 0-300-10084-1 — ISBN 0-300-10215-1 (pbk.)

1. Latin language—Grammar. 2. Latin language—Grammar—Problems, exercises, etc.

3. Latin language—Readers. I. Russell, Stephanie, 1946–. II. Title. III. Series.

PA2087.5.K45 2004

478.2'421—dc21

2003053828

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

CONTENTS

Preface	xvii
Acknowledgments	xix
Description and Use of <i>Learn to Read Latin</i>	xx
List of Abbreviations	xxiv
Introduction	
The Latin Language	1
Pronunciation of Classical Latin	3
Language Study: Vocabulary, Morphology, and Syntax	9

CHAPTER I

Vocabulary	11
Vocabulary Notes	12
Prepositions	12
Derivatives and Cognates	14
§1. The Latin Noun and Its Properties: Gender, Number, Case	15
Nominative Case	15
Nominative, Subject	15
Predicate Nominative	16
Genitive Case	16
Genitive of Possession	16
Dative Case	16
Dative of Reference	16
Dative of Indirect Object	16
Accusative Case	17
Accusative, Direct Object	17
Ablative Case	17
Ablative of Accompaniment	17

Ablative of Means	18
Vocative Case	18
§2. The Five Declensions	18
Finding the Stem	19
§3. Noun Morphology: First Declension	19
§4. Noun Morphology: Second Declension	21

CHAPTER II

Vocabulary	24
Vocabulary Notes	25
Principal Parts	25
§5. The Finite Latin Verb and Its Properties: Person, Number, Tense, Voice, Mood	28
§6. The Latin Tenses of the Indicative Mood: Overview	29
§7. The Vocabulary Entry for a Verb: Principal Parts	30
§8. The Four Conjugations	31
Finding the Present Stem	31
§9. Present, Imperfect, and Future Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations	32
Present Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations	32
Imperfect Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations	33
Future Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations	34
§10. Present, Imperfect, and Future Active Indicative of the Irregular Verbs <i>sum</i> and <i>possum</i>	34
Present Active Indicative of <i>sum</i> and <i>possum</i>	35
Imperfect Active Indicative of <i>sum</i> and <i>possum</i>	35
Future Active Indicative of <i>sum</i> and <i>possum</i>	36
The Two Meanings of the Verb <i>sum</i>	36
§11. Distinguishing Transitive and Intransitive Verbs	37
§12. Complementary Infinitive	37
§13. Object Infinitive	38
§14. Dative of the Possessor	38
Expressions of Possession Compared	39
§15. Introduction to the Latin Sentence and Prose Word Order	39
Guidelines for Reading and Translating Latin Sentences	42
Short Readings	43
§16. Names in Latin I	44

CHAPTER III

Vocabulary	47
Vocabulary Notes	48
Adjectives	48
§17. First-Second-Declension Adjectives	50
§18. Noun-Adjective Agreement	51
§19. Substantive Use of the Adjective	52
§20. Predicate Adjective	52
§21. Introduction to the Passive Voice	53
§22. Present, Imperfect, and Future Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations	53
Passive Personal Endings	53
Present Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations	54
Imperfect Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations	55
Future Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations	56
§23. Synopsis I: Present Active and Passive Indicative	56
§24. Ablative of Personal Agent	57
§25. The Uses of <i>videō</i> in the Passive Voice	58
§26. Ablative of Manner	58
§27. Subject Infinitive	59
§28. Apposition	59
§29. The Irregular Verb <i>eō</i>	60
Short Readings	61

CHAPTER IV

Vocabulary	62
Vocabulary Notes	63
§30. Present, Imperfect, and Future Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations	65
Present Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations	65
Imperfect Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations	66
Future Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations	67

- §31. Present Passive Infinitive of All Verbs 68
- §32. Present Active and Passive Imperative of All Verbs 69
- §33. Synopsis II: Present Active and Passive Indicative, Infinitive,
and Imperative 70
- §34. Partitive Genitive 71
- §35. Subjective Genitive 71
- §36. Objective Genitive 72
- §37. Personal Pronouns 73
- §38. Possessive Adjectives 74
- §39. Ablative of Respect 76
 - Short Readings 77
 - Longer Readings 78

CHAPTER V

- Vocabulary 79
 - Vocabulary Notes 80
 - Compound Verbs, Prefixes, Assimilation, and Vowel Weakening 80
- §40. The Perfect Active System 83
 - Finding the Perfect Active Stem 83
- §41. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Active Indicative
of All Verbs 83
 - Perfect Active Indicative of All Verbs 83
 - Pluperfect Active Indicative of All Verbs 84
 - Future Perfect Active Indicative of All Verbs 85
- §42. Synopsis III: Present Indicative System, Perfect Active Indicative
System, Infinitive, and Imperative 86
- §43. The Irregular Third-Conjugation Verb *ferō* 87
- §44. Reflexive Pronouns 87
- §45. Reflexive-Possessive Adjectives 89
- §46. The Intensive Adjective *ipse, ipsa, ipsum* 89
- §47. Adverbs I 90
- §48. Subordinate Clauses I 91

§49. Conditional Sentences I	93
Simple Conditional Sentences	93
Future More Vivid Conditional Sentences	94
Short Readings	96
Longer Reading	99

CHAPTER VI

Vocabulary	100
Vocabulary Notes	101
§50. The Perfect Passive System	103
§51. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs	103
Perfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs	103
Pluperfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs	104
Future Perfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs	104
The Omission of <i>sum</i> in Compound Verb Forms	105
A Note on the Perfect Passive Participle	105
§52. Synopsis IV: Indicative, Infinitive, and Imperative	106
§53. Noun Morphology: Third Declension	107
Case Endings of the Third Declension	107
Case Endings of the Third Declension i-Stem	108
The Irregular Third-Declension Noun <i>vīs</i>	109
§54. Ablative of Separation	110
§55. Ablative of Cause	110
§56. Ablative of Place From Which	111
§57. Ablative of Place Where and the Locative Case	111
Ablative of Place Where	111
Locative Case	111
§58. Accusative of Place To Which	112
§59. Impersonal Passive	112
Short Readings	113
Longer Readings	115
§60. Names in Latin II	118

CHAPTER VII

Vocabulary	120
Vocabulary Notes	121
§61. Introduction to the Subjunctive	125
§62. Present Active and Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs	125
§63. Imperfect Active and Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs	127
§64. Perfect and Pluperfect Active Subjunctive of All Verbs	128
Perfect Active Subjunctive of All Verbs	128
Pluperfect Active Subjunctive of All Verbs	128
§65. Perfect and Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs	129
Perfect Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs	129
Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs	129
§66. Synopsis V: Indicative, Subjunctive, Infinitive, and Imperative	130
§67. Three Independent Uses of the Subjunctive	131
Hortatory/Jussive Subjunctive	131
Negative Commands	131
Potential Subjunctive	131
Optative Subjunctive	132
§68. Conditional Sentences II	133
Future Less Vivid Conditional Sentences	134
Contrary-to-Fact Conditional Sentences	134
Mixed Conditional Sentences	134
§69. Dative of Purpose and the Double Dative Construction	136
§70. Dative of Advantage, Dative of Disadvantage	136
Short Readings	137
Longer Readings	141
§71. Greetings and Interjections in Latin	143
Vocabulary	143

CHAPTER VIII

Vocabulary	146
Vocabulary Notes	147
Deponent and Semideponent Verbs	147
§72. Noun Morphology: Fourth Declension	149
§73. Noun Morphology: Fifth Declension	150

§74. Third-Declension Adjectives	151
§75. Adverbs II	152
§76. Demonstrative Adjectives/Pronouns: <i>hic</i> , <i>iste</i> , and <i>ille</i>	153
Special Uses of the Demonstrative Adjectives/Pronouns	154
§77. Deponent Verbs	155
§78. Semideponent Verbs	157
§79. Accusative of Duration of Time	158
§80. Ablative of Time When	159
§81. Ablative of Time Within Which	159
Short Readings	160
Longer Readings	165
§82. About Meter I	176
Introduction to Quantitative Meter	176
Dactylic Hexameter and Elegiac Couplet	176
Elision, Caesura, Diaeresis, and Hiatus	177
Ictus and Accent	179
General Guidelines for Reading Latin Poetry	180

CHAPTER IX

Vocabulary	181
Vocabulary Notes	182
§83. Purpose Clauses and the Sequence of Tenses	185
Summary of the Rules of Sequence of Tenses	188
§84. Indirect Commands	188
§85. The Relative Pronoun <i>qui</i> , <i>quae</i> , <i>quod</i> and the Relative Clause	189
A Note on Restrictive and Nonrestrictive Relative Clauses	191
§86. Special Features of the Relative Pronoun	191
The Indefinite or Generic Antecedent	191
The Connective Relative	192
Placement of the Antecedent in and After the Relative Clause	193
§87. The Interrogative Pronoun <i>quis</i> , <i>quid</i>	193
§88. The Interrogative Adjective <i>qui</i> , <i>quae</i> , <i>quod</i>	194
§89. Nine Irregular Adjectives	194

§90. Dative with an Intransitive Verb 195

Short Readings 196

Longer Readings 201

§91. Numbers in Latin 210

CHAPTER X

Vocabulary 213

Vocabulary Notes 214

§92. Relative Clauses of Purpose 218

§93. Relative Clauses of Characteristic 219

§94. Introduction to Participles 221

Participles of Irregular Verbs 222

Participles of Deponent and Semideponent Verbs 222

§95. Synopsis VI: Indicative, Subjunctive, Participles, Infinitives,
and Imperative 223

§96. Notes on the Participle: Relative Time; Attributive
and Circumstantial Uses 224

§97. Ablative Absolute 226

§98. Active and Passive Periphrastics 227

§99. Dative of Agent with the Passive Periphrastic 228

§100. Genitive of Description 228

§101. Ablative of Description 229

§102. Ablative of Origin 229

Short Readings 230

Longer Readings 238

Continuous Readings 260

§103. Rhetorical Terms 262

CHAPTER XI

Vocabulary	265
Vocabulary Notes	266
§104. Infinitives	269
Periphrastic Infinitives	270
§105. Synopsis VII: Complete	271
§106. Indirect Statement and the Subject Accusative	272
§107. A Note on the Subject Accusative	274
§108. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statement	275
§109. Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs	276
Comparative Degree of Adjectives	276
Comparative Degree of Adverbs	277
Superlative Degree of Adjectives	277
Superlative Degree of Adverbs	278
§110. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs	279
§111. Constructions with the Comparative and Superlative Degrees	280
Short Readings	282
Longer Readings	289
Continuous Readings	309
§112. About Meter II	314
Common Terms and Metrical Units of Latin Lyric Poetry	314
Hendecasyllable	315
Choliambic (Limping Iambic)	315
Sapphic Strophe	316
Asclepiadean Meters	316
Archilochian Meter	317
Alcaic Strophe	318

CHAPTER XII

- Vocabulary 319
 Vocabulary Notes 320
- §113. Direct Questions 323
- §114. Deliberative Subjunctive 324
- §115. Indirect Questions 325
- §116. Doubting Clauses 327
- §117. Subordinate Clauses II: The Conjunction *cum* 327
- §118. The Irregular Verbs *volo*, *nolo*, and *malo* 328
- §119. Negative Commands with *noli* or *nohite* and an Infinitive 329
- §120. Dative with a Compound Verb 330
 Short Readings 331
 Longer Readings 339
 Continuous Readings 359
- §121. Unassimilated Forms, Archaic Spellings, and Syncopation 364
 Unassimilated Forms and Archaic Spellings 364
 Syncopation of Forms in the Perfect Active System 364

CHAPTER XIII

- Vocabulary 366
 Vocabulary Notes 367
- §122. Gerunds and Gerundives 369
- §123. Subordinate Clauses III 371
 Subordinate Clauses with Verbs in the Indicative Mood 371
 Subordinate Clauses with Verbs in the Subjunctive Mood 372
 Proviso Clauses 373
- §124. Correlatives 373
- §125. The Irregular Verb *fiō* 375
- §126. Adverbial Accusative 376
- §127. Accusative of Exclamation 376
- §128. Genitive of Indefinite Value 377

- §129. Ablative of Price 377
 Short Readings 379
 Longer Readings 393
 Continuous Readings 413
- §130. Adverbs of Place 417
 Vocabulary 417
 Short Readings 418

CHAPTER XIV

- Vocabulary 419
 Vocabulary Notes 420
- §131. Result Clauses 423
- §132. Relative Clauses of Result 424
- §133. Substantive *Ut* Clauses 424
- §134. *Fore ut* Construction 425
- §135. Impersonal Constructions I: *licet*, *necesse est*, and *oportet* 426
- §136. Genitive of Characteristic 427
 Short Readings 428
 Longer Readings 445
 Continuous Readings 464

CHAPTER XV

- Vocabulary 470
 Vocabulary Notes 471
- §137. Fear Clauses 473
- §138. Prevention Clauses 474
- §139. Impersonal Constructions II *miseret*, *paenitet*, *piget*, *pudet*, *taedet*,
 refert, *interest* 475
 Verbs Expressing Emotion 475
 Verbs Expressing Concern or Interest 476

§140. Direct and Indirect Reflexives	477
§141. Subjunctive by Attraction	478
§142. Supine	478
§143. Accusative of Respect	479
§144. Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb	479
§145. Historical Infinitive	480
Short Readings	481
Longer Readings	499
Continuous Readings	528
Latin to English Vocabulary	535
Morphology Appendix	547
Appendix P	575
Index of Authors and Passages	577
General Index	581

PREFACE

Learn to Read Latin is an introductory grammar and reader in one. The aim of this book is to help students acquire as quickly as possible an ability to read and appreciate the great works of Latin literature. Respectful of both teachers and students, the book assumes a serious interest in learning Latin well and thoroughly.

LTRL grew out of an earnest wish to make available to others the immense pleasure we have both experienced in reading Latin literature in Latin. For many years it has seemed to us that too much emphasis has been placed on teaching students to translate Latin and that even the most diligent Latin students have attained too little intimacy with the Latin language and the styles of great Latin writers. Many beginning Latin books expect students to translate several volumes of stories in Latin written not by ancient authors but by the authors of the books themselves. This seems to us an inefficient use of student energy and a pedagogical method of limited value if one's goal is to prepare students to read and appreciate Caesar, Cicero, Livy, Vergil, Horace, and so many others.

In addition, we have noted how often introductory books present tidbits of information about Roman domestic life and culture, while failing to provide students with information about the many authors and literary works that will become available to them as their proficiency increases. In our experience this has meant that many students choose not to continue their studies beyond the introductory level in part because they are unaware of what they might read at the intermediate and advanced levels. We have tried to create a beginning Latin book that relies primarily on the ancient authors themselves as the means by which students may learn about Latin syntax and style. We have sought to introduce students to the Latin literature that for many will be the focus of their later studies, and we firmly believe that the best introduction to Roman culture is through the reading of as much Roman literature drawn from as wide a variety of authors as possible.

LTRL owes much to the two texts written for use at the Brooklyn College of

CUNY Latin/Greek Institute, *Latin: An Intensive Course* by Floyd L. Moreland and Rita M. Fleischer, and *Greek: An Intensive Course* by Hardy Hansen and Gerald M. Quinn. Both books were designed for rapid-paced summer courses in which a new unit is covered each day. Both are models of clarity, efficiency, and completeness. From Floyd Moreland, who was our teacher and colleague, we learned the importance of the order of presentation of points of grammar and morphology and the value of brief, clear explanations. He imparted to both of us his own deep interest in Latin syntax and style. He taught us to go in order when reading and translating, to care about the smallest details, and to love Latin literature. His powerful presence informs much that is good in our book. From Hardy Hansen and Gerry Quinn we borrowed the idea of placing numbered observations below presentations of morphology and syntax, and we modeled our vocabulary notes on theirs, including a considerable amount of linguistic information, as they did in their Greek book.

Since *LTRL* was not written to meet the special requirements of an intensive summer course, our book departs from its forebears in several important ways. The chapters are longer and present whole systems or closely related elements of vocabulary, morphology, and syntax. Many drills and drill sentences are provided in the workbook for use in class, for homework, and for extra and remedial work with individual students. Certain points of English grammar and usage are explained at some length, and drills are provided for these as well. Two aims determined the order of presentation of grammatical points in *LTRL*. We wished to give the student a sense of the logical development of Latin syntax and a steadily deepening understanding. We also wished to provide the earliest possible access to unabridged Latin passages.

LTRL is perhaps the first book of its kind to make extensive use of the Packard Humanities Institute CD-ROM containing much of the corpus of Latin literature up to Justinian. With the aid of this powerful tool we have often been able to establish correct Latin usage for drills and drill sentences, and we have tried to exclude any phrase or piece of syntax not occurring in extant classical Latin. Although there may still be some errors of usage, we believe that the Latin in our book that has been written by us resembles what students will read in the ancient authors. We have also used the CD-ROM to locate many passages that well illustrate the vocabulary, morphology, and syntax presented in each chapter of the book. The wide range of authors and texts represented in *LTRL*—including choice passages from authors not commonly read—was made possible in part by this CD-ROM. Several Latin grammars and dictionaries were regularly consulted during the writing of this book, and we relied in particular on *A Latin Grammar* by George M. Lane and *A New Latin Syntax* by E. C. Woodcock. For vowel quantities in Latin words we have consulted *Lateinisches Etymologisches Wörterbuch* by Walde and Hofmann.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Andrew Keller wishes to thank past and present colleagues at Colgate University, in particular Eric Casey, Leah Himmelhoch, and Naomi Rood, who used early versions of the book in both first- and second-year classes, made many helpful suggestions for improvements, caught many errors, and remained even-keeled throughout the experience. Fred Jones, Colgate class of 2003, enthusiastically proofread early versions of the book and found countless small and large typographical errors. Thanks are due as well to departmental colleagues Rebecca Ammerman and Robert Garland for their support of this project over the past several years.

Stephanie Russell gratefully acknowledges support for the writing of this book provided by Collegiate School, including two generous summer awards: a Wilson Parkhill Fellowship and a grant from the Van Horne Foundation. Special thanks are also owed to colleagues William Abernathy, Phyllis Brugnolotti, Jose Corredor, Lynn Hansell, Paul Ness, and Kathy Sullivan. Phuc Tran was willing to use early versions of the book in his Latin classes, and his many wise and helpful suggestions have significantly improved the book. Barbara Juhel, head of Collegiate's Foreign Language Department, gave kind encouragement over many years and provided an introduction to Yale University Press.

The authors extend their warmest thanks to the Latin students at Colgate University and at Collegiate School (especially to those in the class of 2004) who used our book, spotted many errors, and offered many good ideas. They have played an important part in bringing the book to its present form.

Mary Jane Peluso acquired our book for Yale University Press and handled two anxious authors with patience and professionalism. Her assistant, Gretchen Rings, was helpful and attentive to many important details. Our skilled manuscript editor, Dan Heaton, made intelligent and inspired improvements throughout the manuscript. To these three we are sincerely grateful.

DESCRIPTION AND USE OF *LEARN TO READ LATIN*

The following is a detailed description of all the components of *LTRL*, accompanied by suggestions for their most effective use by students and teachers.

The main text of *LTRL* comprises fifteen chapters that present all the basic morphology and syntax for an elementary course in Latin. Depending on the amount of time available for one's course (meetings per week, minutes per meeting), these fifteen chapters may be studied during two or three college semesters or two or two and a half years in middle or high school.

The actual teaching and learning units of this book are the *sections*, and each chapter comprises several sections. Two or three weeks in college, more in high school, may be devoted to the study of each chapter (containing approximately ten sections). Substantial vocabulary lists and complex Latin sentences (both synthetic and authentic) allow the student to significantly advance his or her knowledge of syntax and to practice and refine his or her reading skills. The book as a whole, as well as each of the fifteen chapters taken individually, aims not at hasty coverage of material but at abiding understanding and engagement with Latin literary texts.

Each chapter of *LTRL* presents new vocabulary, morphology, and syntax to be learned. These three basic elements of language study, which are defined in an introductory section, are useful not only in organizing new material but also in identifying weaknesses or areas for improvement.

Each chapter begins with a list of new words to be memorized. The vocabulary for each chapter has been chosen to provide students with words that appear commonly in as wide a variety of classical authors as possible. *In many chapters certain pieces of morphology and syntax must be presented in conjunction with new vocabulary, but the vocabulary is placed first to emphasize its importance and to encourage its acquisition by the student as early as possible in the study of each chapter.* As the book progresses and chapters are devoted to more advanced syntax, words that are com-

monly found with the constructions to be learned in that chapter are included in the vocabulary.

Vocabulary notes follow the word list in each chapter. Since essential information about the meanings and usage of new vocabulary words is contained in the vocabulary notes, the student should always read them, and the teacher should identify the most important points. Particularly in the early chapters, important information about the form of vocabulary entries and new morphology is also included in the vocabulary notes. This information must be presented in conjunction with new material in the chapter. It is included in the vocabulary notes for ease of reference, and the student should consult these vocabulary notes often while mastering the material in each chapter. For the student who is curious about the development of the Latin language, information about word formation and Indo-European linguistic features has also been included.

The sections that present new morphology and syntax are numbered consecutively through the entire book, as in a reference grammar. Frequently throughout these sections (and sometimes also in the vocabulary notes) brief imperative sentences appear in small capital letters (*for example*, "MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR FORM"). These sentences are addressed directly to the student and are intended to make sure that no point that must be learned well is overlooked. Following many of the morphology and syntax sections is a note referring to appropriate drills for individual sections or groups of sections; these drills are provided in the workbook. The drills are designed to reinforce new material immediately after its presentation. The notes referring to appropriate drills indicate the natural breaks within chapters, and they should be used to determine how much material to introduce in a class period.

Drills on new forms and syntax use only vocabulary from earlier chapters, unless new material requires the use of new vocabulary. For example, when third-declension noun morphology is introduced, it is necessary to make use of new third-declension nouns in order to drill new forms. Drills are provided in sufficiently large numbers that some may be done at sight as new material is presented, others may be assigned as homework, and still others may be used for individual work.

Drill sentences are also provided in the workbook. These sentences are synthetic Latin and have been written to allow comprehensive practice for all new vocabulary, morphology, and syntax introduced in a chapter, as well as to reinforce material presented earlier in the book. Drill sentences should *not* be assigned until all new material in a chapter has been introduced unless the teacher selects in advance only those sentences that contain material already presented.

In the synthetic Latin sentences (drills, drill sentences, and examples used in introducing new material), we have tried to include only usages found in extant Latin; often exact phrases drawn from classical authors have been included in these sentences. However, we have allowed certain extrapolations from extant Latin usage. For example, since *homō pius* appears in Cicero, we have allowed *hominēs pii*. In our experience *LTRL* works best when translations of some of these drill sentences are

assigned as written homework, while class time is devoted to the reading of other drill sentences at sight. As many as eighty such sentences are provided for the early chapters, but this number is gradually reduced as it becomes possible to reinforce new material through unabridged Latin passages.

Beginning in Chapter II the introduction of new material is followed by a section of short readings, *unabridged* Latin passages drawn from a wide range of ancient authors. Each passage is preceded by a brief introduction to establish context and is followed by vocabulary glosses for words that do not appear in chapter vocabularies. These short readings increase in number and size throughout the book until they outnumber their synthetic counterparts. The inclusion of many short readings in the chapters reflects our firm belief in learning to read Latin chiefly from the study of specimens of authentic Latin as soon as this is possible. The short readings have been chosen to reinforce the vocabulary, morphology, and syntax of the chapters in which they appear and to provide examples of the various word orders of actual Latin prose and poetry.

Beginning in Chapter IV each section of short readings is followed by a section of longer readings, also unabridged Latin passages. In addition to introductions and necessary vocabulary glosses, we have included brief biographies of the authors and descriptions of the works from which the readings are taken. These biographies and descriptions are placed after the vocabulary glosses whenever an author or a work appears for the first time in the longer readings. An index of authors and passages has been provided to allow the student or teacher to consult these biographies and descriptions when authors and works appear again in subsequent longer readings or to investigate further an author or work that appears in the short readings.

With the aims of providing the student with a basic knowledge of the history and development of Latin literature and of fostering an interest in its further study, we have in each chapter organized all selections from ancient authors (short readings and longer readings) in chronological order. Since the texts of Latin literature that survive contain examples of the language as each writer in each period chose to style it, this chronological arrangement helps the student observe the evolution of various styles of both prose and poetry. Through the short and longer readings, *LTRL* is meant to become in part a literary venture, and there are many opportunities for consideration of rhetoric and style as well as of forms and syntax.

Beginning in Chapter X each section of longer readings is followed by a section of continuous readings. Two poetry passages (from Vergil's *Aeneid* and Ovid's *Metamorphōsēs*) are presented with brief introductions and appropriate vocabulary glosses. Beginning in Chapter XI two extended prose passages (from Cicero's *Oratiō Prima in Catilinam* and Sallust's *Bellum Catilinae*) are added. These continuous readings are intended to give the student practice in reading in context and in developing a sense of the basic stylistic features of a given author and text. They also offer a preliminary experience in what lies ahead for the student when he or she finishes with the basic grammar book and moves on to upper-level reading courses. Students and teachers may choose to read any or all of the continuous readings, favoring prose or

poetry as they prefer. If all four are read, students will complete the book with a significant first experience in reading four major Latin authors.

Interspersed between some chapters in *LTRL* are brief sections devoted to additional material related to the study of the Latin language. Sections on Roman names and numbers, on metrics, and on rhetorical terms, for example, should be studied as seriously as each chapter. Some of these sections even contain a few vocabulary words that the student is expected to learn, and all will greatly enhance the student's reading and appreciation of the authentic Latin passages in the chapters.

ABBREVIATIONS

†	indicates that a form is hypothetical	frag	fragment
< >	enclose an element added by editors	fut.	future
[]	used to indicate that, contrary to the tradition, an author is <i>not</i> the writer of a work	gen.	genitive
<	(derived) from	IE	Indo-European
>	becomes	imper	imperative
§	section	imperf.	imperfect
1-intr	first conjugation intransitive verb	indef.	indefinite
1 tr	first conjugation transitive verb	indic.	indicative
abl	ablative	interj.	interjection
acc.	accusative	interrog	interrogative
act.	active	intr.	intransitive
adj.	adjective	loc.	locative
adv.	adverb	m.	masculine
cf.	<i>confer</i> , compare	masc.	masculine
conj.	conjunction	n.	neuter
dat.	dative	neut.	neuter
demonstr.	demonstrative	nom.	nominative
etc.	<i>et cetera</i> , and the remaining things	pass.	passive
f.	feminine	perf.	perfect
fem.	feminine	PIE	Proto-Indo-European
		pl.	plural
		pluperf	pluperfect
		prep.	preposition
		pres.	present
		pron	pronoun
		rel.	relative

Abbreviations

xxv

sc.	<i>scilicet</i> , namely	subjunc.	subjunctive
sēd inc.	<i>sēdēs incerta</i> , uncertain location	subst.	substantive
sing.	singular	tr.	transitive
subj	subject	voc.	vocative
		→	changes to

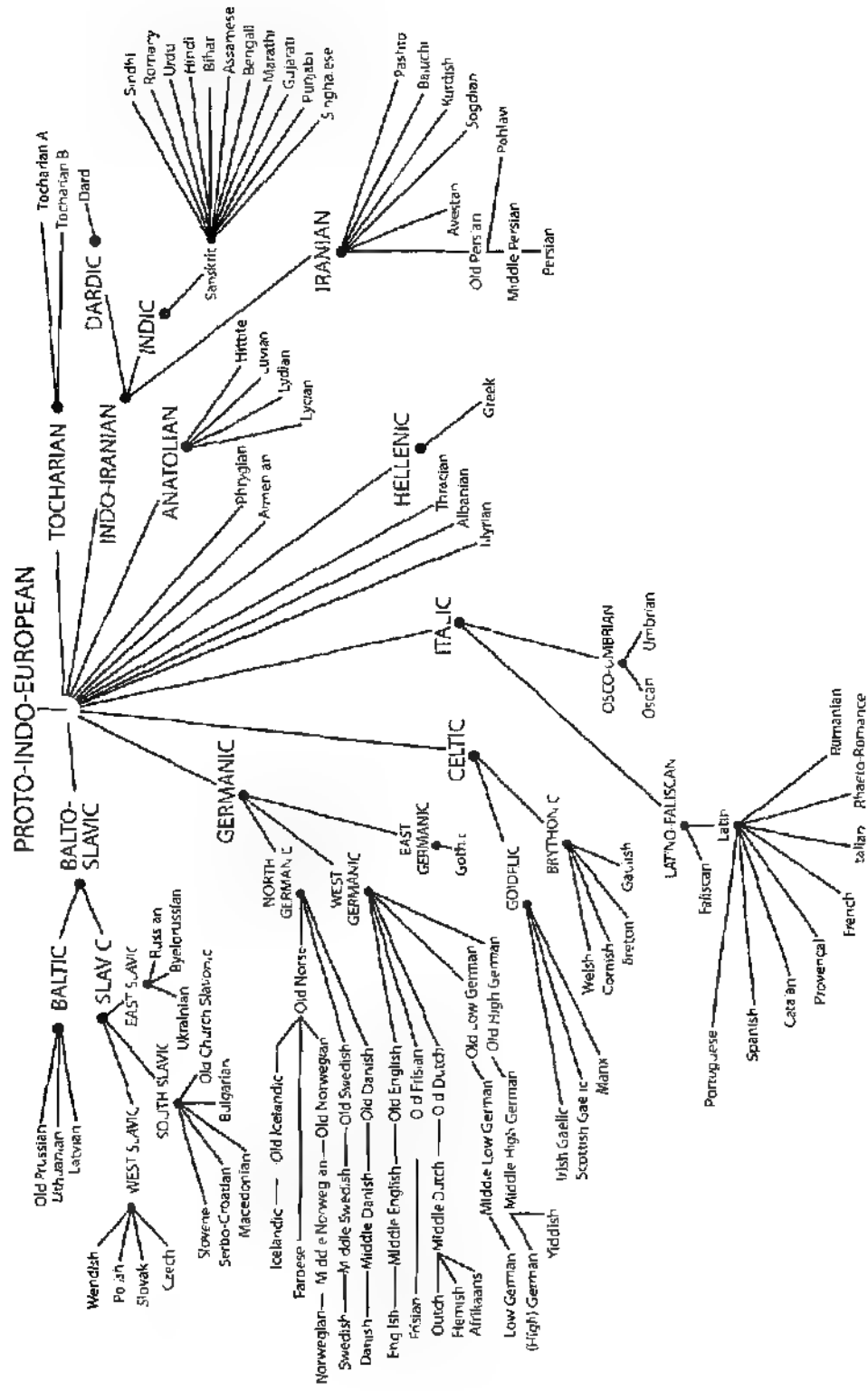


Figure 1. This chart shows the principal languages of the Indo-European family, arranged in a diagrammatic form that displays their genetic relations and loosely suggests their geographic distribution. Copyright © 1981 by Houghton Mifflin Company. Adapted and reproduced by permission from *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*.

INTRODUCTION

The Latin Language

The Latin language belongs to the Indo-European family of languages. The name “Indo-European” indicates the geographic area where these languages were originally spoken. The family includes most of the languages spoken in Europe, as well as those spoken as far east as ancient Persia, Afghanistan, and India. By the careful comparison of vocabulary, morphology, and syntax, scholars have shown that all these languages have descended from a common ancestor that is called either **Indo-European (IE)** or **Proto-Indo-European (PIE)**, which was probably spoken some time in the fifth millennium B.C.E. (see figure 1). Over time, it is supposed, the people who spoke this original language gradually dispersed throughout Europe, Asia, and India, and the language changed differently in different places until the variety of languages belonging to this family gradually appeared.

No direct evidence—that is, written or archaeological evidence—survives either for PIE or for the people who spoke it. What is known of the language comes from the comparative study of the languages that survive. The study of these languages began at the end of the eighteenth century when Sir William Jones, a lawyer and student of eastern languages, first asserted publicly that Greek, Latin, and the language of ancient India, Sanskrit, were descended from a common source. The scientific study of the Indo European languages commenced with the work of Franz Bopp in the early part of the nineteenth century. He compared the forms of the verb in Latin, Greek, Sanskrit, ancient Persian, and the Germanic languages, of which English is one.

The Indo-European languages have been analyzed and divided into various subgroups, or dialects, and Latin belongs to one called **Italic** because the languages of this subgroup were all spoken on the Italian peninsula. Italic, like PIE, left behind no direct evidence, but the four languages that belong to this group—Latin, Faliscan,

Oscan, and Umbrian¹—are more closely related to each other than to the other IE languages and thus are thought to derive from a single source.

The early speakers of the Latin language are known as *Latīni*. By the early part of the first millennium B.C.E. they were living in many settlements in central Italy. Rome was only one of these settlements. While little is certain about Rome's early history, the traditional date for its founding is 753 B.C.E., and recent excavation gives some corroboration to this early date. Tradition also records that for the first 250 years of its existence, Rome was ruled by kings of Etruscan descent. Etruscan civilization dominated the central Italian peninsula until Rome's rise to power in the third century B.C.E. Latin borrowed many words from the Etruscan language, which is not related to PIE.

The first written evidence of the Latin language that has survived to our time appears in the form of inscriptions dated to the late seventh and early sixth centuries B.C.E. The language of these inscriptions is recognizably Latin, although very different from the Latin spoken and written several hundred years later at the height of Rome's power. These inscriptions come from many towns in central Italy and not only from Rome. Other evidence for the Latin of this period comes from citations of the language of an earlier time in later Latin authors.

According to Roman tradition, the Etruscans ruled as monarchs in Rome until 509 B.C.E., when the Romans overthrew their foreign rulers and established the Republic. Power passed into the hands of two annually elected magistrates called consuls, who, along with the senate, held political power in Rome. Over the next few centuries, Rome was engaged in two conflicts, one external and one internal. The Romans were almost continually at war against the other peoples of the Italian peninsula, as well as the other powers in the Mediterranean, most notably the Carthaginians, a people based in northern Africa. At the same time, the Romans struggled with their own internal conflict between the lower-class plebs and the aristocratic families who ruled them. Despite setbacks both external and internal, Rome gradually expanded its influence, through treaty and conquest, until by the end of the third century B.C.E. it controlled most of modern-day Italy and had made inroads into the eastern Mediterranean as well.

Latin literature first appears in the later part of this period of political expansion. The most prominent authors of this period whose works survive are the comic poets Plautus (254–184 B.C.E.) and Terence (185?–159), the epic poet Ennius (239–169), and the orator, historian, and essayist Cato (234–149). The language of the comedians is often believed to contain evidence of the way Latin was actually spoken at this time because the characters of the comic plays are drawn from all walks of life. Ennius, who spoke both Greek and Oscan in addition to Latin, borrowed and adapted many features of the Greek language and was one of the first writers of epic poetry in Latin. His style greatly influenced later poets, and he may be said to be the

1. Faliscan was spoken in the area of Italy called Etruria (central Italy), Oscan in Campania (southern Italy), and Umbrian in Umbria (north-central Italy). The Samnites, an ancient Italian people with whom Rome came into conflict early, spoke Oscan.

first to have established a *literary language*—a written language with increasingly strict rules of vocabulary and syntax. Together, these authors represent what may be called **early Latin**.

Over the next two centuries to the end of the first century B.C.E., Roman authors, much influenced by the Greek literature with which they had come into contact after the conquest of Greece, continued to develop a literary language in Latin. They established rules of spelling, morphology, syntax, and vocabulary, and also distinguished between correct usages for poetry and for prose. The result is usually called **classical Latin**, the language that was written and spoken² by the educated Roman populace during the period of the late Republic and early Empire (roughly 100 B.C.E. – 100 C.E.).³ Among the authors who wrote classical Latin are, in prose: Caesar (100–44 B.C.E.), Cicero (106–43 B.C.E.), and Livy (59 B.C.E. – 17 C.E.); and in poetry: Catullus (84?–54? B.C.E.), Vergil (70–19 B.C.E.), and Horace (65–8 B.C.E.).

This book introduces the student to the language written by these authors and others of the same period. Distinctions of usage between prose and poetry will be pointed out, but for the most part, the rules of classical Latin presented here may be presumed to hold true for the literature of this period as a whole.

Pronunciation of Classical Latin

Although there must have been variations in the pronunciation of classical Latin such as are evident in any modern language, there is considerable ancient evidence for a standard in pronunciation, and rules approximating that standard are presented here.⁴

The rules for pronouncing classical Latin have been reconstructed from several types of evidence:

1. the statements of Latin grammarians and Latin authors on specific points of Latin pronunciation. The Latin grammarians were active much later than the period assigned to classical Latin, but they cite the work of earlier Latin authors and confirm features of pronunciation known from other sources.
2. the orthography, or spelling, of Latin words in inscriptions. Ancient spelling, both in Latin and in other ancient languages, was considerably less standardized than modern spelling. Variations in spelling usually indicate differences in pronunciation.
3. the representation or transliteration of Latin words in other languages and the representation or transliteration of foreign words in Latin. The transliteration of names, in particular, provides valuable information about how names were pronounced at different periods of Roman history.

2. Some surviving texts such as the orations of Cicero, suggest that classical Latin was both written and spoken.

3. There are, of course, variations in usage and style from author to author and from the beginning of this period to the end. It remains common to speak of Golden Age Latin (the Latin of first-century B.C.E. writers such as Caesar, Cicero, Vergil, and Horace) and Silver Age Latin (the Latin of first-century C.E. writers such as Seneca and Quintilian).

4. For this presentation of pronunciation the authors are indebted to W. S. Allen's *Vox Latina* (Cambridge, 1965).

- 4 the internal grammatical and poetic structure of Latin. This includes the evidence available from the metrical structure of Latin poetry.
- 5 the etymology of Latin words and the development of Latin words in the Romance languages descended from Latin

Alphabet

The Latin alphabet is almost the same as the English alphabet. It lacks a *j* and a *w*

OBSERVATIONS

- 1 *k* is used in only a few words, mostly of foreign origin. *y* and *z* occur in transcriptions of words borrowed from Greek
- 2 *i* can be either a consonant or a vowel. In some Latin texts, *j* is used as the sign of consonantal *i*, but in this book *i* is used for both the consonant and the vowel. This usage is both ancient and common in Latin texts
- 3 *u* also can be either a consonant or a vowel. In the classical period (and for several centuries afterward), Romans used the letter *v* to represent both the consonant and the vowel, and *u* was simply a rounded version of this letter. Some modern editors use *u* for both consonant and vowel, while others maintain the convention of using *v* for the consonant and *u* for the vowel. This latter convention is the one followed in this book
- 4 The capital letter *C*, in origin a form of the Greek letter *gamma* (Γ), originally was used by the Etruscans, who did not distinguish between the sounds of English hard *g* and hard *c*. Even after Latin developed a separate new letter to represent hard *g*, capital *C* continued to represent hard *g* in abbreviations for certain first names (e.g., *C.* = *Gaius*).

Consonants

The Latin consonants are generally identical in pronunciation with their English equivalents. Exceptions are:

- b* as in English, but *bs* is pronounced as *ps* in "taps"; *bt* as *pt* in "apt"
- c* *always* has the *k* sound as in "cart" (this is called hard *c*)
- g* *always* as in "get" (this is called hard *g*)
- h* *never* silent, *always* pronounced as in "hat"

OBSERVATION

- h* represents the expelling of air called aspiration.
- i*, as consonant, has the *y* sound as in "yawn"

OBSERVATIONS

1. *i* is consonantal at the beginning of a word when followed by a vowel (*iūnō*, pronounced "Yūnō") and in the middle of a word when it falls between vowels (*biūgis*, pronounced "bi-yūgis"). *i* may also be consonantal in the middle of a compound (that is, a word made with a root word and a prefix (*iniustus* [*< in- + iustus*], pronounced "in-yustus").
 2. An exception to this rule occurs in certain words borrowed from Greek, in which an initial *i* is pronounced as a vowel (*iambus*, pronounced "i-ambus").
- n* as in English, but *nc*, *ng* as in "bank" and "hang"
 - qu* counts as a *single consonant* in Latin and is *always* pronounced as in "quit"

OBSERVATION

Although *qu* is written with a *-u*, this *u* is the consonantal *u* (*v*). This spelling convention is also used in the combinations *su* and *gu*, pronounced as in “persuade” and “anguish.” *su* and *gu* when so pronounced count as *single consonants*. That is, although they are spelled with two letters, they represent a single sound in Latin.

r probably rolled

s always sibilant, as in “serpent” (*never* a *z* sound)

v (consonantal *u*) always as *w* as in “wet”

x counts as a *double consonant* (= *ks*) and is pronounced as in “axe”

z counts as a *double consonant* (= *dz*) and is pronounced as in “gadzooks”

OBSERVATION

z is a consonant representing the Greek *zeta* (*Z*), which itself represented a double consonant in Greek

ch as in English “character”

ph as in English “people”

th as in English “tea”

OBSERVATION

ch, *ph*, and *th* represent sounds introduced into Latin from Greek. Greek distinguished between the *unaspirated* and *aspirated* consonants *c* and *ch*, *p* and *ph*, and *t* and *th*. The *-h* represents the puff of air (aspiration) that is emitted after the consonant sound is made. This distinction between unaspirated and aspirated consonants is also made in modern French and in other Romance languages *although not in English*: the English pronunciation of *c*, *p*, and *t* always includes aspiration. In order to distinguish *ph* and *th* from *p* and *t*, it has become conventional to pronounce *ph* as in “philosophy” and *th* as in “theater.” The pronunciations given above (people, tea) are to be preferred.

Vowels

Latin has two sets of five vowels:

Short	Long
a	ā
e	ē
i	ī
o	ō
u	ū

OBSERVATIONS

1. Vowels have both *quantity* and *quality*. *Quantity* refers to the *length* of a vowel. A Latin vowel marked with a macron or long mark (*ˉ*) is *long* and takes approximately twice as long to pronounce as a short vowel. Vowels not so marked are *short*. *Quality* refers to the *way* a vowel is pronounced. For example *ā* and *ō* are the same in *quantity* but different in *quality*.
2. A vowel in a Latin word is either long or short *by nature*. It is important to realize that, for example, *a* and long *ā* are two different vowels, even if they are closely related.
3. Differences in vowel length often convey significant differences in meaning. For example, the word *alium* (with a short *-a-*) means “another man”, the word *ālium* (with a long *-ā-*) means “garlic.”

A MACRON ON A LONG VOWEL SHOULD BE CONSIDERED PART OF THE SPELLING OF A LATIN WORD. WHEN LEARNING NEW VOCABULARY, MEMORIZE ALL MACRONS AND ALWAYS WRITE THEM ON LONG VOWELS.⁵

The vowels are pronounced as follows.

a as in the *first* a in "await" or the u in "cup"

ā as in "father"

e as in "pet"

ē as in the a of "fate"

i as in "fit"

ī as in the ee of "feet"

o as in the o of "soft" or the au of "caught"

ō as in the o of "hope"

u as in "put"

ū as in the oo of "fool"

OBSERVATIONS

1. a and ā are very similar in quality and differ only in quantity. Special attention must be paid to distinguish these two vowels. All other pairs of vowels (e and ē, etc.) differ *both* in quality and in quantity and are easier for the English speaker to differentiate.

2. y is a vowel representing the Greek *upsilon* (Υ). This vowel is pronounced as a French u (a sound in between the English i and u). It may be long or short; the long vowel is pronounced twice as long as the short.

Diphthongs

A diphthong is a *single* vocalic sound made from pronouncing *two vowels together*. (The word *diphthong* in Greek means "double sound.") The six diphthongs in Latin are ae, oe, ei, ui, au, and eu. They are pronounced as follows

ae as in the i of "high"

oe as in the oy of "boy"

ei as in the ay of "day"

ui as in the wi of "twin"

au as in the ow of "how"

eu as a combination of e + u

OBSERVATION

There is no English sound corresponding to the Latin diphthong eu. As its spelling indicates, it is a combination of the short vowels e and u pronounced as one sound. If Elmer Fudd pronounced "very" (vewy), the ew would closely resemble the Latin sound.

⁵ All long vowels in this book will be marked by macrons. Vowels not so marked are short.

Accentuation

Latin has a stress accent. This means that one syllable in a word is slightly *stressed* or emphasized when the word is pronounced. To determine which syllable is to be stressed, one must first divide a Latin word into syllables.

Syllabification

A syllable is a sound or succession of sounds uttered with a single breath-impulse. A LATIN WORD HAS AS MANY SYLLABLES AS IT HAS VOWELS OR DIPHTHONGS. THERE ARE NO SILENT VOWELS OR CONSONANTS IN LATIN.

When dividing words into syllables, note that:

1. a single consonant goes with the *following* vowel:

anima	a/ni/ma
aurum	au/rum
gladius	gla/di/us

2. if there are two or more consonants in a row, the *last* consonant goes with the following syllable:

imperium	im/pe/ri/um
sānctus	sānc/tus
virumque	vi/rum/que ⁶
puella	pu/el/la

3. if, however, the combination of two consonants is a **mute** (c, k, t, p, ch, th, ph, g, d, b) or the fricative **f** followed by a **liquid** (l, r), the two consonants are kept together:⁷

patria	pa/tri/a
agricola	a/gri/co/la
impleō	im/ple/ō

Accentuation

The *last* syllable in a Latin word is called the **ultima** (< Latin *syllaba ultima* ["last syllable"]). The *second* syllable from the end is called the **penult** (< Latin *syllaba paenultima* ["almost-last syllable"]). The *third* syllable from the end is called the **antepenult** (< Latin *syllaba antepaenultima* ["before-the-almost-last syllable"]).

ONLY THE **PENULT** OR THE **ANTEPENULT** OF A LATIN WORD MAY BE STRESSED. If a word has only two syllables, the **penult** is stressed. The following words are stressed on

⁶ Remember that *qu* counts as a single consonant.

⁷ A consonant that requires a stoppage of breath when pronounced is called a **mute**. When pronouncing a *g*, for example, the throat is contracted and breath is stopped. Similarly, when pronouncing a *p* the lips are closed and breath is again stopped. These sounds are also called **stops** or **plosives**. A **fricative** is a consonant produced by forcing breath through a constricted passage. Only *f* and *s* are fricatives; they are also called **spirants**. *l* and *r* are called **liquids** because their sounds are capable of being prolonged as vowels.

the penult because they are two syllables *only*. Practice pronouncing them out loud and accent the penult by stressing that syllable.

tamen	consul
mūtāt	opus

If a word has more than two syllables, its stress accent is determined according to a rule called the law of the penult:

IF THE PENULT IS LONG, IT 'S STRESSED IF THE PENULT IS SHORT, THE ANTE-PENULT IS STRESSED.

A syllable is long if it contains:

1. a long vowel or diphthong (long by nature)
2. a short vowel followed by two or more consonants *not necessarily in the same syllable* (long by position)

The following words are stressed on the penult because their penults are *long by nature*. Practice pronouncing them out loud and accent the penult by stressing that syllable.

inimicus	figura
magnārum	labōrēs
patiēmur	persaepe
poēta	perpauca

The following words are stressed on the penult because their penults are *long by position*. Practice pronouncing them out loud and accent the penult by stressing that syllable.

ocellis	contactum
magister	expressit
intellegenda	adversōs
cōnferri	dēporiant

OBSERVATIONS

1. In words of more than two syllables, the number of syllables is not important for determining the syllable to be stressed. *Only* the length of the penult determines stress.
2. The lengths of the syllables *other* than the penult are not important for determining stress.

The following words are stressed on the antepenult because their penults are *short*. Practice pronouncing them out loud and accent the antepenult by stressing that syllable.

scientia	tempora
aequora	mediocriter
audācia	populus
omnium	cēperis

☛ DRILL A ON PRONUNCIATION MAY NOW BE DONE.

Language Study: Vocabulary, Morphology, and Syntax

Elementary language study may be divided into three parts: vocabulary, morphology, and syntax.

Vocabulary

Vocabulary refers first to the acquisition of the English meanings of words in another language. Thus, the Latin word *puella* means "girl"; the word *superō* means "overcome, conquer." In addition to English meanings, vocabulary also encompasses certain other important elements that give crucial information about gender (for nouns), stems, and parts of speech. A *full vocabulary entry* (the way the word appears in the dictionary) includes all these pieces of information. **ALWAYS MEMORIZE THE FULL VOCABULARY ENTRY FOR EACH NEW WORD TO BE LEARNED; THE ENGLISH MEANING ALONE WILL NEVER BE ENOUGH.**

Morphology

Morphology refers to the study of the different *forms* words take in a given language. In English, for example, various pieces of verb morphology must be learned:

1. the third-person singular present tense form of most English verbs is formed by the addition of -s or -es:

walk → walks go → goes

2. the past tense of many English verbs is formed by the addition of -ed:

walk → walked

Morphology extends as well to nouns, adjectives, and certain other parts of speech that have multiple forms. *The changing of form to convey changed meaning is called inflection.*

Some languages are more inflected than others. Thus the English noun regularly appears in only four forms:

boy (singular)	boys (plural)
boy's (singular possessive)	boys' (plural possessive)

The Latin noun, by contrast, regularly appears in ten or more forms. Since *Latin is a more highly inflected language than English, Latin morphology is considerably more extensive than English morphology and requires complete mastery.*

Syntax

The *grammatical function of a word in a sentence* is the syntax of that word. Consider the English sentence "The woman gives the cat a toy." "Woman," "cat," and "toy" all

have different grammatical functions that help convey the complete meaning of the sentence:

woman: subject
cat: indirect object
toy: direct object

The terms **subject**, **indirect object**, and **direct object** are examples of English syntax, and these and many other terms of English syntax are also used in Latin syntax. Accurate translation of a Latin sentence requires the identification of the syntax of the words in that sentence. Throughout this book, new Latin syntactical terms will be introduced and defined. These terms will always be boldfaced at their first appearance.

LEARN ALL BOLDFACED SYNTACTICAL TERMS.

CHAPTER I

Vocabulary

- agricola, agricolae *m.* farmer
- anima, animae *f.* breath; life force; soul¹
- dea, deae *f.* goddess
- fama, famae *f.* report, rumor; reputation, fame
- femina, feminae *f.* woman; wife
- filia, filiae *f.* daughter
- insula, insulae *f.* island
- Italia, Italiae *f.* Italy
- nauta, nautae *m.* sailor
- patria, patriae *f.* country, homeland
- pecunia, pecuniae *f.* money
- poeta, poetae *m.* poet
- puella, puellae *f.* girl
- rēgina, rēginae *f.* queen
- via, viae *f.* way, road, street

- ager, agrī *m.* field
- deus, deī *m.* god
- dominus, domini *m.* master, lord
- filius, filiū *m.* son
- gladius, gladii *m.* sword
- liber, libri *m.* book
- puer, pueri *m.* boy
- servus, servi *m.* slave
- vir, viri *m.* man; husband

- aurum, aurī *n.* gold
- bellum, belli *n.* war
- cōsiliū, cōsiliū *n.* deliberation; plan, advice; judgment
- dōnum, dōnī *n.* gift
- factum, facti *n.* deed
- ferrum, ferri *n.* iron; sword
- oppidum, oppidi *n.* town
- periculum, periculi *n.* danger
- verbum, verbī *n.* word

- ā, ab (prep. + abl.) (away) from
- ad (prep. + acc.) toward, to
- cum (prep. + abl.) with
- dē (prep. + abl.) (down) from, about, concerning
- ē, ex (prep. + abl.) (out) from
- et (conj.) and;
(adv.) even, also
et . . . et . . . both . . . and . . .
- in (prep. + acc.) into, onto; against
(prep. + abl.) in, on
- ō (interj.) O
- -que (enclitic conj.) and

1. An arrow next to a vocabulary entry indicates that there is additional important information about this entry in the vocabulary notes that follow

Vocabulary Notes

anima, animae f. has a physical meaning, the "breath" of the wind or of a human being. By extension, it may mean the "breath" of life, the "life force." Although it may be translated "soul," it refers only to the force that gives an animate being life and not to the notion of "soul" as the seat of emotion and thought. For this latter meaning Latin usually employs another word.

dea, deae f. has *deabus* as its dative and ablative plural form.

fama, famae f. derives from an Indo-European root that means "speak" (cf. Gk. *phēmí*, Skt. *bhāsh* "speak"). The word *fama* indicates primarily what is spoken publicly or by the people, and its basic meaning is "talk" (something spoken) or "rumor." A *fama* often told becomes a "story," and when it is passed down from generation to generation, it becomes a "tradition." A person's *fama* is his or her "reputation" or "fame." This may be positive or negative. Finally, if the word is capitalized, *Fama* is the goddess Rumor.

filia, filiae f. has *filiabus* as its dative and ablative plural form.

Note that *poëta* is a three-syllable word: -oe- is not a diphthong.

deus, dei m. has certain common irregular forms in the plural. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING DECLENSION:

Nom./Voc.	<i>deus</i>	<i>di</i> or <i>dei</i>
Gen.	<i>dei</i>	<i>deorum</i> or <i>deum</i>
Dat.	<i>deis</i>	<i>dis</i>
Acc.	<i>deos</i>	<i>deos</i>
Abl.	<i>deis</i>	<i>dis</i>

Note in particular the alternate genitive plural *deum*, which is identical with the accusative singular. *Deus* has no separate vocative singular form; the nominative and vocative singular are identical.

The noun *dominus, domini m.* is cognate with the Latin word for house (*domus*); that is, the two words *dominus* and *domus* are descended from the same linguistic root. The original meaning of *dominus* was "master of the house."

filius, filii m. has *filii* as its vocative singular form.

consilium, consilii n. may mean the act of *deliberating* about something (deliberation) or it may mean the "plan" or "intention" that results from deliberating. It may also mean the capacity to deliberate (judgment). Finally, it may refer to a group of people who deliberate, a "council."

ferrum, ferri n. means "iron." By the rhetorical device *metonymy* (change of name), it also means "sword"—that is, something made of iron.

Prepositions

A preposition (< *praepōnō*, place before) is a word placed before a noun or pronoun to show its relation to another word in the sentence. The preposition and the noun or pronoun together are called a "prepositional phrase." In Latin, prepositions are most often followed by one of two cases, the accusative or the ablative. Prepositions that require a noun in the accusative case are said to "take the accusative" and are marked in the vocabulary entry by the notation (*prep. + acc.*). Prepositions that require a noun in the ablative case are similarly said to "take the ablative" and are marked by the notation (*prep. + abl.*).

Prepositions that take the accusative emphasize the idea of motion toward, into, around, and through. Prepositions that take the ablative indicate one of the three functions of the ablative (separation, association/instrument, location). A few prepositions can take either case, and their meanings differ according to which case they take.

The prepositions *ā/ab*, *ē/ex*, and *dē* all require a noun in the ablative case and express separation (from). However, they have distinct differences in meaning. *ā/ab* expresses motion away from a place, *ē/ex* expresses motion out from a place; *dē* expresses motion down from a place. These differences in meaning are illustrated in the diagram that follows.

ab is used before words beginning with vowels or *h-*. Both *ā* and *ab* are used before words beginning with consonants, but *ā* is more frequent.

ex is used before words beginning with vowels or *h-*. Both *ē* and *ex* are used before words beginning with consonants, but *ex* is more frequent.

ad takes the accusative and expresses motion to or toward a place. Compare the meaning of *ad* with that of *in* (+ *acc.*) in the diagram that follows.

in may take either the accusative or the ablative case. When it takes the accusative, it means "into" or "onto." By extension of this meaning it may also mean "against." When it takes the ablative case, it expresses location and means either "in" or "on." These differences in meaning are illustrated in the diagram that follows.

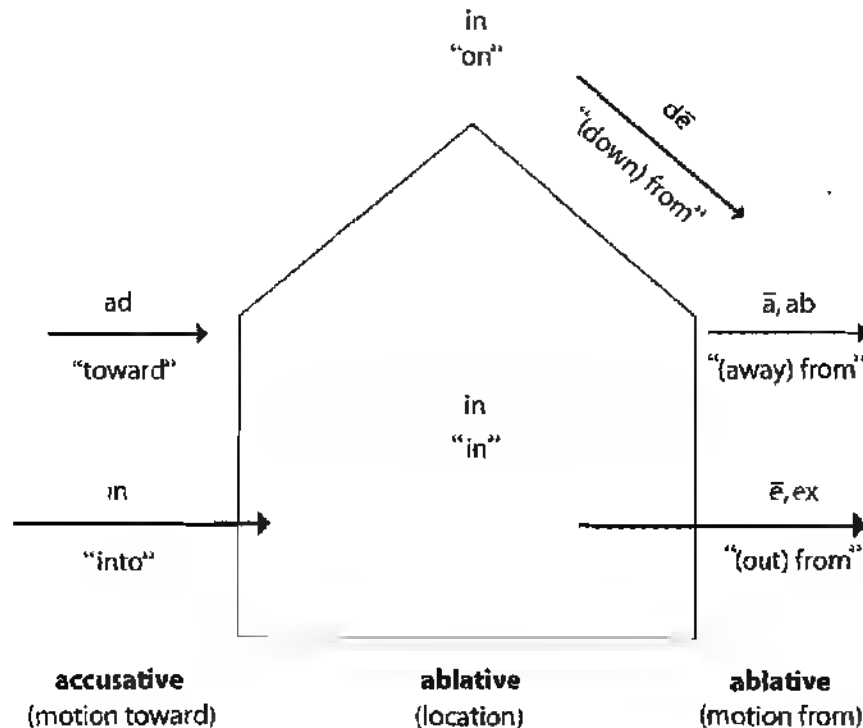


Figure 2. Prepositions

et is a coordinating conjunction. This means that it connects only parallel or grammatically balanced words, phrases or clauses. When two nouns are connected, they must be in the same case. For example, *nautārum et agricolārum* (of the sailors and of the farmers [genitive]). Parts of speech other than nouns may also be connected by **et**. For example, in the phrases "tall *and* snow-covered," "he sings *and* he dances," "in Italy *and* in Gaul," **et** could again be used to connect two adjectives, two verb phrases, or two prepositional phrases.

To emphasize the strict balance of elements that are to be joined in Latin, **et** is often used to mark each element. Thus, *et nautārum et agricolārum*. It is convenient to translate the first **et** by the English word "both" (both of the sailors and of the farmers). When such a parallel series is longer than two (*et nautārum et agricolārum et poetārum*), omit translating the first **et** and say "and" for the others (of the sailors and of the farmers and of the poets).

et may also be used as an *adverb* that usually qualifies a single word (noun, verb, adjective): *et vir* (even the man, or the man also).

-que is an enclitic conjunction. The word enclitic is derived from the Greek verb *enklino* (lean on), and an enclitic leans on or is directly attached to the word preceding it. The hyphen before **que** indicates that it cannot stand alone as a separate word. **-que** is attached to the second element of a closely related pair, whose elements are often opposite or complementary. **-que** should be translated "and" before the word to which it is attached: for example *vir feminaque* (husband and wife [subjects]). Like **et**, **-que** may connect grammatical elements other than nouns.

-que is used in place of the first et in the phrase et . . . et . . . by certain prose stylists (the historians Livy, Sallust, and Tacitus) and by many poets. Caesar and Cicero *never* use -que . . . et. The use of -que . . . is found only in poetry and occasionally in the historians.

Derivatives and Cognates

Many words in English are *derived* from Latin words, that is, they descend directly from words in Latin. Such words are called derivatives. For example, the English word "counsel" is a derivative of the Latin word *cōnsilium*. In many instances the differences in sound and spelling between an English word and its Latin parent are not significant enough to obscure the fact that the two words are related. Some English derivatives descend from the roots of Latin words. A root is the basic element or ultimate stem of a word that carries its meaning and from which many other words are made by the addition of prefixes and suffixes.

When an English and a Latin word are called cognates (< *cognātus*, -a, -um, related) they are related because they both descend from a common PIE word or root, but the English word is derived not from Latin but from another ancient language such as Greek. It is often impossible to tell that a word in Latin and a word in English are cognates because they have undergone radically different changes in pronunciation and spelling as they have developed in their respective language families. For example, the Latin word *quīnque* (five) is cognate with the English word "five," but the words do not appear to be related.

In each chapter some English derivatives and cognates of the new Latin vocabulary will be listed at the end of the vocabulary notes. This list is intended in part to help the student remember the meanings of new vocabulary items. It will also help the student expand his or her English vocabulary and stimulate further interest in learning about the relations among words. The cognates are provided to show how the same root or word in PIE has given rise to a wide variety of seemingly unrelated words in English. Where only the root of an English word is related to the corresponding Latin word, the portion of the English word that descends from that root is italicized.²

	Derivatives	Cognates
ager	agrarian	acre
anima	animate	
bellum	bellicose	
cōnsilium	counsel	
dea, deus	deity	July
dominus	dominate	
factum	fact	thesis
fama	famous	prophet; banal
filia, filius	affiliate	
insula	insulate; isolate	
liber	library	
nauta	nautical	astronaut, nausea
pecūnia	pecuniary	fee
periculum	peril	fear; pirate
puella, puer	puerile	foal, encyclopedia
rēgina	correct, regent	maharajah; right; rich
verbum	verb	word, irony
via	trivial, deviate	way, weigh
vir	virtue	werewolf; world

2. For further information on these and other derivatives and cognates, consult the Indo-European Roots Appendix of the *American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 3rd ed. (Houghton-Mifflin 1992).

§1. The Latin Noun and Its Properties: Gender, Number, Case

A noun is the name of a person, place, or thing.³ Every noun in Latin has three properties: **gender**, **number**, and **case**.

GENDER Latin nouns have the genders **masculine** or **feminine**. Nouns that are neither masculine nor feminine are called **neuter** (< **neuter**, **neutra**, **neutrum**, neither). In the vocabulary entry for each noun, gender will be indicated by *m.*, *f.*, or *n.* **THIS INFORMATION MUST BE MEMORIZED FOR EACH NOUN.**

NUMBER—Latin nouns appear in the **singular** when referring to one and in the **plural** when referring to more than one.

CASE—Latin nouns occur in a variety of different forms in both the singular and the plural. Each different form or case is indicated by a special ending attached to a stem that remains constant. Each ending indicates the syntax, the grammatical function, that a noun has in a sentence. For example, when a Latin noun serves as the subject of a sentence, it has one case ending, but when it serves as the direct object in a sentence, it has a different case ending.

The parent language of Latin, Indo-European, had eight different cases for nouns, each case with its own grammatical functions. Latin has only six cases, which nevertheless express all the functions of the original eight.⁴ This is possible because one case in Latin has been made to perform multiple functions. The names of the Latin cases and their basic functions are:

Nominative Case



The two essential elements of every sentence are the *subject* and the *predicate*. The *subject* is *that which is spoken about*, and the *predicate* is *all that is said about the subject*. For example:

John sneezed.

The waiter cleared the dishes from the table.

In these sentences, “John” and “the waiter” are subjects; “sneezed” and “cleared the dishes from the table” are predicates. Both “John” and “the waiter” would be in the nominative case in Latin, and the syntax of each would be **Nominative, Subject**.

Certain verbs such as “be,” “become,” and “seem” are called **copulative** or **linking** verbs. A linking verb is *never* followed by a direct object but rather by an *element*

3 There are, in fact, several kinds of nouns.
common nouns: man, book, city, dumpling
proper nouns: Mary, Italy, New York
collective nouns: crowd, tribe, senate, army
abstract nouns: love, beauty, slavery, citizenship
verbal nouns: running (gerund), to run (infinitive)

4 A few Latin nouns have a seventh case, the *locative*, used to express location in a place

that is equivalent to the subject, and this element is called the Predicate Nominative. For example:

John is a waiter.
The frog became a prince.

In these sentences, "John" and "the frog" are subjects, while "a waiter" and "a prince" are Predicate Nominatives. Both the subjects and the Predicate Nominatives would be in the nominative case in Latin.

Genitive Case

—used to qualify or limit another noun in a variety of ways
—usually corresponds to a translation using the English preposition "of"

In the phrases "the house of friends," "a fear of snakes," "a jar of pennies," the words "of friends," "of snakes," and "of pennies" serve to *qualify* or *limit* in a variety of ways the nouns on which they depend. "Of friends," "of snakes," and "of pennies" would be expressed in Latin by "friends," "snakes," and "pennies" in the genitive case *with no preposition*; that is, the genitive case ending *contains the notion of "of" within it*.

One idea commonly expressed by the genitive case is that of ownership or possession: "the book of the girl" (the book belonging to the girl). The phrase "of the girl" would be expressed in Latin by the word "girl" in the genitive case, and the syntax of that word would be **Genitive of Possession**.

Dative Case

—used to express the person or thing interested in or affected by the action of the verb
—usually corresponds to a translation using the English prepositions "with reference to" or "for"

In the sentence "To the sailor the danger of the sea is real," "to the sailor" expresses the person *with reference to whom* "the danger of the sea is real." The phrase "to the sailor" would be expressed in Latin by the word "sailor" in the dative case *with no preposition*; that is, the dative case ending *contains the notion of "(with reference) to" within it*. The syntax of the word "sailor" in Latin in the dative case would be **Dative of Reference**.

In the sentence "The girl gives a toy to the cat" or "The girl gives the cat a toy," "a toy" expresses the *direct* object of the verb, while "to the cat" or "cat" expresses the *indirect* object, the person or thing *indirectly* interested in or affected by the action of the verb. Again, "to the cat" or "cat" would be expressed in Latin in the dative case *with no preposition*, and the syntax of that word would be **Dative of Indirect Object**. This use of the dative case appears most often with verbs of *giving*, *showing*, and *telling*.

Accusative Case

- used for the *direct object* of a verb
- used following certain prepositions

In the sentence “The poet writes poems,” “poems” is the *direct object* of the verb “writes” because the action of the verb “writes” is directly exerted on the object “poems.” The word “poems” would be expressed in Latin in the accusative case, and the syntax of that word would be **Accusative, Direct Object**.

In addition to being used to express the direct object of a verb, the accusative case follows prepositions that express *motion toward, into, around, and through*. For example, to express the phrase “toward the field” in Latin, the preposition *ad* (toward) is followed by the word “field” in Latin in the accusative case.

Ablative Case

- used to express *separation* (original function of the ablative case); in this usage, corresponds to a translation using the English preposition “from”
- also expresses *association or instrument*; in this usage, corresponds to a translation using the English prepositions “with” or “by”
- also expresses *location* (in space or time); in this usage, corresponds to a translation using the English prepositions “in,” “on,” or “at”

Separation

In the sentence “He came from Italy,” the phrase “from Italy” expresses motion from a place: “he” is *separated from* “Italy.” In the sentence “The king freed the people from slavery,” “the people” are *separated from* “slavery.” These two examples suggest the range of meaning expressed by the ablative’s separative function. The idea of going *from a place* (out from/away from/down from) usually requires a preposition and a noun in the ablative case. Thus, in the example above, “from Italy” would be expressed in Latin by the preposition *ab* ([away] from) and “Italy” in the ablative case. The idea of “from slavery” in the second example would be expressed by the word “slavery” in the ablative case and might be accompanied by a preposition.

Association/Instrument

In the sentence “The farmer came to the party with a poet,” the phrase “with a poet” indicates that the farmer was *accompanied by* a poet. The phrase “with a poet” would be expressed in Latin by the preposition *cum* (with) and “poet” in the ablative case; the syntax of that word would be **Ablative of Accompaniment**. NOTE THAT THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT REQUIRES THE PREPOSITION *CUM*.

In the sentence “The farmer is fighting with a sword,” the phrase “with a sword” indicates what the farmer *uses to fight*, or the *instrument by means of which* he is fighting. The phrase “with a sword” would be expressed in Latin by the word “sword” in the ablative case *with no preposition*; the syntax of that word would be

Ablative of Means (or Ablative of Instrument). NOTE THAT NO PREPOSITION IS USED WITH THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS.

Location

In the sentences "Farmers work in fields" and "The queen lives on an island," the phrases "in fields" and "on an island" express ideas of *location* or *place where*. The phrases "in fields" and "on an island" would be expressed in Latin by the preposition **in** (in, on) and the words "fields" and "island" in the ablative case. NOTE THAT SUCH AN ABLATIVE REQUIRES THE PREPOSITION **IN**.

Vocative Case

—used for *addressing someone directly*

In the sentence "Tell me, father, why you have come," the word "father" expresses the person being directly addressed by the speaker of the sentence. The word "father" would be expressed in Latin in the vocative case. In Latin, a word in the vocative case is sometimes preceded by the interjection **ō** (O).

Summary of Cases and Their Basic Functions	
Case Name	Used to Express
Nominative	1. subject 2. predicate nominative
Genitive	of
Dative	to "for"
Accusative	1. direct object 2. with certain prepositions
Ablative	1. from 2. with "by" 3. in, on
Vocative	direct address

☛ DRILL 1 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§2. The Five Declensions

Latin nouns are grouped in five different families called **declensions**. Each noun belongs to *one declension only*, and each declension has its own distinctive set of case endings. The five groups of nouns are most reliably distinguished and identified by the *genitive singular* ending of each declension:

	Genitive Singular Ending
1st declension	-ae
2nd declension	-i
3rd declension	-is
4th declension	-us
5th declension	-ei/-ei

A full vocabulary entry for a Latin noun contains, in the following order, the *nominative singular* form, the *genitive singular* form, a notation of gender, and the English meaning(s). For example:

puella, puellae f. girl
 servus, servi m. slave
 vir, viri m. man; husband
 periculum, periculi n. danger

OBSERVATIONS

1. The -ae ending on the genitive singular form of *puella* indicates that this noun belongs to the first declension.
2. The -i endings on the genitive singular forms of *servus*, *vir*, and *periculum* indicate that these nouns all belong to the second declension. Even though the endings of their nominative singular forms differ the endings of the genitive singular forms do not.

Finding the Stem

The genitive singular form is given in the vocabulary for purposes of identifying the declension to which each noun belongs, but the genitive singular is also the form from which a **stem** is derived for use in making all other forms of the noun.

To find the stem of any noun, *remove the ending from the genitive singular form* (the second element given in the vocabulary). What remains is the stem.

patria, patri/ae f. country	stem = patri-
puella, puell/ae f. girl	stem = puell-
liber, libr/i m. book	stem = libr-
servus, serv/i m. slave	stem = serv-
vir, vir/i m. man; husband	stem = vir-

All the forms of a noun are created by taking the stem of that noun and adding the case endings that belong to its particular declension. When one generates a complete set of forms for a noun in Latin, one is said to **decline** a noun, and the resulting set of forms is called a **declension** of the noun.⁵

§3. Noun Morphology: First Declension

Gender Note: Most nouns of the first declension are feminine, some are masculine. There are no neuter first-declension nouns.

Case Endings of the First Declension		
	Singular	Plural
Nominative/Vocative	-a	-ae
Genitive	-ae	-arum
Dative	-ae	-is
Accusative	-am	-as
Ablative	-a	-is

⁵ There are thus two meanings for the word "declension": 1. the name for each of the five families of nouns (first declension, second declension, etc.); 2. a complete set of forms for an individual noun.

ALL REGULAR NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION USE THESE ENDINGS. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a noun of the first declension, add these endings to the stem. For example:

puella, puellae f. girl stem = puell-		
		Singular
Nom./Voc.	puella	the girl (in app. or predicate nominative) girl! (addressed directly)
Gen.	puellae	of the girl
Dat.	puellae	to the girl for the girl
Acc.	puellam	the girl (direct object)
Ab.	puella	from the girl, by (or to) the girl, in the girl
		Plural
Nom./Voc.	puellae	the girls (not "or predicate nominative") girls! (addressed directly)
Gen.	puellarum	of the girls
Dat.	puellis	to the girls or to the girls
Acc.	puellas	the girls (direct)
Ab.	puellis	from the girls, by (or to) the girls, in the girls

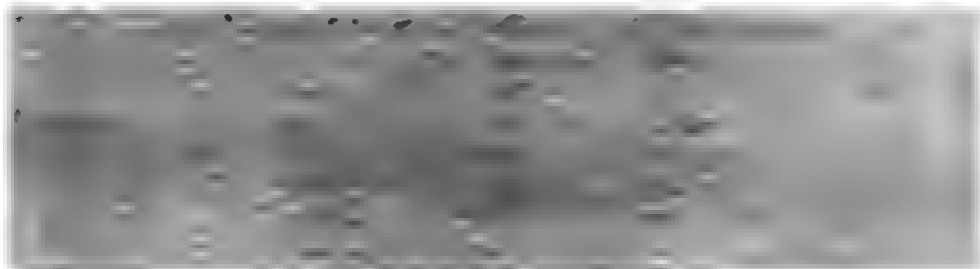
OBSERVATIONS

1. The abbreviations for the case names used in the model declension above are standard and will appear frequently in this book as will the abbreviations *subj.* (subject), *pred. nom.* (predicate nominative), and *d.o.* (direct object).
2. In the first declension, as in most other declensions, the nominative and vocative endings in both singular and plural are identical and will therefore be listed together.
3. Certain endings of the first declension are used to mark more than one case: -ae = genitive singular, dative singular, and nominative/vocative plural, -is = dative plural and ablative plural. ALWAYS CONSIDER ALL POSSIBILITIES WHEN IDENTIFYING THE FORM OF A NOUN. CONTEXT USUALLY HELPS TO DISTINGUISH FORMS WITH MORE THAN ONE POSSIBLE INTERPRETATION.
4. Two first declension words in the vocabulary of this chapter, *dea*, *dea* f., "goddess," and *filia*, *filiae* f., "daughter," have irregular dative and ablative plural forms: *deabus* and *filabus*. MEMORIZE THESE IRREGULAR FORMS.
5. The Latin language has *no definite article* (the) and *no indefinite article* (a, an). ENGLISH DEFINITE OR INDEFINITE ARTICLES MAY BE FREELY ADDED IN TRANSLATIONS OF LATIN NOUNS AS CONTEXT DEMANDS. Thus, the noun translated above as "the girl," "of the girl," etc., could also be translated "a girl," "of a girl," etc. Sometimes it is appropriate to use no article: "money" or "of books." Although there are words in Latin for "his," "her," and "their," possessive adjectives such as these are often omitted in Latin. They may be freely added in English translations.

◆ DRILL 2-3 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§4. Noun Morphology: Second Declension

Gender Note: Most nouns of the second declension are masculine, some are feminine, and many are neuter with endings slightly different from masculine and feminine nouns.



ALL REGULAR MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION USE THESE ENDINGS. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a *masculine* or *feminine* noun of the second declension, add these endings to the stem. For example:

6. Most masculine and feminine nouns of the second declension use *-us* as the nominative singular ending. As will be clear from the vocabulary entries, however, a number of nouns lack any nominative singular ending and instead use a *form of the stem of the noun* as the nominative singular form. Thus, *servus, servi* m. slave, but *puer, pueri* m. boy and *liber, libri* m. book.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Certain endings for masculine/feminine nouns of the second declension are used to mark more than one case: *-ī* = genitive singular and nominative/vocative plural, *-ō* = dative singular and ablative singular, *-is* = dative plural and ablative plural. ALWAYS CONSIDER ALL POSSIBILITIES WHEN IDENTIFYING THE FORM OF A NOUN. CONTEXT USUALLY HELPS TO DISTINGUISH FORMS THAT HAVE MORE THAN ONE POSSIBLE INTERPRETATION.
2. Many endings of the second declension are either similar to or identical with corresponding endings of the first declension. Compare accusative singular *-um* to *-am*; genitive plural *-ōrum* to *-ārum*; dative and ablative plural *-is* to *-is*; and accusative plural *-os* to *-ās*.
3. Second declension nouns whose stems end in *-i* have two possible forms for the genitive singular, one a contraction of the other. For example:

gladius, gladiī or gladi m. sword

In the second form, the short *-i* of the stem has contracted with the *-ī* of the ending. This shortened form of the genitive singular will not be given in the vocabulary entry for nouns whose stems end in *-i*, but it will appear in drills, sentences, and readings.

4. The second declension is the *only* declension in which the vocative differs from the nominative, and it does so *only* in the *singular* for masculine and feminine nouns whose nominative singular forms end in *-us*. For other masculine or feminine nouns of this declension, the vocative singular is identical with the nominative singular. For example:

servus vocative singular = *serve*
puer vocative singular = *puer*

5. Every vocative plural is identical with the nominative plural in all declensions.
6. The noun *filius* and proper names of the second declension whose nominative singular forms end in *-ius* have a vocative singular ending in *-ī*. Thus:

filius, filiī m. son vocative singular *fili⁷*

MEMORIZE THIS VOCATIVE SINGULAR ENDING.

7. The noun *deus*, *dei m.* has certain irregular forms in the plural *di* (nom/voc pl), *deum* (gen. pl), and *dis* (dat./abl. pl.). For the full declension of this noun see the vocabulary note on p. 12.

Case Endings of the Second Declension: Neuter		
	Singular	Plural
Nominative/Vocative	-um	-a
Genitive	-i	-orum
Dative	-o	-is
Accusative	-um	-a
Ablative	-o	-is

ALL NEUTER NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION USE THESE ENDINGS. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a *neuter* noun of the second declension, add these endings to the stem. For example:

⁷ Note that this vocative singular form is identical with the shortened form of the genitive singular

periculum, periculi n. danger; stem = pericul-		
<i>Singular</i>		
Nom./Voc.	periculum	danger (sub.) or pred. nom.) danger! (addressed directly)
Gen.	periculi	of danger
Dat.	periculo	to danger/for danger
Acc.	periculum	danger (d.o.)
Abl.	periculo	from danger; by/with danger; in danger
<i>Plural</i>		
Nom./Voc.	pericula	dangers (sub.) or pred. nom.) dangers! (addressed directly)
Gen.	periculorum	of dangers
Dat.	periculis	to dangers/for dangers
Acc.	pericula	dangers (d.o.)
Abl.	periculis	from dangers; by/with dangers; in dangers

OBSERVATIONS

1. Most of the endings for neuter nouns of the second declension are identical with the endings for masculine/feminine second-declension nouns. Neuter nouns differ *only* in having **um** in the nominative and vocative singular and **-a** in the nominative, vocative, and accusative plural. **ALL NEUTER WORDS IN LATIN HAVE IDENTICAL NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE FORMS IN BOTH THE SINGULAR AND THE PLURAL.**
2. As is true for masculine/feminine second-declension nouns, neuter nouns whose stems end in **-i** have two possible forms for the genitive singular, one a contraction of the other. For example.

cōsiliū, cōsiliī or cōsili n. plan; advice; judgment

☛ DRILL 4 MAY NOW BE DONE.

CHAPTER II

Vocabulary

- cūra, cūrae f.* care, concern; anxiety
➤ *ira, irae f.* anger, wrath
 poena, poenae f. punishment, penalty
 sapientia, sapientiae f. wisdom
 vita, vitae f. life
- *animus, animi m.* (rational) soul, mind;
 spirit; *in pl.*, strong feelings
➤ *arma, armōrum n. pl.* arms, weapons
➤ *studium, studii n.* zeal, enthusiasm;
 pursuit, study
 velum, veli n. sail
- *ambulō, ambulare, ambulavi, ambulātum*
 (1 intr.) walk
➤ *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus* (1-tr.) love
➤ *cōgitō* (1-tr.) think; ponder
➤ *dō, dare, dedī, datus* give, grant
 ➤ *poenās dare* (idiom) to pay the penalty
 ➤ *vēla dare* (idiom) to set sail
➤ *dōnō* (1-tr.) give; present, reward
 errō (1-intr.) wander; err, make a mistake
 labōrō (1-intr.) work; suffer, be distressed
➤ *mōnstrō* (1 tr.) show, point out
➤ *optō* (1 tr.) desire, choose
➤ *vocō* (1 tr.) call; summon, name
- *dēbeō, debēre, debui, debitus* owe; ought
 habeō, habēre, habui, habitus have, hold;
 consider
➤ *iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus* order
➤ *moveō, movēre, movi, mōtus* set in mo-
 tion, stir (up), move
 respondeō, respondēre, respondi,
 respōsus answer
➤ *timeō, timēre, timui*, — fear, be afraid (of)
 videō, vidēre, vidi, vīsus see
- *sum, esse, fui, futurus* be; exist
➤ *possum, posse, potui*, — be able, can
- cur* (interrog. adv.) why
➤ *enim* (postpositive conj.) in fact, indeed;
 for
➤ *etenim* (conj.) and indeed; for in fact
➤ *nam* (conj.) for
➤ *namque* (conj.) for in fact
➤ *-ne* (interrog. enclitic particle) *added to the*
 first word of a question
➤ *neque* or *nec* (conj.-adv.) and not
 neque/nec . . . neque/nec . . .
 neither . . . nor . . .
➤ *nōn* (adv.) not
 sed (conj.) but

Vocabulary Notes

When *ira* appears in the plural, it may be translated "(feelings of) anger."

animus, animi *m.* is the "(rational) soul" or "mind" of a human being. It is distinct from *anima* which is the physical soul, that part of a human that would descend to the underworld. By comparison, Greek and English have one word, *psychē* and "soul" respectively, that is used for both. *animus* may also mean "heart" as the source of emotion and passion, or it may indicate a specific passion. In the plural, it often means "spirits" in the sense of "strong feelings," and in certain contexts "anger," "courage," or "pride."

The second-declension noun *arma* *armorum* *n.* pl. never appears in the singular in Latin. Hence, the vocabulary entry is given in the plural but is analogous in other respects to any other vocabulary entry for a noun: it gives the nominative, the genitive, the gender, and the meaning(s) of the word. All such entries also indicate that the word listed is plural.

studium, studii *n.* expresses both an eager desire toward something and that to which one devotes one's attention. When it is used in a political context, it often means "(partisan) support."

Principal Parts

As is explained in §7, the fourth principal part of a verb is usually the perfect passive participle of that verb. In this book, two different endings of the perfect passive participle—*-us* and *-um*—are used in the vocabulary lists beginning each chapter. Verbs that are *transitive*—that express an action that is directly exerted on a person or thing—have a fourth principal part ending in *-us*. Verbs that are *intransitive*—that express an action that is not directly exerted on a person or thing—have a fourth principal part ending in *-um*. For more on the distinction between transitive and intransitive verbs, see §11.

Certain intransitive verbs have no perfect passive participle. For some intransitive verbs a future active participle, whose ending is *-ūrus*, is supplied as the fourth principal part. This is true, for example, for the irregular intransitive verb *sum*, *esse* *fuī*, *futūrus*. The fourth principal part *futūrus*, is a future active participle.

Certain verbs, both transitive and intransitive, have no fourth principal part at all.¹ When memorizing and reciting aloud such verbs, say "blank" for the missing fourth principal part.

Most verbs of the first conjugation have principal parts that follow the pattern of *ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātum* (an intransitive verb) or *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus* (a transitive verb). Verbs whose second, third, and fourth principal parts end in *-āre, -āvī, -ātus* will be identified in the vocabulary list by the notation (1-tr.) following the first principal part. Verbs whose second, third, and fourth principal parts end in *-āre, -āvī, -ātum* will be identified in the vocabulary list by the notation (1-intr.). No other principal parts will be listed for these verbs. However, when learning verbs of this conjugation, ALWAYS WRITE OUT AND/OR SAY ALL FOUR PRINCIPAL PARTS. For example *optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus*, not *optō* (1-tr.).

cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātus takes two grammatical constructions. It takes a direct object, or it may also be used with the preposition *dē*.

<i>Animam cōgitat.</i>	She is pondering the soul.
<i>Dē animā cōgitat.</i>	She is thinking about the soul.

dō, dare, dedi, datus is an irregular first-conjugation verb because its principal parts do not follow the pattern of other first-conjugation verbs and its present stem, *da-*, contains a short *-a-*. However, two forms have *-a-* the second person singular present active indicative (*dās*) and the second person singular present active imperative (*dā*). (For the indicative see §9; for the imperative see §32.) MEMORIZE THESE FORMS. The third principal part, *dedi*, is called *reduplicated* because the first consonant of the root, *d-*, has been doubled with an intervening vowel. Like all verbs of *giving, showing, and telling*, *dō* regularly takes both a direct object and an indirect object.

Two common idioms using *dō* are *poenās dare*, "to pay the penalty," and *vēla dare*, "to set sail." An idiom is an expression whose meaning cannot be rendered by a literal translation. Idioms are included in the vocabulary lists with their verbs in the infinitive. MEMORIZE EACH IDIOM AS A SEPARATE VOCABULARY ENTRY.

<i>Nautae poenās dabunt.</i>	The sailors will pay the penalty.
<i>Nautae vela non dant.</i>	The sailors are not setting sail.

1. A missing fourth principal part may indicate only that no forms derived from this part occur in the Latin that has survived.

dōnō, dōnāre, dōnāvī, dōnātus is a denominative verb. The term *denominative* is used of verbs that are derived from nouns or adjectives. The verb **dōnō** is derived from the noun **dōnum, dōnī** n. Two constructions regularly occur with this verb:

Pecūniam dōnāmus.	We are giving money in the past
Pecūniā pecūniā dōnāmus.	We are treating the past with the means of money

In the first sentence **dōnō** functions as an ordinary verb of *giving, showing, and telling* and takes a direct object and an indirect object. In this usage **dōnō** is a synonym of **dō**. In the second sentence **dōnō** means "present" or "reward" with a person as an Accusative, Direct Object and an Ablative of Means.

mōstrō, mōstrāre, mōstrāvī, mōstrātus is a verb of *giving, showing, and telling* and thus takes both a direct object and an indirect object.

optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus may take an Object Infinitive (see §13). When it means "choose" it sometimes has *ex* + ablative to express the group out from which something or someone is chosen.

Pecūniam ex vīris mīlībus optābimus.	We shall choose a post (and) from the men of the island
---	---

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus means "call" both in the sense of "summon" and in the sense of "name." When it has the sense of "name," it regularly takes a direct object and another noun called a Predicate Accusative.

Pecūniam in vīlīs vocō.	I call the island (dōnō) homeland (Predicate Accusative).
--------------------------------	---

The verb **dēbēō, dēbēre, dēbui, dēbitus** has two distinct meanings and usages. When it takes a direct object, it should be translated "owe." When it is followed by a Complementary Infinitive, it should be translated "ought" (see §12).

Pecūniam dēbēō.	I owe money in the past
Labōrāre dēbēō.	ought to work

To translate the past and future tenses of **dēbēō** with a Complementary Infinitive use the English verb "have."

Labōrāre dēbui.	I had to work
Labōrāre dēbēbo.	I shall have to work

iubēō, iubēre, iussī, iussus frequently takes an Object Infinitive (see §13), most often with a subject of the infinitive in the accusative case (see §107). This accusative should be translated as if it were a direct object of the form of **iubēō**.

Regem nauis iubēre iubet.	The captain orders the sailor to work.
----------------------------------	--

movēō, movēre, movī, mōtus means "set (something or someone) in motion," either physically or emotionally.

timēō, timēre, timuī, — lacks a fourth principal part and thus lacks the tenses formed from this principal part. MEMORIZE THE BLANK IN PLACE OF A FOURTH PRINCIPAL PART. **Timēō** is transitive but may be used absolutely (see §11). It may be accompanied by a Dative of Reference or by the preposition **dē** (as well as by other prepositions).

Amīcūm timēō.	I am afraid of my friend.
Amīcūm dē timēō.	I am afraid of my friend for him.
Amīcūm dē timēō.	I am afraid of my friend for him.

The principal parts of the irregular verb **sum, esse, fui, futūrus** derive from two different PIE roots, **h₁es-*, "be, exist" (the root for the first two principal parts) and **bheu-*, "be, exist, grow" (for the third and fourth principal parts).² The fourth principal part, **futūrus** (about to be), is the future active participle. **Sum** has two different uses but is always intransitive. For the conjugation and uses of **sum** see §10.

possum, posse, potui, — is an intransitive verb that is regularly followed by a Complementary Infinitive (see §12). It lacks a fourth principal part and thus lacks the tenses formed from this principal part. MEMORIZE THE BLANK IN PLACE OF A FOURTH PRINCIPAL PART. For the conjugation of **possum** see §10.

2 An asterisk next to a form indicates that the form is hypothetical.

enim is called a **postpositive conjunction** (< *postpōnō*, put after) because it is regularly *placed after* the first word (or second word) in a sentence. **Enim** is used to join two sentences or clauses when the second sentence or clause explains (for) or confirms (in fact, indeed) a preceding one

Rēgina ad oppidum ambulat. **Dona enim** deo dare optat. (enim with explanation)
The queen is walking to the town, for she desires to give gifts to the gods.
Agricola vela dare optat. **Nihil enim** timet. (enim with confirmation)
The farmer desires to set sail; indeed, he is afraid of nothing.

Enim is never placed first in a Latin sentence, but it is nearly always the first word in an English translation. **etenim** (et + enim) is stronger than **enim** but identical in usage. However, it is *not* postpositive.

nam is another conjunction used to join two sentences or clauses when the second sentence or clause explains or confirms a preceding one

Rēgina ad oppidum ambulat. **Nam** dona deo dare optat.
The queen is walking to the town. For she desires to give gifts to the gods.

namque (nam + -que) is stronger than **nam** but identical in usage.

-ne is an enclitic³ added to the first word of a sentence to indicate that it is a question. Its use in questions is *optional*, and it has no English translation. The word to which it is added is often a verb, since verbs often occur first in questions, but **-ne** may be added to other words as well.

Optasne reginam insulae videre? Do you desire to see the queen of the island?
Rēginamne insulae videre optas? Do you desire to see the queen of the island?

neque or **nec** is a conjunction (and) and an adverb (not) at the same time.

Vir pugnas nec de periculo cogitat. The man fights and does not think about dangers.

neque . . . neque . . ., **nec . . . nec . . .**, or a mixture of the two mark balanced pairs and may be translated "neither . . . nor . . ."

Nec feminae nec viro donum dabo. Neither to the woman nor to the man shall I give a gift.

When a parallel series is longer than two (**nec feminae nec viro nec reginae**), translate the first **nec** as "not" and say "and not" for the others (not to the woman and not to the man and not to the queen).

nōn (adv.) almost always precedes the word it emphasizes.

Agricola dona non optat. The farmer does not desire gifts.
Agricola agrum, non pecuniam, optat. The farmer desires a field, not money.

	Derivatives	Cognates
ambulo	somnambulist	
citra	curious	
dō, dāno	donative; pardon	antidote; dose
habeō	habit; able	give; gave
ira	irate	iron; hierarchy
moveō	mobile; emotion	
possum	possible; potent	despot; Pad'shah
pugno	pugnacious; impug-	pygmy
sapientia	insipid; savant; savvy	
sum, esse	interest; absent; essence	am; is; yes; sin
ful, futurus	future	be; bald; physics
videō	vision, usage, voyeur	guide; wise; idol
vita	vital	bio; quick; hygiene; whiskey
vocō	vocal; invoke; vowel	epic

3 See the vocabulary note on -que (p. 14).

§5. The Finite Latin Verb and Its Properties: Person, Number, Tense, Voice, Mood

A verb is the part of speech that expresses action, existence, or occurrence. It is used to declare or assert something about the subject.⁴ Every verb form in Latin may have five properties: **person**, **number**, **tense**, **voice**, and **mood**. A *finite* verb form is *defined* or limited by *all five* of these properties.

PERSON—Latin verbs appear in the **first person** when the subject of the verb is the speaker or speakers (I, we), in the **second person** when the subject is the person addressed (you, you [pl.]), and in the **third person** when the subject is the person or thing spoken about (he, she, it, they, or any specific noun that could replace these pronouns. e.g., the boy, Cicero, dangers).⁵

NUMBER—Latin verbs appear in the **singular** when the subject is one and the **plural** when the subject is more than one.⁵

TENSE—The tense of a Latin verb indicates both **time** and **aspect**:

1. time: present, past, or future
2. aspect: simple, progressive, repeated, or completed

Aspect refers to the way the action of a verb is looked at and in particular indicates the relation of the action to the passage of time.

A verb that has *simple aspect* represents an action as *simply* occurring.

Mom, I *see* a baby duck! (present time)
That boy *ate* two dinners. (past time)
The candidate *will lose* the election tomorrow (future time)

A verb that has *progressive aspect* represents an action as *being in progress*.

The girl *is eating* an ice-cream cone. (present time)
The boy *was walking* to school when he saw a baby duck. (past time)
She'll *be comin'* round the mountain when she comes. (future time)

A verb that has *repeated aspect* represents an action as *repeated* or habitual.

She *walks* to school every day. (present time)
The boy *used to eat* ice-cream cones. (past time)
I *shall sit* here on and off for days and days. (future time)

A verb that has *completed aspect* represents an action as *already completed*.

I *have now finished* my lunch. (present time)
When they returned home, the sailors *had sailed* a thousand miles. (past time)
She *will have cleaned up* her room by the time Dad gets home. (future time)

4. There are, in fact, several kinds of verbs.

—**transitive verbs**, which carry the action from a subject to a direct object: the cat *catches* the mouse

—**intransitive verbs**, which do not carry the action from a subject to a direct object: the cat *sleeps*

—**linking (copulative) verbs**, which equate the subject with a noun or adjective in the predicate: the cat *is* a thief; the cat *is* black

5. A verb agrees with its subject in **person** and **number**. This is called **subject-verb agreement**.

It should be clear that verb tenses can share the same time but differ in aspect. The verbs in the following English sentences are all in past time; they differ only in aspect.

The boy <i>laughed</i> .	simple aspect
The boy <i>was laughing</i> .	progressive aspect
Every time his friend sang, <i>the boy laughed</i> .	repeated aspect
Because <i>the boy had laughed</i> , his friend was angry	completed aspect

All the Latin tenses that express progressive aspect may also express repeated aspect. Context usually makes clear whether a progressive aspect or a repeated aspect translation is more appropriate.

VOICE—Latin verbs appear in the active voice when their subjects are performing the action of the verb. (The cat scratches.) They appear in the passive voice when their subjects are receiving the action of the verb. (The cat is scratched.)

MOOD—Latin verbs occur in one of three different moods based on the writer's or speaker's attitude toward the factuality or likelihood of the action expressed. One uses the indicative mood to represent something as factual or to ask a question of fact. (The cat is scratching the furniture. Why is the cat scratching the furniture?) One uses the imperative mood to give a command. (Mom, scratch my back.) To represent an action as possible, wished for, doubtful, or nonfactual in some other way, one uses the subjunctive mood. (If only my cat would not scratch the furniture. My cat might scratch your arm.)

§6. The Latin Tenses of the Indicative Mood: Overview

Since Latin tenses have three possible times (*present*, *past*, *future*) and three possible aspects (*simple*, *progressive/repeated*, *completed*—the progressive and repeated always being grouped together in Latin), it would have been most efficient if Latin had had nine tenses corresponding to the nine possible combinations of time and aspect. In fact, Latin has only six tenses in the indicative mood. Three Latin tenses have two possible combinations of time and aspect. A list of the six tenses of the indicative mood and their times and aspects follows, with sample English translations for each.

1. **Present:** reports an action in *present* time with either *simple* or *progressive/repeated* aspect. (She thinks. She is thinking. She thinks [every day/often/repeatedly].)
2. **Imperfect:** reports an action in *past* time with *progressive/repeated* aspect. (She was thinking. She used to think. She thought [every day/often/repeatedly].)
3. **Future:** reports an action in *future* time with either *simple* or *progressive/repeated* aspect. (She will think. She will be thinking. She will think [every day/often/repeatedly].)
4. **Perfect:**
 - a. reports an action in *present* time with *completed* aspect. (She has thought.)
 - or b. reports an action in *past* time with *simple* aspect. (She thought.)
5. **Pluperfect:** reports an action in *past* time with *completed* aspect. (She had thought.)
6. **Future Perfect:** reports an action in *future* time with *completed* aspect. (She will have thought.)

The chart below shows these six tenses arranged according to time and aspect with a sample verb showing the corresponding tense in English:

The Six Latin Tenses of the Indicative Mood			
A S P E C T			
T	Simple	Progressive/Repeated	Completed
I	Present "he sings"	Present "he is singing" "he sings (every day)"	Perfect "he has sung"
	Past "he sang"	Imperfect "he was singing" "he sang (every day)"	Pluperfect "he had sung"
M	Future "he will sing"	Future "he will be singing" "he will sing (every day)"	Future perfect "he will have sung"

OBSERVATIONS

1. The present indicative and the future indicative have both simple aspect and progressive/repeated aspect. Be flexible when considering how to translate these tenses. Context helps to determine the appropriate translation.
2. The perfect tense is unique among the indicative tenses in that it refers to *two different times* with *two different aspects* (present completed or past simple). Context helps to determine the appropriate translation, but always consider *both* possibilities.

☛ DRILL 5-6 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§7. The Vocabulary Entry for a Verb: Principal Parts

The full vocabulary entry for a verb contains four **principal parts** and English meanings for the verb. The four principal parts are the *given elements* from which all the forms of a Latin verb are created. For example:

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus move

Principal Part		
1. moveō	first person sing. present active indicative	"I move"
2. movēre	present active infinitive	"to move"
3. mōvī	first person sing. perfect active indicative	"I moved; I have moved"
4. mōtus	perfect passive participle	"having been moved"

LEARN WHAT EACH PRINCIPAL PART IS AND HOW IT IS TO BE TRANSLATED. ALWAYS MEMORIZE ALL FOUR PRINCIPAL PARTS OF EACH VERB.

6. Latin verbs are named by the first principal part (**moveō, vocō**). By contrast, English verbs are named by the infinitive (to move, to call).

7. An infinitive is a verbal noun with the properties of tense and voice.

8. A participle is a verbal adjective with the properties of tense and voice. As mentioned in the vocabulary note on principal parts (p. 25), the fourth principal part is *usually* but not always the perfect passive participle ending in either -us or -um. Certain verbs that lack perfect passive participles have future active participles as their fourth principal parts, which end in -ūrus.

§8. The Four Conjugations

Latin verbs are grouped in four different families called **conjugations**. Each verb belongs to *one conjugation only*, and each conjugation differs slightly from the others in how it creates certain forms. The four conjugations are distinguished and identified by the vowel preceding the *-re* ending of the *second principal part* (present active infinitive). The following sets of principal parts will serve as examples of the four conjugations:

1st conjugation	-ā-	voco, vocare, vocavi, vocatus call
2nd conjugation	-ē-	moveo, movere, movi, motus move
3rd conjugation	-ē-	rego, regere, rexi, rectus rule
4th conjugation	-ī-	audio, audire, audiui, auditus hear

OBSERVATION

The *-ē-* indicating a second conjugation verb is *long*, but the *-ē-* indicating the third conjugation is *short*.

The finite forms of a Latin verb are created by:

1. taking a stem from one of the principal parts
2. *sometimes* adding an *infix*⁹ that indicates the tense
3. adding *personal endings* that indicate three things: person, number, and voice

When one generates a complete set of forms of a particular tense in Latin, one is said to **conjugate** the verb in that tense, and the resulting set of forms is called a **conjugation** of that tense.¹⁰

Since verbs of the first and second conjugations form the present, imperfect, and future active indicative in the same ways, they are here introduced together.

Finding the Present Stem

For all conjugations the stem for the present, imperfect, and future active indicative is found by removing the *-re* from the *second principal part*. This stem is called the **present stem**. All verb forms made with the present stem when taken together are called the **present system** of the verb. The vowel at the end of this stem is called the **stem vowel**. Thus, for example:

1st:	voco, vocare, vocavi, vocatus call	present stem: voca-
2nd:	moveo, movere, movi, motus move	present stem: movē-

☛ DRILL 7–8 MAY NOW BE DONE.

9. An *infix* (< *infigō*, fasten in) is an inflectional element appearing in the middle of a word.

10. There are thus two meanings for the word “conjugation” 1. the name for each of the four families of verbs (first conjugation, second conjugation, etc.), 2. a complete set of forms for a particular tense of a given verb.

§9. Present, Imperfect, and Future Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

Present Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the present active indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem (by removing the -re from the *second principal part*)
2. add the active personal endings directly to the present stem

The active personal endings are:

Person	Singular	
1	-ō, -m	I
2	-s	you
3	-t	he, she, it
	Plural	
1	-mus	we
2	-tis	you (pl.)
3	-nt	they

OBSERVATIONS

1. The active personal endings are used to form the present, imperfect, and future active indicative. Although two endings are given for the first person singular (-ō, -m) they are not interchangeable. The present active indicative and the future active indicative use -ō. The imperfect active indicative uses -m.
2. The active personal endings will be used to form many tenses and conjugations in Latin. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS AND BE PREPARED TO RECITE THEM QUICKLY

Thus the present active indicative conjugations of, for example, *vocō* and *movēō*, are:

Present Stem	<i>vocō</i>	<i>movēō</i>
Singular		
1	<i>vocō</i>	<i>movēō</i>
2	<i>vocās</i>	<i>movēs</i>
3	<i>vocat</i>	<i>movet</i>
Plural		
1	<i>vocāmus</i>	<i>movēmus</i>
2	<i>vocātis</i>	<i>movētis</i>
3	<i>vocant</i>	<i>movent</i>

OBSERVATIONS

1. The present active indicative of first- and second-conjugation verbs has no infix to mark tense. The personal endings are added directly to the present stem.
2. In the first person singular form of all first-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel -ā- contracts with the -ō of the ending (**vocāō* > *vocō*).¹¹ THE FIRST PERSON SINGULAR FORM IS THE FIRST PRINCIPAL PART AND MUST BE MEMORIZED.
3. In the first person singular form of all second-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel -ē- shortens before the -ō of the ending (**movēō* > *movēō*). THE FIRST PERSON SINGULAR FORM IS THE FIRST PRINCIPAL PART AND MUST BE MEMORIZED.

¹¹ The symbol > means "becomes."

4. In the third person singular and plural of both first- and second-conjugation verbs, the stem vowels (-ā- and -ē- respectively) shorten before the endings -t and -nt. A long vowel always shortens when it immediately precedes these two endings. The shortening of long vowels before certain final consonants is referred to in this book as the long vowel rule.

5. Although there *are* words in Latin for the personal pronouns "I," "you," etc., these are regularly omitted when they are the subjects of verbs. THE ACTIVE PERSONAL ENDINGS SUPPLY THE SUBJECTS, AND SO THESE PRONOUNS ARE NOT REQUIRED. In the third person singular, if no subject is expressed, the appropriate pronoun (he, she, or it) must be determined from context. If the subject is expressed, no pronoun should be supplied. Compare, for example:

ambulat	he, she, or it walks
poeta ambulat	the poet walks

6. The English translations for the present-tense forms given above have simple aspect. Because the present tense also has progressive/repeated aspect, alternate translations are possible: "I am calling," "I call (repeatedly)," etc.

Imperfect Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the imperfect active indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem (by removing the -re from the *second principal part*)
2. add the *infix* for the imperfect active indicative: -ba-
3. add the *active personal endings* (use -m for first person singular)

Thus the imperfect active indicative conjugations of, for example, vocō and movēō are:

Present Stem	voca-		move-	
Infix	-ba-		-ba-	
Singular				
1	vocabam	I was calling	movebam	I was moving
2	vocabas	you were calling	movebas	you were moving
3	vocabat	he, she, it was calling	movebat	he, she, it was moving
Plural				
1	vocabamus	we were calling	movebamus	we were moving
2	vocabatis	you (pl.) were calling	movebatis	you (pl.) were moving
3	vocabant	they were calling	movebant	they were moving

OBSERVATIONS

1. Long vowels shorten before the first person singular ending -m, as they do before the endings -t and -nt. Hence the long vowel rule is:

THE ENDINGS -M, -T, AND -NT SHORTEN PRECEDING LONG VOWELS.

2. The English translations for the imperfect tense forms given above have progressive aspect. Because the imperfect tense also has repeated aspect, alternate translations are possible: "I used to call," "I called (repeatedly)," etc.

Future Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the future active indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem (by removing the *-re* from the *second principal part*)
2. add the *infix* for the future active indicative: *-bi-*
3. add the *active personal endings* (use *-ō* for first person singular)

Thus the future active indicative conjugations of, for example, *vocō* and *moveō* are:

Present Stem:		voca-		move-
Infix:		-bi-		-bi-
Singular				
1	vocabo	I shall call	movebo	I shall move
2	vocabis	you will call	movebis	you will move
3	vocabit	he, she, it will call	movebit	he, she, it will move
Plural				
1	vocabimus	we shall call	movebimus	we shall move
2	vocabitis	you (pl.) will call	movebitis	you (pl.) will move
3	vocabunt	they will call	movebunt	they will move

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular, the *-i-* of the infix *-bi-* contracts with the ending *-ō* to give the resulting form (**vocābiō* > *vocābō*; **movēbiō* > *movēbō*). MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION TO THE RULES FOR FORMING THE FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE.
2. In the third person plural, the *-i-* of the infix *-bi-* changes to *-u-*. The *-u-* is a linguistic remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural and is thus an exception to the rules for forming the future active indicative. MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.
3. The English translations for the future tense forms given above have simple aspect. Because the future tense also has progressive/repeated aspect, alternate translations are possible: "I shall be calling," "I shall call (repeatedly)" etc.

☛ DRILL 9 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§10. Present, Imperfect, and Future Active Indicative of the Irregular Verbs *sum* and *possum*

The verb *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*,¹² "be, exist," and the verb *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*, —, "be able, can," are irregular verbs. An **irregular verb** is a verb that does *not* belong to any of the four conjugations. ***Sum* and *possum* have irregular forms in the present, imperfect, and future active indicative. The conjugations of these three tenses of these verbs are presented below. MEMORIZE THESE FORMS.**

¹² The fourth principal part of most verbs is the perfect passive participle (see §7). However, the fourth principal of *sum*—*futūrus*—is a future active participle and is translated "about to be."

Present Active Indicative of <i>sum</i> and <i>possum</i>				
Singular				
1	<i>sum</i>	I am	<i>possum</i>	I am able
2	<i>es</i>	you are	<i>potes</i>	you are able
3	<i>est</i>	he, she, it is	<i>potest</i>	he, she, it is able
Plural				
1	<i>sumus</i>	we are	<i>possumus</i>	we are able
2	<i>estis</i>	you (pl.) are	<i>potestis</i>	you (pl.) are able
3	<i>sunt</i>	they are	<i>possunt</i>	they are able

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the present active indicative, the stem of *sum* shifts between *s-* (first person singular and plural, third person plural) and *es-* (second person singular and plural, third person singular). The active personal endings are familiar: *-m*, *-i*, *-t*, *-mus*, *-tis*, *-nt*.
2. The verb *possum* is in origin a combination of the Latin adjective *potis* or *pote* (able) and the verb *sum*. The adjective appears as a prefix: either *pos-* (added to forms of *sum* beginning with *s-*) or *pot-* (added to forms of *sum* beginning with *e-*).

Imperfect Active Indicative of <i>sum</i> and <i>possum</i>				
Singular				
1	<i>eram</i>	I was	<i>poteram</i>	I was able
2	<i>erās</i>	you were	<i>poterās</i>	you were able
3	<i>erat</i>	he, she, it was	<i>poterat</i>	he, she, it was able
Plural				
1	<i>erāmus</i>	we were	<i>poterāmus</i>	we were able
2	<i>erātis</i>	you (pl.) were	<i>poterātis</i>	you (pl.) were able
3	<i>erant</i>	they were	<i>poterant</i>	they were able

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the imperfect active indicative, the stem of *sum* is *erā-*.¹³ The stem vowel *-ā-* in the first person singular, third person singular, and third person plural shortens according to the long vowel rule. Compare this stem vowel (*-ā-*) with the sign of the imperfect active indicative for first- and second-conjugation verbs (*-ā-*).
2. Since the stem of *sum* in the imperfect active indicative begins with *e-*, the prefix *pot-* is used throughout the imperfect active indicative conjugation of *possum*.
3. A strict English translation of the verb *sum* in the imperfect tense with progressive aspect would be "I was (being)," "you were (being)," etc. However, the English past tense is regularly used in contexts that makes this progressive aspect clear. For example, in the phrase "when I was a girl," the state of being a girl is understood to have occurred over time. Thus the past tense in English may express progressive aspect.

13. *erā-* was derived by the addition of *-ā-* to the original stem **es-*. Whenever the single letter **s-* appeared between vowels in Latin it changed to *-r-*. This sound change is called *rhotacism* (< the Greek letter rho) and is thought to have occurred in the fifth and fourth centuries B.C.E.

Future-Active Indicative of *sum* and *possum*

Singular				
1	ero	I shall be	potero	I shall be able
2	eris	you will be	poteris	you will be able
3	erit	he, she, it will be	poterit	he, she, it will be able
Plural				
1	erimus	we shall be	poterimus	we shall be able
2	eritis	you (pl.) will be	poteritis	you (pl.) will be able
3	erunt	they will be	poterunt	they will be able

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the future active indicative, the stem of *sum* is *eri-*.¹⁴ Compare this stem vowel (-i-) with the sign of the future active indicative for first- and second-conjugation verbs (-bi-). In the first person singular, the stem vowel -i- contracts with the -ō of the ending (*erō > erō). In the third person plural, the -i- changes to a -u-, a linguistic remnant of an earlier form. Compare the third person plurals of the future active indicative conjugation of first- and second-conjugation verbs.
2. Since the stem of *sum* in the future active indicative begins with *e-*, the prefix *pot-* is used throughout the future active indicative conjugation of *possum*.

The Two Meanings of the Verb *sum*

The two meanings given for the verb *sum*, "be, exist," must be carefully distinguished. For example:

<i>Rēgīna est filia deae.</i>	The queen is the daughter of a goddess.
<i>Est rēgīna in insulā.</i>	A queen exists on the island.
	<i>There is a queen on the island.</i>

In the first sentence, *est* is a copulative or linking verb. It equates the subject (*rēgīna*, queen) with a Predicate Nominative (*filia*, daughter). When *sum* is used as a copulative verb, it is usually placed between the subject and the Predicate Nominative.

In the second sentence, *est* is *not* a copulative verb. It simply states that the subject (*rēgīna*, queen) *exists*. When *sum* is not copulative, it asserts the existence of the subject and often (though not always) precedes the subject. It is convenient to translate this use of *sum* with the English word "there" and the appropriate form of the verb "be" (as in the second translation offered above ["there is"]). Although "there" comes first in the translation, it is *not* the subject; it is the "queen" who exists.¹⁵

✿ DRILL 10 MAY NOW BE DONE.

14. *eri-* was derived by the addition of -i- to the original stem *-es- and, by rhotacism, the intervocalic -s- changed to an -r-.

15. The word "there" in this usage is called an *expletive* (< *expleō*, fill out). It stands in place of and anticipates the actual subject.

§11. Distinguishing Transitive and Intransitive Verbs

A **transitive verb** expresses an action that is directly exerted on a person or thing. The person or thing receiving the action is the direct object (see §1). For example:

The dog *catches* the ball.
She *was sending* a package.

The verbs in these sentences ("catches" and "was sending") are *transitive* (< *trānseō*, go across). The direct objects in these sentences, "ball" and "package," would be expressed in Latin in the accusative case.

Many transitive verbs, such as "catches" and "was sending," *require direct objects to complete their meanings*. Many transitive verbs, however, may be used **absolutely**; that is, they may occur without an expressed direct object. For example, to the question "What are you doing?" the response "I am writing" could be considered complete, although a direct object (book, some letters) is implied.

An **intransitive verb** expresses an action that is not directly exerted on a person or thing. It cannot take a direct object. For example:

He *stands* on the corner
I *shall go* home

Two important types of intransitive verbs are *copulative verbs*¹⁶ and *verbs that express motion* (go, come, etc.). The actions of the verbs in these sentences are not exerted on direct objects. In the second sentence, the adverb "home" (= homeward) is *not* a direct object since the action of "shall go" is not exerted upon "home."

For the most part, verbs that are transitive in English are transitive in Latin. However, there are several important exceptions. These are indicated in the vocabulary lists and notes.

■ DRILL 11 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§12. Complementary Infinitive

The **infinitive** is an *abstract verbal noun* in the *neuter singular*. It is **indeclinable**; that is, although it is a noun, it does *not* have case endings, and it has *limited syntactic functions*. The infinitive has the verbal properties of tense (present, perfect, or future) and voice (active or passive).¹⁷ As noted in §7, the second principal part of every verb is the present active infinitive and is regularly translated "to _____." For example: *movēre*, "to move."

16. For a definition of *copulative verbs* see §1

17. An infinitive (< *infinitivus*, not limited) is a verb form that is *not limited* by person and number.

The infinitive may be used to *complete* the meaning of another verb. Such an infinitive is called a **Complementary Infinitive** (< compleō, fill out). For example:

<i>Insulam vidēre possum.</i>	The island (d.o.) to see I am able. I am able to see the island.
<i>Laborāre debemus.</i>	To work we ought. We ought to work.

The syntax of each italicized word (*vidēre*, *laborāre*) is **Complementary Infinitive**.

OBSERVATION

In the first sentence the verbal idea begun with "I am able" is completed by the infinitive "to see"; the infinitive specifies *what* the subject of *possum* is able to do. Similarly, in the second sentence the verbal idea begun with "we ought" is completed by the infinitive "to work"; the infinitive specifies *what* the subject of *debemus* ought to do. Verbs that can take a Complementary Infinitive, such as *possum* and *debeō*, are identified in the vocabulary notes.

§13. Object Infinitive

The infinitive may be used as the *direct object* of another verb. Such an infinitive is called an **Object Infinitive**. For example:

<i>Agricola laborāre optat.</i>	The farmer to work desires. The farmer desires to work.
---------------------------------	--

The syntax of the italicized word (*laborāre*) is **Object Infinitive**.

OBSERVATION

The Object Infinitive may be understood as a variety of Complementary Infinitive. The infinitive *laborāre* in the sentence above both is the direct object of *optat* and serves to complete the verbal idea begun with *optat*.

§14. Dative of the Possessor

The dative case may be used to indicate the *person who possesses* something. This use is an extension of the case's referential function, and a dative so used is called the **Dative of the Possessor**.¹⁸ For example:

<i>Domino est liber.</i>	To the master there is a book. The master has a book.
<i>Erat feminis consilium.</i>	There was to the women a plan. The women had a plan.

The syntax of each italicized word (*domino*, *femimis*) is **Dative of the Possessor**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In a sentence containing a Dative of the Possessor, the noun *possessed* appears in the nominative case as the *subject* of a form of the verb *sum*. The verb asserts the existence of the noun in the nominative case with reference to the person in the dative case.

18. The Dative of the Possessor is also known as the Dative of Possession.

2. The translations of these sentences move from the more to the less literal. In the less literal translation, the Dative of the Possessor becomes in English the subject of the verb "have," and the nominative of the thing possessed becomes the direct object.
3. The Dative of the Possessor is *always* a person.

Expressions of Possession Compared

In addition to the Dative of the Possessor, Latin may report that someone possesses something in two other ways: with the verb *habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus*, "have, hold; consider" and with the Genitive of Possession (see §1). Although these three constructions differ slightly in emphasis, the differences cannot always be represented in English translations. For example:

Dominus librum habet.	The master a book (d.o.) has. The master has a book.
Dominō est liber.	To the master there is a book. The master has a book.
Liber est dominī.	The book is of the master. The book is the master's.

The sentence **Dominus librum habet** is a neutral statement of ownership, in which equal stress is given to both possessor and thing possessed.

In the sentence **Dominō est liber** (Dative of the Possessor), the thing possessed receives slightly greater stress because it is the subject of the sentence. A sentence with a Dative of the Possessor asserts *both* the existence of the thing possessed *and* possession by the person in the dative.

In the sentence **Liber est dominī**, the Genitive of Possession in the predicate lays stress on the possessor. The existence of the thing possessed is assumed, and the sentence asserts only its possession by the person in the genitive.

The first two sentences answer the question "What does the master have?" The third answers the question "Whose is the book?"

§15. Introduction to the Latin Sentence and Prose Word Order

Like any language, Latin seeks to be understood, and its aim is most often toward clarity. A sentence of Latin prose is not a puzzle to be figured out and not an ill-arranged version of English in a foreign tongue. Although it is rarely the same as the order of an English sentence with equivalent meaning, the word order of a Latin sentence is important and joins with the words themselves to convey the writer's precise meaning. The same may be said of English, but because English words have far fewer inflectional endings than Latin words, fewer orders are available for conveying a particular meaning. In the sentence "The girl loves the boy," "girl" is understood as the subject of the verb because it appears *before* the verb, and "boy" is understood as the direct object because it appears *after* the verb.

A greater degree of inflection of its nouns and verbs allows Latin a more flexible

word order than is possible in English. The same sentence (The girl loves the boy) could theoretically be written in Latin in six different orders. The three words *puella*, *puerum*, and *amat* could appear in any order, and basic syntax and meaning would be clear from the particular inflectional ending on each word.

Meaning may thus be conveyed by a variety of orders, but the determining factors in the order of a Latin sentence are **emphasis**, **balance**, and **economy**.

EMPHASIS—The two most important places in a Latin sentence are the beginning (first word) and the end (last word).¹⁹ If no special emphasis is given to any element of a sentence, the subject and the verb—the most important syntactic elements of a sentence—normally occupy these positions, the subject first and the verb last. The other elements of a sentence (e.g., direct object, indirect object, prepositional phrases) appear between the subject and the verb. This unemphatic Latin word order may be called **neutral** because although it contains two important positions (first and last), no special emphasis is placed on the words that occupy these positions.

When neutral order is *not* followed, the words in the first and last positions often receive special emphasis. For example:

<i>Regina nautis dona dat.</i> (neutral word order)	The queen to the sailors gifts (d.o.) is giving. The queen is giving gifts to the sailors.
<i>Dōna regina nautis dat.</i> (<i>dōna</i> emphasized)	Gifts (d.o.) the queen to the sailors is giving. The queen is giving gifts to the sailors.

The second sentence violates neutral word order by placing the direct object first, ahead of the subject. Thus *dōna* receives additional emphasis.²⁰ However, in the sentence *Dōna nautis dat* (She gives gifts to the sailors), *no additional emphasis* is placed on *dōna* because no subject expressed in the nominative case has been moved from its normal position at the beginning of the sentence.

BALANCE—Latin sentences often exhibit symmetrical arrangements and thereby achieve a kind of balance. For example, the placing of subject first and verb last gives equal weight to the beginning and end of a sentence. The use of conjunctions that signal parallelism such as *et . . . et . . .* also contributes to an impression of balance.

Latin writers often achieve *balance between contrasting phrases* by arranging grammatical elements in *parallel* sequence:

<i>Regina et gladios nautis et dōna incolis dat.</i> A B A B	The queen both swords (d.o.) to the sailors and gifts (d.o.) to the inhabitants gives. The queen gives both swords to the sailors and gifts to the inhabitants.
--	--

In this sentence the accusatives (*gladios* and *dōna*) and the datives (*nautis* and *incolis*) are placed in a parallel ABAB arrangement.

¹⁹ The observations made here regarding the Latin sentence apply as well to Latin phrases and clauses.

²⁰ Such emphasis is often hard to convey in an English translation, but stressing or italicizing the emphasized word(s) is sometimes effective.

Equally common is the arrangement of grammatical elements in inverted sequence:

Regina et gladiōs nautīs et incolīs dōna dat.

A B B A

The queen both sword(d.o.) to the sailors and to the inhabitants gifts (d.o.) gives.
The queen gives both swords to the sailors and to the inhabitants gift.

In this sentence a grammatical sequence (accusative, dative) is reversed the second time it appears (dative, accusative). In this way, the contrasting parts of the sentence (*gladiōs nautīs* and *incolīs dōna*) are balanced against each other. This ABBA, or inverted, arrangement is the rhetorical device *chiasmus* (< Greek letter *chi* [χ], in which the lines are crossed).

ECONOMY—Consider the following Latin phrase and its English translation:

librum poetæ the book (d.o.) of the poet

Because Latin has inflectional endings for its nouns and because Latin lacks a definite article (the), five words and a notation about syntax are required in English to translate what Latin expresses in two. This comparison gives some indication of the *natural economy* of the Latin language.

In general, Latin writers use all the syntactic features of the language to express ideas in the shortest and clearest way. A common feature of Latin writing is called *ellipsis*, the omission of one or more words that can easily be supplied from context. For example:

Nautæ donum regina dat, poetæ librum.

To the sailor a gift (d.o.) the queen gives, to the poet a book (d.o.).

The queen gives to the sailor a gift, [the queen gives] to the poet a book.

In this sentence a grammatical sequence is set forth in the first clause (dative, accusative, nominative, verb). This pattern is then repeated in the second clause (dative, accusative), but the syntactic elements *common* to the two clauses (subject, verb) are omitted: *only the changed elements are expressed*. That is, the reader is expected to supply *rēgina dat* to complete the second clause.

Latin sentences that contain ellipses of this kind may seem to exhibit a quality that is the very opposite of balance since one clause is longer and contains more grammatical elements than the other. However, the ready comprehension of a sentence with ellipsis is only possible because of an underlying sense of symmetry, a predisposition to make the parts of a sentence as balanced as possible.

Often grammatically shared elements are *distributed between* two balanced clauses. For example:

Pueri nautās in viā, in agrō agricolās vident.

The boys-sailors (d.o.) in the street, in the field farmers (d.o.) see.

The boys [see] sailors in the street; [the boys] see farmers in the field.

The subject and verb, placed first and last, are common to both clauses. Ellipses of this kind create clauses and sentences that exhibit both balance (in length) and economy (in words)

Guidelines for Reading and Translating Latin Sentences

Reading Latin means comprehending Latin in Latin. *English does not play a part in reading Latin*, but an important stage on the way to achieving reading ability in Latin is the translating of many Latin sentences and larger texts into English. Translation should usually be as literal as possible because the English rendering should replicate as closely as possible the Latin original. Literal translation allows student and teacher to be sure that the Latin text is being understood in the same way, particularly with reference to syntax. Moreover, literal translation trains the student to think in the syntactic patterns of Latin and thereby to achieve true *reading* proficiency more quickly. The following guidelines will help develop good habits for both translating and reading.

1. WHEN TRANSLATING A LATIN SENTENCE, GO IN ORDER FROM LEFT TO RIGHT. First translate in Latin word order, then give a second version, making minimum necessary changes for clear English. Going in order makes it possible to:
 - a. note and appreciate nuances of meaning signaled by particular word orders;
 - b. give correct sense when ambiguities arise;
 - c. most important, *read and understand Latin as it was written*.
2. IF NO NEW NOMINATIVE SUBJECT IS EXPRESSED, ASSUME THAT THE SUBJECT IS THE SAME AS THE SUBJECT OF THE PRECEDING SENTENCE.
3. MAJOR GRAMMATICAL ELEMENTS (SUBJECT INDIRECT OBJECT, DIRECT OBJECT), PARTICULARLY THOSE REFERRING TO *PEOPLE* RATHER THAN *THINGS*, TEND TO BE PLACED AT OR NEAR THE BEGINNING OF A SENTENCE.
4. GENITIVES ARE REGULARLY PLACED AFTER THE NOUNS THEY QUALIFY OR LIMIT.
5. ADVERBIAL ELEMENTS (ADVERBS, ADVERBIAL PHRASES) ARE REGULARLY PLACED BEFORE THE VERBS OR OTHER WORDS THEY MODIFY.
6. IN QUESTIONS, VERBS TEND TO BE PLACED FIRST
7. COPULATIVE VERBS ARE GENERALLY PLACED BETWEEN SUBJECTS AND PREDICATE NOMINATIVES OR PREDICATE ADJECTIVES, BOTH OF WHICH TEND TO COME FIRST IN SENTENCES OR CLAUSES.
8. WHEN SUM MEANS "EXIST," IT TENDS TO COME BEFORE ITS SUBJECT AND OFTEN FIRST IN A SENTENCE.
9. POSTPOSITIVE WORDS APPEAR IN THE SECOND OR THIRD POSITION IN A SENTENCE. A postpositive word is a conjunction that does not appear first in a sentence, but, because it connects two sentences and indicates the logical relation between them, it is usually translated first.

☛ DRILL 12–15 MAY NOW BE DONE.

Short Readings

1. A clever slave, Davus, is pretending not to understand his master's plan to stop his son's marriage.

Davo' sum, nōn Oedipus. (TERENCE, *ANDRIA* 194)

Davus, Davi m. Davus; **Davo' = Davos**, archaic nom. sing. for Davus
Oedipus, Oedipi m. Oedipus, who solved the riddle of the Sphinx

2. A remark attributed to Herodes Atticus (an Athenian who became a Roman consul in 107 c.e.) when he responded to a man attempting to appear to be what he was not
videō barbam et pallium; philosophum nōndum videō.

(AULUS GELLIUS, *NOCTES ATTICAE* IX.2.4)

barba, barbae f. beard

nōndum {adv.} not yet

pallium, pallii n. cloak

philosophus, philosophi m. philosopher

§16. Names in Latin I

Like any noun, each proper name in Latin belongs to a particular declension and is declined using the endings of that declension. For example:

Rōmulus, Rōmulī m. Romulus, legendary founder of Rome
Remus, Remī m. Remus, brother of Romulus

While legendary and fictional characters often had one name, a Roman man regularly had three names: a *praenōmen* (name in front), a *nōmen* (name), and a *cognōmen* (additional name).¹ For example:

Lūcius Cornēlius Sulla, Lūcī Cornēliī Sullae m. Lucius Cornelius Sulla
praenōmen nōmen cognōmen

The *praenōmen* was the name for an individual and is equivalent to a first name in English. The *nōmen* was the name of the *gēns* (clan or group of families) to which a person belonged and is equivalent to a last name. The *cognōmen* often indicated a particular family or a smaller group of families within the *gens*. In the example above, **Lūcius** is a first name, **Cornēlius** is the name of the clan to which he belongs, and **Sulla** a particular family within that clan.² A Roman might be addressed by his *praenōmen* alone or by a combination of his *praenomen* and *nōmen* (e.g., **Lūcī** or **Lūcī Cornēli**). A Roman might also be addressed by his *cognōmen* alone (e.g., **Sulla**).

There are very few *praenōmina* in common use in Latin, and they are often abbreviated. The most common *praenōmina* and their abbreviations are:

A	Aulus, Aulī m. Aulus	P	Publius, Publī m. Publius
App	Appius, Appi m. Appius	Q	Quintus, Quintī m. Quintus
C	Gaius, Gai m. Gaius	Sex	Sextus, Sextī m. Sextus
Cn	Gnaeus, Gnaei m. Gnaeus	Ser	Servius, Servi m. Servius
D	Decimus, Decimī m. Decimus	Sp	Spurius, Spuri m. Spurius
L	Lūcius, Lūcī m. Lūcius	T	Titus, Titī m. Titus
M	Marcus, Marci m. Marcus	Ti	Tiberius, Tiberī m. Tiberius
M'	Manius, Mani m. Manius		

1. The plurals of *praenōmen*, *nōmen*, and *cognōmen* are *praenōmina*, *nōmina*, and *cognōmina*.

2. Sometimes the *cognōmen* was based on some attribute of an old member of a family. An early hero of Rome, for example, Gaius Mūcius, earned the *cognōmen* *Scaevola* (Lefty) because when he was captured in the camp of an enemy king, he defiantly burned his right hand to demonstrate the stubborn will of the Roman people. The name Mūcius Scaevola then passed on to his descendants. The origins of many *cognōmina*, however, are unknown.

3. A capital C is in origin a form of the Greek letter *gamma*. In the abbreviations C, and Cn, it still represents a sound equivalent to English and Latin G.

4. Gaius is pronounced as if it were spelled *Gaius. The first -i- combines with the preceding vowel to create a diphthong, -ai-, which is pronounced exactly the same as -ae-. The second -i- is *consonantal* and is thus pronounced like English -y-. Only one -i- is written in the genitive and vocative singular forms, but they are pronounced as if they were spelled *Gaii (with a consonantal and a vocalic i)

OBSERVATION

All these *praenōmina* belong to the second declension and decline regularly using the case endings of that declension

A Roman woman had only a single name, and this was derived from the name of the *gens* to which she belonged. The Roman writer Cicero, for example, had the *nomen* Tullius. His daughter was therefore named Tullia, Tulliae f. If Cicero had had several daughters, a numerical adjective might have been used to distinguish one from another (e.g., Tertia [third] = Tullia Tertia, [the] Third Tullia).

The following is a list of names that belong to the first or second declension. These names and the names above will be used in the sentences throughout this book. FAMILIARIZE YOURSELF WITH THESE NAMES AND BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE THEM AS THEY OCCUR. When translating proper names into English, always give the nominative form of the name. For example, Marcō librum dabō, "I shall give a book to Marcus."

Historians and Poets

Cornēlius Tacitus, Cornēlii Tacitī m. Cornelius Tacitus (Tacitus) (see p. 175)

Q. Horātius Flaccus, Q. Horātiū Flacci m. Quintus Horatius Flaccus (Horace) (see p. 172)

C. Sallustius Crispus, C. Sallustiū Crispi m. Gaius Sallustius Crispus (Sallust) (see p. 167)

C. Valerius Catullus, C. Valeriū Catulli m. Gaius Valerius Catullus (Catullus) (see p. 202)

Historical and Legendary Figures⁵

Aenēās, Aenēae m. Aeneas; Aenēās = acc. sing.; Aenēā = voc. sing.⁶

M. Antōnius, M. Antōniū m. Marcus Antonius (Marc Antony)

L. Cornēlius Sulla, L. Cornēlii Sullae m. Lucius Cornelius Sulla (Sulla)

M. Licinius Crassus, M. Liciniū Crassi m. Marcus Licinius Crassus (Crassus)

Cn. Pompeius Magnus, Cn. Pompeiū Magni m. Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus (Pompey the Great)

Ti. Semprōnius Gracchus, Ti. Semprōniū Gracchi m. Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus

C. Semprōnius Gracchus, C. Semprōniū Gracchi m. Gaius Sempronius Gracchus

L. Sergius Catilina, L. Sergiū Catilinae m. Lucius Sergius Catilina (Catiline)

⁵ Aeneas is the legendary Trojan son of Venus and the subject of Vergil's epic poem the *Aeneid*. The Gracchi, as the two brothers Tiberius and Gaius are often called, were prominent in the political struggles at the end of the second century B.C.E. Each was murdered by members of the senatorial class after attempting to introduce various legal reforms. Sulla was a successful general and conservative politician of the late second and early first centuries B.C.E. In 63 B.C.E., Catiline led a conspiracy of dissatisfied nobles and debtors that was suppressed by Cicero when he was consul. Crassus, Pompey (who chose the *cognomen* "Great" for himself), and Julius Caesar were the three most powerful men in Rome in the middle of the first century B.C.E. Together they made up what is referred to as the "First Triumvirate." Octavian, Caesar's adopted son, and Antony, Caesar's right-hand man, spent the years following Caesar's death in 44 B.C.E. fighting over Caesar's legacy. Octavian defeated Antony in 31 and shortly after took the title Augustus and was established as Rome's first emperor.

⁶ Aenēās is a first declension noun with an irregular nominative singular (Aenēās).

Famous Women⁷

Iūlia, Iūliae *f.* Julia

Livia, Liviae *f.* Livia

Place Names

Graecia, Graeciae *f.* Greece

Ilium, Ilii *n.* Ilium, Troy

Troia, Troiae *f.* Troy

⁷ Livia was Augustus's wife. Julia is the name of both the daughter and the granddaughter of Augustus, each notorious.

CHAPTER III

Vocabulary

- diligentia, diligentiae** *f.* diligence, attentiveness
- **incola, incolae** *m.* or *f.* inhabitant
mora, morae *f.* delay
- **prōvincia, prōvinciae** *f.* province
terra, terrae *f.* land, earth
- **amicus, amīci** *m.* friend
- **forum, forī** *n.* public square, market place, forum
- **imperium, imperiī** *n.* power authority, command; empire
- **inimicus, inimīci** *m.* (personal) enemy
odium, odiī *n.* hatred
- **populus, populī** *m.* (the) people; populace
- **Rōmāni, Rōmānōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Romans
- **nihil** or **nil** (indeclinable noun) *n.* nothing
- laudō** (1-tr.) praise
- **pugno** (1-intr.) fight
superō (1-tr.) overcome, conquer; surpass
- **teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus** hold, grasp; keep, possess; occupy
videō, vidēre, vidi, visus in *passive*, be seen; seem (§25)
- eō, ire, īi** or **ivī, itum** go (§29)
- **amicus, -a, -um** friendly (+ dat.)
 ➤ **inimicus, -a, -um** unfriendly, hostile (+ dat.)
- bonus, -a, -um** good
- **laetus, -a, -um** happy
- **liber, libera, liberum** free
- **magnus, -a, -um** large, big; great
- malus, -a, -um** bad, evil
- miser, misera, miserum** wretched, pitiable, miserable
- multus, -a, -um** much, many
- parvus, -a, -um** small, little
- **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum** beautiful, handsome
- Rōmānus, -a, -um** Roman
- ā, ab** (prep. + abl.) by (§24)
- **atque** or **ac** (conj.) and (what's more)
- **mox** (adv.) soon; then
- nunc** (adv.) now
- **prō** (prep. + abl.) in front of; on behalf of, for; in return for, instead of
- propter** (prep. + acc.) on account of, because of
- semper** (adv.) always
- sine** (prep. + abl.) without

Vocabulary Notes

incola, incolae m. or *f.* may be either masculine or feminine, although it is much more often masculine. Nouns that may be either gender are said to be common gender; in this book, they will always be indicated by the notation *m.* or *f.*

prōvincia, prōvinciae f. is the term applied to a legally defined territory outside of Italy that had been acquired by the Romans and made part of their *imperium*. The first Roman province was *Sicilia*. *Siciliae f.* Sicily. *amicus, amici m.* and *inimicus, inimici m.* are substantives of the adjectives *amicus, -a, -um* and *inimicus, -a, -um* (see §19). These and certain other substantives require their own vocabulary entries. MEMORIZE SUBSTANTIVES AS VOCABULARY ENTRIES INDEPENDENT OF THEIR RESPECTIVE ADJECTIVES OF ORIGIN.

forum, fori n. refers to the center of a town where business, politics, entertainment and public life take place. The Roman forum (*Forum Rōmānum*) housed the law courts and many major temples.

imperium, imperii n. may mean simply a "command," "order," or the "authority" that a person in power has to give a command. When a Roman general or legate was sent to a province in order to govern, he was given *imperium*—that is "power" or "authority" over that province. By extension from these specific cases the word came to mean "supreme power" and finally, in the Imperial period, it came to be the word used to describe the "empire."

inimicus is used to designate a "personal enemy" as opposed to a public or political enemy.

populus, populi m. is a collective noun, a noun that denotes a collection of persons regarded as a single entity. If it is used in the plural, it refers to several peoples.

Populus Rōmānus nōn timet. The Roman populace is not afraid (people are not afraid).
Dī populos Italiae amant. The gods love the peoples (populaces) of Italy.

Rōmāni, Rōmānorum m. pl. is a substantive of the adjective *Rōmānus, -a, -um*. Although *Rōmāni* is masculine, it may refer to a group of mixed gender.

nihil is an indeclinable neuter singular noun. A noun that is indeclinable lacks case endings and has only one form. *Nihil* may perform only the functions of the nominative or the accusative case.

nīl is a contracted form of *nihil*. The *-h-* has dropped out, and the two *-i-*'s have contracted into one *-i-*.

pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātum is an intransitive verb. It often takes an Ablative of Accompaniment that indicates the person *against* whom one is fighting.

Nautae cum agricolis pugnant. The sailors are fighting with (= against) the farmers.

teneo, tenere, tenui, tentus may mean "hold" something in one's hands or "grasp" something with one's intellect. It has an accessory idea of maintaining possession of something once held or grasped. It may also mean "occupy" in the sense of holding to one's place of habitation.

Adjectives

Most first-second-declension adjectives have masculine, feminine, and neuter singular nominative forms that follow exactly the pattern of *amicus, amica, amicum*. Thus they are given in the vocabulary list in a shortened form (e.g., *inimicus, -a, -um*). However, when learning new adjectives, ALWAYS WRITE OUT ADJECTIVE ENTRIES IN FULL (e.g., *inimicus, inimica, inimicum*). Adjectives that do *not* follow this pattern are written out in full in the vocabulary lists.

Both *amicus, -a, -um* and *inimicus, -a, -um* are often found with a Dative of Reference that indicates the person to whom someone is friendly or unfriendly. The dative is often found between the adjective and the noun that it modifies.

Regina amica donum donat. The friendly queen is giving a gift.
Regina animam pueri inimicam habet. The queen has a soul-foe for a son.

inimicus, -a, -um is a compound adjective formed by the addition of the prefix *in-*^[2] (not) to *amicus*. (For the prefix *in-*^[2] see Appendix P.)

The most common meaning for *laetus, -a, -um* in all periods of Latin literature is "happy," but when it describes plants, crops, etc., it may mean "flourishing" or "luxuriant." The same word is used metaphorically of literary or oratorical style, in which context its closest English equivalents are "rich" or "luxuriant." When it describes omens or weather, *laetus* often carries the notion of "favorable" or "propitious."

Laeti sunt nautae. The sailors are happy.
Agros laetos agricolae vident. I see the flourishing fields of the farmer.

liber, libera, liberum means "free" both in a general sense (unrestrained, open) and in a social sense (free as opposed to enslaved). **Liberi, liberorum** *m. pl.* is a substantive of the adjective **liber libera, liberum** and means "children." In classical Latin, it is regularly used *only* in contexts where there is reference made to parents.

magnus, -a, -um has a quantitative sense (big, large) and a qualitative sense (great).

Remember that the stem of **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum** is **pulchr-** and thus, for example, the masculine singular genitive is **pulchrī**. Latin does not distinguish between "handsome" and "beautiful"; the adjective is used equally of men and women.

atque and its alternate form **ac** are coordinating conjunctions. They connect a more particular or emphatic element or clause to what has gone before and thus may sometimes be translated "and (what's more)" or "and . . . (too)." **atque** or **ac** also may introduce a new point or aspect to a subject already under discussion. While there is no difference in meaning between the two words, **atque** is used before words beginning with vowels and words that begin with **h-**. Both are used before words beginning with consonants.

The basic meaning of the adverb **mox** is "soon." By extension from this basic meaning it may mean "then" to mark the next in a series of events or actions.

Poeta in viam ambulat. Mox reginam videbit.
The poet is walking into the street. Soon he will see the queen.
Poeta iam virorum cognabit, mox deorum.
The poet will ponder the anger of men, then (the anger) of the gods.

The preposition **prō** has several distinct meanings illustrated in the following sentences:

Est via <i>pro</i> oppido.	There is a street in front of the town.
<i>Pro</i> filiis laborat.	He works <i>on behalf of</i> (his) sons.
<i>Pro</i> factis poenas dabit.	He will pay the penalty <i>in return for</i> (in exchange for) (his) deeds.

	Derivatives	Cognates
bonus	<i>bonanza, boon</i>	
forum	<i>foreign, forensic</i>	door
imperium	<i>imperial</i>	
malus	<i>malice; malady</i>	
nuhil	<i>nuhilistic; annulitate</i>	
teneō	<i>obtain; tenet, tenacious</i>	tendon, tone
terra	<i>territory</i>	toast; thirst

§17. First-Second-Declension Adjectives

An **adjective** describes or modifies a noun. Examples of adjectives in English are “good,” “happy,” “green,” “generous.”

The vocabulary entry for a first-second-declension adjective contains the masculine, feminine, and neuter singular nominative forms, followed by the English meaning(s). For example,

bonus, bona, bonum good

With very few exceptions, Latin nouns have only one gender and belong to only one declension. Adjectives, by contrast, have *all genders*, and first second declension adjectives use endings borrowed from the first declension when modifying a feminine noun and from the second declension when modifying masculine and neuter nouns.

Like nouns, adjectives are declined. To decline a first-second-declension adjective, TAKE THE STEM FROM THE FEMININE SINGULAR NOMINATIVE FORM BY DROPPING THE -A AND ADD ENDINGS FAMILIAR FROM THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS. For example:

bonus, bona, bonum						
Stem: bon-						
	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum	boni	bonae	bona
Gen.	boni	bonae	boni	bonorum	bonarum	bonorum
Dat.	bono	bonae	bono	bonis	bonis	bonis
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonos	bonas	bona
Abl.	bono	bona	bono	bonis	bonis	bonis
Voc.	bone					

OBSERVATIONS

1. The endings of masculine/feminine second-declension nouns are used *only* for masculine forms of the adjectives. Feminine forms are supplied by the endings of the *first* declension. The endings of neuter second declension nouns are used for neuter forms of the adjectives.
2. Adjectives whose masculine singular nominative ends in -us have a separate vocative singular ending (-e). All other vocative forms of adjectives are identical to the nominative forms.
3. As is true for certain masculine/feminine second-declension nouns, some adjectives lack a masculine singular nominative ending and use instead a version of the stem as the masculine singular nominative form. For example:

miser, misera, miserum	wretched, pitiable, miserable
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum	beautiful, handsome

For these adjectives also, the stem is taken from the feminine singular nominative form. Thus the stem of **miser, misera, miserum** is **miser-**, and the stem of **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum** is **pulchr-**.

§18. Noun-Adjective Agreement

Adjectives are usually placed *after* the nouns they modify, but adjectives of size or quantity often *precede* their nouns. Although a Latin adjective is usually placed after its noun, it is best translated before.

femina bona	good woman
multum aurum	much gold

The forms **bona** and **multum** in the examples above have the same *gender*, *number*, and *case* as the nouns they modify (**bona** = feminine singular nominative or vocative, **multum** = neuter singular nominative, vocative, or accusative). **ADJECTIVES MUST ALWAYS AGREE WITH THE NOUNS THEY MODIFY IN GENDER, NUMBER, AND CASE.** This is called **noun-adjective agreement**. For example:

deam pulchram	a beautiful goddess (d.o.)
servōrum miserōrum	of miserable slaves

Because the noun **deam** is feminine singular accusative, the form of the adjective **pulcher**, **pulchra**, **pulchrum** that modifies it must be feminine singular accusative. Similarly, because the noun **servōrum** is masculine plural genitive, the form of the adjective **miser**, **miserā**, **miserum** must be masculine plural genitive. Consider also the following example:

poēta bonus	a good poet (subj.)
-------------	---------------------

Although **poēta** is a first declension noun, since it is masculine in gender, the adjective that modifies it must have *masculine* (i.e., second declension) endings. From this last example it may be seen that nouns and their modifying adjectives do *not* always have endings that are spelled the same. Their agreement is rather one of *gender*, *number*, and *case*.¹

When a noun is modified by two or more adjectives, **et** or **-que** is regularly used to connect the modifiers:

vir magnus et bonus	a great and good man (subj.)
---------------------	------------------------------

☛ DRILL 17–18 MAY NOW BE DONE.

¹ When an adjective modifies more than one noun of different genders, it may agree in gender and number with the noun nearest to it. Otherwise, the adjective is masculine and plural if one of the nouns denotes a man, and it is neuter if all the nouns it describes are things.

§19. Substantive Use of the Adjective

Sometimes an adjective stands alone and does not modify a noun. When this occurs, the adjective is being used **substantively** (as a noun) and may be called a **substantive**. When adjectives are used as substantives, they often are translated with the addition of the English words "man," "woman," "thing" (sing.) or "men," "women," "things" (pl.), depending on the gender and number indicated by the ending of the adjective.² Case, as always, determines syntax. For example:

<i>Laetus bonam amat.</i>	<i>The happy man the good woman (d.o.) loves.</i> <i>The happy man loves the good woman.</i>
<i>Sunt multa in oppido.</i>	<i>There are many things in the town.</i>

Because *laetus* has a masculine singular ending, the word "man" is added to the translation; because *bonam* has a feminine singular ending, the word "woman" is added to the translation. Because *multa* has a neuter plural ending, the word "things" is added to the translation.

Some Latin adjectives are so commonly used as substantives that they have become virtual nouns: *amicus*, *amīc* *m.*, "friend" (friendly man); *inimicus*, *inimīc* *m.*, "(personal) enemy" (unfriendly man); *Rōmānī*, *Rōmānōrum* *m. pl.*, "(the) Romans" (Roman men).

☛ DRILL 19 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§20. Predicate Adjective

Like nouns, adjectives may appear with copulative verbs. When an adjective functions in this way, it is called a **Predicate Adjective**, and it must agree with the noun it modifies in *gender, number, and case*. For example:

<i>Liber est malus.</i>	<i>The boy is bad.</i>
<i>Misererant servi.</i>	<i>Miserable were the slaves.</i> <i>The slaves were miserable.</i>
<i>Pucros iubēbō esse bonōs.</i>	<i>The boys I shall order to be good.</i> <i>I shall order the boys to be good.</i>

The syntax of *malus* and *miserī* is **Predicate Adjective in the nominative case**. The syntax of *bonōs* is **Predicate Adjective in the accusative case**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In these sentences, *malus*, *miserī*, and *bonōs* agree with the nouns they modify in gender, number, and case.
2. Predicate adjectives may sometimes be viewed as substantives. Thus the second sentence may be translated "The slaves were miserable men." If the adjective *miserī*, for example, is understood as a substantive, its syntax is Predicate Nominative.

☛ DRILL 20 MAY NOW BE DONE.

2. The substantive use of the masculine plural *may* refer to groups of mixed gender. Hence, *bonī*, for example, may be translated "good people" to indicate that it refers to both men and women.

§21. Introduction to the Passive Voice

The subject of a verb in the *active* voice *performs the action* of the verb. When a verb is in the *passive* voice, the subject does not perform but rather *receives the action* of the verb (see §5). For example.

The farmers *love* the queen.

The farmers *are loved* by the queen.

In the first sentence the subject, "farmers," *performs the action* of the verb, "love," and the verb "love" is in the *active* voice. The farmers are *doing the loving*. In the second sentence the subject, "farmers," *receives the action* of the verb, "are loved," and the verb "are loved" is in the *passive* voice. The farmers *are being loved*.

OBSERVATION

In Latin, as in English, any *transitive* verb—one that takes a direct object—may be found in both the active voice and the passive voice. An *intransitive* verb—one that does not take a direct object—is generally not found in the passive voice in Latin.³

The Latin translation of the first sentence above is:

Agricolae rēginam amant.

The verb *amant* is third person plural present *active* indicative. In the second sentence the Latin translation of the verb "are loved" requires a verb in the third person plural present indicative, but since the subject, "farmers," receives the action of the verb, the voice must be *passive*.

All English passive forms are called **compound forms** (< *compōnō*, put together) because they are made of at least two separate words. For example, "are loved" is a compound of "are" (the third person plural present indicative of the verb "be") and "loved" (the past participle of the verb "love"). Some Latin tenses use compound forms in the passive, but many are *uncompounded*.

☛ DRILL 21 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§22. Present, Imperfect, and Future Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

Passive Personal Endings

The present, imperfect, and future passive indicative of the first and second conjugations are formed exactly as are their active counterparts, except that **passive personal endings** are added instead of active personal endings.

3. For the impersonal use of the passive of intransitive verbs, see §59

Person	Active Personal Endings		Passive Personal Endings	
	Singular		Singular	
1 I	-ō	-m	-or	-i
2 you	-s		-ris/-re	
3 he, she, it	-t		-tur	
	Plural		Plural	
1 we	-mus		-mur	
2 you (pl.)	-tis		-mini	
3 they	-nt		-ntur	

OBSERVATIONS

- 1 Although two endings are given for the first person singular passive (-or, -i), they are not interchangeable. Rather, when an active form ends in -ō, its corresponding passive form ends in -or. When an active form ends in -m, its corresponding passive form ends in -i.
- 2 The second person singular endings -ris and -re are interchangeable. There is no distinction in meaning.
- 3 Long vowels shorten before the first person singular ending -r and the third person plural ending -ntur. Thus, the full LONG VOWEL RULE IS:
LONG VOWELS SHORTEN BEFORE THE ENDINGS -M, -I, -NT, -R, AND -NTUR.
MEMORIZE THIS RULE
- 4 The passive personal endings are used to form many tenses in Latin. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS AND BE PREPARED TO RECITE THEM QUICKLY.

Nearly every form of the present passive system may be formed by replacing the active personal ending of a particular form with the equivalent passive ending.

Present Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the present passive indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. add the passive personal endings (use -or for first person singular)

Thus, for example, the present passive indicative conjugation of vocō, with the active conjugation beside it for comparison, is:

Present Stem: vocā-		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Singular					
1	vocō	I call	vocor	I am (being) called	
2	vocās	you call	vocāris/ -vocare	you are (being) called	
3	vocat	he, she, it calls	vocātur	he, she, it is (being) called	
Plural					
1	vocāmus	we call	vocāmur	we are (being) called	
2	vocātis	you (pl.) call	vocāmini	you (pl.) are (being) called	
3	vocant	they call	vocantur	they are (being) called	

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular, the stem vowel *-ā-* contracts with the ending *-or* (**vocāor > vocor*) (cf. §9). In the first person singular of second-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel *-ē-* shortens before the ending *-or* (e.g., **movēor > moveor*) (cf. §9).
2. For verbs of both the first and second conjugations, whenever the ending *-re* is used, the second person singular present passive indicative resembles exactly the present active infinitive (e.g., *vocāre*). Context determines whether such a form is an indicative or an infinitive. ALWAYS WRITE OUT ALL ALTERNATE FORMS COMPLETELY WHEN DOING DRILLS OR EXERCISES.
3. Long vowels shorten before the third person plural ending *-ntur* according to the long vowel rule. Long vowels do not shorten before the third person singular ending *-tur*.
4. The English translations for the present passive forms given above reflect the fact that these forms, like their active counterparts, may indicate either simple or progressive/repeated aspect (see §9). For example, *vocor* may be translated "I am called" (simple aspect), "I am called (repeatedly)" (repeated aspect), or "I am being called" (progressive aspect).

Imperfect Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the imperfect passive indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. add the infix for the imperfect indicative: *-bā-*
3. add the passive personal endings (use *-r* for first person singular)

Thus, for example, the imperfect passive indicative conjugation of *vocō*, with the active conjugation beside it for comparison, is:

Present Stem: <i>vocā-</i>		Imperf. Infix: <i>-bā-</i>			
		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>Singular</i>					
1	<i>vocābam</i>	I was calling	<i>vocābar</i>	I was being called	
2	<i>vocābas</i>	you (sg.) were calling	<i>vocābāris</i>	you (sg.) were being called	
3	<i>vocābat</i>	he, she, it was calling	<i>vocābatur</i>	he, she, it was being called	
<i>Plural</i>					
1	<i>vocābāmus</i>	we were calling	<i>vocābāmur</i>	we were being called	
2	<i>vocābātis</i>	you (pl.) were calling	<i>vocābāmini</i>	you (pl.) were being called	
3	<i>vocābant</i>	they were calling	<i>vocābantur</i>	they were being called	

OBSERVATION

Long vowels shorten before the first person singular ending *-r* and the third person plural ending *-ntur* according to the long vowel rule. Long vowels do not shorten before the third person singular ending *-tur*.

Future Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the future passive indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. add the infix for the future indicative: *-bi-*
3. add the *passive personal endings* (use *-or* for first person singular)

Thus, for example, the future passive indicative conjugation of *vocō*, with the active conjugation beside it for comparison, is

Present Stem: <i>voca-</i>			
Infix: <i>-bi-</i>			
		ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Singular</i>			
1	<i>vocabō</i>	I shall call	<i>vocābor</i> I shall be called
2	<i>vocabis</i>	you will call	<i>vocāberis/</i> <i>vocabere</i> you will be called
3	<i>vocabit</i>	he, she, it will call	<i>vocābitur</i> he, she, it will be called
<i>Plural</i>			
1	<i>vocabimus</i>	we shall call	<i>vocabimur</i> we shall be called
2	<i>vocabitis</i>	you (pl.) will call	<i>vocabimini</i> you (pl.) will be called
3	<i>vocabunt</i>	they will call	<i>vocabuntur</i> they will be called

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular, the *-i-* of the infix *-bi-* contracts with the ending *-or* to give the resulting form (**vocābior* > *vocābor*) (cf. §9).
2. In the second person singular passive, the *-i-* of *-bi-* changes to *-e-* before the endings *-ris* and *-re*. MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.
3. In the third person plural, the *-i-* of the infix *-bi-* changes to *-u-*. The *-u-* is a linguistic remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural and is thus an exception to the rules for forming the future passive indicative (cf. §9). MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.

§23. Synopsis I: Present Active and Passive Indicative

A **synopsis** (< Greek *synopsis*, a seeing all together) is a brief summary or condensed view of the forms of a Latin verb. Generating a synopsis is a systematic way of reviewing and sharpening one's knowledge of verb morphology. To make a synopsis, one chooses at random a verb and then a person and number for the subject. Then the principal parts for that verb are generated, followed by the forms of the verb in all tenses in the given person and number. Here is a model synopsis for *timeō* in the third person singular.

Principal Parts:	timeo, timere, timui, —			
Person and Number:	1st sing.			
Indicative	Active	Translation	Passive	Translation
Present	timeo	he/she it fears	timeor	he/she it is (being) feared
Imperfect	timebat	he/she it was fearing	timebatur	he/she it was being feared
Future	timebit	he/she it will fear	timebitur	he/she it will be feared

OBSERVATIONS

- 1 This synopsis reviews the present, imperfect, and future active and passive indicative. When new verb forms are introduced, the synopsis will expand accordingly.
2. In a synopsis basic English translations should be given.

☛ DRILL 22-23 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§24. Ablative of Personal Agent

The preposition *ā/ab* followed by a noun in the ablative case is frequently used with verbs in the passive voice to express the *agent* or *person by whom* the action of the verb is done. The preposition *ā/ab* is translated "by,"⁴ and an ablative so used is called the **Ablative of Personal Agent**. For example:

<i>Filius ā regina vocabatur.</i>	The son <i>by the queen</i> was being summoned.
	The son was being summoned <i>by the queen</i> .

The syntax of *rēginā* is **Ablative of Personal Agent**.

The Ablative of Personal Agent expresses the person *by whose agency* an action is performed. Thus it is quite different from the Ablative of Means, which expresses the inanimate tool or instrument *by means of which* an action is performed. For example:

<i>Nautae verbis poetae moventur.</i>	The sailors <i>by (means of) the words</i> of the poet are (being) stirred up.
	The sailors are (being) stirred up <i>by the words</i> of the poet.
<i>Nautae ā poeta moventur.</i>	The sailors <i>by (the agency of) the poet</i> are (being) stirred up.
	The sailors are (being) stirred up <i>by the poet</i> .

Note that no preposition is used with the Ablative of Means, while the preposition *ā/ab* must be used with the Ablative of Personal Agent.

⁴ Although it is convenient to translate the Ablative of Personal Agent with the English preposition "by," in Latin the agent of an action in the passive is understood as the person *from whom* the action originates, and thus Latin uses the preposition *ā/ab*.

§25. The Uses of *videō* in the Passive Voice

The verb *videō* has two meanings in the passive voice: "be seen" (the passive of "see") and "seem" (i.e., be seen as). When *videō* means "be seen," it is often accompanied by an Ablative of Personal Agent. When *videō* means "seem," it functions as a copulative verb with a Predicate Nominative or Predicate Adjective in the nominative case.⁵ In this usage *videō* may also be accompanied by a Complementary Infinitive, a Dative of Reference, or both. For example:

Poēta ā rēgīnā vidētur.

The poet by the queen is (being) seen.

The poet is (being) seen by the queen.

Miser rēginae poēta (esse) vidētur.

Wretched to the queen the poet (to be) seems.

The poet seems to the queen (to be) wretched.

These sentences illustrate how context helps determine which English translation to use for a form of *videō* in the passive voice.

§26. Ablative of Manner

A noun in the ablative case may express the way or manner in which an action is performed. An ablative so used is called the Ablative of Manner. WHEN A NOUN FUNCTIONING AS AN ABLATIVE OF MANNER IS NOT MODIFIED BY AN ADJECTIVE, THE PREPOSITION *CUM* MUST BE USED. WHEN A NOUN IS MODIFIED BY AN ADJECTIVE, *CUM* IS OPTIONAL. For example:

Agricolae cum studiō laborabant.

The farmers with zeal were working.

The farmers were working with zeal.

The farmers were working zealously.

Magnā (cum) cūrā in viā ambulābō.

With great care in the street I shall walk.

I shall walk in the street with great care.

I shall walk in the street very carefully.

The syntax of each italicized word (*studiō*, *cūrā*) is Ablative of Manner.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence *cum* is required because no adjective modifies *studiō*.
2. In the second sentence, because *magnā* modifies *cūrā*, *cum* is optional. If *cum* does occur, it usually appears between the adjective and the noun, as shown above, because it is the least important element of the phrase, and greater balance of the important elements (*magnā* and *cūrā*) is achieved.
3. An Ablative of Manner may often be translated—less literally—by an English adverb ending in "-ly." In the translation of the second sentence, the word "very" must be used to represent the force of the adjective *magnā*.

⁵ For a definition of copulative verbs see §1.

§27. Subject Infinitive

The infinitive is an indeclinable verbal noun in the neuter singular (see §12). The infinitive may be used as the *subject* of another verb. Such an infinitive is called the **Subject Infinitive**. For example:

<i>Bonum est laborāre.</i>	Good is to work. To work is good. Working is good.
<i>Pulchrum est patriam amāre.</i>	Beautiful is the country (d.o.) to love. To love the country is beautiful. Loving (one's) country is beautiful.

The syntax of each italicized word (*laborāre*, *amāre*) is **Subject Infinitive**.

OBSERVATIONS

- 1 In these sentences *bonum* and *pulchrum* are neuter singular nominative to agree with the subject infinitives they modify. The syntax of each is Predicate Adjective in the nominative case. They may also be considered substantives functioning as Predicate Nominatives (To work is a good thing, To love (one's) country is a beautiful thing).
- 2 The Subject Infinitive may take a direct object. In the second sentence *patriam* is the direct object of the infinitive *amāre*.
- 3 Each of the two subject infinitives in the sentences above may also be translated with an English gerund, also a verbal noun: "working," "loving."
- 4 When translating sentences with Subject Infinitives, it is often convenient to add the English expletive "it" ⁶ For example: "It is good to work."

§28. Apposition

Sometimes a noun receives further definition or limitation from another noun placed next to it and often set off in commas. The second noun is called an **appositive** (< *ad-pōnō*, place near to) or is said to be in **apposition** to the noun before it. A **NOUN IN APPPOSITION MUST BE IN THE SAME CASE AS THE WORD THAT IT DEFINES OR LIMITS**.

<i>Rēgina, fēmina bona et magna, patriam Italian amat.</i>
The queen, a good and great woman, (her) country (d.o.) Italy loves.
The queen, a good and great woman, loves (her) country, Italy.

OBSERVATIONS

- 1 *Rēgina* is in the nominative case because it is the subject of the verb. *Fēmina* is nominative because it is in apposition to or is an appositive of *rēgina*. *Fēmina bona et magna* defines *rēgina*.
- 2 *Patriam* is in the accusative case because it is the direct object of the verb. *Italian* is accusative because it is in apposition to or is an appositive of *patriam*.

☛ DRILL 24 - 28 MAY NOW BE DONE.

6. For the meaning of "expletive," see §10.

§29. The Irregular Verb *eō*

The verb *eō*, ire *ī* or *īvī*, itum, "go," is an irregular intransitive verb. It has irregular forms in the present imperfect, and future active indicative. The conjugations of these three tenses of *eō* are presented below. MEMORIZE THESE FORMS.

	Active Indicative		
	Present	Imperfect	Future
<i>Singular</i>			
1	<i>eō</i>	<i>ibam</i>	<i>ibō</i>
2	<i>is</i>	<i>ibās</i>	<i>ibis</i>
3	<i>it</i>	<i>ibat</i>	<i>ibit</i>
<i>Plural</i>			
1	<i>imus</i>	<i>ibamus</i>	<i>ibimus</i>
2	<i>itis</i>	<i>ibātis</i>	<i>ibitis</i>
3	<i>eunt</i>	<i>ibant</i>	<i>ibunt</i>

OBSERVATIONS

1. Although the second principal part of *eō* has an *-i-* before the *-re* ending, it is *not* a fourth-conjugation verb.
2. In the present active indicative, the stem of *eō* shifts between *e-* (first person singular and third person plural) and *i-*. (The *i-* shortens in the third person singular according to the long vowel rule.) The *-u-* in the third person plural is a linguistic remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural.
3. In the imperfect and future active indicative, the stem of *eō* is always *i-*. The infixes *-bā-* and *-bi-* are used to form these two tenses.
4. For all tenses of *eō*, the active personal endings are familiar: *-ō/-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt*.

◆ DRILL 29 MAY NOW BE DONE.

Short Readings

1. An old man desires his friend to be understanding about his newfound crush.

hūmānum amārest, hūmānum autem ignōscerest (PLAUTUS, *MERCATOR* 320)

amārest = *amāre est*⁷

autem (postpositive adv.) however, moreover

hūmānus, -a, -um human

ignōscō, *ignōscere*, *ignōvī*, *ignōtus* forgive, pardon; *ignōscerest* = *ignōscere est*⁷

2. In a discussion about poverty, the lives of ancient philosophers call to mind the following line of the comic poet Caecilius Statius.

saepe est etiam sub palliolo sordidō sapientia.

(CICERO, *TUSCULANAE DISPUTATIONES* III.56)

etiam (adv.) even

palliolum, *pallioli* n. little cloak

saepe (adv.) often

sordidus, -a, -um dirty, grimy, unwashed

sub (prep. + abl.) under

3. The poet describes the bliss of two lovers.

mūtuis animīs amant amantur. (CATULLUS XLV.20)

mūtuis, -a, -um shared, reciprocal, mutual

4. The historian reports the command of the leader Camillus to the Roman soldiers starving at the time of the siege of the Gauls. (The soldiers and other Romans had been about to pay ransom for their freedom.)

suos in acervum conicere sarcinās et arma aptāre ferrōque nōn aurō recipere

patriam iubet . . . (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* V.49.3)

acervus, *acervi* m. heap, pile

aptō (1-tr.) fit, put on

coniciō, *conicere*,⁸ *conieci*, *coniectus* throw together

recipere (1-tr.) get back, recover, regain

sarcina, *sarcinae* f. pack, bundle

suus, -a, -um his own

7. When *es* or *est* follows a word ending in *-m* or *-e*, it may drop the initial *e*- and join the preceding word. This is called *aphaeresis* (< Greek *aphaeresis*, taking away).

8. *coniciō* and *conicere* are pronounced as if they were spelled **coniciō* and **conicere* (with a consonantal and a vocalic *i*-)

CHAPTER IV

Vocabulary

- **causa, causae** *f.* reason, cause; case
glōria, glōriae *f.* renown, glory
- **invidia, invidiae** *f.* envy, jealousy; ill-will, resentment
- **sententia, sententiae** *f.* thought, feeling, opinion

- **altum, altī** *n.* deep sea; height
- **auxilium, auxiliī** *n.* aid, help
 - **auxilia, auxiliōrum** *n. pl.* auxiliary troops
- **caelum, caelī** *n.* sky, heaven
- **socius, sociī** *m.* ally, comrade

- **agō, agere, ēgī, āctus** drive; do; spend, conduct
causam agere (idiom) to conduct or plead a case
- **canō, canere, cecinī, cantus** sing (of)
- **capio, capere, cēpī, captus** take (up), capture; win
cōnsilium capere (idiom) to form a plan
- **dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus** say, speak, tell
- **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus** lead; consider
- **faciō, facere, fecī, factus** make; do
- **gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus** bear; manage, conduct, perform
bellum gerere (idiom) to wage war
- **mittō, mittere, mīsi, missus** send
- **pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus** put, place; set aside
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus rule, control
scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptus write

- **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus** hear, listen (to)
- **sentiō, sentire, sēnsī, sēnsus** perceive, feel
- **veniō, venire, vēnī, ventum** come

- ego, meī** (personal pron.) I; me (§37)
- nōs, nostrum/nostrī** (personal pron.) we; us (§37)
- tū, tuī** (personal pron.) you (§37)
- vōs, vestrum/vestrī** (personal pron.) you (pl.) (§37)

- is, ea, id** (demonstr. adj.) this, that; these, those; *as third-person personal pron.,* he, she, it; they; him, her, it; them (§37)

- altus, -a, -um** tall, high; deep
- **clārus, -a, -um** bright, clear; famous
- **cupidus, -a, -um** desirous (+ gen.)
decem (indeclinable adj.) ten
- meus, -a, -um** my, mine (§38)
- noster, nostra, nostrum** our, ours (§38)
- socius, -a, -um** allied
- tuus, -a, -um** your, yours (§38)
- validus, -a, -um** strong; healthy
- vester, vestra, vestrum** your (pl.), yours (pl.) (§38)

- **equidem** (adv.) indeed, certainly; for my part
- per** (prep. + acc.) through
- **quidem** (adv.) indeed, certainly, at least
nē . . . quidem not even

Vocabulary Notes

The noun *causa*, *causae* *f.* has a general meaning of "reason" or "cause" and a more particular meaning of legal "case."

invidia, *invidiae* *f.* is derived from the verb *invidēō* (*in* + *videō*, look askance at, regard with ill-will).

sententia, *sententiae* *f.* is derived from the verb *sentīō* and refers to an opinion, either privately held (thought, feeling) or publicly given (vote, opinion). In the former sense, it may refer to the meaning underlying a speech or an expression. In the latter sense, it may mean the "judgment" or "sentence" of a court. It may also refer to a written or spoken "sentence."

altum, *alti* *n.* is a substantive of the adjective *altus*, -a, -um and may mean either "deep sea" or "height."

auxilium, *auxilli* *n.* is an abstract noun, a noun that denotes something that cannot be perceived by the senses (e.g., wisdom, happiness, slavery). THE PLURAL OF AN ABSTRACT NOUN IN LATIN IS OFTEN USED WITH A CONCRETE MEANING. Thus, in military contexts, the plural of *auxilium*—*auxilia*, *auxiliorum* *n. pl.*—means "auxiliary troops."

socius, *socii* *m.* is a substantive of the adjective *socius*, -a, -um. It is used both in personal contexts (comrade) and in legal and political ones (ally). It is often used of cities or peoples from outside Italy that were allies of Rome.

agō, *agere*, *ēgī*, *actus* is a verb describing action generally, its particular meanings being derived from context and from the specific direct objects accompanying the verb. It may mean "drive" (cattle, goats, plunder, a chariot, the winds); "do," "act," "manage," "plead" (a court case); or "spend," "conduct" (time, life).

canō, *canere*, *cecini*, *cantus* is a transitive verb and thus takes a direct object. The third principal part, *cerini*, is reduplicated. (See vocabulary note on *dō*, p. 25.)

Pocet bellum canebat.

The poet was singing of wars.

The translation includes the preposition "of" because this is the common English expression. In Latin the direct object of this verb is *always accusative*.

In the third principal part of *capīō*, *capere*, *cēpi*, *captus*, the root vowel changes to a long *-ē-*. The change of the vowel indicates a change in tense. A change in root vowel that corresponds to a change in meaning is called *ablaut*. This phenomenon is common to all PIE languages. Cf. English *sing*, *sang*, *sung*; *song*.

dicō, *dicere*, *dixi*, *dictus* is a verb of *giving*, *showing*, and *telling* and thus may take a direct object and an indirect object.

dūcō, *dūcere*, *dūxi*, *ductus* has a concrete and an abstract meaning: "lead" and "consider."

In the third principal part of *faciō*, *facere*, *fēci*, *factus*, the root vowel exhibits *ablaut* and changes to *-ē-* (cf. *capīō*). *faciō* is a transitive verb that means "make," "do," "make." "Make" includes ideas of *creating*, *causing*, or *representing* something. "Do" means *perform* or *carry out* an action, a deed, a crime, orders, etc.

gerō, *gerere*, *gessi*, *gestus* has three distinct senses: 1. "bear" or "carry" (equipment, clothing); 2. "have" or "bear" as a permanent or temporary feature of body or mind (wounds, reputation, anger); or 3. "manage," "conduct," or "perform" (oneself, business, political office). The first of these three meanings is found only in poetry.

In the third principal part of *mittō*, *mittere*, *misī*, *missus*, the root vowel exhibits *ablaut* and changes to *-i-*. *mittō* is regularly found with two constructions indicating the recipient: *ad* + accusative or a Dative of Reference.

Agrocola ad filium pecuniam mittit.

The farmer sends money to his son.

Agrocola filio pecuniam mittit.

The farmer sends money to his son.

When *mittō* is accompanied by *ad* + accusative, the prepositional phrase emphasizes *motion toward* someone or something. With a Dative of Reference, the *person for whom* something is meant is emphasized (i.e. The farmer sends money *meant* for his son).

pōnō, *pōnere*, *posui*, *positus* has two distinct meanings: "put," "place," or "set aside." Compare the following sentences:

Incolae arma in oppidō pōnunt.

The inhabitants are placing weapons in the town.

Incolae arma pōnunt.

The inhabitants are setting aside (their) weapons.

Context helps to determine which meaning is appropriate.

audiō, audire, audivi, auditus is a transitive verb that may be used absolutely. When it takes a direct object, it may be translated either "hear" or "listen to." When it is used absolutely, it may be translated either "hear" or "listen."

Rēgia incolās audit.

The queen listens to/hears the inhabitants.

Rēgia audit.

The queen listens/hears.

In the third principal part of sentiō, sentire, sensi, sensus, the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to -ē-. The -ē- in the fourth principal part is long before -ns-. -NS- ALWAYS LENGTHENS A PRECEDING VOWEL (cf. *Insula*). The basic meaning of sentiō is "perceive through one of the senses." Thus it has an intellectual sense (perceive, observe, notice) and a more physical or emotional sense (experience, feel, suffer).

In the third principal part of veniō, venire, vēni, ventum, the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to -ē-. Veniō is an intransitive verb.

The basic meaning of clārus, -a, -um is the visual idea of "bright" or "clear." In this sense it regularly describes such things as sky, color, or lightning. It has a transferred sense of "evident" or "manifest," and in this sense regularly describes more abstract concepts (plans, affairs). When applied to people it means "famous" or "distinguished."

cupidus, -a, -um is an adjective often found with an Objective Genitive (see §36).

equidem is an adverb that most often occurs with a verb in the first person (singular or plural). It is used to emphasize a fact concerning oneself or to affirm one's own opinion. It occurs rarely with verbs in the second or third person, but even in such cases it usually has some reference to the writer's or speaker's own opinion.

Nilū equidem video.

I indeed (for my part) see nothing.

equidem is an adverb that may: 1. emphasize an immediately preceding word or phrase (indeed, certainly); 2. emphasize an entire sentence (indeed, in fact); 3. emphasize a word, phrase, or sentence as a concession (at least); or 4. add a word, phrase, or sentence as a reinforcement or afterthought of something that precedes (and what is more and ... at that).

	Derivatives	Cognates
agō	act, agent	agony, pedagogue; protagonist; axiom
auxilium	auxiliary	wax
caelum	celestial	
canō	cantata; chant; incentive	hen
capio	capture, perceive; municipal	have, haven; hawk; gaff
clārus	calendar; declare	row, bale
decem	December; decimal; dime; dozen	seventeen; dean, decade; ten
dicō	dictate, ditto; duty	token, paradigm, theodicy
ducō	abduct; duke; produce	tug; tow; team
ego	ego	i
mei		me; myself
gerō	gerund	
invidia	invidious; envy	
is	id; identify; iterate	
mittō	missive, intermittent	
nōs	nostrum	us, our
scribō	scribble; manuscript	
sentiō	sentence, sentiment, sense	send
socius	social; society; associate	
validus	invail; valence, avail	wield
veniō	event, covenant, prevent	come

§30. Present, Imperfect, and Future Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations

Verbs of the third conjugation are distinguished by a short *-e-* at the end of the present stem. For example:

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus rule Present Stem: rege-

A subgroup of the third conjugation (third i-stem) is further distinguished by an *-i-* before the *-ō* ending of the first principal part. For example:

capīō, capere, cēpī, captus take, capture Present Stem: cape-

Verbs of the fourth conjugation are distinguished by a long *-ī-* at the end of the present stem *and* an *-i-* before the *-ō* ending of the first principal part. For example:

audiō, audīre, audivi, auditus hear, listen (to) Present Stem: audi-

To form the present, imperfect, and future active and passive indicative of first- and second-conjugation verbs, infixes, endings, or *both* are added directly to the present stem. By contrast, to form the present, imperfect, and future active and passive indicative of third-, third i-stem-, and fourth-conjugation verbs, CERTAIN REGULAR CHANGES MUST BE MADE IN THE STEM VOWELS BEFORE INFIXES OR ENDINGS CAN BE ADDED.

Present Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations

To form the present active and passive indicative of the third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations:

- 1 take the present stem
- 2 change the stem vowels as follows:

3rd	3rd i-stem	4th
<i>-e- → -i-</i>	<i>-e- → -i-</i>	<i>-ī- stays as is</i>
- 3 add the active or passive personal endings (use *-ō* or *-or* for first person singular) directly to the *changed* present stem

Thus the present active and passive indicative conjugations of, for example, *rego*, *capīō*, and *audiō* are:

Changed Present Stems:						
regi-			capi-		audi- (no change)	
Singular						
	Active	Passive	Active	Passive	Active	Passive
1	rego	regor	capio	capior	audio	audior
2	regis	regeris/ regere	capis	caperis/ capere	audis	audiris/ audire
3	regit	regitur	capit	capitur	audit	auditur
Plural						
1	regimus	regimur	capimus	capimur	audimus	audimur
2	regitis	regimini	capitis	capimini	auditis	audimini
3	regunt	reguntur	capiunt	capiuntur	audiunt	audiuntur

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular of all third-conjugation verbs, the -i- at the end of the changed present stem contracts with the endings -o and -or (e.g., *regiō > regō, *regior > regor). THE FIRST PERSON SINGULAR ACTIVE IS THE FIRST PRINCIPAL PART.
2. In the third person plural of all third conjugation verbs, the -i- changes to -u-. The -u- is a linguistic remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural and is thus an exception to the rules for forming the present indicative. MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.
3. In the first person singular of all third i stem conjugation verbs the -i- at the end of the changed present stem does not contract with the endings -ō and -or. THE FIRST PERSON SINGULAR ACTIVE IS THE FIRST PRINCIPAL PART.
4. In the third person plural of all third i stem conjugation verbs, the -i- is followed by -u-. The -u- is a linguistic remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural and is thus an exception to the rules for forming the present indicative. MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.
5. In the second person singular passive indicative of third- and third i stem conjugation verbs, the -i- changes to an -e- before the endings -ris and -re.¹ MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.
6. In the present indicative, third i stem conjugation verbs differ from third-conjugation verbs only in the first person singular and the third person plural.
7. In the first person singular of fourth-conjugation verbs, the -i- at the end of the present stem shortens before the endings -ō and -or (e.g., *audiō > audiō, *audior > audior). THE FIRST PERSON SINGULAR ACTIVE IS THE FIRST PRINCIPAL PART.
8. In the third person plural of all fourth-conjugation verbs, the -i- is shortened to -i- and is followed by -u-. The -u- is a linguistic remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural and is thus an exception to the rules for forming the present active indicative. MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.
9. In the third person singular active of all fourth-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel -i- shortens according to the long vowel rule.
10. Third i-stem conjugation verbs and fourth-conjugation verbs are identical in their first person singular, third person singular, and third person plural forms.

Imperfect Active and Passive Indicative of Third,
Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations

To form the imperfect active and passive indicative of the third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. change the stem vowels as follows:

3rd	3rd i-stem	4th
-e → -ē-	-e → -iē-	-i → -iē-

3. add the infix for the imperfect indicative: -bā-
4. add the active or passive personal endings (use -m or -r for first person singular)

1. The original stem vowel of the third conjugation was -i-, but this -i- changed to -e- before the -re ending of the present active infinitive.

Thus the imperfect active indicative conjugations of, for example, *regō*, *capiō*, and *audiō* are:

Changed Present Stems						
	rege- ba-		capie- bā-		audie- bā-	
Prefix						
Singular						
	Active	Passive	Active	Passive	Active	Passive
1	regebam	regebar	capiebam	capiebar	audiebam	audiebar
2	regebas	regebāris/ regebare	capiebas	capiebāris/ capiebare	audiebas	audiebāris/ audiebare
3	regebat	regebatur	capiebat	capiebatur	audiebat	audiebatur
Plural						
1	regebamus	regebamur	capiebamus	capiebamur	audiebamus	audiebamur
2	regebātis	regebāmini	capiebātis	capiebāmini	audiebātis	audiebāmini
3	regebant	regebantur	capiebant	capiebantur	audiebant	audiebantur

OBSERVATIONS

1. The changed present stem of third-conjugation verbs (e.g., *regē-*) is identical with the present stem of second-conjugation verbs (e.g., *movē-*). As a result, the conjugation of the imperfect indicative of third-conjugation verbs resembles that of second-conjugation verbs.
2. The imperfect indicative of both third i-stem- and fourth-conjugation verbs has *-iē-* before the infix *-bā-*. As a result, the conjugation of the imperfect indicative of third i-stem-conjugation verbs resembles that of fourth-conjugation verbs.
3. In the first person singular active and passive, third person singular active, and third person plural active and passive of all three conjugations above, long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.

Future Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations

To form the future active and passive indicative of the third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. change the stem vowels as follows:

3rd	3rd i-stem	4th
-e- → -ē-	-e- → -iē-	-ī- → -iē-

3. add the active or passive personal endings (use *-m* or *-r* for first person singular)

Thus the future active indicative conjugations of, for example, *regō*, *capiō*, and *audiō* are:

Changed Present Stems:						
	regē-		capiē-		audiē-	
Singular	Active	Passive	Active	Passive	Active	Passive
1	regam	regar	capiam	capiar	audiam	audiar
2	regēs	regēris/ regere	capiēs	capiēris/ capere	audies	audiēris/ audire
3	reget	regetur	capiet	capietur	audiet	audietur
Plural						
1	regemus	regemur	capiemus	capiemur	audiemus	audiemur
2	regētis	regemini	capiētis	capiemini	audietis	audiemini
3	regent	regentur	capient	capientur	audient	audientur

OBSERVATIONS

1 In the first person singular of third-conjugation verbs, -ā- appears rather than -e- before the endings -m and -r. Similarly, in the first person singular of third i-stem- and fourth-conjugation verbs -ia- rather than -ie- appears before the endings -m and -r. MEMORIZE THESE EXCEPTIONS. In all cases, -ā- shortens before -m and -r according to the long vowel rule. In all other persons, the sign of the future is -ē-.

2 The infix -bi-, used to mark the future tense of first- and second-conjugation verbs, is not used in the third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations. For these conjugations the sign of the future is -ē-. The following mnemonic device may be useful:

IN CONJUGATION NUMBER 3, THE SIGN OF THE FUTURE IS LONG -Ē-.

IN CONJUGATION NUMBER 4, THE LONG -Ē- OF THE FUTURE APPEARS ONCE MORE.

3 In the first person singular active and passive, third person singular active, and third person plural active and passive of all three conjugations above, long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.

☛ DRILL 30 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§31. Present Passive Infinitive of All Verbs

As noted in §12, the infinitive is a verbal noun with the properties of tense (present, perfect, or future) and voice (active or passive). The second principal part of every verb is the present active infinitive and is regularly translated "to_____." To form the present passive infinitive for verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, CHANGE THE FINAL -E OF THE PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE TO -Ī. For example:

<i>Present Active Infinitive</i>	<i>Present Passive Infinitive</i>
vocare (to call)	vocari (to be called)
movere (to move)	moveri (to be moved)
audire (to hear)	audiri (to be heard)

To form the present passive infinitive of third- and third i-stem-conjugation verbs, **DROP THE FINAL -ERE OF THE PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE AND ADD -ī.**² For example:

Present Active Infinitive	Present Passive Infinitive
regere (to rule)	regi (to be ruled)
capere (to capture)	capī (to be captured)

§32. Present Active and Passive Imperative of All Verbs

The *imperative* mood has been identified as the mood used for giving direct commands (see §5). Each of the verbs italicized below would be rendered in Latin by a verb in the imperative mood:

Eat your vegetables!
Give me a sword.
Listen, friends.

Commands such as these are addressed either to “you” (singular) or “you” (plural). These second-person subjects are seldom expressed in Latin or English. Because imperatives are in the second person, they are often (but not always) found with nouns in the vocative case that indicate the persons to whom the commands are addressed. In the third sentence above, for example, “friends” would be in the vocative plural.

To form the present active imperative of all four conjugations:

1. (for the singular) take the present stem *and make no changes*
2. (for the plural) take the present stem and add *-te*

Present Stem	Present Active Imperative Sing.	Present Active Imperative Pl.
voca-	voca	vocate
move-	move	move-te
rege-	rege	regite
cape-	cape	capite
audi-	audi	audite

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the present active imperative plural of third- and third i-stem conjugation verbs, the stem vowel *-e-* changes to *-i-* before the ending *-te*. Compare this stem vowel change to the change that occurs in the present active and passive indicative of third- and third i-stem-conjugation verbs (e.g., *rege-* > *regi-*)
2. The present active imperative singular of *dō* is *dā*. Although the stem has a short *-a-*, the *-a-* is lengthened in the imperative singular form (*dā*) by analogy with other first-conjugation verbs.
3. The imperatives of *eō* are regularly formed. *ī* (singular) and *ite* (plural).³

Four third-conjugation verbs (*dīcō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, *ferō*) have irregular present active imperative forms *in the singular*. MEMORIZE THESE IRREGULAR FORMS.

² The present passive infinitive of *faciō* is supplied by another verb. See §125.

³ The irregular verb *possum* has no imperative forms. The imperative forms of *sum* are *es* (singular) and *este* (plural). Both forms are very rare except in compounds of *sum*.

⁴ The verb *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*, “bring,” “bear,” “carry,” “endure,” is a third-conjugation verb with certain irregular forms in the present system which are presented in §43.

Present Active Imperative Sing.		Present Active Imperative Pl.	
dic	say	dicite	say (pl.)
dūc	lead	dūcite	lead (pl.)
fac	make	facite	make (pl.)
fer	carry	ferite	carry (pl.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. The singular forms of these imperatives lack the stem vowel of the present stem.
2. *Dicō*, *dūcō*, and *faciō* have regular imperative forms in the plural. The imperative of *ferō* is irregular in the plural also, where it again lacks a stem vowel.

To form the present passive imperative of all four conjugations:

1. (for the singular) take the present stem and add **-re**
2. (for the plural) take the present stem and add **-mini**

Present Stem	Pres. Passive Imperative Sing.		Pres. Passive Imperative Pl.
vocā	vocāre	be summoned	vocāmini be summoned (pl.)
movē	movēre	be moved	movēmini be moved (pl.)
regē	regere	be ruled	regimini be ruled (pl.)
capē	capere	be taken	capimini be captured (pl.)
audi	audire	be heard	audimini be heard (pl.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the present passive imperative plural of third- and third i-stem-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel **ē** changes to **-i-** before the ending **-mini**.
2. Both the singular and plural present passive imperative forms resemble exactly the second person singular and plural present passive indicative forms. Thus, for example, *vocāre* may be imperative (be summoned) or indicative (you are [being] summoned). In addition, the singular present passive imperative for all verbs resembles exactly the present active infinitive (to summon). Context helps to determine whether a form is an imperative, an indicative, or an infinitive.

Dicō and *dūcō* have regular present passive imperative forms. The present passive imperative singular of *ferō* is *ferre* (be carried). MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR FORM. The plural is regular (*ferimini*, be carried [pl.]). *Faciō* does not have passive imperative forms.

The present active imperative forms of *agō*, *agere*, *egi*, *actus*, “drive,” “do,” *age* and *agite*, are often used in colloquial Latin to strengthen other commands. They may be translated “come on!” For example:

<i>Age, dōnā puellis dōna!</i>	<i>Come on, give gifts to the girls!</i>
<i>Agite, ō viri, pugnāte!</i>	<i>Come on, o men, fight!</i>

§33. Synopsis II: Present Active and Passive Indicative, Infinitive, and Imperative

When a synopsis is given that includes imperatives, they appear in the second person singular and plural only. Always give the second person singular and plural imperative forms no matter what person and number have been chosen for the remaining forms. Here is a model synopsis of *capiō* in the first person plural

Principal Parts: capio, capere, cepi, captus				
Person and Number (1st pl.)				
	Active	Translation	Passive	Translation
Indicative				
Present	capimus	we are capturing	capimur	we are (being) captured
Imperfect	capiebamus	we were capturing	capiebamur	we were being captured
Future	capiemus	we shall capture	capiemur	we shall be captured
Infinitive				
Present	capere	to capture	capī	to be captured
Imperative				
Singular	cape	capture	capere	be captured
Plural	capite	capture	capimini	be captured

OBSERVATIONS

1. This synopsis reviews the present, imperfect, and future active and passive indicative, the present active and passive infinitive, and the present active and passive imperative. When new verb forms are introduced, the synopsis will expand accordingly.
2. In a synopsis basic English translations should be given.

DRILL 31-33 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§34. Partitive Genitive

When a noun in the genitive case represents the *whole* of which another noun is a *part*, it is called the **Partitive Genitive**.⁵ For example:

Multi <i>incolārum</i> non laborābunt.	Many of the inhabitants will not work.
Nihil <i>odii</i> habeo.	Nothing (d.o.) of hatred I have. I have nothing of hatred.

The syntax of each italicized word (*incolārum*, *odii*) is **Partitive Genitive**.

OBSERVATION

With certain words, in particular cardinal numerals, *ē/ex* or *dē* + ablative replaces the Partitive Genitive. For example

Decem <i>e nautis</i> ad insulas vocantur. (decem [indeclinable ad.] ten)	Ten out from the sailors to the islands are being called.
Ten of the sailors are being called to the islands.	

§35. Subjective Genitive

When a noun in the genitive case expresses the person or thing *performing a verbal action implied in another noun*, it is called the **Subjective Genitive**. For example:

Magnum erat <i>odium mali</i> in bonis.	Great was the hatred of the bad man against good-men.
---	---

5. The Partitive Genitive is also known as the Genitive of the Divided Who.e.

OBSERVATION

In this sentence the syntax of the italicized word (*mali*) is **Subjective Genitive** since the bad man *feels or performs the action* of hating implied by the noun *odium*. the bad man (subject) *hates* the good men

§36. Objective Genitive

When a noun in the genitive case expresses the person or thing *receiving a verbal action implied in another noun*, it is called the **Objective Genitive**. For example:

Propter odium dominorum servi non laborant.

On account of (their) hatred of (their) masters, the slaves are not working.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In this sentence the syntax of the italicized word (*dominorum*) is **Objective Genitive** since the masters *receive or are objects of* the action of hating implied by the noun *odium*: the slaves *hate* their masters (d.o.)
2. An Objective Genitive is often translated more idiomatically into English with the preposition "for." Thus the sentence above may be translated "On account of (their) hatred for (their) masters, the slaves are not working."

In addition to depending on other nouns, the Objective Genitive may appear with certain adjectives and verbs. For example.

Cupidus auri erat vir malus.

(*cupidus* , -a, -um desirous)

Desirous of gold was the bad man.

The bad man was desirous of gold.

In this sentence the Objective Genitive (*auri*) depends on the adjective *cupidus* : the bad man desired gold (d.o.).

Subjective and Objective Genitives may appear together, and word order may help to distinguish between them. For example:

Magnum erat mali odium bonorum.

Great was of the bad man (Subjective Genitive) the hatred of good men (Objective Genitive).

The hatred of the bad man for good men was great.

The Subjective Genitive often precedes and the Objective Genitive often follows the noun on which both depend. It is possible, however, that this sentence means "The hatred of the good men (Subjective Genitive) for the bad man (Objective Genitive) was great." Context helps to determine whether a particular genitive is subjective or objective.

☛ DRILL 34-36 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§37. Personal Pronouns

A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun, and a **personal pronoun** represents the speaker(s) or writer(s) (I, we), the one(s) spoken to (you, you [pl.]), or the one(s) spoken about (he, she, it, they).

Like nouns, personal pronouns in Latin are *declined*. These declensions are somewhat irregular and must be memorized. For the first- and second-person personal pronouns, **MEMORIZE DOWN THE SINGULAR AND DOWN THE PLURAL**.

Case	1st Person Singular	2nd Person Singular	3rd Person Singular	1st Person Plural	2nd Person Plural	3rd Person Plural
Nominative	ego	tū	is, e, ei, ille	ego, ego	tu, tu	is, ei, illi
Genitive	mei	tui	ius, eius, illius	nostrum	vestrum	eiusdem, eorundem, illorum
Dative	mihi	tibi	illi	nobis	uobis	illis
Accusative	me	te	eum, eam, illum, eam, illud	nos	vos	eos, eas, illud
Ablative	me	te	eum, eam, illum, eam, illud	nobis	uobis	illis

OBSERVATIONS

1. Personal pronouns do not have vocative forms.
2. Since the inflectional endings of finite verbs indicate the subject (-ō = "I," -s = "you," etc.), the nominative forms of all personal pronouns are not required in a Latin sentence. Nominative case forms of personal pronouns are most often used for added emphasis only. For example:

Ego ambulō, nōn tū. I am walking, not you.

3. The *genitive* forms of the first- and second-person personal pronouns can be used as *Partitive* or *Objective Genitives* only (See §§34 and 36.) In the plural these functions of the genitive are distinguished by different endings. -um = partitive, -i = objective. For example

<i>Habēsne odium meū?</i>	Do you have a hatred of me? (objective)
<i>Multū nostrum reginam amant.</i>	Many of us love the queen. (partitive)
<i>Magnum erat odium vestrū.</i>	Hatred of you (pl.) was great. (objective)

4. When a first- or second-person personal pronoun functions as an *Ablative of Accompaniment*, the preposition *cum* is attached directly to the pronoun. Thus, *meum* (with me), *nobiscum* (with us), *tiscum* (with you), and *vobiscum* (with you [pl.]).

MEMORIZE THE DECLENSION OF THE THIRD-PERSON PERSONAL PRONOUN ACROSS THE SINGULAR AND THEN ACROSS THE PLURAL (is, ea, id, eius, eius, eius . . .).

Third Person			Singular			
	M.		F.		N.	
Nom.	is	he	ea	she	id	it
Gen.	eius	of him	eius	of her	eius	of it
Dat.	ei	to/for him	ei	to/for her	ei	to/for it
Acc.	eum	him (d.o.)	eam	her (d.o.)	id	it (d.o.)
Abl.	eo	from him (etc.)	ea	from her (etc.)	eo	from it (etc.)
			Plural			
	M.		F.		N.	
Nom.	ei/ii	they	eae	they	ea	they
Gen.	eorum	of them	eorum	of them	eorum	of them
Dat.	eis/iis	to/for them	eis/iis	to/for them	eis/iis	to/for them
Acc.	eos	them (d.o.)	eas	them (d.o.)	ea	them (d.o.)
Abl.	eis/iis	from them (etc.)	eis/iis	from them (etc.)	eis/iis	from them (etc.)

OBSERVATIONS

1 Eius is pronounced as if it were spelled *eiuis. The first -i- combines with the preceding vowel to create a diphthong ei-. The second -i- is *consonantal* and is thus pronounced like English y.

2. All forms of is, ea, id are *disyllabic* with these exceptions: is, id (monosyllabic), eorum, eorum, eorum (trissyllabic).

3. When a form of is, ea, id refers to a person or thing previously mentioned, it agrees in *gender* and *number* with the noun to which it refers. For example:

Liber pulcher puellae dabitur. Eumne habēs?

The beautiful book will be given to the girl. Do you have it? (eum refers to liber)

The personal pronoun is, ea, id is in origin a demonstrative adjective (this, that; these, those), and the demonstrative adjective remains in use. For example:

eum virum	this (or that) man (d.o.) (eum is a demonstrative adj. modifying virum)
ea pericula	these (or those) dangers (subj. or d.o.) (ea is a demonstrative adj. modifying pericula)

It is sometimes convenient to translate the forms of the personal pronoun with mild demonstrative force, particularly to indicate gender more clearly. For example: eōs, "these (or those) men (d.o.)."

§38. Possessive Adjectives

A noun in the genitive case may express ownership or possession: liber pueri (the book of the boy) (see §1). However, the genitives of the first- and second-person personal pronouns (mei, nostrum/nostrī, tui, vestrum/vestrī) are *not* used to express possession (see §37). There are instead *possessive adjectives* that correspond to each personal pronoun:

Personal Pronoun		Corresponding Possessive Adjective	
ego	I	meus, a, um	my, mine
nōs	we	noster, nostra, nostrum	our, ours
tū	you	tuus, a, um	your, yours
vos	you (pl.)	vester, vestra, vestrum	your, yours (pl.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. **Meus, noster, tuus, and vester** are all first-second-declension adjectives
2. Like all adjectives, possessive adjectives agree with the nouns they modify in gender, number, and case. For example:

meās filiās	my daughters (d.o.)
patriā nostrā	from our homeland (etc.)
amicīs tuīs	for your friends or from your friends (etc.)
dominus vester	your (pl.) master (subj.)

3. Possessive adjectives may precede or follow the nouns they modify
4. Possessive adjectives may function as substantives. For example:

meōrum	of my men or of my things
tuīs	your men (d.o.)

5. The masculine singular vocative form of **meus** is **mī**. MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR VOCATIVE FORM.
6. The idea of a Subjective Genitive (less frequently an Objective Genitive) may be expressed by a possessive adjective. For example:
Magna erat mea cūra populi
Great was my care of [for] the people.
My care for the people was great.
The noun *cūra* implies the action of caring, and *mea* expresses the subject of that action.
7. Possessive adjectives are often omitted if the meaning is clear without them, but they are used for added clarity, emphasis, or contrast.

The third-person personal pronoun (*is, ea, id*) does not have a corresponding possessive adjective. Rather, the genitive singular and genitive plural forms are used as Genitives of Possession. For example:

librōs eius	the books (d.o.) of him/of her his/her books (d.o.)
rēgīna eōrum	the queen (subj.) of them (m.) their queen (subj.)

Summary of Possession			
First Person	meus filius noster filius	my son our son	meus and noster are possessive adjectives modifying filius
Second Person	tuus filius vester filius	your son your (pl.) son	tuus and vester are possessive adjectives modifying filius
Third Person	filius eius filius eōrum	his/her son their son	eius and eōrum are personal pronouns in the genitive case expressing possession

§39. Ablative of Respect

When a noun in the ablative case *without a preposition* is used to *limit* or *further specify* the meaning of an adjective or a verb, it is called the **Ablative of Respect**.⁶ For example:

Bonus *cōsiliō* erat Gracchus.
 Good in respect to judgment was Gracchus.
 Gracchus was good in judgment.
 Mea *sententiā* imperiū habere debes. (*sententiā, sententiāe* [- opinion])
 In respect to my opinion, power (d.o.) to have you ought.
 In my opinion you ought to have power.
 Gaius Marcum *diligentiā* superat.
 Gaius Marcus (d.o.) in respect to diligence surpasses.
 Gaius surpasses Marcus in diligence.

The syntax of each italicized word (*cōsiliō*, *sententiā*, *diligentiā*) is Ablative of Respect.

6 The Ablative of Respect is also known as the Ablative of Specification.

Short Readings

1. Andronicus translates the first line of Homer's *Odyssey* into Latin.

Virum mihi, Camēna, insece versutum . . . (LIVIUS ANDRONICUS, *ODYSSEY* FRAG. 1)

Camēna, Camēnae f. Camena, any one of the Italic divinities connected with springs and waters and identified with the (Greek) Muses

Insecō, insece, inseci, — tell of
versutus, -a, -um versatile, cunning

2. One drunk slave sings the following to another.

ego tū sum, tū es ego: ūnanimi sumus (PLAUTUS, *STICHUS* 731)

ūnanimus, -a, -um of one mind; harmonious

3. In a discussion of immortality the Roman epic poet Ennius is paraphrased.

Rōmulus in caelō cum dis agit aevum. (CICERO, *TUSCULANAE DISPUTATIONES* I.28)

aevum, aevi n. age, lifetime; life

4. A Stoic view of the gods

magna dī cūrant, parva neglegunt. (CICERO, *DE NATURA DEORUM* II.167)

cūrō (1-tr.) watch over, look after

neglegō, neglegere, neglexi, neglactus overlook, neglect

5. A Roman proverb

amāre et sapere vix deō concēditur. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* A22)

concēdō, concēdere, concessi, concessus concede, grant; permit

sapiō, sapere, sapii or sapivi, — be intelligent, show good sense

vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly

6. A Roman proverb

animō virum pudicae nōn oculō eligunt. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* A36)

ēligō, eligere ēlēgi, elēctus select, choose

oculus oculi m. eye

pudicus, -a, -um chaste, pure, honorable

7. With these opening words the poet suggests that his epic poem will be a blend of the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*.

Arma virumque canō . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.1)

8. The chorus of a tragic play comments on the nature of rulers.

metui cupiunt metuīque timent. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNON* 73)

cupiō, cupere, cupi or cupivi, cupitus desire, long for, want

metuo, metuere, metui, — fear, dread

Longer Readings

1 Varro, *De Lingua Latīnā* V1.77

Varro explains the different shades of meaning of certain Latin verbs.

potest* enim aliquid facere et nōn agere, ut poēta facit fābulam et nōn agit; contrā
āctor agit et nōn facit, . . . contrā imperātor . . . neque facit neque agit sed gerit . . .

*potest, subject is "one"

āctor = *masc. sing. nom.*, doer, actor

aliquid = *neut. sing. acc. of indef. pron.*, something

contrā (adv.) in opposition, in turn

fābula, fābulae *f.* story, tale; play, drama

imperātor = *masc. sing. nom.*, general,

commander

ut (conj.) as, when

Marcus Terentius Varro (116–27 B.C.E.) was a follower of Pompey during the civil war between Pompey and Caesar, but he was forgiven by Caesar and avoided being killed in the same year as Cicero. Varro may have been the most prolific writer in ancient Rome. Only a few works have survived and those only in partial form.

The *Dē Lingua Latīnā* (About the Latin Language) was originally a work of twenty-five books; only six partially preserved books (books 5–10) are known. They were dedicated to Cicero shortly before his death. In the *Dē Lingua Latīnā* Varro analyzes Latin vocabulary, morphology, syntax, and style.⁷

2. Martial I 32

The poet has a brief message for Sabidius.

Nōn amo* tē, Sabidī, nec possum dicere quārē:

hoc tantum possum dicere, nōn amo* te.

*The -ō of amo here scans *short*.

hoc *neut. sing. acc. of demonstr. pron.*, this thing

quārē (interrog. adv.) why

Sabidius, Sabidū *m.* Sabidius, an acquaintance of the poet

tantum (adv.) only

Marcus Valerius Martialis (38?–104? C.E.) was born in Spain and came in 64 to Rome, where he was befriended and aided by Seneca. Martial lived more than three decades in Rome before returning to Spain. His poetry reflects the poet's ambivalent relationship with the city, which he appears to have disliked for its artificiality and conventionality, but upon which he and his poetry thrived. Martial's poems, written between 80 and 102, are collected and published in twelve books as *Epigrammata* (Epigrams). The poems are composed in a variety of meters, but the elegiac couplet is most common. Martial owes much to Catullus and the neoteric ideals of brevity and wit. His poems are often light, satiric in nature (though there are exceptions), and concerned with everyday events. He offers vignettes of Roman life and human behavior, and his poems are filled with vain and petty people—rulers, legacy hunters, bad poets, etc.—most of whom are typecast, satirized, and thus immortalized by Martial's wit.

7 For these and all biographical and literary notes, the authors are indebted to G. B. Conte, *Latin Literature: A History* (Johns Hopkins, 1994).

CHAPTER V

Vocabulary

- **amicitia, amicitiae** *f.* friendship
 - **inimicitia, inimicitiae** *f.* enmity, hostility
- **fātum, fātī** *n.* destiny, fate; *in pl. (often),* death
 - **proelium, proeliū** *n.* battle
- —, **meī** (reflexive pron.) myself (§44)
- —, **nostrum/nostri** (reflexive pron.) ourselves (§44)
- —, **tui** (reflexive pron.) yourself (§44)
- —, **vestrum/estri** (reflexive pron.) yourselves (§44)
- —, **sui** (reflexive pron.) himself, herself, itself; themselves (§44)
- **accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptus** receive; accept; hear (of), learn (of)
- **cēdō, cēdere, cessi, cessum** go, move; yield; withdraw
 - **accēdō, accēdere, accessi, accessum** go or come to, approach
 - **discēdō, discēdere, discessi, discessum** go away, depart
- **interficiō, interficere, interfēci, interfectus** kill
- **perficiō, perficere, perfēci, perfectus** complete, accomplish
- **abeō, abire, abiī, abiturum** go away
- **ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus** bring, bear, carry, endure (§43)
- **memini, meminisse** (defective verb) remember, be mindful (of)
- **ōdī, ōdisse** (defective verb) hate
- **redeō, redire, rediī, reditum** go back, return
- dūrus, -a, -um** hard; harsh
- ipse, ipsa, ipsum** (intensive adj.) -self selves; very (§46)
- meus, -a, -um** my (own) (§45)
- noster, nostra, nostrum** our (own) (§45)
- **pius, -a, -um** dutiful, loyal
 - **impius, -a, -um** disloyal, wicked
- suus, -a, -um** his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own) (§45)
- tuus, -a, -um** your (own) (§45)
- vester, vestra, vestrum** your (pl.) (own) (§45)
- bene** (adv.) well
- etsi** (conj.) although
- **male** (adv.) badly
- multum** (adv.) much, a lot
- nisi** (conj.) if . . . not, unless
- postquam** (conj.) after
- quamquam** (conj.) although
- quoniam** (conj.) since, because
- si** (conj.) if
- **sic** (adv.) thus, so, in this way, in such a way
- **tamen** (adv.) nevertheless
- **ubi** (conj.) when, (interrog. adv.) where, when
- **ut** (conj.) as; when

Vocabulary Notes

amicitia, amicitiae f and *inimicitia, inimicitiae f* are both abstract nouns. They are formed by the addition of the suffix *-tia* to the stems of *amicus, a, -um* and *inimicus, a, -um*. All abstract nouns of this type are thus first declension nouns. A suffix (< *suffigō*, fasten beneath [as a support]) is a unit of meaning added to the end of a word to produce another word.

inimicitia usually appears in the plural to indicate not the abstract notion of "enmity" but a concrete instance of it. The plural may be translated "unfriendly relations," "enmity."

fātum, fātī n is derived from a verb that means "utter"; hence, its basic meaning is an "utterance" (cf. *fama*). Through the meaning of "prophetic utterance" or "oracle" it came to mean "destiny" or "fate." The plural often means "ill fate" and thus "death." When capitalized in the plural *Fāta* refers to the divine "Fates."

—, *meī*; —, *nostrum/nostrī*; —, *tuī*; —, *vestrum/vestrī*; and —, *sui* are *reflexive pronouns*. Because they are reflexive pronouns, they do *not* have nominative forms. MEMORIZE A BLANK IN PLACE OF A NOMINATIVE SINGULAR. For the forms and meanings of these words see §44.

Compound Verbs, Prefixes, Assimilation, and Vowel Weakening

A compound verb (< *compōnō*, put together) is a verb formed from the combination of a simple, or uncompounded, verb and a *prefix*. A prefix (< *praefigō*, fasten in front) is a unit of meaning added to the beginning of a word to produce another word. Most prefixes in Latin are derived from adverbs, and many prefixes have corresponding prepositions. A prefix has a basic meaning, and the meaning of a compound Latin verb can sometimes be deduced by combining the meaning of the simple verb with the basic meaning of the prefix. Thus *accēdō* is a compound formed by the addition of the prefix *ad-* (to, toward) to *cēdō, cēdere, cessi, cessum* "go," and this compound means "go toward," "approach." However, the meanings of many compound verbs cannot be deduced in this way, and for this reason compound verbs are given as separate vocabulary entries. The basic meanings of the prefixes used to form compounds are given in Appendix P.

When a prefix is combined with a simple verb, two kinds of phonetic change¹ may occur: *assimilation* and *vowel weakening*. Assimilation (< *assimilō*, make similar to) occurs when the prefix ends in a consonant and that consonant changes to become similar to or identical with the sound of the first consonant of the simple verb. For example: *ad* + *cēdō* > *accēdō*. The *-d* at the end of *ad* assimilates to the *c* at the beginning of *cēdō*.

Vowel weakening refers to the change in the *quality* of the vowel of a stem. For example: *ad* + *capio* > *accipio*. When the compound *accipio* was formed, the addition of the prefix *ad-* to *capio* caused the *-a-* of the stem *cap-* to change (weaken) into *-i-*. Vowel weakening is due to an earlier accentual system in Latin, whereby only the first syllable of a word was stressed. The other, unstressed syllables were regularly pronounced more weakly than they would have been if accented. When the first syllable of a simple verb was no longer the initial syllable (because of the addition of a prefix), it was more weakly pronounced.

The vowels of Latin (as of English) are regularly represented by the vowel triangle:



The vowel *a* is described as *open* because the tongue is placed at the bottom of the mouth, and the mouth is as open as possible when it is pronounced. The vowels *i* and *u* at the bottom of the triangle are described as *closed* because the tongue is raised when the vowels are pronounced and the mouth is more closed. *e* and *o* are in between. When vowel weakening occurs, open vowels become more closed. When initial vowels become medial (i.e., not first), the following instances of vowel weakening are most frequent:

a → i before a single consonant except <i>h</i>	Example: per + <i>faciō</i> = <i>perficiō</i>
a → e before two consonants and before <i>h</i>	per + <i>faciō</i> = <i>perficiō</i>
e → i before a single consonant except <i>h</i>	per + <i>faciō</i> = <i>perficiō</i>

There are compound verbs in which vowel weakening does *not* occur. The compounds of *audiō, dūcō, gerō, mitto, movē, pōnō, scribo, sentiō, veniō, and video*—all verbs from previous chapters—do *not* show vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF ONE OF THESE VERBS APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE

1. A phonetic change is an alteration in pronunciation with a corresponding change in spelling.

NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN. Instances of vowel weakening or retention of the simple verb within the compound are cited in the vocabulary notes.

The concepts and rules of assimilation and vowel weakening highlight and explain the similarities between sets of principal parts. (Cf. *perficiō, perficere, perfēci perfectus* with *interficiō, interficere, interfēci, interfectus*.) Familiarity with these rules will aid in the speedy acquisition of new vocabulary by making similarities in patterns of principal parts more apparent and by making it possible to anticipate the patterns of other compound verbs.

accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *ad-* to *capiō*, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. (For the prefix *ad-* see Appendix P.) Its basic meaning is "take to oneself," "receive." *Accipiō* may also mean "hear (of)" (receive through one's ears). By extension of this meaning *accipiō* may refer to *understanding* information received and thus may mean "learn (of)." Compare *audiō*, whose meaning is more restricted. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF *CAPIŌ* FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF *ACCIPIO*. WHEN A COMPOUND OF *CAPIO* APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

cēdō, cedere, cessi, cessum is an intransitive verb. In addition to its basic meaning of "go" or "move," it may mean "yield" to a person or idea or "withdraw" from a place or activity. Compounds of *cēdō* do not exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF *CEDŌ* APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

accēdō, accēdere, accessi, accessum is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *ad-* to *cēdō*, and its basic meaning is "go to" or "come to." (For the prefix *ad-* see Appendix P.) *Accēdō* is usually intransitive in prose authors and is regularly followed by *ad* + accusative. The preposition *ad* repeats the prefix *ad-* and often cannot be translated.

Auxilia ad oppidum accedebant. The auxiliary troops were approaching (toward) the town.

discēdō, discēdere, discessi, discessum is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *dis-* to *cēdō*. (For the prefix *dis-* see Appendix P.) It is an intransitive verb.

interficiō, interficere, interfēci, interfectus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *inter-* to *faciō*, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. (For the prefix *inter-* see Appendix P.)

perficiō, perficere, perfēci, perfectus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *per-* to *faciō*, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. (For the prefix *per-* see Appendix P.) THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF *FACIO* FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF *INTERFICIO* AND *PERFICIO*. WHEN A COMPOUND OF *FACIO* APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

abēō, abire, abiī, abitum is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *ab-* to the irregular verb *eō* and its basic meaning is "go away." (For the prefix *ab-* see Appendix P.) *abēō* conjugates exactly as *eō* except that it has only one third principal part. For the forms of *eō* in the perfect active indicative, see §41.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus is a third conjugation verb with certain irregular forms in the present system (see §43). *ferō* derives from two PIE roots: *bher- and *telA-. *Ferō* may mean "bring," "bear," or "carry," and by extension "endure" (hardships, troubles). *Ferō* may also mean "say," "report," particularly when a common story or a myth is being reported. When *ferō* takes a reflexive pronoun as a direct object, the combination may mean "proceed (quickly)," "go."

Auxilium viris provinciae fero. I am bringing aid to the men of the province.
Multa mala tulī. I have endured many evil things.
Me ad provinciam ferebam. I was proceeding (quickly) to the province.

meminī, meminisse is a defective verb, a verb that lacks certain normal inflected forms. *Meminī* has forms of the perfect active system *only* (perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect). However, the *perfect* forms are translated as if they were *present*, the *pluperfect* forms as if they were *imperfect*, and the *future perfect* forms as if they were *future*. The first principal part is the first person singular perfect active indicative, and thus the perfect stem is *memin-*. The second principal part *meminisse* is the perfect active infinitive (see §104), but it is translated as if it were the present active infinitive (to remember).

meminī often takes an Objective Genitive.² *Meminī* may also take an Accusative, Direct Object, particularly when the object is a neuter pronoun. It may also take an Object Infinitive.

2. The Objective Genitive that appears with *meminī* is also called the Genitive with Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting.

§40. The Perfect Active System

Since the present, imperfect, and future active and passive indicative of all conjugations are formed with a stem taken from the second principal part (present active infinitive), it is convenient to say that these tenses belong to the present system of the verb (see §8).

The remaining three tenses of the active indicative, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, are said to belong to the **perfect active system** because they are all formed with a stem taken from the third principal part (first person singular perfect active indicative).

Each of the three tenses of the perfect active system (perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect) is formed in the same way for *all* verbs of *all* conjugations *and* for *sum* and *possum*.

Finding the Perfect Active Stem

For all verbs the stem for the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect active indicative is found by removing the ending *-i* from the third principal part. This stem is called the **perfect active stem**. For example:

vocō, vocare, vocavi, vocatus call	Perfect Active Stem:	vocav-
moveō, movere, movi, motus move	Perfect Active Stem:	mov-
regō, regere, rexī, rectus rule	Perfect Active Stem:	rex-
capō, capere, cepi, captus take	Perfect Active Stem:	cep-
audiō, audire, audivi, auditus hear	Perfect Active Stem:	audiv-
sum, esse, fui, futurus be	Perfect Active Stem:	fu-
possum, posse, potui, — be able	Perfect Active Stem:	potu-

§41. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Active Indicative of All Verbs

Perfect Active Indicative of All Verbs

To form the perfect active indicative of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect active stem (by removing the ending *-i* from the third principal part)
2. add the perfect active personal endings directly to the perfect active stem

The perfect active personal endings are:

Person	Singular	Plural
1st	-i	-imus
2nd	-isti	-istis
3rd	-it	-erunt or -ere

OBSERVATIONS

- 1 The perfect active personal endings are used to form the perfect active indicative of *all* verbs in Latin. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS AND BE PREPARED TO RECITE THEM QUICKLY.
- 2 There are two possible endings in the third person plural, *-erunt* or *-ere*. *-ere* is the older ending, and certain authors in all periods preferred it to *-erunt*. There is no distinction in meaning. MEMORIZE BOTH ENDINGS.

Thus the perfect active indicative conjugation of, for example, *regō* is:

Perfect Active Stem: <i>rex-</i>	
<i>Singular</i>	
1 <i>rexī</i>	I ruled; I have ruled
2 <i>rexisti</i>	you ruled; you have ruled
3 <i>rexit</i>	he, she, it ruled; he, she, it has ruled
<i>Plural</i>	
1 <i>reximus</i>	we ruled; we have ruled
2 <i>rexistis</i>	you (pl.) ruled; you (pl.) have ruled
3 <i>rexerunt/rexere</i>	they ruled; they have ruled

OBSERVATIONS

1. The first person singular perfect active indicative is the third principal part.
2. The perfect is the only tense of the indicative that has two different times with two different aspects (see §6). It is therefore important always to keep in mind two translations. For example, *rexī* may be translated "I ruled" (past time, simple aspect) or "I have ruled" (present time, completed aspect). Context helps to determine which translation is correct.

Eō has two third principal parts, *ii* and *ivī*, with two corresponding perfect active stems, *i-* and *iv-*. The perfect active indicative conjugation formed from *iv-* is regular, but the conjugation formed from *i-* displays certain irregularities. MEMORIZE THIS CONJUGATION.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1 <i>ii</i>	<i>imus/imus</i>
2 <i>isti</i>	<i>istis</i>
3 <i>it/it</i>	<i>erunt/ere</i>

OBSERVATION

The second person singular and plural perfect active indicative forms (*isti*, *istis*) are contractions of the stem, *i-*, with the endings *-isti* and *-istis*. The third person singular and first person plural perfect active indicative may be contracted (*it*, *imus*) or uncontracted (*it*, *imus*). The *-i-* of it does not shorten before final *-t*.

Pluperfect Active Indicative of All Verbs

To form the pluperfect active indicative of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect active stem (by removing the ending *-i* from the third principal part)
2. add the infix *-era-*
3. add the active personal endings (use *-m* for first person singular)

Thus the pluperfect active indicative conjugation of, for example, *regō* is.

Perfect Active Stem:	<i>rēx-</i>
Infix:	<i>-erā-</i>
<i>Singular:</i>	
1. <i>rēxeram</i>	I had ruled
2. <i>rēxeras</i>	you had ruled
3. <i>rēxerat</i>	he, she, it had ruled
<i>Plural:</i>	
1. <i>rēxerāmus</i>	we had ruled
2. <i>rēxerātis</i>	you (pl.) had ruled
3. <i>rēxerant</i>	they had ruled

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular, third person singular, and third person plural, the *-ā-* of the infix shortens according to the long vowel rule.
2. The pluperfect active indicative conjugation may also be viewed as the perfect active stem plus the imperfect active indicative of *sum*. For example: *rēxeram* = *rēx-* + *eram*.
3. The English word "had" is *always* used in translating the pluperfect indicative. This tense is used to indicate an event that was completed *before another past event*. The pluperfect tense has past time with completed aspect.
4. The pluperfect active indicative conjugation of *eo* is *regularly* formed from *both* stems.

Future Perfect Active Indicative of All Verbs

To form the future perfect active indicative of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect active stem (by removing the ending *-i* from the third principal part)
2. add the infix *-eri-*
3. add the active personal endings (use *-ō* for first person singular)

Thus the future perfect active indicative conjugation of, for example, *regō* is:

Perfect Active Stem:	<i>rēx-</i>
Infix:	<i>-eri-</i>
<i>Singular:</i>	
1. <i>rēxerō</i>	I shall have ruled
2. <i>rēxeris</i>	you will have ruled
3. <i>rēxerit</i>	he, she, it will have ruled
<i>Plural:</i>	
1. <i>rēxerimus</i>	we shall have ruled
2. <i>rēxeritis</i>	you (pl.) will have ruled
3. <i>rēxerint</i>	they will have ruled

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular, the *-i-* of the infix *-eri-* contracts with the ending *-ō* (**rēxeriō* > *rēxerō*).
2. The future perfect active indicative conjugation may also be viewed as the perfect active stem plus the future active indicative of *sum*. For example: *rēxerō* = *rēx-* + *erō* (Note, however, that the third person plural form is *rēxerint*.)

3. The future perfect indicative is used to indicate an event that will be completed at a future time. It has future time with completed aspect.
4. The future perfect active indicative conjugation of *eo* is *regularly formed from both stems*.

§42. Synopsis III: Present Indicative System, Perfect Active Indicative System, Infinitive, and Imperative

Here is a model synopsis of *sentiō* in the third person plural. It includes the forms of the perfect active indicative system.

[illegible]

OBSERVATIONS

1. This synopsis reviews the present indicative system, the perfect active indicative system, the present active and passive infinitive, and the present active and passive imperative. When new verb forms are introduced, the synopsis will expand accordingly.
2. In a synopsis basic English translations should be given. Note that the perfect indicative requires two translations because it can be either past time with simple aspect or present time with completed aspect.
3. Imperatives appear in the second person singular and plural only. Always give the second person singular and plural imperative forms no matter what person and number have been chosen for the remaining forms.

• DRILL 40-42 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§43. The Irregular Third-Conjugation Verb *ferō*

The verb *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus* "bring, bear, carry; endure" is a third-conjugation verb with certain irregular forms in the present indicative, present infinitive, and present imperative, which are *italicized* below. These irregular forms *lack the stem vowel*, but the remaining forms of the present system are conjugated regularly as if the present stem were *ferē-*. All the forms of the perfect active system are *regular*. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING FORMS.

Singular		Plural	
1	<i>ferō</i>	1	<i>ferimur</i>
2	<i>fers</i>	2	<i>fermini</i>
3	<i>fert</i>	3	<i>ferunt</i>
Present Infinitive		Present Imperative	
1	<i>ferre</i>	1	<i>fer</i>
2	<i>ferite</i>	2	<i>ferite</i>
3	<i>ferant</i>	3	<i>ferant</i>

◆ DRILL 43 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§44. Reflexive Pronouns

A reflexive pronoun *bends back* (< *reflectō*, bend back) or *refers to the subject* of the clause or sentence in which it appears. For example:

I saw *myself* in the mirror.

The women spoke among *themselves*.

Each italicized word is a reflexive pronoun because it *refers to the subject* of the sentence in which it appears.

In Latin, reflexive pronouns for the first and second persons borrow the forms of the personal pronouns.

First Person			Second Person		
Singular			Singular		
Nom.	—	—	—	—	—
Gen.	<i>mei</i>	of myself	<i>tui</i>	of yourself	
Dat.	<i>mihi</i>	to/for myself	<i>tibi</i>	to/for yourself	
Acc.	<i>me</i>	myself (d.o.)	<i>te</i>	you (d.o.)	
Abl.	<i>me</i>	from myself (etc.)	<i>te</i>	from yourself (etc.)	
Plural			Plural		
Nom.	—	—	—	—	—
Gen.	<i>nostrum/</i> <i>nostrī</i>	of ourselves	<i>vestrum/</i> <i>vestrī</i>	of yourselves	
Dat.	<i>nobis</i>	to/for ourselves	<i>vobis</i>	to/for yourselves	
Acc.	<i>nos</i>	ourselves (d.o.)	<i>vos</i>	yourselves (d.o.)	
Abl.	<i>nobis</i>	from ourselves (etc.)	<i>vos</i>	from yourselves (etc.)	

OBSERVATIONS

1. There are no nominative forms of the reflexive pronouns because reflexive pronouns *refer to but never are* the subjects of clauses or sentences in which they appear.
2. The genitive forms of reflexive pronouns, like those of personal pronouns, can be used as Partitive or Objective Genitives *only*.
3. Note the difference in the English translation between the personal pronouns and the reflexive pronouns in the first and second persons. For example:

<i>Mē videt.</i>	He sees <i>me</i> . (<i>mē</i> is a personal pron.)
<i>Mē vīdē.</i>	I see <i>myself</i> . (<i>mē</i> is a reflexive pron.)

4. When a first- or second person reflexive pronoun functions as an Ablative of Accompaniment, the preposition *cum* is attached directly to the pronoun. Thus *mēcum* (with myself), *nōbiscum* (with ourselves), *tēcum* (with yourself), and *vōbiscum* (with yourselves).

For the third person *one* reflexive pronoun functions as both the singular and the plural. The third-person reflexive pronoun is *not* borrowed from the third-person personal pronoun and must be memorized.

Third Person		
Singular/Plural		
Nom.		
Gen.	<i>sui</i>	of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves
Dat.	<i>sibi</i>	to/for himself, to/for herself, to/for itself, to/for themselves
Acc.	<i>sē, sēsē</i>	himself (d.o.), herself (d.o.), itself (d.o.), themselves (d.o.)
Abl.	<i>sē, sēsē</i>	from himself, from herself, from itself, from themselves (etc.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. There is no nominative form of the third-person reflexive pronoun because reflexive pronouns *refer to but never are* the subjects of clauses or sentences in which they appear.
2. The alternate accusative and ablative forms *sē* and *sēsē* are interchangeable, although originally *sēsē* may have conveyed greater emphasis.
3. The correct translation of the third person reflexive pronoun is determined by the subject. For example:

<i>Puer sē in periculō pōnit.</i>	The boy is putting <i>himself</i> in danger.
<i>Incolae sē regēbant.</i>	The inhabitants were ruling <i>themselves</i> .

4. Like the genitive forms of personal pronouns, the genitive form of the third-person reflexive pronoun can be used as Partitive or Objective Genitive *only*.
5. When a third-person reflexive pronoun functions as an Ablative of Accompaniment, the preposition *cum* is attached directly to the pronoun. Thus, *sēcum* (with himself, with herself, with itself, or with themselves).
6. The third-person personal pronoun and the third person reflexive pronoun differ in both form and English translation. For example:

<i>Eum videt.</i>	He (person A) sees <i>him</i> (person B). (<i>eum</i> is a personal pron.)
<i>Sē videt.</i>	He sees <i>himself</i> . (<i>sē</i> is a reflexive pron.)

§45. Reflexive-Possessive Adjectives

The genitive forms of the reflexive pronouns are *not* used to express possession. There are instead reflexive-possessive adjectives that correspond to each reflexive pronoun.

Reflexive Pronoun			Reflexive-Possessive Adjective		
— me	of myself, etc.		meus, -a, -um	my (own)	
— nostrum/nostri	of ourselves, etc.		noster, nostra, nostrum	our (own)	
— tu	of yourself, etc.		tuus, -a, -um	your (own)	
— vestrum/vestri	of yourselves, etc.		vester, vestra, vestrum	your (pl.) (own)	
— sui	of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves, etc.		suius, -a, -um	his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own)	

OBSERVATIONS

- 1 The first- and second-person reflexive-possessive adjectives are borrowed from the possessive adjectives and differ in translation only. For example.

Meos librōs habes. You have my books. (*meos* is a possessive adj.)

Meos librōs habeo. I have my (own) books. (*meos* is a reflexive-possessive adj.)

- 2 The third-person reflexive-possessive adjective is *not* borrowed from a possessive adjective form, and it is used for both singular and plural. For example

Suam patriam amat. She loves her (own) homeland.

Suam patriam laudant. They praise their (own) homeland.

§46. The Intensive Adjective *ipse, ipsa, ipsum*

ipse, ipsa, ipsum is an intensive adjective. An intensive adjective emphasizes or intensifies the noun it modifies.³ MEMORIZE ITS DECLENSION ACROSS THE SINGULAR AND THEN ACROSS THE PLURAL.

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsorum	ipsarum	ipsorum
Dat.	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsos	ipsas	ipsa
Abl.	ipso	ipsa	ipso	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

OBSERVATIONS

- 1 *Ipe* does not have vocative forms.
- 2 The declension of *ipse* differs from that of ordinary first-second-declension adjectives in the genitive and dative singular *only*.

The translation of *ipse* depends on the word it modifies or replaces. Words such as "himself," "herself," "itself," or "themselves" may be used. When *ipse* modifies the

³ *Ipe* is used rarely as a substantive. When *ipse* is used as a substantive, it is sometimes called an intensive pronoun.

unexpressed subject of a verb phrases such as "I myself," "he himself," "she herself," "they themselves" may be used. For example:

<i>Catilina ipse ad provinciam it.</i>	Catiline himself is going to the province.
<i>Ipsa ad provinciam itam.</i>	I myself (it.) was going to the province.
<i>Antōnius causam ipsam cogitat.</i>	Antony is pondering the case itself.

Ipse may also serve to identify a particular person or thing and may then be translated "very."

<i>In ipsis agris reginae eram.</i>	I was in the very fields of the queen.
-------------------------------------	--

Ipse often appears in sentences containing reflexive pronouns and modifies the subject or the reflexive pronoun. For example:

<i>Ipse pro se pugnabat.</i>	He himself was fighting for himself.
<i>Pro se ipso pugnabat.</i>	He was fighting for his very self.

In the first sentence, *ipse* intensifies the subject of the verbal action (he). In the second sentence, *ipso* intensifies the reflexive pronoun (himself).

☛ DRILL 44-46 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§47. Adverbs I

An adverb may modify a verb, an adjective, or another adverb. Some examples of English adverbs are "not," "happily," "well," "very." Many Latin words are identified as adverbs in the vocabulary entries, but other adverbs may be formed from adjectives.

To form adverbs from first-second-declension adjectives.

1. take the stem (by dropping the ending of the feminine singular nominative)
2. add the ending -ē

Thus, for example:

Adjective	Stem	Adverb	
<i>altus, alta, altum</i>	<i>alt-</i>	<i>alte</i>	highly, deeply
<i>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum</i>	<i>pulchr-</i>	<i>pulchre</i>	beautifully

Some first second declension adjectives do not have corresponding adverbs, and some have irregularly formed adverbs. MEMORIZE THESE COMMON IRREGULAR ADVERBS:

Adjective	Irregular Adverb	
<i>multus, -a, -um</i>	<i>multum</i>	much, a lot
<i>bonus, -a, -um</i>	<i>bene</i>	well
<i>malus, -a, -um</i>	<i>male</i>	badly
<i>validus, -a, -um</i>	<i>valide</i>	strongly (regularly formed)
	<i>valde</i>	strongly (irregularly formed)

OBSERVATION

Certain adjectives, such as *validus* -a, -um, have both a regularly and an irregularly formed adverb. Irregularities such as these will be mentioned in the vocabulary notes.⁴

Adverbs are usually placed directly before the words they modify. For example.

<i>Puellam non amo.</i>	The girl (d.n.) I do not love. (<i>non</i> modifies <i>amo</i>) I do not love the girl.
<i>Poeta pulchre canebat.</i>	The poet beautifully was singing. (<i>pulchre</i> modifies <i>canebat</i>) The poet was singing beautifully.

Note that the Ablative of Manner (see §26) represents an alternate way of expressing an adverbial idea. The Ablative of Manner, however, requires a *noun* in the ablative case and most often modifies verbs.

When certain adjectives modify the subjects (usually *not* expressed) of verbs, they may have the force of adverbs. For example:

<i>Vela dabant laeti.</i>	They were setting sail, happy. They were setting sail happily.
---------------------------	---

◆ DRILL 47 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§48. Subordinate Clauses I

In Latin, as in English, there are three types of sentences: *simple*, *compound*, and *complex*. A **simple sentence** has one subject and one predicate (e.g. I cooked the dinner). A **compound sentence** has more than one subject and predicate joined by a coordinating conjunction such as "and," "but," "or," "for," "nor" (e.g., I cooked the dinner, and you slept). A **complex sentence** has one or more than one independent clause combined with one or more than one dependent clause (e.g., When I was cooking the dinner, you were sleeping).

Simple and compound sentences contain *independent clauses* only, but complex sentences contain *dependent* or *subordinate clauses* as well. An **independent clause** contains a *subject* and a *verb* and expresses a complete thought, and it *may stand alone* as a simple sentence. If it is part of a larger sentence, an independent clause is often called a **main clause**. A **dependent** or **subordinate clause** contains a *subject* and a *verb*, but it *cannot stand alone* as a complete sentence.

Subordinate clauses in both Latin and English are introduced by a wide variety of *subordinating conjunctions*. A **subordinating conjunction** is a conjunction that introduces a subordinate clause. The Latin subordinating conjunctions introduced in this chapter and their corresponding English meanings are:

4. In the case of *valde*, the stress on the antepenult (*válide*) resulted in a weakly pronounced penult, and the unstressed penult eventually dropped out altogether. The loss of a syllable in the middle of a word is called *syncope* (< Greek *synkope*, cutting together). For a similar development compare Latin *tabula* with its English derivative, "table."

Latin	English	Type of Clause Introduced
postquam	after	Temporal
ut	as, when	Temporal
ubi	when	Temporal
quoniam	since, because	Causal
etsi	although	Concessive
quamquam	although	Concessive
si	if	Conditional
nisi	if . . . not, unless	Conditional

OBSERVATION

The subordinating conjunctions in this chapter introduce four types of subordinate clauses: *temporal*, *causal*, *concessive*, and *conditional*. A *temporal* clause indicates a particular *relation in time* of the event in the subordinate clause to the event in the main clause. A *causal* clause gives the *reason* for the event in the main clause. A *concessive* clause reports an event *in spite of which* the event in the main clause occurs. A *conditional* clause states a *condition under which* the event in the main clause occurs.

A subordinate clause in a complex sentence in either English or Latin may appear either before or after the main clause:

Ubi dixit, audiebam.	When he spoke, I was listening.
Audiebam ubi dixit.	I was listening when he spoke.

When the subordinate clause precedes the main clause, it is set off by a comma. When the subordinate clause follows the main clause, most often no comma is used.

In Latin, when an expressed subject is common to both the subordinate clause and the main clause, the order is often as follows:

Rēgina, quoniam bellum gerebat, arma optabat.
The queen, since war (d.o.) she was waging, arms (d.o.) was desiring.
The queen, since she was waging war, was desiring arms.
Since the queen was waging war, she was desiring arms.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The placement of *rēgina* in first position signals that this word is the subject of *both* the verb in the *main* clause *and* the verb in the *subordinate* clause. For greater cohesion and economy—*rēgina* does not have to be repeated in the subordinate clause—the main clause *rēgina arma optabat* surrounds the subordinate clause.
2. The third translation given above is to be preferred for correct English and requires the addition of the English pronoun “she” to begin the main clause.

☛ DRILL 48 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§49. Conditional Sentences I

A **conditional sentence** is the name given to a complex sentence that includes a *condition* or conditional clause—a type of subordinate clause—and a main clause. For example:

If he has friends, he does not desire money.

If he had friends, he was not desiring money.

If we capture the town, the poets will sing of our deeds.

If we had captured the town, the poets would have sung of our deeds.

The italicized portion of each of these sentences states the condition that must occur in order for the main clause to occur. For example, *only* “if we capture the town” will “the poet sing of our deeds.” The subordinate clause or “if clause” of a conditional sentence is called a **protasis** (< Greek *protasis*, proposition). The main clause is called an **apodosis** (< Greek *apodosis*, giving back, return). Both in Latin and in English the protasis may precede or follow the apodosis. For example:

Protasis	Apodosis
If he has friends	he does not desire money
Apodosis	Protasis
He does not desire money	if he has friends.

There are three classes of conditional sentences in Latin: *simple*, *future*, and *contrary-to-fact*. **Simple** conditional sentences make statements of fact about present or past time (the first two sentences above are simple conditional sentences). **Future** conditional sentences make statements about the future (the third sentence above is a future conditional sentence). **Contrary-to-Fact** conditional sentences make statements that suppose that the actions of both the protasis and the apodosis *are not occurring now or did not occur in the past* (the fourth sentence above is a contrary-to-fact conditional sentence). In this section only simple and future conditional sentences in Latin are introduced.⁵ The protases of *all* kinds of conditional sentences in Latin are most commonly introduced by *sī* (if) or *nisi* (if . . . not, unless).

Simple Conditional Sentences

Simple conditional sentences are of two types: *present* or *past*. In a **Present Simple** conditional sentence, the verbs of both the protasis and the apodosis are in the *present indicative*. In a **Past Simple** conditional sentence, the verbs of both the protasis and the apodosis are in *any past tense of the indicative*. The first two sentences above would be rendered in Latin as follows:

Sī amicos habet, pecuniam non optat. (Present Simple)

If he *has* friends, he *does not desire* money.

Sī amicos habebat, pecuniam non optabat. (Past Simple)

If he *(repeatedly) had* friends, he *(repeatedly) did not desire* money.

⁵ For contrary-to-fact conditional sentences, see §68.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Simple conditional sentences make simple factual statements about the present or the past in the indicative mood, the mood used to express something as factual. They may have a particular meaning, stating something about a particular moment in time, or a generalizing meaning, making a general statement. Context helps to determine whether a simple conditional sentence is particular or general.
2. The syntax of, for example, *habēbat* is imperfect indicative in the protasis of a Past Simple conditional sentence.⁶

Future More Vivid Conditional Sentences

One kind of future conditional sentence is called the **Future More Vivid** because it vividly imagines future events in the indicative mood.⁷ In a Future More Vivid conditional sentence, the verbs of both the protasis and the apodosis are in the *future indicative*. The third sentence above would be rendered in Latin as follows:

Si oppidum capiemus, poetae nostra facta canent.
 If we shall capture the town, the poets will sing of our deeds.
 If we capture the town, the poets will sing of our deeds.

OBSERVATIONS

1. A Future More Vivid conditional sentence in Latin requires the future indicative in both the protasis and the apodosis because both events will occur in the future. The second translation above is to be preferred, however, since it is common to use an *English present tense* when translating the protasis. The English phrase “if we capture” is understood to refer to future time because the verb in the main clause clearly indicates future time.
2. The syntax of, for example, *canent* is future indicative in the apodosis of a Future More Vivid conditional sentence.

The *future perfect indicative* may sometimes appear in the protasis of a future conditional sentence in combination with a *future indicative* in the apodosis. Such a conditional sentence is called a **Future More Vivid with Emphatic Protasis**. The future perfect may emphasize the speed or completeness with which the action in the protasis will be done. For example:

Si oppidum cēperimus, poetae nostra facta canent.
 If we shall have captured the town, the poets will sing of our deeds.
 If we capture the town, the poets will sing of our deeds.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Since English cannot easily express the special emphasis indicated by the future perfect in the protasis, once again the *English present tense* is to be preferred in translation. Thus the translations of Future More Vivid and Future More Vivid with Emphatic Protasis conditional sentences are the same.
2. The syntax of, for example, *cēperimus* is future perfect indicative in the protasis of a Future More Vivid conditional sentence with Emphatic Protasis.

6. The syntax of a verb comprises tense, mood, reason for mood, and reason for tense.

7. For Future Less Vivid conditional sentences, see §68.

In all future conditional sentences, it is possible to replace the future indicative in the apodosis with an *imperative* since commands look to future time. For example:

Si regnam videre optabis, veni ad forum.
If the queen (do) to see you desire, come to the forum.
If you desire to see the queen, come to the forum.

OBSERVATION

In this sentence the imperative *veni* is used instead of a future indicative in the apodosis of a Future More Vivid conditional sentence.

Summary of Conditional Sentences		
Name	Verbs in Latin	Verbs in English ⁸
Present Simple	Present Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis	NO SPECIAL TRANSLATION
Past Simple	Any Past Tense of the Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis	NO SPECIAL TRANSLATION
Future More Vivid	Future Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis	Present (does) in Protasis, Future (will do) in Apodosis
Future More Vivid with Emphatic Protasis ¹⁰	Future Perfect Indicative in Protasis, Future Indicative in Apodosis	Present (does) in Protasis, future (will do) in Apodosis

☛ DRILL 49 MAY NOW BE DONE.

8. The model verb "do" is used to indicate English translation formulas.

9. This name is commonly abbreviated FMV.

10. This name is commonly abbreviated FMVE.

Short Readings

1. A quick exchange between two slaves

Eucio: Tacē atque abī intrō. Staphyla: Taceō atque abeō. (PLAUTUS, AULULARIA 103)

intro (adv.) within, inside

taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitūrus be silent, keep silent

2. An example of Ennian alliteration in a scornful remark perhaps uttered by Romulus against Titus Tatius a Sabine king

Ō Tite, tūte, Tatī, tibi tanta, tyranne, tulisti. (ENNIUS, ANNALĒS I 104)

tantus, -a, -um so great, so much

Titus Tatius, Titi Tatii m. Titus Tatius

tūte = emphatic form of *tū*

tyrannus, tyrannī m. monarch absolute ruler

3. Cato gives a summary of the essence of agriculture.

quid est agrum bene colere? bene arāre quid est secundum? arare. quid tertium?

stercorāre. (CATO, DE AGRI CULTURĀ 61)

arō (1-tr.) plough, till

colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate, tend

quid = *neut. sing. nom. of interrog. pron.*, what

secundus, -a, -um second

stercorō (1-tr.) spread manure

tertius, -a, -um third

4. The orator identifies what is of value to the Romans.

odit populus Romānus privātam luxuriā, publicā magnificentiam diligit

(CICERO, PRO MURĒNA 76)

diligō, diligere, dilexi, dilectus value, esteem, love

luxuria luxuriāe f. extravagance, excess, luxury

magnificentia, magnificentiae f. magnificence, sumptuousness

privātus, -a, -um private

pūblicus, -a, -um public

5. A remark in a letter of Cicero after he has asked a friend to attend to some business for him

nōs, cum salvī vēnerimus, reliqua per nōs agēmus. (CICERO, AD FAMILIARĒS XIV.5.2)*

**cum, here (conj.)* when

reliquus -a, -um remaining, rest (of)

salvus -a, -um safe, sound

6. A Roman proverb

Avārus miseriae causa est suae. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, SENTENTIAE A14)

avārus, -a, -um greedy

miseria, miseriae f. misery

7. The poet concludes a poem to a wealthy but always worried friend, who insists on trying to make the poet worry as well.

ut tū fortunam, sic nōs tē, Celse, feremus. (HORACE, *EPISTULAE* I.8.17)

Celsus, Celsi *m.* Celsus
fortūna, fortunae *f.* fortune

8. The poet describes an emotional difficulty.

ōderō sī poterō, sī non, invitus amābō. (OVID, *AMŌRES* III.11.35)

invitus, -a, -um unwilling

9. A portion of Queen Clytaemnestra's soliloquy

tēcum ipsa nunc ēvolve fēmineōs dolōs . . . (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 116)

dolus, dolī *m.* deceit, trick, cunning
ēvolvō, ēvolvere, ēvolvi, ēvolutus unroll, turn over (in one's mind)
fēmineus, -a, -um of or belonging to a woman, feminine

10. When Clytaemnestra hesitates to carry through their deadly plan, her lover and partner-in-crime, Aegisthus, urges her to action.

nec rēgna socium ferre nec taedae sciunt. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 259)

rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm
sciō, scīre, scīvi or scī, scitus know (how to) (+ infin.)
taeda, taedae *f.* (marriage) torch

11. Aegisthus speaks bravely about the possible consequences of his planned actions

exilia mihi sunt haud nova, assuēvī malīs. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 302)

assuēscō, assuēscere, assuēvī, assuētum become accustomed; *in perfect*, be accustomed (+ dat.)
exilium, exiliī *n.* exile
haud (adv.) not at all, by no means
novus, -a, -um new

12. Cassandra addresses the god Apollo, her nemesis

recēde, Phoebe, iam nōn sum tua. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 722)

iam (adv.) now; by now
Phoebus, Phoebī *m.* Phoebus (Apollo)
recēdō (re- + cēdō) go back, withdraw

13. In a passage examining Cicero's reasoning in his legal speeches, Quintilian ponders the rationale behind the following defense of murder.

sī occidī, rectē fēcī, sed non occidī. (QUINTILIAN *INSTITUTIŌ ORATŌRIA* IV.5.13)

occidō, occidere, occidī, occisus kill
rectē (adv.) rightly, justly

14. Each reader's capacity determines how he evaluates the books he reads.

. . . habent sua fāta libelli. (TERENTIUS MAURUS, *DE SYLLABIS* 1286)

libellus, libelli m. (little) book

15. A Roman gravestone inscription

Plōtia C.l.* Thalassia viris suis et amicis amāra fuit numquam. (CIL VI.7595)

*C.l. = Gai liberta

amārus -a, -um bitter

liberta libertae f. freedwoman

numquam (adv.) never

Plōtia, Plōtiae f. Plotia

Thalassius, -a, -um Thalassian

16. A Roman gravestone inscription

Fātus cessit suis. (CIL X 7658)

Longer Reading

Cicero, *Acadēmica* 1.18

Atticus, friend to Cicero and a character in a philosophical dialogue, encourages his friend Varro to continue speaking about their favorite subjects.

"Tū vērō perge, Varrō; valdē enim amō nostra atque nostros, mēque ista delectant cum* Latine dicuntur et istō modō."

*cum, *here* (conj.) when

delectō (1-tr.) delight, please, charm

ista = *neut. pl. nom. of demonstr. adj.*, those (of yours)

istō = *neut. sing. abl. of demonstr. adj.*, that (of yours)

Latine (adv.) in Latin

modus, modī *m.* way, manner

pergō, pergere, perrexī, perrectus proceed continue

Varrō = *masc. sing. voc.*, (M. Terentius) Varro writer and friend of Cicero

vērō (adv.) (but) in fact, indeed

Marcus Tullius Cicero (106–43 B.C.E.), lawyer, statesman, philosopher, and would-be poet, is central to any study of Latin prose style, and he is the single most influential Latin prose writer. His smooth and balanced style was studied by all, emulated by many, and steadfastly avoided by a strong-minded few. Cicero's many writings that have survived—including political and legal orations, philosophical works, and volumes of letters—provide the most detailed portrait that we have of a life in ancient Rome. His political career reached its height when as consul (in 63) he repressed an attempted revolt led by the prominent nobleman Catiline. Twenty years later he was killed at the order of Marc Antony, whose enmity he had incurred through a series of virulent public attacks.

The *Acadēmica*, of which only portions survive, was a philosophical work concerned with epistemology. In one part Varro, Atticus, and Cicero converse, chiefly about Varro's theories.

CHAPTER VI

Vocabulary

- *Athenae, Athēnārum f. pl.* Athens
natura, naturae f. nature
Roma, Rōmae f. Rome

- dictum, dicti n.* word, saying
domus, domi f. house, home

- *amor, amoris m.* love
animal, animālis, -ium n. animal
- *carmen, carminis n.* song, poem
- *Carthāgō, Carthāginis f.* Carthage
- *civis, civis, -ium m.* or *f.* citizen
corpus, corporis n. body
frāter, frātris m. brother
- *homō, hominis m.* human being, man;
in pl., people
- *hostis, hostis, -ium m.* (public) enemy
- *iūs, iuris n.* right, law; judgment; court
 ➤ *iūre (adv.)* rightly, justly
- *mare, maris, *-ium n.* sea
māter, mātris f. mother
- *mēns, mentis, -ium f.* mind; intention,
 purpose; attitude
mīles, militis m. soldier
- *moenia, moenium n. pl.* (city) walls
pater, patris m. father
 ➤ *patrēs cōscriptī, voc. pl.* enrolled
 fathers, senators
rex, regis m. king
- *rūs, rūris n. in sing. or pl.,* country(side)

- *servitūs, servitūtis f.* slavery
soror, sorōris f. sister
timor, timōris m. fear
- *urbs urbis, -ium f.* city
- *vīs —, -ium f.* force, power, violence;
in pl., (physical) strength (§53)

- *liberō (1-tr.)* free, liberate

- *careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus* lack,
 be without, be free from (+ abl.)

- *legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus* gather; choose;
 read
 ➤ *intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī,*
 intellēctus understand
- *vivō, vivere, vixī, victūrus* live, be alive

- antīquus, -a, -um* old, ancient
- novus, -a, -um* new; strange
- *paucī, paucae, pauca* few
- *autem* (postpositive conj.) however;
~~moreover~~
- inter* (prep. + acc.) between, among;
 during
- *sub* (prep. + acc.) under; up to
 (pred. + abl.) under; at the foot of;
 near
- umquam* (adv.) ever
- numquam* (adv.) never

Vocabulary Notes

Athēnae, Athēnārum *f. pl.* appears in the plural only (In English, too, the "s" on the end of Athens indicates that the name is plural in form.)

The plural of *amor, amoris m.* may be translated "(feelings of) love," "affection," "love affair" or "object of affection." In Latin, the plural of an abstract noun is often used with a concrete meaning. When capitalized, *Amor* refers to the god Cupid.

carmen, carminis n. is formed by the addition of the suffix *-men* to a stem of the verb *canō*. The basic meaning of *carmen* is thus something sung or chanted. It may mean a hymn, a ritual utterance, or incantation. Since ancient poetry was often sung and always spoken out loud, *carmen* may describe a poem, a play, or a part of a play, regardless of whether it was actually sung. It may also refer abstractly to "poetry" or "song."

Carthāgō, Carthāginis f. (often spelled with a *K*) was a city in northern Africa and the capital of the Carthaginian (or Phoenician) empire. The Carthaginian empire was the most powerful in the western Mediterranean until Rome's expansion. War broke out between Rome and Carthage in the third century B.C.E. and again in the middle of the second century B.C.E. These wars are referred to as the Punic wars (< Pūnicus, -a, -um, Phoenician, Carthaginian). The last of the Punic wars ended with the destruction of Carthage. Its legendary founder and queen was Dido, whom Aeneas encounters in the *Aeneid*.

civis, civis, -ium m. or f. is common gender. It means "citizen" of a political unit as opposed to a foreigner, noncitizen, or slave. It may also mean "fellow citizen" or "countryman," particularly in political addresses.

The basic meaning of *homō, hominis m.* is "human being" as distinct from anything nonhuman (gods, animals). *homō* is more neutral than *vir*, which is always explicitly male and may convey the notion of a man of honor or principle. When a man from an unestablished family achieved a major political office for the first time, he was called a *homō novus* or *novus homō*, "new man." The term often carried an implied insult. The plural forms of *homō* are often used to mean "people" in general as opposed to *populus*, which means a particular "people" or "populace."

Homines multa impia dicunt. People say many wicked things.

hostis, hostis, -ium m. is a "public enemy" of a country as opposed to *inimicus*, a "personal enemy."

iūs, iūris n. expresses the abstract notion of "law" or "right" rather than a particular law, for which Latin uses the word *lēx*. It may also refer to "right" in the sense of "rights of citizens." *iūs* may also mean "judgment" or "court" (the place of judgment). The adverb *iūre* is in origin the ablative singular of *iūs*.

*mare, maris, *-ium n.* has an asterisk before the genitive plural ending because the form **marum* does not occur in the Latin literature that survives. Although the genitive form *marum* does occur, *mare* displays all other *i*-stem features.

mens, mentis, -ium f. may mean "mind" as the seat of intellectual activity, "intention" or "purpose" as a result of that intellectual activity, or "frame of mind," "attitude."

moenia, moenium n. pl. is the word for the walls that surround a city for defense.

The phrase *patrēs cōscripti*, most frequently seen in the vocative case, means "fathers (having been) enrolled" (in the senate) (< *cōscribō* [con- + *scribō*], *cōscribere*, *cōscripsi*, *cōscriptus* enroll). It is a frequent appellation for the collective Roman senate. The phrase occasionally appears in other cases. The plural *patrēs* without the participle *cōscripti* may also be used to mean "senators."

rūs, rūris n. indicates the "countryside" as opposed to the city and often appears in the plural as well with this meaning. Its locative form is *rūrī*.

servitūs, servitūtis f. is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix *-tūs* to the stem of the noun *servus*.

The final *-bs* of *urbis* is pronounced as *ps* in "taps." *Urbis* often refers specifically to Rome, while *oppidum* designates a smaller town in Italy.

vis, —, -ium f. is an irregular third-declension noun. (For the full declension of *vis* see §53.) In the singular, *vis* has the meaning "force," "power," or "violence," while in the plural it means "(physical) strength."

Incolae oppidum vi cepērunt. The inhabitants captured the town by force.
Vires nauarum superābantur. The strength of the sailors was being overcome.

liberō, liberāre, liberāvi, liberātus is a transitive verb that is often accompanied by an Ablative of Separation (see §54).

Incolae periculō liberāvimus. We freed the inhabitants from danger.

careō, carēre, carui, caritūrus is an intransitive verb. The fourth principal part, *caritūrus* (about to lack), is a future active participle. In addition to its basic meanings of "lack" and "be without," *careō* may mean "be free from." *Careō* takes an Ablative of Separation that may be translated as a direct object in English.

<i>Agricola amicis non caret.</i>	The farmer does not lack friends. The farmer is not without friends.
<i>Filius reginae curis caruit.</i>	The son of the queen was free from cares.

legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus may mean "gather" (shells, bones, spoils of war) or "choose" (leaders, judges). Through the notion of gathering something with one's eyes and observing something, it comes to have the particular meaning of "read."

intellegō, intellegere, intellexī, intellectus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *inter-* (For the prefix *inter-* see Appendix P.) In compounds *inter-* often means "thoroughly." From the notion of thoroughly reading or observing something, *intellegō* comes to mean "understand."

vivō, vivere, vixi, victurus is an intransitive verb. The fourth principal part, *victurus* (about to live), is a future active participle.

Because the adjective *pauci, paucae, pauca* means "few," it almost never appears in the singular. Its vocabulary entry therefore includes the masculine, feminine, and neuter plural nominative forms. The stem is *pauc-*.

autem is a postpositive conjunction that joins two sentences or clauses. Most often *autem* adds a thought that is in opposition to a previous one (however), but sometimes the new thought is merely a different, additional idea (moreover).

<i>Nihil scribō. Multa autem legō.</i>	I write nothing. However, I read many things.
<i>Antōnius bene dicit. Bene autem scribit.</i>	Antony speaks well. Moreover, he writes well.

Like *in*, the preposition *sub* takes both the accusative and the ablative. When it takes the accusative, it conveys either an idea of motion "under" or of motion from below "up to" a place (city walls, mountains). When it takes an ablative, it indicates something "under" which someone or something is located. It can also mean "at the foot of," "close up to," or "near" (city walls, mountains).

<i>Mīlites sub moenia misit.</i>	He sent the soldiers up to the city walls.
<i>Erant mīlites sub oppidō.</i>	There were soldiers close up to/at the foot of the town.

	Derivatives	Cognates
<i>careō</i>	<i>caret</i>	castrate; castle; chaste; caste; incest
<i>civis</i>	<i>civil</i> ; city	Shiva; cemetery
<i>homō</i>	<i>homicide</i> ; <i>hombre</i> , <i>homage</i>	bridegroom; chameleon; humble
<i>hostis</i>	host; hostile	guest
<i>ius</i>	jury, injury, perjure, just	
<i>legō</i>	<i>legend</i> ; <i>legible</i> ; collect; <i>lectern</i>	lexicon; dyslexia, -logue, logic
<i>mare</i>	<i>maritime</i> ; <i>marine</i>	mermaid; meerschautn, marsh; morass
<i>māter</i>	<i>maternal</i> ; <i>matrix</i> , <i>matrimony</i>	mother; metropolis; material, Demeter
<i>mēns</i>	<i>mental</i> ; demented	mund; automatic; maenad; mentor, mania, mantra
<i>pater</i>	<i>paternal</i> , <i>patrician</i> , <i>patron</i>	father, patriarch
<i>pauci</i>	<i>paucity</i> ; poco	pony
<i>rūs</i>	<i>rural</i> ; <i>rustic</i>	room; razzmatazz, team
<i>vis</i>	<i>violate</i> ; <i>violent</i>	

§50. The Perfect Passive System

The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive indicative are all formed with the fourth principal part combined with forms of the verb *sum*. These two parts are written separately, and all forms of the perfect passive system are called **compound verb forms**.

The fourth principal part has been identified as the perfect passive participle, and the participle has been defined as a verbal adjective with the properties of tense and voice. Although the perfect passive participle of a transitive verb appears in the vocabulary entry with the ending *-us*,¹ it may also be written with a full set of adjective endings: *-us, -a, -um*. For example: *rēctus, -a, -um*. When this adjective joins with forms of *sum* to make compound forms in the perfect passive system, it always agrees with the *subject of the verb* and therefore is *always in the nominative case*. The subject also determines the *gender* and *number*.

§51. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs

Perfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs

To form the perfect passive indicative of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect passive participle (fourth principal part)
2. add as a separate word the present tense of *sum*

Thus the perfect passive indicative conjugation of, for example, *regō* is:

Perfect Passive Participle: <i>rēctus, -a, -um</i>		
<i>Singular</i>		
1	<i>rēctus, -a, -um sum</i>	I was ruled; I have been ruled
2	<i>rēctus, -a, -um es</i>	you were ruled; you have been ruled
3	<i>rēctus, -a, -um est</i>	he, she, it was ruled; he, she, it has been ruled
<i>Plural</i>		
1	<i>rēcti, -ae, -a sumus</i>	we were ruled; we have been ruled
2	<i>rēcti, -ae, -a estis</i>	you (pl.) were ruled; you (pl.) have been ruled
3	<i>rēcti, -ae, -a sunt</i>	they were ruled; they have been ruled

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each form of the perfect passive indicative is a compound verb form. The two words it comprises *cannot be translated word by word* but *must be treated as a unit* and translated in accordance with the two meanings of the perfect tense (past time with simple aspect or present time with completed aspect). In *all* compound forms in Latin it is common for the form of *sum* to appear after the participle; however, these forms are often reversed, and other words may intervene. For example, *captus est* and *est captus* are equally correct.
2. The perfect passive participle ends in *-us* (sing.) or *-i* (pl.) if the subject is masculine, *-a* (sing.) or *-ae* (pl.) if the subject is feminine, *-um* (sing.) or *-a* (pl.) if the subject is neuter. For example:
3. The perfect passive participle of *intransitive verbs* is given with the neuter ending *-um*. Remember that intransitive verbs are generally not found in the passive voice, but see §59

Rēctus est.	He was/has been ruled
Rēctae sumus.	We (fem.) were/have been ruled
Oppida rēcta sunt.	The towns were/have been ruled.

Pluperfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs

To form the pluperfect passive indicative of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect passive participle (fourth principal part)
2. add *as a separate word* the imperfect tense of *sum*

Thus the pluperfect passive indicative conjugation of, for example, *regō* is:

Perfect Passive Participle: rēctus, -a, -um		
<i>Singular</i>		
1	rēctus, -a, -um eram	I had been ruled
2	rēctus, -a, -um erās	you had been ruled
3	rēctus, -a, -um erat	he, she, it had been ruled
<i>Plural</i>		
1	rēcti, -ae, -a erāmus	we had been ruled
2	rēcti, -ae, -a erātis	you (pl.) had been ruled
3	rēcti, -ae, -a erant	they had been ruled

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each form of the pluperfect passive indicative is a compound verb form. The two words it comprises *cannot be translated word by word* but must be treated as *a unit* and translated in accordance with the meaning of the pluperfect tense (past time with completed aspect). The English words "had been" always appear in translations of the pluperfect passive indicative.
2. The gender and number of the subject determine the ending of the perfect passive participle. For example:

Rēcta erat.	She had been ruled.
Nautae rēcti erant.	The sailors had been ruled

Future Perfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs

To form the future perfect passive indicative of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect passive participle (fourth principal part)
2. add *as a separate word* the future tense of *sum*

Thus the future perfect passive indicative conjugation of, for example, *regō* is:

Perfect Passive Participle: rēctus, -a, -um		
<i>Singular</i>		
1	rēctus, -a, -um ero	I shall have been ruled
2	rēctus, -a, -um eris	you will have been ruled
3	rēctus, -a, -um erit	he, she, it will have been ruled
<i>Plural</i>		
1	rēcti, -ae, -a erimus	we shall have been ruled
2	rēcti, -ae, -a eritis	you (pl.) will have been ruled
3	rēcti, -ae, -a erunt	they will have been ruled

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each form of the future perfect passive indicative is a compound verb form. The two words it comprises *cannot be translated word by word* but must be treated as a unit and translated in accordance with the meaning of the future perfect tense (future time with completed aspect).
2. The gender and number of the subject determine the ending of the perfect passive participle. For example:

Oppidum rēctum erit.	The town will have been ruled.
Rēcti erunt.	They (masc.) will have been ruled.

The Omission of *sum* in Compound Verb Forms

In the compound forms of the perfect passive system, the forms of *sum* are frequently omitted, or one form of *sum* may apply to more than one participle. For example:

Postquam oppidum *captum* [est], miserī erant incolae.
 After the town (was) *captured*, wretched were the inhabitants.
 After the town was *captured*, the inhabitants were wretched.
 Poēta ā populō et *visus* et *auditus* est.
 The poet by the people both (was) *seen* and *was heard*.
 The poet was both *seen* and *heard* by the people.

OBSERVATION

The tense of the compound verb form from which *sum* has been omitted is most often perfect, and the tense of *sum* omitted is present. In special contexts, the tense may be assumed to be pluperfect or future perfect.

A Note on the Perfect Passive Participle

Apart from its use in the formation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive indicative, the perfect passive participle (fourth principal part) may be used like any other first-second-declension adjective. It is then translated "(having been) _____ed." For example:

Servōs <i>captōs</i> vidimus.	The slaves (having been) <i>captured</i> (d.o.) we saw.
Fēminīs <i>interfectōrum</i> auxilium dabō.	We saw the <i>captured</i> slaves. To the wives of the (having been) <i>killed</i> men aid I shall give. I shall give aid to the wives of the <i>killed</i> men.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The perfect passive participle in the first sentence agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case. The parentheses indicate that the words "having been" may be omitted from the translation.
2. The perfect passive participle in the second sentence is used substantively. Certain substantives of perfect passive participles are so common that they are considered neuter second-declension nouns. For example: *factum*, *facti* n. deed ([having been] done thing), *dictum*, *dicti* n. word ([having been] said thing)

§53. Noun Morphology: Third Declension

A NOUN BELONGS TO THE THIRD DECLENSION IF ITS GENITIVE SINGULAR ENDING IS **-IS**.

Gender Note: The third declension contains masculine nouns and feminine nouns, which have a common set of endings, and neuter nouns, which have endings slightly different from those of the masculine/feminine nouns.

Third Declension (Genitive Singular: -is)	
Masculine/Feminine	Neuter
Singular	Singular
Genitive: -is	Genitive: -is
Nominative: -us, -a, -e	Nominative: -a, -e, -i, -o, -u
Accusative: -um, -am, -em	Accusative: -a, -e, -i, -o, -u
Dative: -i, -e, -o	Dative: -a, -e, -i, -o, -u
Ablative: -i, -e, -o	Ablative: -a, -e, -i, -o, -u
Plural	Plural
Genitive: -um, -am, -em	Genitive: -a, -e, -i, -o, -u
Nominative: -es, -a, -e	Nominative: -a, -e, -i, -o, -u
Accusative: -es, -a, -e	Accusative: -a, -e, -i, -o, -u
Dative: -ibus, -is, -as, -as, -as	Dative: -a, -e, -i, -o, -u
Ablative: -ibus, -is, -as, -as, -as	Ablative: -a, -e, -i, -o, -u

Memorize each of these two sets of endings individually, then run down the singular column and then down the plural column. Be prepared to recite these endings quickly.

To decline a *masculine* or *feminine* noun or a *neuter* noun of the third declension, add the appropriate ending to the stem.³ For example:

	Masculine/Feminine	Neuter
Singular		
Genitive	-is	-is
Nominative	-us, -a, -e	-a, -e, -i, -o, -u
Accusative	-um, -am, -em	-a, -e, -i, -o, -u
Dative	-i, -e, -o	-a, -e, -i, -o, -u
Ablative	-i, -e, -o	-a, -e, -i, -o, -u
Plural		
Genitive	-um, -am, -em	-a, -e, -i, -o, -u
Nominative	-es, -a, -e	-a, -e, -i, -o, -u
Accusative	-es, -a, -e	-a, -e, -i, -o, -u
Dative	-ibus, -is, -as, -as, -as	-a, -e, -i, -o, -u
Ablative	-ibus, -is, -as, -as, -as	-a, -e, -i, -o, -u

OBSERVATIONS

1. Certain endings for masculine/feminine third-declension nouns are used to mark more than one case; **-es** = nominative/vocative plural and accusative plural, **-ibus** = dative plural and ablative plural.
2. Most of the endings for neuter third-declension nouns are identical with the endings for masculine/feminine third-declension nouns. Neuter nouns *differ only* in having **-a** in the nominative singular form and there is no single ending. Memorize a blank in place of a nominative singular ending. The neuter singular accusative form is always identical to the neuter singular nominative, and there is no single ending. Memorize a blank in place of a neuter singular accusative ending.
3. REMEMBER TO FIND THE STEM OF ANY NOUN, REMOVE THE ENDING FROM THE GENITIVE SINGULAR FORM

2. There are two endings for the accusative plural of masculine/feminine i-stem nouns (-es/-is) with no difference in meaning. Masculine/feminine i-stem nouns differ from ordinary third-declension nouns in the *genitive and accusative plural only*.
3. Neuter i-stem nouns differ from all other nouns of the third declension in having -i (not -e) as the ablative singular ending. Neuter i-stem nouns differ from ordinary neuter third-declension nouns in having -ia (not -a) as the nominative and accusative plural ending.
4. There are a few masculine/feminine i-stem nouns that sometimes use -i instead of -e in the ablative singular. Such nouns are identified in the vocabulary notes.

Among nouns of the third declension, there are many possible forms in the nominative singular and notable differences in the spellings of the nominative singular and genitive singular, from where the stem is taken. In addition, some nouns belong to the i-stem group, and others do not. All such important information for each noun is contained in the vocabulary entry. Therefore, **MEMORIZING FULL VOCABULARY ENTRIES FOR EVERY THIRD-DECLENSION NOUN IS ESSENTIAL.**

Since adjectives must agree with the nouns they modify only in *gender, number,* and *case*, first-second-declension adjectives are able to modify third-declension nouns. For example,

milites boni	good soldiers (masc. pl. nom./voc.)
corpus validum	strong body (neut. sing. nom./voc./acc.)
urbis pulchrae	of the beautiful city (fem. sing. gen.)
multis animalibus	to/for/from (etc.) many animals (neut. pl. dat./abl.)

The Irregular Third-Declension Noun *vis*

MEMORIZE THE DECLENSION OF THIS IMPORTANT IRREGULAR THIRD-DECLENSION NOUN:

<i>vis</i>	num. force, power, violence, vi. pl. (physical) strength	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom./Voc.	<i>vis</i>	<i>vires</i>
Gen.	—	<i>virium</i>
Dat.	—	<i>viribus</i>
Acc.	<i>vim</i>	<i>vires/viris</i>
Abl.	<i>vi</i>	<i>viribus</i>

OBSERVATIONS

1. The genitive and dative singular forms do not appear in the Latin literature that survives. MEMORIZE A BLANK AS THE SECOND ELEMENT OF THE VOCABULARY ENTRY AND BLANKS FOR THESE TWO FORMS IN THE DECLENSION.
2. In the plural *vis* is a third-declension i-stem noun with the stem *vir-*. The -s- of the original stem **vis-* has changed to -r- because of rhotacism (see n. 13 p. 35).

☛ DRILL 53 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§54. Ablative of Separation

When the ablative case expresses the idea that someone is *apart from* someone or something, it is called the **Ablative of Separation**.⁶ The prepositions *ā/ab*, *ē/ex*, and *dē* are sometimes used, but the Ablative of Separation more often occurs with no preposition. It is usually translated “from _____.” For example:

Vir magnus populum periculō liberabit. (liberō [1-tr.] free)

The great man the people (d.o.) *from danger* will free.

The great man will free the people *from danger*.

Bona est nostra vita; nam cūis carēmus. (careō, carere, carui, cariturus be without)

Good is our life; for *(from)* cares we are without.

Our life is good; for we are without *cares*.

Odiō libera semper erat.

From hatred free always she was.

She was always free *from hatred*.

The syntax of each italicized word (*periculō*, *cūis*, *odiō*) is **Ablative of Separation**.

§55. Ablative of Cause

When a noun in the ablative case *without a preposition* expresses the *cause* or *reason* for a quality or verbal action, it is called the **Ablative of Cause**. For example:

Incolae irā atque odiō bellum gerēbant.

The inhabitants *because of (from) anger and hatred* war(d) were waging.

The inhabitants were waging war *because of anger and hatred*.

The syntax of each italicized word (*irā*, *odiō*) is **Ablative of Cause**.

OBSERVATION

The use of the ablative case to express cause indicates that cause is understood as the *source* of a particular event or as something *from which* an event arises. Thus, the Ablative of Cause reflects the basic *separative* function of the ablative case. Other expressions of reason or cause that may be equivalent to the Ablative of Cause include: *propter* + accusative, *per* + accusative, and *ē/ex* or *dē* + ablative.

6. For separation as the original function of the ablative case see §1.

§56. Ablative of Place From Which

When the ablative case is used to express *motion from a place*, it is called the **Ablative of Place From Which**. The prepositions *ā/ab*, *ē/ex*, or *dē* are regularly used. However, the prepositions are omitted with names of cities, towns, and small islands, and the nouns *domus* and *rūs*. For example:

<i>Ab Italia vela dedimus.</i>	<i>From Italy we set sail.</i>
	<i>We set sail (away) from Italy.</i>
<i>Agebamur ex patria.</i>	<i>We were being driven out from the country.</i>
<i>Rōmā discedam.</i>	<i>From Rome I shall depart.</i>
	<i>I shall depart from Rome.</i>

The syntax of each italicized word (*Italiā*, *patriā*, *Rōmā*) is **Ablative of Place From Which**. The Ablative of Place From Which is a particular variety of the Ablative of Separation.

§57. Ablative of Place Where and the Locative Case

Ablative of Place Where

When the ablative case expresses the idea of *location*, it is called the **Ablative of Place Where**.⁷ The preposition *in* (less frequently certain other prepositions such as *sub* or *prō*) is regularly used.⁸ For example:

<i>In oppidō erant multi nautae.</i>	<i>In the town there were many sailors.</i>
--------------------------------------	---

The syntax of the italicized word (*oppidō*) is **Ablative of Place Where**.

Locative Case

At an early stage in its development, Latin had a separate case for nouns to express location. This case is called the **Locative Case** and has endings that sometimes resemble genitive endings and sometimes resemble ablative endings. Most nouns lost their locative forms early, and location came to be expressed by the ablative case. However, the names of cities, towns, and small islands, and the nouns *domus* and *rūs* retained their locative case forms. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING COMMON LOCATIVE FORMS:

Noun	Locative	Translation
<i>domus, domi f.</i>	<i>domi</i>	at home
<i>rūs, rūs n.</i>	<i>rurī</i>	in the country (as opposed to city)
<i>Rōma, Rōmae f.</i>	<i>Rōmae</i>	in/at Rome
<i>Athēnae, Athēnarum f. pl.</i>	<i>Athēnis</i>	in/at Athens
<i>Carthago, Carthaginīs f.</i>	<i>Carthagini</i> or <i>Carthagine</i>	in/at Carthage

⁷ For location as a function of the ablative case see §1.

⁸ With certain words in certain authors the preposition is omitted, and certain common phrases may also appear without the preposition. For example *terā marique* (on land and on sea), *multis locis* (in many places)

OBSERVATIONS

- 1 For nouns that have surviving locative forms, the Ablative of Place **Where** with the preposition **in** is *not* regularly used.
 - 2 For first and second declension nouns
 - a. The locative singular ending is identical with the genitive singular ending.
 - b. The locative plural ending is identical with the ablative plural ending.
- For third-declension nouns, no consistent rule applies. The locative singular ending may be either **-i** or **-e** or both.

§58. Accusative of Place To Which

When the accusative case is used to express *motion toward a place*, it is called the **Accusative of Place To Which**. The prepositions **ad** and **in** (less frequently certain other prepositions such as **sub**) are regularly used. However, *the prepositions are omitted with names of cities, towns, and small islands, and the nouns domus and rūs*. For example:

<i>Femina ad provinciam mittitur.</i>	The woman to the province is being sent. The woman is being sent to the province.
<i>Romani Athenās venerunt.</i>	The Romans to Athens came. The Romans came to Athens.

The syntax of each italicized word (*prōvinciam*, *Athēnās*) is **Accusative of Place To Which**.

§59. Impersonal Passive

Intransitive verbs whose fourth principal parts end in **-um** ordinarily do not have any forms in the passive voice. Sometimes, however, such verbs appear in *third person singular passive* forms with *no expressed subjects*. The third person singular passive (in any tense and any mood) of an intransitive verb is called the **impersonal passive**. (The word **impersonal** means “having no personal subject.”) Such a form reports and emphasizes that the action of the verb is being done (will be done, was done, etc.) but gives no indication of who performs that action. For example:

<i>Pugnatur in provincia.</i>	Fighting is being done in the province. There is fighting in the province.
<i>Per vias erratum est.</i>	Wandering was done (has been done) through the streets. There was wandering through the streets.

OBSERVATIONS

- 1 It is convenient to translate the impersonal passive using the English gerund, a verbal noun ending **-n -ing**.
- 2 Compound verb forms that are impersonal passives always have a perfect passive participle ending in the *neuter nominative singular -um* (e.g., *erratum est*). This *neuter* ending on the participle indicates that this form is impersonal.

Short Readings

1. A character expresses his opinion about the gods' attitude toward human action.

odērunt dī hominēs iniūrōs. (NAEVIUS, *TRAGŌDIAE FRAG.* 37)

iniūrus, -a, -um lawless, unjust

2. The opinion of a character in a comic play

proinde ut diū vivitur, bene vivitur. (PLAUTUS, *TRINUMMUS* 65)

diū (adv.) for a long time

proinde (adv.) according, in the same way

3. At the outset of his epic poem, the poet recalls what he saw in a dream.

visus Homērus adesse poēta . . . (ENNIVS, *ANNALIS* 1.3)

adsum (ad- + sum), adesse, adfui, adfuturus be present

Homērus, Homēri m. Homer

4. As part of his defense of a man charged with murder, Cicero reminds the jurors of the atmosphere in a politically disturbed city.

silent lēgēs inter arma . . . (CICERO, *PRO MILONE* 11)

lēs, lēgis f. law

sileō, silēre, silui, — be silent

5. The biographer Nepos explains why Hannibal was made a king.

ut enim Rōmae consulēs, sic Carthāgine quotannis annui bini rēgēs creābantur.

(CORNELIVS NEPOS, *VITA HANNIBALIS* 7)

annuus -a, -um yearly; appointed for one year

bini, binae, bina two each, two at a time

cōsul, cōsulis m. consul

creō (1 tr.) create

quotannus (adv.) yearly, every year

6. The poet reflects on the lives of farmers.

. . . reddit agricolis labor āctus in orbem,

atque in sē sua per vestigia volvitur annus.

(VERGIL, *GEORGICS* 11.401–2)

annus, anni m. year

labor, labōris m. work, labor

orbis, orbis, -ium m. ring, circle

vestigium, vestigiū n. trace; footstep, track

volvō, volvere, volvi, volūtus in active and passive, turn, roll

- 7 The poet introduces the city that would become Rome's archenemy

urbs antiqua fuit (Tyrii tenuere coloni)

Carthago . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* 1.12–13)

colōnus, colōni *m.* farmer; settler

Tyrius -a, -um Tyrian, Phoenician

- 8 The poet sends his new collection of poems off to Rome.

Parve nec inuideō—sine mē, liber, ibis in urbem (OVID, *TRISTIA* 1.1.1)

inuideō (in- + videō) envy, be jealous

9. When Clytaemnestra hesitates to carry out their plan, her lover Aegisthus tries to persuade her to follow through by suggesting how the war may have changed her husband.

. . . rex Mycenārum fuit*,

veniet* tyrannus: prospera animōs efferunt.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNON* 251–52)

*fuit, veniet, *subject is Agamemnon*

efferō (ex- + ferō), efferre, extulī, ēlātus, bring out; increase

Mycenae, Mycenārum *f. pl.* Mycenae capital city of Agamemnon's kingdom

prosperus, -a, -um prosperous, successful

tyrannus, tyrannī *m.* monarch; absolute ruler; tyrant

10. Seneca remarks on one of the consequences of wealth

magna servitūs est magna fortuna. (SENECA THE YOUNGER *DIALOGI* XI 6.5)

fortūna fortunae *f.* fortune

- 11 A gravestone inscription for a guard dog

Raedārum custōs numquam latrāvit ineptē:

nunc silet et cinerēs vindicat umbra suōs. (CIL IX.5785)

cinis, cineris *m.* ash

custōs, custōdis *m. or f.* guardian, protector,

sentry

ineptē (adv.) improperly, inappropriately

latrō (1-intr.) bark

raeda, raedae *f.* wagon

sileō, silēre, silui, — be silent

umbra umbrae *f.* shadow, shade

vindicō (1-tr.) lay claim to, protect defend

Longer Readings

1. Cicero, *Paradoxa Stoicorum* 4.30

Cicero addresses and attacks his enemy Clodius, who attempted to prevent Cicero's return from exile in 57 B.C.E.

an tū cīvem ab hoste nātūrā ac locō, nōn animō factisque distinguis? caedem in forō
fēcisti, armātis latrōnibus templa tenuisti, privātorum domōs, aedēs sacrās incen-
disti. cūr hostis Spartacus sī tū cīvis?

aedēs, aedis, -ium *f.* sanctuary, shrine

an (conj.) introduces an indignant or surprised
question expecting a negative answer, can it
really be that . . .

armō (1-tr.) equip (with arms), arm

caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter

distinguo, distinguere distinxī, distinctus mark
out, distinguish

incendō, incendere, incendi, incēnsus set on fire,
(cause to) burn

latrō, latrōnis *m.* hired soldier; criminal, thief

locus, loci *m.* place; position, rank

privātus, -a, -um private

sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred

Spartacus, Spartaci *m.* Spartacus, Thracian

gladiator who led a slave revolt (73–71 B.C.E.)

templum, templi *n.* temple

The *Paradoxa Stoicorum* (Paradoxes of the Stoics), written in 46 B.C.E., comprises explanations of six theories of the Stoic school of philosophy that appeal least to common sense.

2. Ovid, *Amōres* III.11.39–40

The poet expresses an emotional quandary.

sic ego nec sine tē nec tecum vivere possum,
et videor vōti nescius esse mei.

nescius, -a, -um not knowing, unaware (+ gen.)

vōtum, vōti *n.* vow, prayer; desire

Publius Ovidius Nasō (43 B.C.E. – 17 C.E.) was born at Sulmo, educated in Athens, and then moved to Rome. His talent was quickly noticed, and by the age of forty Ovid was Rome's leading poet. He is usually considered the last of the great poets of the Augustan age. For reasons that are still obscure he was banished to the Black Sea in 8 C.E., where he lived out his remaining years endeavoring to return to Rome. While in exile Ovid produced many elegiac poems pleading for his return, and it is from these that most of our biographical information about him derives. In all his works Ovid's erudition combines with his fantastic imagination to produce a poetic style that is varied, allusive, and often humorous and surprising. He employs a simplicity of syntax and word choice to produce a smoothness and immediate intelligibility that belie the complexity of his material.

The *Amōres* (Loves or Love Affairs) is a collection of forty-nine poems written in elegiac couplets, the meter established for Latin love poetry. The *Amōres*, one of Ovid's first published works, describe in frankly erotic, playful, and irreverent vignettes his love relations with a woman he names Corinna, but also included are a moving elegy on the death of Tibullus (another Roman elegist) and witty parodies of poems by Catullus and Propertius.

3. Ovid, *Metamorphoses* XI.141–43

After King Midas discovers that his golden touch is more of a curse than a blessing, he learns from an oracle how to rid himself of his power. The oracle sends him to a particular river and orders him to do the following.

“ . . . subde caput corpusque simul, simul elue crimen ”

rēx iussae succēdit aquae: vīs aurea tinxit

flumen et hūmānō dē corpore cessit in amnem; . . .

amnis, amnis, -ium *m.* stream, torrent

aqua, aquae *f.* water

aureus, -a, -um golden

caput, capitis *n.* head

crimen, criminis *n.* charge, accusation; fault, defect

ēluō, ēluere, ēluī, ēlutus wash out, rinse out; remove

flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream

hūmānus, -a, -um human

simul (*adv.*) at the same time

subdō (sub- + dō), subdere, subdidī, subditus put or place under

succēdō (sub- + cēdō) go under, enter (+ *dat.*)

tīngō, tīngere, tīnxī, tīnctus dye, tinge

The *Metamorphoses* is an epic poem in fifteen books and is considered Ovid's masterpiece. It weaves some 250 mythological stories into a single narrative from the beginning of time down to the deification of Julius Caesar.

4. Ovid *Metamorphoses* XIV.744–46

A young Cyprian, Iphis, commits suicide after he is spurned by Anaxerete, with whom he has fallen in love. His body is then brought back to his mother.

. . . postquam miserōrum verba parentum

ēdidit* et matrū miserārū facta perēgit,

fūnera ducēbat mediam lacrimōsa per urbem . . .

*The subject is Iphis' mother

edō (ē- + dō), ēdere, ēdidī, ēditus emit, utter

fūnus, fūneris *n. m. sing. or pl.* funeral (procession)

lacrimōsus, -a, -um full of tears, tearful

medius, -a, -um middle (of)

parēns, parentis, -ium *m. or f.* parent;

parentum = *gen. pl.*

peragō (per- + agō), peragere perēgi, perāctus thoroughly do; accomplish, complete

5 Seneca the Younger, *Herculēs Furēs* 181–85

The chorus sings of the Fates,
 dūrae peragunt pēnsa sorōrēs
 nec sua retrō fila revolvunt.
 at gēns hominum fertur rapidis
 obvia fātis incerta suī:
 Stygiās ultrō quaerimus undās.

at (conj.) but

filum, fili n. thread

gēns, gentis, -um f. nation; clan, family

incertus, -a, -um unsure, uncertain

obvius, -a, -um in the way, face to face; moving
 against, opposed (+ dat.)pensum, pēnsi n. weight; wool (weighed out to
 be spun in a day), spinningperagō (per- + agō), peragere, perēgi, perāctus
 thoroughly do; accomplish, completequaerō, quaerere, quaesit or quaesivī, quaesitus
 search for, seek

rapidus, -a, -um tearing away, consuming,

rushing, rapid

retrō (adv.) back, backward

revolvō, revolvere, revolvī, revolutus (un)roll;
 go through (again)Stygius, -a, -um of or belonging to the
 underworld river Styx; Stygianultrō (adv.) of one's own accord, spontaneously,
 voluntarily

unda, undae f. wave, water

Lucius Annaeus Seneca (4? B.C.E. ~ 65 C.E.) was born in Cordoba in southern Spain and came to Rome when he was a young boy. He is called Seneca the Younger to distinguish him from his father, who was a writer of rhetorical exercises. Seneca the Younger's career as a teacher and politician saw many high and low points: he was banished on charges of adultery in 41, recalled through the influence of Claudius's wife Agrippina, and made praetor in 49. He became Nero's tutor at the same time. When Claudius was murdered and Nero became emperor, Seneca was one of his closest advisers. Eventually, however, he fell from grace and was forced to commit suicide in 65. Seneca's literary output was prodigious and includes philosophical treatises, satire, letters, speeches, geography, and, not least, tragedies.

In the *Herculēs Furēs*, based on a play by Euripides, the hero kills his wife and children while in the grip of a madness imposed on him by Juno. After he regains his sanity, Hercules considers killing himself as well, but he is kept from doing this and instead finds sanctuary with Theseus in Athens. The play abounds in the rhetorical excesses that mark all of Seneca's tragedies.

it as an honorific name, the adjective *augustus*, -a, -um ("venerable," "revered") had been applied only to religious objects, temples, and the like, but never to a person.

Below are listed names that belong to the third declension and additional names that belong to the first and second declensions. These names and the names above will not be given when they appear in the remainder of this book. FAMILIARIZE YOURSELF WITH THESE NAMES AND BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE THEM AS THEY OCCUR.

4 Dido is the Phoenician princess who flees her native Phoenicia to found Carthage, Rome's archenemy. After meeting and falling in love with Aeneas in Carthage during his passage to Italy, Dido commits suicide when Aeneas reluctantly follows his destiny to Italy. Priam is the king of Troy, father of Hector, Paris, and many others; he is killed at Troy by the son of Achilles. Turnus is a king of an Italic people, the Rutulians; he becomes Aeneas's bitter enemy after Latinus, the king of Latium (central Italy) marries his daughter, Lavinia, to Aeneas rather than to Turnus. The most famous account of this story is in Vergil's *Aeneid*.

5 The name Caesar may designate Julius Caesar, but it was also taken as a *cognomen* by all the succeeding emperors until Hadrian in the second century C.E. There are two important Romans named Marcus Porcius Cato: Cato the Elder (Cato Maior) and Cato of Utica (Cato Uticensis). Cato the Elder, so called to distinguish him from the second Cato, was also known as Cato the Censor. He played a central role in the political and cultural life of the second century B.C.E. Cato of Utica, the Elder's great-grandson, fought on Pompey's side against Julius Caesar and committed suicide rather than accept Caesar's pardon. Hannibal was the leader of the Carthaginians in the second Punic war. He was Rome's fiercest opponent, invading Italy, winning many important battles, and nearly succeeding in subduing Rome.

6 Lesbia, Cynthia, and Corinna are the names assigned in their love poetry to their beloveds by the poets Catullus, Propertius, and Ovid respectively.

CHAPTER VII

Vocabulary

- āra, ārae *f.* altar
- cōpia, cōpiae *f.* abundance, *in pl.*, troops, forces
- fortuna, fortunae *f.* fortune, chance
- insidiae, insidiarum *f. pl.* ambush, plot, treachery
- umbra, umbrae *f.* shadow shade

- ingenium, ingenū *n.* ability, talent, disposition
- templum, templū *n.* temple

- ars, artis, -ium *f.* skill, art; guile, trick
- civitas, civitatis *f.* state, citizenry; citizenship
- mors, mortis, -ium *f.* death
- pars, partis, -ium *f.* part
- virtūs, virtutis *f.* manliness, courage, excellence, virtue
- vox, vocis *f.* voice; word

- manēō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus remain, stay; await
- terreō, terrere, terrui, territus terrify, frighten

- cupiō, cupere, cupi or cupivī, cupītus desire, long for, want
- fugiō, fugere, fugi, fugitūrus flee
- petō, petere, peti or petivī, petītus ask for, seek; attack
- trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus hand over, surrender; hand down

- vinco, vincere, vici, victus conquer, overcome

- auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus carry away, take away, remove
- differō, differre, distulī, dilātus carry in different directions, scatter, postpone, defer; (*intr.*) differ, be different

- acerbus, -a, -um bitter; harsh
- cārus, -a, -um precious; dear (to) (+ *dat.*)
- certus, -a, -um sure, certain, reliable
- incertus, -a, -um unsure, uncertain, unreliable
- falsus, -a, -um deceptive, false
- vērus, -a, -um real, true

- ante (*adv.*) before, earlier, previously (*prep.* + *acc.*) before; in front of
- aut (*conj.*) or
aut . . . aut . . . either . . . or . . .
- etiam (*adv.*) also, even; still
- ita (*adv.*) in this manner, thus, so
- nē (*adv.*) not (§67)
- post (*adv.*) after(ward), later; behind (*prep.* + *acc.*) after, behind
- solum (*adv.*) only
➤ nōn solum . . . sed/vērum etiam . . . not only . . . but also . . .
- utinam (*particle*) introduces an Optative subjunctive (§67)
- vērō (*adv.*) certainly, indeed; but (in fact)
- vērum (*conj.*) but

Vocabulary Notes

In the singular *cōpia*, *cōpiae* *f.* means "abundance" (of food, of material). In the plural it most often means "troops" or "forces" (an abundance of soldiers).

fortūna, *fortūnae* *f.* indicates something that is opposed to reason or predictability (fortune, chance). *Fortūna* may be good or bad and is often personified as the divine agent Fortune.

Insidiae, *insidiarum* *f. pl.* never appears in the singular in Latin, but it has singular meanings (ambush, plot, treachery).

ingenium, *ingeniū* *n.* descends from the PIE root **genē* (be born) and the prefix *in-*¹¹ (*in*) (For the prefix *in-*¹¹ see Appendix P.) *Ingenium* refers to any quality that is inborn or inherent in an individual or species. Its range of meanings includes "disposition," "inclination," "ability," "cleverness," and "talent."

ars, *artis*, *arum* *f.* refers to any "skill" acquired through practice. *Ars* may be used of any "craft" or "trade," including the crafts of artistic expression (music, poetry). It may also mean a specific body of knowledge (the "art" or "science" of divination, philosophy). Sometimes *ars* is used of a particular "work of art." In contrast to *nātūra* or *ingenium*, *ars* may have a negative sense (artificiality, craftiness) or a positive one (art). From the idea of artificiality *ars* may mean "guile" or "trick." Finally, the term *bonae artis* (good arts) means "liberal studies" or "cultural pursuits," those pursuits that are the mark of civilized society.

civitas, *civitātis* *f.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix *-tās* to the stem of the noun *civis*. *Civitas* may mean an organized community to which one belongs as a citizen (state, citizenry), or it may mean the rights one has as a citizen (citizenship).

Magnū in periculū civitas fuit. The city was in great danger.
Postquam civitate donabimur. We shall, after the poet, win citizenship.

pars, *partis*, *-ium* *f.* refers to one of the portions into which a thing is divided. It may be repeated to indicate different groups or sections, and when it is the subject, *pars* may take a plural verb.

Caesar partem iri fuit in laqueis suis, partem in provinciam misit.
Caesar sent part of the soldiers into the trap, part into the province.
Partes hostium proclatū optabant, partes luctabant.
Part of the enemies were boasting of battle, part were fighting it.

pars may also mean a "side," "position," or "opinion" held or taken in such phrases as *ex mea parte*, "from my side." In both the singular and the plural, *pars* may refer to a political "faction" or to either "side" in a lawsuit or trial.

virtūs, *virtūtis* *f.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix *-tūs* to the stem of the noun *vir*. Its specific sense is thus "manliness" or "courage," but it also may refer more generally to any intellectual or moral "excellence" or "virtue."

vox, *vōcis* *f.* may mean the "voice" of a human or of a musical instrument, or it may mean that which is produced by the human voice or instrument (word or sound). The singular may also be used to refer to an "utterance" or "speech."

manēō, *manēre*, *manēns*, *manēns* *us* is regularly an intransitive verb (always so in Caesar and Cicero) meaning "remain" or "stay." The fourth principal part, *manēns* (about to remain), is a future active participle. With *in* + ablative *manēō* may mean "remain steady" or "abide (by)" (the truth, a conviction, a pact). In poetry it is occasionally used transitively and means "await" or "wait for" someone or something. Compounds of *manēō* do not exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF *MANEŌ* APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

Ubi incolae decederunt, manēns. When the inhabitants departed, we remained.
Silla semper in sententiā manēns. Silla always remained (steady) in (his) opinion.
Fili et bonum virum manent. Death awaits even the good man.

Compounds of *terreō*, *terre*, *terruī*, *terrus* do not exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF *TERREŌ* APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

cupiō, *cupere*, *cupi* or *cupiv*, *cupitus* may take an Object Infinitive often with a subject of the infinitive in the accusative case (see §107). *Cupiō* has two third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. While both *cupiō* and *optō* mean "desire," *cupiō* expresses a natural or involuntary desire, while *optō* suggests a more deliberate choice.

Servi esse liberos cupiunt. Slaves desire to be free (natural desire).
Servi gladios optant. The slaves desire swords (deliberate desire).

fugio, fugere, fugi, fugitivus is most often intransitive, but is occasionally used transitively. The fourth principal part, *fugitivus* (about to flee) is a future active participle. *Fugio* is often used of a person going into exile. Compounds of *fugio* do not exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF *FUGIO* APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

peto, petere, petii or *petivi, petitus* has two third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. When *peto* means "ask for" or "seek," it takes a direct object of the thing asked for. The person from whom something is sought is expressed by *à, ab* + ablative. When the verb means "attack," it takes a direct object of the person or thing attacked. Compounds of *peto* do not exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF *PETO* APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

Servus pecuniam à domino petit.

The slave asks for money from (his) master.

Servus gladio domino petit.

The slave attacks (his) master with a sword.

trādo, tradere, tradidi, traditus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *trāns-* (across) to *dō*; it exhibits regular vowel weakening in the third and fourth principal parts. (For the prefix *trāns-* see Appendix P.) *trādo* may mean "hand over" or "surrender." It often means "hand down" in the sense of transmitting something to posterity or of relating a story. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF *DŌ* FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF *TRĀDŌ*. WHEN A COMPOUND OF *DŌ* APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

Compounds of *vincō, vincere, vici, victus* do not exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF *VINCŌ* APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

auferō, auferre, abstruli, abstrusus is formed by the addition of the prefix *ab-* to *ferō*. (For the prefix *ab-* see Appendix P.) In the first two principal parts the *-b-* of the prefix drops out, and the *a-* lengthens into the diphthong *au-*. When a vowel lengthens to compensate for the loss of another letter, this phonetic change is called compensatory lengthening. In the third principal part, a fuller form of the prefix, *abs-*, appears. ALL THE COMPOUNDS OF *FERŌ* SHOW THE SAME IRREGULARITIES OF FORM AS *FERŌ*.

differō, differre, distuli, distusus is formed by the addition of the prefix *dis-* to *ferō*. (For the prefix *dis-* see Appendix P.) In the first two principal parts the final *-s-* of *dis-* assimilates to the *f-* of *ferō*. In the fourth principal part the *-s-* of the prefix drops out and the *-l-* is lengthened. *Differō* is more often intransitive (differ, be different) than transitive, and it may appear with an Ablative of Respect. The person or group from whom one differs is usually expressed by a noun in the ablative case with the preposition *à/ab*. ALL THE COMPOUNDS OF *FERŌ* SHOW THE SAME IRREGULARITIES OF FORM AS *FERŌ*.

A frater sententiā differit.

He differs from (his) brother as (respect to) (his) opinion.

The adjective *cārus, -a, -um* is often found with a Dative of Reference that indicates the person to whom someone or something is dear. The dative is often found between the adjective and the noun that it modifies.

Incolumis cāri discipuli.

The incolumity dear to the pupils is departing.

certus, -a, -um may describe both things (plans, decisions) and people as "determined," "certain," or "fixed." *Certus* has both a regular adverb, *certē*, and an irregular one, *certō*. MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR ADVERB.

In addition to affirming (surely, certainly), *certē* may *limit* (certainly, at least). The regular adverb is common in all periods and all writers of Latin prose and poetry. *Certō* is used regularly only by the comic poets Plautus and Terence and by Cicero (most prominently in his letters).

Verba periculis illis certē non parva.

The words are not small to (him) in the words of the poet.

Nauta cōtra in insula sed certē erit.

The sailor is not on the island, but at least he will be.

incertus, -a, -um is a compound adjective formed by the addition of the prefix *in-* (not) to *certus*. (For the prefix *in-* see Appendix P.) *Incertus* has both a regular adverb, *incertē*, and an irregular one, *incertō*. There is no significant difference in meaning between the two, but the regular form is more common. MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR ADVERB.

The adjective *falsus, -a, -um* refers to persons or things that are deceptive, fictitious, or deceitful. *Falsus* has both a regular adverb, *falsē*, and an irregular one, *falsō*. There is no significant difference in meaning between the two, but the irregular form is more common. MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR ADVERB.

ante may be either an adverb or a preposition that takes the accusative. As an adverb, it most frequently has a temporal sense (earlier, previously, before), but it sometimes conveys the spatial sense of "ahead" or "in advance." As a preposition with the accusative, it may have a temporal sense (before) or a spatial one (before, in front of).

filium autem adhibuit
Verba patris ante omnia verba
Verba ante heredes et ultimum
Adherens omni ore meo

The only son he brought
 The words of the father before all the words
 The words before the heirs and the last
 Clinging to every word of my mouth

aut is a coordinating conjunction and thus connects only parallel or grammatically balanced words, phrases, or clauses. *Aut* joins a previous word, phrase, or clause with another equivalent one that is antithetical to it. *Aut* is used to indicate mutually exclusive propositions.

Autem autem autem

To emphasize the strict balance of elements that are to be joined in Latin, *aut* is often used to mark such element; e.g., *aut filium aut filiam*. It is convenient to translate the first *aut* by the English word "either": "either the son or the daughter" (direct objects). When such a parallel series is longer than two (*aut nautam aut agricola aut poetam*), omit translating the first *aut* and say "or" for the others: "the sailor or the farmer or the poet" (direct objects).

etiam is an adverb derived from the combination of *et* with another adverb, *iam*. *Etiam* adds a fact or thought to one already mentioned (also). That idea or thought is usually understood to be more important (even). When the additional thought is related to time, *etiam* often means "still." *Etiam* is most often placed immediately before the word indicating the fact or the act being added.

Etiam. Non enim timido
Etiam pueris et pueris est
Etiam in suorum etiam interfectis etiam

Even. Not indeed timid
 Even to boys and girls is
 Even in their own and even in their slain

The adverb *ita* may refer to what precedes in this manner, thus, so; or what follows in the following manner, thus, so. Like *sic*, it may be used in comparisons to correlate with *ut* (as).

Non ita ut inquit

Not so as he says

In answers, it is used for strong affirmation or negation.

Ita est
Non est ita

It is so
 It is not so

In questions, it often adds a touch of surprise or expressed hope and expects the answer "yes."

Non est?

Is it not?

ne is a negating adverb (like *non*) used only in particular constructions with verbs in the subjunctive. It may be used to negate a Hortatory/Jussive or Optative subjunctive (see §67).

post may be either an adverb or a preposition that takes the accusative. As an adverb, it most frequently has a temporal sense (after[ward], later), but it sometimes conveys the spatial sense of "behind." As a preposition with the accusative, it may have a temporal sense (after) or a spatial one (behind).

solum is an irregular adverb meaning "only." It is derived from the adjective *solus*, -a, -um (alone, only). *verum* is a conjunction derived from the adjective *verus*, -a, -um and means "but." It introduces a sentence or phrase that agrees with what has been said but adds a qualification. *Solum* and *verum* may be used separately, but they are often used in the construction *non solum . . . sed/verum etiam* (not only . . . but also).

Crassus interfectus non solum perit etiam etiam gladius capere
Crassus overcame this enemy not only by sword but also by the sword

utrum is an introductory particle introducing an Optative subjunctive (see §67). An introductory particle introduces a particular kind of clause or speech. *Utrum* is not translated in this construction.

vero is an irregular adverb derived from the adjective *verus*, -a, -um. Although it may mean "truly," it is more often used in answers to express agreement (certainly, indeed) or with mild adversative force to join two sentences (but [in truth]) and add an additional corroborating thought. In this second usage, it is always post-positive.

Fortune in oppidum

Vero

Where you in the town?

Indeed, I was.

Bonus puer erat (caulus) utrumque utroque

Calculus was a good boy, but (in truth) Verum, was a great one.

acerbus	Derivatives	Cognates
āra	<i>acerbic, acrid; acid</i>	<i>acme, acute; hammer</i>
cārus	<i>arid</i>	<i>ash</i>
certus	<i>charity; caress, cherish</i>	<i>Kamasutra</i>
maned	<i>certain, decuss, secret</i>	<i>crime, critic riddle</i>
mors	<i>mansion, permanent; ménage</i>	
pars	<i>mortal, amortize</i>	<i>murder; ambrosia, manicure</i>
petō	<i>parcel, parse, part</i>	<i>pair; par compare</i>
vērus	<i>petition; appetite, repeat</i>	<i>archaeopteryx, symptom</i>
vincō	<i>verity, verdict, very, verify</i>	<i>warlock</i>
	<i>vanquish, convince, evict</i>	<i>wight, Ordovician</i>

§61. Introduction to the Subjunctive

The *subjunctive* mood has been identified as the mood used to express a variety of *nonfactual* ideas (see §5). It contrasts with the *indicative*, the mood used to represent something as *factual*. For example:

<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>
We are standing.	Let us begin (exclamation)
It is.	It might have fallen. (past indicative)
Sue will come.	Let only she would be! (exclamation)

In Latin the verbs in the sentences on the right would all be in the subjunctive mood because the writer or speaker wishes to represent these actions as *nonfactual*.

While Latin has six tenses in the indicative mood, it has only four tenses in the subjunctive mood: present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect.¹ The tenses of the indicative always indicate specific times (present, past, future) and aspects (simple, progressive/repeated, completed) and always have the same translations that reflect those times and aspects in a concrete, factual way. The tenses of the subjunctive, however, may express a complex range of nonfactual ideas and therefore cannot be limited to one, always correct, translation. Sometimes a tense of the subjunctive indicates not a fixed point in time but rather a relation in time of one verb to another. Although there are many possible translations of the subjunctive, *each individual use of this mood does have its own translation formula that must be memorized*.

Each of the tenses of the subjunctive mood is formed in the same way for verbs of all conjugations. The four tenses of the subjunctive occur in both the active and the passive voices. Like the indicative, the subjunctive may be divided as follows:

Present System (tenses formed with the stem from the second principal part)
Present Active and Passive Subjunctive
Imperfect Active and Passive Subjunctive
Perfect Active System (tenses formed with the stem from the third principal part)
Perfect Active Subjunctive
Pluperfect Active Subjunctive
Perfect Passive System (tenses formed with the fourth principal part)
Perfect Passive Subjunctive
Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

§62. Present Active and Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the present active and passive subjunctive of *all* conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. change the stem by replacing the stem vowels with the following infixes:²

1st	2nd	3rd	3rd v-stem	4th
-e-	-es-	-i-	-ia-	-ia-

¹ There is neither a future nor a future perfect subjunctive.

² The following sentence may serve as a useful mnemonic device for remembering these infixes:

She wears 5 giant diamonds.

3. add the active or passive personal endings directly to the changed present stem (use -m/-r for first person singular)

Thus the present active and passive subjunctive conjugations of, for example, *vocō*, *moveō*, *rego*, *capiō*, and *audiō* are:

	Active		Passive	
<i>vocō</i> (1st conjugation)	Sing.	Plural	Sing.	Plural
1. <i>vocem</i>	<i>vocemur</i>	<i>vocemini</i>	<i>vocor</i>	<i>vocamur</i>
2. <i>vocas</i>	<i>vocetis</i>	<i>vocimini</i>	<i>voceris, vocere</i>	<i>vocemini</i>
3. <i>vocat</i>	<i>vocet</i>	<i>vocentur</i>	<i>vocetur</i>	<i>vocentur</i>
<i>moveō</i> (2nd conjugation)	Sing.	Plural	Sing.	Plural
1. <i>moveam</i>	<i>moveamur</i>	<i>moveamini</i>	<i>moveor</i>	<i>moveamur</i>
2. <i>moveas</i>	<i>moveatis</i>	<i>moveamini</i>	<i>movearis, moveare</i>	<i>moveamini</i>
3. <i>moveat</i>	<i>moveat</i>	<i>moveantur</i>	<i>moveatur</i>	<i>moveantur</i>
<i>rego</i> (3rd conjugation)	Sing.	Plural	Sing.	Plural
1. <i>regam</i>	<i>regamur</i>	<i>regamini</i>	<i>regor</i>	<i>regamur</i>
2. <i>regas</i>	<i>regatis</i>	<i>regamini</i>	<i>regaris, regare</i>	<i>regamini</i>
3. <i>regat</i>	<i>regat</i>	<i>regantur</i>	<i>regatur</i>	<i>regantur</i>
<i>capiō</i> (4th conjugation)	Sing.	Plural	Sing.	Plural
1. <i>capiam</i>	<i>capiamur</i>	<i>capiamini</i>	<i>capior</i>	<i>capiamur</i>
2. <i>capias</i>	<i>capiatis</i>	<i>capiamini</i>	<i>capiaris, capiare</i>	<i>capiamini</i>
3. <i>capiat</i>	<i>capiat</i>	<i>capiantur</i>	<i>capiatur</i>	<i>capiantur</i>
<i>audiō</i> (5th conjugation)	Sing.	Plural	Sing.	Plural
1. <i>audiam</i>	<i>audiamur</i>	<i>audiamini</i>	<i>audior</i>	<i>audiamur</i>
2. <i>audias</i>	<i>audiat</i>	<i>audiamini</i>	<i>audiaris, audire</i>	<i>audiamini</i>
3. <i>audiat</i>	<i>audiat</i>	<i>audiantur</i>	<i>audiat</i>	<i>audiantur</i>

OBSERVATIONS

1. The personal endings added to the changed present stems are the same as those used in the indicative conjugations. No new endings must be learned. Long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.
2. No English translations can be given for subjunctive verb forms unless they appear in Latin sentences because different grammatical uses or structures require different translations. Context helps to determine the correct English translation for each subjunctive verb.
3. The first person singular present active and passive subjunctive of the third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations are identical with the first person singular future active and passive indicative. For example, *regam* (present subjunctive) = *regam* (I shall rule). Context helps to determine which form is more appropriate.
4. The present active and passive subjunctive conjugations of the irregular third-conjugation verb *ferō* are regularly formed.

The present active subjunctive conjugations of *sum*, *possum*, and *eō* are irregular and must be memorized:³

Singular			
1	<i>sim</i>	<i>possim</i>	<i>eam</i>
2	<i>sis</i>	<i>possis</i>	<i>eas</i>
3	<i>sit</i>	<i>possit</i>	<i>eat</i>
Plural			
1	<i>simus</i>	<i>possimus</i>	<i>eamus</i>
2	<i>sitis</i>	<i>possitis</i>	<i>eatīs</i>
3	<i>sint</i>	<i>possint</i>	<i>eant</i>

OBSERVATIONS

1. The stem of *sum* in the present active subjunctive is *si-*. Long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule. The present active subjunctive of *possum* adds the prefix *pos-* to the present active subjunctive of *sum* (see §10).
2. The stem of *eō* in the present active subjunctive is *ea-*. Long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.

§63. Imperfect Active and Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the imperfect active and passive subjunctive of *all* verbs:

1. take the present active infinitive (all of the second principal part)
2. lengthen the final *-e* (*-e* → *-ē*)
3. add the active and passive personal endings directly to the second principal part with lengthened final *-ē* (use *-m/-r* for first person singular)

Thus the imperfect active and passive subjunctive conjugations of, for example, *regō* are:

Present Active Infinitive with lengthened final <i>-ē</i> :		<i>regere-</i>	
		Active	Passive
		Singular	Singular
1		<i>rēgerem</i>	<i>regerer</i>
2		<i>rēgerēs</i>	<i>regerēris/regerēre</i>
3		<i>rēgeret</i>	<i>regerētur</i>
		Plural	Plural
1		<i>rēgerēmus</i>	<i>rēgerēmur</i>
2		<i>rēgerētis</i>	<i>rēgerēmini</i>
3		<i>rēgerent</i>	<i>rēgerentur</i>

OBSERVATIONS

1. Long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.
2. The imperfect active subjunctive conjugations of *sum*, *possum*, and *eō* are *regularly* formed. The imperfect active and passive subjunctive conjugations of *ferō* are also *regularly* formed.

§64. Perfect and Pluperfect Active Subjunctive of All Verbs

Perfect Active Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the perfect active subjunctive of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect active stem
2. add the infix -eri-
3. add the active personal endings (use -m for first person singular)

Thus the perfect active subjunctive conjugation of, for example, *rego* is:

Perfect Active Stem: <i>rex-</i>		
Infix: <i>-eri-</i>		
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1	<i>rexerim</i>	<i>rexerimus</i>
2	<i>rexeris</i>	<i>rexeritis</i>
3	<i>rexerit</i>	<i>rexerint</i>

OBSERVATIONS

1. The conjugation of the perfect active subjunctive is identical with that of the future perfect active indicative *except in the first person singular*. For example, compare *rexerō* (future perfect indicative) with *rexerim* (perfect subjunctive)
2. The perfect active subjunctive conjugations of *sum*, *possum*, *eō*, and *ferō* are *regularly* formed

Pluperfect Active Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the pluperfect active subjunctive of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect active stem
2. add the infix -issē-
3. add the active personal endings (use -m for first person singular)

Thus the pluperfect active subjunctive conjugation of, for example, *regō* is:

	Perfect Active Stem: <i>rex-</i>	
	Infix: <i>-isse-</i>	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1	<i>rexissem</i>	<i>rexissemus</i>
2	<i>rexisset</i>	<i>rexissetis</i>
3	<i>rexisset</i>	<i>rexissent</i>

OBSERVATIONS

1. Long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.
2. The pluperfect active subjunctive conjugations of *sum*, *possum*, and *ferō* are *regularly* formed.
3. The pluperfect active subjunctive conjugation of *eō* is *regularly* formed from the stem *iv-*. However, the alternate stem *i-* contracts with the *i-* of the infix -issē-. Thus the pluperfect active subjunctive conjugation of *eō* formed from this alternate stem is: *issem*, *isses*, *isset*, *issemus*, *issetis*, *issent*

§65. Perfect and Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs

Perfect Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the perfect passive subjunctive of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect passive participle
2. add as a *separate word* the present subjunctive of *sum*

Thus the perfect passive subjunctive conjugation of, for example, *regō* is:

Perfect Passive Participle: <i>reclus</i> -a -um-		
	Singular	Plural
1	<i>reclus</i> -a -um <i>sim</i>	<i>recl</i> -ae -a <i>simus</i>
2	<i>reclus</i> -a -um <i>sis</i>	<i>recl</i> -ae -a <i>sitis</i>
3	<i>reclus</i> -a -um <i>sit</i>	<i>recl</i> -ae -a <i>sint</i>

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each form of the perfect passive subjunctive is a compound verb form. The two words it comprises must be treated as a unit.
2. The perfect passive participle ends in -us (sing.) or -i (pl.) if the subject is masculine, -a (sing.) or -ae (pl.) if the subject is feminine, -um (sing.) or -a (pl.) if the subject is neuter.
3. The perfect passive subjunctive conjugation of *ferō* is *regularly* formed

Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the pluperfect passive subjunctive of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect passive participle
2. add as a *separate word* the imperfect subjunctive of *sum*

Thus the pluperfect passive subjunctive conjugation of, for example, *regō* is:

Perfect Passive Participle: <i>reclus</i> -a -um-		
	Singular	Plural
1	<i>reclus</i> -a -um <i>essem</i>	<i>recl</i> -ae -a <i>essemus</i>
2	<i>reclus</i> -a -um <i>esses</i>	<i>recl</i> -ae -a <i>essetis</i>
3	<i>reclus</i> -a -um <i>esset</i>	<i>recl</i> -ae -a <i>essent</i>

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each form of the pluperfect passive subjunctive is a compound verb form. The two words it comprises must be treated as a unit.
2. The gender and number of the subject determine the ending of the perfect passive participle.
3. The pluperfect passive subjunctive conjugation of *ferō* is *regularly* formed.

§67. Three Independent Uses of the Subjunctive

Although its name refers to its eventual appearance in many kinds of *dependent* or *subordinate* clauses (subjunctive < sub- + iungō, join under), in origin the subjunctive was a mood for verbs in *independent* or *main* clauses when certain basic nonfactual ideas were to be expressed. Later uses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses developed from these basic independent uses, but the subjunctive never ceased being used as an independent mood as well.

Hortatory/Jussive Subjunctive

A verb in the *present* subjunctive may express a *strong suggestion* or *exhortation*. The particle *nē* is used for negation. This use of the subjunctive is called **Hortatory** (when the verb is in the first person) or **Jussive** (when the verb is in the second or third person).⁴ For example:

Romani <i>eamus</i> .	Let us go to Rome. (Hortatory)
Nē ex urbe <i>discēdat</i> .	Let him depart from the city. (Jussive)

OBSERVATIONS

1. The English word "let" is regularly used to translate the Hortatory/Jussive subjunctive.
2. The syntax of, for example, *discēdat* is **present subjunctive, jussive**.⁵
3. In early and colloquial Latin the Jussive subjunctive in the second person was used as the equivalent of an *imperative* to express a positive command. In the classical period the Jussive as a positive command remains common in poetry.

Negative Commands

When preceded by *nē*, the *second person singular or plural present or perfect* subjunctive expresses a *negative command*. This is a particular use of the Jussive subjunctive.

Nē laborēs, <i>serve</i> .	Do not work, slave.
Nē ab hostibus capti <i>sitis</i> .	Do not (pl.) be captured by the enemies.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In classical Latin the perfect subjunctive is more common and more emphatic than the present subjunctive in negative commands. In this usage the perfect subjunctive has *simple* rather than *completed* aspect.⁶
2. The syntax of, for example, *capti sitis* is **perfect subjunctive, jussive in a negative command**.

Potential Subjunctive

A verb in the *present* or *perfect* subjunctive may express a *possibility in present or future time*. A verb in the *imperfect* subjunctive may express a *possibility that existed in the*

4. Hortatory is derived from the Latin *hortor* (exhort) and Jussive from *iubeō* (order).
 5. Remember that the syntax of a verb comprises tense, mood, reason for mood, and reason for tense.
 6. This usage of the perfect subjunctive in Latin to express simple aspect appears to be an imitation of the Greek aorist tense, which has simple aspect only.

past. The adverb *nōn* is used for negation. This use of the subjunctive is called **Potential**. For example:

<i>Rōmae multa videās.</i>	You could see many things in Rome. (Potential, pres./fut. time)
<i>Id nōn fecerim.</i>	I would not do this thing. (Potential, pres./fut. time)
<i>Domum venirent.</i>	They might have come home. (Potential, past time)

OBSERVATIONS

1. The perfect subjunctive is rarely used in early Latin and becomes more common by the time of Cicero. In this usage the perfect subjunctive has *simple* rather than *completed* aspect.
2. When the potential subjunctive appears in the second person singular, its subject is often an imaginary or general "you."
3. The English words "might," "could," or "would" are regularly used to translate the Potential subjunctive in present or future time.
4. The English phrases "might have," "could have," or "would have" are regularly used to translate the Potential subjunctive in past time.
5. When the Potential subjunctive is negated, as in the second sentence, the possibility of the verbal action is *denied*. Only "would/would have" or "could/could have" should be used to translate the negative of Potential subjunctives.⁷
6. The syntax of, for example, *venirent* is imperfect subjunctive, Potential, past time.

Optative Subjunctive

A verb in the *present* subjunctive may express a wish that can be fulfilled in the future. A verb in the *imperfect* subjunctive may express a wish that cannot be fulfilled in the present, and a *pluperfect* subjunctive may express a wish that could not be fulfilled in the past. This use of the subjunctive is called **Optative**. All Optative subjunctives express wishes felt or uttered by the writer or speaker. The particle *nē* is used for negation. The word *utinam* may be used to introduce an Optative subjunctive, but it is not required.⁸ For example:

<i>[Utinam] milites nostri superent!</i>	If only our soldiers would conquer! May our soldiers conquer! (future wish capable of fulfillment)
<i>Rōmae viderem!</i>	If only I were living in Rome! (present wish incapable of fulfillment)
<i>Nē id egresset!</i>	If only he had not done it! (past wish incapable of fulfillment)

OBSERVATIONS

1. The present subjunctive in the first sentence implies that the wish *can come true* at some future time. By contrast, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctives in the second and third sentences imply that these wishes *cannot/could not come true*.
7. If the second sentence were translated "I might not do this thing," the English still allows the possibility that the subject *might* do this thing.
8. Ut rather than *utinam* appears in early Latin and, rarely, in poetry.

2. Three English translation formulas distinguish among the three types of Optative subjunctives

Present Subjunctive	"If only . . . would . . ." (future wish capable of fulfillment)
Imperfect Subjunctive	"If only . . . were . . ." (present wish incapable of fulfillment)
Pluperfect Subjunctive	"If only . . . had . . ." (past wish incapable of fulfillment)

A present wish capable of fulfillment may also be translated with the English word "may," as in the translation of the first sentence.

3. The syntax of, for example, *vivere* is imperfect subjunctive, Optative, present wish incapable of fulfillment.

Present Subjunctive		
Present Subjunctive	Future Wish Capable of Fulfillment	English Translation
<i>ut vivat</i>	<i>ut vivat</i>	may live
<i>ut moriatur</i>	<i>ut moriatur</i>	may die
<i>ut sciat</i>	<i>ut sciat</i>	may know
<i>ut nesciat</i>	<i>ut nesciat</i>	may not know
<i>ut possit</i>	<i>ut possit</i>	may be able to
<i>ut non possit</i>	<i>ut non possit</i>	may not be able to
<i>ut velit</i>	<i>ut velit</i>	may wish
<i>ut non velit</i>	<i>ut non velit</i>	may not wish
Imperfect Subjunctive		
Imperfect Subjunctive	Present Wish Incapable of Fulfillment	English Translation
<i>ut viveret</i>	<i>ut viveret</i>	might live
<i>ut moreretur</i>	<i>ut moreretur</i>	might die
<i>ut sciret</i>	<i>ut sciret</i>	might know
<i>ut nesciret</i>	<i>ut nesciret</i>	might not know
<i>ut posset</i>	<i>ut posset</i>	might be able to
<i>ut non posset</i>	<i>ut non posset</i>	might not be able to
<i>ut vellet</i>	<i>ut vellet</i>	might wish
<i>ut non vellet</i>	<i>ut non vellet</i>	might not wish
Pluperfect Subjunctive		
Pluperfect Subjunctive	Past Wish Incapable of Fulfillment	English Translation
<i>ut viveret</i>	<i>ut viveret</i>	might have lived
<i>ut moreretur</i>	<i>ut moreretur</i>	might have died
<i>ut sciret</i>	<i>ut sciret</i>	might have known
<i>ut nesciret</i>	<i>ut nesciret</i>	might not have known
<i>ut posset</i>	<i>ut posset</i>	might have been able to
<i>ut non posset</i>	<i>ut non posset</i>	might not have been able to
<i>ut vellet</i>	<i>ut vellet</i>	might have wished
<i>ut non vellet</i>	<i>ut non vellet</i>	might not have wished

● DRILL 67 MAY NOW BE DONE

§68. Conditional Sentences II

Some conditional sentences (Simple, Future More Vivid, Future More Vivid with Emphatic Protasis) have verbs in the indicative mood (see §49). Other conditional sentences have verbs in the subjunctive mood to reflect the *nonfactual* character of the ideas they express.

9 "Might" and "might have" can be used only when a potential subjunctive is not negated.

Future Less Vivid Conditional Sentences

In a **Future Less Vivid** conditional sentence, the verbs of both the protasis and the apodosis are in the *present* subjunctive. The Future Less Vivid contrasts with the Future More Vivid in that it represents future events *less vividly* (i.e., less factually) by using verbs in the subjunctive rather than the indicative mood. For example:

Si Catilina capiatur, laeti sint multi cives.

If Catiline should be captured, happy would be many citizens.

If Catiline should be captured, many citizens would be happy.

OBSERVATION

The English words "should" (in the protasis) and "would" (in the apodosis) are regularly used to translate a Future Less Vivid conditional sentence.

Contrary-to-Fact Conditional Sentences

Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentences make statements that suppose that the actions of both the protasis and the apodosis are *not* occurring or *did not* occur. Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentences are of two types: **present** or **past**. In a **Present Contrary-to-Fact** conditional sentence, the verbs of both the protasis and the apodosis are in the *imperfect* subjunctive. In a **Past Contrary-to-Fact** conditional sentence, the verbs of both protasis and apodosis are in the *pluperfect* subjunctive. For example:

Si ad bellum irem, arma caperem.

If to war I were going (but I am not), arms I'd o. I would be taking up (but I am not).

If I were going to war, I would be taking up arms.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In a Present Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence, the verbs in the imperfect subjunctive report *nonfactual* or *contrary-to-fact* events that are *not occurring in the present*.
2. The English words "were" (in the protasis) and "would" (in the apodosis) are regularly used to translate a Present Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence.

Si rex interfectus esset, cives timore liberati essent.

If the king had been killed (but he was not), the citizens from fear would have been freed (but they were not).

If the king had been killed, the citizens would have been freed from fear.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In a Past Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence, the verbs in the pluperfect subjunctive report *nonfactual* or *contrary-to-fact* events that *did not occur in the past*.
2. The English words "had" (in the protasis) and "would have" (in the apodosis) are regularly used to translate a Past Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence.

Mixed Conditional Sentences

In addition to the types of conditional sentences described thus far, two **mixed** conditional sentences commonly occur, which combine protases and apodoses from

two conditional sentences. In a **Mixed Future conditional sentence**, the verb of the *protasis* is in the *present subjunctive*, and the verb of the *apodosis* is in the *future indicative*. For example

ἂν ἴδῃς τὸν ἀνδρῶν ἐκείνων (present subj.) καὶ οὐκ ἔλθῃς (future indic.)
If you see the men there, you will not come.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The **Mixed Future conditional sentence** combines the *protasis* of a **Future Less Vivid** (present subjunctive) with the *apodosis* of a **Future More Vivid** (future indicative). The event of the *protasis* is represented less vividly (i.e., less factually) by the subjunctive. By contrast, the event of the *apodosis* is represented more vividly (i.e., more factually) by the indicative.
2. The English words "should" (in the *protasis*) and "will" (in the *apodosis*) are regularly used to translate a **Mixed Future conditional sentence**.

In a **Mixed Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence**, the verb of the *protasis* is in the *pluperfect subjunctive* and the verb of the *apodosis* is in the *imperfect subjunctive*. For example:

ἂν ἴδῃς τὸν ἀνδρῶν ἐκείνων (pluperfect subj.) καὶ οὐκ ἔλθῃς (imperfect subj.)
If you had seen the men there, you would not come.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The **Mixed Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence** combines the *protasis* of a **Past Contrary-to-Fact** (pluperfect subjunctive) with the *apodosis* of a **Present Contrary-to-Fact** (imperfect subjunctive). The verb of the *protasis* reports an event that *did not* occur in the past, and the verb of the *apodosis* reports an event that *is not* occurring in the present.
2. The English words "had" (in the *protasis*) and "would" (in the *apodosis*) are regularly used to translate a **Mixed Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence**.

Summary of Conditional Sentences ¹⁰		
Name	Form	English Translation
Future More Vivid	Future Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis	"will" in Protasis "will" in Apodosis
Future Less Vivid	Present Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis	"should" in Protasis "should" in Apodosis
Future Contrary-to-Fact	Present Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis	"should" in Protasis "should" in Apodosis
Past Contrary-to-Fact	Pluperfect Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis	"had" in Protasis "would have" in Apodosis
Mixed Future	Present Subjunctive in Protasis Future Indicative in Apodosis	"should" in Protasis "will" in Apodosis
Mixed Contrary-to-Fact	Pluperfect Subjunctive in Protasis Imperfect Subjunctive in Apodosis	"had" in Protasis "would" in Apodosis

• DRILL 68 MAY NOW BE DONE.

¹⁰ For other conditional sentence formulas see §49.

§69. Dative of Purpose and the Double Dative Construction

A noun in the dative case, usually not modified by an adjective, may express an idea of purpose or service. The Dative of Purpose¹¹ usually joins with a Dative of Reference (see §1) to form what is called the double dative construction. For example

<i>Tu mihi cūre es.</i>	You to me for the purpose of a concern are You are for the purpose of a concern to me You are a helper in concern to me
<i>Ello illū dāns tui.</i>	For my son I brought a gift for the purpose of a gift I brought I brought a book for the purpose of a gift for my son. I brought a book for you, as a gift for my son.

The syntax of *cūre* and *dāns* is Dative of Purpose. The syntax of *mihi* and *illū* is Dative of Reference.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Dative of Purpose may be translated literally "for the purpose of _____," but may also be translated more loosely with phrases such as "a source of _____" or "(serve as) a _____."
2. Although the Dative of Purpose frequently appears with a Dative of Reference in the double dative construction, it may also appear alone. For example:

<i>Militibz ad fructum auxilia missi sunt.</i>
For soldiers to the fruit of help were sent.

§70. Dative of Advantage, Dative of Disadvantage

Sometimes the Dative of Reference clearly expresses the person or thing for whose advantage or disadvantage the event of a sentence occurs. In such sentences the Dative of Reference may be called instead the Dative of Advantage or the Dative of Disadvantage. For example.

<i>Pueris et puellis publicae vendunt.</i>
For boys and girls public are selling.
<i>Navarum et servorum periculum est.</i>
For ships and slaves danger is.

The syntax of *pueris* and *puellis* is Dative of Advantage. The syntax of *navarum* and *servorum* is Dative of Disadvantage. All, however, may also be identified as Datives of Reference.

◆ DRILL 69-70 MAY NOW BE DONE.

¹¹ The Dative of Purpose is also known as the Predicate Dative.

Short Readings

1. A comic character makes an unveiled threat.

auferēre, nōn abībis, sī ego fustem sumpserō (PLAUTUS, *AMPHITRUO* 358)

fustis, fustis, -ium *m.* club

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take up, seize

2. A proverb employing metonymy

sine Cerere et Liberō friget Venus. (TERENCE, *EUNUCHUS* 732)

frigeō, frigere, —, — be cold

3. Achilles has the last word in a fragment from a tragedy by the poet Accius
(170–ca. 86 B.C.E.).

immo enim vēro corpus Priamō reddidī, Hectorem abstulī

(ACCIIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE FRAG.* 667)

Hectōr, Hectoris *m.* Hector, son of Priam

immō . . . vērō no, on the contrary

reddō (red- + dō) give back, return

4. A fragment of Cicero's poem about his consulship

cēdant arma togae, concedat laurea laudi . . . (CICERO, *DE CŌSULATŪ SUO* FRAG. 11)

concedō (con- + cēdō) concede, grant; give place to, be second to

laurea, laureae *f.* laurel branch (as token of military victory), victory

laus, laudis *f.* praise

toga, togae *f.* toga

5. Laelius, a character in a philosophical dialogue, makes the following remark while discussing the views of those who believe that souls perish along with bodies.

. ut nihil bonī est in morte, sic certe nihil malī . . . (CICERO, *DE AMICITIĀ* 14)

6. The first line of a poem of Catullus

Vivāmus, mea Lesbia, atque amēmus . . . (CATULLUS V.1)

7. Varro explains why agriculture has existed longer than cities.

. . . divina nātūra dedit agrōs, ars hūmāna aedificāvit urbēs.

(VARRO, *DE RE RŪSTICĀ* III.1)

aedificō (1-tr.) build, construct

hūmānus, -a, -um human

8. A Roman proverb

Amēs parentem si aequus est, si aliter, feras. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* A8)

aequus, -a, -um equitable, just

aliter (adv.) otherwise in another way

parēns, parentis -ium *m.* or *f.* parent

9. A Roman proverb

Amīcī vitia, sī ferās, faciās tua. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* A16)

vitium, vitii *n.* vice, fault

10. The historian describes the Roman troops after their attack on the town of Zama has been repelled

. . paucī integrī, magna pars vulneribus confectī abeunt.

(SALLUST, *BELLUM IUGURTHAE* 60)

cōficiō (con- + faciō) accomplish, complete, wear out, enfeeble

integer, integra, integrum whole unscathed

volnus (= vulnus), volneris *n.* wound

11. In a poetic competition between two shepherds, one of them, Damoetas, makes this boast

mālō mē Galatēa petit, lascīva puella,

et fugit ad salicēs et sē cupit ante vidērī (VERGIL, *ECLOGUES* III.64–65)

Galatēa Galatēae *f.* Gaatea

lascīvus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from restraint

mālum, māli *n.* apple

salix, salicis *f.* willow (tree)

12. Apollo encourages Iulus, Aeneas's young son.

macte novā virtūte, puer, sic itur ad astra. (VERGIL, *AENEID* IX.641)

astrum, astrī *n.* star

macte (interj.) be blessed, hurrah, bravo

13. Jupiter informs the nymph Iuturna that her brother, Turnus, is destined to die.

disce tuum, nē mē incūsēs, Iūturna, dolōrem. (VERGIL, *AENEID* XII.146)

discō, discere, didicī, — learn

dolor, doloris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain

incūsō (1 tr.) (lay the) blame (on), reproach

Iūturna Iūturnae *f.* Iuturna

14. The poet compares the motives of good men to those of his addressee, Quintus.

ōdērunt peccāre bonī virtūtis amōre:

tū nihil admittēs in tē formīdine poenae . . (HORACE, *EPISTULAE* I.16.51–52)

admittō (ad- + mittō) admit, become guilty of, commit

formīdō formīdinis *f.* fear

peccō (1-intr.) make a mistake, do wrong

15. The poet describes Io's reaction after she has been turned into a cow.

. . . territaque est formā, territa vōce suā. (OVID, *HEROIDES* XIV 92)

forma formae *f.* shape, form

16. Banished to Tomis on the Black Sea, the poet pleads with Augustus to forgive him and consider his writings from exile.

atque utinam revocēs animum paulisper ab ira,

et vacuo iubeas hinc tibi pauca legī . . . (OVID, *TRISTIA* II. 557–58)

hinc (adv.) from this place

paulisper (adv.) for a short time

revocō (re- + vocō) (1-tr.) summon back, recall

vacuus -a, -um empty; idle, free from distractions

17. The historian describes fear moving through the city.

alternae vōcēs “ad arma” et “hostēs in urbe sunt” audiēbantur.

(LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITĀ* III.15.6)

alternus, -a, -um alternating, in alternation

18. Hannibal, the great Carthaginian general and near conqueror of Rome, summarizes his relationship to the Romans.

ōdī odiōque sum Romānis. (LIVY *AB URBE CONDITĀ* XXXV.19.6)

19. In 183 B.C.E. Hannibal committed suicide with these words (according to the historian)

liberēmus diuturnā cūrā populum Rōmānum . .

(LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITĀ* XXXIX.51.9)

diuturnus, -a, -um long-lasting, permanent, continual

20. Quintilian lays down the first principle in education.

nomina declinare et verba* in primis pueri sciant . .

(QUINTILIAN, *INSTITUTIŌ ORATŌRIA* I.4.22)

*verbum, *here*, verb

declinō (1-tr.) decline; conjugate

in primis especially, above all; first

nōmen, *nōminus* *n.* name; noun

sciō, *scīre*, *scī* or *scīvī* *scītus* know (how to) (+ inf.)

21. The historian reports the mood of Roman soldiers unwilling to endure a long siege and impatient to attack Jerusalem.

... poscēbantque perīcula, pars virtūte, multī ferōciā et cupidine praemiōrum

(TACITUS, *HISTORIAE* V.11)

cupidō, *cupidinis* *f.* desire

ferōciā, *ferōciae* *f.* fierceness, savagery

poscō, *poscere*, *poposcī*, — demand

praemium, *praemii* *n.* reward prize

22. The biographer reports what was written on a placard carried in front of a triumph of Julius Caesar. He tells us that these words indicated not what Caesar did but how quickly he did it.

VĒNĪ · VĪDĪ · VĪCĪ (Suetonius, *Vita Iulii* 37)

23. Caligula expresses his impatience and contempt for the fawning Roman public.

utinam populus Romanus unam cervicem haberet. (Suetonius, *Vita Caligulae* 30)

cervix: cervicis *f.* neck

ūnus, -a, -um one

24. The historian reports what the scholar M. Pomponius Porcellus said to Tiberius after the ill-spoken emperor had uttered a nonexistent word.

tū enim, Caesar, civitatem dare potes hominibus, verbō nōn potes.

(Suetonius, *De Grammaticis et Rhetoribus* 22)

Longer Readings

1. Cicero, *De Senectute* 11

Cato recalls an exchange between M. Livius Salinator and Q. Fabius Maximus, his superior officer. (Salinator had previously lost the town of Tarentum to the Carthaginian general Hannibal.)

“meā operā, Q. Fabi, Tarentum recēpisti.”

“cerē,” inquit, . . . “nam nisi tū amīssissēs, numquam recēpissēm.”

amittō (ā- + mittō) send away; lose

Q. Fabius, Q. Fabii m. Q. Fabius (Maximus),
hero of the second Punic war

inquam (defective verb) say; inquit = 3rd sing.
pres. act. indic.

opera operae f. effort, work

recipiō (re- + capiō) take back; recapture

Tarentum, Tarenti n. Tarentum, town in
southern Italy

The *De Senectute* (or *Cato Maior De Senectute*, Cato the Elder Concerning Old Age) is a short philosophical dialogue with Cato the Elder (author of the *De Agri Cultura*) as the chief speaker. The dialogue is set in 150 B.C.E., shortly before Cato's death, and was written in 44 B.C.E. (the same year as the *De Amicitia*) shortly before Cicero's death.

2. Propertius II 16.1–2

The poet begins a poem with fear about a new rival for Cynthia's affection.

Praetor ab Illyricis vēnit modo, Cynthia, terrīs,

maxima praeda tibi,* maxima cura mihi.

*The final -i of tibi here scans long.

Illyricus, -a, -um Illyrian, of Illyria, an area east
of the Adriatic sea and a Roman province

maximus, -a, -um biggest, greatest, very great

modo (adv.) only, now, just now

praeda, praedae f. booty, plunder; prey

praetor, praetoris m. praetor, a judicial official
both in and outside of Rome

Sextus Propertius (49?–16? B.C.E.) was born in Umbria of equestrian rank and moved to Rome to begin a legal career. Instead, in 28 he published the first of four books of poems written in elegiac couplets, the chosen meter for love poetry in the Augustan period (see §82). In the first book Propertius, the poet-lover, introduces his beloved Cynthia, and many of the poems concern his stormy relationship with her. Shortly after his first book's publication Propertius came under the patronage of Maecenas. Propertius's poetry abounds in mythological references and ostentatious displays of obscure learning. His poems are marked by a studied unpredictability in syntax, imagery, and logical movement. Such poetry—erudite, personal, short and dense with meaning—was meant to supplant the more sedate and grandiose epic.

3. Seneca the Younger, *Hercules Furans* 46–48

Iuno complains that Hercules knows no ordinary human limits.

nec satis terrae patent:

effrēgit ecce limen inferni Iovis

et opima victi rēgis ad superōs refert.

ecce (interj.) lo! behold! look!

effringō, effringere, effrēgi, effractus break open

infernus, -a, -um lower, infernal

limen, liminis n. entrance, doorway, threshold

opimus, -a, -um rich, abundant, sumptuous,

splendid, as *neut. pl. subst.*, spoils

pateō, patere, patui, lie open

referō (re- + ferō), referre, rettulī, relātus carry
back

satis (adv.) enough sufficiently

superi, superōrum m. pl. (the) ones above (the)
living, inhabitants of the upper world

4. Marual VIII 73 5 8

The poet addresses the elegiac love poets.

Cynthia tē vātem fēcit, lascīve Propertī;
ingenium Galli pulchra Lycoris erat;
fāma est argūtī Nemesis formōsa Tibullī;
Lesbia dictāvit, docte Catulle, tibi.

argūtus -a, -um clear-voiced; melodious, tuneful
dictō (1 tr) say repeatedly, compose, dictate
doctus, -a, -um learned, erudite
formōsus, -a, -um beautiful, snapely
Gallus, Galli m (C. Cornelius) Gallus, elegiac
poet (69?–26 B.C.E.)
lascīvus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from
restraint

Lycōris, Lycōridis f. Lycoris Gallus's poetic name
for his beloved
Nemesis, Nemeseos f. Nemesis, goddess of
retribution; Tibullus's poetic name for his
beloved
Tibullus, Tibullī m Tibullus, elegiac poet
(55?–19? B.C.E.)
vātes, vātis, -ium m. or *f.* prophet, bard, poet

§71. Greetings and Interjections in Latin

Vocabulary

salūs, salūtis *f.* safety; health
salūtem dicere (idiom) to say “greetings,”
to say hello

salvē/salvēte hello! good day!
valēō, valēre, valūi, valiturus be strong, be
able; be well, fare well

valē/valēte greetings! farewell!

ecce (interj.) lo! behold! look!
herc(u)le (interj.) by Hercules!
mehercule or **meherculēs** (interj.) by
Hercules!
heu (interj.) alas! oh!

MEMORIZE THESE VOCABULARY WORDS. Their meanings will not be given when they appear in the remainder of this book.

Although there are no living Latin speakers, information about everyday speech and conversation in Latin may be partially recovered from the Latin literary texts that survive. Some of the best sources for colloquial or spoken Latin are the comedies of Plautus and Terence, the poems of Catullus, and the letters of Cicero. It is not surprising that colloquial Latin was distinguished by short sentences, colorful idioms and metaphors, oaths and interjections, obscenities, ellipses, and other features of a living, spoken language.

There are no exact Latin equivalents for the English words “hello” and “good bye.” The Romans most often greeted and departed from one another by saying words that resembled singular and plural active imperatives.

Sing.	Pl.	
salvē	salvēte	Hello! Good day!
valē	valēte	Greetings! Farewell!

OBSERVATIONS

1. While these words are imperative forms, only **valē/valēte** can be traced to a Latin verb with a full set of forms
2. Both **salvē/salvēte** and **valē/valēte** may be said when departing, but **valē/valēte** is more common. **Salvē/salvēte** may be said to someone who sneezes. Both may be addressed to the dying and the dead.

Examples

Salvè, venusta Sirmio . . Sirmio, Sirmionis f. Sirmio	Greetings, charming Sirmio . . (Catullus XXXI 12) venustus, -a, -um charming
Vale, puella.	Farewell, girl. (Catullus VIII 12)
A. Bene vale. B. Et tu bene vale.	A. Farewell B. You, too, farewell. (Plautus <i>Poenulus</i> 1358)
Salvè multum, mi pater	Greetings, my father. (Plautus, <i>Menæchmi</i> 775)
Vale atque salvè.	Farewell and good day. (Plautus, <i>Captivi</i> 744)
A. Valēs? valuistis?	A. Are you well? Have you been well?
B. Valēs, ut valui . .	B. Yes, I am well, and I have been well; . . (Plautus, <i>Trinummus</i> 50)
A. Ut? valēs?	A. How are you faring?
B. Nōn male.	B. [I am] not [faring] badly. (Plautus, <i>Menæchmi</i> 718)
*ut, here (interrog. adv.) how	

OBSERVATIONS

1. The adverbs *bene* and *multum* may appear with *salvè/salvete* and *vale/valete* to strengthen the greeting or farewell. There is no English equivalent for these adverbs in such contexts.
2. The second person of *valeō*, in both the present and perfect tenses, may be used to inquire after a person's health. There is no Latin equivalent for the English "yes"; an affirmative answer is given by repeating the verb.

The salutation of a letter in Latin is actually a complete sentence. For example:

M. Caelius M. Tullio salutem dicit . .	Marcus Caelius to Marcus Tullius "health" (d.o.)
	Marcus Caelius says greetings to Marcus Tullius
	Marcus Tullius says hello to Marcus Caelius

OBSERVATIONS

1. The person writing the letter is in the nominative case and is the subject of *dicit*. The person to whom the letter is being written is in the dative case and is the indirect object.
2. This common salutation is often abbreviated. For example:

M. Caelio M. Tullio . .	
M. Caelius M. Tullio . .	

The first sentence after a salutation often takes a standard form:

Si valēs, bene est.	
Si vobis sit bene, et mihi . .	

In this sentence the adverb *bene* modifies the third person singular form of *sum* used impersonally; that is, *sum* has no personal subject. This expression is an idiomatic way of reporting how a person is or how a situation is for the speaker. For example:

1. *Valēs* is a contracted form of *valēsne*, and *valuistis* of *valuistisne*. The full forms do not occur in the Latin literature that survives.
2. This is often abbreviated: *s.v.b.e.* A longer version of this introduction—*si valēs, bene est; ego quoque valēs*—is abbreviated *s.v.b.e.q.v.* (*quique* [adv.] also). Both introductions were probably formal in style.

Male est mihi	It is good for me
Bene est mihi	It is well for me
Munus est mihi male	It is a bad gift to me

OBSERVATIONS

- 1 These expressions and other analogous ones occur frequently in conversations in the comedies of Plautus and Terence.
- 2 The less literal English translations given above are meant to approximate the meanings of the Latin sentences since there are no exact English equivalents for them.

Perhaps in origin a demonstrative adverb, the interjection *ecce* (lo! behold! look!) is usually used to call attention to something that is visible or present. The interjection *heu* (alas! oh!) is regularly used as an expression of pain or grief. *Hercule* or *hercle* (by Hercules!) is an oath used by men as an expression of strong feeling that adds emphasis to a particular word. In origin this interjection was an address to the deified Hercules, but its identification with the god weakened through common use.³ *Mehercule* or *meherculēs* are extended forms of *hercule*.

A: Ubi tu es? B: Ecce ego!	A: Where are you? B: Behold! I am here!
Ubi illi esse ferunt oviphae	Where they say he is, there are the sheep
Ille illas /	He those
Heu cor meum funditur	Alas my heart melts
cor cordis a liore	heart heart from heart
Sed n. heu liquoris est	But no, alas liquor is
stans rās nras hūmā pū	standing reason our human pure
grātia	grace
grā hūmā dūm	grace human when
grā hūmā dūm	grace human when
liquor hūmā dūm	liquor human when
Palchre mehercule datum est sapienter	How gladly, by Hercules, and wisely
capienter (acc.) dūm	(Terence, <i>Euripides</i> 410)
est mehercule optumus et mihi	is a very good man, by Hercules, and very
amissimus	friendly to me
amissimus a amissus	(Terence, <i>Ad Aulonium</i> 143)
amissus a amissus	amissus a amissus

3. The interjections *Castor* and *Pollex*, which appear in Plautus and Terence, were originally addresses to the gods Castor and Pollux respectively.

CHAPTER VIII

Vocabulary

- *fuga, fugae f.* flight
 - annus, anni m.* year
- *locus, loci m.* place
 - *loca, locorum n. pl.* places
- *cōsul, cōsulis m.* consul
 - nox, noctis, -ium f.* night
 - tempus, temporis n.* time
- *cōsulātus, cōsulātus m.* consulship
- *domus, domūs f.* house, home
 - exercitus, exercitus m.* army
- *manus, manūs f.* hand; band, troop
- *mōtus, mōtus m.* motion, movement, disturbance
- *senātus, senātus m.* senate
- *aciēs, aciēs f.* sharp edge; keenness; battle line
- *diēs, diēs m.* or *f.* day
 - fidēs, fidei f.* faith, trust, trustworthiness; confidence
- *rēs, rei f.* thing, property; matter, affair; activity; situation
 - *rēs gestae, rerum gestarum f. pl.* accomplishments; history
 - *rēs novae, rerum novarum f. pl.* revolution
 - *rēs publica, rei publicae f.* republic
 - speciēs, *speciēs f.* appearance, aspect
- *cōnor (1-tr.)* try, attempt
- *audeō, audēre, ausus sum dare*
fateor, fatēri, fassus sum confess, admit
- *morior, mori, mortuus sum die*
relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus
leave (behind), abandon
- *sequor, sequi, secutus sum* follow
- experior, experiri, expertus sum* test, try; experience
- *hic, haec, hoc (demonstr. adj./pron.)* this; these (§76)
- *ille, illa, illud (demonstr. adj./pron.)* that; those (§76)
- *iste, ista, istud (demonstr. adj./pron.)* that (of yours); those (of yours) (§76)
- pūblicus -a, -um* public
- ācer, ācris, ācre* sharp, keen; fierce
- *facilis, facile* easy
 - *difficilis, difficile* difficult
- *fēlix, felicitas* fortunate, happy
 - infelix, infelicitas* unfortunate, unhappy
- fortis, forte* brave; strong
- ingēns, ingentis* huge; outstanding
- omnis, omne* every; all
- quoque (adv.)* also, too
- saepe (adv.)* often

1. The asterisk before the genitive singular form of *speciēs* indicates that the form does not occur in the Latin that survives.

Vocabulary Notes

fuga, fugae f is often found with a Subjective Genitive (see §35). It may refer to an act of fleeing or the rapidity with which someone or something moves. It may also be used of "banishment" or "exile."

locus, loci m. may mean: 1. a physical "place"; 2. a "position," "rank," or "post" in society; or 3. "room" or "opportunity" to engage in an activity. In classical Latin, the plural of *locus* is most often declined as if it were a neuter noun, and therefore the entry *loca, locorum n. pl.* is given. The masculine plural form is also used, particularly when the noun means "passages" in a written work or "topics" or "subjects." Both Vergil and Sallust, however, use the masculine plural with the more general meaning of physical "places."

cōsul, cōsulis m. is the title given to the highest political magistrate in Rome at the time of the Republic. According to tradition, the Roman Republic was founded after the expulsion of the Etruscan king Tarquinius Superbus (ca. 509 B.C.E.). Two consuls, elected annually, were the political leaders of the senate and the commanding generals whenever occasion required. Even during the imperial period—when the emperor held the highest power in Rome—there continued to be consuls, although their role in running the government and the military was greatly decreased. It was common to refer to a given year not by a number but by the names of the two consuls of that year.

cōsulātus, cōsulātūs m. is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix *-ātus* to the stem of the noun *cōsul*. It means the "office of consul" or the "consulship."

The noun *domus* appears here as a fourth-declension noun (*domus, domūs f.*), while it appeared in Chapter VI as a second-declension noun (*domus, domī f.*). It is declined in both declensions. However, some forms are more common than others. The declension of *domus* that follows lists the *less common forms* in parentheses.

	Nom. / Voc.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
	<i>domus</i>	<i>domūs (domī)</i>	<i>domūi (domī)</i>	<i>domum</i>	<i>domō (domū)</i>
		<i>domōrum or dominūm</i>	<i>domibus</i>	<i>domūs or domes</i>	<i>domibus</i>

There are only fourth-declension forms of the nominative, dative, and ablative plural. Second- and fourth-declension genitive and accusative plural forms are equally common. The locative is always *domī*.

manus, manūs f. has two distinct meanings: "hand" (of a human) or an "armed force" of any size (band, troop).

mōtus, mōtūs m. is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix *-tus* to a stem of the verb *moveō*. It means "motion" or "movement," or, more concretely, the *result* of motion or movement, "disturbance."

senātus, senātūs m. "senate" is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix *-ātus* to the stem of the substantive *senex* (old man). The *senatus* was the highest deliberating body in Rome. One became a senator by winning election to one of the higher political offices (quaestorship, praetorship, consulship). All senators were members of the senate for life unless formally removed. Sometimes the genitive singular form *senātū* appears, as if *senatus* were a second-declension noun.

aciēs, aciei f. means the "sharp edge" of a weapon and, by extension, the sharp edge or "keenness" of one's eyes or "acuity" of one's mind. It is also used of a "battle line" or "battle formation" of troops.

dies, diēi is regularly masculine, but when *dies* refers to a festival day, a day appointed for a business transaction, or the date of a letter, it is usually feminine.

Like its most common English translation, "thing," *rēs, rei f.* is a noun that may convey a wide range of abstract and concrete ideas. The vocabulary entry for this word is meant to suggest five common meanings: 1. "thing," something that exists or occurs; 2. "property" or "wealth," something that belongs to a person or family; 3. "matter" or "affair," something that occupies one's attention; 4. "activity" or "practice" in a particular field, and 5. "situation," the state of affairs at a particular moment. Because *rēs* has such a wide range of meanings, there are several Latin idioms that include it. Three of the most common are given in the vocabulary list: *rēs gestae* (things [having been] accomplished) "accomplishments," "history"; *rēs novae* (new things) "revolution," and *rēs publica* "republic" (cf. English commonwealth).

Deponent and Semideponent Verbs

For the vocabulary entries and conjugations of deponent and semideponent verbs see §§77 and 78. The principal parts of a deponent verb do *not* indicate whether the verb is transitive or intransitive. The English meanings given in the vocabulary list will usually indicate whether a verb is transitive or intransitive, but *all intransitive deponent verbs are so indicated in the vocabulary notes.*

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum is a transitive deponent verb. It often takes an Object Infinitive and is sometimes used absolutely (make an effort)

Hostem vincere cōnāmur. *We are trying to conquer the enemy.*
Quamquam cōnāmur, hostis vincit. *Although we are trying, the enemy is conquering.*

audeō, audēre, ausus sum is a transitive semideponent verb. Like **cōnor** it may take an Object Infinitive or be used absolutely (be bold)

moriōr, morī, mortuus sum is an intransitive deponent verb. Compounds of **moriōr** do not exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **MORIōR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

The compounds of **sequor, sequi, secutus sum** do not exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **SEQUOR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

The entry **hic, haec, hoc** lists the masculine, feminine, and neuter singular nominative of the demonstrative adjective/pronoun that means "this" (in the singular) or "these" (in the plural). For its declension and uses see §76.

ille, illa, illud lists the masculine, feminine, and neuter singular nominative of the demonstrative adjective/pronoun that means "that" (in the singular) or "those" (in the plural). For its declension and uses see §76.

iste, ista, istud lists the masculine, feminine, and neuter singular nominative of the demonstrative adjective/pronoun that means "that (of yours)" (in the singular) or "those (of yours)" (in the plural). For its declension and uses see §76.

In addition to the meaning "easy," **facilis, facile** may be used of materials that are *easy to work* (tractable), of people or things that *move with ease* (nimble, agile), of gods, people, or animals that *are easily moved* (favorable, gracious, indulgent, tame)

difficilis, difficile is an adjective formed by the addition of the prefix **dis-** to **facilis**. (For the prefix **dis-** see Appendix F.) **Difficilis** exhibits regular vowel weakening of the stem vowel. In addition to the meaning "difficult," **difficilis** may be used of people or animals that are *hard to move* (stubborn, inflexible, intractable).

When **felix, felix** describes plants, trees, land, etc., it means "fruitful," "rich," or "productive." It may often have a more expanded meaning of "lucky" or "auspicious" for omens and the like. A person who is **felix** is "fortunate" and by extension "happy."

	Derivatives	Cognates
acer	vinegar; acid; eager	ear; acute; hammer; heaven; acme; acrobat
fidēs	faith; fidelity; perfidy	abide; federal; defy; fiancé
fortis	fort; forte; effort; force	burrow; iceberg; borough; burglar
manus	manacle; manage; manuscript; maintain; maneuver	emancipate; mandate; command
rēs	republic; reify; re; real	
sequor	sequence; segue; sect; sutor; persecute	socius
speciēs	species; especial	espy; specimen; spectacle; skeptic; episcopal; telescope
tempus	temporary; tempest	

§72. Noun Morphology: Fourth Declension

A NOUN BELONGS TO THE FOURTH DECLENSION IF ITS GENITIVE SINGULAR ENDING IS **-ūs**.

Gender Note: Most nouns of the fourth declension are masculine, some are feminine, and a very few are neuter.

Case Endings of the Fourth Declension, Masculine/Feminine		
	Singular	Plural
Nominative/Vocative	-ūs	-ūs
Genitive	-ūs	-uum
Dative	-ui/-ū	-ibus
Accusative	-um	-us
Ablative	-ū	-ibus

ALL MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION USE THESE ENDINGS. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a *masculine/feminine* noun of the fourth declension, add these endings to the stem. For example.

motus, motus <i>m</i> : motion, movement, disturbance		
stem = mōt-		
	Singular	Plural
Nom./Voc.	mōtus	mōtus
Gen.	mōtus	mōtum
Dat.	motui/motū	mōtibus
Acc.	motum	motus
Abl.	mōtū	mōnibus

OBSERVATIONS

1. Certain endings for masculine/feminine nouns of the fourth declension are used to mark more than one case: **-ūs** = genitive singular, nominative/vocative plural, and accusative plural; **-ibus** = dative plural and ablative plural
2. The dative singular ending is regularly **-ui**, but the archaic form **-ū** is often found.¹
3. There are only three neuter nouns of the fourth declension in common use: **cornū** (horn), **genū** (knee), and **verū** ([broiling] spit). The endings for these neuter nouns differ slightly from the endings of the masculine/feminine fourth declension nouns:

	Singular	Plural
Nom./Voc.	-ū	-ua
Gen.	-ūs	-uum
Dat.	-ū	-ibus
Acc.	-ū	-ua
Abl.	-ū	-ibus

Because there are only three nouns in regular use, the neuter endings of the fourth declension need not be memorized immediately.

2. The archaic dative and ablative plural ending **-ibus** also occurs occasionally

§73. Noun Morphology: Fifth Declension

A NOUN BELONGS TO THE FIFTH DECLENSION IF ITS GENITIVE SINGULAR ENDING IS *-ei* OR *-ei*.

Gender Note: Most nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, one is sometimes masculine. There are no neuter fifth-declension nouns.

Case Endings of the Fifth Declension

	Singular	Plural
Nominative/Vocative	-es	-es
Genitive	-ei/-ei	-erum
Dative	-ei/-ei	-ibus
Accusative	-em	-e
Ablative	-e	-ibus

ALL NOUNS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION USE THESE ENDINGS. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a noun of the fifth declension, add these endings to the stem. When the stem ends in a vowel, use the ending *-ei* in the genitive and dative singular. For example:

	res rei / thing	diei, diei / of day
	stem = r-	stem = di-
	Singular	Singular
Nom / Voc	res	diei
Gen.	rei	diei
Dat	rei	diei
Acc	rem	diem
Abl	re	die
	Plural	Plural
Nom / Voc.	res	diei
Gen.	rerum	diei
Dat.	rebus	diebus
Acc	res	diei
Abl.	rebus	diebus

OBSERVATION

Certain endings for nouns of the fifth declension are used to mark more than one case.
-es = nominative/vocative singular, nominative/vocative plural, and accusative plural;
-ei or *-ei* = genitive singular and dative singular; *-ibus* = dative plural and ablative plural.

☛ DRILL 72-73 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§74. Third-Declension Adjectives

All adjectives that are declined in Latin borrow endings from the declensions of nouns. There are two groups of adjectives only: first-second-declension adjectives, such as *bonus, bona, bonum* (see §17), and third-declension adjectives, which borrow their endings from third-declension nouns using all *i-stem* features all the time.

Third-declension adjectives may have three forms (m., f., n.), two forms (m./f., n.), or one form (m./f./n.) in the nominative singular. For example:

<i>acer</i>	<i>acer</i>	<i>aceris</i>	Stem: <i>acer-</i>
<i>fortis</i>	<i>fortis</i>	<i>fortis</i>	Stem: <i>fort-</i>
<i>felix</i>	<i>felix</i>	<i>felix</i>	Stem: <i>felix-</i>

OBSERVATIONS

1. When a third-declension adjective has three forms in the nominative singular, the vocabulary entry contains the same elements as the entry for a first-second-declension adjective: the masculine, feminine, and neuter singular nominative.
2. When a third-declension adjective has two forms in the nominative singular of which the first ends in *-is* and the second ends in *-e*, the first form is the nominative singular for both masculine and feminine, and the second form is the neuter singular nominative.
3. Certain third-declension adjectives have only one nominative singular form for masculine, feminine, and neuter. In the vocabulary entry, this form is followed by the genitive singular.

To find the stem of third-declension adjectives with three or two nominative singular forms, take the *feminine singular nominative* and drop the ending *-is*. To find the stem of third-declension adjectives with one nominative singular form, take the *genitive singular form* and drop the ending *-is*. Thus, for the examples above:

<i>acer</i>	<i>aceris</i>	Stem: <i>acer-</i>
<i>fortis</i>	<i>fortis</i>	Stem: <i>fort-</i>
<i>felix</i>	<i>felix</i>	Stem: <i>felix-</i>

To decline a third-declension adjective, add these endings to the stem

	Singular			Plural		
	M	F	N	M	F	N
Nom./Voc	—	—	—	-e	-e	-ia
Gen	-is	-is	-is	-ium	-ium	-ium
Dat	-i	-i	-i	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc	-em	-em	—	-es/-is	-es/-is	-ia
Abi	-i	-i	-i	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus

OBSERVATIONS

1. Third-declension adjectives show wide variation in the nominative singular, where there may be three endings, two endings, or one ending. MEMORIZE THE VOCABULARY ENTRY FOR EACH THIRD-DECLENSION ADJECTIVE. The neuter singular accusative form is always identical with the neuter singular nominative, and there is no single ending.
2. All third-declension adjectives use all *i-stem* features. The ablative singular ending for all genders is *-i*, an ending borrowed from neuter *i-stem* nouns. The plural endings include all *i-stem* features borrowed from third-declension *i-stem* nouns: *-ia* in the neuter nominative/vocative and accusative, *-ium* in the genitive, *-is* as an alternate for *-es* in the masculine/feminine accusative.

The adjective *fortis*, *forte*, for example, declines as follows:

Stem: <i>fort-</i>	Singular		Plural	
	M./F.	N.	M./F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	<i>fortis</i>	<i>forte</i>	<i>fortes</i>	<i>fortia</i>
Gen.	<i>fortis</i>	<i>fortis</i>	<i>fortum</i>	<i>fortium</i>
Dat.	<i>forti</i>	<i>forti</i>	<i>fortibus</i>	<i>fortibus</i>
Acc.	<i>fortem</i>	<i>forte</i>	<i>fortes/fortis</i>	<i>fortia</i>
Abl.	<i>forti</i>	<i>forti</i>	<i>fortibus</i>	<i>fortibus</i>

Since adjectives must agree with the nouns they modify only in gender, number, and case, both first-second-declension adjectives and third-declension adjectives are able to modify nouns of all declensions. For example:

<i>nautae acrēs</i>	fierce sailors (masc. pl. nom./voc.)
<i>fortia facta</i>	brave deeds (neut. pl. nom./voc. or acc.)
<i>fēlicis virōs</i>	fortunate men (masc. pl. acc.)
<i>rēgis fortis</i>	of a brave king (masc. sing. gen.)
<i>fēlici manū</i>	to/for/from (etc.) a fortunate band (masc. sing. dat./abl.)

☛ DRILL 74 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§75. Adverbs II

To form adverbs from third-declension adjectives:

1. take the stem³
2. add the ending *-iter*

Thus, for example:

Adjective	Stem	Adverb	
<i>acer, acris, acre</i>	<i>acr-</i>	<i>acriter</i>	fiercely
<i>fortis, forte</i>	<i>fort-</i>	<i>fortiter</i>	bravely, strongly
<i>felix, felix</i>	<i>felic-</i>	<i>feliciter</i>	happily

Some third-declension adjectives do not have corresponding adverbs (e.g., *ingēns*, *ingentis*), and some have irregularly formed adverbs. MEMORIZE THESE COMMON IRREGULAR ADVERBS:

Adjective	Irregular Adverb	
<i>omnis, omne</i>	<i>omnino</i>	entirely, at all
<i>facilis, facile</i>	<i>facile</i>	easily, readily
<i>difficilis, difficile</i>	<i>difficiliter</i>	with difficulty (regularly formed)
	<i>difficulus</i>	with difficulty (irregularly formed)

OBSERVATION

Certain adjectives, such as *difficilis*, *difficile*, have both a regularly and an irregularly formed adverb. Other such irregularities are mentioned in the vocabulary notes

☛ DRILL 75 MAY NOW BE DONE.

3. For adjectives with three or two endings in the nominative singular, drop the *-is* from the feminine singular nominative. For adjectives with one ending in the nominative singular, drop the *-is* from the genitive singular

§76. Demonstrative Adjectives/Pronouns: *hic*, *iste*, and *ille*

Certain adjectives in Latin, which regularly *precede* the nouns they modify and which serve to *point out* those nouns, are called **demonstrative adjectives** (< *dēmōstrō*, point out). The specific sphere of reference for each Latin demonstrative adjective is identified with one of the three persons.

MEMORIZE THE DECLENSION OF EACH DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE ACROSS THE SINGULAR AND THEN ACROSS THE PLURAL.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Demonstrative adjectives do *not* have vocative forms.
2. The *-i-* of *huius* in the genitive singular is consonantal and is pronounced like English *y*. Thus *huius* (*hu-yus*) is disyllabic. The *-ui-* of *huic* in the dative singular is a diphthong and is pronounced like English *wi*. Thus *huic* (*huik*) is monosyllabic.
3. The letter *c* that appears at the end of many of the forms of *hic*, *haec*, *hec* is called a **deictic** (< Greek *deiknān*, point out) or **demonstrative suffix**. The hard sound of this suffix strengthens the demonstrative force of the adjective.⁴
4. When forms of *hic*, *haec*, *hec* appear in the singular, the English translation "this" should be used. Plural forms should be translated "these."

OBSERVATIONS

1. The declension of *iste*, *ista*, *istud* is almost identical with that of *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, except that the neuter singular nominative and accusative forms end in *-ud* (see §46). This neuter ending, though less common than *-um*, is not unique to this word.
2. The dative singular ending *-i* is identical with the dative singular ending of the third declension.
3. The genitive singular ending *-ius* is identical with the genitive singular ending of the third declension.
4. The full suffix form is *-ce*, which appears frequently in the early comic writers Plautus and Terence (e.g., *huiusce* for *huius*, *hiscē* for *hic*).

3. Many endings of *iste, ista, istud* are familiar from first-second-declension adjectives. All the endings of the plural forms are identical with the plural endings of first-second-declension adjectives.

4. When forms of *iste, ista, istud* appear in the singular, the English translation "that (of yours)" should be used. Plural forms should be translated "those (of yours)."

ille, illa, illud

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
Gen.	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illorum</i>	<i>illarum</i>	<i>illorum</i>
Dat.	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>
Acc.	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illos</i>	<i>illas</i>	<i>illa</i>
Abl.	<i>illo</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illo</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>	<i>illis</i>

OBSERVATIONS

1. The declension of *ille, illa, illud* is identical with that of *iste, ista, istud*. Thus all the observations made for the forms of *iste* apply to *ille* as well.

2. When forms of *ille, illa, illud* appear in the singular, the English translation "that" should be used. Plural forms should be translated "those."

When *hic, iste, and ille* are used as adjectives, they most often precede and always agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns they modify. For example:

<i>hanc feminam</i>	this woman (fem. sing. acc.) (d.o.)
<i>istum amicum</i>	to/for that friend (of yours) (masc. sing. dat.)
<i>illorum oppidorum</i>	of those towns (neut. pl. gen.)

When the demonstrative adjectives stand alone as substantives, they are referred to as demonstrative pronouns. Demonstrative pronouns are translated with the addition of the English words "man," "woman," "thing" (sing.) or "men," "women," "things" (pl.), depending on the gender and number of the ending of the pronoun. For example:

<i>haec</i>	these women (sub.)
<i>istos</i>	those men (of yours) (d.o.)
<i>illud</i>	that thing (sub.) (or d.o.)

Special Uses of the Demonstrative Adjectives/Pronouns

Hic, most frequently in the neuter forms, may point to either what has preceded or what is to follow. For example:

<i>Haec de amicis dicit.</i>	He said these things (i.e., the preceding things) about friendship.
<i>Hic peto: Ene miser?</i>	He said these (preceding) things about friendship.
	I am asking this (the following) thing: Are you miserable?
	I am asking this (following) thing: Are you miserable?

Ille, most frequently in the neuter forms, also may point to *either* what has preceded or what is to follow. What is to follow is often a direct quotation.

Ille may also be used to point to what is celebrated or notorious. When **ille** has this meaning, it is often placed *after* the noun it modifies. For example:

Crassus **ille** multam pecuniam habebat.
That celebrated/notorious Crassus used to have much money.

When **hic** and **ille** are used together to refer to two elements previously mentioned, they often mean “the latter” (**hic**) and “the former” (**ille**). For example:

Sunt in oppido cives et pī et impij. **Hos** odimus, **illos** amamus.
There are in the town both loyal citizens and disloyal (ones). The latter (citizens) (hic) we hate, the former (citizens) (illic) we love.

Iste *may*, but does not always, express contempt. This meaning arose from its use in addressing opponents in legal or political contexts.

Iste verba de patria audivi, falsa et impia.
I heard those (contemptible) words (of yours) about the country, false and disloyal.

• DRILL 76 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§77. Deponent Verbs

Certain Latin verbs are called **deponent verbs** because they appear to have “put aside” or “put down” (**dē-** + **pōnō**) their active forms.⁵ These verbs may belong to any of the four conjugations, but all deponent verbs *have passive forms only and active meanings only*.⁶ Deponent verbs are easily identified by their principal parts. Each has only *three* principal parts. For example:

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnatus sum	try, attempt	(1st conjugation) ⁷
fateor, fatērī, fassus sum	confess, admit	(2nd conjugation)
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum	follow	(3rd conjugation)
morior, morī, mortuus sum	die	(3rd conjugation-i-stem)
experior, experīrī, expertus sum	experience	(4th conjugation)

⁵ Deponent verbs and their forms are actually derived from a *third voice* (in addition to active and passive) called the **middle voice**. PIE had *only* an active and a middle voice and *no* passive voice. Subjects of verbs in both the active and the middle performed the action of the verb, and verbs in both the active and the middle could take direct objects. When the passive voice developed, many of its forms were derived from the middle voice. The only remnant of the middle voice in Latin is the existence of deponent verbs: verbs with passive forms but active meanings.

⁶ For the only exceptions to this rule see §94.

⁷ Deponent verbs of the first conjugation have principal parts that follow the pattern of cōnor, cōnārī, cōnatus sum. Deponent verbs whose second and third principal parts end in -arī, -ātus sum are identified in vocabulary lists by either the notation (1-tr.) for transitive verbs or (1-intr.) for intransitive verbs. No other principal parts are listed for these verbs. However, when learning verbs of this conjugation, ALWAYS WRITE OUT AND/OR SAY ALL THREE PRINCIPAL PARTS.

OBSERVATIONS

- 1 Each principal part of these verbs is in form the *passive equivalent* of each of the first three principal parts of a nondeponent verb. The first principal part is the first person singular present indicative *passive*, the second principal part is the present *passive* infinitive; and the third principal part is the first person singular (masc.) perfect *passive* indicative. Deponent verbs *lack active forms*.
- 2 Just as for nondeponent verbs, the ending of the second principal part of every deponent verb (the present *passive* infinitive) indicates the conjugation to which each belongs: -ari = first conjugation, -eri = second conjugation, -i = third conjugation, and -iri = fourth conjugation. Remember that third- and third i-stem-conjugation verbs form their present *passive* infinitives by dropping -ere from the present *active* infinitives and adding -i (see §31).
- 3 The third principal part of a deponent verb provides the perfect *passive* participle, which has an *active* meaning. For example: cōnātus, -a, -um, "having tried"; secūtus, -a, -um, "having followed."

The conjugations of deponent verbs follow all the same rules of formation (including various regular changes in the present stem) that apply to nondeponent verbs. Thus there are *no new forms* to be learned for deponent verbs. The present stem for first-, second-, and fourth-conjugation deponent verbs may be found by dropping -ri from the second principal part. For the third conjugation, it is useful to imagine a present *active* infinitive (e.g., *sequere, *morere) from which the present stem may be found by dropping -re (e.g., seque-, more-). All deponent verbs form the *imperfect subjunctive* conjugation by adding regular *passive* endings to an imaginary present *active* infinitive with a lengthened final -e:

Present Passive Infinitive	Present Stem	Imaginary Present Active Infinitive with Lengthened Final -e
cōnārī	cōnā-	cōnare-
latērī	latē-	latere-
sequī	seque-	sequere-
morī	more-	morere-
experīrī	experī-	experire-

In order to generate a synopsis of a deponent verb, follow the regular synopsis format, but enter all deponent verb forms on the *passive* side. Remember that the English meanings are *active*. Here is a model synopsis of *morior* in the third person plural masculine:

§78. Semideponent Verbs

A few verbs in Latin are *deponent in the perfect system only* and therefore are called *semideponent verbs*. These verbs are easily identified by their principal parts. For example:

audēō, audēre, ausus sum dare

OBSERVATIONS

1. The first two principal parts of semideponent verbs are active in form and meaning and are similar to the first two principal parts of nondeponent verbs. The entire present system, made with the stem from the second principal part, has *active forms* and *active meanings*.⁸
2. As is true for deponent verbs, the third principal part of semideponent verbs is *passive in form* (first person singular [masc.] perfect indicative passive) but *active in meaning*. Ausus sum, for example, means "I (masc.) dared," "I (masc.) have dared."

To conjugate semideponent verbs in the present system, follow all the rules of formation that apply to regular, nondeponent verbs. In order to generate a synopsis of a semideponent verb, follow the regular synopsis format, but enter present system forms on the active side and perfect system forms on the passive side. Remember that the English meanings of *all* forms are *active*. Here is a model synopsis of audēō in the third person singular feminine:

⁸ Although passive forms could be made for the present system of semideponent verbs, those forms do not appear in the Latin that survives.

In agris multos annos laboro.

In the fields for many years, have been working (and am still working).

I have been working in the fields for many years (action continues in the present).

§80. Ablative of Time When

When a noun in the ablative case *without a preposition* is used to express *the point in time when* the action of a verb occurs, it is called the **Ablative of Time When**.¹⁰ It is translated “at _____” or “on _____.” For example:

Ea nocte Pompeius oppidum cepit. (noctis = um f. night)

On that night Pompey took the town.

The syntax of the italicized word (*nocte*) is **Ablative of Time When**.

OBSERVATION

The Ablative of Time When expresses a *location in time* and thus arises from the ablative’s ability to express location (see §1).

§81. Ablative of Time Within Which

When a noun in the ablative case *with no preposition* is used to express *the limited period of time within which* the action of a verb occurs, it is called the **Ablative of Time Within Which**. It is translated “within _____” or “in _____.” For example:

Paucis diebus Vergilius magnum carmen periciet. (dieb. = diem m. or f. day)

Within a few days Vergil will complete a great poem.

The syntax of the italicized word (*diebus*) is **Ablative of Time Within Which**.

OBSERVATION

The Ablative of Time Within Which expresses a *location in time* and thus arises from the ablative’s ability to express location (see §1).

☛ DRILL 79–81 MAY NOW BE DONE.

10. The Ablative of Time When is also known as the Ablative of Time At Which.

Short Readings

1. A slave's response after he has been ordered to hard labor

vis haec quidem hercle est, et trahī et trūdī simul. (PLAUTUS, *CAPTIV* 750)

simul (adv.) at the same time

trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag; pull

trūdō, trudere, trūsī, trūsus shove, push

2. A fragment from the poet Ennius

amicus certus in rē incerta cernitur. (ENNIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE FRAG.* 351)

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus distinguish, determine perceive

3. Cato's famous advice about oratory

Rem tenē, verba sequentur* (CATO, *DE RHETORICĀ FRAG.* 15)

**res, here, subject matter, topic*

4. Cato summarizes the essence of farming.

rēs rustica sic est: si unam rem sērō fēceris, omnia opera sērō faciēs.

(CATO, *DE AGRĪ CULTŪRĀ* 5)

opus, operis n. work, task

rūsticus, -a, -um of or belonging to the country or a farm, rustic; *rēs rustica*, agriculture

sērō (adv.) late, tardily; too late

unus, -a, -um one

5. A fragment from the tragic poet Accius

sapimus animō, fruimur animā: sine animō anima est dēbilis.

(ACCIIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE FRAG.* 296)

dēbilis, dēbile weak, feeble

fruo, frui fructus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)

sapio, sapere, sapii or sapivi, be intelligent, show good sense

6. While prosecuting Verres, Cicero accepts some limitations.

nē difficilia optēmus. (Cicero, *In Verrem II* 4.15)

7. Cicero asks rhetorically about how one ought to respond to divine portents

. . . vōx ipsa deorum immortalium nōn mentis omnium permovēbit?

(CICERO, *DE HARUSPICUM RESPŌNSIS* 62)

immortālis, immortalē immortal

permovēō (per- + *movēō*) thoroughly move or stir

- 8 Near the end of Cicero's dialogue *De Amicitia*, Laelius recalls his recently deceased friend, Scipio Aemilianus

mihi quidem Scipiō, quamquam est subito ēreptus, vivit tamen semperque vivet;
virtutem enim amāvi illius viri. (CICERO, *DE AMICITIĀ* 102)

ēripō, ēripere, ēripui, ēreptus tear away, snatch away

Scipiō, Scipiōnis m. (P.) Scipio (Africanus Aemilianus) (consul 147, 134)

subitō (adv.) suddenly

9. The province of Gaul does not recognize Antony as consul. Therefore, Antony is not consul.
omnēs enim in cōsulis iūre et imperiō debent esse prōvinciae.

(CICERO *PHILIPPICS* IV 9)

10. Cicero describes to the senate the fearful state of affairs in Rome after Julius Caesar's assassination

armōrum officinās in urbe vidētis; militēs cum gladiis sequuntur cōsulem;
praesidiō sunt speciē cōsulī, rē et vērītate nobis; . . . (CICERO, *PHILIPPICS* VII 4)

officina, officinae f. workshop

praesidium, praesidiū n. guard garrison

vērītās, vērītātis f. truth

11. In January 49 Cicero replies to his friend Atticus's attempt to encourage him about Pompey's state of readiness for war with Julius Caesar.

erat enim ars difficilis rectē rem publicam regere. sed iam iamque omnia sciēmus
et scribēmus ad tē statim. (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* VII 25.1)

iam (adv.) now; iam iamque, any time now

rectē (adv.) rightly, correctly

sciō, scire, scīvi or scīi, scītus know

statim (adv.) immediately

12. In 45 Cicero writes to his friend Fabius Gallus. The letter begins with Cicero's praise of his friend for his labors. This continuation is an example of the brevity and wit of Cicero's style in his letters.

amō igitur voluntātem. sed pauca de rē. Cipiū olim: "nōn omnibus dormiō." sic
ego nōn omnibus, mi Galle, serviō. (CICERO *AD FAMILIARĒS* VII.24.1)

Cipius, Cipii m. Cyprus

dormiō, dormire, dormivi or dormii, dormitum

sleep, be asleep

Gallus, Galli m. Gallus

igitur (postpositive conj.) therefore

olim (adv.) once, formerly

serviō, servīre, servīvi or servīi, servitum

be a slave (+ dat.)

voluntās, voluntātis f. will, intention

13. The historian begins a comparison between those who make history and those who write it.
pulchrum est bene facere rei publicae, etiam bene dicere haud absurdum est.

(SALLUST, *BEILUM CAILINAE* 3)

absurdus, -a, -um discordant; inappropriate

haud (adv.) not at all, by no means

- 14 Vergil and Gallus come to realize that there is no escape from unhappiness in love.

omnia vincit Amor. et nōs cēdamus Amōrī (VERGIL, *ECLOGUES* X.69)

15. Having detected a storm on the sea's surface, Neptune emerges and scolds the winds.

iam caelum terramque meō sine nūmine, ventī,

miscēre et tantas audētis tollere mōlēs? (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.133–34)

iam (adv.) now

miscēō, miscēre, miscui, mixtus mix, stir up

mōles, mōlis f. mass, bulk, pile

nūmen, nūminis n. divine power, divinity divine
spirit, numen

tantus, -a, -um so much, so great

tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublātus lift, raise

ventus, ventī m. wind

16. Aeneas speaks to Dido and concludes the defense of his departure from Carthage.

dēsine mēque tuīs incendere tēque querēlis;

Italiam nōn sponte sequor. (VERGIL, *AENEID* IV 360–61)

dēsino, dēsinare, dēsī or dēsivi, dēsitum stop, cease (+ inf.)

incendō, incendere, incendi, incēsus set on fire, (cause to) burn inflame, provoke

querēla, querēlae f. lament, complaint

*spōns, *spontis f. (one's own) will

17. Dido speaks before committing suicide.

. . . moriēmur inultae

sed monāmur. . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* IV 659–60)

inultus, -a, -um unavenged

18. King Evander welcomes Aeneas and, after boasting that Hercules has been a guest in his humble home, issues a challenge

audē, hospes, contemnere opes et te quoque dignum

finge deō, rēbusque venī nōn asper egēnis. (VERGIL, *AENEID* VIII.364–65)

asper, aspera, asperum harsh, fierce, pitiless

contemnō, contemnere, contempsī, contemptus

regard with contempt, scorn, disregard

dignus, -a, -um worthy (of) (+ abl.)

egēnus, -a, -um needy destitute

finḡo, fingere, finxi, fictus form, fashion make;
imagine

hospes, hospitis m. guest, visitor, stranger

ops, opis f. power, ability, might, effort; in pl.

power resources, wealth

19. Mezentius gloats as he kills an opponent.

nunc morere. ast dē mē divum* pater atque hominum rēx

vīderit. (VERGIL, *AENEID* X.743–44)

*divum = divōrum

ast (conj.) but

20. Turnus responds bravely to Aeneas's taunts.

. . . nōn mē tua fervida terrent

dicta, ferox: dī mē terrent et Iuppiter hostis. (Vergil, *AENEID* XII.894–95)

ferōx, ferōcis fierce, savage; high-spirited, defiant

fervidus, -a, -um seething, burning; passionate, furious

21. At the end of a satire in which the poet's slave Davus has been attacking his master with words and finally with a stone, Davus ends his attack.

aut insānīt homō aut versūs facit. (HORACE, *SERMONES* II.7.117)

insāniō, insānīre, insānīvi or insāniī, insānitum be mad, be crazy
versus, versūs *m.* verse (of poetry)

22. After rejecting a well-dressed, mean-spirited friend, the poet speaks approvingly of a man whose appearance might seem more provincial and laughable.

. . . at ingennum ingēns

incultō latet hōc sub corpore. . . (HORACE, *SERMONES* I.3.33–34)

at (conj.) but
lateō, latēre, latui, – hide, lie hidden, be concealed
incultus, -a, -um uncouth, rough, uncultivated

23. The poet identifies one difficulty in trying to write poetry correctly

in vitium dūcit culpaē fuga sī caret arte. (HORACE, *ARS POETICA* 31)

culpa, culpaē *f.* guilt, blame; fault
vitium, vitii *n.* vice, fault

24. The poet describes how he won Cynthia.

hanc ego nōn aurō, nōn Indīs flectere conchīs,

sed potui blandi carminis obsequiō. (PROPERTIUS I.8B.39–40)

blandus, -a, -um charming, ingratiating, seductive
concha, conchae *f.* sea-shell, conch; pearl
flectō flectere, flexi, flexus bend, soften, influence
Indus, -a, -um of or belonging to India, Indian
obsequium, obsequii *n.* assiduous attention

25. The poet explains the source of inspiration for his poems.

nōn haec Calliopē, nōn haec mihi cantat Apollō.

ingenium nobis ipsa puella facit. (PROPERTIUS II.1.3–4)

Calliopē Calliopēs *f.* Calliope, Muse of epic poetry
cantō (1-tr) sing compose

26. The poet addresses this remark to Cynthia.

omnia sī dederis oscula, pauca dabis. (PROPERTIUS II.15.50)

osculum, osculi *n.* kiss

27. Odysseus attacks Ajax, his rival for Achilles' arms.

fortis ubi est Aiāx? ubi sunt ingentia magni

verba viri? . . . (OVID, *METAMORPHOSES* XIII.340–41)

Aiāx, Aiācis *m.* Ajax, son of Telamon, one of the Greek leaders at Troy

28. Coriolanus's mother, Veturia, reviles her son, an exiled Roman general about to attack Rome.

ergō ego nisi pepenssem, Rōma nōn oppugnārētur; nisi filiū habērem, libera in
libera patria mortua essem. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* II.40.8)

ergō (adv.) therefore

oppugnō (1 tr.) attack

parō, parere, peperī, partus g.ve birth (to) bear (of a mother)

29. The historian makes a comparison between a citizen of Rome and one of the southern Italian city of Tarentum.

nōn animō, nōn armīs, nōn arte bellī, nōn vigōre ac viribus corporis par Rōmānō
Tarentinus erat . . . (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XXVII.16.1)

pār, parī equal

Tarentīnus, -a -um of or connected with Tarentum, a town in southern Italy; Tarentine

vigor, vigōris m. liveliness, activity, vigor

30. Arguing with her slave, Clytaemnestra explains her own cure for anger.

et ferrum et ignis saepe medicīnae locō est. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 152)

ignis, ignis, -ium f. fire

medicīna, medicīnae f. medicine; treatment, cure

31. Eurybates describes the feelings of the Greeks as they look back upon Troy after setting sail for home.

iuvat vidēre nūda Troiae litōra,

iuvat relictī sōla Sigēī loca. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 435–36)

iuvō iuvāre, iūvi, iūtus help, assist, aid; give pleasure, delight

litus, litōris n. shore, beach

nūdus, -a, -um naked, nude; bare, deserted

Sigēum, Sigēī n. Sigeum, a town and promontory near Troy

sōlus, -a, -um alone, only; lonely, deserted

32. Eurybates reports the shouts of the Greeks as a storm overwhelms their ships during the homeward voyage from Troy.

nīl nōbile ausōs pontus atque undae ferent?*

ignāva fortēs fāta cōsūmeri virōs? (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 517–18)

*ferō, here, carry away, carry off

cōsumō, cōsumere, cōsumpsī, cōsumptus

destroy, cause the death of

ignāvus, -a, -um lazy, sluggish; cowardly; ignoble

nōbilis, nōbile noble

pontus, ponti m. sea

unda, undae f. wave, water

33. The poet compares Cicero to Octavian, who took the title *pater patriae*.

. . . sed Rōma parentem,

Rōma patrem patriae Cicerōnem libera dedit.* (JUVENAL, *SATURAE* VIII.244)

*dīcō, here, call

parēns, parentis, -um m. or f. parent

Longer Readings

1. Ennius, *Annales* I.37–42

After the death of Aeneas, his daughter Ilia (later the mother of Romulus and Remus) relates to her sister a frightening dream.

vīrēs vītaque corpus meum nunc deserit omne.
nam mē vīsus homō pulcher per amoena salicta
et rīpās raptāre locōsque novōs. ita sōla
postillā, germāna soror, errāre vidēbar
tardaue vestigare et quaerere te neque posse
corde capessere; sēmīta nūlla pedem stabilibat.

40

amoenus, -a, -um pleasing, beautiful
capessō, capessere, capessī or capessivī,
capessitus take hold of, grasp
cor, cordis *n.* heart; mind
dēserō, dēserere, dēserui, dēsertus abandon,
desert, forsake
germānus, -a, -um having the same father and
mother, full; true, real
nūllus, -a, -um not any, no
pēs, pedis *m.* foot
postillā (adv.) afterward

quaerō, quaerere, quaesī or quaesivī, quaesitus
search for, seek
raptō (1-tr.) carry away by force
rīpa, rīpae *f.* (river) bank
salictum, salicti *n.* willow bed
sēmīta, sēmītae *f.* path, track
sōlus, -a, -um alone
stabilō, stabilire, stabilivī, stabilitus make steady,
make sure; stabilibat = stabiliebat
tardus, -a, -um slow
vestigō (1-tr.) track down, try to find

Quintus Ennius (239–169 B.C.E.) is the most prominent writer of archaic Latin literature. He was born near Brundisium in southern Italy and was a native speaker of Oscan. He was called the man of three hearts because he spoke Oscan, Latin and Greek. His epic poem *Annales* (*Annals*) is the first Latin epic poem written in dactylic hexameter, the meter of Greek epic. It related all of Roman history in eighteen books, and several hundred fragments of it have survived. In the *Annales*, Ennius attempted with considerable success to incorporate many elements of Greek literary style into his work, and his pioneering efforts influenced many later Latin poets, including Vergil.

2. Ennius, *Annales* IX.309, *sed. inc.*, frag. 459

These two fragments are cited by later authors as examples of the poet's experimentation with alliteration.

Āfrica terribilī tremīt horrida terra tumultū . . .

at tuba terribilī sonitū "taratantara" dixit . . .

Āfricus, -a, -um African
at (conj.) but
horridus, -a, -um rough, wild, horrible
sonitus, sonitūs *m.* sound, noise
terribilis, terribile terrifying, frightening

tremō, tremere, tremul. — tremble, quiver,
quake
tuba, tubae *f.* horn, trumpet
tumultus, tumultūs *m.* commotion, uproar

3. L. Afranius, *Togatae* frag. 298–99

Aulus Gellius cites these two lines from one of Afranius's *togatae*, the *Sella* ([Magistrate's] Chair), in which Wisdom gives her genealogy.

ūsus mē genuit, māter peperit memoria.

"Sophiam" vocant mē Graī, vōs "Sapientiam."

gignō, gignere, genui, genitus create,
beget (of a father)

Graī, Graiorum m. pl. (the) Greeks

memoria, memoriae f. memory

pariō, parere, peperī, partus give birth to, bear
(of a mother)

Sophia, Sophiae f. wisdom (in Greek)

ūsus, ūsus m. use, experience

Lūcius Afrānius was a second-century B.C.E. writer of *fabulae togatae* (toga-clad stories), comic stories on Roman themes performed in Roman dress. *Togatae* developed in the course of the second century and became increasingly popular in the first century B.C.E.

4. Cicero *Pro Archia* 16

Cicero compares literary pursuits to other forms of relaxation

nam cēterae neque temporum sunt neque aetātum omnium neque locōrum; at haec studia adulescentiam acuunt, senectūtem oblectant, secundās rēs ōrmant, adversis perfugium ac sōlācium praebent, dēlectant domī, nōn impediunt forīs, pernōctant nōbiscum, peregrinantur, rusticantur.

acuō, acuerē, acui, acutus sharpen, stimulate

adulescentia, adulescentiae f. youth, adolescence

adversus, -a, -um opposite, hostile, adverse

aetās, aetātis f. age; time

at (conj.) but

cēterus, -a, -um rest (of), remaining part (of),

(the) other; *cēterae = fem. nom. pl. (sc. formas*
of relaxation)

dēlectō (1-tr.) delight, please, charm

forīs (adv.) out of doors; abroad

impediō, impedire, impedivī or impedii,

impeditus obstruct, hinder, impede

oblectō (1-tr.) delight, amuse

ōrmō (1-tr.) adorn, decorate; enhance

peregrinor (1-tr.) travel abroad

perfugium, perfugii n. place of refuge, shelter,
sanctuary

pernoctō (1-intr.) spend the night

praebēō, praebēre, praebui, praebitus furnish,
provide

rūsticor, rūsticārī, — stay in the country

secundus, -a, -um favorable

senectūs, senectūtis f. old age

sōlācium, sōlāciī n. comfort, solace, relief

In 62 B.C.E., the year immediately after his consulship, Cicero successfully defended with his *Pro Archia* (On Behalf of Archias) the citizenship of A. Lucinius Archias, a Greek poet and teacher who had been granted citizenship many years earlier. The structure and the subject matter of the speech are unusual because Cicero took the opportunity presented by the case to make an impassioned plea on behalf of the importance of poetry and the liberal arts in general.

5. Cicero, *Tusculanae Disputationes* I.34

Cicero quotes Ennius's epitaph, which may have been written by the poet himself. It was placed beneath a statue of the poet at the tomb of the Scipios.

Aspicite, o cives, senis Enni imagini' formam.

hic vestrum* pāndit maxima facta patrum.

*vestrum = vestrorum

aspiciō, aspicere, aspexi, aspectus look toward,
look at; behold

Ennius, Ennii m. Ennius; the final -i of Enni
here scans short.

forma, formae f. shape, form; appearance

imāgō, imāginis f. image, likeness, imāgini' =
imāginis

maximus, -a, -um biggest, greatest, very great

pangō, pangere, pāxi or pepigi, pactus fix,
fasten; compose, record

senex, senis old

The *Tusculanae Disputationes* (*Tusculan Disputations*) takes its name from Cicero's villa in Tusculum, a town in central Italy. The *Tusculan Disputations* is an ethical treatise on five themes, the first of which is death. One book is devoted to each theme. Dedicated to Cicero's colleague and friend Brutus, this work was among the most admired of Cicero's throughout the Middle Ages.

6. Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae* 20

At a secret meeting Catiline begins an address to his fellow conspirators.

Ni virtūs fidēsque vostra spectāta mihi* foret, nēquiquam opportūna rēs cecidisset;
spēs magna, dominatio in manibus frustra fuissent, neque ego per ignaviam aut vāna
ingenia incerta prō certis captārem.

*mihi, here, *Dante of Agent*, by me

cado, cadere, cecidi, casurus fall; occur

captō (1-tr.) try to capture, seek after

dominātiō, dominātiōnis f. absolute rule,
dominion

frustrā (adv.) in vain

ignāvia, ignāviae f. idleness; cowardice

nēquiquam (adv.) to no avail, in vain

nī = nisi

opportūnus, -a, -um favorable, advantageous

spectō (1-tr.) look at, observe; examine, prove;

spectāta . . . foret spectāta . . . esset

spēs, spēs f. hope

vānus, -a, -um empty, illusory; unreliable; useless

vostra = vestra

Gaius Sallustius Crispus (86–35 B.C.E.) became prominent in Roman politics as a young man but was forced out of political life because of accusations of provincial misgovernment and extortion. But Sallust is far better known as a historian. He wrote short monographs rather than long historical works, and his style is marked by a studied response to the flowing style of Cicero and by much imitation of the earlier Cato. His compressed, rapid, and antithetical style became a model for later historians, particularly Tacitus.

The *Bellum Catilinae* is a monograph on the conspiracy led by Catiline in 63 B.C.E., the year of Cicero's consulship.

7. Vergil, *Aeneid* I 200–203

After the Trojan fleet has endured a storm at sea, Aeneas addresses the dispirited survivors,

vōs et Scyllaeam rabiem penitusque sonantis
 accessis* scopulōs, vōs et Cyclōpia saxa
 experti: revocāte animōs maestumque timōrem
 mittite;† forsan et haec ōlim meminisse iuvābit.

*accessis = accessistis

†mittō, here, set aside, dismiss

Cyclōpius, -a, -um of or belonging to the Cyclopes

foran (adv.) perhaps

iuvo, iuvare, iūvi, iūtus help, assist, aid; give

pleasure, delight

maestus, -a, -um sad, mournful, gloomy, grim

ōlim (adv.) once, formerly; one day, at some time

penitus (adv.) (from) within, deeply

rabiēs, *rabiēs f. ferocity, savageness

revocō (re- + vocō) (1-tr.) summon back, recal.;

renew

saxum, saxi n. rock, stone

scopulus, scopuli m. projecting rock, boulder,

crag

Scyllaeus, -a, -um of or belonging to the

monster Scylla; Scyllaeon

sonans, sonantis full of sound, noisy, resounding

Publius Vergilius Maro (70–19 B.C.E.) was born near Mantua in northern Italy. By the time of his death his reputation as the greatest Roman poet was already established. In Vergil the Latin poetry of the Golden Age reaches its height. Each of his three works, the *Eclues*, the *Georgics*, and the *Aeneid*, is the masterwork of its genre. Vergil's poetry is indebted to both the Greek and Roman literary traditions, but although the poet drew freely on his predecessors—in particular, Homer, Hesiod, Theocritus, Ennius, Lucretius, and Catullus—Vergil produced a series of works that demonstrate the poet's mastery of poetic technique and the depth of his insight into the whole Roman world. The study of Vergil became a staple of Roman education, and as a result his vocabulary, his syntax, and his command of the dactylic hexameter are echoed in all later Roman writers.

The *Aeneid*, Vergil's most well-known work and the most famous work of Latin literature, is an epic poem written in dactylic hexameters and arranged in twelve books. It traces the travels and development of the Trojan hero Aeneas as he makes his way from his fallen home and to Italy, where he is to found a new Troy in the form of Rome. Vergil may well have been encouraged by Maecenas and Augustus to write a Roman epic that could rival Homer's *Iliad* and *Odyssey*. In this poem Vergil creates a new kind of Roman hero, whose greatest virtue, *pietas* (devotion to duty), is secured at a high price. In retelling the legendary foundation of Rome, Vergil appears to weave together both a positive and negative interpretation of the Roman empire and its virtues: while praising the greatness of Rome, the *Aeneid* also questions the cost of that greatness.

8. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.26 - 34

Aeneas describes how the Trojans venture out of their city when they believe that the Greeks have departed.

ergo omnis longo solvit se Teucra luctu;
 panduntur portae, iuvat ire et Dōrica castra
 desertosque vidēre locos litusque relictum:
 hic Dolopum manus, hic saevus tendēbat Achillēs;
 classibus hic locus, hic acie certare solēbant.
 pars stupet innuptae dōnum exitiale Minervae
 et mōlem mirantur equi, primusque Thymoetēs
 dūci intrā mūrōs hortātur et arce locārī,
 sive dolo seu iam Troiae sic fāta ferēbant.

30

Achillēs, Achillēs *m.* Achilles

arx, arcis *f.* tower, citadel

castra, castrorum *n. pl.* (military) encampment, camp

certō (1-*intr.*) struggle, contend, strive

classis, classis, -ium *f.* fleet; *in pl.*, ships

deserō, deserere, deserui, desertus abandon, desert, forsake

dolus, doli *m.* deceit, trick, cunning

Dolopes, Dolopum *m. pl.* (the) Dolopes, a Greek people from Thessaly

Dōricus, -a, -um Doric, Greek

equus, equi *m.* horse

ergo (adv.) therefore

exitialis, exitiale fatal, deadly

hic (adv.) here

hortor (1 *tr.*) urge, encourage, exhort

iam (adv.) already

innuptus, -a, -um unmarried, maiden

intrā (prep. + acc.) within

iuvo, iuvare, iuvi, iutus help, assist, aid,

give pleasure, delight

litus, litoris *n.* shore, beach

locō (1-*tr.*) place

longus, -a, -um long, long-standing

luctus, luctus *m.* mourning

mīror (1-*tr.*) admire, marvel at

mōlēs, mōlis, -ium *f.* mass; bulk

mūrus, mūri *m.* wall

pandō, pandere, —, pāsus or passus spread out, open

porta, portae *f.* gate

primus, -a, -um first

saevus, -a, -um cruel, savage

sive or seu (conj.) or if;

sive (seu) . . . sive (seu) . . . whether . . . or if .

soleō, solere, solitus sum be accustomed

solvō, solvere, solvi solutus loosen; free, release

stupeō, stupere, stupui, — be stunned (at),

be speechless (at)

tendō, tendere, tetendi, tentus or tensus

stretch out, extend; strain, exert oneself

Teucra, Teucrae *f.* land of the Teucra, Troy

Thymoetēs, *Thymoetis *m.* Thymoetes, son of

Laomedon, brother of Priam

9. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.290–94

As the Greeks overrun Troy, the ghost of Hector warns Aeneas.

hostis habet mūrōs; ruit altō ā culmine Troia.
 sat patriae Priamōque datum: si Pergama dextra
 dēfendī possent, etiā hāc dēfēnsa fuissent.
 sacra suōsque tibi* commendat Troia Penātis;
 hōs cape fātōrum comitēs, his moenia quaere . . .

290

*The final -i of *tibi* here scans *long*.

comes, comitis m. or *f.* companion, comrade

commendō (1-*tu*) entrust (for preservation),

give in trust

culmen, culminis n. summit, peak

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus protect,

defend, *dēfēnsa fuissent* = *dēfēnsa essent*

dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *as fem. subst.*

(*sc. manus*), right hand

mūrus, mūrī m. wall

Penātēs, Penātium m. pl. Penates, guardian
 deities of a household or country

Pergama, Pergamōrum n. pl. Pergama, citadel
 of Troy

quaerō, quaerere, quaesī or quaesivī, quaesitus
 search for, seek

ruō, ruere, rūī, rutūrus rush; fall (with violence)

sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred

sat (indeclinable subst.) enough

10. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.324–27

The Trojan Panthus speaks to Aeneas as Troy falls.

venit summa diēs et inēluctābile tempus
 Dardaniae. fuimus Trōes, fuit Ilium et ingēns
 glōria Teucrōrum; ferus omnia Iuppiter Argōs
 trānstulit; . . .

Argī, Argōrum m. pl. Argos, Greek city, home of
 Agamemnon

Dardania, Dardaniae f. Dardania, city in the
 Troad used poetically for Troy

ferus, -a, -um wild, uncultivated; fierce, ferocious;
 cruel

inēluctābilis, inēluctābile that cannot be fought,
 inescapable

summus, -a, -um highest; final, last

Teucrī, Teucrōrum m. pl. descendants of Teucer,
 Teucrians, Trojans

trānsferō (*trāns-* + *ferō*), *trānsferre, trānstulī,*
trānslātus carry across, transfer

Trōs, Trōis m. Trojan (man); *Trōes = masc.*
pl. nom.

11. Vergil, *Aeneid* IV 376–81

An enraged and sarcastic Dido addresses Aeneas after she hears him claim that the gods have ordered him to leave her realm.

(heu furiis incensa feror!), nunc augur Apollō,
nunc Lyciae sortēs, nunc et Iove missus ab ipsō
interpres divum* fert horrida iussa per aurās.
scilicet is superis labor est, ea cūra quiētōs
sollicitat, neque tē teneō neque dicta refellō:
ī, sequere Italiam ventis, pete rēgna per undās.

389

*divum ~ divōrum

augur, auguris *m.* prophet, augur

aura, aurae *f.* breeze

furia, furiarum *f. pl.* madness, mad desire,

frenzy; (the) furies

horridus, -a, -um rough, wild; horrible, dreadful

incendō, incendere, incendi, incēnsus set on fire,

(cause to) burn, inflame, provoke

interpres, interpretis *m. or f.* go-between, agent;

interpreter

iussum, iussi *n.* order, command

labor, laboris *m.* work, labor

Lycius, -a, -um Lycian, of Lycia

quiētus, -a, -um calm, serene

refellō, refellere, refelli, contradict, refute

rēgnum, rēgnū *n.* kingdom, realm

scilicet (adv.) often used ironically, of course,

no doubt, obviously

sollicitō (1-tr.) disturb, trouble, agitate

sortis, sortis, -ium *f.* lot, portion, oracle

superi, superōrum *m. pl.* gods above

unda, undae *f.* wave, water

ventus, venti *m.* wind

12. Vergil, *Aeneid* VI.126–29

The Cumaean Sibyl, an Italian prophetess, responds to Aeneas's request for help in journeying to the underworld.

Trōs Anchisiadē, facilis dēscēnsus Avernō
(noctis atque diēs patet atrī ianua Ditis).
sed revocāre gradum superāsque ēvādere ad aurās,
hoc opus, hic labor est . . .

Anchisiadēs, Anchisiadae *m.* son of Anchises;

Anchisiadē ~ *voc. sing*

āter, ātra, atrum black dark

aura, aurae *f.* breeze

Avernus, Avernī *m.* (lake) Avernus, entrance to
the underworld

dēscēnsus, dēscēnsūs *m.* descent

ēvādō, ēvādere, ēvāsī, ēvāsus go out, escape

gradus, gradūs *m.* step, pace

īānua, īānuae *f.* door

labor, laboris *m.* work, labor

opus, operis *n.* work, task

pateo, patere, patui, — lie open

revocō (re- + vocō) (1-tr.) summon back, recall;
take back

superus, -a, -um upper

Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan (man)

13. Horace, *Sermōnēs* I 9 57–60

A pestering man from whom the poet cannot escape says that he intends to pursue a friendship with the poet's patron, the wealthy Maecenas.

mūneribus servōs corrupam nōn, hodiē sī
exclūsus fuerō, dēsistam; tempora* quaeram,
occurram in triviis, dēducam. nīl sine magnō
vīta labōre dedit mortālibus.

*tempus, *here*, opportunity

corrupō, corrumpere, corrupī, corruptus
corrupt, bribe

dēducō (dē- + dūcō) lead down; escort,
accompany

dēsistō, dēsistere, destitī, — cease, leave off

exclūdō, excludere, exclūsi, exclūsus deny entry,

bar, exclude; exclūsus fuerō = exclūsus erō

hodiē (adv.) today

labor, labōris *m.* work, labor, effort

mortālis, mortāle mortal

mūnus, mūneris *n.* present, gift

occurrō, occurrere, occurri, occursum run to
meet

quaerō, quaerere, quaeſi or quaeſi, quaeſitus
search for, seek

trivium, triviū *n.* crossroads

Quintus Horātius Flaccus (65–8 B.C.E.) was born in Venusia in southern Italy, the son of a freedman. He was educated in Rome and in Athens. In Athens he joined with Brutus, Julius Caesar's assassin, and followed him in 42 to the battle of Philippi, where Brutus was killed. Horace returned to Rome, became acquainted with Vergil (who was to become his closest friend), and eventually came under the patronage of Maecenas. Horace wrote poetry in a dazzling variety of meters and tones. His works include satires, odes, and poetic epistles, in each of which Horace outdoes even Catullus in combining simplicity and sophistication. His mastery of Latin poetry written in Greek meter was never equaled (or even attempted) by another Roman writer. While his poems never attain the length of Vergilian epic, they cover an even wider variety of themes in addressing all aspects of public and private life. Like Vergil, whom Horace calls "half of my soul" (*animae dimidium meae*), Horace achieved legendary status within his own lifetime.

The *Sermōnēs* (Conversations, but usually referred to as *Satires*) are Horace's first published work. Two separate books were published, the first in 35 and the second five years later. Written in dactylic hexameters, they are satiric sketches of a variety of human weaknesses. As the title *Sermōnēs* implies, the poems are conversational in tone and are marked by brevity, ellipsis, and brutal but clever frankness.

14. Propertius II.8.7–12; 17–20

The poet comments on the nature of love affairs.

omnia vertuntur: certē vertuntur amōrēs:
vincens aut vincis, haec in amōre rota est.
magnī saepe ducēs, magnī cecidēre tyrannī,
et Thēbae steterant altaque Troia fuit.
munera quanta dedi vel quālia carmina feci!
illa tamen numquam ferrea dixit, "amō."

cadō, cadere, cecidi, cāsūrus fall; die

dux, ducis *m.* leader

ferreus, -a, -um made of iron; hard-hearted,
unfeeling

mūnus, mūneris *n.* present, gift

quālis, quāle what sort of, what kind of

quantus, -a, -um how much, how great; what size

rota, rotae *f.* wheel

stō, stāre, steti, statum stand; last

Thēbae, Thēbārum *f. pl.* Thebes

tyrannus, tyrannī *m.* monarch, absolute ruler
vel (conj.) or

vertō, vertere, verti, versus turn; overturn;
change, reverse

Later the poet addresses himself bleakly.

sic igitur primā moriēre aetate, Propertī?
 sed morere, interitū gaudeat illa tuō!
 exagitet nostrōs Mānēs, sectētur et umbrās,
 insultetque rogīs, calcet et ossa mea!

aetās, aetātis *f.* age; life

calcō (1-tr.) trample upon, tread upon

exagitō (1-tr.) arouse, disturb, persecute

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice (in), be
 glad, be pleased

igitur (postpositive conj.) therefore

insultō (1-intr.) leap upon, jump, dance (+ dat.)

interitus, interitūs *m.* death, demise

Mānēs, Mānium *m. pl.* Manes, spirits of the
 dead, shade (of a particular person)

os, ossis *n.* bone

primus, -a, -um first; first (part of)

rogus, rogī *m.* funeral pyre; *in pl.*, ashes

sector (1-tr.) pursue, chase

15. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* 1.1–4

The poem to Ovid's epic poem

In nova fert animus* mūtātās dīcere[†] formās
 corpora—dī, coeptis (nam vos mūtāstis et illās)
 adspīrāte meis primāque ab oriġine mundi
 ad mea perpetuum dēducite tempora carmen!

*fert animus (my) mind proposes

[†]dīcō, *here*, tell of, describe

adspīrō (1-intr.) breathe upon (+ dat.)

coeptum, coepti *n.* beginning

dēducō (dē- + dūcō) lead down; spin; compose

forma, formae *f.* shape, form

mundus, mundi *m.* universe, world

mūtō (1-tr.) change; mūtāstis = mūtāvistis

origō, oriġinis *f.* beginning, origin, birth

perpetuus, -a, -um continuous, without

interruption; perpetual, everlasting

primus, -a, -um first

16. Livy *Ab Urbe Condita* XXII.39.11

The historian records a speech by Fabius Maximus, one of the heroes of the second Punic war to Aemilius Paulus (consul 216 B.C.E.), who is about to set off to meet Hannibal on Roman soil. Fabius summarizes his view of the strategic situation. Aemilius later dies in combat near the Italian town of Cannae.

in Italiā bellum gerimus, in sede ac solo nostrō; omnia circā plēna civium ac sociōrum sunt; armīs, viris, equīs, commeātibus iuvant iuvābuntque,—id iam fidei documentum in adversis rēbus nostris dedērunt. . . Hannibal contrā in aliēnā, in hostili est terrā inter omnia inimica infestaque, procul ab domo ab patriā; neque illi terrā neque mari est pax; nullae eum urbēs accipiunt, nulla moenia; nihil usquam sui videt . . .

adversus, -a, -um opposite, hostile, adverse
aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another; alien,
strange
circā (adv.) round about, on either side
commeātus, commeātūs *m.* transport, convoy,
m pl. supplies, provisions
contrā (adv.) in opposition in turn
documentum, documentī *n.* example; proof
equus, equi *m.* horse
hostilis, hostile of or belonging to an enemy,
hostile

iam (adv.) already
infestus, -a, -um hostile antagonistic
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtus help, assist aid
nullus, -a, -um not any, no
pax, pācis *f.* peace
plēnus, -a, -um full
procul (adv.) at a distance, far
sedēs, sedis, -ium *f.* seat; home
solum, soli *n.* soil
usquam (adv.) anywhere

Titus Livius (59 B.C.E. – 17? C.E.) was born in Patavium in northern Italy. Little is known of his life other than that he did not take part in politics but was on good terms with Augustus. He is said to have encouraged Claudius, who later became emperor, to write history.

Livy's work, *Ab Urbe Condita* (*From the Founding of the City*), a historical work written in 142 books, is one of the greatest of Roman literary achievements. Only one quarter of the work has survived, but the contents of almost all the lost books are known from summaries that date from the fourth century C.E. Livy traces Roman history from its mythical origins to his own day. Much of Livy's material, particularly in the early books, is based on traditional tales and legends whose historical accuracy cannot be established. Livy's narrative style is marked by a significant amount of dramatic and emotional coloring, particularly in relation to his efforts to illustrate and extol the Roman qualities of *virtūs*, *dignitās* (worthiness), and *pietās* (devotion to duty). Livy's mixed prose style shows the influence of both Cicero and Sallust as well as that of Vergil.

17. Seneca the Younger, *Herculēs Furēns* 1–4

Juno begins the play by explaining her departure from the sky.

Soror Tonantis (hoc enim solum mihi
nōmen relictumst) semper aliēnum Iovem
ac templa summi vidua deserui aetheris
locumque caelo pulsa paelicibus dedi.

aether, aetheris *m.* aether or ether the upper
region of the sky; heaven
aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another
deserō, deserere, deserui, desertus abandon,
desert, forsake
nōmen, nōminis *n.* name
paelix, paelicis *f.* concubine, mistress

pellō, pellere, pepuli, pulsus push drive (off)
sōlus, -a, -um alone, only
summus, -a, -um highest; top (of)
Tonāns, Tonantis *m.* (the) Thunderer, god of
thunder
viduus, -a, -um deprived, bereft, deserted

18. Tacitus, *De Vita Agricolae* 1

The first sentence of Tacitus's first work, a monograph on the life of his father-in-law, Agricola

Clārōrum virōrum facta mōrēsque posteris trādere, antīquitus usitatum, nē nostris quidem temporibus quamquam incuriosa suōrum aetās omisit quotiēns magna aliqua ac nōbilis virtūs vicit ac supergressa est vitium parvis magnisque civitatibus commune, ignōrantiam rēcti et invidiam.

aetās, aetātis *f.* age; era

aliqua = *fem. sing. nom.*, of *indef. adj.*, some

antīquitus (*adv.*) from of old; long ago

commūnis, commūne *common*

ignōrantia, ignorantiae *f.* lack of knowledge, ignorance

incuriosus, -a, -um *not interested, not concerned*
(+ *gen.*)

mōs, mōris *m.* custom; *m. pl.*, character

nōbilis, nōbile *noble; remarkable*

omitto (*ob- + mitto*) *disregard, pass over; fail, neglect*

posterī, posterōrum *m. pl.* descendants, posterity

quotiēns (*rel. adv.*) *as often as, whenever*

rēctus, -a, -um *straight; right; as neut. subst. right*

supergridior, supergridi, supergressus *sum*

pass beyond; exceed surpass

ūsitatus, -a, -um *commonly practiced, customary*

vitium, vitii *n.* vice, fault

Cornēlius Tacitus (55–118 c.e.) was born in northern Italy during Nero's principate and had a successful public career under a succession of emperors. Tacitus is best known for his historical works, which include three short monographs and two longer works: the *Historiae* (*Histories*) and the *Annālēs* (*Annals*). In these last two works Tacitus's prose style reaches its most distinctive form. Tacitean point and antithesis owe much to the earlier historian Sallust, with whom Tacitus shares a penchant for archaisms, weighty abstract nouns, poetic language, and Greekisms. The intensity and compressed nature of Tacitus's style are unmatched in other Latin literature.

The *Agricola* or *De Vita Agricolae* (*About the Life of Agricola*), the historian's first work, is a short biography of the historian's father-in-law, Julius Agricola, who conquered and governed Britain during the principate of Domitian (81–96 c.e.). The work contains information about the geography and native population of Britain and recounts the activities of the province's governor. The son-in-law presents Agricola as an example of a virtuous man living and serving under a repressive tyrant. The mixed style of the *Agricola* shows the influences of Cicero, Sallust, and Livy.

§82. About Meter I

Introduction to Quantitative Meter

The different meters of Latin poetry are all **quantitative**, that is, they are based on the alternation of long and short syllables according to particular patterns. The quantity of each syllable in a word is either **long** (—) or **short** (·), terms (and marks) that indicate the *quantity* of time for which that syllable is to be held when the line is read. As with whole and half notes in music, one long syllable is equivalent to two short syllables.

Each vowel or diphthong represents a new syllable. The quantity (long or short) of the vowel or diphthong determines the length of the syllable. A syllable is long if it contains:

1. a long vowel or diphthong (long by nature)
2. a short vowel *followed* by two or more consonants *not necessarily in the same word* (long by position)¹

If a syllable is not long, it is short.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The letter **x** counts as a double consonant.
2. Short vowels before consonantal **-i-** count long.²
3. The consonant groups **qu**, **gu**, and **su** count as *single* consonants
4. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by two consonants, the first of which is a mute (p, ph, b, t, th, d, c, g) or the fricative **f** followed by a liquid (l, r) or a nasal (m, n) can be *either* short or long.³
5. The consonant **h** does *not* count toward making a syllable long by position. For example, in the phrase *hostis habet* the second syllable of *hostis* (-tis) is short.

Dactylic Hexameter and Elegiac Couplet

Many lines of Latin poetry are regularly divided into units called **feet**. Certain metrical systems employ the **dactyl** (< Greek *dactylos*, finger), a foot composed of one long syllable followed by two short syllables: — · ·. The dactyl can be replaced by a **spondee**, a foot composed of two long syllables: — —. The meter of epic poetry (Homer's *Iliad* and *Odyssey*, Lucretius's *De Rerum Naturā*, Vergil's *Aeneid*, etc.) is called **dactylic hexameter** (< Greek *hexametron*, composed of six measures) because each line contains six dactylic feet, with substitutions of spondees for dactyls permitted. The following scheme represents the dactylic hexameter line:

— · · / — · · / — · · / — · · / — · · / — x
 1 2 3 4 5 6

1. See Introduction, p. 8.

2. When a single consonantal **i** is written after another vowel, it in fact represents two i's. For example, *Troia* = *Troia*. The first **i** combines with the preceding vowel to create a diphthong, while the second is pronounced consonantly.

3. See Introduction p. 7.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The sixth (last) foot always consists of *two* syllables. The *x* marking the final syllable of the line is the symbol used for a syllable that may be *either* long or short. Such a syllable is called *anceps* (two-headed, two-fold; doubtful).
2. In the first four feet of a dactylic hexameter line, a dactyl may be replaced by a spondee. In the metrical scheme above, this substitution is indicated by the long mark above the two short marks. The dactyl in the fifth foot is rarely replaced by a spondee. When a dactylic hexameter line contains a spondee in the fifth foot, the line is called a *spondaic line*.

To scan a line of poetry is to mark all the syllables in the line with long and short marks. In scanning a line of poetry, a slash (/) is used to mark the divisions between the individual feet. For example:

(heu furi/īs in/cēnsa fe/ror!): nunc / augur A/pollō
 nunc Lyci/ae sor/tēs, nunc / et Iove / missus ab / ipsō

OBSERVATION

In order to scan any line of Latin poetry, it is necessary to treat the line as one long word of many syllables. For example, in the first line, the final syllable of *feror* is long by position because the *-o-* is followed by *-r* and *n-*. Compare the length of *et* in the second line.

The meter of Roman elegiac poetry is called the **elegiac couplet**. It is composed of one line of dactylic hexameter in alternation with one line called **dactylic pentameter** (five feet), one foot of which is split into two halves. Catullus, Propertius, Ovid, and Martial all wrote poetry in this meter. The following scheme represents the elegiac couplet:

— — / — — / — — / — — / — — / — x
 1 2 3 4 5 6
 — — / — — / — || — — / — — / x
 1 2 2½ 3½ 4½ 5

magnī / saepe du/cēs, mag/nī cecī/dēre ty/rannī
 et Thē/bae stete/rant || altaque / Troia fu/it.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The dactylic pentameter line is in fact made up of two segments of two and a half feet each. Each half of the line is also called a *hemiepes*. The double line in the middle of the pentameter line marks what is called a *caesura* (see below).
2. In the second half of the dactylic pentameter line no substitution of spondees for dactyls is regularly allowed.
3. In the elegiac couplet the pentameter line is always indented under the hexameter line.

Elision, Caesura, Diaeresis, and Hiatus

Elision (< *ēlidō*, eliminate, omit) is the full or partial suppression of a final syllable of a word. It occurs in the scanning and reading of poetry under the following circumstances:

1. when a word ending in a vowel or diphthong is followed by a word beginning with a vowel or diphthong:

(hæ tibi ē / runt ar / tēs), pā / cique im / pōnere / mōrem

2. when a word ending in a vowel or diphthong is followed by a word beginning with h-:

nunc more / re, ast dē / mē dī / vum pater / atque homi / num rēx

3. when a word ending in a vowel followed by -m is followed by a word beginning with a vowel, a diphthong, or h-

Dardani / ae, fui / mus Trō / es, fuit / Īlium et / ingēns.

dēfen / dīpos / sent, et / iam hāc dē / fēnsa fu / issent.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The symbol \sim is used in scansion to mark the elision of a syllable.
2. When elision occurs, the elided syllable either is not pronounced or is pronounced slightly and quickly so that the *quality* is heard but the *quantity* is lost. The elided syllable is *not* scanned.

When *es* or *est* follows a word ending in a vowel or ending in a vowel followed by -m, the initial *e-* may be dropped, and the rest of the word may be joined to the preceding word. This is called **inverse elision** or **aphaeresis** (< Greek *aphairesis*, taking away). For example, *mea est* may be pronounced and written *meast*; *relictum est* may be pronounced and written *relictumst*. BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE INVERSE ELISION OR APHAERESIS WHEN IT APPEARS IN READINGS.

A **caesura** (< *caesūra*, cutting) is an internal pause in a line of verse that occurs whenever a word ends within a foot. A double slash (//) is used to mark a caesura. For example:

magnī / saepe // du / cēs, // mag / nī // cecī / dēre // ty / rannī

When a word ends with a *long* syllable within a foot, the caesura is called **strong** or **masculine** (e.g., after *duces* and the second *magnī*). When a word ends with a *short* syllable within a foot, the caesura is called **weak** or **feminine** (e.g., after *saepe* and *cecidere*). There can be no caesura between two words that are elided.

A **principal caesura** (often simply called the caesura) falls at a natural pause in the line. In many dactylic hexameter lines it occurs in the *third* foot and is *strong*. Also common is a principal caesura in the *fourth* foot, often *balanced* by another in the *second*. When scanning a line, it is common to mark only the principal caesura(e). For example:

magnī / saepe du / cēs, // mag / nī cecī / dēre ty / rannī

Dardani / ae, // fui / mus Trō / es, // fuit / Īlium et / ingēns.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The caesura in the first line occurs in the third foot and is *strong*. It corresponds to a sense pause as well. The second line has two caesurae, both *strong*, in the second and fourth feet, and these pauses also reinforce sense.
2. The caesura in the pentameter line of an elegiac couplet regularly falls after two and a half feet.

A principal caesura may simply be a slight oral pause made by the reader of the line, but often this pause coincides with a pause in sense and aids the reader in understanding the grammatical structure of the poetic sentence. In choosing a principal caesura (or principal caesurae) for a given line, one should favor a caesura that reinforces the *sense* or *grammatical structure* of the line over a simple metrical pause.

A diaeresis (< Greek *diáiresis*, division) is also a pause within a line, but it occurs *at the end of* and not within a metrical foot. When the *end of a word and the end of a foot coincide*, the resulting pause is called a diaeresis. A diaeresis is marked by a triple slash (///). For example:

quid struit? /// aut quā /// spē /// inī / mīcā in /// gente mō / rātūr

When scanning a line, it is common to mark a diaeresis *only* if it is a true sense pause. In the line just scanned, only the diaeresis after *struit* would ordinarily be marked.

A hiatus (< *hiātus*, gaping) occurs *when conditions for elision exist but elision does not occur*. For example:

quid struit? /// aut quā / spē § inī / mīcā in / gente mō / rātūr

A hiatus is marked by a wavy line (§).

OBSERVATIONS

1. Hiatus occurs between *spē* and *inimicā*
2. Hiatus is rare in classical Latin poetry, but it most often occurs when the syllable not elided is an interjection (*heu*, *ā*, etc.) or is at the principal caesura (as in the line above).

Ictus and Accent

Two different stresses may occur when certain kinds of Latin poetry are read out loud. **Ictus** is the metrical stress that occurs at the beginning of each foot. **Accent** is the spoken stress placed on each Latin word according to the rules of accentuation (see Introduction, pp. 7–8). Roman writers of dactylic hexameter poetry usually made ictus and accent coincide in the second half of the line, but there was often tension between these two stresses earlier in the line. For example (° marks ictus, ' marks accent, and " marks the coincidence of ictus and accent).

Dardani / ae, // fūi / mus Trō / es, // fuit / Ilium et / ingēns.

Note that ictus and accent coincide *only* in the fifth and sixth feet.

General Guidelines for Reading Latin Poetry

Romans did not read silently to themselves under any circumstances. All Latin poetry—indeed, all Latin literature—was written to be read out loud. Learning to read Latin poetry aloud with comparative ease will not only aid the aesthetic appreciation of that poetry but will also aid comprehension. The following guidelines will help develop good habits for reading out loud with facility:

1. READ ALL PASSAGES OF POETRY ALOUD, SLOWLY AT FIRST. MAKE LONG SYLLABLES TWICE AS LONG AS SHORT SYLLABLES.
2. FOCUS ON MAKING ELISIONS AND WORD ACCENT. Allow the meter to assert itself. Because Roman poetry necessarily follows particular metrical patterns of longs and shorts, emphasizing the metrical pattern by stressing the ictus is usually unnecessary.
3. ALWAYS PAUSE SLIGHTLY AT THE PRINCIPAL CAESURA (OR CAESURAE). The caesural breaks will help reinforce the meter and often will also clarify ambiguities of meaning.

While the word order in poetry is sometimes similar to that of prose, more often the demands of meter, the importance of line composition, and the extreme economy of poetic expression result in word orders that are somewhat different from those seen in prose. Certain observations about word order in dactylic hexameter and dactylic pentameter lines may be made:

1. INDIVIDUAL WORDS ARE PLACED FOR MAXIMUM EFFECT AND EMPHASIS EVEN IF THEY STAND FAR APART FROM MODIFIERS.
2. WORDS THAT ARE CLOSELY RELATED (SUBJECT AND VERB, NOUN AND ADJECTIVE, ETC.) ARE OFTEN PLACED AT EITHER END OF THE HEXAMETER LINE.
3. A CAESURAL PAUSE WILL OFTEN SIGNAL THE END OF A PHRASE OR WORD GROUP.
4. BOTH IN HEXAMETER AND PENTAMETER LINES, A WORD ENDING AT THE CAESURA OFTEN GOES WITH A WORD AT THE END OF THE LINE.

☛ DRILL 82 MAY NOW BE DONE.

CHAPTER IX

Vocabulary

- **ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliū** *n.* exile, banishment
- **modus, modi** *m.* measure, limit, rhythm, meter; manner, way
 - **quō modō**, in what manner, how
- oculus, oculi** *m.* eye
- **lēx, lēgis** *f.* law
- **libertās, libertātis** *f.* freedom
- **pāx, pācis** *f.* peace; favor
- **metus, metūs** *m.* fear, dread, anxiety
- spēs, speī** *f.* hope
- quī, quae, quod** (rel. pron.) who, which, that (§85)
- quī, quae, quod** (interrog. adj.) what . . . which . . . (§88)
- quis, quid** (interrog. pron.) who, what (§87)
- **hortor** (1-tr.) urge, encourage, exhort (§84)
- **imperō** (1-intr.) give an order, order, command (+ dat.) (§84, §90)
- **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus** warn; remind, advise (§84)
- **pāreō, pārēre, pārui, pāriturus** be obedient, obey (+ dat.) (§90)
- **placeō, placēre, placui, placitum** be pleasing, please (+ dat.) (§90)
- **pator, pati, passus sum** experience, suffer, endure; permit, allow
- **pellō, pellere, pepuli, pulsus** push, drive (off)
- **quaerō, quaerere, quaesī or quaesīvi, quaesītus** search for, seek, ask (§84)
- **caecus, -a, -um** blind; hidden, secret, dark
- gravis, grave** heavy, deep; important, serious; severe
- levis, leve** light; trivial; fickle
- **alius, alia, aliud** other, another (§89)
- **alter, altera, alterum** the other (of two) (§89)
- **idem, eadem, idem** same
- **neuter, neutra, neutrum** neither (of two) (§89)
- nūllus, -a, -um** not any no (§89)
- sōlus, -a, -um** alone, only (§89)
- tōtus, -a, -um** whole (§89)
- ūllus, -a, -um** any (§89)
- ūnus, -a, -um** one; only (§89)
- **uter, utra, utrum** (interrog. adj.) which (of two) (§89)
- **iam** (adv.) now; by now, by then, already
- nē** (conj.) introduces negative Purpose clause, in order that . . . not; introduces negative Indirect Command, that . . . not (§83, §84)
- ob** (prep. + acc.) on account of, because of
- **quam ob rem** (rel. or interrog. adv.) on account of which thing, therefore; why
- **quārē** (rel. or interrog. adv.) because of which thing; therefore; why
- **tandem** (adv.) finally, at last; in questions and commands, pray, I ask you, then
- ut** (conj.) introduces Purpose clause, in order that; introduces Indirect Command, that (§83, §84)

Vocabulary Notes

ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliū *n.* may refer to the act of banishment or the place to which one is exiled. The *s* placed in parentheses in the vocabulary entry indicates that the word may be spelled either with or without an *s*.

modus, modī *m.* is derived from the PIE root *med-, "measure, take appropriate measures." It means "measure" in the sense of a "quantity" (of land, of grain). From this basic notion of "quantity" or "amount" arise several extended meanings, including "limit" (an amount that should not be exceeded) and more abstractly "moderation" or "restraint." In musical and poetic contexts, it may mean "rhythm," "meter," or even the "tone" of a voice or a song. Another very common meaning of *modus* is "mode," "way," or "manner."

Modum agrī filii dedit.	He gave a measure of land (field) to his sons.
Modum irae ponet?	Will he place a limit to (his) anger?
Sine modo se gerit.	He conducts himself without moderation.
Id eo modo fecit.	I did this way.

The prepositional phrases in . . . modum and ad . . . modum (in the manner, according to the manner) frequently occur with a genitive or with an adjective modifying *modum*.

Rex in ad modum dicit.	She speaks according to the manner of a king.
In ad hunc modum dicit.	She speaks in accordance to this manner.

The *quō* in the phrase *quō modo* is an interrogative adjective. *Quō modo* is an Ablative of Manner.

lēs, legis f. means a particular law proposed (bill) or passed (statute). It may be used of a "regulation" laid down by a variety of authorities. It may also mean "law" as the collective legal authority of a state. *Lēs* appears in the idiom *lēgem ferre*, "to pass a law."

libertās, libertātis f. is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix *-tās* to the stem of the adjective *liber*.

pāx, pacis f. initially meant a "pact" or "agreement," usually to avert or end hostilities. It then came to mean more broadly the opposite of *bellum*. It may also have the specialized meaning of "blessing" or "favor" granted by one or more of the gods. The ablative singular, with or without the preposition *in*, may be used as an Ablative of Time When.

metus, metūs m. is the more general term for "fear" or "dread," while *timor* tends to refer to a more immediate fear.

hortor, hortari, hortatus sum is a transitive verb that may introduce an Indirect Command (see §84) or take a direct object only.

Caesar suos hortatus est ut hunc urbem.	Caesar urged his own men to enter the city.
Caesar suos hortans est.	Caesar is urging his own men.

imperō, imperare, imperavi, imperitūrum is an intransitive verb that may take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb (see §90). It may also introduce an Indirect Command (see §84). ANY INTRANSITIVE VERB THAT MAY TAKE A DATIVE WITH AN INTRANSITIVE VERB WILL BE INDICATED IN THE VOCABULARY LIST BY THE ADDITION OF (+ dat.) AT THE END OF THE ENTRY. THIS INFORMATION MUST BE MEMORIZED ALONG WITH THE PRINCIPAL PARTS AND ENGLISH MEANINGS GIVEN.

Caesar ab imperantibus differit.	Caesar commands the ones who are being ruled.
----------------------------------	---

monēō, monēre, monui, monitus may introduce an Indirect Command (see §84). Compounds of *monēō* do not exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF *MONēō* APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

pāreō, pārere, pāruī, pāritūrus is an intransitive verb that may be used absolutely or may take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb (see §90). The fourth principal part, *pāritūrus* (about to obey), is a future active participle.

placēō, placēre, placuī, placitūrum is an intransitive verb that may be used absolutely or may take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb (see §90). *Placēō* may be used impersonally to mean "seem good." In public contexts it may mean "be resolved" (by the senate, etc.). When *placēō* is used impersonally, it often has a Subject Infinitive (see §27).

Utinī placet mīhi.	How good it seems to me.
Idcirco placuit bellum gerere.	It seemed good to the people to wage war.

The basic meaning of *patior, pati, passus sum* is "experience" a process or an action. It thus may mean "suffer" or "undergo" when the process or action is a difficult one. By extension *patior* may mean "permit" or "allow" a person or thing (accusative) to perform an action (Object Infinitive).

pellō, pellere, populi, pulsus has a reduplicated third principal part (cf. *dō*)

quaerō, quaerere, quaesī or quaesīvī, quaesitus may introduce an Indirect Command (see §84). *Quaerō* has two third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. The person from whom something is sought is expressed by *ā, ab* + ablative (cf. *petō*).

caecus, -a, -um may have either an active sense—"blind" (i.e., not *seeing*)—or a passive one—"hidden," "secret," "dark" (i.e., not *being seen*). Many adjectives in Latin convey a variety of meanings based on an active and a passive idea in their root meaning.

The genitive singular form *alterius* is regularly used for both *alius, alia, aliud* and *alter, altera, alterum*. *Alius, alia, aliud* and *alter, altera, alterum* are used in various expressions in which the adjectives are repeated and special translations are required. For example:

In these sentences forms of *alius* or *alter* are used in *parallel* constructions. The forms of these words in each sentence are the same gender, number, and case. Singular forms of *alius* arranged in parallel constructions other(s). Singular forms of *alter* should be translated "(the) one."

In this sentence two forms of *alius* in different cases are used in the same sentence. When this occurs, the two forms have a *complementary* relation. A comparison is implied, and the first part of the comparison should be supplied in the English translation.

The adjective *idem, eadem, idem* is formed by the addition of the suffix *-dem* to the demonstrative ad-

MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING IRREGULAR DECLENSION.

NOTE THE PREPOSITIONS ACCOMPANYING EACH CASE.

	NOM.	ACC.	GEN.	LOC.	ABL.
is, ea, id	is, ea, id	is, ea, id	ius, eae, idius	ibi	ab eo, ab ea, ab eo
is, ea, id	is, ea, id	is, ea, id	ius, eae, idius	ibi	ab eo, ab ea, ab eo
is, ea, id	is, ea, id	is, ea, id	ius, eae, idius	ibi	ab eo, ab ea, ab eo
is, ea, id	is, ea, id	is, ea, id	ius, eae, idius	ibi	ab eo, ab ea, ab eo
is, ea, id	is, ea, id	is, ea, id	ius, eae, idius	ibi	ab eo, ab ea, ab eo

The declension of *idem, eadem, idem* follows the declension of *is, ea, id* with certain variations:

1. The masculine singular nominative *idem* is formed by the addition of *-dem* to *is*. When the *-s* is dropped, the *i* is lengthened because of compensatory lengthening (cf. *auferō*).
2. In the neuter singular nominative and accusative, the final *-d* of *id* is dropped before the ending *-dem*.
3. In the masculine and feminine singular accusative and the masculine, feminine, and neuter plural genitive, the final *-ra* changes to an *-n-* before *-dem*.
4. In the masculine plural nominative and the masculine, feminine, and neuter plural dative and ablative, disyllabic forms of *is, ea, id* (e.g., *ii, iis*) usually exhibit contraction of the two *i*'s (e.g., *idem, eodem*). Occasionally the uncontracted forms *iuam* and *iuam* occur.

uter **utra** **utrum** is an interrogative adjective that means "which (of two)?" It assumes that there are only two possible answers to the question it poses. **Uter** is often used substantively.

In **utro** oppido vivis?
 Utrum videre optas?

In which town (of two towns) do you live?
 Which (man or thing) (of two) do you desire to see?

neuter, **neutra**, **neutrum** is an adjective formed by the addition of the negative particle **nē-** to **uter**. It thus means "neither (of two)." A word that is neuter in gender is *neither* masculine *nor* feminine.

iam is an adverb that may indicate a variety of moments in time depending on the tense of the verb and the context in which it appears. It may mean "now" as opposed to any other moment in the passage of time. It may mark the completion of an action before the time indicated by the verb: "(by) now" with a present time verb, "(by) then" or "already" with a past time verb. When **iam** appears with a future tense, it often emphasizes the time immediately approaching and may be translated "at once," "presently."

Accipe **iam** haec dona.
 Hic **iam** mihi hostis est.
 Carmen **iam** perfecit.
Iam veniet meus amicus.

Receive now these gifts.
 This man is (by) now an enemy to me.
 By then (already) he had completed (his) poem.
 My friend will come presently (at once).

When **iam** is used with any negative expression it is often best translated "longer."

Nō pro patria **iam** pugnabo.

I shall no longer (not any longer) fight on behalf of (my) country.

The **quam** of the adverb **quam ob rem** may be either a relative adjective (see §86)—"on account of which thing," "therefore"—or an interrogative adjective (see §88), "on account of which thing," "why." **Quam ob rem** may be written as a single word (**quamobrem**).

The **quā** of the adverb **quārē** may be either a relative adjective (see §86)—"because of which thing," "therefore,"—or an interrogative adjective (see §88), "because of which thing," "why." **Quārē** was originally an Ablative of Cause. **Quārē** may be written as two words (**quā rē**).

tandem is an adverb that has a temporal meaning (finally, at last). With imperatives and questions it often expresses impatience or indignation (pray, I ask you, then).

Ad urbem **tandem** accessimus.
 Cūr **tandem** hoc fecisti?

Finally we approached the city.
 Why, pray, did you do this thing?

	Derivatives	Cognates
alius	<i>alias; alien; hidalgo</i>	<i>alter</i> ¹ alarm, alligator, else; allegory
alter	<i>alter; alternate; subaltern</i>	<i>alius</i> , ¹ parallax
modus	<i>mode; modern; modify; mold; mood</i>	<i>mete; medical; meditate</i>
oculus	<i>monode; eyelet</i>	<i>optic; autopsy; ophthalmologist</i>
patior	<i>passion; passive; patient; compassion</i>	<i>fiend</i>
pellō	<i>pulse; push; repel; cotapet</i>	<i>polish; anvil; felt</i>
quī/quis	<i>quibble; quiddity; quip</i>	<i>who; what; how; when; whither; where</i>

1. **alius** and **alter** are both derived from the PIE root *al-. Thus, all cognates listed under **alius** are cognates also of **alter** (and vice versa). Both are listed because English words are derived from both Latin words.

§83. Purpose Clauses and the Sequence of Tenses

Sometimes the precise relationship between the meanings of two sentences is implied but not expressed. For example:

I like him. He's nice.

Although it is likely that the second sentence (He's nice) is stating the reason or cause for the first sentence (I like him), this causal relation is *not expressed*. When independent clauses or sentences are *placed next to each other*, with neither being subordinated to the other, such an arrangement is called **parataxis** (< Greek *parataxis*, placing beside) or **coordination**. The principal feature of **paratactic** writing is the *absence of subordination*.

When the precise relation between the meanings of two independent sentences is *expressed*, a complex sentence is created with a main clause and a subordinate clause.² For example:

I like him *because he is nice*.

Such complex sentences are said to exhibit **hypotaxis** (< Greek *hypotaxis*, placing under) or **subordination**. Many types of subordinate clauses in Latin began as independent sentences in paratactic arrangement with other sentences. When one idea was subordinated to another, subordinating conjunctions were added, and two simple sentences arranged paratactically were joined to make one complex **hypotactic** sentence. For example:

Hunc ei librum dōnō. Rēs gestās Rōmānōrum intellegat.

I am giving him this book. Let him understand the history of the Romans.

The second of these two sentences, containing a Jussive subjunctive, appears to express the aim, intention, or *purpose* for the action of the first sentence. This relation was eventually expressed in a particular kind of subordinate clause called a **Purpose clause**.

Main Clause

Purpose Clause

Hunc ei librum dōnō *ut rēs gestās Rōmānōrum intellegat.*

I am giving him this book *in order that he may understand the history of the Romans*

OBSERVATIONS

1. The subordinate clause italicized in the Latin sentence above is a Purpose clause
2. Purpose clauses in Latin are introduced by the conjunctions *ut* (in order that) or *nē* (in order that . . . not)
3. The subjunctive verb in a Purpose clause was in origin a Jussive subjunctive. Also, the action of the verb in a Purpose clause is only *aimed at* or *intended*. As always *nonfactual ideas* are expressed in the subjunctive mood in Latin.
4. A Purpose clause is considered an adverbial clause because the clause *modifies the action of the main verb as a whole*; it indicates the purpose for which the subject performs the action of the main clause.

2. For a review of complex sentences and subordinate clauses see §48.

The verb in the main clause in the sentence above—*dōnō*, the **main verb**—is in the present tense, but sentences containing Purpose clauses may have main verbs in any tense. For example:

Hunc ei librum dōnāveram ut rēs gestās Rōmānōrum intellegeret.

I had given him this book in order that he might understand the history of the Romans.

The particular *tense* of the *subjunctive verb* in any Purpose clause—and in most other subordinate clauses in Latin that require verbs in the subjunctive mood—is determined by fixed rules called the *sequence of tenses*. These rules are represented by the following chart:

	Verb in Main Clause	Verb in Subordinate Clause
PRIMARY	Indicative Present Future Perfect (present completed) Future Perfect	Subjunctive Present Perfect
SECONDARY	Imperfect Perfect (past simple) Pluperfect	Imperfect Pluperfect

MEMORIZE THIS CHART.

The tenses of the indicative in the box at the upper left all refer to *present* or *future time* and are called **primary tenses**. When any of these tenses appears as the verb in a main clause, the verb in a subordinate clause requiring the subjunctive mood *must be either the present or the perfect subjunctive*, as is represented by the box at the upper right. These tenses of the subjunctive *have no absolute time value of their own*: they have only *relative time*. The *present* subjunctive is used to represent an action that is *simultaneous* with the main verb or *subsequent* to the main verb. The *perfect* subjunctive is used to represent an action that is *prior* to the main verb. When a complex sentence includes a main verb in a primary tense and a subordinate verb in either the present or perfect subjunctive, the subordinate subjunctive verb is said to be following **primary sequence**.

The tenses of the indicative in the box at the lower left all refer to *past time* and are called **secondary tenses**. When any of these tenses appears as the verb in a main clause, the verb in a subordinate clause requiring the subjunctive mood *must be either the imperfect or the pluperfect subjunctive*, as is represented by the box at the lower right. These tenses of the subjunctive *have no absolute time value of their own*: they have only *relative time*. The *imperfect* subjunctive is used to represent an action that is *simultaneous* with the main verb or *subsequent* to the main verb. The *pluperfect* subjunctive is used to represent an action that is *prior* to the main verb. When a complex sentence includes a main verb in a secondary tense and a subordinate verb in either the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, the subordinate subjunctive verb is said to be following **secondary sequence**.

3 Sometimes the verb in the main clause is in the subjunctive mood. See p. 187.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The perfect indicative may be a *primary* tense or a *secondary* tense, depending on whether it expresses *present* time (with *completed* aspect) or *past* time (with *simple* aspect).
2. Almost all subordinate clauses that require subjunctive verbs follow the sequence of tenses.⁴

Since the verb in every Purpose clause represents an action that may occur at a time *subsequent to (after)* the verb in the main clause, the only possible tenses of the subjunctive that can be used for Purpose clauses are the *present subjunctive* in primary sequence and the *imperfect subjunctive* in secondary sequence.⁵

When a Purpose clause occurs in primary sequence and its verb is therefore in the *present* subjunctive, it should be translated: “in order that . . . *may*.” When a Purpose clause occurs in secondary sequence and its verb is in the *imperfect* subjunctive, it should be translated: “in order that . . . *might*.” For example:

Gladium capiō ut pugnem. (Primary Sequence)
 I am taking up a sword in order that I *may* fight.
Gladium capiebam ut pugnārem. (Secondary Sequence)
 I was taking up a sword in order that I *might* fight.

OBSERVATION

The syntax of the verb *pugnem* is present subjunctive, Purpose clause, primary sequence. The syntax of the verb *pugnārem* is imperfect subjunctive, Purpose clause, secondary sequence.

Since the perfect indicative may be a primary tense or a secondary tense, the tense of the subjunctive verb in the Purpose clause indicates whether a main verb in the perfect tense is present time (with completed aspect) or past time (with simple aspect). For example:

Gladium cēpi ut pugnem. (primary sequence, perfect must be *present completed*)
 I have taken up a sword in order that I *may* fight.
Gladium cēpi ut pugnārem. (secondary sequence, perfect must be *past simple*)
 I took up a sword in order that I *might* fight.

Sometimes a verb in the subjunctive introduces a purpose clause (or other subordinate clause with a verb in the subjunctive). When a subjunctive verb expresses an action in *present or future time*, it introduces *primary sequence*. When a subjunctive verb expresses an action in *past time*, it introduces *secondary sequence*. For example:

Pres Subj.	Primary Sequence
---------------	---------------------

Sī hostis accēdat, arma capiāmus ut pugnēmus.
 If an enemy should approach, we would take up arms in order that we *may* fight.

Pluperf. Subj.	Secondary Sequence
-------------------	-----------------------

Sī hostis accessisset ut pugnāret, arma cēpiissēmus.
 If an enemy *had* approached in order that he *might* fight, we would have taken up arms.

4 Although conditional sentences are complex sentences containing main clauses (apodoses) and subordinate clauses (protases), the protases do not follow the rules of sequence of tenses.

5 The remaining subjunctive tenses that appear on the sequence of tenses chart (perfect and pluperfect) are used in many other subordinate clauses to represent actions that occurred *prior* to the main verb, but they are not used in Purpose clauses.

Summary of the Rules of Sequence of Tenses

1 IF THE VERB IN THE MAIN CLAUSE IS *PRIMARY*, THE SUBJUNCTIVE VERB IN A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE *MUST BE PRIMARY*. THE SUBJUNCTIVE VERB HAS *ONLY RELATIVE TIME*.

A *PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE* REPRESENTS AN ACTION THAT IS *SIMULTANEOUS* WITH OR *SUBSEQUENT* TO THE MAIN VERB.

A *PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE* REPRESENTS AN ACTION THAT IS *PRIOR* TO THE MAIN VERB.

2. IF THE VERB IN THE MAIN CLAUSE IS *SECONDARY*, THE SUBJUNCTIVE VERB IN A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE *MUST BE SECONDARY*. THE SUBJUNCTIVE VERB HAS *ONLY RELATIVE TIME*.

AN *IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE* REPRESENTS AN ACTION THAT IS *SIMULTANEOUS* WITH OR *SUBSEQUENT* TO THE MAIN VERB.

A *PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE* REPRESENTS AN ACTION THAT IS *PRIOR* TO THE MAIN VERB.

☛ DRILL 83 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§84. Indirect Commands

A *direct* command may be expressed in Latin by the imperative mood or a jussive subjunctive. For example:

Audīte dicta regis! (Imperative)

Listen to (pl.) the words of the king!

Nē audiātis dicta illius regis mali! (Jussive)

Do not (pl.) listen to the words of that evil king!

In each of these sentences the command is expressed directly to a group in the second person plural.

When a command is *reported indirectly* as part of a complex sentence, the command is subordinated to a main verb, and the resulting subordinate clause is called an **Indirect Command**. INDIRECT COMMANDS FOLLOW THE RULES OF SEQUENCE OF TENSES. For example:

<i>Peto ut dicta regis audiat.</i>	<i>I ask that you (pl.) listen to the words of the king.</i>
<i>Peto ut vos (pl.) audiat dicta regis.</i>	<i>I ask you (pl.) to listen to the words of the king.</i>
<i>Petimus ne dicta illius regis mali audiat.</i>	<i>We ask that you (pl.) not listen to the words of that evil king.</i>
<i>Petimus ne vos (pl.) audiat dicta illius regis mali.</i>	<i>We ask you (pl.) not to listen to the words of that evil king.</i>
<i>Vadis peti ut ne meus filius interficeretur.</i>	<i>I asked from the gods that my son not be killed.</i>

OBSERVATIONS

1. The subordinate clauses *italicized* in the sentences above are all Indirect Commands. Indirect Commands in Latin are introduced by the conjunctions *ut* (that) or *nē* (that . . . not).
2. The subjunctive verb in an Indirect Command was in origin a Jussive subjunctive. Also, the action of the verb in an Indirect Command is only *ordered*. As always, *nonfactual ideas* are expressed in the subjunctive mood in Latin.
3. Indirect Commands may be distinguished from Purpose clauses by the verbs that introduce them. Verbs that mean "beg," "ask," "advise," "urge," "command," "order," etc. regularly introduce Indirect Commands. Verbs in Chapters I–IX that introduce Indirect Commands are *hortor*, *imperō*, *monēō*, *petō*, and *quaerō*. *Iubeō*, which regularly takes an Object Infinitive (with a subject in the accusative), less frequently introduces Indirect Command. Other verbs that introduce Indirect Commands are identified in the vocabulary notes.
4. Since the verb in every Indirect Command represents an action that may occur at a time *subsequent to* (after) the verb in the main clause, the only possible tenses of the subjunctive that can be used in Indirect Commands are the *present subjunctive* in primary sequence and the *imperfect subjunctive* in secondary sequence.
5. An Indirect Command is regularly translated using the *English present subjunctive*.⁶ There is no difference between the translation of an Indirect Command in primary sequence and the translation of one in secondary sequence. An Indirect Command may also be translated using an English infinitive, as in the second translations for the first two sentences above.
6. An Indirect Command is considered a noun clause because the clause *functions as the direct object* (less frequently the subject) of the main verb; it indicates *what* is asked for, begged, advised, ordered, etc. Contrast Purpose clauses, which are *adverbial* clauses.

☛ DRILL 83–84 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§85. The Relative Pronoun *qui, quae, quod* and the Relative Clause

A **relative pronoun** introduces a subordinate clause that qualifies an **antecedent**, a word that "goes before" (< *antecēdō*, go before) the relative pronoun. For example:

People *who live in glass houses* shouldn't throw stones.
The evil *that men do* lives after them.

In these English sentences "who" and "that" are examples of relative pronouns. Each *refers to* the word that goes before it.⁷ "People" is the *antecedent* of "who," and "evil" is the *antecedent* of "that."⁸ The italicized portion of each sentence (*including* the relative pronoun) is called a **relative clause**. Each relative clause has a verb of its own (in addition to the verb in the main clause). A relative clause is an **adjectival clause**.

6. The English present subjunctive is the infinitive form of the verb with the word "to" omitted (e.g., "work," "complete," "do," etc.). For example: "I advised the dog *that* he not *cross* the street when there was heavy traffic."

7. The word "relative" is derived from the fourth principal part of the verb *referō*, *referre*, *rettuli*, *relātus* "bring back, refer"; a relative pronoun "refers" to its antecedent.

8. In addition to "who" and "that," other forms of English relative pronouns include "whom" (direct object, object of a preposition), "whose" (possessive), "which," and sometimes "what." For more on when to use "which" and "that" in translating Latin relative pronouns, see the *Note on Restrictive and Nonrestrictive Relative Clauses*, p. 191.

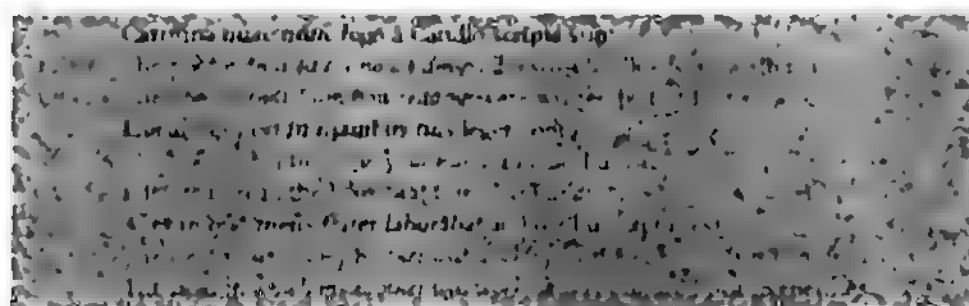
The relative pronoun in Latin has singular and plural forms in all three genders. **MEMORIZE THE DECLENSION OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN ACROSS THE SINGULAR AND THEN ACROSS THE PLURAL.**

	Singular			Plural		
	M	F	N	M	F	N
Nom	qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
Gen	cuius	cuius	cuius	quorum	quarum	quorum
Dat	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc	quem	quam	quod	quos	quas	quos
Abi	quo	qua	quo	quibus	quibus	quibus

OBSERVATIONS

1. The relative pronoun does not have vocative forms.
2. The -i of cuius in the genitive singular is consonantal and is pronounced like English y. Thus cuius (*cui-yus*) is disyllabic. The -ui of cui in the dative singular is a diphthong and is pronounced like English wi. Thus cui (*kwi*) is monosyllabic.
3. When a form of the relative pronoun functions as an Ablative of Accompaniment, the preposition *cum* may be attached directly to the pronoun. Thus *quicum* (with whom) and *quibuscum* (with whom). The neuter forms are rarely used as Ablatives of Accompaniment.

MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING RULE: THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AGREES WITH ITS ANTECEDENT IN GENDER AND NUMBER. ITS CASE, HOWEVER, IS DETERMINED BY ITS SYNTAX WITHIN THE RELATIVE CLAUSE. For example:



In the first sentence, the relative pronoun (*quae*) introduces a relative clause (*quarum legi*) that describes its antecedent (*carmina*). *Quae* is neuter and plural in order to agree with *carmina*, its antecedent. It is *accusative*, however, because it is the direct object of *legi*, the verb in the relative clause. In the second sentence, *qui* is masculine and singular to agree with *librum*, its antecedent. It is *nominative*, however, because it is the subject of *est*, the verb in the relative clause. In the third sentence, *quo* is masculine and singular to agree with *ager*, its antecedent. It is *ablative*, however, because its syntax in the relative clause is Ablative of Place *Where*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The relative pronoun usually comes first in its clause unless it is the object of a preposition.
2. The relative pronoun is often placed immediately after its antecedent.
3. The verb of the relative clause is often placed at the end of the relative clause (e.g., *quae . . . legi*, *in quo . . . laborabat*).

A Note on Restrictive and Nonrestrictive Relative Clauses

In both Latin and English there are two different kinds of relative clauses. A restrictive relative clause contains information about the antecedent that is *essential* to the meaning of the sentence. In English such a clause is *not set off in commas*, and an antecedent that is not a person is referred to in English by the relative pronoun "that." A nonrestrictive relative clause contains information about the antecedent that is *not essential* to the meaning of the sentence. In English such a clause is *always set off in commas*, and an antecedent that is not a person is referred to in English by the relative pronoun "which." For example:

Restrictive Relative Clauses

Men *who are without weapons* will not fight.

I lost the book *that you lent me*.

In each of these sentences the relative clause *restricts* the meaning of the antecedent in a way that is essential for the sense of the sentence. The men who "will not fight" are not men in general, but "men who are without weapons." The book that "I lost" is not any book, but "the book that you lent me." Note that such restrictive relative clauses are *not set off in commas*. "That" is used when the antecedent is not a person.

Nonrestrictive Relative Clauses

Horace, *who was a close friend of Vergil*, lived in the country.

You would enjoy this book, *which was written by my sister*.

In each of these sentences the relative clause contains additional but *nonessential* information about the antecedent. Note that such *nonrestrictive* clauses are *always set off in commas*. "Which" is used when the antecedent is not a person.

In Latin there are *no different pronouns* used to distinguish restrictive and nonrestrictive clauses. The two types may be distinguished *by punctuation only*.⁹

☛ DRILL 85 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§86. Special Features of the Relative Pronoun

The Indefinite or Generic Antecedent

An indefinite or generic antecedent is often *omitted* in Latin, but an antecedent should be supplied in English. Words such as "he," "she," "it," "a thing," "that thing," "they," "those," "those things," "a man," "people," etc. may be used. The gender and number of the relative pronoun indicate what word(s) should be supplied. For example:

⁹ In modern Latin texts different conventions in punctuation make even punctuation an unreliable method of distinguishing between restrictive and nonrestrictive clauses.

Qui nihil timeant bellum cupiunt. (relative pron. = masc. pl.)
 (They/Those/Those men/Men/People) who nothing (d.o.) fear war (d.o.) desire.
 People who fear nothing desire war.
Catiline, quod saepe dixi, novas res cogitat. (relative pron. = neut. sing.)
 Catiline, (a thing) that (d.o.) I have often said, revolution (d.o.) is pondering.
 Catiline, a thing that I have often said, is pondering revolution.

OBSERVATION

In the second sentence the antecedent for *quod* is *either* the entire main clause (Catiline is pondering revolution) or an ellipsed neuter pronoun such as *id*, "a thing," which itself is in apposition to the main clause.

While certain kinds of antecedents may be omitted in Latin, the relative pronoun itself can *never* be omitted, although it is often omitted in English. For example:

English: I have the book you were desiring. (relative pronoun omitted)
 Latin: *Librum quem optabās habeo.* (relative pronoun introduces relative clause)
 I have the book that you were desiring.

The Connective Relative

When a relative pronoun *begins a sentence* in Latin, its antecedent may be generic and implied, but it may also be *a specific word or an entire idea expressed in the preceding sentence*. A relative pronoun whose antecedent is to be found in a preceding sentence is called a **connective relative pronoun**.

The connective relative pronoun gives greater cohesion to the ideas being presented and makes the closest possible connection between sentences. Since standard English usage does not allow a relative pronoun at the beginning of a new sentence, a demonstrative pronoun or adjective may be used in translation. For example:

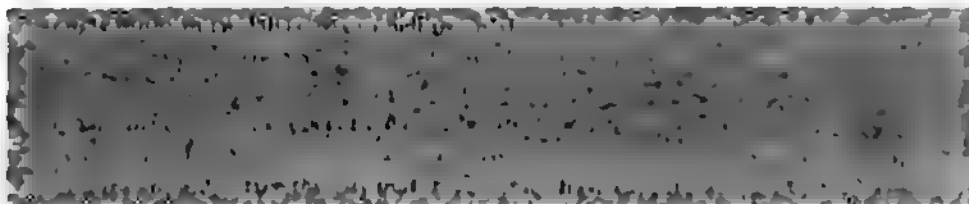
Crassus Romam venit. Quem quoniam timeo, ex urbe discedam.
 Crassus to Rome has come. Whom since I fear, from the city I shall depart.
 Crassus has come to Rome. [And] since I fear this man, I shall depart from the city.
Hostes accedebant civesque arma capiebant. Quae me terrierunt.
 The enemies were approaching, and the citizens arms (d.o.) were taking up. Which things me (d.o.) terrified.
 The enemies were approaching, and the citizens were taking up arms. [And] these things terrified me.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Because a connective relative joins two sentences, the conjunction "and" may be added to the English translation, and a demonstrative pronoun or adjective may be used to translate the relative pronoun. In the first sentence *quem* is the equivalent of *et hunc*. In the second sentence *quae* is the equivalent of *et haec*.
2. The antecedent of *quem* in the second sentence of the first example is *Crassus*, with which it agrees in gender and number (masculine and singular). The antecedent of *quae* in the second sentence of the second example is not a specific word, but is the *actions* in the first sentence, with which it agrees in gender and number (neuter and plural).
3. *Quem* is Accusative, Direct Object of *timeō*, the verb in the causal clause introduced by *quoniam*. A connective relative *always* appears first in its clause even if, as here, the clause has an introductory conjunction.

Placement of the Antecedent in and After the Relative Clause

Although a relative clause usually follows its antecedent, sometimes a relative clause *precedes* its antecedent. When this occurs, the antecedent is often simply a demonstrative pronoun that appears immediately after the relative clause.¹⁰ The antecedent also may be *drawn inside* the relative clause and then restated in the main clause as a pronoun. For example:



OBSERVATIONS

1. In the second sentence the antecedent *urbem* has been drawn inside the relative clause, and the relative word *quam* is virtually an adjective modifying *urbem*. It may be called a relative adjective.
2. The second translation, in which *urbem* has been placed in the main clause, is to be preferred.

◆ DRILL 86 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§87. The Interrogative Pronoun *quis, quid*

A pronoun used to ask a question is called an interrogative pronoun. In the questions "Who are you?" and "What are you doing?" the words "who" and "what" are examples of interrogative pronouns in English. Most of the forms of the interrogative pronoun in Latin are identical with the forms of the relative pronoun.

MEMORIZE THE DECLENSION OF THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN ACROSS THE SINGULAR AND THEN ACROSS THE PLURAL.

quis	quid	quid
quis	quid	quid
quis	quid	quid
quis	quid	quid

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the singular there is one set of forms for both *masculine* and *feminine*. All forms are identical with those of the relative pronoun except the masculine/feminine nominative form (*quis*) and the neuter nominative and accusative form (*quid*).
2. In the plural there are different forms for all three genders, and all the forms are identical with those of the relative pronoun. The English translations of the plural forms are identical with those of the singular except for the addition of notes about number and gender. For example

¹⁰ The demonstrative pronoun "points back" to the relative pronoun and the relative clause

quis	who?	qui	who (masc. pl.)?
quid	what? (or what thing?)	quae	what (pl.)? (or what things?)

3. When a form of the interrogative pronoun functions as an Ablative of Accompaniment, the preposition *cum* is occasionally attached directly to the pronoun. Thus *quōcum* (with whom?) and *quibuscum* (with whom [pl.]?).

4. In Latin, as in English, an interrogative pronoun is placed first in a question, unless it is the object of a preposition. For example:

<i>Quis illud dixit?</i>	<i>Who said that thing?</i>
<i>À quō amāris?</i>	<i>By whom are you loved?</i>
<i>Quid tē terret?</i>	<i>What is frightening you?</i>
<i>Quae dixit rex?</i>	<i>What things did the king say?</i>

5. The interrogative enclitic *-ne* is *not* added to an interrogative pronoun since the pronoun itself indicates a question.

§88. The Interrogative Adjective *quī, quae, quod*

In the questions "What book are you reading?" and "Which poems were written by Horace?" the words "what" and "which" are examples of interrogative adjectives in English because each modifies an *expressed noun* that directly follows. An interrogative pronoun, by contrast, stands alone. For example:

What man was chosen consul? ("what" modifies "man" and is an interrogative *adjective*)
What are you doing? ("what" stands alone and is an interrogative *pronoun*)

In Latin, the interrogative adjective is *identical in all its forms, singular and plural, with the relative pronoun*. For example:

<i>Quem virum amās?</i>	<i>Which man do you love?</i>
<i>In quibus oppidis vixisti?</i>	<i>In which town have you lived?</i>
<i>Quod animal in agro erat?</i>	<i>What animal was in the field?</i>
<i>Cum qua femina ambulabat?</i>	<i>With what woman was he walking?</i>

OBSERVATIONS

1. The interrogative adjective may be translated either "what" or "which."
2. The interrogative enclitic *-ne* is *not* added to an interrogative adjective since the adjective itself indicates a question.

☛ DRILL 87–88 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§89. Nine Irregular Adjectives

There are nine first-second-declension adjectives that have slight irregularities. These adjectives are:

<i>alius, alia, aliud</i> other, another	<i>totus, a, um</i> whole
<i>alter, altera, alterum</i> the other (of two)	<i>ullus, a, um</i> any
<i>neuter, neutra, neutrum</i> neither (of two)	<i>unus, a, um</i> one, only
<i>nullus, a, um</i> not any, no	<i>uter, utra, utrum</i> which (of two)
<i>solus, a, um</i> alone, only	

The declension of these adjectives differs from ordinary first-second-declension adjectives in the *genitive* and *dative singular* only. For example:

Nom.	totus	totus	totum
Gen.	totius	totius	totius
Dat.	toti	toti	toti
Acc.	totum	totam	totum
Abi.	toti	toti	toti

OBSERVATIONS

1. The genitive and dative singular endings used for these adjectives are identical with those used for the intensive adjective *ipse, ipsa, ipsum* and the demonstrative pronouns/adjectives *iste, ista, istud* and *ille, illa, illud*. Because of this similarity and because these adjectives are often used substantively, they are sometimes called **pronominal adjectives**.
2. *Alius, alia, aliud* also differs from ordinary first-second-declension adjectives in its *neuter singular nominative and accusative form (aliud)*. (Cf. *istud, illud*.)
3. The genitive singular form *alterius* is regularly used for both *alius* and *alter*.

§90. Dative with an Intransitive Verb

Certain intransitive verbs regularly appear with a Dative of Reference indicating the person or thing affected by the action of the verb. Such a dative is called the **Dative with an Intransitive Verb**. For example:

<i>Mea sententia Antōniō placet.</i> (<i>placeo, placere, placui, placitum</i> = be pleasing, please)
My opinion is pleasing to Antony.
My opinion pleases Antony.
<i>Rēgi nostro pareatur.</i> (<i>pareo, parere, parui, paritum</i> = be obedient, obey)
Let there be an obeying to our king.
Let our king be obeyed.

The syntax of each italicized word (*Antōniō, rēgi*) is **Dative with an Intransitive Verb**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Verbs that take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb are so indicated in the vocabulary list by the addition of "(+ dat.)" at the end of their entries. Although these verbs are *intransitive in Latin*, they may often be translated less literally by *transitive* English verbs. For example, in the second translation of the first sentence, "Antony" is the direct object of the English verb "pleases."
2. Verbs that take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb may occur in the passive voice in an *impersonal use only*. In such a construction, it is often convenient to translate the Dative with an Intransitive Verb as the personal subject of an English verb in the passive voice. For example, in the second translation of the second sentence, "king" is the subject of the passive voice English verb "let . . . be obeyed."

Short Readings

1. The first line of Ennius's epic poem

Mūsae quae pedibus magnum pulsātis Olympum . . . (ENNIUS, *ANNĀLES* I.1)

Mūsa, Mūsae *f.* Muse

Olympus, Olympi *m.* (Mount) Olympus

pēs, pedis *m.* foot

pulsō (1-tr) strike, beat

2. A fragment from the poetry of Ennius

qui vincit nōn est victor nisi victus fatētur. (ENNIUS, *SĒD. INC. FRAG.* 513)

victor, victoris *m.* conqueror, victor

3. Eunomia asks her brother a pressing question.

dic mihi, quaesō, quis ea est quam vīs* dūcere[†] uxōrem? (PLAUTUS, *AUTULĀRIA* 170)

*volō, velle, volui, — be willing, want, wish, vīs = 2nd sing. pres. act. indic.

[†]dūcō, here, marry

quaesō, *quaesere, —, — seek, pray for; 1st sing. pres. act. indic., I ask you, please

uxor, uxoris *f.* wife

4. Hegio is ordered by an ecstatic and near-mad Ergasilus to fetch a sacrificial animal.

Heg. Cūr? Erg. Ut sacrificēs.

H. Cui deōrum? E. Mi hercle, nam ego nunc tibi sum summus Iuppiter,

īdem ego sum Salus, Fortuna, Lux, Laetitia, Gaudium. (PLAUTUS, *CAPTIVI* 862–64)

gaudium, gaudii *n.* joy

laetitia, laetitiae *f.* happiness

lūx, lūcis *f.* light

mi = mihi

sacrificō (= sacrificō) (1-intr.) perform a sacrifice

summus, -a, -um highest

5. A woman's fate is reported with heavy irony

placere occēpit graviter postquam ēmortuast. (CAECILIUS STATIUS, *PALLIATAE FRAG.* 163)

ēmoriōr (e- + moriōr) die

occipiō (ob- + capiō) take up, begin

6. Cato's view of love

aliud est, Philippe, amor, longē aliud est cupīdō. accessit ilicō alter ubi alter recessit.

alter bonus alter malus. (CATO, *ORĀTIŌNĒS*, FRAG. 71)

cupīdō, cupidinis *f.* desire

ilicō (adv.) at once; at that moment

longē (adv.) far

Philippus, Philippi *m.* Philip

recēdō (re- + cēdō) withdraw, recede

7. Cicero notes the relation between the value of things and the degree to which they are desired.

etenim quī modus est in hīs rēbus cupiditātis, idem est aestimātiōnis; difficile est finem facere pretiō nisi libidini fēceris. (CICERO, *IN VERREM* II 4.14)

aestimātiō, aestimātiōnis *f.* value

cupiditās, cupiditātis *f.* desire

finis, finis, -ium *m.* end, limit

libidō, libidinis *f.* desire

pretium, pretii *n.* price, value

8. A character discusses the consequence of the agnostic and atheistic beliefs of certain Greek philosophers.

hōrum enim sententiae omnium nōn modo* superstitionem tollunt, in quā inest timor inānis deōrum, sed etiam religiōnem, quae deōrum cultū piō continētur.

(CICERO, *DE NATŪRA DEORUM* I.117)

*non modo = nōn solum

contineō (con- + teneō), continēre, continui,

contentus hold in, enclose; *in pass.*, be dependent upon

cultus, cultūs *m.* cultivation; worship

inānis, ināne empty, hollow; illusory

insum (in- + sum), inesse, inful, — be in; be present, be contained

religiō, religiōnis *f.* religious constraint or fear, superstition; sanctity; religious practice

superstitiō, superstitiōnis *f.* (irrational) religious awe, superstition

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus lift, raise; take

away, remove

9. Laelius considers the plight of the tyrant who, though wealthy, loves no one and is loved by no one.

Haec enim est tyrannōrum vita nimirum, in quā nūlla fidēs, nūlla caritās, nūlla stabilis benivolentiae potest esse fiducia, omnia semper suspecta atque sollicita, nullus locus amicitiae. (CICERO, *DE AMICITIĀ* 52–53)

benivolentia, benivolentiae *f.* goodwill, friendliness

caritās, caritātis *f.* affection

fiducia, fiduciāe *f.* confidence, trust, reliance

nimirum (adv.) without doubt, presumably

sollicitus, -a, -um disturbed, troubled

stabilis, stabile (standing) firm, constant

suspectus, -a, -um viewed with suspicion, suspect

tyrannus, tyrannī *m.* monarch; absolute ruler; tyrant

10. Laelius makes this observation about Fortune.

nōn enim solum ipsa Fortūna caeca est, sed eōs etiam plerumque efficit caecōs, quos complexa est. (CICERO, *DE AMICITIĀ* 54)

conplector (= complector), complecti, complexus sum embrace

efficiō (ex- + faciō) make, render

plerumque (adv.) on most occasions, to a great extent

11. Cicero speaks about areas of excellence.

itaque sē aliū ad philosophiam, aliū ad iūs cīvile, aliū ad ēloquentiam applicant, ipsarumque virtutum in alia alius māvult excellere. (CICERO, *DE OFFICIIS* I.115–16)

applicō (1-tr.) bring into contact; lead; apply
civilis, **civile** of or connected with citizens, civil
ēloquentia, **ēloquentiae** *f.* eloquence, rhetoric
excellō, **excellere**, —, — de superior, be conspicuous, excel

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly
mālō, **mālle**, **māluī**, — prefer; **māvult** = 3rd sing. pres. act. indic.
philosophia, **philosophiae** *f.* philosophy

12. Cicero contrasts Rome with other societies

aliae natiōnes servitutem pati possunt, populi Rōmani est propria libertās.

(CICERO, *PHILIPPICS* VI 7)

natio, **natiōis** *f.* nation

proprius, -a, -um one's own; peculiar (to), characteristic (of) (+ gen.)

13. Cicero asks a rhetorical question about Caesar's being allowed to run for consul *in absentia*.

cūr imperium illi aut cūr illō modō prōrogātum est? (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* VII.3.4)

prōrogo (1-tr.) extend, prolong

14. The poet summarizes his doctrine of the eternal regeneration of atoms.

sic aliqd* ex aliō numquam dēsistet oriri

vitaque mancipiō nulli datur, omnibus ūsū. (LUCRETIUS, *DE RERUM NATURA* III.

970–71)

*alid = aliud

dēsistō, **dēsistere**, **dēsiti**, — cease

mancipium, **mancipiū** *n.* ownership

orior, **oriri**, **ortus** sum rise arise

ūsus, **ūsūs** *m.* use; enjoyment

15. A shepherd laments his inability to make money from selling his animals.

nōn umquam gravis aere domum mihi dextra redibat. (VERGIL, *ECLOGUES* I 35)

aes, **aeris** *n.* copper, bronze, coin, money

dexter, **dextra**, **dextrum** right; *as fem. subst. (sc. manus)*, right hand

16. Aeneas speaks to his comrades as Troy falls.

ūna salūs victis nullam spērāre salutem. (VERGIL, *AENEID* II.354)

spērō (1-tr.) hope (for)

17. King Latinus agrees to an alliance with the Trojans and their leader, Aeneas.

pars mihi pācis erit dextram tetigisse* tyrannū. (VERGIL, *AENEID* VII.266)

*tetigisse, *perfect active infinitive*, to have touched

dexter, **dextra**, **dextrum** right; *as fem. subst. (sc. manus)* right hand

tangō, **tangere**, **tetigi**, **tāctus** touch

tyrannus, **tyrannū** *m.* monarch; absolute ruler; tyrant

18. Which is better, city or country?

Rōmae rūs optās; absentem rusticus urbem

tollis ad astra levis. . . (HORACE, *SERMONES* II.7.28-29)

absēns, absenti not present, absent

astrum, astrū n. star; in pl., the heavens, sky

rūsticus, -a, -um of or belonging to the country or a farm, rustic

tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublatus lift, raise

19. One advantage of being in love

omne in amorē malum, sī patiāre, leve est. (PROPERTIUS II.5.16)

20. The poet responds when a friend asks him why he is so vulnerable to his beloved's cruelty.

. . . "quārē" non habet illius amor. (PROPERTIUS II.22A.14)

21. A shrewd observation on protesting too much

quī nimium multis "nōn amo"* dicit amat. (OVID *REMEDIA AMORIS* 648)

*The -ō of amō here scans short.

nimium (adv.) too much, excessively

22. Part of the poet's description of the creation of animals out of soil, rock, and water after the great flood

. . . et eōdem in corpore saepe

altera pars vivit, rudis est pars altera tellūs. (OVID, *METAMORPHOSES* I 428-29)

rudis, rude unformed, rough, raw

tellūs, tellūris f. earth, land

23. A couplet about the human condition

tendimus hūc omnēs, mētā properāmus ad ūnam,

omnia sub lēgēs Mors vocat ātra suās. (EPICURION *DRUSI* 359-60)

āter, ātra, ātrum black, dark

hūc (adv.) to this place, hither

mēta, mētae f. goalpost; end, limit

properō (1-intr.) hasten, rush

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus or tēnsus stretch out, extend, proceed

24. A faithful old dog responds to his master after he is scolded for losing his prey.

quod fuimus laudā sī iam damnās quod sumus.

(PHAEDRUS, *FABULAE AESOPICAE* V.10.9)

damnō (1-tr.) condemn

25. A remark of an orator taking part in a debate

quod servāre tibi difficile est avō dōnā. (SENECA THE ELDER, *CONTRORSIAE* IX.5.1)

avus, avi m. grandfather

servō (1-tr.) preserve, save

26. The chorus puzzles over why the gods do not seem concerned with human justice.

rēs hūmānās ordine nūllō

Fortūna regit sparsitque manū

munera caecā . . . (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *PHAEEDRA* 978–80)

hūmānus, -a, -um human

mūnus, *mūneris* *n.* present gift

ordō *ordinis* *m.* order

spargō, *spargere*, *sparsi*, *sparsus* scatter, distribute

27. The philosopher cites a remark of Aristotle about the poetic mind.

nūllum magnum ingenium sine mixturā dēmentiae fuit. (SENECA THE YOUNGER

DIALOGI IX.17.10)

dēmentia, *dēmentiae* *f.* madness, insanity

mixtura, *mixturae* *f.* mixture; admixture

28. Quintilian cites an example of a rhetorical figure employing reversal.

nōn ut edam vivō, sed ut vivam edō. (QUINTILIAN, *INSTITUTIO ORATORIA* IX.3.85)

edō, *ēsse*, *ēdi*, *ēsus* (irregular 3rd conj. verb) eat

29. The poet suggests an example of madness.

Hostem cum* fugeret, sē Fannius ipse perēmī.

hic, rogo, nōn furor est, nē moriāre, morī? (MARTIAL I.80)

**cum* here (conj. + subjunc.), when

Fannius, *Fannī* *m.* Fannius

furor, *furoris* *m.* madness

perīno, *perimere*, *perēmī*, *perēptus* destroy

rogō (1-tr.) ask, the final -o of *rogo* here scans *short*.

30. The poet explains something to an acquaintance named Pontilianus

cūr nōn mitto* meōs tibi, Pontiliāne, libellōs?

ne mihi tu mittās, Pontiliāne, tuōs. (MARTIAL VII.3)

*The -ō of *mittō* here scans *short*.

libellus *libellī* *m.* (little) book

Pontilianus, *Pontiliānī* *m.* Pontilianus, an acquaintance of the poet

31. The poet addresses a friend or lover.

Difficilis facilis, iūcundus acerbus es idem:

nec tecum possum vivere nec sine tē. (MARTIAL XII.46)

iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable

32. An example of Cato the Elder's rhetoric when he expresses indignation at the beating of Roman citizens

quis hanc contumeliā, quis hoc imperium, quis hanc servitūtem ferre potest?

(AULUS GELIUS, *NOCTES ATTICAE* X.3.17)

Longer Readings

1. Cicero, *Divinatio in Caecilium* 19

Cicero attacks Verres, who had been proconsul in Sicily.

Sicilia tota si ūnā vōce loquerētur, hoc diceret: “Quod aurī, quod argentī, quod ornāmentōrum in meis urbibus, sēdibus, dēlubris fuit, quod in ūnā quāque* rē beneficio senātūs populique Rōmānī iūris habuī, id mihi tū, C. Verrēs, ēripuistī atque abstulistī . . .

*quāque = fem. sing. abl. of indef. adj. each

argentum, argentī n. silver

beneficium, beneficī n. service, kindness; favor, benefit

C. Verres, C. Verris m. C. Verres, proconsul of Sicily, prosecuted by Cicero in 70 B.C.E.

dēlubrum, dēlubrī n. temple, shrine

ēripio, ēripere, eripui, ēreptus tear away, snatch away

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum speak

ornāmentum, ornāmentī n. adornment, embellishment

sēdēs, sēdis, -ium f. seat, home, abode

Sicilia, Sicīliae f. Sicily

The *Divinatio in Caecilium* was delivered in 70 B.C.E. A *divinatio* was a legal inquiry held to determine who should conduct the prosecution of a case. Cicero successfully argued that he—and not Q. Caecilius, a corrupt alternative—should try the case against C. Verres, a Roman nobleman charged with severe misgovernment of the province of Sicily. The case pitted Cicero against the leading lawyer of the day, Hortensius, and Cicero's victory established him as the foremost orator in Rome. Verres was forced into exile.

2. Cicero, *De Finibus* IV.34

Cicero compares wisdom to an artist.

ut Phidiās potest ā primo instituere signum idque perficere, potest ab alio inchoātum accipere et absolvere, huic est sapientia similis; nōn enim ipsa genuit hominem, sed accēpit ā nātūrā inchoātum.

absolvō, absolvere, absolvi, absolutus finish, complete

gignō, gignere, genui, genitus create, beget (of a father)

inchoō (1 tr.) start, begin

instiuo, instituere, institui, institutus set up, establish; set to work (on), start (on)

Phidiās, Phīdiae m. Phidias, fifth-century Athenian sculptor, designer of Parthenon sculpture

prīmum, primī n. first part, beginning

signum, signī n. sign, signal; statue, figure

similis, simile similar (+ dat.)

In the *De Finibus Bonorum et Malorum* (*Concerning the Ends of Goods and Evils*) Cicero surveys the doctrines of three prominent schools of philosophical thought of his day: Epicurean, Stoic, and Old Academic, the school of thought associated with the philosopher Antiochus. The *De Finibus* is considered Cicero's most technical philosophical work.

3. Lucretius, *De Rerum Naturā* II.75–79

The poet describes the never-ending life and change of the physical world.

... sic rerum summa novatur
semper, et inter se mortales mutua vivunt.
augescunt aliae gentes, aliae minuuntur,
inque brevi spatio mutantur saecula animantum
et quasi cursores vitae lampada tradunt.

*vitae = vitae

animans, animantis, -ium *m.* or *f.* or *n.* living

creature; animantum = animantium

augescō, augescere, auget, — increase, grow

brevis, breve short, brief

cursor, cursoris *m.* runner

gens, gentis, -ium *f.* nation, people, clan, family

lampas, lampadis *f.* torch; lampada *acc. sing.*

minuō, minuire minui, minutus make smaller,
reduce, diminish

mortalis, mortale mortal

mutō (1-tr.) change

mutua (adv.) through successive changes, recip-
rocally, with mutual interaction

novō (1-tr.) make new, renew

quasi (adv.) as (if), as (it were)

saec(u)lum, saec(u)li *n.* age generation

spatium, spatii *n.* course, track; lap; space,
interval

summa, summae *f.* sum, whole, total, totality

Virtually nothing is known about the life of Titus Lucretius Carus (98?–55? B.C.E.), but his didactic epic poem *De Rerum Naturā* (*Concerning the Nature of Things*) is one of the masterpieces of Latin literature. Lucretius explains the Greek philosopher Epicurus's atomic theory of the universe in order to dispel the fear of death and so to free mankind from religion and superstition. His style owes much to his predecessor Ennius and is thus more archaic than that of his contemporary Catullus. Lucretius's command of meter and poetic diction exerted considerable influence on Vergil's poetic development, and several lines of Lucretius's poem appear in slightly altered form in Vergil's works.

4. Catullus XCII

The poet and his beloved Lesbia have something in common.

Lesbia mi dicit semper male nec tacet umquam
de me: Lesbia me dispeream nisi amat
quod signō? quia sunt totidem mea: deprecor illam
assidue, verum dispeream nisi amo.

assidue (adv.) continually, constantly

deprecor (1-tr.) ward off by prayer; deprecate,
abuse

disperēō (dis- + perēō), disperire, disperī, —
perish

mi = mihi

quia (conj.) because

signum, signi *n.* sign, signal

laceō, tacere, taci, tacitūrus be silent, keep
silent

totidem (indeclinable numerical adj.) just as
many; just the same

Gaius Valerius Catullus (84?–54? B.C.E.) was born at Verona, but as a young man he came to live in Rome, where he became associated with several other young poets. These poetae novi were very much influenced by the Greek lyric poets and Hellenistic poets. Reacting against long epic and didactic models in earlier Latin poetry, the neoterics (< Greek *neōteroi*, newer) chose to write shorter, personal lyrics, of which the 116 poems of Catullus are the best surviving examples. By coining new words and by giving new meanings to existing words Catullus created a new poetic diction for Latin. His vocabulary added liveliness, humor, and even obscenity to the language. Many later Latin poets, including Vergil and Horace, were significantly influenced by Catullan diction and style.

5. Caesar, *De Bello Gallico* I.1

Caesar begins his commentary on the Gallic war.

Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs; quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt.

appellō (1-tr.) name, call

Aquitānī, Aquitānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Aquitani

Belgae, Belgārum *m. pl.* (the) Belgae

Celtae, Celtārum *m. pl.* (the) Celts

dividō, dividere, divisi, divisus separate, divide

Gallī, Gallōrum *m. pl.* (the) Gauls

Gallia, Galliae *f.* Gaul

incolō, incolere, incolui, — inhabit

institutum, institūti *n.* custom, institution

lingua, linguae *f.* tongue; language

tertius, -a, -um third

trēs, tria (numerical ad.) three; trēs = *fem. pl. acc.*

Gaius Iulius Caesar (100–44 B.C.E.) was born at Rome and began his political career in the 60s. After entering into an alliance with the two most powerful people in Rome—the wealthy M. Licinius Crassus and the general Pompey—Caesar became consul for the first time in 59. After his consulship Caesar was chosen to govern the province Gaul (modern France and northern Italy). At the time Rome controlled only the southernmost portion of Gaul. Over the next several years Caesar conquered the remainder of it. Caesar then sought to return to Rome as consul in 49, but Pompey, his supporters, and others at Rome—fearing Caesar's increasing power—blocked his candidacy. As a result, Caesar invaded Italy and set off the civil war that lasted until 45 in various parts of the Roman Empire. On 15 March 44, after it had become clear that he had decided not to resign his dictatorship (a legal, temporary office in Rome), Caesar was assassinated.

The *Commentarii de Bello Gallico* (Commentaries About the Gallic War) were probably written during the campaigns in Gaul. They provide both an account of those campaigns and a description of the customs of the peoples Caesar encountered in Gaul and Britain. Written in seven books, the *Commentarii* are a third-person account in a plain, lucid, and orderly style with a notable absence of florid rhetoric. When Quintilian surveys the orators of the late Republic, he rates Caesar second only to Cicero himself. Both Cicero and Quintilian praise Caesar's purity of vocabulary and clarity of thought as a speaker—qualities also apparent in his writings.

6. Vergil *Aeneid* II.65–74

Aeneas, in Carthage, narrates the downfall of Troy. In this passage he begins his account of the deception of Sinon, whose false tale ensures that the Trojan horse is brought into the city.

accipe nunc Danaum insidiās et crimine ab ūnō

65

disce omnis *

namque ut cōspectu in mediō turbātus, inermis

cōstitit atque oculis Phrygia agmina circumspexit,

“heu, quae nunc tellus,” inquit, “quae mē aequora possunt

accipere³ aut quid iam miserō mihi dēnique restat,

70

cui neque apud Danaōs usquam locus, et super ipsi

Dardaniae infēnsī poenās cum sanguine poscunt³”

quō gemutū conversi animi compressus et¹ omnis

impetus.

*A few lines of the *Aeneid* remained unfinished at the time of Vergil's death.

¹et in poetry is frequently placed in the position of -que.

aequor, aequoris *n.* level surface; sea

agmen, agminis *n.* (battle-)line; throng

apud (prep. + acc.) at, near; in the presence of, among

circumspiciō, circumspicere, circumspexi,

circumspectus look around (at)

comprimō, comprimere, compressi, compressus crush; subdue, suppress

cōspectus, cōspectūs *m.* sight, view

cōstō, cōstāre, cōstiti, cōstātūrus stand still

convertō, convertere, converti, conversus turn

upside down, reverse; change; win over

crimen, crīminis *n.* charge, accusation; crime

Danaī, Danaōrum *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks,

Danaum = *gen. pl.*

Dardanidēs, Dardanidae *m.* descendant of Dardanus (founder of Troy), Trojan

dēnique (adv.) finally, at last, in short, to sum up

discō discere, didici, — learn

gemitus, gemitūs *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)

impetus, impetūs *m.* attack, assault; (violent)

impulse or urge

inermis, inerme unarmed

infēnsus, -a, -um hostile, threatening

inquam (defective verb) say; inquit 3rd sing. pres. act. indic.

medius, -a, -um middle (of)

Phrygius, -a, -um of or belonging to Phrygia (the region in which Troy was situated), Phrygian, Trojan

poscō, poscere, poposci, demand

restō, restāre, restiti, — remain, be left

sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood

super (adv.) in addition

tellūs tellūris *f.* earth, land

turbō (1-tr) stir up, confuse, throw into confusion

usquam (adv.) anywhere

7. Vergil, *Aeneid* IV.651–58

Before committing suicide, Dido mounts her funeral pyre and addresses relics of her love affair with Aeneas.

dulcēs exuviae, dum fāta deusque sinēbat,
accipite hanc animam mēque his exsoluite curis.
vixi et quem dederat cursum Fortūna perēgi,
et nunc magna mei sub terrās ibit imāgō.
urbem praeclāram statui, mea moenia vidi,
ulta virum poenās inimicō ā frātre recēpi,
fēlix, heu nimium fēlix, si litora tantum
numquam Dardaniae tetigissent nostra carīnae.

655

carīna, carīnae *f.* keel; ship

cursus, cursūs *m.* course

Dardanius, -a, -um Dardanian, Trojan

dulcis, dulce sweet

dum (conj. + indic.) while, as long as

exsolvo, exsolvere, exsolvi, exsolūtus set free,
release

exuviae, exuviarum *f. pl.* (stripped) armor;
mementos

imāgō, imāginis *f.* image, likeness

litus, litoris *n.* shore, beach

nimium (adv.) too much, excessively

perago (per- + agō), peragere, perēgi, peractus
thoroughly do; accomplish, complete

praeclārus, -a, -um very famous

recipio (re- + capio) take back, receive

sinō, sinere, sibi or sibi, situs allow, permit

statuo, statuere, statui, statutus cause to stand,
set up, establish

tango, tangere, tetigi, tactus touch; reach

tantum (adv.) only

ulciscor, ulcisci ultus sum avenge

8. Horace, *Epistulae* I.1.25–30

The poet reflects on the restless discontent of men

... nam si ratio et prudentia cūras,
nōn locus effūsi latē maris arbiter aufert,
caelum nōn animum mūtāt quī trāns mare currunt.
strēnuā nōs exercet inertia: nāvibus atque
quadrigīs petimus bene vivere. quod petis, hic est,
est Ulubris, animus si tē nōn dēficit aequus.

25

30

aequus, -a, -um level, even; calm, tranquil

arbiter, arbitri *m.* overseer, controller, ruler

currō, currere, cucurri, cursum run, rush

dēficiō (dē- + faciō) let down, fail

effundō, effundere, effūdī, effusus pour out;
spread out

exerceō, exercere, exercui, exercitus keep busy,
occupy, train, exercise

hic (adv.) here

inertia, inertiae *f.* inactivity, laziness

latē (adv.) widely, far and wide

mūtō (1-tr.) change

nāvis, nāvis, -ium *f.* ship

prudentia, prudentiae *f.* good sense, judgment,
prudence

quadriga, quadrigae *f.* (four-horse) chariot

ratio, rationis *f.* account, reason, reasoning

strēnuus, -a, -um active, vigorous, energetic

trāns (prep. + acc.) across

Ulubrae, Ulubrārum *f. pl.* Ulubrae, a small town
in Latium

Written some time after 20 B.C.E., the *Epistulae* (*Letters*) are poems in dactylic hexameter in a conversational style. Much of our information about Horace's own life is derived from these *Epistulae*.

9 Propertius I.11 23 -26

The poet concludes a poem with an address to his beloved Cynthia

tū mihi sola domus, tu, Cynthia, sola parentēs,
omnia tū nostrae tempora laetitiae.
seu tristis veniam seu contrā laetus amicis,
quicquid erō, dīcam "Cynthia causa fuit."

25

contrā (adv.) in opposition, in turn
laetitia, laetitiae *f.* happiness
parēns parentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* parent
quicquid = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. pron.,*
whatever

seu (conj.) or if, whether; seu . . . seu . . .
whether or (if) . . .
tristis, trīste sad, gloomy, melancholy, grim

10. Propertius II.8.1 6

The poet reflects on his emotional state now that he has lost his love.

Eripitur nobis iam pridem cāra puella:
et tū mē lacrimās fundere, amice, vetās?
nullae sunt inimicitiae nisi amoris acerbae:
ipsum mē iugulā, lēnior hostis erō.
possum ego in alterius* positam spectāre lacertō?
nec mea dicētur, quae modo dicta meast?

5

*The -i- of alterius here scans *short*.
ēripō, ēripere, ēripui, ēreptus tear away, snatch
away
fundō, fundere, fudi, fusus pour out, shed
iugulō (1-tr) kill (by cutting the throat), slaughter
lacertus lacerti *m.* (upper) arm
lacrima, lacrimae *f.* tear

lēnior, lēnius (comparative adj.) weaker, gentler;
lēnior = *masc. sing. nom.*
modo (adv.) only, now; just now
pridem (adv.) formerly, previously; iam pridem,
long since, for a long time now
spectō (1-tr) look at, observe
vetō, vetāre, vetui, vetitus forbid

11. Ovid *Metamorphoses* I.5-9

Ovid describes the beginning of the universe.

ante mare et terrās et quod tegit omnia caelum
ūnus erat tōtō nātūrae vultus in orbe,
quem dixere* Chaos: rudis indigestaque mōlēs
nec quicquam nisi pondus mers congestaque eōdem†
nōn bene iūctarum discordia sēmina rerum.

5

*dicō, here, call
eōdem, here (adv.) to the same place
Chaos, *Chaf *n.* Chaos
congerō (con- + gerō) gather together, collect
discors, discordis discordant, unlike
indigestus, -a, -um unarranged, without order,
confused
iners, inertis inactive, idle, inert
iungō, iungere, iūxī, iūctus join

mōlēs, mōlis, -ium *f.* mass, weight, burden
orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; world
pondus, ponderis *n.* weight
quicquam = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. pron.,*
anything
rudis, rude unformed, rough, raw
sēmen, sēminis *n.* seed
tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus cover
vultus, vultūs *m.* expression, countenance; face

12. Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnon* 79--86

The chorus states what it believes inevitably happens to royal houses.

iura pudorque

et coniugii sacrata fides

80

fugiant aulas; sequitur tristis

sanguinolenta Bellona manu

quaeque superbos urit Erinyes,

nimias semper comitata domos,

quas in plenum quaelibet hora

85

tulit ex alto.

aula, aulae *f.* royal hall, palace

Bellona, Bellonae *f.* Bellona, goddess of war

comitor (1-tr.) accompany, attend

coniugium, coniugii *n.* marriage

Erinyes, Erinyos *f.* Erinyes, a Fury

hora, horae *f.* hour

nimius, -a, -um excessive, too great

plenum, pleni *n.* flat or level ground

pudor, pudoris *m.* shame, decency, modesty

quaelibet = *fem. sing. nom. of indef. adj.*,

any it pleases

sacratus, -a, -um hallowed, sacred

sanguinolentus, -a, -um covered with blood;

greedy for blood

superbus, -a, -um proud; haughty

tristis, triste sad, gloomy, melancholy, grim

urō, urere, ussi, ustus burn, scorch, inflame

consume

Based in part on Aeschylus's *Agamemnon*, Seneca's play of the same name tells the tale of Agamemnon's homecoming from Troy and his subsequent murder by his wife, Clytemnestra, and his cousin, her lover, Aegisthus.

13. Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnon* 698–709

Cassandra, the daughter of Priam, explains to the chorus why she has nothing left to fear

Fortūna vires ipsa cōsūmpsit suās.

quae patria restat, quis* pater, quae iam soror?

bibere tumuli sanguinem atque ārae meum.[†]

700

quid illa felix turba fraterni gregis?

exhausta nempe: rēgiā miserī senēs

vacuā relictū, totque per thalamōs vident

praeter Laecenā cēterās viduās nurūs.

tot illa rēgum māter et regimen Phrygum,

705

fēcunda in^{††} ignēs Hecuba fātōrum novās

experta lēgēs induit vultūs ferōs:

circā ruīnās rabida latrāvit suās,

Troiae superstes, Hectorī, Priamō, sibi

*quis, here, interrog. pron. used adjectivally

†meum = meōrum

††in, here, toward

bibō, bibere, bibi, — drink

cēterus, -a, -um rest (of), remaining part (of),
(the) other

circā (prep. + acc.) around, near

cōsūmō, cōsūmere, cōsūmpsī, cōsūptus
expend use up

exauriō, exhaurire, exhausi exhaustus drain dry

fēcundus, -a, -um fertile, productive, fruitful

ferus, -a, -um wild, uncultivated; fierce, ferocious

frāternus, -a, -um brotherly, fraternal

grex, gregis *m.* flock, herd

Hectōr, Hectoris *m.* Hector son of Priam

Hecuba, Hecubae *f.* Hecuba, wife of Priam

ignis, ignis, -ium *m.* fire

induō, induere, indui, indūtus put on, clothe; as-
sume, adopt

Laecena, Laeceniae *f.* Laconian woman; Helen

latrō (1-intr.) bark, bay

nempe (adv.) without doubt, to be sure

nurus, nurūs *f.* daughter-in-law

Phryx, Phrygis Phrygian, Trojan

praeter (prep. + acc.) beyond, except; besides

rabidus, -a, -um raging, rabid, mad

rēgia, rēgiae *f.* royal residence, palace

regimen, regiminis *n.* control, management;
controller, manager

restō, restāre, restitū, — remain, be left

ruīna, ruīnae *f.* downfall, ruin

sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood

senex, senis old *as masc. subst.*, old man

superstes, superstis surviving (+ dat.)

thalamus, thalami *m.* *in sing. or pl.*, inner room,
wedding chamber; marriage

tot (indeclinable adj.) so many

tumulus, tumuli *m.* burial mound, grave

turba, turbae *f.* crowd, throng

vacuus, -a, -um empty

viduus, -a, -um widowed

vultus, vultūs *m.* expression, countenance; face

14. Tacitus, *Annāles* I.1

The historian summarizes concisely modes of Roman rule from the city's beginnings down to Augustus.

Urbem Rōmam ā principiō rēgēs habuēre; libertatem et cōsulātum L. Brūtus instituit. dictātūrae ad tempus* sūmēbantur; neque decemvirālis potestās ultrā biennium, neque tribūnōrum militum cōsulare iūs diū valuit. nōn Cinnae, nōn Sullae longa dominātiō: et Pompei Crassique potentia citō in Caesarem, Lepidi atque Antōnii arma in Augustum cessēre, qui cuncta discordiis civilibus fessa nōmine principis sub imperium accēpit.

*ad tempus, for the occasion, in emergencies
 biennium, biennii *n.* biennium, two years
 L. Brūtus, L. Brūtus *m.* L. (Junius) Brutus, legendary founder of the Roman republic
 Cinna, Cinnae *m.* (L. Cornelius) Cinna (Roman dictator 87–84 B.C.E.), enemy of Sulla
 citō (adv.) quickly
 civilis, civile of or connected with citizens, civil
 cōsulare iūs, cōsulāris iūris *n.* consular right or power (sometimes granted to military tribunes)
 cūctus, -a, -um all
 decemvirālis, decemvirāle pertaining to the *decemviri*, a commission of ten magistrates
 dictātūra, dictātūrae *f.* dictatorship, an emergency office with unlimited powers
 discordia, discordiae *f.* discord, dissension, conflict
 diū (adv.) for a long time
 dominātiō, dominātiōnis *f.* absolute rule, dominion

fessus, -a, -um weary, exhausted, worn out
 instituō, instituere, institui, institutus set up, establish
 Lepidus, Lepidi *m.* (M. Aemilius) Lepidus, member of second triumvirate with Antony and Octavian
 nōmen, nōminis *n.* name
 potentia, potentiae *f.* (illegitimate) power, influence
 potestās, potestātis *f.* (legitimate) power
 princeps, principis first, foremost, chief; as *subst.*, leading man
 principium, principii *n.* beginning
 sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmptus take up, seize, take on, assume
 tribūnus, tribūni *m.* tribune, military commander
 ultrā (prep. + acc.) beyond

The *Annāles* appear to have comprised eighteen books, of which only eight survive completely and four others in part. Their subject is the history of Rome from the death of Augustus to the death of Nero (14–68 C.E.) The *Annāles* is generally considered Tacitus's most mature work. The first six books in particular are marked by Tacitus's love of compression and his pronounced avoidance of Ciceronian balance. In these books the complexity of Tacitus's thought is combined with his commanding use of the Latin language's natural tendency toward economy. The resulting narrative is vivid, surprising, and immutable.

§91. Numbers in Latin

Cardinal numbers are adjectives that answer the question "how many?" They are the numbers used in counting. Most but not all cardinal numbers in Latin are indeclinable. Ordinal numbers are adjectives that answer the question "which one in a series?" All ordinal numbers in Latin are first-second-declension adjectives. Most ordinal numbers are derived from the corresponding cardinal numbers.

Arabic Numerals	Latin Numerals	Cardinal Number	Ordinal Number
1	1	primus, -a, -um	primus, -a, -um
2	2	secundus, -a, -um	secundus, -a, -um
3	3	tertius, -a, -um	tertius, -a, -um
4	IV or IIII	quartus, -a, -um	quartus, -a, -um
5	5	quintus, -a, -um	quintus, -a, -um
6	6	sextus, -a, -um	sextus, -a, -um
7	7	septimus, -a, -um	septimus, -a, -um
8	8	octavus, -a, -um	octavus, -a, -um
9	9	nonus, -a, -um	nonus, -a, -um
10	10	decimus, -a, -um	decimus, -a, -um
11	11	undecimus, -a, -um	undecimus, -a, -um
12	12	duodecim	duodecim
13	13	tredecim	tredecim
14	14	quattuordecim	quattuordecim
15	15	quingentus, -a, -um	quingentus, -a, -um
16	16	sexcentus, -a, -um	sexcentus, -a, -um
17	17	septicentus, -a, -um	septicentus, -a, -um
18	18	octingentus, -a, -um	octingentus, -a, -um
19	19	centingentus, -a, -um	centingentus, -a, -um
20	20	ducentus, -a, -um	ducentus, -a, -um
21	21	ducentus et unus	ducentus et primus
22	22	ducentus et duo	ducentus et secundus
23	23	ducentus et tres	ducentus et tertius
24	24	ducentus et quattuor	ducentus et quartus
25	25	ducentus et quintus	ducentus et quintus
26	26	ducentus et sextus	ducentus et sextus
27	27	ducentus et septimus	ducentus et septimus
28	28	ducentus et octavus	ducentus et octavus
29	29	ducentus et nonus	ducentus et nonus
30	30	trecentus, -a, -um	trecentus, -a, -um
31	31	trecentus et unus	trecentus et primus
32	32	trecentus et duo	trecentus et secundus
33	33	trecentus et tres	trecentus et tertius
34	34	trecentus et quattuor	trecentus et quartus
35	35	trecentus et quintus	trecentus et quintus
36	36	trecentus et sextus	trecentus et sextus
37	37	trecentus et septimus	trecentus et septimus
38	38	trecentus et octavus	trecentus et octavus
39	39	trecentus et nonus	trecentus et nonus
40	40	quadringentus, -a, -um	quadringentus, -a, -um
41	41	quadringentus et unus	quadringentus et primus
42	42	quadringentus et duo	quadringentus et secundus
43	43	quadringentus et tres	quadringentus et tertius
44	44	quadringentus et quattuor	quadringentus et quartus
45	45	quadringentus et quintus	quadringentus et quintus
46	46	quadringentus et sextus	quadringentus et sextus
47	47	quadringentus et septimus	quadringentus et septimus
48	48	quadringentus et octavus	quadringentus et octavus
49	49	quadringentus et nonus	quadringentus et nonus
50	50	quingentus, -a, -um	quingentus, -a, -um
51	51	quingentus et unus	quingentus et primus
52	52	quingentus et duo	quingentus et secundus
53	53	quingentus et tres	quingentus et tertius
54	54	quingentus et quattuor	quingentus et quartus
55	55	quingentus et quintus	quingentus et quintus
56	56	quingentus et sextus	quingentus et sextus
57	57	quingentus et septimus	quingentus et septimus
58	58	quingentus et octavus	quingentus et octavus
59	59	quingentus et nonus	quingentus et nonus
60	60	sextcentus, -a, -um	sextcentus, -a, -um
61	61	sextcentus et unus	sextcentus et primus
62	62	sextcentus et duo	sextcentus et secundus
63	63	sextcentus et tres	sextcentus et tertius
64	64	sextcentus et quattuor	sextcentus et quartus
65	65	sextcentus et quintus	sextcentus et quintus
66	66	sextcentus et sextus	sextcentus et sextus
67	67	sextcentus et septimus	sextcentus et septimus
68	68	sextcentus et octavus	sextcentus et octavus
69	69	sextcentus et nonus	sextcentus et nonus
70	70	septicentus, -a, -um	septicentus, -a, -um
71	71	septicentus et unus	septicentus et primus
72	72	septicentus et duo	septicentus et secundus
73	73	septicentus et tres	septicentus et tertius
74	74	septicentus et quattuor	septicentus et quartus
75	75	septicentus et quintus	septicentus et quintus
76	76	septicentus et sextus	septicentus et sextus
77	77	septicentus et septimus	septicentus et septimus
78	78	septicentus et octavus	septicentus et octavus
79	79	septicentus et nonus	septicentus et nonus
80	80	octingentus, -a, -um	octingentus, -a, -um
81	81	octingentus et unus	octingentus et primus
82	82	octingentus et duo	octingentus et secundus
83	83	octingentus et tres	octingentus et tertius
84	84	octingentus et quattuor	octingentus et quartus
85	85	octingentus et quintus	octingentus et quintus
86	86	octingentus et sextus	octingentus et sextus
87	87	octingentus et septimus	octingentus et septimus
88	88	octingentus et octavus	octingentus et octavus
89	89	octingentus et nonus	octingentus et nonus
90	90	centingentus, -a, -um	centingentus, -a, -um
91	91	centingentus et unus	centingentus et primus
92	92	centingentus et duo	centingentus et secundus
93	93	centingentus et tres	centingentus et tertius
94	94	centingentus et quattuor	centingentus et quartus
95	95	centingentus et quintus	centingentus et quintus
96	96	centingentus et sextus	centingentus et sextus
97	97	centingentus et septimus	centingentus et septimus
98	98	centingentus et octavus	centingentus et octavus
99	99	centingentus et nonus	centingentus et nonus
100	100	centum	centus, -a, -um

1. In the numbers from 21 to 29, for example, the numbers up to 27 are made by adding to twenty the necessary numbers from 1 to 7. The numbers 28–29 are made by subtracting from thirty the numbers 2 and 1. Such a system is followed in every unit of ten numbers.

is declined regularly as a neuter plural substantive of a third-declension adjective. The stem is *mīl-*. The Romans frequently measured distance in “thousands of paces” or “miles.” For example.

<i>mille passuum</i>	one thousand of paces, one mile (<i>passus</i> , <i>passūs</i> m. pace)
<i>decem milia passuum</i>	ten thousands of paces, ten miles

OBSERVATION

In the expressions above *passuum* is Partitive Genitive.

CHAPTER X

Vocabulary

- **lēgātus, lēgātī** *m.* legate, envoy, lieutenant
- **nātus, nātī** *m.* son

- **dux, ducis** *m.* or *f.* leader
- **finis, finis, -ium** *m.* or *f.* end, limit, boundary; *in pl.*, territory
- **genus generis** *n.* descent, origin; race, stock; kind, sort
- **labor, labōris** *m.* work; effort, hardship
- **mōs, mōris** *m.* custom practice; *in pl.* (*sometimes*), character
- **nemo, nēminis** *m.* or *f.* no one
- **opus, operis** *n.* work, need
 - **opus est** (idiom) there is need of (+ *abl* or *nom.*)
- **ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis** *f.* oration, speech
 - **ōrātiōnem habēre** (idiom) to make a speech
 - **ōrātor, ōrātōris** *m.* speaker
 - **pectus, pectoris** *n.* chest, breast; heart
- **casus, cāsūs** *m.* fall; occurrence; chance, misfortune

- **quidam, quaedam, quiddam** (indef. pron.) (a) certain person, (a) certain thing
- **quidam, quaedam, quoddam** (indef. adj.) (a) certain

- **oppugnō** (1-tr.) attack
- **servō** (1-tr.) save, preserve
- **stō, stāre, stetī, statum** stand; stand fast, endure

- **dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus** destroy

- **cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum** fall, sink; die
- **nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum** be born
- **nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus** come to know, learn, recognize, *in perfect*, know
 - **cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus** come to know, learn, recognize; *in perfect*, know
- **proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus sum** set out, set forth
- **ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum** use; experience, enjoy (+ *abl.*)

- **perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus** suffer endure; report
- **referō, referre, rettulī, relātus** bring back; report

- **aequus, -a, -um** level, even; equitable, just; calm, tranquil
 - **inīquus, -a, -um** uneven; inequitable, unjust
- **honestus, -a, -um** honorable, respectable

- **medius, -a, -um** middle (of), as *subst.*, midst
- **apud** (prep. + acc.) at, near; at the house of, in the presence of, among
- **contrā** (adv.) face to face; in opposition; in turn
(prep. + acc.) facing, against, contrary to
- **magnopere** (adv.) greatly
- **quīn** (conj.) introduces *Relative Clause of Characteristic*, who/that . . . not (§93)
- **quō** (rel. adv.) to where, whither (§92)
- **satis** or **sat** (indeclinable n. subst.) enough (adv.) enough, sufficiently
- **ubi** (rel. adv.) where (§92)
- **unde** (rel. adv.) from where, whence (§92)

Vocabulary Notes

lĕgātus **lĕgātī** *m.* may refer to a “legate” or “envoy” involved in matters of diplomacy. It may also be used to identify an assistant to an army commander or provincial governor (lieutenant, legate).

nātus, nātī *m.* means “a male having been born” and is a substantive of the perfect passive participle of **nāscor**. Less common is the feminine substantive **nāta** **nātae** *f.*, “daughter.”

dux, ducis *m.* or *f.* may mean a “leader” in the sense of a “guide,” but it is commonly used for a political or military “leader.”

The gender of **finis, finis, -um** is regularly masculine, but in early Latin and in poetry the *singular only* is sometimes treated as feminine. In the plural, **finis** may refer to the “boundary” of a territory or country and, by extension, the “territory” that is enclosed by boundaries.

genus, generis *n.* is derived from the PIE root ***genE-** (give birth, bear). **Genus** may refer to an individual’s “origin” or “birth.” It may refer more broadly to a “race” or “class” of people or things that arise from a single origin (human race, race of the gods, Greek stock). When used of abstract things, it often means “sort” or “kind,” the abstract class to which someone or something belongs.

labor, labōris *m.* means the abstract concept of “work” or “the act of working” (exertion). **Labor** may also mean the “effort” or “hardship” required to accomplish something.

mōs, mōris *m.* means “custom” — an established practice as opposed to an enacted law. The plural **mōres** may mean “customs,” but it may also refer to the collective habits of an individual and thus may be translated “character.”

nēmō, nēminis *m.* or *f.* occurs in the singular only. Although the genitive and ablative singular forms occasionally appear, usually the genitive and ablative singular forms of **nūllus** (**nūllus**, **nūllō**, or **nūllā**) replace the forms of **nēmō** (**nēminis**, **nēmine**). **Nēmō** is formed by the addition of the negative particle **nē-** to the noun **homō**.

opus, operis *n.* may mean something that needs to be done (work [to do], need) or something that has been accomplished ([piece of] work, product, achievement). **Opus** may convey the sense of how much is required to accomplish something (effort), and it is often used for the products of artistic endeavor (poetic work).

Hoc opus perficere non poterit.

He will not be able to complete this work.

Clarissimi opera poetarum.

The works (achievements) of the poets are famous.

The idiom **opus est** most often takes an ablative to express *the thing needed*. This ablative is translated with the English preposition “of.” It is also common for a Dative of Reference to occur with this idiom.

Mihī opus est magna diligentia.

I have need to use great diligence.

I need great diligence.

Less frequently, the thing needed is the Nominative, Subject, and **opus** functions as a Predicate Nominative. A Nominative, Subject occurs most often when the subject is a *neuter pronoun*.

Hoc mihi opus est.

This thing is a need to me.

There is need to me of this thing.

I need this thing.

Rarely **opus est** takes a genitive of the thing needed.

orātiō **orātiōnis** *f.* may mean the abstract notion of “speaking,” the power of “speech,” or a particular “speech” or “oration.”

cāsus, cāsūs *m.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-tus** to a stem of the verb **cadō**. The **-t-** of the suffix assimilated to the **-s-** of the stem **cās-** and was then lost. In addition to its basic meaning

of "fall," *casus* refers to the "occurrence" of an event, usually by chance (accident), which may be positive (fortune) or negative (misfortune). It may also refer to the "situation" that is the result of an occurrence or series of occurrences.

quidam, quaedam, quiddam is an indefinite pronoun formed by the addition of the suffix *-dam* to the relative pronoun *qui, quae, quod*. An indefinite pronoun is a pronoun that does not define or specify the person or thing for which it stands. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING IRREGULAR DECLENSION

... ..
... ..
... ..
... ..
... ..
... ..
... ..

1. The neuter singular nominative and accusative are formed by the addition of *-dam* to *quid*.
2. In the masculine and feminine singular accusative and the masculine, feminine, and neuter plural genitive, the final *-m* changes to an *-n* before *-dam*.

quidam, quaedam, quoddam is an indefinite adjective formed by the addition of the suffix *-dam* to the relative pronoun *qui, quae, quod*. An indefinite adjective is an adjective that does not define or specify the person or thing it modifies. The declension of **quidam, quaedam, quoddam** is identical with that of **quidam, quaedam, quiddam** except in the neuter singular nominative and accusative (cf. **quoddam** with **quiddam**).

Part 1: How to Read a Book

oppugnō oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ob-** to **pugnō**. (For the prefix **ob-** see Appendix P.) Unlike **pugnō**, **oppugnō** is a transitive verb.

11. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 1997; 277: 1001-1005.

stō, stīre, stēl, statum is an irregular intransitive first-conjugation verb. The third principal part exhibits reduplication, and the fourth principal part has a short *o*. In addition to its basic meaning of "stand," stō may also mean "remain standing," "endure," or "last."

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cecidum is an intransitive verb. The third principal part, *cecidī*, exhibits reduplication. In addition to its basic meaning of "fall" or "sink," *cadō* may also mean "cease" (when the subject is winds, noise, etc.) It may also have the extended meaning of "die" or "perish."

nāscor, nāci, nākus sum is an intransitive deponent verb. Compounds of **nāscor** do not exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **NĀSCOR** APPEARS IN READING, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

nōscō, nōscere, nōvi, nōtus is derived from the PIE root *gno- (know). It is an *inchoative* (< inchoā, start) or *incipient* (< incipiō, begin) verb. An inchoative verb indicates that an action is *beginning to occur*. All verbs whose first and second principal parts end in -scō and -scere are in origin inchoative verbs. The basic meaning of nōscō is "begin to know" and thus "learn." The perfect indicative of many inchoative verbs is often equivalent to an English present tense since the perfect tense indicates the *completion* of the action of the verb. Nōvi means "I have learned" and thus "I know." The *pluperfect* forms may be translated as if they were *imperfect*, and the *future perfect* forms as if they were *future*. On occasion, the perfect tense may be translated "have learned" or "learned," but the meaning "know" is more common.

What am I important about? What do I do in the world? (What am I doing?)
 Let's think about subjects Do you know what you learned the most at that city?
 What about right here as urban? And what time? (What time?) (What time?) (What time?)

The present forms of *nōscō* may mean "recognize" or "become acquainted with" a person. The perfect forms may mean "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" a person or an object of study.

Ciceronem nōn nōvī I do not know Cicero (I have not met him).

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *com-* to *nōscō*. (For the prefix *com-* see Appendix P.) It exhibits irregular vowel weakening in the fourth principal part. *Cognōscō* is a strengthened form of *nōscō* with all the same meanings.

proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum is an intransitive third-conjugation deponent verb. In origin an inchoative verb, *proficiscor* means "set out" or "set forth" on a journey or from a certain starting point.

ſit, ſiſ, ſitus sum is an intransitive verb that takes an ablative of the thing used or experienced. The ablative is translated as a direct object in English. Compounds of *ſit* do not exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF *ſit* APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND NUMBER ARE GIVEN.

ſit *ſiſ* *ſitus sum*

ſit *ſiſ* *ſitus sum* *ſit* *ſiſ* *ſitus sum*

perferō, perferre, perſulī, perſulū is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *per-* to *ferō*. (For the prefix *per-* see Appendix P.) *Perferō* regularly means "endure" or "suffer" (hardships, troubles), but it may also mean "report" or "express."

referō, referre, rettulī, relatus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *re-* to *ferō*. (For the prefix *re-* see Appendix P.) Although *referō* may mean "carry back," it most commonly means "report."

From the basic physical meaning of *aequus, -a, -um* (level or even) come its more expanded senses of "fair" or "just" (level in a legal or political context) and "calm" or "tranquil" (i.e., level-headed). *Iniquus, -a, -um* is a compound adjective formed by the addition of the prefix *in-* (not) to *aequus*. (For *in-* see Appendix P.)

honestus, -a, -um is an adjective derived from the noun *honor, honoris m.* "(political) office," "honor," "repute." In the strictest sense *honestus* describes a person who is "honorable" or "respectable" because he has held a public office. *honestus* has a more extended sense of being "morally honorable" or "respectable."

medius, -a, -um expresses the notion of the "middle of" a place by modifying that place. It usually appears before the noun it modifies. As a substantive, *medius* is often translated "midst."

medius *medius* *medius* *medius* *medius* *medius*

medius *medius* *medius* *medius* *medius* *medius*

apud is a preposition that takes the accusative. It may mean "at" or "near" (places), "at the house of," "in the presence of," "among," or "with" (individuals, groups), and "in (the writings of)" (authors, books). Context helps to determine the appropriate translation.

apud *apud* *apud* *apud* *apud* *apud*

apud *apud* *apud* *apud* *apud* *apud*

contra may be an adverb or a preposition that takes the accusative. With verbs expressing standing, seeing, looking, and the like, the adverb usually means "face to face" or "opposite." With verbs of motion, *contra* may mean "against." *contra* may also be used to connect a second thought or opinion that balances or opposes a preceding one (in turn, on the other hand).

contra *contra* *contra* *contra* *contra* *contra*

contra *contra* *contra* *contra* *contra* *contra*

The preposition *contra* has meanings analogous to the meanings of the adverb.

Domum contra templum ponit.

He places [his] house opposite the temple.

Auxilia contra hostem mittimus.

We are sending auxiliary troops *contra* the enemy.

The adverb *magnopere* is in origin the Ablative of Manner *magnō opere*, and it is sometimes written as two words.

satis may be an indeclinable neuter substantive, which is often followed by a Partitive Genitive, or an adverb. The shortened form *sat* is more common in poetry.

Vas agnoscit et ager bonus.

A good field is known for the name of [its] soil.

Vasne pecunie tibi est?

Do you have enough of money, [subject] Partitive Gen.

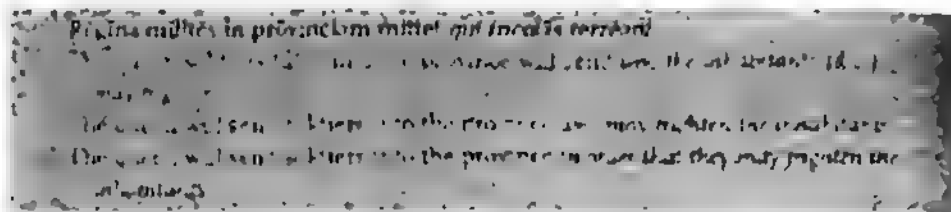
Satisne laboras.

Are you working enough? [adverb]

	Derivatives	Cognates
<i>cadō</i>	<i>cadaver</i> ; <i>cadence</i> ; <i>cascade</i> ; <i>case</i> chance; accident; occasion; deciduous	
<i>finis</i>	<i>define</i> ; <i>final</i> ; <i>fine</i> finish	
<i>genus</i>	<i>genuine</i> ; <i>gender</i> ; <i>genre</i> ; <i>engine</i> ; <i>germ</i> ; <i>genital</i> ; <i>malign</i>	kind; king; genocide; <i>gene</i>
<i>mōs</i>	<i>moral</i> ; <i>morose</i> ; <i>mores</i>	mood
<i>nōscō</i>	<i>notice</i> ; <i>notorious</i> ; <i>notify</i>	know; can, ken; diagnosis; noble
<i>cognōscō</i>	<i>cognition</i> ; <i>recognition</i>	
<i>satis</i>	<i>satisfy</i> ; <i>saturate</i> ; <i>satire</i>	sad
<i>ūtor</i>	<i>use</i> ; <i>utility</i> ; <i>utensil</i>	

§92. Relative Clauses of Purpose

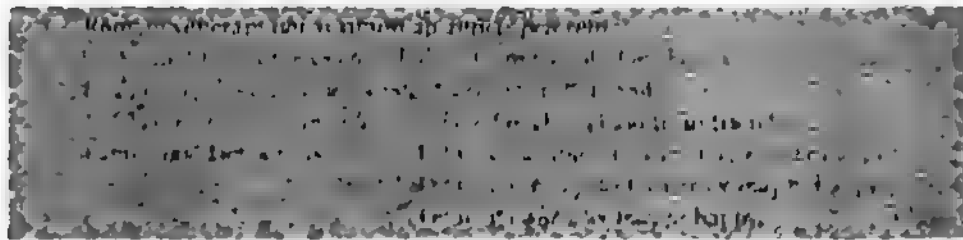
Purpose clauses are regularly introduced by the conjunctions *ut* (in order that) or *ut* (in order that . . . not) (see §83). When a Purpose clause is instead introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb, it is called a **Relative Clause of Purpose**. For example:



OBSERVATIONS

1. A relative pronoun regularly replaces *ut* in introducing a Purpose clause *only when there is a clear antecedent, usually not the subject* in the main clause.
2. When a main clause contains a verb that involves motion (*eo*, *mittit*, *venit*, etc.), a Relative Clause of Purpose often follows.
3. In the sentence above the relative pronoun *qui* makes the closest possible connection in Latin between the subordinate clause and the main clause by referring directly to its antecedent *mittit*. The third English translation (in order that they may . . .) is to be preferred, however, because it most clearly indicates the idea of purpose that the clause expresses.
4. In the sentence above the syntax of *terreant* is present subjunctive, Relative Clause of Purpose, primary sequence.

Certain relative adverbs (*ubi*, where; *unde*, whence, from where; *quō*, whither, to where) may also introduce Relative Clauses of Purpose. For example:



OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence *Rōmam* is the antecedent for the relative adverb *ubi*. The third English translation (in order that there . . . might . . .) is to be preferred. The addition of the English adverb "there" preserves the close connection between the main clause and the subordinate clause that the relative adverb in Latin achieves. The words "in order that . . . might" clearly indicate the idea of purpose that the clause expresses.
2. The syntax of *peterom* in the first sentence is imperfect subjunctive, Relative Clause of Purpose, secondary sequence.
3. In the second sentence the antecedent for the relative adverb *quō* is implied (to a place) but is not expressed.

§93. Relative Clauses of Characteristic

When the verb in a relative clause is in the indicative mood, the relative clause helps make clear *what specific person or thing* is indicated by the antecedent. For example:

Virum qui rem publicam petit nōn laudāmus.

The (specific) man (d.o.) who the republic (d.o.) is (actually) attacking we do not praise.

We do not praise the man who is attacking the republic.

When the verb in a relative clause is in the *subjunctive* rather than the indicative mood, the relative clause may supply information about *what sort of person or thing* is indicated by the antecedent. Such a clause is called a **Relative Clause of Characteristic**.¹ For example:

Virum qui rem publicam petat nōn laudāmus.
A man (d.o.) who the republic (d.o.) (would) attack we do not praise.
We do not praise a man who would attack the republic.
We do not praise the sort of man who attacks the republic.
Virum qui rem publicam petiverit nōn laudāmus.
The (sort of) man (d.o.) who the republic (d.o.) attacked we do not praise.
We do not praise the sort of man who attacked the republic.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The subjunctive mood in Relative Clauses of Characteristic developed from the Potential subjunctive, and it both *generalizes about* and *characterizes* an indefinite antecedent.
2. The *tenses* of the subjunctive verbs in a Relative Clause of Characteristic *follow the rules of sequence*. The syntax of *petat* in the first sentence is present subjunctive, Relative Clause of Characteristic, primary sequence, time subsequent to the main verb. The syntax of *petiverit* in the second sentence is perfect subjunctive, Relative Clause of Characteristic, primary sequence, time prior to the main verb.
3. Unlike Purpose clauses and Indirect Commands, Relative Clauses of Characteristic may use both the *perfect* subjunctive (in primary sequence) and the *pluperfect* subjunctive (in secondary sequence) because the action of a Relative Clause of Characteristic may occur prior to the main verb. Thus in the second sentence above *petiverit* is used to indicate time prior to the main verb and is translated accordingly.
4. When translating a Relative Clause of Characteristic, the formula "the sort of _____ who/that . . . (subjunctive verb translated as indicative)" is to be preferred. When the subjunctive verb is either *present* or *imperfect*, the alternate formula "a/an _____ who/that . . . would (subjunctive verb translated as potential)" may also be used.

Certain formulaic phrases with *indefinite antecedents* regularly introduce Relative Clauses of Characteristic. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING PHRASES:

Quis est qui	Who is there (of the sort) who . . . (would)
Quid est quod	What is there (of the sort) that . . . (would)
Nemo est qui	There is no one (of the sort) who . . . (would)
	(<i>nemo, nemini</i> = no one)
Nil est quod	There is nothing (of the sort) that . . . (would)
Sunt qui	There are people (of the sort) who . . . (would)
Solus est qui	He is the only one (of the sort) who . . . (would)

¹ The Relative Clause of Characteristic is also known as the Generic Relative Clause.

In addition to various unspecified or indefinite antecedents, *any* person or thing may serve as the antecedent for a Relative Clause of Characteristic. For example:

Cicero erat qui vitam pro re publica daret.
Cicero was (a man) who would give (his) life for the republic.
Librum habeo quem ames.
A book (etc.) I have that you would love.
I have a book that you would love.
I have the sort of book that you love.

When the main clause contains an expressed or implied negation, the conjunction *quān* (without its being the case that) may replace a relative pronoun in introducing a Relative Clause of Characteristic. A relative pronoun and the English adverb "not" should be added to the translation of such a clause. For example:

Nemo est qui pro patria pugnet.
There is no one who would not fight for (this) homeland.
Sola erat quān haec intellegeret.
She was the only one of the sons who did not understand these things.

♥ DRILL 92-93 MAY NOW BE DONE.

2. A short vowel *lengthens* before the nominative singular ending of the present active participle (-ns) (e.g., *regēns* < *rege-* + *ns*). However, a long vowel *shortens* before the -nt- at the end of the stem (e.g., *vocant* < *vocā-* + -nt-).
3. The perfect passive participle of intransitive verbs (e.g., *venīō*) may occur only in the impersonal passive construction with a neuter singular ending (e.g., *ventum est*) (see §59).
4. The fourth principal parts of certain intransitive verbs that lack perfect passive participles are future active participles (e.g., *fugitūrus*, about to/going to flee).
5. A long vowel *shortens* before the -nd- at the end of the stem of the future passive participle (e.g., *vocand-* < *vocā-* + -nd-).
6. The future passive participle conveys a sense of obligation or necessity. For example:

<i>oppidum capiendum</i>	the town having to be captured (nom./acc.)
<i>verba audienda</i>	words deserving to be heard (nom./acc.)

Participles of Irregular Verbs

Sum has *only* a future active participle (the fourth principal part), *futūrus*, -a, -um, “about to/going to be.” *possum* has *no* participles.

The present active participle of *eō* is irregular, *iēns*, *euntis* (stem = *eunt-*). The future passive participle of *eō* is also irregular: *eundum*. It is used in the impersonal passive construction only. MEMORIZE THESE IRREGULAR PARTICIPIES. *Eō* forms its future active participle *regularly*: *itūrus*, -a, -um.

The irregular third-conjugation verb *ferō* forms its present active participle *regularly*: *ferēns*, *ferentis*.

The verb *morior* has an *irregular* future active participle: *moritūrus*, -a, -um. MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR PARTICIPLE.

Participles of Deponent and Semideponent Verbs

The participles of deponent and semideponent verbs follow all the same rules of formation that apply to nondeponent verbs. However, deponent and semideponent verbs have the following participles:

Present active participles that are <i>active</i> in both <i>form</i> and <i>meaning</i> .
Perfect passive participles that are <i>passive</i> in form but <i>active</i> in meaning.
Future active participles that are <i>active</i> in both <i>form</i> and <i>meaning</i> .
Future passive participles that are <i>passive</i> in both <i>form</i> and <i>meaning</i> .

The following chart provides an example of the forms and basic translations of the participles of deponent verbs.

	Active	Passive
Present	<i>patiens</i> , enduring	
Perfect		<i>passus</i> , -a, -um, having endured
Future	<i>passurus</i> , -a, -um, about to/going to endure	<i>patendus</i> , -a, -um, having to be/deserving to be endured

§95. Synopsis VI: Indicative, Subjunctive, Participles, Infinitives, and Imperative

At the end of the synopsis is a symbol that indicates the part(s) of the synopsis that follows. The subjunctive and precedes the infinitive and imperative. Here is a model synopsis of *sentiō* in the third-person singular feminine:

OBSERVATIONS

- 1 This synopsis reviews the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative moods, the participle, and the infinitive. When new verbal forms are introduced the synopsis form will expand accordingly.
- 2 In a synopsis basic English translations should be given for indicative, participle, infinitive, and imperative forms.
- 3 Since participles are not *finite* forms, always give the *full nominative singular* no matter what person, number, and gender have been chosen for the indicative and subjunctive forms.

4. Imperatives appear in the second-person singular and plural only. Always give the second-person singular and plural imperative forms no matter what person, number, and gender have been chosen for the indicative and subjunctive forms.

■ DRILL 94–95 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§96. Notes on the Participle: Relative Time; Attributive and Circumstantial Uses

The three tenses of the participle—present, perfect, future—have no absolute time values of their own; rather, they have only *relative time*:

A *present* participle indicates an action that is *simultaneous* with the main verb.

A *perfect* participle indicates an action that is *prior* to the main verb.

A *future* participle indicates an action that is *subsequent* to the main verb.

For example:

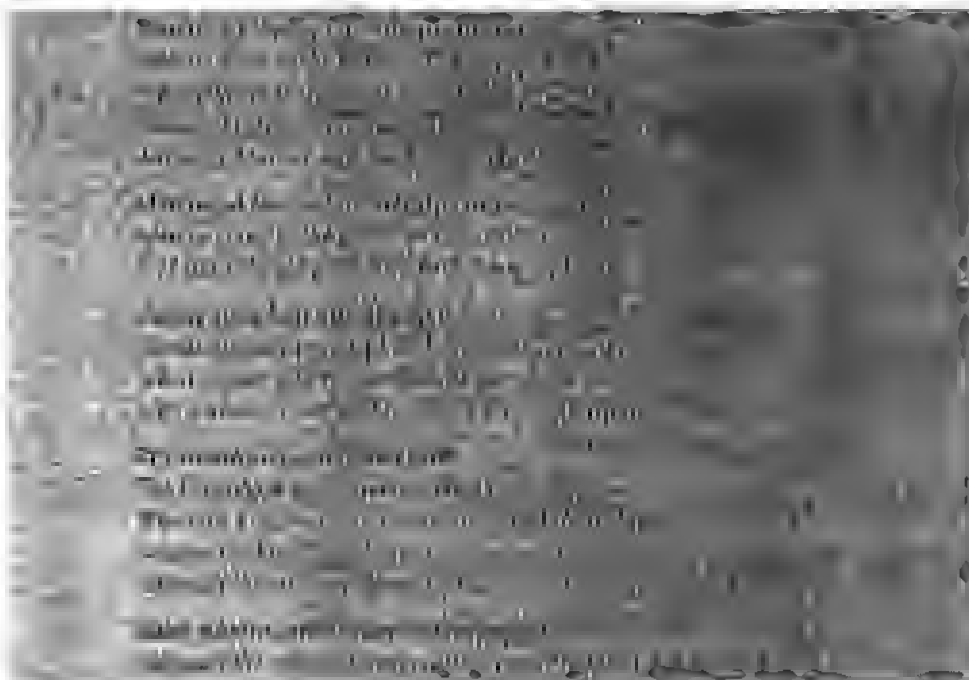
Homines in agris laborantes vidi. (present active participle)
The men [who were] in the field, working, I saw.
I saw the men working in the field.
Mihi de milibus captis dixi. (perfect passive participle)
To me about the [having been] captured soldiers he speaks.
I to speak of me about the captured soldiers.
Rex discessurus armis cepit. (future active participle)
The king, about to depart, took up arms.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence the present active participle *laborantes* indicates an action occurring at the same time as the main verb, *vidi*.
2. In the second sentence the perfect passive participle *captis* indicates an action that occurred before the main verb, *dixi*.
3. In the third sentence the future active participle *discessurus* indicates an action that is to occur after the main verb, *cepit*.
4. Since a participle is a verbal adjective, it usually follows the noun it modifies. Often a participle is separated from its noun by several words in order to enclose a phrase that is syntactically connected to the participle. For example, *laborantes* is separated from *homines* to enclose the prepositional phrase *in agris*.

As in the sentences above, a participle may be used simply to indicate that the noun it modifies has the *attribute* or *quality* described by the participle. Such a use of the participle is called *attributive*. The basic translations supplied for the four Latin participles (_____ing, [having been] _____ed, about to _____, and having to be _____ed) are usually used for translating attributive participles. It is sometimes convenient to translate an attributive participle with a relative clause in English. For example, the last sentence above may be translated "The king *who was about to depart* took up arms." In such a translation care must be taken to show the relative time of the participle to the main verb.

A participle may also be used to describe the *circumstances* under which the action of the main clause occurs. This use of the participle is called **circumstantial**. Often the circumstances described by such a participle may be translated specifically temporal, causal, concessive, or conditional. A phrase containing a circumstantial participle is often (and translated into English) as a subordinate clause introduced by a subordinating conjunction. For example:



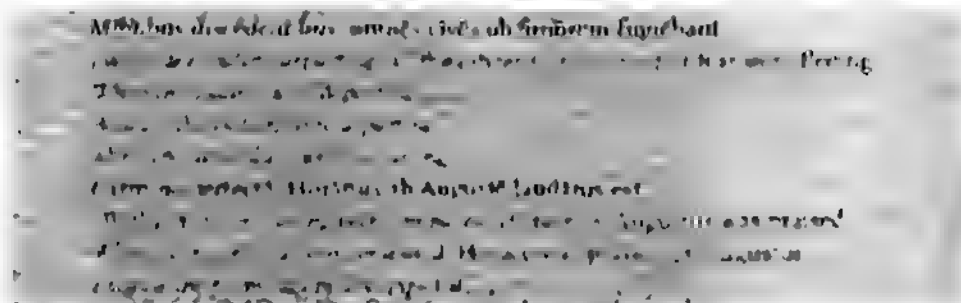
OBSERVATIONS

1. A circumstantial participle may be translated using the basic translation of the participle, but often the full meaning of the participial phrase requires that it be translated as a subordinate clause. When a circumstantial participle is translated as part of a subordinate clause, the participle is translated as a *finite verb*. In such a translation care must be taken to show the relative time of the participle to the main verb.
2. A circumstantial participle with *conditional* force always functions as the *protasis* of a conditional sentence. The main verb is the verb of the *apodosis*, and it provides the only indication of what type of conditional sentence is represented. In the second sentence above, the main verb *interficiātur* (present subjunctive) indicates that the conditional sentence is a Future Less Vivid, and the participle *iēns* is translated accordingly (If . . . should go).
3. The appropriate force of a circumstantial participle (temporal, causal, concessive, or conditional) can usually be determined by *context only*. A circumstantial participle with *concessive* force may be indicated by the presence of the adverb *tamen* (nevertheless) at or near the beginning of the main clause. When *tamen* appears in the main clause, the participle is translated as part of a concessive subordinate clause beginning with the conjunction "although." A circumstantial participle with *conditional* force is often indicated by the presence of a main verb in the *subjunctive*, as in the second sentence above.

☛ DRILL 96 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§97. Ablative Absolute

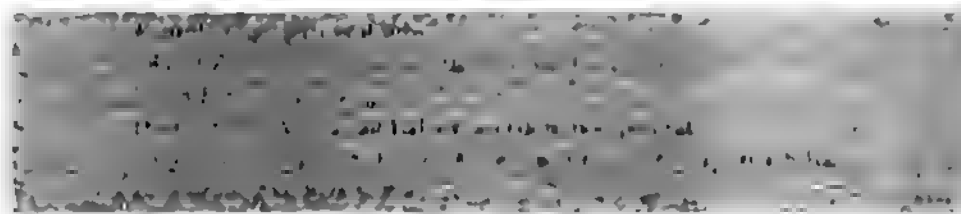
A noun in the ablative case that is accompanied by a circumstantial participle and unconnected in syntax with the rest of the sentence is called an Ablative Absolute (< *ablatus* = having been freed from). For example:



OBSERVATIONS

1. An Ablative Absolute functions as a subordinate clause and is part of a complex sentence. Like all participles, the participle in an Ablative Absolute shows time relative to the main verb. In translations of Ablatives Absolute care must be taken to show the relative time of the participle.
2. An Ablative Absolute is often best translated with a temporal, causal, concessive, or conditional clause.
3. The present active and the perfect passive participles appear most often in Ablatives Absolute.
4. An Ablative Absolute often appears first in a sentence, and several Ablatives Absolute may appear together. The Ablative Absolute allows for the compression of several actions or events into one complex sentence.

Sometimes two nouns (or a noun and an adjective) in the ablative case may form an Ablative Absolute. For example:



OBSERVATION

Since the verb *sum* lacks a present active participle, no participle appears in this type of Ablative Absolute, but the English present participle "being" is supplied as a copulative verb when translating an Ablative Absolute of this type. If the Ablative Absolute is translated as a subordinate clause, a finite form of *sum* is supplied, and care must be taken to show relative time.

☛ DRILL 97 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§98. Active and Passive Periphrastics

A finite, compound verb form that comprises a form of the *future active participle* and a form of *sum* is called an **active periphrastic** (< Greek *periphrasō*, speak around). For example:

Rōmā discessurū sumus.	We are going to depart from Rome.
Rōmā discessurū erāmus.	We were going to depart from Rome.
Rōmā discessurū erimur.	We shall be going to depart from Rome.

OBSERVATIONS

1. An active periphrastic indicates a *future or intended action* (the future active participle) viewed from another point in time (the form of *sum*). The tense and mood of the active periphrastic are identical with the tense and mood of the form of *sum*. For example, *discessurū sumus* is first person plural masculine *present indicative* of the active periphrastic. An active periphrastic may occur in any of the six tenses of the indicative or the four tenses of the subjunctive.
2. The gender and number of the subject determine the ending of the future active participle in an active periphrastic.
3. An active periphrastic is best translated word by word, beginning with the form of *sum*.
4. As in the compound forms of the perfect passive system, the form of *sum* may appear before or after the participle in the active periphrastic. For example, *captūrus est* and *est captūrus* are equally correct.

A finite, compound verb form that comprises a form of the *future passive participle* and a form of *sum* is called a **passive periphrastic**. For example:

Civēs regendī sunt.	The citizens are having to be ruled.
	The citizens must be ruled.
	The citizens have to be ruled.
Civēs regendī erant.	The citizens were having to be ruled.
	The citizens had to be ruled.
Civēs regendī erunt.	The citizens will be having to be ruled.
	The citizens will have to be ruled.

OBSERVATIONS

1. A passive periphrastic indicates an action that is viewed as obligatory (the future passive participle) at a certain point in time (the form of *sum*). The tense and mood of the passive periphrastic are identical with the tense and mood of the form of *sum*. For example, *regendī erant* is third person plural masculine *imperfect indicative* of the passive periphrastic. A passive periphrastic may occur in any of the six tenses of the indicative or the four tenses of the subjunctive.
2. The gender and number of the subject determine the ending of the future passive participle in a passive periphrastic.
3. Although passive periphrastics may be translated word by word, the alternate translations given above (*must*, *have to*, *had to*, *will have to*) are to be preferred. Note that "must" can be used *only* for the present indicative of the passive periphrastic.
4. As in the compound forms of the perfect passive system, the form of *sum* may appear before or after the participle in the passive periphrastic. For example, *capīendus est* and *est capīendus* are equally correct.

An active or passive periphrastic may appear wherever any finite verb form may be used. For example:

Miles, si hostem capiat, laudandus sit.
 The soldier, if the enemy (d.o.) he should capture, *would be having to be praised.*
 If the soldier should capture the enemy, *he would have to be praised.*

§99. Dative of Agent with the Passive Periphrastic

A noun in the dative case is usually used with a passive periphrastic to express the *agent* or *person by whom* the action of the verb must be done. Such a dative is called the **Dative of Agent with the passive periphrastic**. For example:

Carmen mihi scribendum est. A poem *by me* must be written.
 A poem must be written *by me.*

The syntax of the italicized word (*mihi*) is **Dative of Agent with the passive periphrastic**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Dative of Agent with the passive periphrastic is regularly used *instead of* an Ablative of Personal Agent when the verb is a passive periphrastic.⁴
2. Occasionally the Ablative of Personal Agent may be used with the passive periphrastic for the sake of clarity. For example,

Carmen tibi ā mē scribendum est. A poem must be written for *you by me.*

In this sentence the Ablative of Personal Agent (*ā mē*) is used to avoid the confusion that might arise if there were two datives in the same sentence.

☛ DRILL 98-99 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§100. Genitive of Description

When a noun in the genitive case *modified by an adjective* is used to *describe* another noun, it is called the **Genitive of Description**. For example:

Romulus, vir magnae diligentiae, multa perfecit.
 Romulus, a man of *great diligence*, accomplished many things.

The syntax of the italicized word (*diligentiae*) is **Genitive of Description**.

4. The Dative of Agent may be derived from the Dative of the Possessor. Thus, *Carmen mihi scribendum est* may be understood to mean "I have a poem having to be written." Therefore, "A poem must be written *by me*."

§101. Ablative of Description

When a noun in the ablative case *modified by an adjective* is used to *describe* another noun, it is called the **Ablative of Description**. For example:

Solus cum multis hostibus pugnabat. Erat enim magna virtūte.
 He alone with many enemies was fighting. For he was of (with) great courage.
 He alone was fighting with many enemies. For he was of great courage.

The syntax of the italicized word (*virtūte*) is **Ablative of Description**.

OBSERVATION

Like Latin, English attaches some descriptions with “of” and some with “with.” Compare, for example, the phrases “men of great courage” and “men with blue eyes.” English and Latin usages do not always coincide; therefore, idiomatic English may require “of” (rather than with) in the translation of an Ablative of Description.

The noun-adjective phrases that make up Genitives or Ablatives of Description function *adjectivally* in that they *define* or *limit* another noun. The Genitive of Description is thus an extension of the basic function of the genitive case. The Ablative of Description derives from that case’s associative function since an Ablative of Description is an *accompanying* feature of the noun it describes. Although some kinds of descriptions are limited to the genitive (size, number) and some to the ablative (qualities of the body), in many expressions the Genitive and Ablative of Description appear to have converged in use and meaning during the classical period.

§102. Ablative of Origin

When the ablative case, with or without the preposition *ē/ex* or *de*, reports *parentage* or *ancestry*, it is called the **Ablative of Origin**. For example:

Aeneas (ē) deā nātus est. Aeneas from a goddess was born.
 (nascor, nasci, natus sum be born) Aeneas was born from a goddess.

The syntax of the italicized word (*deā*) is **Ablative of Origin**. The Ablative of Origin is a particular variety of the Ablative of Separation (see §54).

☛ DRILL 99–102 MAY NOW BE DONE.

Short Readings

1. A proverbial utterance

dictum sapienti sat est. (PLAUTUS, *PERSA* 729, TERENCE, *PHORMIO* 541)

sapiēns, sapientis sensible, wise

2. An exchange of pleasantries between two characters

Callicles Ehō tū, tua uxor, quid* agit? *Megaronides*. Immortālis est:

vīvit victūraque est. (PLAUTUS, *TRINUMMUS* 55–56)

*quid, here, how

ehō (interj.) used to attract attention, hey

immortālis, immortale immortal

uxor, uxoris f. wife

3. A fragment from Ennius cited by Cicero for its brevity and truth

mōribus antiquis rēs stat Rōmāna virisque. (ENNIUS, *ANNALIS* V 156)

4. An alliterative line from Ennius

ōrātor sine pāce redit rēgīque refert rem. (ENNIUS, *ANNALIS* VI.202)

5. The speaker of the prologue of the play generalizes about originality.

nūllumst iam dictum quod nō sit dictum prius. (TERENCE, *EUNUCHUS* 41)

prius (adv.) earlier, before

6. A fragment from the comic poet Lucilius about the relation between work and reward

hunc labōrem sumās laudem quī tibi ac fructum ferat. (LUCILIUS, *SATURAE* frag. 620)

fructus, fructūs m. profit, benefit, advantage

laus, laudis f. praise

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take up, seize; take on

7. The character Thyestes speaks in a fragment of a Greek tragedy

vigilandum est semper; multae insidiae sunt bonis. (ACCIIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE* frag. 214)

vigilō (1-intr.) stay awake; be watchful, remain vigilant

8. In arguing that Pompey be given special command in the East, Cicero makes a transition to the next part of his argument.

quoniam dē genere bellī dīxī, nunc dē magnitūdine pauca dīcam. (CICERO, *PRO LEGE MANILIA* 20)

magnitūdō, magnitūdinis f. size, magnitude

9. Cicero asks Catiline a rhetorical question.

quid est enim, Catilīna, quod tē iam in hāc urbe dēlectāre possit, in quā nēmō est,
extrā istam coniūrātiōnem perditōrum hominum, quī tē nōn metuat, nēmō quī nōn
ōderit? (CICERO, *IN CATILINAM* I 13)

coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis *f.* conspiracy
dēlectō (1-tr.) delight, please, charm
extrā (prep + acc) outside
metuō, metuere, metuī, — fear dread
perditus, -a, -um lost, desperate, degenerate

10. Cicero addresses Catiline directly.

ēgredere ex urbe, Catilīna liberā rem pūblicam metu; in exsilium, sī hanc vōcem
exspectas, proficiscere (CICERO, *IN CATILINAM* I 20)

ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum go out, depart
ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) wait for, await, expect

11. Cicero begins the conclusion of the defense of his client Caelius

cōservāte igitur rei pūblīcae, iūdicēs, civem bonārum artium, bonārum partium,
bonōrum virōrum. (CICERO, *PRO CAELIO* 77)

cōservō (con- + servō) (1-tr.) keep from danger, save, preserve
igitur (postpositive conj.) therefore
iūdex, iudicis *m.* juror, judge

12. Cicero reflects on a difference between the state and mankind.

itaque nullus interitus est rei pūblīcae nātūrālis ut hominis, in quō mors nōn
modo* necessariā est, vērū etiam optanda persaepe. (CICERO, *DE RE PUBLICA*
I.I.34, FRAG. 2)

*nōn modo = nōn solum
interitus, interitūs *m.* death, demise
itaque (conj) and so, accordingly

nātūrālis, nātūrāle natural
necessārius, -a, -um necessary
persaepe (adv) very often

13. A definition of law

lēx est ratiō summa insita in nātūrā, quae iubet ea quae facienda sunt, prohibetque
contrāria. (CICERO, *DE LEGIBUS* I.18)

contrārius, -a, -um opposite, contrary
insitus, -a, -um inborn
prohibeo (prō- + habeo), prohibēre, prohibui, prohibitus prevent; prohibit, forbid
ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason, rationale
summus, -a, -um highest

14. Cicero comments on the fate of the venerable Cato in the contemporary world.

Catōnem vērō quis nostrōrum oratōrum, quī quidem nunc sunt, legit² aut quis
nōvit omnīnō² at quem virum,* dī bonī! mitto¹ civem aut senātorem aut im-
peratōrem: oratōrem enim hōc locō quaerimus [†] (Cicero, *Brutus* 65)

*quem virum, *Accusative of Exclamation*, what
a man

at (conj.) but

imperator, imperatōris *m.* commander, general

[†]mittō, *here*, send away, dismiss

senātor, senātōris *m.* senator

[‡]quaerō, *here*, inquire into, examine, consider

15. While pleading in court before Caesar on behalf of a Roman ally, Cicero praises Caesar for his temperate behavior in the wake of his victory over Pompey.

quae semper in civīlī victoriā sēnsimus, ea tē victōre nōn vidimus. sōlus, inquam,
es, C. Caesar, cuius in victoria ceciderit nemo nisi armātus. (CICERO, *PRO RĒGE*
DEGIARO 32)

armātus, armātī *m.* armed man, soldier

civīlis, civīle *of or connected with citizens, civil; resulting from civil war*

inquam (defective verb) say; inquam = *1st sing. pres. act. indic.*

victor, victōris *m.* conqueror, victor

victōria, victōriae *f.* victory

16. Laelius describes a great friendship with Scipio.

equidem ex omnibus rebus, quas mihi aut fortuna aut natura tribuit, nihil habeo,
quod cum amicitia Scipiōnis possim comparāre. (CICERO, *DE AMICITIĀ* 103)

comparō (1-tr.) prepare, get together, compare

Scipiō, Scipiōnis *m.* (P.) Scipio (Africanus Aemilianus) (consul 147, 134)

tribuo, tribuere, tribui, tributus grant, bestow, assign

17. Cicero expresses his opinion on the only legitimate purpose for war.

quārē suscipienda quidem bella sunt ob eam causam, ut sine iniuriā in pāce
vivātur. (CICERO, *DE OFFICIIS* I.35)

iniuria, iniuriāe *f.* injustice, injury

suscipio (sub- + capio) undertake, venture upon

18. Cicero notes that only one group of Romans was captured at the Battle of Cannae.

octo hominum millia tenebat Hannibal, nōn quos in aciē cepisset, aut quī periculō
mortis diffūgissent, sed quī relictī* in castris fuissent* ā Paulō et ā Varrōne
consulibus. (CICERO, *DE OFFICIIS* III.114)

*relictī . . . fuissent = relictī . . . essent

millia = milia

castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (military) encampment,
camp

Paulus, Paulī *m.* (L. Aemilius) Paulus (consul
216) leader at the battle of Cannae

diffugio (dis- + fugio) run away, flee in several
directions, scatter

Varrō, Varrōnis *m.* (C. Terentius) Varro (consul
216), leader at the battle of Cannae

19. Cicero compares Marc Antony to Rome's ancient enemy Hannibal

oppugnat* D. Brūtum, imperatorem, consulem designatum, civem nōn sibi, sed
nōbis et rei pūblicae nātum. ergō Hannibal hostis, cīvis Antōnius? quid ille fēcit
hostiliter quod hic nōn aut fēcerit aut faciat aut mōliātur et cōgitet?

(CICERO, PHILIPPICS V 24–25)

*oppugnat, subject is Antony

D. Brūtus, D. Brūtī m. D. Brutus, brother of M.
Brutus

designātus, -a, -um elect, appointed (but not yet
installed)

ergō (adv.) therefore

hostiliter (adv.) in the manner of an enemy

imperator, imperatoris m. commander, general

mōlior, mōliū, mōlitus sum strive to bring
about, plan

20. In May 49 B.C.E., after the outbreak of the civil war, Cicero writes despairingly to his friend
Ser. Sulpicius Rufus about the state of Rome.

vidēs . . . urbem sine lēgibus, sine iūdiiciis, sine iūre, sine fide relictam direptioni
et incendis, itaque mihi venīre in mentem nihil potest nōn modo quod spēm
sed vix iam quod audeam optāre. (CICERO, AD FAMILIARĒS IV.1.2)

direptiō, direptionis f. plundering, pillage

incendium, incendii n. fire

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly

iūdicium iūdicii n. judgment, opinion; trial

nōn modo = nōn solum

spēm (1-tr.) hope (for)

vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly

21. Cicero begins a letter to his friend Atticus in an inauspicious fashion.

erat autem nihil novī quod aut scriberem aut ex tē quaererem.

(CICERO, AD ATTICUM XV.1.1)

22. In a letter written in early 54 B.C.E. Cicero comments on the quality of Lucretius's poetry.

Lucrētī poēmata, ut scribis, ita sunt, multis lūminibus ingeni, multae tamen artis.

(CICERO, AD QUINTUM FRATREM II.10.3)

Lucrētius, Lucrētī m. Lucretius (94?–55? B.C.E.), author of the poem *De Rerum Natura*

lūmen, lūminis n. light; illumination; ray of light

poēma, poēmatīs n. poem, in pl., poetry

23. Caesar describes what the Romans did after the Germans' formation repelled their assault.

reperi sunt complārēs nostrī qui in phalangem insilirent et scūta manibus re-
vellerent et desuper vulnerarent. (CICERO, DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ I.52)

complures, complura or complūria several, very
many

desuper (adv.) from above

insiliō, insilire, insilui. — jump (on), leap (on)

phalanx, phalangis f. phalanx, a close formation
of troops

reperiō, reperire, repperi, repertus find, discover
revellō, revellere, revelli, revulsus tear, tear away

scūtum, scūti n. shield

vulnerō (1-tr.) wound

24. The deaths of brave centurions change the course of an apparently hopeless battle.

militum pars hōrum* virtūte submōtis hostibus praeter spem incolumis in castra
pervēnit, pars ā barbarīs circumventa perit. (CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ* VI 40)

*hōrum refers to the dead centurions.

barbarus barbari *m.* foreigner, barbarian

castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (military) encampment,
camp

circumvenio (circum- + venio) surround

incolumis, incolume unharmed, safe

pereō (per- + eō), perire, perii, peritūrus pass
away, be destroyed; perish, die

perveniō (per- + veniō) come through, arrive

praeter (prep. + acc.) beyond

submoveō (sub- + moveō) move from an
occupied position, drive off

25. Caesar describes his disposition of troops.

C. Fabium legātum cum legiōnibus duābus castris praesidiō relinquit.*

(CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ* VII.40)

*relinquit, subject is Caesar

castra castrōrum *n. pl.* (military) encampment, camp

C. Fabius C. Fabi *m.* C. Fabius

legiō, legiōnis *f.* legion

praesidium, praesidiū *n.* guard, garrison

26. In his monograph on the conspiracy of Catiline, the historian introduces Catiline.

L. Catilina, nōbili genere nātus, fuit magnā vi et animi et corporis, sed ingeniō
malo pravōque. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 5)

nōbilis, nōbile noble

prāvus, -a, -um twisted, corrupt, perverse

27. The historian describes the reaction to Cato's speech advocating harsh punishment of the
Catilinarian conspirators

postquam Catō adsēdit, cōsulāres omnēs itemque senātūs magna pars senten-
tiam eius laudant, virtūtem animi ad caelum ferunt, alii aliōs increpantēs timidōs
vocant. Catō clārus atque magnus habētur. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 53)

adsidō, adsidere, adsēdi, — sit down take one's seat

cōsulāris, cōsulāris, -ium *m.* ex-consul

increpō increpāre, increpui, increpitus make a noise, roar; reproach, upbraid

item (adv.) similarly, in turn, likewise

timidus, -a, -um fearful, cowardly

28. A Roman proverb

Amōri finem tempus, non animus facit. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* A42)

29. The severed head of Orpheus still calls for his wife in the underworld.

. . . Eurydicēn vōx ipsa et frīgida lingua

ā miseram Eurydicen! animā fugiente vocābat;

Eurydicēn tōtō referēbant flūmine rīpae. (VERGIL, *GEORGICS* IV 525–27)

ā (interj.) ah!

Eurydicē, Eurydicēs *f.* Eurydice, wife of Orpheus;

Eurydicēn = *acc. sing.*

flūmen, fluminis *n.* river stream

frīgīdus, -a, -um cold, icy

lingua, linguae *f.* tongue

rīpa, rīpae *f.* (river) bank

30. As Troy falls, the ghost of Hector speaks to Aeneas in a dream.

“heu, fuge, nāte deā, tēque hīs,” ait, “ēripe flammīs.” (VERGIL, *AENEID* II.289)

aiō (defective verb) say, ait = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*

ēripīō, ēripere, ēripui, ēreptus tear away, snatch away

flamma, flammæ *f.* flame

31. As the battle turns, Turnus encourages himself.

audentis Fortūna iuvat. . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* X.284)

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtus help, assist, aid

32. The poet comments on Turnus's exultation in victory.

nescia mēns hominum fātī sortisque futurae

et servāre modum rebus sublata secundis! (VERGIL, *AENEID* X.501–2)

nescius, -a, -um not knowing, unaware (+ gen.), not knowing how (+inf.)

secundus, -a, -um favorable

sors, sortis, -ium *f.* lot, portion; destiny

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus lift, raise; take away, carry off

33. Aeneas addresses his son Ascanius.

disce, puer, virtūtem ex me verumque laborem,

fortunam ex aliis. . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* XII.435–36)

discō, discere, didici, — learn

34. The poet addresses his patron Maecenas.

. . . magnum hoc ego ducō,

quod* placuī tibi, quī turpī sēcernis honestum

nōn patre praeclārō, sed vitā et pectore pūrō. (HORACE, *SERMONES* I.6.62–64)

*quod, *here* (conj.) the fact that

praeclārus, -a, -um very famous

purus, -a, -um pure

sēcernō, sēcernere, sēcervī, sēcētus separate, distinguish

turpis, turpe foul, ugly; base, shameful

35. The poet warns the would be writer.

tū nihil invitā dicēs faciēsve Minerva. (HORACE, *ARS POETICA* 385)

invītus, -a, -um unwilling

-ve (enclitic conj.) or

36. The poet comments on the nature of love.

errat qui finem vesani quaerit amoris.

vērus amor nūllum nōvit habēre modum. (PROPERTIUS II 15 29–30)

vēsānus, -a, -um frenzied, mad, insane

37. The poet summarizes his view of one part of human nature.

singula nē referam, nīl nōn mortāle tenēmus

pectoris exceptīs ingenūque bonīs. (OVID, *TRISTIA* III.7 43–44)

excipiō (ex- + capiō) take out; exclude

mortālis, mortāle mortal

singulū, -ae, -a individual, single, one at a time

38. The historian describes the distribution of responsibilities by the senate after an embassy to the Latin tribe of the Aequi fails

Rōmam ut rediēre lēgātī, senatus iussit alterum cōsulem contrā Gracchum in Algidum exercitum dūcere, alterī populātiōnem finium Aequorum prōvinciam^a

dedit. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* III.25.9)

^aprōvincia, *here*, special assignment or task

Aequi, Aequorum *m. pl.* (the) Aequi, an ancient people of Latium

Algidus, Algidi *m.* Algidus, a mountain in Latium

Gracchus, Gracchi *m.* Gracchus

populātiō, populātiōnis *f.* plundering

39. The historian summarizes the situation on the Roman side after the disastrous defeat at Cannae.

ad Cannās fugientem cōsulem vix quīquāgintā secūtī sunt, alterius morientis prope tōtus exercitus fuit. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XXII.50.3)

Cannae, Cannārum *f. pl.* Cannae, a village in southeast Italy, site of Hannibal's greatest victory

prope (adv.) nearly, almost

vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly

40. The historian's pithy description of Sulla

... consulatum iniērunt Q. Pompeius et L. Cornelius Sulla, vir qui neque ad*
finem victōriae satis laudārī neque post victōriam abundē vituperārī potest.

(VELLEIUS PATERCULUS, *HISTORIA RŌMĀNA* II.17)

*ad, *here*, up to, until

abundē (adv.) amply, fully

ineō (in- + eō), inire, inīī or inīvi, initus enter

victōria, victōriae *f.* victory

vituperō (1-tr.) find fault with, criticize

41. The poet raises the question of how to judge whether Pompey or Caesar more justly went to war.

victrix causa deis placuit, sed victa Catōnī. (LUCAN, *BELLUM CIVILE* I.128)

deīs = dīs

victrix, victricis victorious

42. The poet offers a comment on loyalty.

... stat nūlla diū mortālībus usquam,

Fortuna titubante, fides. ... (SILIUS ITALICUS, *PŪNICA* XI.3–4)

diū (adv.) for a long time

mortālis, mortāle mortal

titubo (1-intr.) totter stagger, falter

usquam (adv.) anywhere

43. The historian offers an explanation of the emperor Domitian's hatred of the general Agricola.

proprium hūmānī ingenī est ōdisse quem laeseris. (TACITUS, *DE VITA AGRICOLAE* 42)

hūmānus, -a, -um human

laedo, laedere, laesi, laesus injure, harm

proprius, -a, -um one's own; peculiar (to), characteristic (of) (+ gen.)

44. The biographer reports what participants in a mock sea battle said to Claudius before commencing

havē imperātor, moritūri tē salūtant! (Suetonius, *VITA CLAUDII* 21)

havē greetings! hail!

imperātor, imperātoris *m.* commander, general

salūtō (1 tr.) greet, hail, salute

Longer Readings

1. Plautus, *Miles Gloriosus* 33–35

In an aside to the audience the parasite Artotrogus explains why he is forced to cater to the ego of Pyrgopolynices, no matter how distasteful.

Artotrogus. venter creat omnis hāsce aerumnās: auribus

peraudienda sunt* nē dentēs dentiant,

et adsentandumst quidquid hic mentibitur.

* peraudienda sunt, subject is the boasts of

Pyrgopolynices

adsentor (1-tr.) agree, assent

aerumna, aerumnae f. task, trouble affliction

auris, auris, -ium f. ear

creō (1-tr.) create, conceive

dēns, dentis, -ium m. tooth

dentio, dentire, — cut teeth, grow longer

hāsce = intensive form of hās

mentior, mentiri, mentitus sum lie, tell a lie;

mentibitur 3rd sing. fut. act. indic

peraudiō (per- + audiō) listen to the end

quidquid = neut. sing. acc. of indef. rel. pron.

whatever

venter, ventris m. belly, stomach

Titus Maccius Plautus (ca. 255–184 B.C.E.) was born in north-central Italy. He is the most well-known and successful of Roman comic writers, and twenty of his plays survive. Plautus is renowned for his explosive comic sensibility and verbal creativity, and his plays are an important source of information about living, spoken Latin. Ellipsis, parataxis, colloquialisms, and unusual syntax and word choice abound in Plautus's plays, which are for the most part romantic comedies inhabited by stock characters.

The *Miles Gloriosus* (Braggart Soldier) is considered one of Plautus's finest comedies. Its plot centers on a clever slave (Palaestrio) helping his young master secure the girl of his dreams, but the play also features a host of other memorable characters, including the swaggering, self-important, young soldier, Pyrgopolynices (Great Tower-Taker) and a clever sycophant, Artotrogus (Bread Eater).

2. Plautus, *Miles Gloriosus* 42–46

Artotrogus has brought out a make-believe record book of Pyrgopolynices' make-believe victories. Pyrgopolynices asks to be reminded of his military greatness.

Pyrgopolynices. ecquid meministi? *Artotrogus.* meminī centum in Ciliciā

et quinquāgintā, centum in Scytholatrōniā,

trīgintā Sardōs, sexāgintā Macedones

sunt hominēs quōs tū occidisti unō diē.

45

Pyrgo. Quanta istaec hominum summast? *Arto.* septem milia.

Cilicia, Ciliciae f. Cilicia, a country in eastern

Asia Minor

ecquid = neut. sing. acc. of indef. pron., anything

istaec = archaic form of ista

Macedones, Macedonum m. pl. Macedonians

occidō, occidere, occidit, occisus kill, slaughter

quantus, -a, -um how much, how great

Sardī, Sardōrum m. pl. Sardinians

*Scytholatrōnia, *Scytholatrōniae f. Scythuan-

Thief-Land

summa, summae f. sum, total

3. Ennius, *Annals* VIII.248–51

The poet describes what happens when news of battle is proclaimed.

pellitur ē mediō sapientia, vī geritur rēs;
 spernitur orātor bonus, horridus miles amātur;
 haud doctīs dictīs certantēs, sed maledictīs
 miscent inter sēs inimiciās agitantēs.

agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion

certō (1-intr.) struggle, contend, strive

doctus, -a, -um learned, erudite

haud (adv.) not at all, by no means

horridus, -a, -um rough, wild; horrible

maledictum, **maledicti** *n.* insult taunt

misceō, **miscēre**, **miscui**, **mixtus** mix, stir up,
 produce

spernō, **spernere**, **sprēvi**, **sprētus** scorn, reject

4. Cicero, *In Catilinam* II 1

The opening of Cicero's second speech against Catiline

Tandem aliquandō, Quintēs, L. Catilinam, furem audacia, scelus anhelantem, pestem patriae nefariē mōlientem, vōbis atque huic urbi ferrō flammāque minitantem ex urbe vel ēiēcimus vel ēmīsīmus vel ipsum ēgredientem verbis prōsecūsumus. abiit, excessit, ēvāsīt, ērūpīt. nulla iam perniciēs ā mōnstrō illō atque prōdigio moenibus ipsis intrā moenia comparābitur. atque hunc quidem ūnum huius bellī domesticī ducem sine contrōversia vīcimus, nōn enim iam inter latera nostra sica illa versābitur, nōn in campō, nōn in forō, nōn in cūnā, nōn dēnque intrā domesticōs parietēs pertimēscēmus. locō ille mōtus est, cum* est ex urbe depulsus. palam iam cum hoste, nullō impediēte, bellum iustum gerēmus. sine dubiō perdidimus hominem magnificēque vīcimus, cum* illum ex occultis insidiis in apertum latrōcinium coniēcimus.

*cum, here (conj.) when

aliquandō (adv.) sometimes, occasionally; at (long) last (often coup.ed with tandem to express finality)

anhelō (1-tr.) breathe out

apertus, -a, -um open

audācia, audāciae f. boldness, recklessness

campus, campī m. plain; here, sc. Martius, plain of Mars

comparō (1-tr.) prepare, get together; devise
coniciō, conicere, coniēcī, coniectus throw (together), cast, bring

contrōversia contrōversiae f. dispute, controversy

cūria, cūriae f. (the) Curia, (the) senate house

dēnique (adv.) finally, at last

dēpellō (dē- + pellō), dēpellere, dēpulī, dēpulsus drive away

domesticus, -a, -um of or belonging to the house personal, domestic

dubium, dubiū n. doubt

ēgredior ēgredi, ēgressus sum go out, depart

ēiciō, ēicere ēiēcī, ēiectus throw out

ēmīttō (ē- + mittō) send out

ērumpō, ērumpere ērūpī, ēruptus break out, burst forth

ēvādō, ēvādere, ēvāsī, ēvāsus go out, escape

excēdō (ex- + cēdō) go out, depart

flamma, flammae f. flame

furō, furere, —, — be crazy; rage, rave

impediō, impedire, impedivī or impedī, impeditus obstruct, hinder, impede

intrā (prep. + acc.) within

iustus, -a, -um just, fair, right

latrōcinium, latrōcinii n. robbery; criminality

latus, lateris n. side, flank

magnificē (adv.) splendidly, excellently

minitor (1 intr.) threaten (+ dat.)

mōlior, mōliī, mōlitus sum plan

mōnstrum, mōnstri n. omen, portent monster

nefariē (adv.) unspeakably, wickedly

occultus, -a, -um hidden, secret

palam (adv.) openly, publicly

pariēs, parietis m. wall (of a house)

perdō (per- + dō) lose; destroy

perniciēs, perneciē f. destruction, ruin disaster

pertimēscō, pertimēscere, pertimui, — become very afraid, take fright

pestis, pestis, -ium f. plague, destruction ruin

prōdigium, prōdigii n. unnatural event, prodigy; creature, monstrosity

prōsequor (prō- + sequor) accompany, escort

Quintēs, Quintum m. pl. Quintes, the name for

Roman citizens in their public capacity

scelus, sceleris n. wicked deed, crime; villainy

sica, sicae f. dagger

vel (conj.) or, vel ... vel ... either ... or ...

versō (1-tr.) twist

The *Oratio Secunda in Catilinam* was delivered on 9 November 63 B.C.E., one day after the first speech and immediately after Catiline's departure from the city. This second speech was delivered before the people.

5. Cicero, *De Legibus* III.1

An exchange between Marcus (Tullius Cicero) and Atticus at the beginning of the third book of Cicero's *De Legibus*, in which he will discuss the magistrates.

Marcus. Sequar igitur, ut institui, divinum illum virum . . .

Atticus. Platōnem videlicet dācis.

M. Istum ipsum, Attice.

A. Tu vero eum nec nimis valdē umquam nec nimis saepe laudāveris; nam hoc mihi etiam nostrī illi, quī nēminem nisi suum laudārī volunt, concēdunt . . .

M. Bene hercle faciunt.

Atticus, *Atticō m.* (T. Pomponius) Atticus, friend of Cicero

concēdo (con- + cēdō) (tr.) concede, grant

igitur (postpositive conj.) therefore

institūō, instituere, institui, institutus set up, establish; set to work (on), start

nimis (adv.) too

Platō, Platōnis m. Plato

videlicet (adv.) plainly, of course

volō, velle, volui, — be willing, want, wish;

volunt = 3rd pl. pres. act. indic.

The *De Legibus* may not have been published in Cicero's lifetime. Written in the last years of Cicero's life, the *De Legibus* is a philosophical dialogue between Cicero, his brother Quintus, and his friend Atticus. Only three books of the *De Legibus* have survived (with fragments of two others). The dialogue is inspired by Plato's dialogues (in particular the *Phaedrus* and the *Laws*), and the topics discussed are the nature of law and the best regime.

6. Cicero, *Paradoxa Stoicōrum* 5.36

A passage from Cicero's description of the truly free man

an ille mihi liber, cui mulier imperat, cui lēgēs impōnit, praescribit, iubet, vetat quod vidētur^a* quī nihil imperanti negāre potest, nihil recusāre audet? poscit, dandum est; vocat, veniendum est; ēicit, abeundum; minātur, extimēscendum.

^avidētur, here, seems best

an (conj.) introduces an indignant or surprised question, expecting a negative answer, can it really be that

ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus throw out

extimēscō, extimēscere, extimui, — take fright, be scared

impōnō (in- + pōnō) place, impose (acc.) upon (dat.)

minor (1 intr.) threaten

mulier, mulieris f. woman

negō (1-tr.) deny, refuse

poscō, poscere, poposci, — demand

praescribō (prae- + scribō) prescribe

recūsō (1-tr.) refuse, reject, oppose

vetō, vetāre, vetui, vetitus forbid

7. Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputatiōnēs* II.65

A reflection on the causes of human responses to perilous situations

saepe enim multī, quī aut propter victōriae cupiditatem aut propter glōriae aut etiam ut ius suum et libertatem tenērent, volnera excēperunt fortiter et tulerunt; idem omissā contentiōne dōlōrem morbi ferre nōn possunt; neque enim illum, quem facile tulerant, ratiōne aut sapientiā tulerant, sed studiō potius et glōria.

contentiō, contentiōnis *f.* tension; effort; rivalry, competition
 cupiditas, cupiditatis *f.* desire
 dolor, doloris *m.* grief sorrow, pain
 excipio (ex + capio) take out, receive, absorb, sustain

morbus, morbi *m.* disease, illness
 omitto (ob- + mitto) discontinue, leave off
 potius (adv.) rather
 ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; reasoning
 victōria, victōriae *f.* victory
 vulnus (= vulnus) vulneris *m.* wound

8. Cicero, *De Naturā Deōrum* II.140

In speaking of the wonders of the human body and nature's miraculous contribution to it, the character Balbus, recalling Aristotle, attributes to a god one particular human attribute and tells how it sets humans apart from other animals.

quī* primum† eōs humō excitātōs celsōs et ērectōs cōstituit, ut deōrum cognitiōnem caelum intuentēs capere possent. sunt enim ex terrā hominēs nōn ut incolae atque habitātōrēs sed quasi spectātōrēs superārum rerum atque caelestium, quārum spectāculum ad nullum aliud genus animantium pertinet.

*quī, connecting relative whose antecedent is an unspecified god or divine force
 †primum, here (adv.) first; for the first time
 animāns, animantis, -ium *m.* or *f.* or *n.* living creature
 caelestis, caelestis -ium heavenly, divine
 celsus, -a, -um lofty, tall; upright, erect
 cognitiō, cognitiōnis *f.* acquaintance, knowledge
 cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstitui, cōstitutus set up, establish
 ērectus, -a -um upright, erect

excitō (1-tr.) cause to move, stir up; raise
 habitātor, habitātōris *m.* inhabitant, occupier
 humus, humi *f.* earth, ground
 intueor, intuēri, intuitus sum look upon, gaze at, reflect upon, consider
 pertineō (per- + teneō), pertinēre, pertinui, pertentus extend, pertain
 quasi (adv.) as (if) as (it were)
 spectāculum spectāculi *n.* sight, spectacle
 spectātor, spectātōris *m.* witness, spectator
 superus, -a, -um upper above

The *De Naturā Deōrum* is a philosophical work in three books. Each book discusses the approach to divine things of a different school of philosophy: Epicurean, Stoic, and Academic.

9. Cicero, *De Senectute* 37

Cicero describes App. Claudius Caecus—consul, censor, builder of the Via Appia—near the end of his life.

quattuor rōbustōs filiōs, quīnque filiās, tantam domum, tantās clientēlās Appius regēbat et caecus et senex; intentum enim animum tamquam arcum habēbat nec languēscēns succumbebat senectūi; tenebat nōn modo* auctoritatem, sed etiam imperium in[†] suōs, metuēbant servī, verēbantur liberī, cārū omnēs habēbant; vigēbat in illā domō mōs patrius, disciplina.

*nōn modo = nōn solum

†in, here, over

arcus, arcūs *m.* bow (for shooting arrows)

auctōritās, auctōritātis *f.* authority, influence, prestige

clientēla, clientēlae *f.* client's relation to patron; in *pl.*, clients, dependents (individuals, cities, or provinces)

disciplina, disciplinae *f.* training; orderly conduct

intentus, -a -um stretched, attentive, intent

languēscō, languēscere, languī, — grow feeble, decline

metuō, metuere, metuī, — fear, dread

patrius, -a, -um of or belonging to a father, paternal; ancestral

rōbustus, -a, -um (physically) strong; mature

senectūs, senectūtis *f.* old age

senex, senis old

succumbō, succumbere, succubui, succubium give in, yield (+ *dat.*)

tamquam (*conj.*) as it were, as if

tantus, -a, -um so great

vereor, verērī, veritus sum respect, be in awe of, dread

vigēō, vigēre, vigui, — be vigorous, thrive, flourish

10. Lucretius, *De Rerum Natura* I 1–9

The poet begins his poem with an address to Venus.

Aeneadum genetrix, hominum divomque* voluptās,
 alma Venus, caeli subter labentia signa
 quae mare nāvigerum quae terrās frūgiferentis
 concelebras, per tē quoniam genus omne animantum
 concipitur visitque exortum lūmina sōlis:
 tē dea tē fugiunt ventī, tē nūbila caelī
 adventumque tuum, tibi suāvis daedala tellūs
 summittit flōrēs, tibi rident aequora pontī
 placatumque nitet diffusō lumine caelum.

5

*divom = divum = divōrum

adventus, adventūs *m.* arrival

Aeneadēs, Aeneadum *m. pl.* descendants of Aeneas; descendants of Aeneas's companions; Romans

aequor, aequoris *n.* level surface, sea, water

almus, -a, -um nounshing; gracious, kindly

animāns, animantis, -ium *m. or f. or n.* living creature, animantum = animantium

concelebrō (1 tr.) visit frequently; fill

concipiō (con- + capiō) conceive, produce

daedalus, -a -um skillful, dexterous, artful

diffundō, diffundere, diffusū *diffusus* spread widely, extend, diffuse

exorior, exoriri, exortus sum rise out, emerge, appear

flōs, flōris *m.* flower, blossom

frūgiferēns, frūgiferentis fruit bearing

genetrix, genetrīcis *f.* mother, creator

lābor, lābi, lāpsus sum slip, glide

lūmen, lūminis *n.* light

nāviger, nāvigera, nāvigerum ship bearing, navigable

niteō, nitēre, nitui, — be radiant, shine

nubila, nūbilōrum *n. pl.* clouds

plācō (1-tr.) make calm, soothe, placate

pontus, pontī *m.* sea

rīdeō, rīdere, rīsī risus smile, laugh

signum, signī *n.* sign, signal; constellation

sōl, sōlis *m.* sun

suāvis, suāve sweet(-smelling), fragrant

subter (prep. + acc.) under, beneath

summittō (sub + mitto) send up (from below), put forth

tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land

ventus, ventī *m.* wind

visō, visere, vīsī, vīsus go to see, visit; view

voluptās, voluptātis *f.* pleasure, joy

11. Lucretius, *De Rerum Natura* V.783–85

The poet describes an early state of the world.

prīncipiō genus herbārum viridemque nitōrem
 terra dedit circum collis campōsque per omnis,
 flōrida fulsērunt viridantī prāta colōre . . .

campus, campī *m.* plain

circum (prep. + acc.) around

collis, collis, -ium *m.* hill

color, colōris *m.* color

fulgeō, fulgēre, fulsi, — shine, gleam

flōridus, -a, -um abounding in flowers, producing flowers

herba, herbae *f.* small plant, herb, grass

nitōr, nitōris *m.* brightness, splendor, brilliance

prātum, prātī *n.* meadow

prīncipium, prīncipiū *n.* beginning

viridis, viride green, verdant, covered in vegetation

viridō (1-intr.) be green

12. Catullus XLVI (hendecasyllable, see §112)

A spring poem

iam vēr ēgelidos refert tepores,
 iam caeli furor aequinoctiālis
 iūcundīs Zephyrī silēscit aurīs.
 linquantur Phrygiā, Catulle, campī
 Nicaeaeque ager ūber aestuōsae:
 ad clārās Asiae volēmus urbēs.
 iam mēns praetrepidāns avet vagārī,
 iam laeti studiō pedēs vigēscunt.
 ō dulcēs comitum valēte coetīs,
 longē quōs simul ā domō profectōs
 dīversae variē viae reportant.

5

10

aequinoctiālis, aequinoctiāle equinoctial, of the
 equinox
 aestuōsus, -a, -um full of heat, burning, very hot
 Asia, Asiae *f.* Asia, a Roman province (modern
 Asia Minor)
 aura, aurae *f.* breeze
 aveō, avēre, —, — be eager
 campus, campī *m.* plain
 coetus, coetūs *m.* gathering
 comes, comitis *m.* or *f.* companion, comrade
 dīversus, -a, -um different
 dulcis, dulce sweet
 ēgelidus, -a, -um tepid, lukewarm, mild
 furor, furōris *m.* madness
 iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable
 linguō, linguere, liquī, lictus leave (behind)
 longē (adv.) far, a long way
 Nicaea, Nicaeae *f.* Nicaea, a city in Bithynia (a
 Roman province on the coast of Asia Minor)

pēs, pedis *m.* foot
 Phrygius, -a, -um of or belonging to Phrygia (the
 region around Troy), Phrygian, Trojan
 praetrepidō (1-intr.) tremble in anticipation
 reportō (1-tr) carry back
 silēscō, silēscere, —, — become still, fall
 silent, grow calm
 simul (adv.) at the same time
 tepor, tepōris *m.* in *sing.* or *pl.*, warmth, mildness
 ūber, ūberis rich, fertile
 vagor (1-intr.) wander
 variē (adv.) variously, differently
 vēr, vēris *n.* spring
 vigēscō, vigēscere, —, — come alive, be vig-
 orous
 volō (1-intr.) fly
 Zephyrus, Zephyrī *m.* Zephyr, the west wind

13. Caesar, *De Bello Gallico* I 24–25

In the midst of hostilities with the Helvetians, Caesar is compelled to turn his troops away to seek supplies. The Helvetians follow and harass Caesar's men from behind.

postquam id^a animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subducit[†] equitatumque qui sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. ipse interim in colle medio triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum; in summō iugō duās legionēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat. et omnia auxilia collocārī, ac totum montem hominibus complerī, et interea sarcinās in unum locum cōferri, et eum ab iis qui in superiori acie cōstiterant, munīrī iussit. Helvētī, cum omnibus suis carris secūtī, impedimenta in unum locum contulērunt; ipsi confertissimā acie reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

Caesar primum[‡] suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequatō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Milītēs ē locō superiori pilis missis facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiis dēstrictis in eōs impetum fēcērunt.

*id = the pursuit of the Helvetians

†subducit, historical use of present tense; trans-late as perfect

‡primum, *here* (adv.) first

aequō (1-tr.) make equal

animadvertō, animadvertere animadverti,

animadversus turn one's attention to, notice

carrus, carrī *m.* cart, wagon

cohortor (1 tr.) exhort, encourage

collis, collis, -ium *m.* hill

collocō (1-tr.) place, position, arrange

committō (con- + mittō) join, engage in

compleō, complete, complēvi, completus fill completely, cover

cōferō (con- + ferō) collect, gather together

cōfertissimus, -a, -um very crowded, very dense, very packed close together

cōscribō (con- + scribō) enlist, enroll

cōsistō, cōsistere, cōstiti, — take one's position, make a stand, halt

cōspectus, cōspectus *m.* (range of) sight, view

deinde (adv.) thereupon, then, next

dēstringō, dēstringere, dēstrinxī, dēstrictus draw

disiciō, disicere, disiecti, disiectus break, rout, disperse

equitatus, equitatus *m.* cavalry

equus, equi *m.* horse

Galliā citerior, Galliā citeriōris *f.* Nearer or

Cisalpine Gaul (on the Italian side of the Alps)

Helvētī, Helvētiorum *m. pl.* (the) Helvetians

impedimentum, impedimentī *n.* hindrance; bag



impetus, impetūs *m.* attack, assault

instruō, instruere, instruxī instructus arrange, draw up

intereā (adv.) meanwhile

interim (adv.) meanwhile

iugum, iugī *n.* yoke; (mountain) ridge

legiō, legiōis *f.* legion

mōns, montis, -ium *m.* mountain

muniō, mūnīre, mūnīvi or mūnī, mūnitus fortify

perfringō, perfringere, perfrēgi, perfractus break through

phalanx, phalangis *f.* phalanx, a close formation of troops

pīlum, pīli *n.* spear, javelin

proximē (superlative adv.) most recently

proximus, -a, -um nearest

reiciō, reicere, reiecti, reiectus throw back, drive back

removeō (re- + moveō) move back, remove

sarcina, sarcinae *f.* pack, bundle; *in pl.* luggage, baggage

subducō (sub- + ducō) lead up (from below), draw up

succēdō (sub- + cēdō) approach (from below)

summus, -a, -um highest; top (of)

superior, superius (comparative adj.) upper, higher, superiori = *masc./fem. sing. abl.*

sustineō (sub- + teneō), sustinēre, sustinui, — withstand

tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublātus lift, raise; take away

triplex, triplicis threefold; triple

veterānus, -a, -um veteran, composed of veterans

14. Sallust, *Bellum Catilinæ* 6

The historian begins a brief survey of Roman history.

urbem Rōmam, sicuti ego accēpī, condidēre atque habuēre initiō Troiānī, quī Aenēā
duce profugī sēdibus incertis vagābantur, cumque hīs Aboriginēs, genus hominum
agreste, sine lēgibus, sine imperiō, liberum atque solūtum.

Aboriginēs, Aboriginum *m. pl.* (the) Aborigines;
a tribe in Italy from whom the Romans
descended

agrestis, agreste of or living in the fields, rustic;
uncivilized

condō, condere, condidī, conditus found, build
initium, initii *n.* beginning

profugus, -a, -um fugitive, fleeing; *as subst.*, exile;
refugee

sēdēs, sēdis, -ium *f.* seat; home, abode

sicuti (conj.) just as

solūtus, -a, -um unrestricted, free; unconnected

Troiānus, -a, -um Trojan

vagor (1-intr.) wander

15. Sallust, *Bellum Jugurthae* 2

The historian reflects on the dual nature of man

nam uti genus hominum compositum ex corpore et animā est, ita rēs cūctae stu-
diaque omnia nostra, corporis alia, alia animi nātūrā secuntur.* igitur praecīlāra
facies,† magnae dīvitiae, ad hoc‡ vis corporis et alia omnia huiusce modī brevī dilā-
buntur; at ingeni egregia facinora, sicuti anima, immortalia sunt. postrēmō corporis
et fortūnae bonōrum, ut initium, sic finis est, omniaque orta occidunt et aucta senēs-
cunt; animus incorruptus, aeternus, rector humāni generis agit atque habet cūcta
neque ipse habetur.

*secuntur = sequuntur

†facies, faciēs *f.* face; appearance

‡ad hoc (added) to this

aeternus, -a, -um eternal, everlasting

at (conj.) but

augeō, augēre, auxi, auctus grow, increase

brevis, brevis short, brief; brevī, *sc.* tempore

compōnō (con- + pōnō) (= compōnō) put to-
gether, compose

cūctus, -a, -um all

dilābor, dilābī, dilāpsus sum slip away, disappear

dīvitiae, divitiarum *f. pl.* wealth, riches

egregius, -a, -um outstanding, extraordinary

facinus, facinoris *n.* deed

huiusce = intensive form of huius

humānus, -a, -um human

igitur (conj.) therefore (*usually postpositive*)

incorruptus, -a, -um uncorrupted, pure

initium, initii *n.* beginning

immortalis (= immortalis), immortale immortal

occidō (ob- + cadō), occidere, occidi, occāsurus
fall; perish, die

orior, oriri, ortus sum rise, arise

postrēmō (adv.) finally

praecīlārus, -a, -um very famous; radiant, beautiful

rēctor, rēctoris *m.* director, ruler, master

senēscō, senēscere, senui, — grow old, grow
weak, decline

sicuti (conj.) just as

uti = ut

The *Bellum Jugurthae* (War of Jugurtha) is the second of Sallust's surviving historical monographs. It recounts the war between Rome and Jugurtha, king of Numidia (in North Africa), which lasted from 111 to 105 B.C.E. Sallust's focus is the corruption of the Roman aristocracy, which allowed Jugurtha to maintain power by bribing those sent to wage war against him.

16. Vergil, *Eclogues* IV.4-7

The poet describes the beginning of a new age.

ultima Cūmaei vēnit iam carminis aetas;
 magnus ab integrō saeculorum nāscitur ordō.
 iam redit et Virgō, redeunt Sāturnia rēgna,
 iam nova prōgeniēs caelō dēmittitur altō.

aetās, aetātis *f.* age, time of life; era
 Cūmaeus, -a, -um *of or* belonging to Cumae;
 of or belonging to the Sibyl of Cumae
 dēmittō (dē- + mittō) send down
 integer, integra integrum whole; fresh;
 ab integrō, afresh, anew
 ordō, ordinis *m.* order; series, sequence
 progeniēs, *progeniēs *f.* offspring, progeny

rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm
 saec(u)lum, saec(u)lī *n.* age, generation
 Sāturnius, -a, -um *of* Saturn, king of the Titans
 and father of Jupiter and Juno; Sāturnia rēgna,
 (golden) age of Saturn
 ultimus, -a, -um farthest, most remote; last, final
 Virgō, Virginis *f.* (the) Virgin (Astraea), goddess
 of Justice

Vergil's first work, the *Eclogues* (< Greek *Eklogai*, Selections) or *Bucolics* (< Greek *Βουκόλικα*, [Poems] of Oxherds), is a collection of ten pastoral poems written between 42 and 39 B.C.E. and published shortly thereafter. The poetry of the *Eclogues* demonstrates Vergil's knowledge of Greek Hellenistic poetry (particularly the work of Theocritus) and his ability to translate this genre into a Roman context. The poems are marked by rustic settings, shepherd-poets engaged in love affairs, poetic contests, and an apparent escapist atmosphere. Closer examination of these poems reveals a sociopolitical element absent from Vergil's Greek models. When first published, the *Eclogues* won Vergil wide praise in Rome's literary circle, and Vergil soon came under the patronage of Maecenas, a wealthy patron of the arts and perhaps Octavian's closest friend.

17. Vergil, *Georgics* I.505–14

The peace-loving poet describes the effects of civil war. These lines conclude the first book of the *Georgics*.

... tot bella per orbem, 505
 tam multae scelerum faciēs,* nōn ūllus arātrō
 dignus honōs, squālent abductis arva colōnīs,
 et curvae rigidum falcēs cōnflantur in ēnsem.
 hinc movet Euphratēs, illinc Germania bellum;
 vīcīnae ruptis inter sē lēgibus urbēs 510
 arma ferunt; saevit tōto Mars impius orbe,
 ut cum[†] carceribus sēsē effūdēre quadrīgae,
 addunt in spatia, et frūstra retinacula tendens
 fertur equīs aurīga neque audit[‡] currus habēnās

*faciēs, faciēs *f.* face; appearance, sight
[†]cum, *here* (conj. + perf. indic.) whenever;
 cum . . . effūdēre whenever . . . pour forth
[‡]audiō, *here*, heed
 abducō (ab- + ducō) lead away, take away, carry
 off
 addō (ad- + dō) add; increase speed
 aratrum, arātrī *n.* plough
 arvum, arvī *n.* (ploughed) field
 aurīga, aurīgae *f.* charioteer, driver
 carcer, carceris *m.* prison; barrier (at the begin-
 ning of a racecourse)
 colōnus, colōnī *m.* farmer
 cōnflō (1-tr.) forge
 currus, currūs *m.* chariot
 curvus, -a, -um curved
 dignus, -a, -um worthy (of) (+ abl.)
 effundō, effundere, effūdī, effusus pour out
 pour forth; send forth; effūdēre *translate as*
present
 ēnsis, ēnsis *m.* sword
 equus, equī *m.* horse
 Euphratēs, Euphratī or Euphratae *m.* (the river)
 Euphrates

falx, falcis *f.* scythe, sickle
 frūstrā (adv.) in vain
 Germānia, Germāniae *f.* Germany
 habēna, habēnae *f.* rein
 hinc (adv.) from or on this side
 honōs, honōris *m.* office; honor, respect
 illinc (adv.) from or on that side
 orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; world
 quadrīga, quadrīgae *f.* (four horse) chariot
 retināculum, retināculī *n.* rope, rein
 rigidus, -a, -um rigid, stiff, erect, inflexible
 rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptus split, burst, break
 saevio, saevire, saevii, saevitum behave savagely,
 rage
 scelus, sceleris *n.* wicked deed, crime
 spatium, spatii *n.* course, track; lap; in spatia lap
 by lap
 squāleō, squālēre, squālui, be dirty; lie bar-
 ren (from neglect)
 tam (adv.) so
 tendo, tendere, tetendi, tentus or tēnsus stretch
 out, extend
 tot (indeclinable adj.) so many
 vicinus, -a, -um neighboring

Because of the success of the *Eclues* Vergil joined the poets Horace and Propertius in receiving the patronage of Maecenas, a close personal friend of Octavian. Vergil's next work was completed ca. 29 B.C.E. The *Georgics* (< Greek *Geōrgika*, [Poems] About Farming) is a didactic poem in four books on the art of farming. In addition to offering practical advice for farmers, the *Georgics* describes and praises the simplicity and purity of rustic life, and Vergil paints a picture of Italian country life and virtue that stands in stark contrast to the turmoil of actual life in the city Rome.

18. Vergil, *Georgics* II.490–99

In his praise of the life of the farmer the poet makes reference to the Roman poet Lucretius the Greek philosopher Epicurus, and, more generally, to any follower of the Epicurean school of philosophy.

fēlix quī potuit rērum cognōscere causās

490

atque metus omnis et inexōrābile fātum

subiēcit pedibus strepitumque Acherontis avārī;

fortunātus et ille deōs quī novit agrestīs

Pānaque Silvānumque senem Nymphāsque sorōrēs.

illum nōn populī fascēs, nōn purpura rēgum

495

flexit et infidōs agitāns discordia frātrēs,

aut coniūrātō dēscendēns Dācus ab Hīstrō,

nōn rēs Rōmanae perituraque rēgna; neque ille

aut doluit miserāns inopem aut invīdit habentī.

Acherōn, Acherontis *m.* Acheron, a river of the underworld

agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion; vex, harass

agrestīs, agreste of or living in the fields, rustic

avārus, -a, -um greedy, rapacious

coniūrō (1-intr.) join in a plot, form a conspiracy.

coniūrātō = perf pass part. used with active meaning

Dācus, Dāci *m.* Dacian, inhabitant of Dacia, a province north of the Danube (modern Romania and Hungary)

dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscendī, dēscēsus go down, descend

discordia, discordiae *f.* discord, dissension, conflict

doleō, dolēre, dolūī, — suffer, grieve, feel pain

fascēs, fascium *m. pl.* the *fascēs*, bundle of rods with an axe, symbol of power

flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus bend

fortunātus, -a, -um fortunate

Hister, Hīstrī *m.* (the) Hister, the lower Danube (river)

inexōrābilis, inexōrābile inexorable, relentless

infidus, -a, -um faithless, treacherous

inops, inopis poor, in want

invideo (in- + video) envy (+dat.)

miseror (1-tr.) pity

Nympha, Nymphae *f.* Nymph, a semidivine female spirit of nature

Pān, Pānos *m.* Pan, an Arcadian pastoral god,

Pāna = acc. sing.

pereō (per- + eō), **perīre, perīī, peritūrus** pass

away, be destroyed; perish, die

pēs, pedis *m.* foot

purpura, purpurae *f.* purple-dyed cloth, purple color

rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm

senex, senis old

Silvānus, Silvānī *m.* Silvanus, a Roman god of the forest

strepitus, strepitūs *m.* noise roar

subiciō, subicere, subiēci, subiectus place (acc.) below (dat.)

19. Vergil, *Georgics* III.242-44

The poet speaks of a common impulse in all living creatures

omne adeō genus in terris hominumque ferarumque*
et genus aequoreum, pecudēs pictaeque volucrēs,
in furias ignemque ruunt: amor omnibus idem.

*ferarumque, elides into next line

adeō (adv.) to that point, to such an extent; in-
deed, in fact

aequoreus, -a, -um of the sea, marine

fera, ferae *f.* wild animal, beast

furiae, furiarum *f. pl.* madness, mad desire,
frenzy

ignis, ignis, -ium *m.* fire, rage, passion

pecus, pecudis *f.* (herd) animal

pictus, -a, -um painted, colored

ruō, ruere, ruī, rutūrus rush

volucris, volucris, -ium *f.* bird

20. Vergil, *Aeneid* I.1-4

The first four lines of Vergil's epic poem

Arma virumque canō, Troiae quī primus ab ōris
Italiam fātō profugus Lāvinaque vēnit
litora, multum ille et terris iactātus et altō
vī superum, saevae memorem Iunonis ob iram.

iactō (1 tr.) throw, toss; harass, torment

Lāvinus, -a, -um of Lavinium, a town in Italy,
Lavinian

litus, litoris *n.* shore, beach

memor, memoris mindful, remembering

ōra, ōrae *f.* shore, coast

profugus, -a, -um fugitive, fleeing; as *subst.*, exile;
refugee

saevus, -a, -um cruel, savage

superi, superōrum *m. pl.* gods above; superum
= superōrum

21. Vergil *Aeneid* X.466–72

Jupiter speaks consoling words to his son Hercules, who is distressed at the imminent death of Pallas.

tum genitor nātum dictis adfātur amīcis:

“stat sua* cuique† diēs breve et inreparābile tempus

omnibus est vitāe; sed fāmam extendere factis,

hoc virtūtis opus. Troiae sub moenibus altis

tot gnāti cecidēre deum, quin‡ occidit una

Sarpēdōn, mea prōgeniēs etiam sua§ Turnum

fāta vocant metasque dati pervēnit ad aevi.”

470

*sua refers to cuique, his/her own.

†cuique = *masc./fem./neut. sing. dat. of indef.*

pron., each man, each person, each thing

‡quin, *here* {conj.} really, verily; nay, in fact

§sua refers to Turnum, his own.

adfor (1-tr.) address

aevum, aevi *n.* age, lifetime; life

brevis, breve short, brief

extendō, extendere, extendi extentus stretch out,

extend

genitor, genitoris *m.* father

gnāti = nāti

inreparābilis inreparābile irretrieveable

mēta, mētae *f.* goal post, end limit

occidō (ob- + cadō), occidere, occidi, occāsurus

fall; perish, die

perveniō (per- + veniō) arrive at (+ ad + acc.)

prōgeniēs, *prōgeniē *f.* offspring, progeny

Sarpēdōn, Sarpēdonis *m.* Sarpedon, Lycian king

and Trojan ally, son of Zeus

tot (indeclinable adj.) so many

tum (adv.) then, at that time

ūnā (adv.) together, at the same time

22. Vergil, *Aeneid* XII 92 -102

Fierce Turnus takes up a spear with which he hopes to kill Aeneas and speaks to it.

exim quae mediis ingenti adnixa columnae
 aedibus astābat validam vī corripit hastam,
 Actoris Aurunci spoliū, quassatque trementem
 vōciferāns: "nunc, ō numquam frūstrāta vocātū
 hasta meōs, nunc tempus adest; te maximus Actor,
 tē Turnī nunc dextra gent; dā sternere corpus
 lōricamque manu valida lacerāre revulsam
 semivirī Phrygis et foedāre in pulvere crīnīs
 vibrātōs calidō ferrō murrāque madentis."
 his agitur furijs, tōtōque ardentis ab ōre
 scintillae absistunt, oculis micat ācribus ignis . . .

95

100

absistō, absistere abstiti, — move apart, burst forth

Actor, Actoris *m.* Actor, the man who used to own the spear

adnitor, adniti, adnixus sum lean against (+ dat.)

adsum (ad- + sum), adesse, adfui, adfuturus be present

aedēs, aedis, -ium *f.* sanctuary, shrine; in *pl.*, house, abode

ardeō, ardere, arsi, arsurus burn, be on fire; rage

astō (ad- + stō) astāre, astiti, — stand (near)

Auruncus, -a, -um of Aurunca, a town in Campania, Auruncan

calidus, -a, -um hot

columna, columnae *f.* column

corripio, corripere, corripui, correptus snatch up

crinis, crinis, -ium *m.* hair

dexter, dextra, dextrum right; as *fem. subst.* (*sc. manus*), right hand

exim (adv.) then, next, thereafter

foedo (1 tr.) befoul, defile

frustor (1-tr.) deceive, disappoint

furiae, furiarum *f. pl.* madness, mad desire, frenzy

hasta, hastae *f.* spear

ignis, ignis, -ium *m.* fire

lacerō (1-tr.) tear to pieces, rend, mutilate

lōrica, lōricae *f.* corselet, cuirass, breastplate

madeō, madere, —, — be wet, drip

maximus, -a, -um biggest, greatest, very great

micō (1-tr.) dart, flicker, flash

murra, murræ *f.* myrrh, an aromatic gum

ōs, ōris *n.* mouth; face

Phryx, Phrygis Phrygian, Trojan

pulvis, pulveris *m.* dust

quassō (1-tr.) shake, wave, brandish

revellō, revellere, revulsi, revulsus pull away, tear off

scintilla, scintillae *f.* spark

sēmivir, sēmivirī *m.* or *adj.* half-man, seminusculine

spolium, spoliū *n.* booty, spoil

sternō, sternere, stravi, stratus strew; lay low, slay, kill

tremō, tremere, tremui, — tremble, quiver, quake

vibrō (1-tr.) give a wavy appearance, crimp, curl

vocātus, vocātus *m.* summons, call

vōciferor (1-intr.) shout, yell, cry out

23. Horace, *Carmina* 1.23 (Asclepiadean; see §112)

The poet addresses a timid girl.

Vitās innuleo me similis, Chloe,
quaerentī pavidam montibus āvūs
mātre[m] nōn sine vano
aurārum et silvae metū.

nam seu mōbilibus vēris inhorruit
adventus foliis seu virides rubum
dimōvēre lacertae,
et corde et genibus tremit.

atquē nōn ego tē tigris ut aspera
Gaetūlusve leō frangere persequor:
tandem dēsine mātre[m]
tempestita sequi virō.

5

10

adventus, adventūs *m.* arrival
asper, aspera, asperum harsh, fierce, pitiless
atqui (conj.) but, and yet
aura, aurae *f.* breeze
āvius, -a, -um pathless, trackless
Chloē, Chloes Chloe, addressee of the poem
cor *cordis n.* heart
dēsīnō, dēsīnere, dēsī or **dēsīvī, dēsītum** stop,
cease (+ *inf.*)
dimoveō (*dis-* + *moveō*) separate; set in motion
folium, foliū *n.* leaf
frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus break, shatter
crush
Gaetūlus, -a, -um Gaetulan, Moroccan
genū, genūs *n.* knee
inhorreō, inhorreere, inhorruī, bristle
quiver, shudder
(h)innuleus, (h)innuleī *m.* young deer, fawn
lacerta, lacertae *f.* lizard
leō, leōnis *m.* lion

mōbilis, mōbile movable; moving, shifting
mōns, montis, -ium *m.* mountain
pavidus, -a, -um trembling, frightened
persequor (*per-* + *sequor*) follow earnestly,
pursue
rubus, rubī *m.* bramble, blackberry bush
seu (conj.) or if, whether; **seu . . . seu**
whether . . . or (if) . . .
silva, silvae *f.* forest; *for purposes of scansion, silvae*
= *silvae*
similis, simile similar (+ *dat.*)
tempestivus, -a, -um timely, ripe, ready
tigris, tigris, -ium *m.* or *f.* tiger
tremō, tremere, tremuī, — tremble, quiver,
quake
vānus, -a, -um empty, illusory, groundless, false
-ve (enclitic conj.) or
vēr, vēris *n.* spring
viridis, viride green, verdant
vītō (1 *tr.*) avoid

Horace's *Carmina* (usually referred to as Odes) comprise three books (eighty-eight poems) of lyric poetry published in 23 B.C.E. and a fourth book (fifteen poems), written considerably later, perhaps at the request of Augustus himself. These poems, written in the Greek lyric meters of Sappho, Alcaeus, Archilochus, and others, take as their themes all aspects of poetry, life, and death, but they do so in a delightfully enigmatic fashion. The hallmark of a Horatian ode is meticulous word choice and word placement that impart to the poem many levels of meaning.

24. Ovid, *Amōrēs* III.9.37–42

The poet reflects with bitterness on the early death of fellow elegiac poet Tibullus (55?–19? B.C.E.).

vīve pius—moriēre; pius cole sacra colentem

mors gravis ā templis in cava busta trahet;

carminibus cōfide bonis—iacet, ecce, Tibullus:

vix manet ē tōtō parva quod urna capit!

40

tēne, sacer vātēs, flammae rapuēre rogālēs

pectoribus pasci nec timuēre tuīs?

bustum, busti *n.* funeral pyre; grave mound,
tomb

cavus, -a, -um hollow

colō, colere, colui, cultus cultivate, tend; worship

cōfido, confidere, cōfissus sum put trust in,

have confidence in (+ dat.)

flamma, flammae *f.* flame

iaceō, iacere, iacui, — lie, rest; lie dead

pāscor, pāsci, pāstus sum feed upon (+ abl.)

rapio, rapere, rapui, raptus tear away, carry off;
consume

rogālis, rogale *of or* belonging to a funeral pyre

sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred

Tibullus, Tibulli *m.* Tibullus

trahō, trahere, trāxi, tractus draw, drag

urna, urnae *f.* urn

vates, vātis -ium *m. or f.* prophet; bard, poet

vix (*adv.*) scarcely, hardly

25. Ovid, *Ars Amatoria* 1.113–24

The poet describes the legendary Roman rape of the Sabine women, which takes place in the middle of a public entertainment to which the Sabines have been invited.

in medio plausu (plausus tunc arte carēbant)

rēx populō praedae signa petita dedit.

prōtinus exiunt, animum clāmōre fatentēs,

115

virginibus cupidas iniciuntque manus.

ut fugiunt aquilās, timidissima turba, columbae.

ut fugit invisos agna novella lupos:

sic illae timuēre virōs sine mōre* ruentēs;

cōnstitit in nūllā quī fuit ante color.

120

nam timor ūnus erat, faciēs nōn ūna timōris:

pars laniat crīnēs, pars sine mente sedet;

altera maesta silet, frustra vocat altera mātrem:

haec queritur, stupet haec; haec manet, illa fugit . . .

*sine mōre *here*, lawlessly, wildly

agna, agnae *f.* ewe, lamb

aquila, aquilae *f.* eagle

clāmōr, clāmōris *m.* shout, shouting

color, coloris *m.* color

columba, columbae *f.* dove

cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōstitū, — make a stand,
halt; remain

crinis, crinis *-ium m.* hair

ex(s)iliō, ex(s)ilīre, ex(s)ilū, — spring forth,
jump out

faciēs, faciēs *f.* face; appearance

frustrā (adv.) in vain

iniciō, inicere, inieci, iniectus throw (acc.)
on (dat.), lay (acc.) on (dat.)

invisus, -a, -um hateful, odious

laniō (1-tr.) tear, mutilate

lupus, lupi *m.* wolf

maestus, -a, -um sad, mournful, gloomy, grim

novellus, -a, -um young, tender

plausus, plausus *m.* clapping, applause

praeda, praedae *f.* booty, plunder; prey

protinus (adv.) immediately, straightway

queror, queri, questus sum complain, protest;
lament

ruō, ruere, rui, ruturus rush

sedeō, sedēre, sēdi, sessurus sit, be seated

signum, signi *n.* sign, signal

sileō, silēre, silui, — be silent

stupeō, stupēre, stupui, — be stunned, be
speechless

timidissimus, -a, -um very fearful, very afraid, very
timid

tunc (adv.) then, at that time

turba, turbae *f.* crowd

virgō, virginis *f.* maiden, virgin

The *Ars Amatoria* (Art of Love) is a collection of three books of elegiac poems that are both erotic and didactic in subject matter and style. The poet offers detailed advice to men (books I and II) and to women (book III) on how to seduce and hold love partners. With a mixture of irony and genuine enthusiasm Ovid's counsel favors fun and pleasure over fidelity and morality. This work of the poet may have aroused the displeasure of Augustus and may have led to Ovid's exile.

26. Augustus, *Rēs Gestae Divi Augusti*, Proem, 1–2

The preface and opening words of Augustus's autobiographical report to the Roman people

Rērum gestārum divi Augusti, quibus orbem terrarum imperiō populi Rōmāni subiēcit, et impēnsarum quas in rem publicam populumque Rōmānum fecit, incūsarum in duābus ahenis pilis, quae sunt Rōmae positae, exemplar subiectum.*

Annōs undēvigintī nātus exercitum privātō cōsiliō et privātā impēnsā comparāvi, per quem rem publicam ā dominātiōne factiōnis oppressam in libertātem vindicāvi. eō nōmine senātus dēcrētis honōrificis in ordinem suum mē adlēgit, C. Pānsa et A. Hirtio cōsulibus, cōsulārem locum sententiae dīcendae† tribuēns, et imperium mihi dedit.

*in, here, for

†dicendae, fem. sing. gen. of a gerundive,
sententiae dīcendae, of speaking (my) opinion
adlēgō (ad- + legō), adlegere, adlēgī, adlēctus
elect, admit

a(h)ēneus, -a, -um (made of) bronze
comparō (1-tr.) prepare, get together; raise
cōsulāris, cōsulāre of or belonging to a
consul, consular; of consular rank
dēcrētum, dēcrēti n. decision, order, decree
dominatio, dominātiōnis f. absolute power,
dominion; despotism

exemplar, exemplāris, -ium n. copy
factiō, factiōnis f. faction, partisanship
A. Hirtius, A. Hirtiī m. A. Hirtius (consul 43)
honōrificus, -a, -um conferring honor,
honorific

impēnsa, impēnsae f. expense

incidō, incidere, incidī, incisus cut into, inscribe
onto

nōmen, nōminis n. name; reason, purpose

opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus press
down; suppress

orbis, orbis -ium m. ring, circle: orbis terrarum,
circle of lands, world

ordō, ordinis m. order, rank, class, body

C. Pānsa, C. Pānsae m. C. (Vibius) Pansa
(consul 43)

pila, pilae f. column; squared pillar

privatus, -a, -um private

subiciō, subicere, subiēci, subiectus place below;
make (acc.) subject to (dat.)

tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus grant, bestow,
assign

vindicō (1-tr.) lay claim to, in libertātem

vindicāre, to claim as free, to free to liberate

The *Rēs Gestae Divi Augusti* is one of three documents that Augustus left with the Vestal Virgins shortly before his death in 14 c.e. This first-person description of Augustus's accomplishments is written in an unadorned and clear style. After Augustus's death, and by his order, the *Rēs Gestae* were inscribed on two pillars placed in front of his mausoleum in Rome and also on numerous copies throughout the Empire (often with an accompanying Greek translation). The best surviving copy comes from Ankara in Turkey and includes the initial paragraph presented above.

27 Velleius Paterculus, *Historia Rōmāna* II.18 1–3

The historian describes a Roman enemy in the East in 88 B.C.E.

Per ea tempora Mithridātēs, Ponticus rēx, vir neque silendus neque dicendus singula curā, bellō ācerimus, virtūte eximius, aliquandō fortunā, semper animō maximus, cōsiliis dux, miles manu, odiō in Rōmānōs Hannibal, occupātā Asiā necatīque in eā omnibus civibus Rōmānis quōs quidem eādē diē atque hora redditīs civitātibus litteris ingenti cum pollicitatione praemiōrum interim iusserat, quō tempore neque fortitudine adversus Mithridātem neque fidē in* Rōmānōs quisquam Rhodiis pār fuit—hōrum fidem Mytilēnaeorum perfidia illumināvit quī M'. Aquiliū aliōsque Mithridatī vinctōs tradiderunt quibus libertās in ūnūs Theophanis grātiā postea a Pompeiō restitūta est—cum† terribilis Italiae quoque vidēretur imminere, sorte obvēmī Sullae prōvincia.

*in, here, toward

†cum, here (conj. + subunc.) (under the circumstances) when

ācerimus, -a, -um most or very fierce

adversus (prep. + acc.) in opposition to, against, in the face of

aliquandō (adv.) sometimes, occasionally

M'. Aquilius, M'. Aquiliū m. M. Aquilius

Asia, Asiae f. Asia, a Roman province (modern Asia Minor)

eximius, -a, -um outstanding, remarkable

fortitūdō, fortitudinis f. bravery, fortitude

grātia, grātia f. favor, kindness; in grātiā, for the purpose of pleasing (+ gen.)

hōra, hōrae f. hour

illuminō (1-tr.) illuminate, reveal

immineō, imminere, —, — hang over, threaten (+ dat.)

interimo, interimere, interēmī, interēptus kill, do away with

litterae, litterarum f. pl. letter, epistle

maximus, -a, -um biggest, greatest, very great

Mithridātēs, Mithridātis m. Mithridates (the Great), king of Pontus, defeated by Sulla, Lucullus, and Pompey

Mytilēnaei, Mytilēnaeorum m. pl. Mytileneans, citizens of Mytilene, a city on the island Lesbos off the coast of Asia Minor

necō (1-tr.) put to death, kill

obveniō (ob- + veniō) be assigned to (+ dat.)

occupō (1-tr.) seize; occupy

pār, paris equal

perfidia, perfidiae f. faithlessness, treachery

pollicitatiō, pollicitatiōnis f. promise

Ponticus, -a, -um of or belonging to the region adjoining the Black Sea (Pontus), of Pontus

postea (adv.) after, afterward

praemium, praemii n. reward, prize

quisquam = masc./fem. nom. sing. of indef. pron., anyone

reddō (red- + dō) give back, return; hand over, deliver

restituō, restituere restituī, restitūtus set up again, restore

Rhodiī, Rhodiōrum m. pl. Rhodians, inhabitants of the island Rhodes off the coast of Asia Minor

sileō, silere, silui. — be silent, pass over in silence

sors, sortis, -ium f. lot, portion; lottery

terribilis, terribile terrifying, frightening

Theophanēs, Theophanis m. Theophrastus, Greek historian from Mytilene, friend of Pompey

vinciō, vincire, vinxī, vinctus bind, join, fetter

Velleius Paterculus was born in southern Italy and served under the future emperor Tiberius as commander of the cavalry in Germany. After his rise to the rank of praetor in 14 C.E. almost nothing is known of his life. The only known work of Velleius Paterculus is the *Historiae Rōmānae* published in 30 C.E. in two books. The first book, the surviving text of which contains gaps, gives a cursory account of Roman history from Romulus to the fall of Carthage. The second book treats more contemporary history and includes a consistently positive portrait of Tiberius. Notable in the style of Velleius are a certain awkwardness and a pronounced lack of clarity in his long periodic sentences.

28. Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnon* 507–11

Eurybates describes the effect of a storm on the Greek sailors and their Trojan captives as they return from Troy.

Nīl ratiō et ūsus audet: ars cessit malis;
tenet horror artūs, omnis officiō stupet
nāvita relictō, rēmus effugit mantūs.
in vōta miserōs ultimus cōgit timor
eademque superōs Trōes et Danaī rogant.

510

artus, artūs *m.* joint (of the body), limb
cōgō (cō- + agō), cōgere, cōgē, cōactus drive to-
gether, force, compel
Danaī, Danaōrum *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks
effugiō (ex- + fugiō) flee from, escape, slip from
horror, horrōris *m.* bristling, stiffening; trem-
bling, dread
nāvita = nauta
officiū, officiū *n.* obligation; duty, task
ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; reasoning

rēmus, rēmī *m.* oar
rogō (1-tr.) ask (someone, acc.) for (something,
acc.)
stupeō, stupēre, stupui, — be stunned, be
speechless
superī, superōrum *m. pl.* gods above
Trōs, Trōis *m.* Trojan (man); Troes = *nom. pl.*
ultimus, -a, -um farthest, most remote; last, final
ūsus, ūsus *m.* use, experience
vōtum, vōti *n.* vow, prayer

29. Juvenal, *Saturae* X.283–88

After recovering from a fever that might have killed him, Pompeius Magnus was killed and beheaded in Egypt, to where he had fled during the civil wars with Caesar. The poet reflects on this end in comparison to the deaths of other Roman leaders.

prōvida Pompeiō dederat Campānia febrēs
optandās, sed multae urbēs et pūblica vōta
vicērunt; igitur fortūna ipsius et urbis
servātum victō caput abstulit. hōc cruciātū
Lentulus, hāc poenā caruit ceciditque Cethēgus
integer, et iacuit Catilīna cadāvere tōtō.

285

cadāver, cadāveris *n.* corpse
Campānia, Campāniae *f.* Campania a province
in southern Italy south of Latium
caput, capitis *n.* head
Cethēgus, Cethēgī *m.* Cethegus, one of the lead-
ers in the Catilinarian conspiracy
cruciātus, cruciātūs *m.* torture, torment
febris, febris, -ium *f. in sing. or pl.* an attack of
fever, fever

iaceō, iacēre, iacui, — lie, rest; be dead
igitur (postpositive conj.) therefore; then
integer, integra, integrum whole
Lentulus, Lentulī *m.* Lentulus, one of the leaders
in the Catilinarian conspiracy
prōvidus, -a, -um having foreknowledge, provi-
dent
vōtum, vōti *n.* vow, prayer

Decimus Iunius Iuvenālis was born in southern Latium in the middle of the first century C.E. Juvenal began to write poetry some time after the death of Domitian in 96 and continued to do so for the next thirty years. He lived until at least 127.

The *Saturae* (Satires) are sixteen satirical poems written in the dactylic hexameter, which have been divided into five books. The poet caricatures and attacks various manifestations of what he views as the corruption of Roman society. Rhetoric, hypocrisy, the atmosphere surrounding the emperor, women, and human frailty in general are among the subjects scathingly attacked by the poet. Although Juvenal's subject matter is often crude, his poetry is highly developed and often colored by the language of epic and of tragedy.

Continuous Readings

1. Vergil, *Aeneid* II, 479-90

While recounting the fall of Troy, Aeneas describes how Pyrrhus (= Neoptolemus), son of Achilles, breaks into the palace of Priam and slaughters the last members of the royal line.

ipse* inter primos correpta dura bipenni

limina perrumpit postisque a cardine vellit

480

aeratus, iamque excisa trabe firma cavavit

robora et ingentem lato dedit ore fenestram.

apparet domus intus et atria longa patescunt;

apparent Priami et veterum penetralia regum,

armatosque vident stantis in limine primi.

485

at domus interior gemitu miseroque tumultu

mussetur, penitusque cauae plangoribus aedes

femineis ululant; ferit aurea sidera clamor.

tum pavidae tecus matres ingentibus errant

amplexaeque tenent postis atque oscula figunt.

490

*ipse refers to Pyrrhus (= Neoptolemus).

aedes, aedis, -ium *f.* sanctuary, shrine; *in pl.*

house, abode

aeratus, -a, -um made of bronze

amplector, amplecti, amplexus *sum* embrace;

clasp (for protection)

appareo, apparere, apparui, apparitus *be* visible.

be clear; appear, become evident

armō (1-tr.) equip (with arms), arm

at (conj.) but

atrium, atrii *n.* atrium, the main room of a

Roman house

aureus, -a, -um golden

bipennis, bipennis *f.* two-edged axe, bipenni

= *abl. sing.*

cardo, cardinis *m.* pivot; hinge

cavo (1-tr.) hollow out; cut through

cavus -a, -um hollow

clamor, clamoris *m.* shout, shouting; noise

corripio, corripere, corripui, correptus *snatch up*

excido, excidere, excidi, excisus *cut down, cut out*

femineus, -a, -um *of or belonging to a woman,*

feminine

fenestra, fenestrae *f.* window, hole, breach

ferio, ferire, —, — *strike, hit*

figo figere *fixi, fixus* *fix, affix; plant*

firmus, -a, -um strong, sturdy

gemitus, gemitus *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)

interior, interior *(comparative adj.)* inner;

interior = *fem. sing. nom.*

intus (adv.) within, inside

latus, -a, -um broad, wide

limen, liminis *n.* entrance, doorway, threshold

longus, -a, -um long

misceri, miscere, miscui, mixtus *mix, stir up,*

throw into confusion

os, oris *n.* mouth; face; aperture, opening

osculum, osculi *n.* kiss

patesci, patescere, patui — *become visible, be*

disclosed

pavidus, -a, -um trembling, frightened

penetrare, penetrare, -um *n.* inner part, innermost

recess, inner shrine

penitus (adv.) (from) within, deeply

perrumpo, perrumpere, perrupi, perruptus *break*

or burst through

plangor, plangoris *m.* beating (of the breast in

grief); lamentation

postis, postis, -ium *m.* doorpost, jamb

robur, roboris *n.* oak tree, timber

sideris, sideris *n.* star, constellation

tectum, tecti *n.* roof; house, dwelling

trabs, trabis *f.* tree trunk; beam

tum (adv.) then, at that time

tumultus, tumultus *m.* commotion, uproar

ululo (1-intr.) howl (in grief or as part of a reli-

gious ritual) wail

vellō, vellere, velli or vulsi, vulsus *pull (up), tear*

(from)

vetus, veteris *old, ancient*

2. Ovid, *Metamorphoses* I.452–62

The poet recounts the tale of Apollo and Daphne

primus amor Phoebi Daphnē Pēnēia, quem nōn

fors ignāra dedit, sed saeva Cupīdinis ira.

Dēlius hunc nūper victā serpente superbus

vīderat adductō flectentem cornua nervō

455

“quid” que “tibi,* lascīve puer, cum fortibus armīs?”

dixerat: “ista decent umerōs gestamina nostros,

quī[†] dare certa ferae, dare vulnera possumus hostī,

quī modo pestiferō tot iūgera ventre prementem

stravimus innumeris tumidum Pythōna sagittīs.

460

tū face nescio quōs[‡] estō contentus amorēs

inritāre tuā, nec laudēs adserē[§] nostrās!”

*The final -i of tibi here scans *long*.

[†]quī, antecedent is nōs implied in nostrōs

[‡]nescio quōs = *masc. pl. acc. of indef. adj.*, I-don't-know-what, some or other, the -ō of nesciō here scans *short*.

[§]nec . . . adserere *negative imperative*

addūcō (ad- + dūcō) lead toward, draw back, bend

adserō, adserere, adseruī, adsertus grasp, claim as one's own

contentus, -a, -um content, satisfied

cornū, cornūs *n.* horn; *in sing. or pl.*, bow; cornua = *acc. pl.*

Daphnē, Daphnēs *f.* Daphne, a nymph, daughter of the river Peneus; Daphnēs = *gen. sing.*

deceō, decēre, -, fit, befit; add grace to, adorn, become

Delius, -a, -um of Delos, Delian. *as masc. subst.*, Delian Apollo

estō = *2nd sing. fut. act. imper.*, used in formal language or general precepts for orders, (you will) be

fax, facis *f.* firebrand, torch

fera, ferae *f.* wild animal, beast

flectō flectere flexi, flexus bend

fors, fortis, -ium *f.* chance, luck

gestāmen, gestāminis *n.* something worn or carried; ornament, weapon

ignārus, -a, -um not knowing, ignorant

innumerus, -a, -um innumerable, countless

inritō (= irritō) (1-tr.) provoke, stimulate

iūgerum, iūgeri *n.* iugerum, measure of land (= $\frac{2}{3}$ acre); acre

lascivus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from restraint

laus, laudis *f.* praise

modo (adv.) only, now; just now

nervus, nervi *m.* sinew; (bow-)string

nūper (adv.) recently

Pēnēius, -a, -um of Peneus (a river god)

pestifer, pestifera, pestiferum disease-carrying, deadly

Phoebus, Phoebi *m.* Phoebus (Apollo)

premō, premere, pressi, pressus press (down), burden; afflict

Pythōn, Pythōnis *m.* Python; Pythōna = *acc. sing.*

saevus, -a, -um cruel, savage

sagitta, sagittae *f.* arrow

serpēs, serpentis, -ium *f.* snake, serpent

sterno, sternere, stravi, stratus strew; lay low, slay, kill

superbus, -a, -um proud; haughty

tot (indeclinable adj.) so many

tumidus, -a, -um swollen

umerus, umeri *m.* shoulder

venter, ventris *m.* belly, stomach

vulnus, vulneris *n.* wound

§103. Rhetorical Terms

Writers of Latin prose and poetry regularly employed many modes of expression that are called rhetorical devices. Rhetoric, the principal subject studied in Roman education, may be defined as the art of persuasion in speech or in writing. How Roman speakers or writers expressed something was virtually inseparable from what they said or wrote. Indeed, the chosen style of any writer is in large part reflected in his distinctive use of the devices of rhetoric. LEARN THE FOLLOWING BASIC RHETORICAL TERMS AND THEIR DEFINITIONS. BE PREPARED TO IDENTIFY THEM IN THE READINGS.

Tricolon	A series of three parallel phrases or clauses.
Anaphora	Repetition of a word or phrase at the beginning of successive clauses or sentences.
Asyndeton	Omission of conjunctions between phrases or clauses.
Ellipsis	Omission of a word or phrase that is understood from the context.
Hyperbaton	Reversal of the normal word order for emphasis or dramatic effect.
Chiasmus	Reversal of the order of words in two phrases or clauses.
Antithesis	Contrasting two ideas or phrases in a balanced structure.
Metonymy	Substitution of one word for another with which it is closely associated.
Synecdoche	Substitution of a part for the whole or vice versa.

Examples

quis hanc contumeliam, quis hoc imperium, quis hanc servitutem ferre potest?
(Cato, quoted in Aulus Gellius, *Noctes Atticae* X.3.17)

(tricolon, anaphora, asyndeton, ellipsis)

Who is able to endure *this abuse*, who *this authority*, who *this slavery*?

benivolentiae potest esse fiducia . . . (Cicero, *De Amicitia* 52–53)

(tricolon, anaphora, asyndeton, hyperbaton)

This is without doubt the life of tyrants, in which no *faith*, no *affection*, no *constant trust* of goodwill is able to exist.

ergo Hannibal hostis, quis Antonius? (Cicero, *Philippics* V 24)

(chiasmus, antithesis, asyndeton, ellipsis)

Therefore (is) Hannibal an enemy, (but) Antony a citizen?

omnēs enim in consulis iūre et imperiō dēbent esse prōvinciae. (Cicero, *Philippics* IV 9)
(hyperbaton)

For all the provinces ought to be in the right and power of the consul.

neque enim illum, quem facile tulerant, ratiōne aut sapientiā tulerant, sed studiō potius et glōriā. (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputatiōes* II.65)
(hendiadys)

Nor indeed that (pain), which they had easily endured, had they endured because of reason or wisdom, but rather because of a zeal for glory.

*tēne, sacer vātēs, flammae rapuēre rogālēs
pectoribus pāsci nec timuēre tuīs?* (Ovid, *Amōres* III.9.41–42)
(alliteration)

Sacred poet, have the flames of the funeral pyre consumed you
and have they not feared to feed on your chest?

... haud doctis dictis certantēs, sed maledictis . . . (Ennius, *Annālēs* VIII.250)
(assonance)

contending not at all by learned words, but by insults . . .

OBSERVATIONS

1. Several rhetorical devices may be combined in the same sentence. In the first example the tricolon gains speed through the use of anaphora and asyndeton. The repeated element *quis* emphasizes the structure of the tricolon and allows the succeeding elements to be highlighted (*contumēliam, imperium, servitūtem*).
2. Although the limbs of a tricolon are often of uniform length, the third limb (*nūlla . . . fidūcia*) is often expanded, as in the second example.
3. Hyperbaton (*nūlla . . . fidūcia, omnēs . . . prōvinciae*) adds liveliness or surprise to the words that have been separated.
4. The hendiadys *studiō . . . et glōriā* (because of zeal . . . and glory) expresses one idea: because of a zeal for glory.

When one studies a particular writer's use of rhetoric, it is convenient to refer to the unit known as the period (< Greek *periodos*, "a going around") or periodic sentence. A periodic sentence is a complex sentence arranged in such a way that meaning is not fully grasped until the end. The most important elements of the main clause are often placed at the beginning and the end, enclosing several subordinate structures. Additional elements and subordinate clauses are arranged within the whole for maximum cohesion and clarity. For example:

Helvētī cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitatū, phalange factā, sub primam nostram aciem successērunt.

The Helvetians, having followed with all their wagons, brought together (their) baggage into one place; they themselves, with the battle line being very dense, with our cavalry having been driven back, with a phalanx having been made, approached up to our first battle line.

The periodic structure of this sentence may be represented as follows:

Helveti

cum omnibus suis carris secuti
impedimenta in unum locum *contulerunt*,
ipsi

confertissimā acie,
reiecto nostro equitatu,
phalange facta,
sub primam nostram aciem *successerunt*.

CHAPTER XI

Vocabulary

- **audācia, audāciae** *f.* boldness; recklessness, audacity
- **campus, campī** *m.* (flat) plain
- **castra, castrorum** *n. pl.* (military) camp
- **mūrus, mūrī** *m.* wall
- **paulum, *pauli**¹ *n.* small amount, a little
- **signum, signī** *n.* sign, signal; standard
- **tēlum, tēli** *n.* spear; weapon
- **ignis, ignis, -ium** *m.* fire
- **imperātor, imperātōris** *m.* commander, general
- **legiō, legiōnis** *f.* legion
- **lūx, lūcis** *f.* light, daylight
 - **primā lūce** (idiom) at daybreak
- **maiōrēs, maiōrum** *m. pl.* ancestors
- **sēnsus, sēnsūs** *m.* perception, feeling; sense
- **arbitror** (1-tr.) judge, consider, think
- **putō** (1-tr.) think, suppose
- **soleō, solēre, solitus sum** be accustomed
- **crēdō, credere, crēdidī, crēditus** trust, believe (+ dat.)
- **iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus** throw; utter; lay, establish
 - **ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī ēiectus** throw out, expel
- **loquor, loquī, locūtus sum** speak
- **inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus** find, discover
- **sciō, scīre, scīvī or scī, scītus** know
 - **nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī or nescū, nescītus** not know
- **pereō, perīre, perī, peritūrus** pass away, be destroyed; perish, die
- **longus, -a, -um** long; far; long-standing; far-reaching
- **summus, -a, -um** highest; top (of); last, final
- **brevis, breve** short, brief
- **humilis, humile** humble
- **sapiēns, sapientis** wise
- **similis, simile** similar (+ gen. or dat.)
 - **dissimilis, dissimile** dissimilar, unlike, different (+ gen. or dat.)
- **diū** (adv.) for a long time
- **fore = futūrus, -a, -um esse** (§104)
- **igitur** (postpositive conj.) therefore
- **longē** (adv.) a long way, far; by far
- **parum** (indeclinable subst.) too little, not enough
 - (adv.) too little, inadequately
- **prīmum** (adv.) first; for the first time
- **quam prīmum**, as soon as possible
- **quam** (adv.) as, how, (conj.) than (§111)

¹ The asterisk before the genitive singular form of **paulum** indicates that the form does not occur in the Latin that survives.

Vocabulary Notes

audacia, audaciae f. is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix *-ia* to the stem of an adjective meaning "bold" or "audacious." *Audacia* may have a positive sense (boldness, confidence), but more often has a negative sense of excessive boldness (recklessness or audacity).

campus, campi m. is a flat expanse of land or "plain." The *Campus Martius* (< *Martius*, *-a, -um*, of or belonging to Mars) was the plain just outside the sacred boundary of Rome, in which the Roman troops trained, Roman armies mustered before entering the city in triumph, and Roman citizens gathered in assembly in order to elect consuls and other high magistrates. The noun *campus* without an accompanying adjective may refer to the *Campus Martius*.

Although *castra, castrorum n. pl.* is plural in form, it has a singular meaning (military encampment). *castra* appears in two common idioms: *castra pōnere*, "to pitch or make camp" and *castra movēre*, "to break camp."

paulum, *pauli n. appears in the nominative, accusative, and ablative singular only. It often functions as an Ablative of Degree of Difference (see §111). It is also commonly found with a Partitive Genitive.

Paulo ante discesserunt. They had departed earlier than a little (a little earlier).
Paulum erat periculum. It was a little of danger (a little dangerous).

signum, signi n. may mean any sort of "mark" or "sign." It may also mean "signal" or, in military contexts, a "standard" or identifying flag carried by each legion.

telum, telis n. originally referred only to a throwing weapon (spear, javelin, dart), but its use was soon extended to include other weapons. It may also refer to the "shaft" of a throwing weapon as opposed to the point.

The ablative singular of *ignis, ignis, -ium m.* is usually *igni* (by analogy with *neuter* third-declension *i-stem* nouns). In poetry and in post-Augustan Latin, the regular form *igne* also occurs.

imperātor, imperātōris m. is formed by the addition of the suffix *-tor* to the present stem of the verb *imperō*. An *imperātor* is one who gives orders, and it is most often used of a military "commander" or "general." It is also an honorific title granted to a victorious commander either by his troops or by the senate.

legiō, legiōnis f. was the largest unit of the Roman army. Its size ranged at various periods of the Roman Republic and Empire from 4,200 to 6,000 men.

lux, lucis f. may mean "light" generally or "daylight." It may also mean "light" more metaphorically (mental illumination, light [of hope], etc.). *Prima lux*, literally "at first light," is an Ablative of Time When.

maiorēs, maiorum m. pl. is a substantive of the comparative adjective *maior, malus* (see §110).

sēsus, sēsus m. is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix *-tus* to a stem of the verb *sens*. The *-t-* of the suffix assimilated to the *-s-* of the stem *sens-* and was then lost.

solō, solēre, solitus sum is an intransitive semi-deponent verb. It regularly takes a Complementary Infinitive.

Bonae fidei tradidit. He handed over in good faith.

crēdō, credere, credidi, creditus may be transitive or intransitive. When transitive, it often takes a *neuter* pronoun as a direct object. When **crēdō** is intransitive, it may take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb. In the *passive*, **crēdō** may have a personal subject. **Crēdō** may also introduce an Indirect Statement.

Te amo credendum. I love you, and it is necessary for you to be believed.
Creduit se vidit. He believed that he saw.
Crēdunt me stultum. They think I am foolish.

The first letter of the verb *iaciō, iacere, iēci, iactus* is a consonantal *i* and is thus pronounced like English *y*. *iaciō* may mean "throw" or "cast" in a literal sense (rocks, javelins, lightning bolts) or a metaphorical one (injury, abuse, ridicule, remarks, kisses). It may also mean "lay" or "establish" (foundations, walls, ramparts).

ēciō, ēicere, ēieci, electus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *ē-* to *iaciō*. It exhibits regular vowel weakening in the first, second, and fourth principal parts. (For the prefix *ē-* see Appendix P.) In the first two principal parts (and all forms made from them), the first *i* is pronounced as a consonantal *i* followed by the vocalic *-i-*, as if they were spelled **iēciō, *iēicere*. In the third principal part (*ēieci*), the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to *ē*. The *i* in the third and fourth principal parts is consonantal. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF *iaciō* FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF *ēciō*. WHEN

A COMPOUND OF *faciō* APPEARS IN READINGS. ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN. When *faciō* takes a reflexive pronoun as a direct object, the combination may mean "push forth."

Compounds of *loqui*, *loquit*, *locutus* seem do not exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF *loqui* APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

inveniō, *invenire*, *inveni*, *inventus* is a compound verb formed by the addition of *in-* to *veniō* and does not exhibit vowel weakening. (For the prefix *in-*¹¹ see Appendix P.) Unlike *veniō*, *inveniō* is a transitive verb.

sciō, *scire*, *scivi* or *scil*, *scitus* means "know" in the broadest sense of the word. In particular, *sciō* means "know" facts. *Sciō* has two third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. When *sciō* takes an infinitive, it means "know how."

The present active imperative forms of *sciō* almost never appear in the Latin that survives, but this verb uses instead the future active imperative forms *scito* (singular) and *scitote* (plural) with present meanings. MEMORIZE THESE FORMS.

nesciō, *nescire*, *nescivi* or *nescia*, *nescitus* is a compound verb formed by the addition of the negative prefix *ne-* to *sciō*. *Nesciō* has two third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. When *nesciō* takes an infinitive, it means "not know how."

perēō, *perire*, *perii*, *peritus* is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *per-* to the irregular verb *eō*. (For the prefix *per-* see Appendix P.) *Perēō* conjugates exactly as *eō* except that it has only one third principal part. *Perēō* may be used synonymously for *morior* and be translated "perish" or "die." When its subject is not human, *perēō* may mean "pass away" or "be destroyed." It is also used metaphorically to mean "die" or "pine away" for love. The first person singular present active subjunctive may be used as an Optative, future wish capable of fulfillment, to assert something strongly. The first person (singular and plural) perfect active indicative—and occasionally other forms—may be used hyperbolically to express pain (I am/We are destroyed/lost/done for).

When *summus*, *-a*, *-um* expresses the notion of the "top of" a place by modifying that place, it usually appears before the noun it modifies.

similis "simile" and *dissimilis*, *disimilis* may take either a genitive or a dative expressing that which something is "similar" or "dissimilar" to.

The temporal adverb *diu* often appears in the phrase *iam diu*, "for a long time now." When this phrase occurs with a verb in the present tense, the present tense reports an action that has been going on for some time and is still going on. This use of the present tense requires a special English translation.

In classical Latin, *igitur* is most frequently a postpositive conjunction. (In the historians Sallust and Livy, however, *igitur* is nearly always placed first.) *Igitur* is used to join a sentence with a preceding one to indicate the consequence or inference of a preceding idea or series of ideas. Occasionally it is used to indicate the resumption of an idea after a digression (well then).

Like *satis*, *parum* may be an indeclinable neuter substantive or an adverb. While *satis* means "enough," *parum* describes what falls short of enough (too little).

	Derivatives	Cognates
audācia	<i>audacity</i>	
brevis	<i>brief, abbreviate</i>	<i>brachium, merry, pretzel</i>
campus	<i>campus</i>	
crēdō	<i>credo, credit; credible; miscreant</i>	<i>heart; discord; courage, cardiac</i>
iaciō	<i>inject; adjective, jet</i>	<i>catheter</i>
ignis	<i>ignite igneous</i>	
longus	<i>longitude; lunge; longevity; purloin</i>	<i>long, linger, belong; Lent</i>
loquor	<i>loquacious; circumlocution; soliloquy</i>	
lux	<i>Lucifer; luxuriant</i>	<i>light</i>
mīrus	<i>maral</i>	
parum		<i>poor; filly; puer</i>
putō	<i>corrupte</i>	
sciō	<i>science, president</i>	<i>skyster, schism, rescind; shed</i>
signum	<i>sign; signal, seal</i>	
similis	<i>similar; assimilate; resemble</i>	<i>simplex; simple; same; single; sandhi; seem</i>

§104. Infinitives

In addition to the present active infinitive (the second principal part) and present passive infinitive (see §31), there are three other infinitives in regular use in Latin: the perfect active infinitive, perfect passive infinitive, and future active infinitive. The following chart presents these infinitives and their basic translations:

OBSERVATIONS

1. The perfect active infinitive of *ire* may be either *ivisse* or *isse* (< *i-* + *-isse*).
2. Deponent verbs have three infinitives, present passive (second principal part), perfect passive, and future active. All have active meanings. For example: *cōnārī*, "to attempt," *cōnātus, -a, -um esse*, "to have attempted," and *cōnātūrus, -a, -um esse*, "to be going to attempt."
3. Semideponent verbs have three infinitives: present active (second principal part), perfect passive, and future active. All have active meanings. For example: *audēre*, "to dare," *ausus, -a, -um esse*, "to have dared," and *ausūrus, -a, -um esse*, "to be going to dare."
4. A future passive infinitive exists in Latin, but it is rarely used. For its formation see §142, n. 4.
5. The future active infinitive of *sum* (*futūrus, -a, -um esse*) has an alternate form: *fore*. MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR INFINITIVE FORM.

Periphrastic Infinitives

The active and passive periphrastics also have infinitive forms. For example:

Active Periphrastic Infinitives		
Present	rectūrus -a -um esse	to be about to rule
Perfect	rectūrus -a -um fuisse	to have been about to rule

Passive Periphrastic Infinitives		
Present	regendus -a -um esse	to be having to be ruled
Perfect	regendus -a -um fuisse	to have been having to be ruled

OBSERVATION

The present infinitive of the active periphrastic is also used as the future active infinitive of the verb. Thus, for example, *rectūrus*, -a, -um *esse* may be identified as the present infinitive of the active periphrastic of *rego* or the future active infinitive of *regō*.

3. Since participles and infinitives are not *finite* forms, always give participles (including those in compound infinitives) in the *full nominative singular* form no matter what person, number, and gender have been chosen for the indicative and subjunctive forms.
4. Imperatives appear in the second person singular and plural only. Always give the second person singular and plural imperative forms no matter what person, number, and gender have been chosen for the indicative and subjunctive forms.

☛ DRILL 104–105 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§106. Indirect Statement and the Subject Accusative

In both English and Latin what someone says may be reported in a *direct quotation*. For example:

He says, "I understand well the poems of Vergil."
Dicit, "Carmina Vergili bene intellegō."

Speech, thoughts, and perceptions may also be reported *indirectly*. In English, no comma and no quotation marks are used, the conjunction "that" is usually added, and changes in pronouns and verb tenses regularly occur. For example:

He says *that he understands well the poems of Vergil*.
(Original statement: I understand well the poems of Vergil.)
We thought *that he understood well the poems of Vergil*.
(Original thought: He understands well the poems of Vergil.)

Each italicized phrase is a subordinate clause, part of a complex sentence, the main clause of which is the introductory phrase (He says, We thought). Such subordinate clauses are rendered in Latin by a construction called **Indirect Statement**. An Indirect Statement in Latin:

1. is introduced by a verb of perception
2. lacks a subordinating conjunction equivalent to the English "that"²
3. has a subject in the accusative case (called a **Subject Accusative of an Indirect Statement**)³
4. has a verb in the infinitive³

OBSERVATION

A verb of perception is a verb of speaking, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like. In addition certain phrases with related meanings—"There is a rumor," "There was a story," etc.—may also introduce Indirect Statement.

THE TENSE AND VOICE OF THE INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT STATEMENT CORRESPOND AS CLOSELY AS POSSIBLE TO THE TENSE AND VOICE OF THE VERB IN THE DIRECT STATEMENT, THOUGHT, OR PERCEPTION THAT IS BEING REPORTED INDIRECTLY. In addition, the in-

² It is possible in colloquial English to omit the subordinating conjunction "that." For example: "We thought he understood well the poems of Vergil."

³ Cf. the English "I know *him to be* honorable" (= I know that he is honorable).

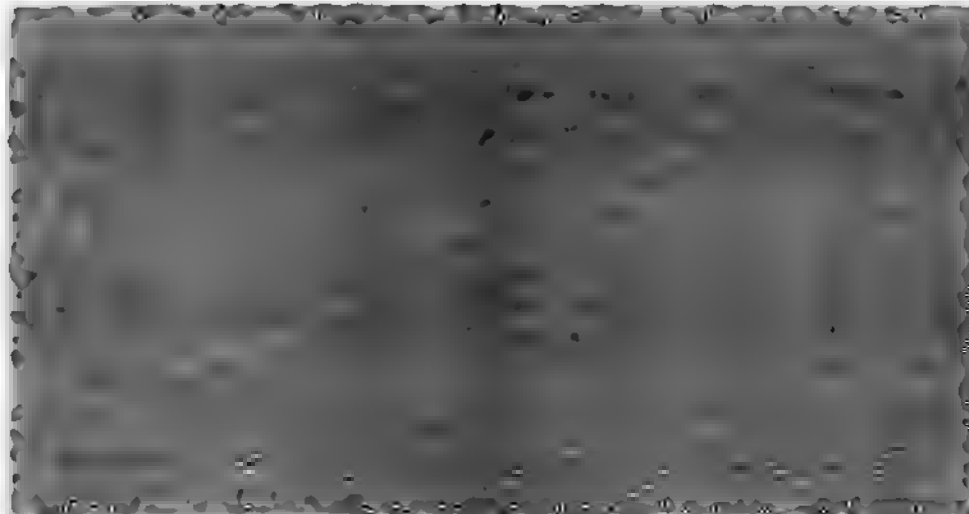
verb of an indirect statement shows time relative to the verb of perception that introduces it.

A *present* infinitive represents an action that is *simultaneous* with the main verb.

A *perfect* infinitive represents an action that is *prior* to the main verb.

A *future* infinitive represents an action that is *subsequent* to the main verb.⁴

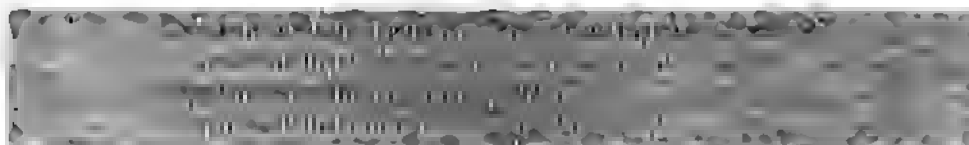
For example:



OBSERVATIONS

1. A Subject Accusative is usually the first word of an Indirect Statement in Latin. THE WORD "THAT" SHOULD BE ADDED AT THE BEGINNING OF AN ENGLISH TRANSLATION OF AN INDIRECT STATEMENT, AND THE INFINITIVE SHOULD BE TRANSLATED AS A FINITE VERB.
2. In each Indirect Statement the syntax of *eum* is Subject Accusative of an Indirect Statement.
3. The infinitives *intelligere*, *intelligisse*, and *intelligiturum esse* are, respectively, present active, perfect active, and future active. Each is translated into English by a *finite verb* that shows *time relative to the main verb*. CARE MUST BE TAKEN TO INDICATE THE RELATIVE TIME TO THE MAIN VERB OF THE INFINITIVE IN AN INDIRECT STATEMENT.
4. Any participle that is part of an infinitive in Indirect Statement agrees with the Subject Accusative in *gender, number, and case*. For example, the future active participle *intelligiturum* (part of the future active infinitive) is *masculine singular accusative* to agree with *eum*.
5. An Indirect Statement is a noun clause. It most often functions as the direct object of the verb of perception that introduces it.

When the infinitive in an Indirect Statement is a linking verb such as *sum*, it is often accompanied by a Predicate Accusative or a Predicate Adjective to the Accusative case. For example:



4. Cf. the relative time of participles, §96.

The syntax of *feminam* is Predicate Accusative, and the syntax of *felicem* is Predicate Adjective in the Accusative case.

The *esse* of infinitives that are compound forms may be omitted.⁵ For example:

Dicit se quattuor diebus ad provinciam profecturam. (future active infinitive)
 She says that she within four days to the province will set forth.
 She says that she will set forth to the province within four days.

In the English sentence "It is said that Marcus will lead the troops into battle," the verb of perception "It is said" is used impersonally. In classical Latin this impersonal use of a verb of perception in the passive voice is avoided in the present system, and the subject of the Indirect Statement becomes the subject of the verb of perception. This is called the **personal construction** of an Indirect Statement. For example:

Marcus dicitur copias in proelium ducturus esse.
 Marcus is said the troops (d.o.) into battle to be going to lead.
 Marcus is said to be going to lead the troops into battle.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the personal construction the subject of the verb of perception in the passive voice is *nominative*, the English word "that" is not added, and the infinitive is translated with its basic meaning (see §104). If the infinitive is a compound form, as in the sentence above, the participle agrees in gender, number, and case with the nominative subject of the sentence.
2. If the verb of perception is a compound form in the perfect passive system, it may be used impersonally with the entire Indirect Statement functioning as the impersonal subject. For example

Dictum est Marcum cōpiās in proelium ductūrum esse.
 It was said that Marcus the troops (d.o.) into battle would lead.
 That Marcus would lead the troops into battle was said.
 It was said that Marcus would lead the troops into battle.

☛ DRILL 106 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§107. A Note on the Subject Accusative

A Subject Accusative may appear as the subject of an infinitive in constructions other than Indirect Statement. For example:

Optō me esse bonum. I desire *me* to be good.
Satis est me servitū liberari. Enough (it) is *for me* from slavery to be freed.
 It is enough *for me* to be freed from slavery.
 I have enough *that* I be freed from slavery.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence the syntax of *esse* is **Object Infinitive**, and the syntax of *me* is **Subject Accusative**. (*Optō* is not a verb of perception.)

⁵ Cf. the omission of the forms of *sum* in compound forms of the perfect passive system (§51).

2. In the second sentence, the syntax of *liberari* is Subject Infinitive, and the syntax of *me* is Subject Accusative. It is often convenient to translate such noun clauses with the English words "for . . . to . . ." or "that . . . (English present subjunctive) . . ."

§108. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statement

When a complex sentence is subordinated in Indirect Statement, the main clause appears with a *Subject Accusative* and *verb in the infinitive*. The *subordinate clause* appears with a verb in the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence.⁶ Compare the same sentence presented first as a direct quotation and then in Indirect Statement:

Dux dicit/dicebat: Miles qui fugit poenas dabit.	The leader says/was saying: The soldier who fled will pay the penalty.
Dux dicit militem qui fugit poenas daturum esse.	The leader says that the soldier who fled will pay the penalty.
Dux dicebat militem qui fugisset poenas daturum esse.	The leader was saying that the soldier who had fled would pay the penalty.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The perfect indicative verb (*fugit*) in the relative clause of the direct quotation appears as a perfect subjunctive in primary sequence and a pluperfect subjunctive in secondary sequence when the direct quotation is reported indirectly. These tenses reflect the fact that the action of the verb in the relative clause in the direct quotation happened *prior* to the time of the main verb (*dicit/dicebat*).
2. The syntax, for example, of *fugisset* in the third sentence is pluperfect subjunctive, Relative Clause Subordinated in Indirect Statement, secondary sequence, time prior to the main verb.

Although there is no special English translation for the subjunctive verb in a subordinate clause in Indirect Statement, the subjunctive mood indicates that the subordinate clause is to be understood as *part of the original statement or perception* being reported indirectly.

By contrast, the *indicative* mood appears in a subordinate clause in indirect statement when the subordinate clause: 1. is an addition of the writer or speaker of the sentence or 2. contains information vouched for by the writer or speaker. For example:

Cicero sensit rem publicam, quam magnopere amabat, servandam esse.	Cicero perceived that the republic, which he greatly loved, had to be saved.
--	--

OBSERVATION

- In this sentence the person reporting Cicero's feeling that the republic had to be saved indicates by the use of the indicative mood (*amabat*) in the relative clause either 1. that the entire subordinate clause is *not* part of what Cicero felt, but is rather an addition of the writer or speaker, or 2. that the writer vouches for Cicero's love of the republic.

✦ DRILL 108 MAY NOW BE DONE.

6. When certain types of conditional sentences are subordinated in Indirect Statement they are treated differently from other complex sentences. The rules for the subordination of conditional sentences are not presented in this book.

§109. Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs

In both English and Latin, adjectives and adverbs may appear in *three degrees*. For example:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
tall	taller; rather tall	tallest; very tall
quickly	more quickly; rather quickly	most quickly, very quickly

Comparative Degree of Adjectives

All regular first-second- and third-declension adjectives in Latin form the comparative degree in the same way. The comparative degree of every adjective in Latin is a *third-declension* adjective with two forms in the nominative singular. The endings *-ior* (m./f.), *-ius* (n.) are added to the stem of the positive degree of the adjective. For example:

Positive degree	pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum
Stem for forming the comparative	pulchr-
Comparative degree	pulchrior, pulchrius
Stem of the comparative adjective	pulchrior-

For example, the comparative degree of the adjective *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum* is declined as follows:

	Singular		Plural	
	M/F	N	M/F	N
Nom.	pulchrior	pulchrius	pulchriores	pulchriora
Gen.	pulchrioris	pulchrioris	pulchriorum	pulchriorum
Dat.	pulchriori	pulchriori	pulchrioribus	pulchrioribus
Acc.	pulchriorem	pulchrius	pulchriores/pulchrioris	pulchriora
ABL.	pulchrior	pulchrior	pulchrioribus	pulchrioribus

OBSERVATIONS

1. The stem of adjectives in the comparative degree is obtained by dropping the ending of the genitive singular. For example: genitive singular = *pulchrioris* stem = *pulchrior-*.
2. The declension of the comparative degree of adjectives uses *some but not all* *i-stem* features of third-declension adjectives:
 - a. the ablative singular ending may be either *-e* or *-i*.
 - b. the neuter plural nominative/vocative and accusative is *-a* (not *-ia*).
 - c. the genitive plural ending is *-um* (not *-um*).
 - d. the masculine/feminine plural accusative ending may be either *-as* or *-is*.
3. The comparative degree of an adjective has a variety of translations: _____*-er*," "more _____," "quite _____," "rather _____," "too _____."
4. Since participles are verbal adjectives, some participles appear in the comparative degree. For example: *amantior, amanti*, "more loving"; *optatior, optatius*, "more (having been) desired."

Comparative Degree of Adverbs

To form the *comparative degree* of an *adverb* in Latin, add the ending *-ius* to a stem found by dropping the ending of the positive degree. For example:

Positive degree	fortis, forte	Stem: fort-
Stem for forming the comparative	pulch-, fort-	
Comparative degree	pulchrius, fortius	

OBSERVATIONS

1. All regular adverbs formed from first-second- and third-declension adjectives form the comparative degree in the same way.
2. The comparative degree of every adverb is identical with the neuter accusative singular form of the comparative adjective.
3. The comparative degree of an adverb has a variety of translations: "more _____-ly," "quite _____-ly," "rather _____-ly," "too _____-ly."

Superlative Degree of Adjectives

To form the superlative degree of an adjective in Latin, add *-issimus*, *-a*, *-um* to the stem of the adjective in the positive degree. If the masculine singular nominative form of the positive degree ends in *-r*, add *-rimus*, *-a*, *-ura* to that form. For example:

Positive degree	fortis, forte	Stem: fort-
Superlative degree	fortissimus, -a, -um	
Positive degree	pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum	Stem: pulch-, masc. sing. nom. = pulcher
Superlative degree	pulcherrimus, -a, -um	

Five adjectives in Latin form the superlative degree by adding *-limus*, *-a*, *-um* to the stem.⁷ These adjectives are:

facilis, facile	easy
difficilis, difficile	difficult
similis, simile	similar
dissimilis, dissimile	dissimilar
humilis, humile	humble

For example:

Positive degree	humilis, humile	Stem: humil-
Superlative degree	humillimus, -a, -um	

OBSERVATIONS

1. The superlative degree of an adjective has a variety of translations: "_____est," "most _____," "very _____."
2. Since participles are verbal adjectives, some participles appear in the superlative degree. For example: *amantissimus*, *-a*, *-um*, "most loving," *amātissimus*, *-a*, *-um*, "most loved."

⁷ A sixth adjective, *gracilis*, *gracile*, "slender, fine, graceful," also forms its superlative degree by the addition of *-limus*, but the superlative degree of this adjective is extremely rare.

§110. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs

Certain adjectives and adverbs in Latin have *irregular forms* in the comparative and superlative degrees. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING IRREGULAR FORMS:

maior	maius
peior	peius
minus	minus
maior	maius
peior	peius
minus	minus
maior	maius
peior	peius
minus	minus
maior	maius
peior	peius
minus	minus

OBSERVATIONS

1. The declensions of all irregular comparative adjectives follow the pattern of *pulchrior, pulchrius*.
2. The comparative degree of the adjective *multus, -a, -um* has regular comparative adjective forms in the *plural*, but the *singular* exists only as a *neuter substantive*, "(the amount) more," which is usually followed by a Partitive Genitive. For example, *plūres amici* (more friends [subj.] *plūres* is masculine plural nominative to agree with *amici*), but *plūs pecūniae* ([the amount] more of money; *plūs* = neuter substantive, singular nominative or accusative, followed by *pecūniae*, Partitive Genitive)
3. The masculine singular comparative forms of *magnus* and *parvus* are used to identify and son with the same name. For example: *Dionysius Maior*, "Dionysius the Elder," *Dionysius Minor*, "Dionysius the Younger."

maior	maius
peior	peius
minus	minus
maior	maius
peior	peius
minus	minus
maior	maius
peior	peius
minus	minus
maior	maius
peior	peius
minus	minus

OBSERVATION

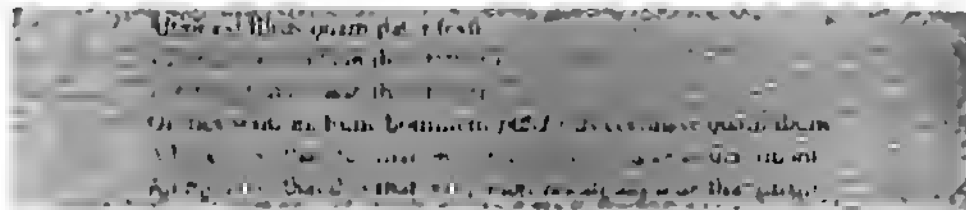
In the comparative degree several irregular adverbs are identical with the neuter singular accusative of the corresponding comparative adjectives: *melius, peius, minus, and prius*.

DRILL 110 MAY NOW BE DONE.

8. *Peior, peius* and *maior, maius* are pronounced as if they were spelled **peior, *peius* and **maior, *maius*. In each word the first *-i-* combines with the preceding vowel to create a diphthong, *-ei-* or *-ai-*, the latter of which is pronounced exactly the same as *-ae-*. In each case the second *-i-* is *consonantal* and is thus pronounced like English *-y-*.
9. *Peius* is pronounced as if it were spelled **peius*. The first *-i-* combines with the preceding vowel to create a diphthong *-ei-*. The second *-i-* is *consonantal* and is thus pronounced like English *-y-*.

§111. Constructions with the Comparative and Superlative Degrees

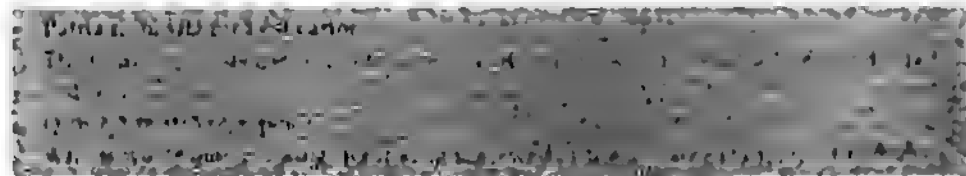
The comparative degree of adjectives and adverbs is regularly used to make comparisons between two persons or things. For example



OBSERVATIONS

- 1 The Latin word that corresponds to the English conjunction "than" is *quam*.
- 2 When comparisons are made with *quam*, the elements being compared must be in the same case.

When someone or something is compared to what is viewed as the absolute standard of a particular quality the Ablative of Comparison is used instead of *quam* and the same case. For example:

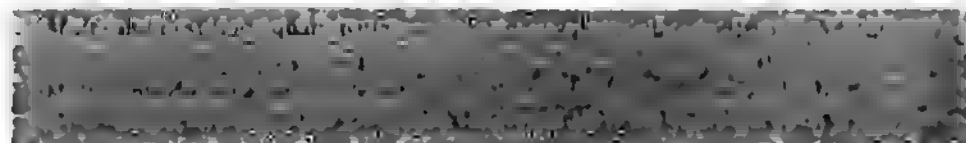


The syntax of each italicized word (*villā*, *rege*) is Ablative of Comparison.

OBSERVATION

The Ablative of Comparison arose from the original separative or "from" function of the ablative case (e.g., From [the standpoint of] my life the country is dearer).

A noun or, more commonly, a neuter singular substantive in the ablative case is used to indicate the degree or amount by which persons or things being compared differ. Such an ablative is called the Ablative of Degree of Difference. For example



The syntax of each italicized word (*multū*, *diebus*) is Ablative of Degree of Difference.

OBSERVATION

The Ablative of Degree of Difference is a variety of the Ablative of Means.

A Purpose clause that contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree is frequently introduced by *quō* instead of *ut*. Such a clause is a type of Relative Clause of Purpose (see §92). For example:

<i>Clara voce dico quō melius audias.</i>
By means of a clear voice I speak by which degree better you may hear.
I speak by means of a clear voice in order that by this (degree) you may hear better.

OBSERVATIONS

- 1 In this construction *quō* is neuter singular ablative of the relative pronoun, and its antecedent is the entire idea expressed by the main clause. The syntax of *quō* is Ablative of Degree of Difference (modifying the comparative adverb in the Purpose clause). That is, "I speak by means of a clear voice in order that, by the degree to which I speak in that way, (by that degree) you may hear better."
2. The second English translation given above (in order that . . . by this [degree] . . . may) is to be preferred. The English phrase "by this (degree)" preserves the close connection between the main clause and the subordinate clause that the relative pronoun in Latin achieves. The words "in order that . . . may" clearly indicate the idea of purpose that the clause expresses.

The Partitive Genitive (§34) and the Ablative of Degree of Difference may be found with adjectives and adverbs in the superlative degree. For example:

<i>Fortissimus omnium es.</i>
The bravest of all people you are. (omnium = Partitive Genitive)
You are the bravest of all people.
<i>Gladium multo optimum habeo.</i>
A sword (d.o.) by much the best I have. (multo = Ablative of Degree of Difference)
I have by far the best sword.

The adverb *quam*, "as," "how," may be added to an adjective or adverb in the superlative degree to express the highest possible degree. The resulting phrase is translated "as _____ as possible."

<i>Quam clarissima est vox eius.</i>	As clear as possible is his voice.
	His voice is as clear as possible.
<i>Pugnate quam acerrime.</i>	Fight (pl.) as fiercely as possible.

☛ DRILL 111 MAY NOW BE DONE.

Short Readings

1. The slave Toxilus explains why he is about to throw a party for all those who helped him overcome his enemy.

improbus est homō quī beneficium scit accipere et reddere nescit.

(PLAUTUS, *PFRSA* 762)

beneficium, beneficii *n.* service, kindness, favor, benefit

improbus, -a, -um wicked; shameless

reddō (red- + dō) give back, return

2. The character Chremes responds to a suggestion that he mind his own business

homō sum: hūmānī nīl ā mē aliēnum putō. (TERENCE, *HEAUTON TIMOROU MENOS* 77)

aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another; alien; estranged

hūmānus, -a, -um human

3. An example of a proposition based on a false cause

amor fugiendus nōn est: nam ex eō vērissima nāscitur amicitia.

(RHĒTORICA AD HERENNIUM II.35)

4. Cicero sums up a description of a Sicilian house that was plundered by Verres.

Domus erat nōn dominō magis ornāmētō quam civitātī. (CICERO, *IN VERREM II* 4.5)

ornāmētum, ornāmēnti *n.* adornment, embellishment

5. Cicero comments on why elections are so unpredictable.

nihil est incertius vulgō, nihil obscurius voluntāte hominum, nihil fallācius ratōne
tōtā comitiōrum. (CICERO, *PRŌ MURĒNĀ* 36)

comitia, comitiōrum *n.*, pl. (elective) assembly
(of the Roman people)

fallāx, fallācis deceptive, treacherous

obscurus, -a, -um dark, dim, obscure; uncertain

ratō, ratōnis *f.* account, reason; reasoning; way,
method

voluntās, voluntātis *f.* will, intention, choice

vulgus, vulgī *n.* common people, (the) multitude,
crowd

6. Cicero tells Catiline clearly that the conspiracy is at an end.

tenēris undique; luce sunt clāriōra nobīs tua cōnsilia. (CICERO, *IN CATILINAM I* 6)

undique (adv.) from all sides, on all sides

7. After Cicero reassures the Senate that all classes of the Roman people will support strong action against Catiline, he summarizes the nature of the plebs.

multō vērō maxima pars eōrum quī in tabernīs sunt, immō vērō*—id enim
potius est dicendum—genus ūniversum amantissimum est ōti.

(CICERO, *IN CATILINAM IV* 17)

*immō vērō, introduces a remark that makes a
preceding phrase or comment more precise,
rather, more precisely

ōtium, ōtiī *n.* leisure

potius (comparative adv.) rather

taberna, tabernae *f.* shop

ūniversus, -a, -um all together, entire, whole

8. In a speech delivered after Cicero's return from exile, the orator recalls those whom he missed most

quid dulcius hominum generi ab nātūrā datum est quam suī* cuique† liberi‡ mihi
vērō et propter indulgentiam meam et propter excellēns eōrum ingenium vitā sunt
meā cārīōrēs. (CICERO, *POST REDITUM AD POPULUM* 2)

*suī refers to cuique, his own.

†cuique = *masc. sing. dat. of indef. pron., each*
man

‡liberi, *here*, children

dulcis, dulce sweet, pleasant

excellēns, excellentis outstanding

indulgentia, indulgentiae *f.* leniency, indulgence

9. After Cicero describes the many different areas of expertise required of an orator, he gives the following summary.

quam ob rem nihil in hominum genere rārīus perfectō* ōrātōre invenīrī potest.
(CICERO, *DE ŌRĀTŌRE* I.127)

*perfectus, -a, -um complete, perfect

rārus, -a, -um rare, uncommon

10. A Ciceronian closing

haec, ut brevissimē dici potuerunt ita ā mē dicta sunt. (CICERO, *DE ŌRĀTŌRE* II.174)

11. Cicero resumes stating his main point after a short digression.

dictum est igitur ab eruditissimīs virīs nisi sapientem liberum esse nēminem.
(CICERO, *PARADOXA STŌICŌRUM* 5.33)

eruditus, -a, -um learned, accomplished

12. In a rhetorical overstatement Cicero favorably compares Roman writers to their Greek predecessors.

... sed meum semper iūdicium fuit omnia nostrōs aut invēnisse per sē sapientius
quam Graecōs aut accepta ab illis fēcisse meliōra . .

(CICERO, *TUSCULĀNAE DISPUTĀTIŌNĒS* I.1)

Graecus, -a, -um Greek

iūdicium, iūdicī *n.* judgment, opinion

13. An opinion about the nature of death

sunt qui discessum animī ā corpore putent esse mortem.

(CICERO, *TUSCULĀNAE DISPUTĀTIŌNĒS* I.18)

discessus, discessūs *m.* departure

14. A remark of Aristotle is recalled in a discussion of the relative longevity of mortal beings, apud Hypanim fluvium, quā ab Europae parte in Pontum influit, Aristotelēs ait bestiolās quāsdam nāscī quae tūnum diem vīvant.

(CICERO, *TUSCULANAE DISPUTATIONES* I.94)

aiō (defective verb) say, ait 3rd sing. pres. act.
indic.

Aristotelēs, Aristotelis m. Aristotle

bestiola, bestiolae f. little creature

Eurōpa, Eurōpae f. Europe

fluvius, fluvii m. river, stream

Hypanis, Hypanis m. Hypanis, a river in Asia

Minor. Hypanim = acc. sing

influo, influere, influxi, influxus flow (into)

Pontus, Pontii m. Black Sea

15. Cicero suggests avoiding pretense

quodsi vultum tibi, si incesum fingerēs, quō gravior vidērēre, nōn essēs tuī similis; verba tū fingās et ea dicās quae nōn sentiās? (CICERO, *DE DIVINATIONE* II.77)

fingō, fingere, finxi, fictus form, fashion, make, imagine

incessus, incessus m. walking, gait

quodsi (conj.) but if

vultus, vultus m. expression, countenance; face

16. After Cicero recommends that extraordinary powers be granted to the young Octavian, the orator explains to the senate why he is sure that Caesar's adopted son will not repeat the mistakes of his father.

nihil est illi* rē publicā cārui, nihil vestrā auctōritāte gravius, nihil bonōrum virōrum iudiciō optātius, nihil verā glōriā dulcius. (CICERO, *PHILIPPICS* V 50)

*illi refers to Octavian.

auctōritās, auctōritātis f. authority

dulcis, dulce sweet, pleasant

iudicium, iudicii n. judgment, opinion

17. Cicero speaks affectionately of his best friend Atticus.

... Pompōnium Atticum sic amo ut alterum fratrem. nihil est illō mihi nec* cārui nec iucundius. (CICERO, *AD FAMILIARES* XIII 15)

*These redundant negatives strengthen the negative idea.

iucundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable

Pompōnius Atticus, Pompōniū Attici m. Pomponius Atticus

18. When Cicero finds his movements carefully monitored and controlled by Caesar's right hand man, Antony, he complains to Atticus.

quidnam mihi futurum est aut quis mē nōn solum infelicior sed iam etiam turpior? (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* X.12.1)

quisnam quidnam (interrog. pron.) who, tell me; what, tell me

turpis, turpe foul, ugly; base, shameful

19. Caesar describes a moment of confusion in his camp as the enemy unexpectedly attacks.

tōtīs trepidātur castris, atque alius ex aliō causam tumultūs quaerit.

(CAESAR, *DE BELLO GALlico* VI.37)

trepidō (1-intr.) tremble; panic

tumultus, tumultūs *m.* commotion, uproar

20. Caesar describes rumors flying through the camp.

alius castra iam capta prōnuntiāt, alius dēlētō exercitū atque imperātōre victōrēs

barbarōs vēnisse contendit. (CAESAR, *DE BELLO GALlico* VI.37)

barbarus, -a, -um foreign

contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus struggle; claim

prōnuntiō (1-tr.) proclaim, pronounce, declare

victor, victōris *m.* conqueror, victor

21. The historian describes the character of the early Romans.

igitur domī militiaeque bonī mōrēs colēbantur; concordia maxuma, minuma avāritia erat; ius bonumque apud eōs nōn lēgibus magis quam nātūrā valēbat.

(SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 9)

avāritia, avāritiae *f.* greed, advance

colō, colere, colui, cultus cultivate

concordia, concordiae *f.* harmony

maxuma maxima

militia, militiae *f.* military service; militiae *loc.*

minuma = minima

22. Catiline exhorts his troops before the final battle against Cicero's forces.

semper in proelio eis maxumum est periculum qui maxumē timent; audacia prō murō habētur. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 58)

maxumum = maximum

maxumē = maximē

23. The biographer offers his opinion about the egotism of the Athenian politician and general Alcibiades.

huic maximē putāmus malō fuisse nimiam opīniōnem ingenī atque virtūtis.

(CORNELIUS NEPOS, *VITA ALCIBIADIS* 7)

nimius, -a, -um excessive, too great

opīniō, opīniōnis *f.* opinion, judgment

24. The shepherd Mopsus shows deference to his friend Menalcas.

tū maior; tibi mē est aequum pārēre . . . (VERGIL, *ECLOGUES* V.4)

25. After a storm has torn apart the Trojan fleet, Aeneas tries to revive the spirits of his companions.

ō sociī, (neque enim ignārī sumus ante malōrum),

ō passi graviōra, dabit deus hīs quoque finem. (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.198–99)

ignārus, -a, -um not knowing, ignorant, unaware

26. The Trojan Ilioneus, fearing that his friend and leader is dead, describes Aeneas to Dido.

rēx erat Aeneās nōbis, quō iustior alter
nec pretāte fuit nec bellō maior et armīs. (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.544–45)

iustus, -a -um just, fair, right

pietās, pietātis *f.* sense of duty, dutifulness, piety

27. The poet declares a new beginning for the war books that make up the second half of his epic.

... maior rērum mihi nāscitur ordō,
maius opus moveō. ... (VERGIL, *AENEID* VII.44–45)

ordō, ordinis *m.* order, rank, class

28. The poet advises a friend to take nothing for granted.

inter spem cūramque, timōrēs inter et irās
omnem crēde diem tibi dīfluxisse suprēmum:
grāta superveniet quae nōn spērābitur hōra. (HORACE, *EPISTULAE* I 4.12–14)

dīlūcēscō, dīlūcēscere, dīlūxī, — become light,
dawn

grātus, -a, -um grateful, pleased; charming,
pleasing

hōra, hōrae *f.* hour

spērō (1-tr.) hope (for)

superveniō (super- + veniō) come down from
above, arrive (unexpectedly)

suprēmus, -a, -um final, last

29. The elegist makes reference to Vergil's *Aeneid* as it is being written.

cēdite, Rōmānī scriptōrēs, cēdite, Grai!
nescio quid* maius nāscitur Iliade. (PROPERTIUS II 34.65–66)

*nescio quid = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. pron.*, I don't-know-what, something; the -ō of nesciō here
scans short

Graius, -a, -um Greek; Grai = *voc. pl.*; Grai scans as if it were spelled *Grai

Ilias, Iliadis *f.* the *Iliad*

scriptor, scriptōris *m.* writer

30. Helen addresses Paris in an imaginary letter.

apta magis Veneri quam sunt tua corpora* Marti.
bella gerant fortēs, tū, Pari, semper amā! (OVID, *HEROIDES* XVII.253–54)

*corpus, *here, in pl.*, (physical) bearing, physique

aptus, -a, -um suitable, fit

Paris, Paridis *m.* Paris, son of Priam; Pari = *voc. sing.*

31. The poet gives advice on concealing a particular physical flaw.

sī brevis es, sedeās nē stāns videāre sedēre. (OVID, *ARS AMĀTORIA* III.263)

sedeō, sedēre, sedī, sessūrus sit, be seated

32. When Hannibal hesitates to follow up his victory at Cannae by pressing his advantage, his lieutenant Maharbal criticizes him. The historian comments on the benefit to Rome.

"nōn omnia nīmirum eidem dī dedēre. vincere scīs, Hannibal, victōriā uti nescis."
mora eius diēi satis crēditur salūtī fuisse urbī atque imperiō.

(LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XXII.51.4)

nīmirum (adv.) without doubt, evidently

victōria, victōriae f. victory

33. After a murderous plot is foiled in the Sicilian town of Syracuse, the public's emotions rage back and forth concerning what to do with the conspirators. The historian characterizes the crowd.

ea nātūra multitudinis est: aut servit humiliter aut superbē dominātur; libertātem,
quae media est, nec struere modicē nec habēre sciunt.

(LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XXIV.25.8)

dominor (1-intr.) be a master

modicē (adv.) moderately, temperately

multitūdō, multitudinis f. multitude

serviō, servīre, servīvi or servīi, servitum be a slave

struō, struere, strūxī, strūctus construct, devise

superbē (adv.) proudly; haughtily, arrogantly

34. The historian describes the valor of C. Popilius Sabellus in a battle against the Histri, a people living along the lower Danube river.

is pede sauciō relictus longē plurimōs hostium occidit.

(LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XLI 4.6)

occidō, occidere, occidī, occisus kill

pēs, pedis m. foot

saucius, -a, -um wounded

35. An utterance of a jurist in a rhetorical exercise

quaedam iūra nōn scrīpta, sed omnibus scrīptis certiōra sunt.

(SENECA THE ELDER, *CONTRŌVERSIAE* I.1.14)

36. The philosopher quotes the opinion of the Greek philosopher Epicurus about the nature of poverty and comments upon it.

"honestā," inquit, "rēs est laeta paupertās." Illa vērō nōn est paupertās si laeta est;
nōn quī parum habet sed qui plus cupit pauper est.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE MORALES* II.6)

inquā (defective verb) say; inquit = 3rd sing. pres. act. indic.

pauper, pauperis poor

paupertas, paupertātis f. poverty

37. Phaedra explains her silence.

curae levēs locuntur,* ingentēs stupent. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *PHAEDRA* 607)

*locuntur = loquuntur

stupeō, stupēre, stupui, — be stunned (into silence)

38. Age and wisdom are not necessarily linked.

saepe grandis nātū senex nūllum aliud habet argumentum quō sē probet dīū
vixisse praeter aetātem. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGI* IX.3.8)

aetās, aetātis *f.* age, time of life
argumentum, argumentī *n.* proof
grandis, grande great
nātus, nātūs *m.* birth, age

praeter (prep. + acc.) beyond, except
probō (1-tr) prove, demonstrate
senex, senis old

39. Pompey the Great rushes to arms without fear

aut nihil est sēnsūs animīs ā morte relictum
aut mors ipsa nihil. . . . (LUCAN, *BELLUM CIVILE* III.39)

40. The writer expresses a preference for depth over breadth.

. . . multā magis quam multōrum lēctiōne formanda mēns et dūcendus* color.
(QUINTILIAN, *INSTITUTIO ORATORIA* X.1.59)

*dūcō, here, fashion, mold, produce
color, coloris *m.* color; (rhetorical) tone
formō (1-tr) mold, fashion, shape, form
lēctiō, lēctiōnis *f.* reading

41. Pliny identifies two worthy human endeavors

equidem beātōs puto quibus deōrum mūnere datum est aut facere scribenda aut
scribere legenda. (PLINY THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE* VI.16.3)

beatus, a, -um blessed, happy fortunate
mūnus, mūneris *n.* present gift; favor

42. Aulus Gellius recalls the opinion of an ancient poet

alius quīdam veterum poetarum, cuius nōmen mihi nunc memoriae nōn est,
veritatem temporis filiam esse dīxit. (AULUS GELLIUS, *NOCTES ATTICAE* XII.11)

memoria, memoriae *f.* memory
nōmen, nōminis *n.* name
vēritās, vēritātis *f.* truth
vetus, veteris old

Longer Readings

1. Plautus, *Captivi* 461–63

The hungry parasite Ergasilus laments his fate.

miser homō est, qui ipse sibi quod edit quaerit et id aegrē invenit,
sed ille est miserior, quī et aegrē quaerit et nihil invenit;
ille miserrimust, quī cum* ēsse cupit, tum quod edit nōn habet.

*cum, here (conj.) when

aegrē (adv.) scarcely, with difficulty

edō, ēsse, edi, ēsus (irregular 3rd conjugation verb) eat; edit = 3rd sing. pres. act. subj.

tum (adv.) then, at that time

The *Captivi* (Captives) involves a war, two lost sons, and several cases of switched identity

2. Plautus, *Casina* 3–6

An excerpt from a prologue spoken by an actor to the audience

sī vērum dixī, signum clārum date mihi
ut vōs mī esse aequōs iam inde ā principiō sciam.
quī ūtuntur vīnō vetere sapientus putō
et quī libenter veterēs spectant fābulās.

5

fābula, fābulae f. story, tale; play, drama

inde (adv.) from there

libenter (adv.) gladly

mī = mihi

principium, principiī n. beginning

spectō (1 tr.) look at, observe

vetus, veteris old

vīnum, vīnī n. wine

The *Casina*, produced after 186 B.C.E., revolves around a father's and son's pursuit of the same woman, Casina, who has lived in the father's house since she was found as a baby.

3. Plautus, *Boeotia* frag.1 9

A fragment from a lost play of Plautus, in which a parasite makes a lament

ut* illum dī perdant, primus qui hōrās repperit
 quique adeō primus statuit hīc sōlārium;
 quī mihi comminuit misero articulātum diem.
 nam ūnum mē puerō venter erat sōlārium,
 multō omnium istōrum optimum et vērissimum.
 ubi is te monēbat, essēs, nisi cum† nil erat;
 nunc etiam quod est nōn ēstur nisi sōlī libet.
 itaque adeo iam oppletum oppidum est solarius:
 maior pars populī āridī reptant fame.

5

*ut = utinam

†cum, here (conj.) when

adeō (adv.) to that point; to such an extent; in addition to that, moreover

āridus, -a, -um dry; parched, shriveled

articulātum (adv.) limb by limb, limb from limb

comminuō, comminūere, comminui,

comminūtus break into pieces, shatter

edō, ēsse, ēdī, ēsus (irregular 3rd conjugation verb) eat; ēssēs = 2nd sing. imperf. act. subjunc., iterative subjunc., "you used to eat"; ēstur = 3rd sing. pres. pass. indic.

famēs, famis f. hunger, starvation

hīc (adv.) here

hōra, hōrae f. hour

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly

libet, libere, libuit or libitum est (impersonal verb) it is pleasing

oppleō, opplere, opplevi, oppletus fill completely, fill up

perdō (per- + dō) lose; destroy, kill

reperiō, reperire, repperi, repertus find, discover

reptō (1-intr.) crawl about, creep along

sōlārium, sōlāriū n. sundial

sōl, sōlis m. Sun

statuō, statuere, statui, statutus cause to stand, set up, erect, station

venter, ventris m. belly, stomach

4. Cicero, *Pro Murena* 30

Cicero compares two skills of great importance in Roman life.

duae sint artēs igitur quae possint locāre hominēs in amplissimo gradū dignitātis, ūna imperatōris, altera oratōris bonī. ab hōc enim pācis ornāmenta retinentur, ab illō belli perīcula repelluntur. cēterae tamen virtūtēs ipsae per sē multum valent, iūstitia, fidēs, pudor, temperantia; quibus tē, Servi, excellere omnēs intellegunt.

amplius -a, -um great, distinguished

cēterus, -a, -um rest (of), remaining part (of), (the) other

dignitās, dignitātis f. dignity, rank, status

excellō, excellere, —, — be superior, be conspicuous, excel

gradus, gradūs m. step, pace; tier, rank

iūstitia, iustitiae f. justice, fairness, equity

locō (1-intr.) place

ornāmentum, ornāmentū n. adornment, embellishment

pudor, pudōris m. shame, decency, modesty

repellō (re- + pellō), repellere reppuli, repulsus push back, repel

retineō (re- + teneō), retinere retinui, retentus

keep hold of, retain, grasp

Servius, Serviū m. Servius (Sulpicius Rufus), the prosecutor in the case

temperantia, temperantiae f. self-control, moderation

The *Pro Murena* is Cicero's speech in defense of L. Licinius Murena (consul 62 B.C.), who was charged with corruption after his victory in the consular elections in 63. The trial took place at the time of the exposure of the Catilinarian conspiracy. The prosecution was supported by, among others, Cato the Younger, the staunch moral and political conservative.

5. Cicero, *In Catilinam* I 27

In his speech attacking Catiline, Cicero uses the rhetorical device of *prosopopoeia*, a sustained speech in character with words and gestures appropriate to the assumed identity.

etenim si mēcum patria, quae mihi vitā meā multō est cārīor, si cūncta Italia, si omnis rēs pūblica loquātur: "M. Tullī, quid agis? tūne eum quem esse hostem comperisti, quem ducem bellī futūrū vidēs, quem exspectārī imperātōrem in castris hostium sentis, auctōrem sceleris, principem coniūrātiōnis, ēvocātōrem servōrum et civium perditōrum, exīre patiēre, ut abs tē nōn ēmissus ex urbe, sed immissus in urbem esse videātur?"

abs = ab

auctor, auctōris *m.* source, author

comperiō, comperire, comperi, compertus find out, learn

coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis *f.* conspiracy

cūnctus, -a, -um all

ēmittō (ē- + mittō) send out

ēvocātōr, ēvocātōris *m.* summoner

exēō (ex- + eō), exīre, exī or exīvi, exitum go out

ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) wait for, await, expect

immittō (in- + mittō) send in, send against

perditus, -a, -um lost, degenerate, desperate

princeps, principis *first, foremost, chief; as**subst., leading man*scelus, sceleris *n.* wicked deed, crime; villainy6. Cicero, *De Orātōre* II.178

Cicero explains why it is important for an orator to appeal to an audience's emotions.

plūra enim multō hominēs iūdicant odiō aut amōre aut cupiditāte aut Iracundiā aut dolore aut aliquā permōtiōne mentis quam vērītate aut praescriptō aut iūris normā aliquā aut iūdicī formulā aut lēgibus.

aliquā = *fem. sing. abl. of indef. adj., some, any*cupiditās, cupiditātis *f.* desiredolor, doloris *m.* grief, sorrow painformula, formulae *f.* formula, rule, standardiracundia, iracundiae *f.* hot temper, angeriūdicium, iūdicī *n.* judgment, opinion; legal proceeding

iūdicō (1-tr.) form an opinion, judge, determine

norma, normae *f.* standardpermōtiō, permōtiōnis *f.* strong emotionpraescriptum, praescripti *n.* rule, preceptvērītās, vērītātis *f.* truth

The *De Orātōre* is a dialogue written shortly after Cicero's forced retirement from public life in 55 B.C.E. The dialogue is set in 91, and the chief speakers are the orators L. Lucinius Crassus and M. Antonius (the grandfather of Marc Antony). The date places the dialogue immediately before the beginning of the war between Rome and her Italian allies or socii. This Social War marks the beginning of a series of internal conflicts in the Roman Republic. All the characters in this fictional dialogue are historical, and many of them were to die within a few years of the dramatic date of the dialogue. In the first of the three books of the *De Orātōre*, the speakers discuss the importance of a liberal education for an orator. The remaining books are devoted to a closer analysis of the various parts of oratory.

7. Cicero, *Orator* 226–27

Cicero summarizes the advantage to the orator of proper prose rhythm.

et quoniam plūra dē numerōsā ōrātiōne diximus quam quisquam ante nos, nunc dē eius generis utilitāte dicēmus. nihil enim est aliud, Brūte, quod quidem tū minimē omnium ignōrās, pulchrē et ōrātōriē dicere nisi optumīs sententiīs verbisque lēctissimīs dicere: et nec sententia ūlla est, quae fructum ōrātōrī ferat, nisi aptē exposita atque absolūtē, nec verbōrum lūmen appāret nisi diligenter collocātōrum. et horum utrumque* numerus illūstrat, numerus etiam—saepe enim hoc testandum est—nōn modo† nōn poēticē vinctus vērū etiam fugiēns illum eīque omnium dissimilimus.

*utrumque *neut. sing. acc. of indef. pron.*
each (of two)

†nōn modo = nōn solum

absolūtē (adv.) completely, perfectly

appāreō, appārēre, appāruī, appāritus be visible,
be clear; appear, become evident

aptē (adv.) properly, fittingly

Brūtus, Brūtū *m.* (M. Junius) Brutus, the addressee of the *Orator*

collocō (1-tr.) place, position, arrange

diligenter (adv.) diligently

expōnō (ex- + pōnō) explain; display

fructus, fructūs *m.* profit, benefit, advantage

ignōrō (1-tr.) be unaware of, fail to recognize

illūstrō (1-tr.) illuminate, make clear

lūmen, lūminis *n.* light; illumination; enlighten
ment

numerōsus, -a, -um harmonious, rhythmical

numerus, numeri *m.* number; rhythm, cadence

optumīs = optimīs

ōrātōriē (adv.) in the manner of an orator, orator-
ically

poēticē (adv.) poetically

quisquam = *masc./fem. sing. nom. of indef. pron.*,
anyone

testor (1 tr.) testify to, affirm solemnly

ūtilitās, ūtilitātis *f.* use, advantage

vinciō, vincire, vinxī, vinctus bind, join

The *Orator* is the last of Cicero's treatises on oratory. Written in 46 B.C.E., it is addressed to M. Brutus and supposedly responds to Brutus's request that Cicero describe the "best form and, as it were, figure of speaking." In the *Orator* Cicero devotes considerable space to his own views on the history and importance of prose rhythm (numerus) in Greek and Roman oratory.

8. Catullus I (hendecasyllable; see §112)

The dedicatory poem of Catullus's published libellus

Cui donō lepidum novum libellum
 aridā modo pūmice expolitum?
 Cornēli, tibi; namque tū solēbās
 meās esse aliquid putare nugās
 iam tum, cum* ausus es ūnus Italōrum
 omne aevum tribus explicāre cartīs
 doctīs, Iuppiter, et labōriōsis.
 quārē habe tibi quidquid hoc libelli
 quālecumque; quod, <ō>† patrōna virgō,
 plūs ūnō maneat perenne saeculō.

5

10

*cum, here (conj.) when

†Pointed brackets mark an element added by scholars.

aevum, aevī n. age, lifetime; period of time, generation

aliquid = neut. sing. acc. of indef. pron., something

aridus, -a, -um dry

c(h)arta, c(h)artae f. leaf (of papyrus); book

Cornēlius, Cornēliī m. Cornelius (Nepos), addressee of the poem, writer of history and biography

doctus, -a, -um learned erudite

explicō (1 tr) unfold, reveal, explain

expoliō, expolire, expolivi, expolitus smooth, polish, finish

Itali, Italōrum m. pl. Italians

labōriōsus, -a, -um full of labor, elaborate

lepidus, -a, -um pleasant, charming, elegant

libellus, libelli m. (little) book

modo (adv.) only, now just now

nūgae, nūgarum f. pl. trifles, nuggets; nonsense

patrōna, patrōnae f. patroness, protectress

perennis, perenne everlasting, perpetual, perennial

pūmex, pūmicis f. pumice stone

quālecumque = neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. adj., of whatever sort

quidquid = neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. pron., whatever

saec(u)lum, saec(u)li n. age, generation

tum (adv.) then, at that time

virgō, virginis f. maiden, virgin

9. Catullus XIII (hendecasyllable, see §112)

The poet issues an unusual invitation.

Cēnabis bene, mī Fabulle, apud mē
 paucis sī tibi dī favent, diēbus,
 sī tecum attuleris bonam atque magnam
 cēnam, nōn sine candidā puellā
 et vīnō et sale et omnibus cachinnīs
 haec sī, inquam, attuleris, venuste noster,
 cēnābis bene nam tuī Catullī
 plēnus sacculus est arānearum.
 sed contrā accipiēs merōs amōrēs
 seu quid* suāvis ēlegantiusve est
 nam unguentum dabo,[†] quod meae puellae
 dōnābunt Venerēs Cupidinēsque;
 quod tu cum* olfaciēs, deōs rogābis,
 tōtū ut tē faciant, Fabulle nāsum.

5

10

*quid, here, *neut. sing. nom. of indef. pron.*, anything

[†]The -ō of dabō here scans short

*cum, here (conj. + indic.) when

afferō (ad- + ferō), afferre, attulī, allātus bring toward, bring along

arānea, arānae *f.* spider; cobweb

cachinnus, cachinnī *m.* loud laugh

candidus, -a, -um white, clear, bright, radiant

cēna cēnae *f.* dinner

cēnō (1-intr.) dine

dōnābunt = dōnāvērunt

ēlēgāns, ēlēgantis select, tasteful, elegant

Fabullus, Fabullī *m.* Fabullus

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum be favorable, favor (+ dat.)

inquam (defective verb) say; inquam = 1st sing. pres. act. indic.

merus, -a, -um pure, unmixed

nāsus, nāsī *m.* nose

olfaciō, olfacere, olfēcī, olfactus smell

plēnus, -a, -um full

rogō (1-tr.) ask

sacculus, sacculī *m.* (little) bag, wallet

sal, salis *n.* salt; wit

seu (conj.) or if

suāvis, suāve sweet, pleasant; fragrant

unguentum, unguentī *n.* ointment; perfume

-ve (enclitic conj.) or

venustus, -a, -um charming, pleasing

vīnum, vīnī *n.* wine

10. Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthae* 14

Adherbal addresses the Roman senate about his cousin Jugurtha's cruel treatment of captives

capti ab Iugurtha pars in crucem acti, pars bestiis obiecti sunt, pauci, quibus relicta
 est anima, clausi in tenebris cum maerore et luctu morte graviorem vitam exigunt.

bestia, bestiae *f.* beast, animal

claudō, claudere, clausi, clausus close, shut; confine, enclose

crux, crucis *f.* wooden frame, cross

exigō (ex- + agō), exigere, exēgi, exāctus drive out; spend, pass

Iugurtha, Iugurthae *m.* Jugurtha, king of Numidia

luctus, luctūs *m.* mourning

maeror, maeroris *m.* grief, sorrow, mourning

obiciō (ob- + iaciō) throw in front of, throw to (+ dat.)

tenebrae, tenebrarum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows

11. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.40–56

As the Trojans debate whether to bring the Greeks' gift of a horse into the city, their priest Laocoön utters a vain warning

prīmus ibi ante omnīs magnā comitante catervā

Lāocoōn ardēns summā dēcurrnt ab arce,

et procul "ō miserī, quae tanta insānia, civēs?

crēditis āvectōs hostīs? aut ūlla putātis

dōna carēre dolīs Danaum? sic nōtus Ulixēs?

aut hoc inclūsī lignō occultantur Achīvī,

aut haec in nostrōs fabricāta est māchina mūrōs,

inspectūra* domōs ventūraque* dēsuper urbi,

aut aliquis latet error; equō nē crēdite,† Teucrī,

quidquid id est, timeo Danaōs et dōna ferentis."

*inspectūra, ventūra, fut. act. participles expressing purpose, in order to . . .

†nē crēdite = negative imper

Achīvī, Achivōrum *m. pl.* Achaeans, Greeks

aliquis = *masc. nom. sing. of indef. pron. used as an adjective, some*

ardeō, ardēre, arsi, arsurus burn, be on fire; rage

arx, arcis *f.* tower, citadel

āvehō, āvehere, āvexi, āvectus convey away; in passive, go away, depart

caterva, catervae *f.* throng, crowd, troop

comitor (1-tr.) accompany attend

Danaī, Danaōrum *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks;

Danaum = Danaōrum

dēcurrō, dēcurrere, dē(cu)curri, dēcursum run down, hurry down

dēsuper (adv.) from above

dolus, dolī *m.* deceit, trick; cunning

equus, equi *m.* horse

error, erroris *m.* mistake, deceit

fabricō (1-tr.) fashion, construct, devise

ibi (adv.) there; then

inclūdō, inclūdere, inclūsi, inclūsus enclose

insānia, insāniae *f.* madness, insanity

inspicō, inspicere, inspexi, inspectus examine, inspect, observe

Lāocoōn, Lāocoōntis *m.* Laocoon

lateō, latēre, latui, — (intr.) hide, lie hidden, be concealed

lignum, ligni *n.* wood

māchina, māchinae *f.* mechanism, structure

occultō (1-tr.) hide, conceal

procul (adv.) at a distance, from a distance

quidquid = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. pron., whatever*

tantus, -a, -um so great

Teucrī, Teucrōrum *m. pl.* descendants of Teucer, Teucrians, Trojans

Ulixēs, Ulixis *m.* Ulysses (Odysseus)

sic fatus validis ingentem viribus hastam
 in latus inque feri curvam compagibus alvum
 contorsit, stetit illa tremēns, uterōque recussō
 insonuere cavae gemitumque dedere cavernae.
 et, si fata deum, si mēns nōn laeva fuisset,
 impulerat* ferro Argolicas foedare latebras,
 Troiaque nunc staret, Priamiue arx alta, manērēs.

58

55

***impulerat** pluperf. indic. used for vividness in
 apodoses of Mixed Contrary-to-Fact conditional
 sentence

Argolicus, -a, -um of Argos, Argive, Greek

alvus, **alvi** *f.* belly

arx, **arcis** *f.* tower, citadel

caverna, **cavernae** *f.* cavern, cavity, hollow

cavus, -a, -um hollow

compāgēs, **compāgis** *f.* joint, seam; fastening

contorqueō **contorquere**, **contorsī**, **contortus**
 twist; hurl

curvus, -a, -um curved

ferus, **feri** *m.* wild beast

foedō (1-tr.) befoul, defile; wound savagely,
 mangle

for (1-tr.) speak, utter

gemitus, **gemitūs** *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)

hasta, **hastae** *f.* spear

impellō (in- + **pellō**), **impellere**, **impulsi**, **impulsus**
 push on; drive, compel

Insonō, **Insonāre**, **Insonuī**, — make a loud
 noise, resound

laevus, -a, -um left; unfavorable, adverse; dull

latebra, **latebrae** *f.* hiding place, lair, recess

latus, **lateris** *n.* side, flank

recutiō, **recutere**, **recussī**, **recussus** strike (back),
 shake

tremō, **tremere**, **tremui**, — tremble, quiver,
 shake

uterus, **uteri** *m.* belly, womb

12. Vergil, *Aeneid* III.374–80

Helenus the seer begins his response to Aeneas, who has asked for advice on how to proceed to Italy.

“Nāte deā (nam tē maiōribus ire per altum
auspiciis manifesta fidēs; sic fāta deum rēx
sortitur volvitque vicēs, is vertitur ordō)
pauca tibi ē multis, quō tūtior hospita lūstrēs
aequora et Ausoniō possis cōsidere portū,
expediam dictis; prohibent nam cētera Parcae
scire Helenum fārique vetat Sātūrnia Iūnō . . .

375

380

aequor, aequoris *n.* level surface; sea, water
Ausonius, -a, -um of Ausonia, Ausonian, Italian
auspiciū, auspiciū *n.* augury, omen
cēterus, -a, -um rest (of), remaining part (of),
(the) other
cōsidō, cōsidere, cōsēdī, — sit, settle,
make one's home
expediō, expedire, expedivī, expeditus unravel,
explain
for (1-tr.) speak, utter
Helenus, Helenī *m.* Helenus, son of Priam and
seer
hospitūs, -a, -um hospitable
lūstrō (1-tr.) roam through traverse, survey,
look upon
manifestus, -a, -um revealed by clear signs, plain,
obvious

ordō, ordinis *m.* order; series, sequence
Parcae, Parcārum *f. pl.* Parcae, goddesses of fate
portus, portūs *m.* harbor; refuge, haven
prohibeō (prō- + habeō), prohibēre, prohibuī,
prohibitus prevent; prohibit, forbid
Sātūrnus, -a, -um of Saturn, king of the Titans
and father of Juno; Saturnian
sortior, sortiri, sortitus sum assign by lot,
determine
tūtus, -a, -um safe
vertō, vertere, vertī, versus turn; spin
vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus forbid
—, vicis *f.* turning, turn; succession; situation,
lot
volvō, volvere, volvi, volūtus turn, turn over, roll;
unroll; bring round

13. Vergil, *Aeneid* XII.653–57

The wounded Rutulian Saces implores Turnus to enter the battle.

Turne, in tē suprēma salūs, miserēre tuōrum.
fulminat Aenēās armīs summāsque minātur
dēiectūrum* arcēs Italum excidiōque datūrum,*
iamque facēs ad tēcta volant. in† tē ōra Latīni,
in† tē oculos referunt;‡ . . .

655

*dēiectūrum, datūrum, subject is sē
†in, here, toward
‡referō, here, direct
arx, arcis *f.* tower, citadel
dēiciō (dē- + iaciō) throw down, topple,
overthrow
excidium, excidiū *n.* (military) destruction
fax, facis *f.* firebrand, torch
fulminō (1-intr.) strike (like lightning), flash
fiercely

Itali, Italōrum *m. pl.* Italians; Italum = Italōrum
Latīni, Latīnōrum *m. pl.* (the) Latins, the peoples
of Latium
minor (1-intr.) threaten
misereor, miserēri, miseritus sum pity, take pity
on (+ gen.)
ōs, ōris *n.* mouth; face
suprēmus, -a, -um final, last
tēctum, tēcti *n.* roof; house
volō (1-intr.) fly

14 Horace, *Carmina* 1.5 (Asclepiadean; see §112)

The poet addresses an old and dangerous flame.

Quis* multā gracilis tē puer in rosā
 perfusus liquidis urget odoribus
 grātō, Pyrrha, sub antrō?
 cui flāvam religās comam
 simplex munditū? heu quotiēns fidem
 mūtātōsque deōs flēbit et aspera
 nigrīs aequora ventīs
 ēmirābitur insolēns,
 quī nunc tē fruitur crēdulus aureā,
 quī semper vacuum, semper amābilem
 spērat, nescius aurae
 fallācis. miserī, quibus
 intemptāta nitēs: mē tabulā sacer
 vōtīvā parietis indicat uvida
 suspendisse potenti
 vēstimenta maris deō.

5

10

15

*quis, here, interrog. pron. used adjectivally, what, which

aequor, aequoris *n.* level surface; sea, water

amābilis, amābile lovable

antrum, antri *n.* cave, cavern, grotto

asper, aspera, asperum harsh, fierce, pitiless; severe

aura, aurae *f.* breeze

aureus, -a, -um golden

coma, comae *f.* hair

crēdulus, -a, -um trusting, credulous

ēmiror (1-tr.) (thoroughly) admire, marvel at, be astonished at

fallāx, fallācis deceptive, treacherous

flāvus, -a, -um golden-yellow, flaxen, blond

flēō, flēre, flēvī, flētus weep (for)

fruo, frui, fructus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)

gracilis, gracile slender, thin, fine

grātus, -a, -um grateful, pleased; charming, pleasing

indicō (1-tr.) declare, indicate

insolēns, insolentis unaccustomed, unfamiliar

intemptatus, -a, -um untried

liquidus, -a, -um liquid, clear

munditia, munditiae *f.* elegance, neatness

mūtō (1-tr.) change

nescius, -a, -um not knowing, unaware (+ gen.)

niger, nigra, nigrum dark, black

niteō, nitēre, nitui, — be radiant, shine

odor, odoris *m.* odor, scent

parietis, parietis *m.* wall (of a building)

perfundō, perfundere, perfūdī perfusus pour over spray, drench

potēns, potentis powerful, having power over (+ gen.)

Pyrrha, Pyrrhae *f.* Pyrrha, addressee of the poem

quotiēns (adv.) how many times

religō (1-tr.) bind back, bind up; unbind

rosa, rosae *f.* rose

sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred

simplex simplicis simple, plain

spērō (1-tr.) hope (for)

suspendō, suspendere, suspendī suspēnsus

hang, suspend, hang up

tabula, tabulae *f.* plank, tablet plaque, picture

urgeō, urgēre, ursī, — weigh down; press

hard; urge, pursue

ūvidus, -a, -um moist, wet, damp

vacuus, -a, -um empty, idle, free, available; care-free, disengaged

ventus, ventī *m.* wind

vestimentum, vestimentī *n.* garment, clothing

vōtīvus, -a, -um votive, offered in fulfillment of a vow

15. Horace, *Carmina* II.9 (Alcaic strophe; see §112)

The poet advises a lugubrious friend, Valgius.

Nōn semper imbrēs nūbibus hispidōs
mānant in agrōs aut mare Caspium
vexant inaequālēs procellae
ūsque nec Armeniis in ōris,

amīce Valgi, stat glaciēs iners
mēnsis per omnis aut Aquilōnibus
querquēta Gargānī labōrant
et foliis viduantur ornī:

tū semper urgēs flēbilibus modis
Mystēn adēptum nec tibi vesperō
surgente dēcēdunt amōrēs
nec rapidum fugiente sōlem.

5

10

adimō, adimere, adēmī, adēptus remove, take
away

Aquilō, Aquilōnis *m.* Aquilo, the north wind

Armenius, -a, -um Armenian

Caspian, -a, -um Caspian

dēcēdō (dē- + cēdō) go down, depart

flēbilis, flēbile plaintive, tearful

folium, foliū *n.* leaf

Gargānus, Gargānī *m.* Garganus, a mountain in

Horace's home district of Apulia

glaciēs, glaciē *f.* ice

hispidus, -a, -um hairy, rough, bristly

imber, imbris, -ium *m.* rain, shower

inaequālis, inaequāle uneven, unlike; that

roughens the sea

iners, inertis inactive, idle, inert

mānō (1-intr.) trickle, drip, stream, flow

mēnsis, mēnsis, -ium *m.* month

Mystēs, Mystae *m.* Mystes; Mystēn = *acc. sing.*

nūbēs, nūbis, -ium *f.* cloud

ōra, ōrae *f.* shore

ornus, ornī *f.* ash tree

procella, procellae *f.* blast (of wind), windstorm

querquētum, querquētī *n.* oak forest, oak grove

rapidus, -a, -um tearing away, consuming,

rushing, rapid

sol, solis *m.* sun

surgō, surgere, surrēxi surrēctus rise, rise up

urgēō, urgēre, ursi, — weigh down; press hard

ūsque (adv.) continuously

Valgius, Valgī *m.* (C) Valgius (Rufus), an

Augustan elegiac poet and addressee of

the poem

vesper, vesperī *m.* Vesper, the evening star,

evening

vexō (1-tr.) trouble, disturb, harass

viduō (1-intr.) deprive of (+ abl.)

at nōn ter aevō fūctus amābilem

plōrāvit omnīs Antilochum senex

annōs nec inpūbem parentēs

15

Troilon aut Phrygiae sorōrēs

flēvēre semper. dēsine mollium

tandem querellārum et potius nova

cantēmus Augusti tropaea

Caesaris et rigidum Niphātē,

20

Mēdumque flūmen gentibus additum

victis minōrēs volvere verticēs

intrāque praescriptum Gelōnōs

exiguū equitāre campīs.

addō (ad- + dō) add

aevum, aevi *n.* age lifetime, period of time, generation

amābilis, amābile lovable

Antilochus, Antilochi *m.* Antilochus son of Nestor, slain by Memnon

at (conj.) but

Augustus, Augusti *m.* Augustus

cantō (1 +) sing (of)

dēsino, dēsinare, dēsī or dēsivī, dēsitum stop, cease; cease (from) (+ gen.)

equitō (1-intr.) ride (on horseback)

exiguus, -a, -um small, slight, brief

flēō, flēre, flēvī, flētus weep (for)

flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream

fungor, fungī, fūctus sum perform, execute; complete (+ abl.)

Gelōni, Gelōnōrum *m. pl.* the Geloni, a nomadic tribe of Scythians who often made raids on horseback into Roman territory

gēns, gentis, -ium *f.* nation, people; clan, family

inpūbēs, inpūbis underage, youthful, beardless

intra (prep. + acc.) within

Mēdus, -a, -um of or belonging to the Medes,

Median, Persian; Mēdum flūmen the Euphrates, by which dwelled the Parthians

mollis, molle gentle, mild, soft

Niphātēs, Niphātae *m.* the Niphates, a mountain range in Armenia; Niphātē *acc. sing.*

parēs, parentis, -ium *m. or f.* parent

Phrygius, -a, -um of or belonging to Phrygia (the region around Troy), Phrygian, Trojan

plōrō (1-tr.) weep for, mourn

potius (adv.) rather

praescriptum, praescripti *n.* boundary line, limit

querella, querellae *f.* complaint, lament

rigidus, -a, -um rigid, stiff; inflexible, frozen

senex, senis old, *as masc. subst.*, old man

ter (adv.) three times, thrice

Troilus, Troili *m.* Troilus, youngest son of Priam and Hecuba, killed by Achilles, Troilon = *acc. sing.*

tropaeum, tropaei *n.* trophy; victory

vertex, verticis *m.* swirling water, whirlpool, eddy

volvo, volvere, volvi, volūtus turn, turn over, roll

16. Horace, *Ars Poetica* 323–26

The poet compares Greeks and Romans.

Graīs ingenium, Graīs dedit ore rotundō

Mūsa loquī, praeter laudem nūllūs avāris.

Rōmānī pueri longis ratiōnibus assem

discunt in partīs centum didūcere . . .

325

as, assis, -ium *m.* as (a small denomination of Roman money)

avārus, -a, -um greedy, rapacious; hungry (for) (+ gen.)

didūcō (dis- + dūcō) divide, split

discō, discere, didici, — learn (how) (+ inf.)

Graius, -a, -um Greek; Graīs = *dat. pl.*,

Graīs scans as if it were spelled *Graīfs.

laus, laudis *f.* praise

Mūsa, Mūsae *f.* Muse

ōs, ōris *n.* mouth

praeter (prep. + acc.) beyond, except

ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; calculation

rotundus, -a, -um rounded

The *Ars Poetica* is one of Horace's *Epistulae*, a collection of long hexameter didactic poems on a variety of subjects. The poet of the *Ars Poetica* offers observations and guidance on poetry generally and drama in particular. This playful, imaginative, and insightful 476-line poem speaks with authority on both style and content, but its overall structure and prescription for poetry are elusive.

17. Ovid, *Ars Amatoria* I.61–66

The poet reassures a whole variety of future lovers.

seu caperis primīs et adhūc crēscētibz annīs,

ante oculōs veniet vērā puella tuōs;

sive cupis iuvenem, iuvenēs tibi mille placēbunt

cōgēris vōtī nescius esse tuī;

seu tē forte* iuvat sēra et sapientior aetās,

65

hoc quoque, crēde mihi,[†] plēnius agmen erit.

*fors, fortis, -ium *f.* chance, luck

[†]The final -i of mihi here scans long

adhūc (adv.) up to the present time still

aetas, aetātis *f.* age, time of life

agmen, agminis *n.* (battle) line; throng; train

cōgō (cō- + agō), cōgere, cōgēi, cōactus drive together, force, compel

crēscō, crēscere, crēvi, crētus grow, increase

iuvenis, iuvenis *m.* or *f.* young man, young woman

iuvō, iuvāre, iuvi, iutus help, assist, aid; give pleasure, delight

nescius, -a, -um not knowing, unaware (+ gen.)

plēnus, -a, -um full

sērus, -a, -um late, advanced

sive or seu (conj.) or if; sive (seu) . . . sive (seu) . . . whether . . . or if . . .

vōtum, vōtī *n.* vow, prayer; desire

18. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* VII 17–23

After the Colchian king Aeetes explains the impossible labors that Jason and the Argonauts must perform in order to win the Golden Fleece, the king's daughter Medea scolds herself for the feelings aroused in her by the handsome stranger Jason.

excute virgineō conceptās pectore flammās,
 sī potes, infelix! sī possem, sānior essem!
 sed trahit invitam nova vis, aliudque cupīdō,
 mēns aliud suadet: videō meliōra probōque,
 dēteriōra sequor! quid* in† hospite, rēgia virgō,
 ūreris et thalamos alienī concipis orbis?
 haec quoque terra potest quod amēs dare...

26

*quid, *here* (adv.), why

†in, *here*, in the case of

aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another; alien,
 strange; foreign

concupiō (con- + capiō) conceive, produce,
 imagine

cupīdō, cupīdinis *f.* desire

dēteriōr, dēteriūs worse

excutiō, excutere, excussi, excussus throw out,
 shake off, drive away

flamma, flammae *f.* flame

hospes, hospitis *m.* guest, visitor, stranger, host

invītus, -a, -um unwilling

orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; world, region

probō (1-tr.) approve of

regius, -a, -um royal

sānus, -a, -um healthy, sane

suādeō, suādēre, suāsi, suāsus recommend,
 urge, advise

thalamus, thalamī *m. in sing. or pl.* inner room,
 wedding chamber; marriage

trahō, trahere, trāxi, tractus draw, drag

ūrō, ūrere, ussi, ustus burn, scorch, inflame,
 consume

virgineus, -a, -um of or belonging to a maiden,
 maidenly

virgō, virginis *f.* maiden, virgin

19. Ovid, *Tristia* II.421–30

After defending his poetic license by reference to Greek writers, the poet turns to Roman writers for support as well.

nēve peregrinīs tantum dēfendar ab armīs,
 et Rōmānus habet multa iocōsa liber.
 utque suō Martem cecinit gravis Ennius ōre—
 Ennius ingenio maximus, arte rudis—
 explicat ut causās rapidī Lucrētius ignis,
 cāsūrumque triplex vaticinātur opus,*
 sic sua† lascivō cantāta est saepe Catullō‡
 fēmina, cui falsum Lesbia nōmen erat;
 nec contentus eā, multōs vulgāvit amōrēs,
 in quibus ipse suum fassus adulterium est.

425

430

*cāsūrum triplex . opus refers to

Lucretius's prediction about the future of the universe, which he divides into the sea, land, and sky.

†sua, refers to Catullō, his own

‡Catullō, Dative of Agent

adulterium, adulteriū n. adultery

cantō (1-tr.) sing (of)

contentus, -a, -um content, satisfied, contained

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendi, dēfēsus protect, defend

Ennius, Ennī m. Ennius

explicō (1 tr.) unfold, reveal, explain

iocōsus, -a, -um full of jokes; laughable, funny

lascivus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from restraint

Lucrētius, Lucrētī m. Lucretius

nēve (conj.) = nē + -ve (enclitic conj.) or

nōmen, nōminis n. name

os, ōris n. mouth; voice; eloquence

peregrīnus, -a, -um foreign

rapidus, -a, -um tearing away, consuming;

rushing, rapid

rudis, rude unformed, rough; crude, unrefined, unfinished

tantum (adv.) only

triplex, triplicis threefold; tripartite

vaticinor (1-tr.) warn of, predict, prophesy

vulgō (1-tr.) make (something) public; make famous

The *Tristia* is one of two works composed by Ovid after he was forced to leave Rome by Augustus in 8 c.e. In five books of elegiac verse the poet interweaves appeals to Augustus for his recall with accounts of life and weather in an uncivilized land far from Rome.

20. Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita* V.49.6

After the long, painful siege of Rome by the Gauls that nearly ends in surrender, the Romans, led by the dictator Camillus, rout the Gauls first in Rome and then outside it. The historian describes the second battle.

ibi caedes omnia obtinuit; castra capiuntur et nē nuntius quidem clādis relictus. dictātor reciperātā ex hostibus patriā triumphāns in urbem redit, interque iocōs militārēs quōs inconditōs iaciunt, Romulus ac parēns patriae conditorque alter urbis haud vānīs laudibus appellābātur

appellō (1-tr.) name, call

caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter

clādes, clādis *f.* slaughter, destruction

conditor, conditōris *m.* founder

dictātor, dictātōris *m.* dictator, an emergency

officer with unlimited powers

haud (adv.) not at all, by no means

ibi (adv.) there, then

inconditus, -a, -um unpolished rough, crude

iocus, iocī *m.* joke, jest

laus, laudis *f.* praise

militāris, militāre *military*

nuntius, nuntī *m.* messenger

obtineō (ob- + teneō), obtinēre, obtinui, obtentus
persist in; extend over, have a hold on

parēns, parentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* parent

reciperō (1-tr.) get back, recover, regain

triumphō (1-intr.) celebrate a triumph, triumph

vānus -a, -um empty, illusory, groundless, false

21. Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita* XXII.49.10

Aemilius Paulus responds to Cn. Lentulus's request that he, Paulus, save himself and leave the ravaged battlefield.

"abi, nuntiā publicē patribus: urbem Rōmānam mūniant ac priusquam victor hostis adveniat praesidiū firment; privātim Q. Fabiō L. Aemiliūm praeceptōrum eius memorem et vixisse adhūc et mori. mē in hac strage militum meorum patere exspirāre, nē aut reus iterum ē cōsulātū sim <aut>* accūsātor collēgae existam ut aliēnō crimine innocentiam meam prōtegā." haec eōs agentēs† prius turba fugientium civium, deinde hostēs oppressere.

*Pointed brackets mark an element added by scholars.

†agō, here, speak about, discuss

accūsātor, accūsātōris *m.* accuser, prosecutor

adhūc (adv.) up to this time

adveniō (ad- + veniō) arrive; adveniat, *subjunc.* expressing anticipation, can arrive

L. Aemilius, L. Aemiliū *m.* L. Aemilius (Paulus) (consul 216 B.C.E.), one of the Roman leaders at the disastrous battle of Cannae

aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another; done by another

collēga, collēgae *m.* colleague (in office)

crimen, criminis *n.* charge, accusation; crime

deinde (adv.) then, thereupon; next

ex(s)istō, ex(s)istere, ex(s)istī, — stand out, appear; prove to be

ex(s)pirō (1-intr.) breathe out, expire, die

Q. Fabius, Q. Fabiū *m.* Q. Fabius (Maximus) (consul 233, 228, 215, 214, 209 B.C.E.; censor 230, dictator 217) one of the heroes of the second Punic war

firmō (1-tr.) strengthen

innocentia, innocentiae *f.* innocence

iterum (adv.) again, a second time

memor, memoris *m.* mindful, remembering (+ gen.)

mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvi or mūnī, mūnītus fortify

nuntiō (1-tr.) announce, report

opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus press down, suppress; overwhelm, crush

praeceptum, praeceptū *n.* (piece of) advice, instruction

praesidium, praesidiū *n.* guard, garrison

priusquam (conj. + indic. or subjunc.) before

privātim (adv.) in private, privately

prōtegō, prōtegere, prōtēxi, prōtēctus protect, defend

reus, rei *m.* defendant; when Paulus was first consul in 219, he was accused of embezzlement

strāges, strāgis *f.* destruction, slaughter

turba, turbae *f.* crowd

victor, victōris *m.* conqueror, victor

22. Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita* XXX.30.18

In 202 B.C. E. a besieged Hannibal attempted to negotiate terms of peace with his respected Roman counterpart, the great Roman general Scipio Africanus. Scipio rejected Hannibal's pleas and then decisively defeated the Carthaginians in the last battle of the second Punic war. The following passage is a portion of Hannibal's speech to Scipio as reported by the historian. Hannibal tries to convince Scipio to avoid a pitched battle.

maximae cuique* fortunae minimē crēdendum est. in bonis tuis rēbus, nostris dubiis, tibi ampla ac speciōsa danti est pāx, nobis petentibus magis necessāria quam honesta. melior tutiorque est certa pāx quam spērāta victōria; haec in tuā, illa in deōrum manu est. nē tot annōrum fēlicitātem in† unius hōrae dederis† discrimen.

*cuique = fem. sing. dat. of indef. adj. each

†dare . . . in . . . to consign . . . to . . .

amplus, -a, -um great, distinguished

discrimen, discriminis *n.* dividing line, difference; decision, critical point

dubius -a, -um uncertain doubtful

fēlicitās, fēlicitātis *f.* good fortune, luck; prosperity

hōra, hōrae *f.* hour

necessārius, -a, -um necessary

speciōsus, -a, -um attractive, splendid

spērō (1-tr.) hope (for), expect

tot (indeclinable adj.) so many

tōtus, -a, -um safe

victōria, victōriae *f.* victory

23. Seneca the Younger, *Dialogi* IV.31.4

The philosopher advises Novatus on what kind of behavior he may expect from human beings.

quid enim mīnum est malōs mala facinora ēdere? quid novī est si inimicus nocet, amicus offendit, filius lābitur, servus peccat? turpissimam aiēbat Fabius imperātōrī excūsātiōnem esse "non putavi." ego turpissimam hominī putō. omnia putā, expectā: etiam in bonīs mōribus aliquid existet asperius. fert* hūmāna nātūra insidiōsōs animōs, fert ingrātos, fert cupidōs, fert impiōs. cum† dē ūnūs mōribus iūdicābis, dē publicīs cōgitā. ubi maximē gaudēbis, maxime metuēs; ubi tranquillā tibi omnia videntur, ibi nocitūra nōn dēsunt sed quiēscunt. semper futūrum aliquid quod tē offendat existimā.

*ferō, here, produce

†cum, here (conj.) when

aiō (defective verb) say; aiēbat = 3rd sing. imperf. act. indic.

aliquid = neut. sing. nom. or acc. of indef. pron., something

asper, aspera, asperum harsh, fierce, pitiless; severe

dēsum (dē- + sum), dēesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus be absent, be lacking

ēdō (ē- + dō) emit; produce, perform; commit excūsatio, excūsātiōnis f excuse

ex(s)istō, ex(s)istere, ex(s)itū, — stand out, appear

existimō (1-tr.) reckon, suppose, think

ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) wait for, await, expect

Fabius, Fabiū m. (Q.) Fabius (Maximus), hero of the second Punic war

facinus, facinoris n. deed; crime

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice (in), be glad, be pleased

hūmānus, -a, -um human

ibi (adv.) there; then

ingratus, -a, -um ungrateful; unpleasant, displeasing

insidiōsus, -a, -um treacherous, deceitful

iūdicō (1-tr.) form an opinion, judge, determine

lābor, lābi, lāpsus sum slip, glide; fall, fall into error

metuō, metuere, metui, — fear, dread

mīrus, -a, -um marvelous, astonishing

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus be harmful, do harm

offendō, offendere, offendi, offēnsus trouble, upset, give offense to, annoy

peccō (1-antr.) make a mistake; do wrong

quiēscō, quiēscere quievi, quietum be asleep, be dormant, lie quiet

tranquillus, -a, -um calm, quiet, still

turpis, turpe foul, ugly; base, shameful

In twelve books together given the title *Dialogi* (Dialogues), although they are not written in dialogue form, Seneca discusses a number of moral and philosophical ideas. For the most part each book is addressed to a different person and treats a single question. Three books of the *Dialogi* (III–V) discuss fully the question of how anger may be restrained. Taken together they are often entitled *De Ira*.

24. Florus, *Epitoma Bellorum Omnium* I.31

Florus summarizes the opinions of two famous Romans about how best to deal with Carthage after that city had rearmed itself for the first time in fifty years (ca. 152 B.C.E.).

Cato inexpiabili odiō delendam esse Carthaginem, et cum* de alio cōsuleretur, prōnuntiābat, Scipiō Nāsica servandam, nē metū ablātō aemulae luxuriārī fēlicitās urbis inciperet; medium senātus ēlēgit ut urbs tantum locō movērētur. nīhīl enim speciosius videbatur quam esse Carthaginem quae non timēretur.

*cum, *here* (conj. + subjunc.), (under the circumstances) when

aemulus, -a, -um emulous, rival

cōsulō, cōsulere, cōsului, cōsultus take counsel, consult, consider

ēligō (ē- + legō) ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus select, choose

fēlicitās, fēlicitātis *f.* good fortune, luck; prosperity

incipiō (in- + capiō) take on, begin

inexpiabilis, inexpiabile implacable

luxurior (1-tr.) revel, luxuriate, become intoxicated

prōnuntiō (1-tr.) proclaim, pronounce, declare

Scipiō Nāsica, Scipiōnis Nāsicae *m.*

(P. Cornelius) Scipio Nasica (consul

162 B.C.E., censor 159), political opponent of

Cato the Elder

speciōsus, -a, -um attractive, splendid

tantum (adv.) only

Nothing certain is known about the writer Florus—not even his first name. One of the works that is attributed to a writer named Florus is entitled *Epitoma de Tito Livio Bellorum Omnium Annorum DCC* (An Abridgement from Titus Livius of All the Wars of Seven Hundred Years). The work is a concise summary and reconstruction of the history of Roman military encounters and the rise of the Roman people to prominence in the Mediterranean. Although the title suggests that the author is summarizing the historian Livy, Florus's *Epitoma* makes reference to that historian among many other historians and writers. Internal evidence, as well as the association of the Florus of the *Epitoma* with other writers of the same name, suggests that the work was written in the second century C.E.

Continuous Readings

1. Cicero, *In Catilinam* I 11

Having revealed Catiline's dangerous plans, Cicero boasts of his own survival.

magna dis immortalibus habenda est atque huic ipsi Iovi Statōri, antiquissimō custōdi huius urbis, grātia, quod* hanc tam taetram, tam horribilem tamque infestam rei publicae pestem totiēns iam effūgimus. nōn est saepius in[†] unō homine summa salūs periclitanda rei publicae. quam diū[‡] mihi cōsuli dēsignatō, Catilīna, insidiātus es, nōn publicō mē praesidiō, sed privātā diligentīā dēfendī. cum proximis comitiis cōsulāribus mē cōsulem in campō et competitōrēs tuōs interficere voluisti, compressi cōnatūs tuōs nefāriōs amicōrum praesidiō et cōpiis nullō tumultū publicē concitātō; dēnique, quotiēscumque mē petisti, per me tibi obstiti, quamquam vidēbam perniciem meam cum magnā calamitatē rei publicae esse coniūctam.

*quod, here (conj.), because

†in, here, in the case of

‡quam diū, here, as long as

calamitās, calamitātis f. disaster misfortune, injury

comitia cōsulāria, comitiōrum cōsulārium n. pl. election of consuls

competitor, competitoris m. competitor, rival

comprimō, comprimere, compressi, compressus crush; subdue, suppress

cōnatūs, cōnatūs m. attempt

conciō (1 tr.) stir up rouse

coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūctus join together

custōs, custōdis m. or f. guardian, protector, sentry

dēfendo, defendere, defendi, dēfensus protect, defend

dēnique (adv.) finally, at last

dēsignātus, -a, -um elect, appointed (but not yet installed)

effugio (ex- + fugiō) flee from, escape

grātia, grātia f. favor, kindness, gratitude, thanks

horribilis, horribile terrifying, dreadful

immortalis, immortalē immortal

infestus, -a, -um hostile, harmful

insidior (1-intr.) lie in wait for; plot against (+ dat.)

nefārius, -a, -um unspeakable, wicked

obstō (ob- + stō), obstāre, obstiti, obstātum stand in the way; hinder, block (+ dat.)

perclitor (1-tr.) put in peril, endanger

perniciēs, perniciēs f. destruction, ruin, disaster

pestis, pestis, -ium f. plague destruction, ruin

praesidium, praesidiū n. guard, garrison

privātus, -a, -um private

proximus -a, -um nearest; most recent, last

quotiēscumque (conj.) however often, as often as

Stator, Statōris m. (the) Stayer or Protector

taeter, taetra, taetrum repulsive, foul

tam (adv.) so

totiēns (adv.) so many times

tumultus, tumultūs m. commotion, uproar

volō, velle, volui, — be willing, want, wish

Cicero's first speech, *In Catilinam* I, was delivered before the members of the senate (including Catiline himself) in 63 B.C.E. Having learned that Catiline had recruited an army and was planning the murders of all the leading men of the state, the consul Cicero sought to inform the senate and win their approval for action against the conspirators. Despite some strong support, even among the senators, Catiline and his forces were ultimately defeated, and Catiline was killed in a battle north of Rome.

2. Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae* 1

Sallust begins his account of the Catilinarian conspiracy with a broad discussion of the human condition.

Omnis homines qui sēse student praestare cēteris animālibus summā ope nīti decet nē vitam silentiō trāseant, velutī pecora quae nātūra prōna atque ventri oboedientia finxit. sed nostra omnis vīs in animō et corpore sita est: animi imperiō, corporis servi-tiō magis ūtimur; alterum nobis cum dīs, alterum cum bēluīs commūne est. quō mihi rēctius vidētur ingeni quam vīrium opibus glōriam quaerere, et, quoniam vita ipsa qua fruimur brevis est, memoriam nostrī quam maxumē longam* efficere; nam divitiarum et formae glōria fluxa atque fragilis est, virtus clāra aeternaue habētur.

*quam maxumē longam = quam longissimam

aeternus, -a, -um eternal, everlasting

bēlua, bēluae *f.* wild beast

cēterus, -a, -um rest (of), remaining part (of),
(the) other

commūnis commūne common, shared; held in
common

deceat, decēre, decuit, — (impersonal verb) it is
becoming, it is proper (+ acc. + inf.)

divitiae, divitiarum *f. pl.* wealth, riches

efficiō (ex- + faciō) bring about

figō, fingere, finxi, fictus form, fashion, make;
imagine

fluxus, -a, -um flowing, loose; weak, fleeting,
perishable

forma, formae *f.* shape, form; beauty

fragilis, fragile easily broken, frail

frui, frui, fructus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)

maxumē = maximē

memoria, memoriae *f.* memory, remembrance

nīti, nīti, nīti sum rest upon, rely on
(+ abl.); make an effort, strive

oboediēns, oboedientis obedient, compliant,
subject

ops, opis *f.* power, ability, might, effort; in *pl.*,
power resources, wealth

pecus, pecoris *n.* (herd) animal, livestock; in *pl.*,
farm animals

praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestitum stand
before, be superior, excel (+ dat.)

prōnus, -a, -um leaning or bending forward

rēctus -a, -um straight; right, correct

servitium, servitiū *n.* slavery

silentium, silentiū *n.* silence; silentiō, *Ablative of*
Manner, in silence

situs, -a, -um placed, set, situated

studeō, studēre, studui, — be eager, desire

trāseō (trāns- + eō), trānsire, trānsī or trānsivī,
trānsitus go across, pass through

velutī (conj.) even as, just as

venter, ventris *m.* belly, stomach

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.491–505

instat vī patriā* Pyrrhus; nec claustra nec ipsi
 custōdēs sufferre valent; labat ariete crēbrō
 iānua, et ēmōtī prōcumbunt cardine postēs.
 fit via vī; rumpunt aditūs primōsque trucidant
 immussī Danaī et lātē loca milite complent.
 nōn sic, aggeribus ruptis cum¹ spūmeus amnis
 exiit oppositāsque ēvicit gurgite mōlēs,
 fertur in arva furēns cumulō campōsque per omnis
 cum stabulīs armenta trahit. vidi ipse furentem
 caede Neoptolemum geminōsque in limine Atridās,
 vīdī Hecubam centumque nurūs Priamumque per ārās
 sanguine foedantem quōs ipse sacrāverat ignis.

495

500

*patrius, -a, -um, of or belonging to a father,
 paternal, ancestral
¹cum, *here* (conj. + perf. indic.), whenever;
 translate exiit and ēvicit as pres. indic.
 aditus, aditūs *m.* approach, entrance, doorway
 agger, aggeris *m.* mound; bank (of a river)
 amnis, amnis, -ium *m.* stream, torrent
 ariēs, arietis *m.* (battering) ram, the -i- of ariete
 is here consonantal for purposes of scansion
 armentum, armenti *n.* herd, bull, head of cattle;
m. pl., cattle
 arvum, arvi *n.* (ploughed) field
 Atrides, Atridae *m.* son of Atreus (either
 Agamemnon or Menelaus)
 caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter
 cardō, cardinis *m.* pivot; hinge
 claustrum, claustrī *n.* bolt, bar
 complēō, complēre, complēvi, complētus
 fill completely
 crēber, crēbra, crēbrum frequent, repeated
 cumulus, cumuli *m.* heap, pile; mass, wave
 custōs, custōdis *m.* or *f.* guard(ian), protector,
 sentry
 Danaī, Danaōrum *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks
 ēmoveō (ē- + moveō) remove, dislodge
 ēvincō (ē- + vincō) defeat utterly, overcome
 exēō (ex- + eō), exire, exī or exivī, exiit go out
 fieri, factus sum be made, fit = 3rd sing. pres.
act. indic.
 foedō (1-tr.) befoul, defile
 furō, furere, —, — be crazy; rage, rave
 geminus, -a, -um twin-born, twin

gurgis, gurgitis *m.* swirling water, eddy,
 whirlpool
 Hecuba, Hecubae *f.* Hecuba, wife of Priam
 iānua, iānuae *f.* door
 immittō (in- + mittō) send *m.* send against
 instō (in- + stō), instāre, institī, instātūrus press
 (hostilely), press on
 labō, labāre, labāvī, — be shaky, totter,
 give way
 lātē (adv.) widely, far and wide
 limen, liminis *n.* entrance, doorway, threshold
 mōlēs, mōlis, -ium *f.* mass; dam
 Neoptolemus, Neoptolemī *m.* Neoptolemus, son
 of Achilles (= Pyrrhus)
 nurus, nurūs *f.* daughter-in-law
 oppōnō (ob- + pōnō) place in the way, place
 against
 postis, postis, -ium *m.* doorpost, jamb
 prōcumbō, prōcumbere, procubui, prōcubitum
 bend forward; fall down, crash
 Pyrrhus, Pyrrhi *m.* Pyrrhus, son of Achilles
 (= Neoptolemus)
 rumpō, rumpere, rūpi, ruptus split, burst, break
 sacrō (1-tr.) make sacred, consecrate
 sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood
 spūmeus, -a, -um foamy, frothy
 stabulum, stabuli *n.* stable, shed, stall
 sufferō (sub- + ferō), sufferre, sustuli, sublātus
 endure, withstand
 trahō, trahere, trāxi, tractus draw, drag
 trucidō (1-tr.) slaughter, butcher

quinguāgintā illi thalami, spēs tanta nepōtum,
 barbaricō postēs aurō spoliisque superbī
 procubuēre, tenent Danaī qua* deficit ignis.

505

*quā, *here* (adv.), where

barbaricus, -a, -um barbarian

Danaī, Danaorum *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks

dēficiō (dē- + faciō) let down, fail

nepōs, nepōtis *m.* grandson

postis, postis, -ium *m.* doorpost, jamb

prōcumbō, prōcumbere, prōcubui, prōcubitum

bend forward; fall down, crash

spolium, spoliū *n.* booty, spoil

superbus, -a, -um proud; haughty

tantus, -a, -um so great

thalamus, thalami *m. in sing. or pl.* inner room,
 wedding chamber; marriage

4. Ovid, *Metamorphoses* 1.463–77

filius huic Veneris "figat tuus omnia, Phoebe,
 tē meus arcus," ait: "quantoque animālia cēdunt
 cuncta deō, tantō minor est tua glōria nostrā."
 dīxit et ēlisō percussīs āere pennīs
 impiger umbrōsā Parnāsī cōstitit arce
 ēque sagittiferā prōmpsit duo tēla pharetrā
 diversōrum operum: fugat hoc, facit illud amōrem.
 quod facit, aurātum est et cuspidē fulget acūtā:
 quod fugat, obtusum est et habet sub harundine plumbum.
 hoc deus in nymphā Pēnēide fixit, at illō
 laesit Apollineās trāiecta per ossa medullās.
 prōtinus alter amat, fugit altera nōmen amantis
 silvarum latebris captivārumque ferārum
 exuviīs gaudēs innuptaeque aemula Phoebēs.
 vitta coērcēbat positos sine lēge capillōs.

acūtus, -a, -um sharp, pointed
 aemulus, -a, -um emulous, rivaling (+ gen.)
 āer, āeris *m.* air
 aiō (defective verb) say; ait = 3rd sing. pres. act
 indic.
 Apollineus, -a, -um of or belonging to Apollo
 arcus, arcūs *m.* bow (for shooting arrows)
 arx, arcis *f.* tower, citadel; height, peak
 at (conj.) but
 aurātus, -a, -um made of gold, golden
 capillus, capillī *m.* in sing. or pl. hair
 captivus, -a -um captive, captured (in hunting or
 fishing)
 coērcēō, coērcēre, coērcuī, coērcitus restrain,
 keep back
 cōsistō, cōsistere, cōstitī, — make a stand,
 halt
 cinctus, -a, -um all
 cuspidis, cuspidis *f.* sharp point, tip
 diversus, -a, -um different
 ēlido, ēlidere, ēlīsī, ēlīsus break thoroughly,
 batter, cut
 exuviae, exuviārum *f. pl.* (stripped) armor, skin(s)
 fera, ferae *f.* wild animal, beast
 figō, figere, fixi, fixus fix, pierce
 fugo (1-tr.) cause to flee, put to flight
 fulgēō, fulgēre, fulsī, — shine, gleam
 gaudeō, gaudere, gāvisus sum rejoice (in)
 be glad, be pleased
 harundō, harundinis *f.* reed; (arrow) shaft
 innuptus, -a, -um unmarried, maiden
 impiger, impigra, impigrum not slow, energetic,
 brisk

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus injure, harm, wound
 latebra, latebrae *f.* hiding place, lair, recess
 medulla, medullae *f.* marrow, in pl., vitals,
 innards
 nōmen, nōminis *n.* name
 nympa, nymphae *f.* nymph, a semidivine spirit
 obtūsus, -a, -um blunt, dull
 os, ossis *n.* bone
 Parnasus, Parnasi *m.* Parnassus, a mountain in
 Greece
 Pēnēis, Pēnēidos descended from the river god
 Peneus; Pēnēide = *abl. sing.*
 penna, pennae *f.* wing
 percutiō, percutere, percussī, percussus strike,
 beat, percussis . . . pennis, by the beating of
 wings
 pharetra, pharetrae *f.* quiver
 Phoebe, Phoebes *f.* Phoebe (Diana), Phoebes =
gen. sing.
 Phoebus, Phoebi *m.* Phoebus (Apollo)
 plumbum, plumbi *n.* lead
 prōmō, prōmere, prōmpsi prōmptus bring
 forth, draw
 prōtinus (adv.) immediately, straightway
 quantus, -a, -um how much
 sagittifer, sagittifera, sagittiferum arrow bearing
 silva, silvae *f.* forest
 tantus, -a, -um so much
 trāciō (trāns- + iaciō) pierce, transfix
 umbrōsus, -a, -um shady
 vitta, vittae *f.* headband

§112. About Meter II

The Roman poets learned from Greek models the dactylic hexameter, the meter of epic, and the elegiac couplet, the meter of love poetry (see §82). Some also chose to imitate meters of such Greek lyric poets as Archilochus, Sappho, and Alcaeus.¹

Lyric poetry (originally so called because it was recited with the accompaniment of music played on a lyre) most often found its subject matter in the events and concerns of personal, private life: friendship, humor, love, wine, mortality. Both Catullus and Horace brought lyric meters into Latin poetry, but in his four books of *Odes*, Horace demonstrated mastery of a far greater variety of these meters.

Since *all* Latin poetry is quantitative, the basic rules for scanning lyric meters (for determining long and short syllables and marking elisions) are the same as those used for scanning dactylic hexameters and elegiac couplets. Some lyric poems use dactylic lines or sequences of dactylic feet, but many lyric meters have lines that are *not* divided into feet.

Certain lyric units may be learned and identified, but one generally learns the metrical scheme for each complete lyric line. Some lyric poems have only one metrical scheme that is repeated in every line (*stichic verse*), some have two metrical schemes in alternation (*couplets*), and others have four lines that repeat (*strophic* or *stanzaic verse*).

Stichic verse is indicated when each line begins at the left-hand margin. (For example, dactylic hexameter is stichic verse.) Each *indented* line indicates a metrically different line.

Common Terms and Metrical Units of Latin Lyric Poetry

acephalous (< Greek *akephalos*, headless) missing the first element

metron (< Greek *metron*, measure) the smallest metrical unit allowed in a given scheme

dimeter consisting of two metra

trimeter consisting of three metra

tetrameter consisting of four metra

pentameter consisting of five metra

hexameter consisting of six metra

NOTE: FOR DACTYLS ONE DACTYLIC FOOT = ONE METRON

FOR IAMBS, TROCHEES, AND ANAPESTS TWO FEET = ONE METRON

iamb ∪ –

iambic metron x – ∪ ∪

bacchiac ∪ ∪

dactyl – ∪ ∪

1. Other Roman poets wrote tragedies and imitated the meters found in Greek tragic poetry. The Roman adaptations of these meters are not presented in this book.

spondee --
 adonic ----x
 hemiepes ----x
 anapest ---
 trochee --
 trochaic metron ---x
 cretic --
 choriamb ----
 glyconic xx---x
 hipponactean xx----x
 pherecratean xx----x

Hendecasyllable

Many of the short poems of Catullus employ a repeating eleven-syllable line with this scheme:

xx-----x
 - - - - -
 iam vē ēgelidōs refert tepōrēs
 - - - - -
 iam caelī furor aequinoctiālis

OBSERVATIONS

1. The first two syllables and the last syllable are *anceps* (see §82).
2. The hendecasyllabic line is basically *iambic* in rhythm. An *iamb* is a metrical unit composed of one short syllable followed by one long syllable (–). The unit --, called a *choriamb*, is characteristic of this meter and several other lyric meters. Meters constructed around the *choriamb* are called *Aeolic* meters.
3. A word usually ends after the fifth or sixth syllable, and this word end may be considered the line's caesural pause.

Choliambic (Limping Iambic)

Several of Catullus's short poems employ a repeating iambic line with this scheme.

x -- / x -- / x - x
 - - - - -
 Miser Catul/le, dēsinās / ineptīre
 - - - - -
 et quod vidēs / perīsse per/ditum dūcās.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The sequence x -- is called an *iambic metron* (< Greek *metron*, measure) and is composed of two iambs (–), although the first syllable is *anceps*. When scanning, one regularly marks off each iambic metron.

2. Because a long is substituted for a short in the second iamb of the last metron of the line, this meter is said to "limp" or slow down.
3. A word usually ends after the fifth syllable, and this word end may be considered the line's caesural pause.

Sapphic Strophe

Two of Catullus's and many of Horace's poems employ a stanzaic form possibly created by the Greek poet Sappho and bearing her name:

--- x // ---- x (cretic and acephalous hipponactean)

--- x // ---- x

--- x // ---- x

--- x (adonic)

Integer vitae // scelerisque pūrus

nōn eget Mauris // iaculis neque arcū

nec venēnātis // gravidā sagittis

Fusce, pharetrā . . .

OBSERVATIONS

1. The first three lines of the Sapphic strophe have the same metrical scheme, a line composed of two lyric units, the cretic (---) and the hipponactean (x x --- x). Because the hipponactean is *missing the first element*, it is called "headless" or acephalous. Note that the choriamb (---) is present in the hipponactean. There is a regular caesura after the fifth syllable.
2. The last line of the Sapphic strophe resembles the last two feet of a dactylic hexameter line. This short line is called an adonic.

Asclepiadean Meters

Lyric meters that feature a unit known as a **glyconic** (x x ---- x) are called **Asclepiadean** meters after an Alexandrian love poet, Asclepiades, who lived in the third century B.C.E. Horace employs several Asclepiadean meters, some of which are presented below.

One Asclepiadean meter employs a repeating glyconic line in which the choriamb within the glyconic is doubled:

x x ---- // ---- x

Exēgī monumentum aere perennius

rēgālūque sitū // pyramidum altius

Another Asclepiadean meter employs a repeating glyconic line in which the choriamb within the glyconic is tripled:

x x - - - - // - - - - // - - - - x

Tū nē quaesieris // scire nefās // quem mihi, quem tibi
finem dī dederint, // Leuconoē, // nec Bābylōniōs

A third Asclepiadean meter employs a glyconic line alternating with a glyconic line in which the choriamb within the glyconic is doubled:

x x - - - - x
x x - - - - // - - - - x

Dōnec grātus eram tibi
nec quisquam potior bracchia candidae

A stanzaic meter features the glyconic and variations:

x x - - - - // - - - - x (glyconic with doubled choriamb)

x x - - - - // - - - - x

x x - - - - x (pherecratean)

x x - - - - x (glyconic)

Quis multā gracilis // tē puer in rosā
perfūsus liquidīs // urget odoribus
grātō, Pyrrha, sub antrō?
cū flāvam religās comam

Archilochian Meter

Horace borrowed several meters from the Greek poet Archilochus. One of them employs a couplet form, the first line of which is dactylic hexameter, the second line of which is a hemiepes.

- - - / - - - / - - - / - - - / - - - / - x
- - - / - - - / x

Diffū/gēre nī/vēs, // rede/unt iam /grāminā /campīs
arbori/busque cō/mae

Alcaic Strophe

Horace's most intricate metrical form was borrowed from the Greek poet Alcaeus:

x - / x // - - - x (iambic metron and acephalous glyconic)

x - - / x // - - - x

x - - / x - - / - (iambic dimeter and one syllable)

- - - - - / - - x (herniepes and bacchiac)

Nōn semper im/brēs // nūbibus hispidōs

mānant in a/grōs // aut mare Caspium

vexant inae/quālēs procel/lae

ūsque nec Armeniīs in ōrīs

CHAPTER XII

Vocabulary

- *grātia, grātiaē f.* favor, kindness; gratitude, thanks
- *littera, litterae f.* letter (of the alphabet); *in pl.*, letter epistle
- *memoria, memoriaē f.* memory
- *dubium, dubiū n.* doubt, hesitation (§116)
- *gēns, gentis, -ium f.* nation, people; clan, family
- *fors, fortis, -ium f.* chance, luck
- *mōns, montis, -ium m.* mountain
- *rūmor, rūmōris m.* rumor
- *fās* (indeclinable noun) *n.* (what is divinely) right; (what is) permitted
 - *nefās* (indeclinable noun) *n.* (what is divinely) forbidden; sacrilege
- *dubitō* (1 tr.) hesitate; doubt (§116)
- *orō* (1-tr.) pray (for), beg (for)
- *rogō* (1-tr.) ask (for)
- *sperō* (1-tr.) hope (for)
- *cōficiō, cōficere, cōfēcī, cōfectus* accomplish, complete
- *oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum* forget (+ gen.)
- *praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus* put in charge (of)
- *inferō, inferre, intulī, illātus* carry (into); inflict (on)
- *praeferō, praeferre, praetulī, praelātus* prefer
- *praesum, praeesse, praefui, praefuturus* be in charge (of), be in command (of)
- *volo, velle, voluī, —* be willing, want, wish (§118)
 - *mālo, malle, mālui, —* want more, prefer (§118)
 - *nōlo, nolle, nōlui, —* be unwilling, not want, not wish (§118)
- *dignus, -a, -um* worthy (of) (+ abl.)
 - *indignus, -a, -um* unworthy (of) (+ abl.)
- *dubius, -a, -um* doubtful (§116)
 - an* (conj.) introduces an alternative question, or (§113); introduces an Indirect Question, whether (§115)
- *cum* (conj.) when; since, although (§117)
- *modo* (adv.) only, just; now, just now
- *necne* (conj.) in Indirect Question, or not (§115)

nōne (interrog. particle) introduces a direct question expecting the answer "yes" (§113)

num (interrog. particle) introduces a direct question expecting the answer "no" (§113); introduces an Indirect Question, whether (§115)

➤ **praeter** (prep. + acc.) beyond except
quīn (conj.) introduces Doubting clause, that (§116)

quō (interrog. adv.) to where, whither

➤ **tum** or **tunc** (adv.) then, at that time

unde (interrog. adv.) from where, whence

utrum (interrog. particle) introduces the first question of a double direct question or Indirect Question (§113, §115)

utrum ... **an** ... whether ...

-ne ... **an** ... or ...

— ... **an** ... (§113, §115)

Vocabulary Notes

grātia, **grātia** *f.* may mean the "favor" or "kindness" that one shows to another or the "gratitude" one feels in return for a favor or kindness. Both the singular and the plural may be used in a variety of idioms **grātiās agere**, "to give thanks"; **grātiām** or **grātiās habere**, "to feel grateful"; **grātiām** or **grātiās referre**, "to render thanks" "to return a favor."

In the singular **littera**, **litterae** *f.* refers to a "letter" of the alphabet. In the plural it most often means a single "epistle" or "letter." An adjective of quantity or number may be added to indicate more than one letter.

Filio quatuor litteras misit.

Filio multas litteras misit.

Quatuor litteras (epist.) misi.

I sent many letters to (my) son.

The plural of **littera** may also mean, more abstractly, "(humane) letters," "literature."

dubium, **dubii** *n.* is a substantive of the adjective **dubius**, **-a**, **-um**. It regularly appears with an Indirect Question or a Doubting clause (see §116).

gēns, **gentis**, **-ium** *f.* may refer to a collective "people" or "nation." Among Roman citizens, a **gēns** was a group of families (clan) that shared the same **nōmen** (name) (see §116). **Gēns** may also refer to an individual family. In the plural, **gentēs** may mean "nations of the world" or "the human race" as a whole.

rūmor, **rūmōris** *m.* may mean "rumor" or "gossip," or it may refer more generally to "noise" made by many voices. The phrase **rūmor est** introduces an Indirect Statement (see §106).

Rumor est Caesarem venire.

There is a rumor that Caesar is coming.

fās is an indeclinable neuter noun. Its strict meaning is what is "right" according to divine law, as opposed to **fūs**, which indicates "right" according to human law. It may also be used of "(what is) permitted" or "(what is) lawful" in a more general sense. It commonly occurs in parenthetical remarks, such as **sī fās (est)** (if it is right). It is also often used as a predicate noun.

Id est hoc facere.

To do this thing is right.

nefās is an indeclinable neuter noun formed by the addition of the negative prefix **ne-** to **fās**. Thus its strict meaning is what is an "offense" according to divine law (sacrilege).

When the verb **dubitō**, **dubitāre**, **dubitāvī**, **dubitātus** means "hesitate," it is often followed by a Complementary Infinitive. When it means "doubt," it regularly introduces an Indirect Question or a Doubting clause (see §116).

orō, **orāre**, **orāvī**, **orātus** takes a double accusative; that is, it may have two Accusative, Direct Objects, the person begged or prayed to and the thing begged or prayed for. It may also introduce an Indirect Command.

Cives deos precem orant.

Miles orante ne discipant.

The citizens pray, pray for aid for help.

Soldiers beg the soldiers not to desert.

rogō, **rogāre**, **rogāvī**, **rogātus** may introduce an Indirect Question (see §115) or an Indirect Command. It may take an Accusative, Direct Object expressing the person asked or the thing asked for. Like **orō**, **rogō** may take a double accusative.

Miles auxilium rogamus.

We ask the soldiers for aid.

spērō, spēre, spēvī, spēritus is a denominative verb formed from the noun *spēs*. *Spērō* may be followed by an Accusative, Direct Object, or it may introduce an Indirect Statement.

cōficiō, cōficere, cōfeci, cōfectus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *con-* to *faciō*. (For the prefix *con-* see Appendix P.) It may mean "accomplish" or "complete" (tasks, duties, written works, periods of time). It is a synonym of *perficiō*. *Cōficiō* may also mean "wear out" or "kill."

obliviscor, oblivisci, oblitus sum may introduce an Indirect Statement. It often takes a Genitive with Verba of Remembering and Forgetting (Objective Genitive) (cf. *memini*). *Obliviscor* may also take an Accusative, Direct Object, *parvum* any when the object is a neuter pronoun. When it takes an Object Infinitive, *obliscor* may mean "I forget" or "forget now."

prae-ficiō, prae-ficere, prae-fici, prae-fectus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *prae-* to *faciō*. (For the prefix *prae-* see Appendix P.) *Prae-ficiō* is a transitive verb and also takes a Dative with a Compound Verb (see § 120).

in-feriō, in-ferre, in-fuli, in-fusus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *in-* to *ferō*. (For the prefix *in-* see Appendix P.) *In-feriō* is a transitive verb and also takes a Dative with a Compound Verb (see § 120). It may mean "carry in" or "inflict" (war, injury, distress).

prae-ferō, prae-ferre, prae-fuli, prae-fusus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *prae-* to *ferō*. (For the prefix *prae-* see Appendix P.) *Prae-ferō* is a transitive verb and also takes a Dative with a Compound Verb (see § 120).

prae-sum, prae-esse, prae-sum, prae-futurus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *prae-* to *sum*. (For the prefix *prae-* see Appendix P.) *Prae-sum* is an intransitive verb that takes a Dative with a Compound Verb (see § 120).

volō, velle, volui, — is an irregular verb. For its forms see § 118. *Volō* may be transitive (want, wish) or may be used absolutely (be willing). While *optō*, *cupiō*, and *volō* all express desire, *volō* suggests a stronger sense of will or purpose on the part of the subject and may thus mean "intend" or "be about to." *Volō* appears in two common idioms, *hanc volū*, "to wish well," and *male velle*, "to wish ill." Both are followed by a Dative of Reference.

malō, malle, malui, — is an irregular compound verb formed by the addition of the comparative adverb *magis* to *volō*. For its forms and the constructions that accompany it, see § 118.

nolō, nolle, nolui, — is an irregular compound verb formed by the addition of the adverb *nōn* to *volō*. For its forms see § 118. It has meanings that are parallel to *volō* (not want, not wish, be unwilling) and it may mean "refuse."

dignus, -a, -um is an adjective that takes an Ablative of Respect to indicate that which someone is worthy of. Such an Ablative of Respect is regularly translated with the English preposition "of." *Dignus* may also be used adverbially (deserving, worthwhile).

indignus, -a, -um is an adjective that takes an Ablative of Respect to indicate that which someone is unworthy of. Such an Ablative of Respect is regularly translated with the English preposition "of."

dubius, -a, -um regularly appears with an Indirect Question or a Doubling clause (see § 116).

The conjunction *cum* was developed from an old accusative form of the relative pronoun *qui, quae, quod*, and the archaic form *quom* is common in Roman writers prior to Cicero. This conjunction is not linguistically related to the preposition *quod* that is spelled identically. For its use see §117.

modo is an adverb that was in origin the ablative singular of *modus*, but note that the final -o is short. *Modo* is often used to strengthen an imperative. It may be used as a temporal adverb (now just now) and may appear in place of *solum* in the expression *nōn modo . . . sed/vērū etiam . . .*

Tu modo omnia ad me scribe.

"You just write all things to me."

The preposition *praeter* takes the accusative case. It may mean "beyond" or "exceeding" or it may mean "except" or "other than."

tum (adv.) and *tunc* (adv.) are synonymous. *tunc* is formed by the addition of the emphatic suffix -ce to *tum*. In early Latin *tunc* was more emphatic than *tum*. By the Augustan period this emphasis was less pronounced. *Tum* may be used correlatively with *cum* with a variety of emphases. The correlatives *cum . . . tum . . .* may be translated "when . . . then/at the same time . . ." "both . . . and (especially) . . ." or "not only . . . but also . . ."

Cum illud faceret, tum discedebam.

"When he was doing that thing, then/at the same time I was departing."

Consilium cum patriae tum sibi inimicum capiebat.

"He was forming a plan hostile both to his country and (especially) to himself."

Quere visa est quae honestam sententiam tum veram.

"She seemed to speak (now) an honorable opinion, but also a true (one)."

	Derivatives	Cognates
dignus	dignity, indignant; disdain; dainty	decent; doctor; dogma
gens	gentle; gentile	kin; king; gender, genealogy, gene
memoria	memorable	mourn
mons	mountain; amount	mouth; imminent, menace
obliviscor	oblivious, oubliette	slime; slip
rogō	interrogate, abrogate	regō; rich; reckless
volō	voluntary; velleity, volition malevolence	voluptuous, will, wealth, well

§113. Direct Questions

A **direct question** is a question written or uttered directly. In Latin a direct question may be introduced by the enclitic **-ne** attached to the first word of the question or by nothing at all. For example:



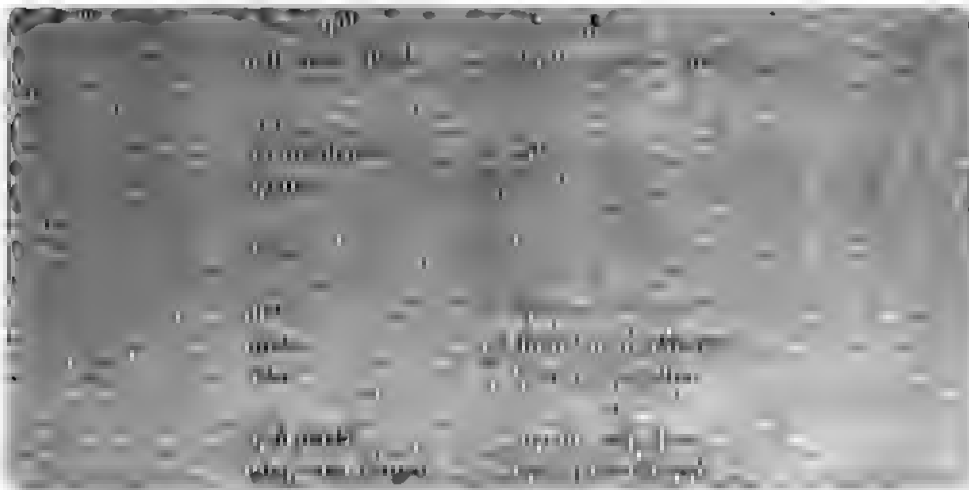
Direct questions may also be introduced by the interrogative particles **nōne** and **num**. **Nōne** introduces a question to which the expected answer is **yes**. **Num** introduces a question to which the expected answer is **no**. For example:



OBSERVATIONS

1. **Nōne** is formed from the combination of **nōn** and **-ne**. In translating Latin direct questions introduced by **nōne**, a phrase such as "didn't you?" is added to make clear that the expected answer is **yes**.
2. In translating Latin direct questions introduced by **num**, a negative adverb and a phrase such as "did you?" are added to make clear that the expected answer is **no**.

Direct questions may also be introduced by a variety of interrogative pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs. The following is a list of all the words presented in Chapters I–XII that may introduce questions.



A question such as "Will you come to supper?" is a **direct question**. A **double direct question** is a sentence in which the first question is introduced by the interrogative particle **utrum**, by **-ne**, or by nothing at all. The conjunction **an** (or) introduces the second question. For example:

<i>Utrum Romam venies an ruri manebis?</i>	Will you come to Rome or will you stay in the country?
<i>Romamne venies an ruri manebis?</i>	Will you come to Rome or will you stay in the country?
<i>Romam venies an ruri manebis?</i>	Will you come to Rome or will you stay in the country?
<i>Utrum Romam venies an non?</i>	Will you come to Rome or (will you) not (come to Rome)?

OBSERVATIONS

1. There are no differences in meaning among the first three double direct questions. Double direct questions introduced by *utrum* or *-ne* are more common in classical Latin than those introduced by nothing at all.
2. *Utrum* is in origin the neuter singular accusative of the interrogative adjective *uter, utra, utrum* used adverbially (whether). In double direct questions it may introduce the first question, but it should not be translated.
3. The ellipsis of certain words from one or both questions is a regular feature of double direct questions. Although in the last sentence only *nōn* appears after *an*, the rest of the second question may easily be supplied from the first question.
4. Additional alternate questions may be added to double direct questions using the conjunction *an*.

§114. Deliberative Subjunctive

A verb in the *present subjunctive* in a direct question may be used to indicate that the subject is *deliberating about or weighing courses of action for the present or the future*. A verb in the *imperfect subjunctive* in a direct question may be used to indicate that the subject is *deliberating about an action in the past*. The adverb *nōn* is used for negation. This *independent* use of the subjunctive is called **Deliberative** (< *dēliberō*, "weigh"). For example:

<i>Quid nunc agam?</i>	What should I do now?
<i>Quid illō tempore agerem?</i>	What should I have done at that time?
<i>Non venirem Romam?</i>	Should I not have come to Rome?

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Deliberative subjunctive is a variety of the Hortatory subjunctive. Unlike the Hortatory subjunctive, which expresses the will of the subject, the Deliberative subjunctive asks about the will of the person addressed. The Deliberative subjunctive most commonly occurs in the first person.
2. The English words "am/are/is . . . to" or "should" are regularly used to translate the Deliberative subjunctive in present or future time.
3. The English words "was/were . . . to" or "should have" are regularly used to translate the Deliberative subjunctive in past time.
4. The syntax of, for example, *agerem* is imperfect subjunctive, Deliberative, past time.

5. Sometimes an independent subjunctive appearing in a question is *Potential* rather than *Deliberative*. For example:

Quis rem publicam perire cupiat?

Who would desire the republic to perish?

■ DRILL 113–114 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§115. Indirect Questions

When a question is *reported indirectly* as part of a complex sentence, the question is subordinated to a main verb, and the resulting subordinate clause is called an **Indirect Question**. For example:

What do those poets think about the nature of the gods? (Direct Question)

I do not know *what those poets think about the nature of the gods*. (Indirect Question)

When a direct question is reported indirectly in English, the subject and the verb of the direct question may have to be changed (for example, “do . . . think” becomes “think”). In Latin, *the verb of the indirect question is in the subjunctive mood according to the rules of sequence*. For example:

Nescio quid illi poetae de natura deorum cogitent.	I do not know what those poets about the nature of the gods <i>think</i> .
Nescio quid illi poetae de natura deorum cogitarent.	I do not know what those poets <i>would think</i> about the nature of the gods.
Nescio quid illi poetae de natura deorum cogitaverint.	I do not know what those poets <i>thought</i> about the nature of the gods.
Nescio quid de natura deorum dicturus sis.	I do not know what you <i>will (are going to) say</i> about the nature of the gods.

OBSERVATIONS

1. An Indirect Question is a *noun* clause. It functions as either the direct object or (less frequently) the subject of the verb that introduces it.
2. Many Indirect Questions in early Latin appear with their verbs in the indicative. The use of the subjunctive mood in Indirect Questions may have its origin in Deliberative subjunctives that were then made indirect. Regardless of the origin, the use of the subjunctive mood in Indirect Questions reflects the view of the subjunctive as simply the mood appropriate for certain subordinate clauses.
3. Future time in Indirect Questions is frequently indicated by the active periphrastic.
4. The syntax of, for example, *cogitaverint* is perfect subjunctive, Indirect Question, primary sequence, prior time.
5. Most often the subjunctive verb in an Indirect Question should be translated into English as if it were indicative. The tense of the translation is determined by the relative time of the subjunctive to the main verb.

An Indirect Question may be introduced by any of the interrogative words used to introduce direct questions. When an original direct question has no interrogative

word or is introduced by the enclitic *-ne*, the indirect form may be introduced by the interrogative particle *num* or *an*, "whether." For example:

Romam ire optat.	Is she desiring to go to Rome?
Quaesiverunt <i>num</i> Romam ire optaret.	They asked <i>whether</i> she was desiring to go to Rome.

Double Indirect Questions may be introduced by *utrum*, *-ne*, or by nothing at all. The conjunction *an* (or) introduces the second question. Double Indirect Questions use the negative conjunction *necne*, "or not," instead of *an non* (as in double direct questions). For example:

<i>Utrum</i> Romam ire optat <i>an</i> ruri manere?	Is she desiring to go to Rome or to remain in the country?
Quaesiit <i>utrum</i> Romam ire optaret <i>an</i> ruri manere.	I asked <i>whether</i> she was desiring to go to Rome or to stay in the country.
<i>Utrum</i> Romam ire optat <i>an non</i> ?	Is she desiring to go to Rome or not?
Quaesiit <i>utrum</i> Romam ire optaret <i>necne</i> .	I asked <i>whether</i> she was desiring to go to Rome or not.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Double Indirect Questions introduced by *utrum* or *-ne* are more common in classical Latin than those introduced by nothing at all.
2. In double Indirect Questions, the English word "whether" is used to translate *utrum* or *-ne*. "Whether" must be *added* to the English translation when the beginning of a double Indirect Question is not indicated in Latin.

Occasionally the verb in the subjunctive mood in an Indirect Question represents an *original* independent use of the subjunctive. For example:

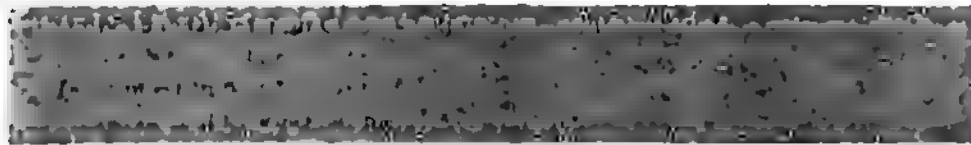
Nescio <i>quid faciam</i> .	I do not know <i>what I should do</i> .
-----------------------------	---

OBSERVATIONS

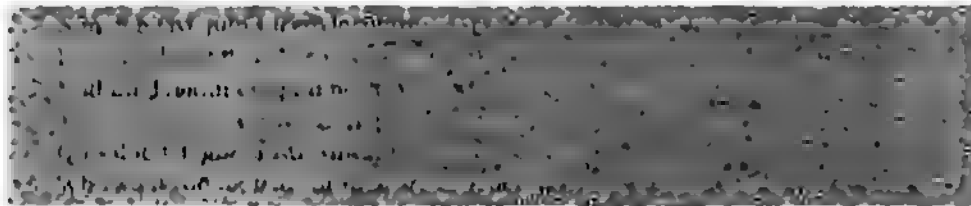
1. In this sentence, although *faciam* could represent a direct question with a verb in the indicative mood (*quid facis?* What am I doing?), the translation indicates that the original question had a verb in the subjunctive mood (*quid faciam?* What should I do? [Deliberative subjunctive]).
2. The Deliberative subjunctive is the most common kind of independent subjunctive to appear in an Indirect Question. Occasionally a Potential subjunctive may also appear in an Indirect Question.

§116. Doubting Clauses

When an Indirect Question introduced by *num*, *an* (whether), or another interrogative word is preceded by a verb or other expression of doubting, the Indirect Question is sometimes called a Doubting clause. For example:



When the expression of doubting is *negated*, or when *negation* is implied, the Doubting clause is introduced by the conjunction *quā* (that). For example:



OBSERVATIONS

1. Because they are essentially Indirect Questions, Doubting clauses have their verbs in the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence.
2. In the third sentence negation is implied because the answer to this rhetorical question would be "no one."

☛ DRILL 115-116 MAY NOW BE DONE.

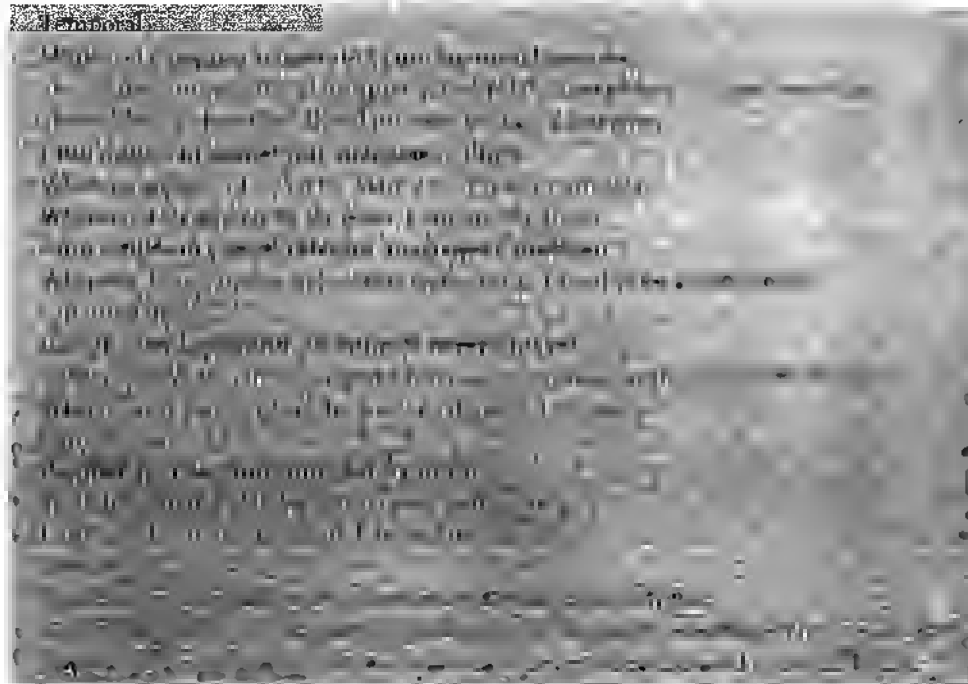
§117. Subordinate Clauses II: The Conjunction *cum*

The subordinating conjunction *cum* has a variety of meanings. The verb in a *cum* clause may be in the indicative or the subjunctive mood, depending on what particular type of clause *cum* introduces.

Time	Most often a perfect indicative	When the main clause is present indicative, <i>cum</i> should be translated "whenever."
Temporal	Indicative	When the main clause is present indicative, <i>cum</i> should be translated "whenever."
Conditional	Indicative or subjunctive	When the main clause is present indicative, <i>cum</i> should be translated "whenever."
Causal	Subjunctive	When the main clause is present indicative, <i>cum</i> should be translated "whenever."
Concessive	Subjunctive	When the main clause is present indicative, <i>cum</i> should be translated "whenever."

1. When *cum* is followed by a perfect indicative and the verb in the main clause is present indicative, *cum* should be translated "whenever," and the perfect indicative should be translated as a present. When *cum* is followed by the pluperfect indicative and the verb in the main clause is imperfect indicative, *cum* should be translated "whenever" and the pluperfect indicative should be translated as an imperfect.

Like other subordinate clauses, *cum* clauses may *precede* or *follow* main clauses. When the subjunctive mood is used for the verb in a *cum* clause, the rules of sequence are followed. For example:



OBSERVATIONS

1. The use of the subjunctive mood in circumstantial, causal, and concessive *cum* clauses reflects the view of the subjunctive as simply the mood appropriate for certain subordinate clauses.
2. A *cum* clause followed by a verb in the subjunctive mood may introduce a circumstantial causal, or concessive clause. Context helps to determine which sense is appropriate. For example, in the last sentence above the presence of *tamen* in the main clause indicates that the preceding subordinate clause is *concessive*.
3. The subjunctive verb in a *cum* clause should be translated into English as if it were indicative. The tense of the translation is determined by the relative time of the subjunctive to the main verb.

☛ DRILL 117 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§118. The Irregular Verbs *volō*, *nōlō*, and *mālō*

The irregular verbs *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*, —, “be willing, want, wish”; *nōlō*, *nolle*, *nōluī*, —, “be unwilling, not want, not wish”; and *mālō*, *malle*, *māluī*, —, “want more, prefer” have *active forms only*. They have a number of irregular forms in the present system. All the forms of the perfect active system are regular. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING IRREGULAR CONJUGATIONS AND FORMS:

Present Active Indicative			Present Active Subjunctive			
Singular						
1	volō	nolō	mālō	velim	nolim	mālim
2	vis	nōn vis	mavis	velis	nolis	malis
3	vult	nōn vult	maivult	velit	nolit	malit
Plural						
1	volumus	nolumus	mālumus	velimus	nolumus	mālumus
2	vultis	nōn vultis	maivultis	velitis	nolitis	malitis
3	volunt	nolunt	malunt	velint	nolint	malint
Present Active Infinitive		velle	Present Active Participle		volens, volentis	
		nolle			nolens, nolentis	
		malle				
Present Active Imperative: noli (singular), nolite (plural)						

OBSERVATIONS

1. There are two common, older forms of **vult** and **vultis**: **volt** and **voltis**. The forms given above replaced these older forms during the first century B.C.E., but the older forms occur frequently in many classical authors, including Cicero. BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE THESE ARCHAIC FORMS.
2. **Nolō** was formed by the addition of **nōn** to **volō**. In the present active indicative conjugation of **nolō**, three forms (the second and third person singular and the second person plural) are simply **nōn** and the corresponding form of **volō**.
3. **Mālō** was formed by the addition of **magis** to **volō**, and it therefore may take structures that regularly accompany the comparative degree. For example:

Sapiens amicitiam omnibus rebus mālīt. (Ablative of Comparison)
 A wise man friendship (d.o.) than all things would want more.
 A wise man would want friendship more than all things
 Nostri pugnare quam fugere māluērunt. (Comparison with quam)
 Our men to fight than to flee preferred.
 Our men preferred to fight rather than to flee.

4. In the imperfect and future active indicative, **volō**, **nolō**, and **mālō** are conjugated as if they were regular third-conjugation verbs with the stems **vole-**, **nole-**, and **māle-**, respectively. The first person singular future active indicative forms of **nolō** (***nōlam**) and **mālō** (***mālam**) do not occur in the Latin literature that survives.
5. The present active subjunctive of **volō**, **nolō**, and **mālō** may be compared to the present active subjunctive of **sum** (**sim**, **sis**, **sit**, etc.). The imperfect active subjunctive is formed *regularly* from the *irregular* present active infinitives **velle**, **nolle**, and **malle**.
6. **Mālō** does not have a present active participle.
7. **Volō** and **mālō** do not have imperative forms. For the use of the imperative forms of **nolō** (**noli** and **nolite**) see §119

§119. Negative Commands with *nōlī* or *nōlīte* and an Infinitive

Nōlī and **nōlīte** are used with infinitives to express negative commands. For example:

Noli amice me odisse.	Be unwilling, friend, me (d.o.) to hate. Do not hate me, friend.
Nolite ex provincia discedere.	Be unwilling (pl.) from the province to depart. Do not (pl.) depart from this province.

Short Readings

1. A frustrated wife responds to her husband

vēra dīcō, sed nēquiquam, quoniam nōn vīs crēdere. (PLAUTUS, *AMPHITRŪS* 835)

nēquiquam (adv.) to no avail, in vain

2. A truism from Plautus

tum dēnique hominēs nostra intellegimus bona,

quom, quae in potestāte habuimus, ea āmisimus. (PLAUTUS, *CAPTIVŪS* 142–43)

āmittō (ā- + mittō) send away; lose

dēnique (adv.) finally, at last

potestās, potestātis f. (legitimate) power; possession

quom = cum

3. A comic character states his dilemma

nunc ego inter sacrum saxumque stō, nec quid faciam sciō. (PLAUTUS, *CAPTIVŪS* 617)

sacrum, sacri n. sacred place

saxum, saxi n. rock, stone

4. The slave Tranio responds understandingly to an obnoxious remark of his friend Grumio.

quasi invidere mī hōc vidēre, Grumiō,

quia mihi bene est et tibi male est; dignissimum est. (PLAUTUS, *MOSTELLARIA* 51–52)

Grumio, *Grumionis m. Grumio

invidēō (in- + vidēō) envy, be jealous of

mī = mihi

quasi (adv.) as (if), as (it were)

quia (conj.) because

5. A slave answers a question about his future.

ūnum hoc sciō: quod fors feret, ferēmus aequō animō. (TERENCE, *PHORMIO* 138)

6. A definition of a rhetorical term

frequentātiō est, cum res tōtā causā dispersae cōguntur in ūnum locum quō gravior

aut ācrior aut crīmīnōsior ōrātiō sit. (*RHETORICA AD HERENNIIUM* IV.52)

cogō (cō- + agō), cogere, cōgē, coactus drive together, bring together, collect

crīmīnōsus, -a, -um accusatory, damning

dispēgō, dispergere, dispersi, dispersus spread about, scatter, disperse

frequentātiō, frequentātiōnis f. concentration; assembling

7. Cicero gives this as an example of a rhetorical statement that is obviously false.

nēmo est quīn pecūniam quam sapientiam mālit. (CICERO, *DE INVENTIONE* I.80)

8. The orator exhorts Catiline directly.

mūtā iam istam mentem, mihi crēde, obliviscere caedis atque incendiōrum.

(CICERO, *IN CATILINAM* I 6)

caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter
incendium, incendiū *n.* fire; arson
mūtō (1-tr.) change

9. The orator utters some dramatic rhetorical questions.

o dī immortālēs! ubinam gentium sumus? in quā urbe vivimus? quam rem pūbli-
cam habēmus? (CICERO, *IN CATILINAM* I 9)

immortālis, immortāle immortal
ubinam (interrog. adv.) where ever, where indeed

10. After yet another attack on Catiline, Cicero asks a rhetorical question.

sed cūr iam diū dē unō hoste loquimur et dē eō hoste quī iam fatētur sē esse hostem,
et quem, quia, quod semper volui, murus interest, nōn timeo; dē his quī dissimu-
lant, quī Rōmae remanent, quī nobiscum sunt nihil dīcimus?

(CICERO, *IN CATILINAM* II 17)

dissimulō (1-tr.) conceal, pretend
intersum (inter- + sum), interesse, interfui, — be between
quia (conj. + indic.) because
remaneo (re- + maneo) remain

11. While speaking about fellow citizens who have joined Catiline's conspiracy, Cicero sums up his patriotic feelings.

. . . iam nōn possum oblivisci meam hanc esse patriam, mē hōrum esse cōsulem,
mihi aut cum his vivendum aut prō his esse moriendum.

(CICERO, *IN CATILINAM* II 27)

12. Cicero recounts what a leading man said about Cicero's exile.

. . . L. Cotta dixit id quod dignissimum rē pūblicā fuit, nihil dē mē actum esse
iūre, nihil mōre maiōrum, nihil lēgibus; . . . (CICERO, *PRŌ SESTIŌ* 73)

L. Cotta, L. Cottae *m.* L. (Aurelius) Cotta (consul 65 B.C.E.)

13. Cicero discusses the competing loyalties affecting many Romans.

ego mehercule et illi* et omnibus municipibus duās esse censeo patriās, ūnam nātūrae, alteram civitātis: ut ille Catō, quom esset Tusculi nātus, in populī Rōmānī civitātem susceptus est, ita, quom ortū Tusculānus esset, civitate Rōmānus, habuit alteram loci patriam, alteram iūris; . . . (CICERO, *DE LEGIBUS* II.5)

*illi refers to Cato.

censeō, censere, censui, cēsus hold as one's opinion, think

mūniceps, mūnicipis *m.* citizen or native of a municipium, a self-governing community in Italy

ortus, ortūs *m.* origin, birth, ancestry

quom cum

susciplō (sub- + capiō) receive, adopt

Tusculānus, -a, -um Tusculan

Tusculum, Tusculi *n.* Tusculum, a town in Latium

14. Cicero explains why he attaches such importance to officeholders

ut enim magistrātibus lēgēs, sic populō praesunt magistrātus vērēque dici potest magistrātum lēgem esse loquentem, lēgem autem mūtum magistrātum.

(CICERO, *DE LEGIBUS* III.2)

magistrātus, magistrātūs *m.* officeholder, magistrate

mūtus, -a, -um mute, incapable of speaking; silent

15. Cicero gives his opinion about the destiny of the Roman people.

populum Rōmānum servīre fās nōn est, quem dī immortalēs omnibus gentibus imperāre voluērunt. (CICERO, *PHILIPPICS* VI 19)

immortalis, immortalē immortal

serviō, servīre, servīvi or servīi, servītūrus be a slave; serve

16. An excerpt from Cicero's translation of Plato's *Timaeus*

deus autem et ortū et virtūte antīquiōrem genuit animum eumque ut dominum atque imperantem oboedienti praefecit corpori . . . (CICERO, *TIMAEUS* 21)

gignō, gignere genui, genitus create, beget (of a father)

oboediēns, oboedientis obedient, compliant, subject

ortus, ortūs *m.* rising; origin, ancestry

17. Cicero explains to his friend Atticus why he is determined to erect a shrine in honor of his recently deceased daughter, Tullia.

sed iam quasi vōtō quōdam et prōmissō mē tenērī puto, longumque illud tempus cum nōn erō magis mē movet quam hoc exiguum, quod mihi tamen nimium longum videtur. (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* XII.18.1)

exiguus, -a, -um small, slight, brief

nimium (adv.) too much, excessively

prōmissum, prōmissi *n.* promise

quasi (adv.) as (if) as (it were)

vōtum, vōti *n.* vow, prayer

18. Cicero describes the effects of receiving his friend Atticus's letters.

tamen adlevor cum loquor tecum absēns, multō etiam magis cum tuās litterās
legō. (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* XII.39.2)

absēns, absentis not present, absent

adlevō (1-tr.) lift up, raise; comfort, console

19. Caesar finds a convenient point in his narrative to begin a digression.

quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Ger-
māniaeque mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnes inter sēsē proponere.
(CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALlico* VI.11)

aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another, alien

strange; out of place

Gallia, Galliae f. Gaul

Germania, Germaniae f. Germany

nātiō, nātiōnis f. nation

perveniō (per- + veniō) arrive at (+ ad + acc.)

prōpōnō (prō- + pōnō) put forward; state

20. Roman veterans, cornered and faced with difficult odds, refuse to panic.

itaque inter sē cohortātī duce C. Treboniō equite Rōmano, quī is erat praepositus,
per mediōs hostēs perrumpunt incolumēsque ad unum omnēs in castra perveni-
unt. (CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALlico* VI.40)

cohortor (1-tr.) exhort, encourage

eques, equitis m. horseman, cavalryman

incolumis, incolume unharmed, safe

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly

perrumpō, perrumpere, perrūpi, perruptus burst
through

perveniō (per- + veniō) arrive at; get through (to)

praepōnō (prae- + pōnō) put in front (of), put in
charge (of)

C. Trebonius C. Treboni m. C. Trebonius

21. Caesar recalls the endurance of his men when faced with starvation

nūlla tamen ex iis vōx est audita populī Rōmāni maiestāte et superioribus victōriis
indigna. (CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALlico* VII.17)

maiestās, maiestātis f. dignity, majesty

superior, superius upper, higher; earlier, previous

victōria, victōriae f. victory

22. Caesar explains why a certain Varus may have believed a false report.

. . . nam quae volumus, ea crēdimus libenter, et quae sentimus ipsī, reliquos sen-
tire spērāmus . . . (CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ CIVILI* II.27)

libenter (adv.) gladly, willingly

reliquus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of)

23. Catiline speaks of the strong bond between him and his fellow conspirators.

idem velle atque idem nōlle, ea dēmum firma amicitia est.
(SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 20)

dēmum (adv.) precisely, only

firmus, -a, -um strong, durable, steadfast

24. An observation about Cicero's closest friend, T. Pomponius Atticus

honōrēs nōn petiit, cum ei patērent propter vel grātuam vel dignitātem.

(CORNELIUS NEPOS, *VITA ATTICI* 6)

dignitās, dignitātis *f.* dignity, rank, status
 honor, honoris *m.* public or political office
 pateō, patēre, patuī, — lie open
 vel (*adv.*) or; vel . . . vel . . . either . . . or . . .

25. A Roman proverb

Malus bonum ubi sē simulat tunc est pessimū. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* M9)

simulō (1 *tr.*) pretend, simulate

26. A Roman proverb

Male facere quī vult numquam nōn causam invenit.

(PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* M28)

27. A Roman proverb

Peccāre paucī nōlunt, nūllī nesciunt. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* P35)

peccō (1-*intr.*) make a mistake; do wrong

28. A Roman proverb

Stultum facit Fortūna quem vult perdere. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* S29)

perdō (per- + dō) lose; destroy

stultus, -a, -um stupid, foolish

29. The shepherd Tityrus describes the signs of evening's approach.

et iam summa procul villārum culmina fūmant

maiōrēsque cadunt altis dē montibus umbrae. (VERGIL, *ECLOGUES* I.83)

culmen, culminis *n.* summit, roof

fūmō, fūmāre, fūmāvī, — emit smoke, smoke

procul (*adv.*) at a distance

villa, villae *f.* country house, farmhouse

30. Charon objects to ferrying Aeneas to the underworld.

corpora vīva nefās Stygiā vectāre carīnā. (VERGIL, *AENEID* VI.391)

carīna, carinae *f.* keel; ship

Stygius -a, -um of or belonging to the river Styx, Stygian

vectō (1-*tr.*) carry, convey

vivus, -a, -um living

31. Horace describes the influence of Greek culture on the Romans.

Graecia capta ferum victorem cēpit et artīs

intulit agrestī Latiō . . . (HORACE, *EPISTULAE* II.1.156-57)

agrestis, agreste of or living in the fields, rustic; uncivilized

ferus, -a, -um wild, uncultivated; fierce, ferocious

Latium, Latīi n. Latium, an area in central Italy

victor, victōris m. conqueror, victor

32. The poet explains his poetic mission.

mē Venus artificem tenerō prae-fēcit amōrī . . . (OVID, *ARS AMĀTORIA* I.7)

artifex, artificis skilled, artistic

tener, tenera, tenerum tender, soft, delicate, young

33. Juno reflects on her rivalry with Bacchus.

ipse* docet quid agam (fās est ab hoste docērī) . . . (OVID, *METAMORPHOSÉS* IV.428)

*ipse refers to Bacchus.

docēō, docēre, docuī, doctus teach

34. The philosopher gives his opinion about how the performance of good deeds is repaid by good men.

aequissima vōx est et iūs gentium prae sē ferens: "redde quod dēbēs."

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DE BENEFICIIS* III.14-3)

prae (prep + abl.) in front of, before, prae sē ferre, to exhibit in one's demeanor, display; declare

reddō (red- + do) give back, return

35. A quotation from the Greek philosopher Hekaton

sī vīs amārī, amā. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE MORĀLES* IX.6.6)

36. Clytaemnestra describes her emotional state.

. . . flūctibus variis agor,

ut cum hinc profundum ventus, hinc aestus rapit,

incerta dubitat unda cui cēdat malō. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 138-40)

aestus, aestūs m. heat; surge, swell

flūctus, flūctūs m. wave, billow

hinc (adv.) from this place, from here;

hinc . . . hinc . . . from or on this side . . .

from or on that side . . .

profundum, profundī n. (the) deep, depths, deep

sea, ocean

rapio, rapere, rapui, raptus tear away, carry off

unda, undae f. wave

varius, -a, -um varied; changeable; conflicting

ventus, ventī m. wind

37. A comparison of the workings of reason and anger

ratio id iudicare vult quod aequum est: ira id aequum videre vult quod iudicavit.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGI* III.18.1)

iudicō (1-tr.) judge, determine
ratio, rationis *f.* account, reason

38. Quintilian assesses the Roman elegists.

elegiā quoque Graecōs prōvocāmus, curus mihi tersus atque elegāns maximē videtur auctor Tibullus. sunt qui Propertium mālint. Ovidius utrōque* lascivior, sicut dūrior Gallus. (QUINTILIAN, *INSTITUTIO ORATORIA* X.1.93)

*utrōque = *masc. sing. abl. of indef. adj.*, each
auctor, auctōris *m.* source; author
elegāns, elegantis refined, cultivated; graceful;
apt (in choosing words)
elegiā, elegiae *f.* elegiac poetry, elegy
Gallus, Galli *m.* (C. Cornelius) Gallus, elegiac
poet (69?–26 B.C.E.)
Graeci, Graecōrum *m.* (the) Greeks

lascivus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from restraint
prōvocō (prō- + vocō) (1-tr.) challenge, rival
sicut (conj.) just as
tersus, -a, -um polished, refined, neat
Tibullus, Tibulli *m.* (Albius) Tibullus, elegiac
poet (55?–19 B.C.E.)

39. A piece of Quintilian's wit

. . . qui stultis vidēri eruditū volunt stultū eruditis videntur. (QUINTILIAN, *INSTITUTIO ORATORIA* X.7.21)

eruditus, -a, -um learned, accomplished
stultus, -a, -um stupid, foolish

40. The satirist derides life in Rome.

quid Rōmae faciam? mentiri nesciō. (JUVENAL, *SATURAE* III.41)

mentior, mentiri, mentitus sum tell a falsehood, lie

41. The satirist advocates telling the truth in court.

summum crede nefās animam praeferre pudōri . . . (JUVENAL *SATURAE* VIII.83)

pudor, pudōris *m.* shame, decency, modesty

42. What should men ask from the gods?

ōrandum est ut sit mēns sāna in corpore sānō. (JUVENAL, *SATURAE* X.356)

sānus, -a, -um healthy sane

43. After a catalogue of men's crimes the satirist appends a tart remark.

hūmānī generis mōrēs tibi nōsse volentī

sufficit una domus,* . . . (JUVENAL, *SATURAE* XIII.159–60)

*domus, *here*, courthouse
hūmānus, -a, -um human
nōsse = nōvisse
sufficiō (sub- + faciō) be sufficient, be adequate

44. The historian comments on the superstitious responses of Roman soldiers to a strange drought.

quod in pace fors seu natura, tunc fātum et ira dei vocābatur. (TACITUS, *HISTORIAE* IV.26)

seu (conj.) or if, or

45. Gellius comments on the importance of usage to common speech.

sed nimirum cōsuētūdō vīcit, quae cum omnium domina rerum, tum maximē verbōrum est. (AULUS GELLIUS, *NOCTES ATTICAE* XII.13.16)

cōsuētūdō, cōsuētūdīnis *f.* custom, usage

domina, dominae *f.* mistress, ruler

nimirum (adv.) without doubt, of course

Longer Readings

1. Naevius, *alia carmina epica* frag. 64.1-4

The epitaph of the early Roman poet Naevius

Inmortālēs mortālēs sī foret fās flēre,
flērent dīvae Camēnae Naevium poētā.
itaque postquam est Orchī trāditus thēsaurō,
oblītī sunt Rōmae loquier linguā Latīnā.

Camēna, Camēnae *f.* Camena, any one of the
Italic divinities connected with springs and
waters and identified with the (Greek) Muses
flēō, flēre, flēvi, flētus weep (for)
foret = esset
immortālīs (= immortālīs), immortāle immortal
itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly
Latīnus, -a, -um of or belonging to Latium (an
area in central Italy), Latin

lingua, linguae *f.* tongue; language
loquier = loqui
mortālīs, mortāle mortal
Naevius, Naevii *m.* Naevius
Orchus (= Orcus), Orchī *m.* Orcus, god of the
underworld (= Dis)
thēsaurus, thēsauri *m.* treasure-chamber, vault;
storehouse

Gnaeus Naevius (270–201 B.C.E.) wrote tragedies, comedies, and an epic poem about the first war with Carthage entitled *Bellum Pūnicum* approximately eighty lines of which survive. Naevius wrote in the accentual Saturnian rhythm native to Italy rather than in the quantitative dactylic hexameter adapted from Greek models by later Latin epic poets.

2. Cicero, *In Verrem* II 2.162

Cicero paints a dramatic portrait of one of Verres' victims, who was barbarously and illegally punished.

caedebatur virgis in mediō forō Messānae cīvis Rōmānus, iūdicēs, cum intereā nūllus gemitus, nūlla vox alia illius miseri inter dolorem crepitumque plagārum audiebatur nisi haec: "Cīvis Rōmānus sum." hāc sē commemorātiōne civitātis omnia verbera dēpulsūrum cruciātumque ā corpore dēiectūrum arbitrābatur; is nōn modo hoc nōn perfecit, ut virgārum vim dēprecārētur, sed cum implōrāret saepius ūsurpāretque nōmen civitātis, crux—crux, inquam—Infēlici et aerumnōsō, quī numquam istam pestem viderat, comparābatur.

aerumnosus -a, -um wretched, suffering
caedō, caedere, cecidi, caesus beat, strike
commemorātiō, commemorātiōnis *f.* memory
reminder
comparō (1-tr.) prepare, get together; set up
crepitus, crepitūs *m.* sharp sound, crashing,
cracking
cruciātus, cruciātūs *m.* torture, torment
crux, crucis *f.* wooden frame, cross
dēiciō (dē- + iacio) throw down, topple over;
avert, divert
dēpellō (dē- + pellō), dēpellere, dēpulli, dēpulsus
drive away
dēprecor (1 tr.) ward off by prayer
dolor, doloris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain

gemitus, gemitūs *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)
imploro (1-tr.) ask for; implore, appeal to
inquam (defective verb) say; inquam = 1st sing
pres. act. indic.
intereā (adv.) meanwhile
iūdex, iūdicis *m.* juror, judge
Messāna, Messānae *f.* Messana, a town in Italy
nōmen, nōminis *n.* name
pestis, pestis, -ium *f.* plague, destruction, ruin
plaga, plagae *f.* blow, stroke
ūsurpō (1-tr.) take possession of, utter or invoke
(repeatedly)
verbera, verberum *n., pl.* instrument for flogging,
switch; blows floggings, lashes
virga, virgae *f.* twig, shoot, rod, stick

In 70 B.C.E. Cicero had his first great legal success with his prosecution of C. Verres, who was found guilty of governing Sicily badly and corruptly. Cicero had been quaestor in Sicily some years earlier, and clientēs (dependents) acquired at the time asked Cicero to take the case. Cicero's preparation was so thorough and the evidence against Verres so damning that Cicero had delivered only the first of several speeches (*Actus Prima in Verrem*, First Action Against Verres) when Verres admitted defeat. Cicero later published his remaining argument, the *Actio Secunda in Verrem*, which is divided into five books. The refined style of these speeches is evidence of the great rhetorical skill that Cicero had already achieved by the age of thirty-six.

3. Cicero, *Pro Archia* 19

Cicero concludes his account of the special position and value of poets.

sit igitur, iudicēs, sānctum apud vōs, hūmānissimōs hominēs, hoc poētae nōmen quod nulla unquam barbaria violāvit. saxa atque solitūdīnēs vōcī respondent, bestiae saepe immānēs cantū flectuntur atque cōsistunt; nōs institūtī rēbus optimīs nōn poētārum vōce moveāmur?

barbaria, barbariae *f.* foreign or barbarian world; barbarity, barbarousness
 bestia, bestiae *f.* beast, animal, creature
 cantus, cantūs *m.* singing, song
 cōsistō, cōsistere, cōstitū, — halt, stop, stand (still)
 flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus bend; soften, influence
 hūmānus, -a, -um human; humane, cultured
 immānis, immāne savage, brutal; tremendous, immense

institūō, instituere, institui, institūtus set up, establish; train, instruct
 iudex, iudicis *m.* judge, juror
 nōmen, nōminis *n.* name
 sānctus, -a, -um inviolate, blameless
 saxum, saxī *n.* rock, stone
 solitūdō, solitūdinis *f.* solitude, wasteland, uninhabited country
 violō (1-tr.) treat without respect, dishonor, outrage, violate

4. Cicero, *De Oratore* II.24

L. Licinius Crassus, a famous orator of his day, speaks to his friend Catulus in defense of relaxation. He recalls an earlier conversation with the orator and lawyer Scaevola.

itaque illud ego, quod in causā Curiānā Scaevolae dixi, nōn dixi secus ac sentiēbam: nam "si," inquam, "Scaevola, nullum erit testāmentum rectē factum, nisi quod tū scripseris, omnēs ad tē civēs cum tabulis veniēmus, omnium testāmenta tū scribēs unus. quid igitur?" inquam "quandō agēs negōtium pūbhcum? quandō amicōrum? quandō tuum? quandō dēnique nihil agēs?" tum illud addidī: "mihi enim liber esse nōn vidētur, qui nōn aliquandō nihil agit." in quā permanēō, Catule, sententiā mēque, cum hūc vēnī, hoc ipsum, nihil agere et plānē cessāre, dēlectat.

addo (ad- + do) add
 aliquandō (adv.) sometimes, occasionally
 Catulus, Catulī *m.* (Q. Lutatius) Catulus (consul 102 B.C.E.)
 cessō (1-intr.) stop, desist, do nothing, rest
 Curiānus, -a, -um of or belonging to Curius
 dēlectō (1-tr.) delight, please, charm
 dēnique (adv.) finally, at last in short, to sum up
 hūc (adv.) to this place, hither
 inquam (defective verb) say; inquam = 1st sing. pres. act. indic.
 itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly
 negōtium, negōtī *n.* business

permanēō (per- + manēō) remain; persist (in) remain steady
 plānē (adv.) plainly, clearly; utterly, absolutely
 quandō (interrog. adv.) when
 rectē (adv.) rightly, correctly
 Scaevola, Scaevolae *m.* (Q. Mucius) Scaevola (consul 117 B.C.E.)
 secus (adv.) otherwise, differently; secus ac, other(wise) than
 tabula, tabulae *f.* (writing) tablet, in pl., document, deed, record
 testāmentum, testāmentī *n.* will, testament

5 Cicero, *Paradoxa Stoicorum* 5.34

Cicero reflects on the qualities of a truly free person.

quis igitur vivit ut volt nisi qui recte vivit? qui gaudet officio, cui vivendi* via considerata atque provisa est, qui ne legibus quidem propter metum pareat, sed eas sequitur et colit, quia id salutare esse maxime iudicat, qui nihil dicit, nihil facit, nihil cogitat denique nisi libenter ac libere, cuius omnia consilia resque omnes, quas gerit, ab ipso profiscuntur eodemque† referuntur, nec est ulla res quae plus apud eum polleat quam ipsius voluntas atque iudicium; cui quidem etiam, quae vim habere maximam dicitur, Fortuna ipsa cedit, si, ut sapiens poeta dixit, "suis‡ ea cuique§ fingitur moribus."

*vivendi = *gen. sing. of verbal noun*, of living

†eodem *here* (adv.), to the same place

‡suis refers to cuique, his/her own.

§cuique = *masc. or fem. sing. dat. of indef. pron.*, for each person

colō, colere, colui, cultus cultivate, tend, cherish

cōsiderō (1 tr.) examine, contemplate

dēnique (adv.) finally, at last

fingō, fingere, finxi, fictus form, fashion, make

gaudeō, gaudere, gāvisus sum rejoice (in),

be glad, be pleased

iūdicium, iūdicium n. judgment

iūdicō (1-tr.) judge, determine

libenter (adv.) willingly, with pleasure

officium, officii n. obligation; duty, service

polleō, pollere, —, — exert power, have importance

prōvideō (prō- + videō) foresee; provide for

recte (adv.) rightly, correctly

salūtāris, salūtāre that promotes health, salutary

voluntās, voluntātis f. will, choice

6. Catullus XLV (hendecasyllable)

The poet paints a picture of mutual love.

Acmēn Septimius, suos amores,
 tenēns in gremiō "mea" inquit "Acmē,
 nī te perditē amo atque amare porro
 omnēs sum assiduē parātus annōs,
 quantum quī pote plūrimū perire,
 solus in Libyā Indiāque tostā
 caesiō veniam obuius leonū."
 hoc ut dīxit, Amor, sinistrā ut ante,
 dextrā sternuit approbatiōnem.
 at Acmē leviter caput reflectēns
 et dulcis pueri ēbriōs ocellōs
 illō purpureō ore suāviāta,
 "sic," inquit "mea vīta, Septimille,
 huic unī dominō ūsque serviāmus,
 ut multō mihi maior ācriorque
 ignis mollibus ardet in medullis."
 hoc ut dīxit, Amor, sinistrā ut ante,
 dextrā sternuit approbatiōnem.

5

10

15

Acmē, Acmēs *f.* Acme; Acmēn *acc. sing.*
 approbatiō, approbatiōnis *f.* approval
 ardeō, ardere, arsi arsurus burn, be on fire
 (with passion)
 assiduē (*adv.*) continually, constantly
 at (*conj.*) but
 caesiū, -a, -um (of eyes only) cutting, sharp;
 cat-eyed, gray-eyed
 caput, capitis *n.* head
 dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *as fem. subst.*, right
 side
 dulcis, dulce sweet, pleasant
 ēbrius, -a, -um drunk, intoxicated
 gremium, gremiū *n.* bosom, lap
 India, Indiae *f.* India, the Far East
 inquam (defective verb) say, inquit = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
 leō, leōnis *m.* lion
 Libya, Libyae *f.* Libya, a province in north
 Africa
 medulla, medullae *f.* marrow; *m. pl.*, vitals,
 innards
 mollis, molle gentle, mild, soft
 nī = nisi

obuius, -a, -um in the way, so as to meet, face to
 face with (+ *dat.*)
 ocellus, ocelli *m.* (little) eye
 ōs, ōris *n.* mouth
 parō (1-*tr.*) prepare
 perditē (*adv.*) ruinously, recklessly, desperately
 porro (*adv.*) forward; hereafter; in turn, further-
 more
 pote (indeclinable *adj.*) having the power, able;
 quī pote = is quī potest
 purpureus, -a, -um dark red, crimson, purple
 quantum (*adv.*) as much as
 reflectō, reflectere, reflexi, reflexus bend back
 Septimillus, Septimilli *m.* (little) Septimius
 Septimius, Septimii *m.* Septimius
 serviō, servīre, servīvi or servīi, servītūrus be a
 slave; serve (+ *dat.*)
 sinister, sinistra, sinistrum left; *as fem. subst.*, left
 side
 sternuō, sternuere, sternui, — sneeze
 suāvior (1-*tr.*) kiss
 torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostus parch, roast, scorch,
 burn
 tisque (*adv.*) continuously

nunc ab auspiciō bonō profecti
 mutuīs animīs amanti amantur:
 unam Septimius misellus Acmen
 māvult quam Syriās Britanniasque;
 unō in Septimiō fidēlis Acme
 facit deliciās libidinēque.
 quis ūllōs hominēs beātiōrēs
 vidit, quis Venerem auspiciōrem?

III

25

Acme, **Acme**s *f.* Acme; **Acmen** = *acc. sing.*
auspicātus, -a, -um favorable, auspicious
auspicium, **auspiciū** *n.* augury, omen, divine sign
beātus, -a, -um happy, blessed, fortunate
Britannia, **Britanniae** *f.* Britain
deliciae, **deliciārum** *f. pl.* delight

fidēlis, **fidēle** faithful
libidō, **libidinis** *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust
misellus, -a, -um poor (little), wretched, pitiable
mutuus, -a, -um shared, reciprocal, mutual
Septimius, **Septimiū** *m.* Septimius
Syria, **Syriae** *f.* Syria

7. Catullus LXIX

Why does Rufus repel women?

Nōli admirārī quārē tibi femina nūlla,
 Rufe, velit tenerum supposuisse femur,
 nōn sī illam rārae labefactēs mūnere vestis
 aut perluciduli deliciūs lapidis.
 laedit tē quaedam mala fābula, quā tibi fertur
 valle sub alarum trux habitare caper.
 hunc metuunt omnēs; neque mirum: nam mala valdē est
 bestia, nec quicum bella* puella cubet.
 quārē aut crudēlem nāsōrum interface pestem.
 aut admirārī dēsine cur fugiunt.

5

III

***bellus**, -a, -um pretty, charming, lovely
admiror (1 tr.) be astonished (at), wonder (at)
āla, **ālae** *f.* wing; *herz*, armpit
bestia, **bestiae** *f.* beast, animal, creature
caper, **capri** *m.* billy goat
crudēlis, **crudēle** cruel
cubo, **cubare**, **cubui**, **cubitum** lie down, sleep
deliciae, **deliciārum** *f. pl.* delight
dēsine, **dēsine**, **dēsine** or **dēsine**, **dēsine** stop,
 cease (+ inf.)
fābula, **fābulae** *f.* story, tale
femur, **femoris** *n.* thigh
habito (1-intr.) live
labefactō (1-tr.) cause to totter, weaken
laedo, **laedere**, **laesi**, **laesus** injure, harm
lapis, **lapidis** *m.* stone

metuō, **metuere**, **metui**, — fear, dread
mirus, -a, -um marvelous, astonishing
mūnus, **mūneris** *n.* present, gift
nāsus, **nāsi** *m.* nose
perlucidulus, -a, -um transparent, translucent
pestis, **pestis**, -ium *f.* plague, destruction, ruin
quicum = **quacum**
rārus, -a, -um loose-knit; exquisite, rare
Rufus, **Rufi** *m.* Rufus, the addressee of the
 poem
supponō (sub- + **pōnō**) put under; join
tener, **tenera**, **tenerum** tender, soft, delicate,
 young
trux, **trux** wild, rough, fierce, ferocious
vallēs, **vallis**, -ium *f.* valley, vale
vestis, **vestis**, -ium *f.* clothing, garment

8. Catullus LXXII

The poet explains to Lesbia his conflicting feelings.

Dicēbās quondam solum tē nōsse Catullum,

Lesbia, nec prae mē velle tenēre Iovem,

dīlēxī turn tē nōn tantum ut vulgus amīcam,

sed pater ut nātōs diligit et generōs.

nunc tē cognōvi: quārē etsi impēnsius ūror,

multō mī tamen es vīlior et levior.

"quī* potis est?" inquis. quod† amantem iniūria tālis

cōgit amāre magis, sed bene velle minus.

*quī, *here* (adv.), how

†quod, *here* (conj.), because

amīca, amīcae *f.* (female) friend; mistress
courtesan

cōgō (cō- + agō), cōgere, cōgī, cōactus drive
together; force, compel

diligō, diligere, dīlēxī, dīlēctus value, esteem,
love

gener, generi *m.* son in law

impēnsus, -a, -um heavy; costly

iniūria, iniūriae *f.* injury injustice

inquam (defective verb) say; inquis = 2nd sing.
pres act indic.

mī = mīhi

nōsse = nōvisse

potis (indeclinable adj.) having the power, able;
possible

prae (prep. + abl.) in front of, before

quondam (adv.) at one time, once, formerly

tālis, tāle such, of such a sort

tantum (adv.) so much; only

ūrō, ūrere, ussi, ustus burn, scorch, inflame,

consume; sting

vīlis, vīle worthless, cheap

vulgus, vulgī *n.* common people, (the) multitude,
crowd

9. Caesar, *De Bellis Gallicis* IV.15

Caesar describes the end of a battle against a German tribe.

Germānī, post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs interfici vidērent, armīs abiectis signisque militāribus relictis, se ex castris eiecerunt, et cum ad cōfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, magnō numerō interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitudīne, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. nostri ad unum omnēs incolumēs, perpauca vulnerātis ex tanti belli timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum quadrīngentōrum trīgintā milium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt.

abiciō (ab- + iaciō) throw away

caput, capitis *n.* head

clāmōr, clāmōris *m.* shout, shouting

cōfluēns, cōfluentis, -ium *m.* meeting place
(of rivers) confluence

dēspērō (1-tr.) give up as hopeless, despair of

flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream

Germānī, Germānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Germans

ibi (adv.) there

incolumis, incolume unharmed, safe

lassitudō, lassitudinis *f.* weariness, fatigue

militāris, militāre military

Mosa, Mosae *f.* (the) Meuse, a river in northern Gaul

numerus, numeri *m.* number

opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus press down; suppress, overwhelm, crush

perpauci, perpaucae, perpauca very few

perveniō (per- + veniō) arrive at (+ ad + acc.)

praecipitō (1-tr.) throw or hurl headlong

recipiō (re- + capiō) take back; sē recipere, to withdraw

relicuus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of)

Rhēnus, Rhēnī *m.* (the) Rhine, a river in north-eastern Gaul

tantus, -a, -um so great

tergum, tergi *n.* back

vulnerō (1-tr.) wound

10 Caesar, *De Bello Gallico* IV.25

From their ships anchored a short distance away in sufficiently deep water, Caesar's men attempt to come ashore in Britain. Frightened by the Celts on shore and by the deep water, they hesitate.

quod* ubi Caesar animadvertit, naves longas, quarum et species erat barbaris inusitatior et motus ad† usum expeditior, paulum removēri ab onerariis navibus et remis incitari et ad‡ latus apertum hostium constitui atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostes propelli ac submovēri iussit. quae res magno usui nostris fuit. nam et navium figurā et remorum motū et inusitato genere tormentorum permōti barbari constitērunt ac paulum modo pedem rettulerunt. at nostris militibus cunctantibus maximē propter altitudinem maris, qui decimae legionis aquilam ferēbat, obtestatus deōs ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret, "desilite," inquit, "commilitonēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere; ego certē meum rei publicae atque imperatori officium praestiterō." hoc cum voce magnā dixisset, se ex navi prōiecit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. tum nostri cohortati inter se nē tantum dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluērunt.

*quod refers to the hesitation of Caesar's men.

†ad, here, for (the purpose of)

‡ad, here, at, near

admittō (ad- + mittō) allow, permit

altitūdō, altitudinis *f.* height; depth

animadvertō, animadvertere, animadverti,

animadversus turn (one's) attention to notice

apertus, -a, -um open; exposed

aquila, aquilae *f.* eagle; standard (of a legion)

at (conj.) but

barbarus, barbari, *m.* foreigner

—, —, coept, coeptus (defective verb) began, have begun

cohortor (co- + hortor) exhort, encourage; speak encouragingly

commilitō, commilitōnis *m.* fellow soldier

consistō, consistere, constiti, — stop, stand still, halt

constituō, constituere, constitui, constitutus set up, establish; draw up station

cunctor (1 intr.) delay hesitate

dedecus, dedecoris *n.* disgrace, dishonor

desiliō, desilire, desilui, desultus jump or leap down

eveniō (ē- + veniō) come out, turn out

expeditus, -a, -um unimpeded, light-armed, free

figura, figurae *f.* shape

funda, fundae *f.* sling

incitō (1-tr.) rouse, excite

inde (adv.) from there, thence

inquam (defective verb) say; inquit = 3rd sing. pres. act. indic.

inusitatus, -a, -um unusual, extraordinary

latus, lateris *n.* side, flank

navis, navis, -ium *f.* ship, navi = *abl. sing.*

obtestor (1-tr.) call to witness, swear by; beseech, implore

officium, officii *n.* obligation; duty

onerarius, -a, -um for transport, cargo-

paulum (adv.) a little

permovēō (per- + movēō) disturb; frighten

pēs, pedis *m.* foot; pedem referre, to retreat

praestō, praestāre, praestiti, praestitus perform, carry out

prōdō (prō- + dō) hand over

prōiciō (prō- + iaciō) hurl forward or forth

propellō (prō- + pello), propellere, propuli,

propulsus push forward; repel

removeō (re- + moveō) remove; move back

remus, remi *m.* oar

sagitta, sagittae *f.* arrow

submoveō (sub- + moveō) dislodge, ward off

tantus, -a, -um so much, so great

tormentum, tormenti *n.* engine of war, missile-shooting machine, catapult

universus, -a, -um all together

usus, usus *m.* use; benefit, advantage

11. Sallust. *Bellum Iugurthae* 110

Bocchus, the king of Mauretania (in northern Africa) and the former ally of Jugurtha in his war against the Romans, speaks to Sulla, a lieutenant of the Roman general Marius. Bocchus informs Sulla about his own future plans.

cēterum dē rē publicā vostrā, quocius cūrātor hūc missus es, paucis* accipe bellum ego populō Rōmanō neque fēci neque factum umquam voluī; at finis meos adversum armātōs armīs tūtātus sum. id omittō, quandō vōbīs ita placet. gerite quod vultis cum Iugurtha bellum.

*paucis, sc. verbis

adversum (= adversum) (prep. + acc.) in opposition to, against, in the face of

armātus, armātī m. armed man, soldier

at (conj.) but

cēterum (adv.) moreover, however that may be, but

cūrātor, cūrātōris m. curator; guardian

hūc (adv.) to this place, hither

Iugurtha, Iugurthae m. Jugurtha, a Numidian king

omittō (ob- + mittō) disregard, pass over; discontinue, leave off

quandō (conj.) since, as

quocius = cuius

tūtōr (1-tr.) protect, guard

vostrā = vestrā

12. Vergil. *Eclues* IX.32-36

A young shepherd makes a modest boast.

... et mē fēcēre poētā

Pierides, sunt et mihi carmina, mē quoque dicunt

vātern pāstōrēs; sed nōn ego crēdulus illis.

nam neque adhūc Variō videor nec dicere Cinnā

digna, sed argūtōs inter strepere ānser olōrēs.

adhūc (adv.) up to the present time

ānser, ānseris m. goose

argūtus, -a, -um sharp, clear voiced, melodious, tuneful

Cinna, Cinnae m. (Helvius) Cinna, poet and friend of Catullus

crēdulus, -a, -um trusting (in) (+ dat.)

olōr, olōris m. swan

pāstor, pāstōris m. herdsman, shepherd

Pieris, Pieridos f. daughter of Pierus, Muse;

Pierides = nom. pl.

strepō, strepere, strepui, strepitum make a loud noise, screech

Varius, Varii m. (L.) Varius (Rufus), poet and friend of Horace and Vergil

vātēs, vātis, -ium m. or f. prophet, bard, poet

13. Vergil, *Aeneid* VI.847–53

In the underworld Aeneas learns of the Roman mission from the soul of his father, Anchises.

excūdent alii spirantia mollius aera
 (crēdō equidem), vivōs dūcent dē marmore vultūs,
 ōrābunt* causās melius, caelīque meātūs
 dēscribent radiō et surgentia sīdera dīcent:
 tū regere imperiō populōs, Rōmāne, mementō
 (hae tibi erunt artēs), pācīque impōnere mōrem,
 parcere subiectis et dēbellāre superbōs.

850

*ōrō, *here*, plead

aes, aeris *n.* copper, bronze

dēbellō (1-tr.) fight (someone) to the finish, sub-
 due

dēscribō (dē- + scribō) draw, mark out

excūdō, excūdere, excūdi, excūsus hammer out,
 forge, fashion

impōnō (im- + pōnō) place on, impose on

marmor, marmoris *n.* marble

meātus, meātūs *m.* movement, progress

mollis, molle gentle, mild, soft

parco, parcere, pepercī, parsurus be merciful,
 be sparing (+ dat.)

radius radii *m.* ray; rod; compass

sīdus, sīderis *n.* star

spīrō (1-intr.) breathe; live

subiectus -a, -um subordinate, subject

superbus, -a, -um proud, haughty

surgō, surgere, surrexi, surrectus rise

vīvus -a, -um living

vultus, vultūs *m.* expression, countenance; face

14. Vergil, *Aeneid* XII 657–71

As Aeneas and the Trojans make a strong attack, a comrade of Turnus describes the perilous situation.

“ . . . mussat rēx ipse Latinus

quōs generōs vocet aut quae sēsē ad foedera flectat.

praeterea rēgīna, tuī fidissima, dextrā

occidit ipsa suā lucemque exterrita fugit.

sōlī prō portīs Messāpus et ācer Atīnās

sustentant aciēs, circum hos utrimque phalangēs

stant dēnsae strictisque seges mucrōnibus horret

ferrea; tū currum dēsertō in grāmine versās.”

650

Atīnās (nom. only) Atinas, an Italian warrior
circum (prep. + acc.) around
currus, currūs *m.* chariot
dēnsus, -a, -um thick, dense; crowded together
dēsero, deserere, deserui, dēsertus forsake, abandon, desert
dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *as fem. subst.*
(*sc. manus*), right hand
exterreō (ex- + terreō) scare, terrify
ferreus, -a, -um made of iron
fidus, -a, -um faithful, loyal, devoted; trusting
flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus bend
foedus, foederis *n.* agreement, treaty pact
gener, geneni *m.* son-in-law
grāmen, grāminis *n.* grass; pasture
horreō, horrēre, horruī, — stand up, bristle;
tremble, shudder
Latinus, Latīnī *m.* Latinus, king of Latium

Messāpus, Messāpī *m.* Messapus, an Italian leader and ally of Latinus and Turnus
mucrō, mucrōnis *m.* point (of a sword); sword
mussō (1-intr.) mutter (in uncertainty)
occidō (ob- + cadō), occidere, occidī, occāsūrus fall; perish, die
phalanx, phalangis *f.* phalanx, a close formation of troops
porta, portae *f.* gate
praetereā (adv.) besides, furthermore, in addition
seges, segetis *f.* field or crop of standing corn
stringō, stringere, strinxī, strictus bare, unsheathe
sustentō (1-tr.) support, uphold, sustain
utrimque (adv.) on both sides
versō (1-tr.) twist, keep turning around

obstipuit variā cōnfusus imāgine rērum

665

Turnus et obtūtū tacitō stetit; aestuat ingēns

inō in corde pudor mixtōque insānia luctu

et furiis agitātus amor et cōnschia virtūs.

ut primum discussae umbrae et lūx reddita menti,

ardentis oculōrum orbis ad moenia torsit

670

turbidus ēque rotis magnam respexit ad urbem.

aestuō (1-*intr.*) burn, blaze, seethe

agitō (1-*tr.*) stir up, set in motion; vex, harass

ardeō, ardēre, arsi, arsūrus burn, be on fire

cōfundō, cōfundere, cōfūdī, cōnfusus pour
together; confuse, trouble

cōnsciūs, -a, -um conscious, aware

cor, cordis *n.* heart

discutiō, discutere, discussī, discussus shatter;
scatter, disperse, break up

furiāe, furiarū *f. pl.* madness, mad desire,
frenzy

imāgō imāginis *n.* image, likeness; appearance

insānia, insāniae *f.* madness, insanity

lūctus, lūctūs *m.* mourning

misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus mix, stir up,
produce

obstipescō, obstipescere, obstipui, —

be dumbstruck, be stunned, be dazed

obtūtus, obtūtūs *m.* gaze, stare

orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle, orb

pudor, pudōris *m.* shame, decency, modesty

reddō (red- + dō) give back, return; restore

respiciō, respicere, respexī, respectus look back
at

rota, rotae *f.* wheel; *in pl.*, chariot

tacitus, -a, -um silent

torqueō, torquēre, torsī, tortus twist, turn

turbidus, -a, -um agitated, wild, frantic

varius, -a, -um varied; changeable; conflicting

15. Horace, *Carmina* I.11 (Asclepiadean)

Leuconoë longs to know the future.

Tū nē quaesieris, scīre nefās, quem mihi, quem tibi
finem dī dederint, Leuconoë, nec Babylōniōs
temptaris numeros. ut* melius, quidquid erit, pati.
seu plūris hiemēs seu tribuit Iuppiter ultimam,
quae nunc oppositis dēbilitat pūmicibus mare
Tyrhēnum: sapiās, vīna liquēs, et spatiō brevi
spem longam reseceās. dum loquimur, fūgerit invida
aetās: carpe diem quam minimum† credula postero.

*ut, *here* (adv.) how

†minimum = minimē

aetās, aetātis *f.* age, time

Babylōnius, -a, -um of Babylonia, Babylonian

carpō, carpere, carpsī carpus pluck, gather;

seize; criticize, carp at

crēdulus, -a -um trusting (in) (+ dat.)

dēbilitō (1-tr.) weaken

dum (conj. + indic.) while

hiem(p)s, hiemis *f.* winter; storm

invidus, -a, -um envious, bearing ill-will

Leuconoë, Leuconoēs *f.* Leuconoë, addressee of
the poem

liquō (1-tr.) make liquid; strain, purify

numerus, numeri *m.* number; numerical symbol

oppōnō (ob- + pōnō) place in the way, expose

posterus, -a, -um next, following

pūmex, pūmicis *f.* pumice stone

quidquid = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. pron.*,
whatever

resecō, reseceās, , resectum cut short

restrain, cut back

sapiō, sapere, sapī or sapivī, — be intelligent,
show good sense

seu (conj.) or if; seu . . . seu . . . whether . . .
or if . . .

spatium, spatii *n.* course, track; space, (interval
of) time

temptō (1-tr.) test, try; make (experimental) use
of; temptāris = temptāveris

tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus grant, bestow,
assign

Tyrhēnus, -a, -um Tyrrhenian, Tuscan

Etruscan, mare Tyrhēnum, Tyrrhenian Sea,

the sea along the west coast of Italy

ultimus, -a, -um farthest, most remote; last, final

vīnum, vīni *n.* wine

16. Horace, *Carmina* IV.7 (Archilochean)

Spring brings thoughts of death for mortals.

Diffūgēre nives, redeunt iam gramina campis

arboribusque comae;

mūtāt terra vicēs, et dēcrēscēntia rīpās

flūmina praetereunt.

Grātia cum nymphis geminisque sorōribus audet*

dūcere nūda chorōs.

immortālia nē spērēs, monet annus et almus

quae rapit hōra diem.

frīgora mītescunt Zephyris, vēr prōterit aestās,

interitūra, simul

pōmifer autumnus frūgēs effūderit, et mox

brūma recurrit iners

damna tamen celerēs reparant caelestia lūnae:

nōs ubi dēcidimus

quo pater Aenēās, quō dives Tullus et Ancus,

pulvis et umbra sumus.

**Grātia*, here, a Grace, goddess of charm and beauty, attendant of Venus

aestās, *aestātis* *f.* summer

almus, -a, -um nourishing; gracious, kindly

Ancus, *Anci m.* Ancus (Martius), fourth of the legendary kings of Rome

arbor, *arboris* *f.* tree

autumnus, *autumnī m.* autumn, fall

brūma, *brūmae* *f.* winter

caelestis, *caeleste* heavenly, celestial

celer, *celeris*, *celere* swift, fast

chorus, *chori m.* dance, chorus, troop of dancers

coma, *comae* *f.* hair

damnum, *damni n.* loss; warning

dēcidō (*dē- + cadō*), *dēcidere* *dēcidit*, — fall down

dēcrēscō, *dēcrēscere*, *dēcrēvī*, *dēcrētus* diminish, decrease

diffugiō (*dis- + fugiō*) scatter

dives, *divitis* rich, wealthy

effundō, *effundere*, *effūdī*, *effusus* pour out; send forth

flūmen, *flūminis n.* river, stream

frīgus, *frīgoris n.* cold; *m pl.*, cold weather

frūx, *frūgis* *f.* fruit

geminus, -a, -um twin-born, twin

grāmen, *grāminis n.* grass; pasture

hōra, *hōrae* *f.* hour

iners, *inertis* inactive; idle, inert; motionless

immortālis (= *immortālis*), *immortāle* immortal

intereō (*inter- + eō*), *interire*, *interī*, *interitūrus* perish, be destroyed, disappear

lūna *lūnae* *f.* moon

mītescō, *mītescere*, —, — grow mild, become gentle

mūtō (1-tr.) change

nix, *nivis* *f.* snow

nūdus, -a, -um naked, nude

nympha, *nymphae* *f.* nymph, a semidivine spirit

pōmifer, *pōmifera*, *pōmiferum* fruit-bearing

praetereō (*praeter- + eō*), *praeterire*, *praeterī* or *praeterīvī*, *praeteritus* go by, pass by, pass over

prōterō, *prōterere*, *prōtrīvī*, *prōtritus* tread under foot, tramp down

pulvis, *pulveris* *m.* dust

rapio, *rapere*, *rapuī*, *rapus* tear away, carry off; consume

recurro, *recurrere*, *recurri*, *recursum* run or hurry back

reparo (1-tr.) recover, restore, repair

rīpa, *rīpae* *f.* (river) bank

simul (conj.) at the same time as, as soon as

Tullus, *Tulli m.* Tullus (Hostilius), third of the legendary kings of Rome

vēr *vērīs n.* spring

—, *vicis* *f.* turning, turn, succession, alternation

Zephyrus *Zephyrī m.* Zephyr, the west wind

quis scit an adiciant* hodiernae crāstina summae†
 tempora dī superi?
 cūncta mantīs avidās fugient hērēdis, amicō
 quae dederis animō.
 cum semel occideris et dē tē splendida Minōs
 fēcerit arbitria,
 nōn, Torquāte, genus, nōn tē fācundia, non tē
 restituet pietās.
 infernīs neque enim tenebris Diāna‡ pudīcum
 liberat Hippolytum
 nec Lēthaea valet Thēseus abrumpere cārō
 vincula Pirithoō.

20

25

*adiciant scans as **aduciant* with the first *i*-
 being consonantal

†summa, summae *f.* sum, whole, total

‡The *-i-* of Diāna here scans *long*.

abrumpō, abrumpere, abrūpi, abruptus break
 off, sever

adiciō (ad- + iaciō) add to

arbitrium, arbitrii *n.* judgment

avidus, -a, -um desirous, eager, greedy

crāstinus, -a -um of tomorrow

cūnctus, -a, -um all

fācundia, fācundiae *f.* eloquence

hērēs, hērēdis *m.* or *f.* heir heiress

Hippolytus, Hippolyti *m.* Hippolytus, son of
 Theseus

hodiernus, -a, -um of today

infernus, -a, -um lower, infernal

Lēthaeus, -a, -um of Lethe, the river of forgetful-
 ness in the underworld

Minōs, Minōis *m.* Minos, judge (with Aeacus
 and Rhadamanthys) in the underworld

occidō (ob- + cadō), occidere, occidi, occāsūrus
 fall, perish, die

pietās, pietātis *f.* sense of duty, dutifulness,
 piety

Pirithoūs, Pirithoi *m.* Pirithoūs, friend of
 Theseus

pudīcus, -a, -um chaste, pure, honorable

restituō, restituere, restitui, restitūsus set up
 again, restore, revive

semel (adv.) once; once and for all

splendidus, -a, -um brilliant, glittering; mag-
 nificent

superus, -a, -um upper; dī superi, deōrum

superōrum *m. pl.* gods above

tenebrae, tenebrarum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows

Thēseus, Thēsei *m.* Theseus, hero from Athen-
 ian myth and close friend of Pirithoūs

Torquātus, Torquātī *m.* Torquatus, addressee
 of the poem

vinculum, vinculi *n.* bond, chain

17. Horace, *Ars Poetica* 361–65

The poet compares poetry to painting.

ut pictūra poësis: erit quae, si propius stēs,
tē capiat magis, et quaedam, si longius abstēs;
haec amat obscurum, volet haec sub luce vidēri,
iūdicis argūtum quae nōn formīdat acūmen;
haec placuit semel, haec deciēns repetīta placēbit.

365

abstō (ab- + stō), abstāre, —, — stand away,
stand at a distance
acūmen, acūminis *n.* sharpness; mental acute-
ness, judgment
argūtus, -a, -um sharp; shrewd, clever
deciē(n)s (adv.) ten times
formidō (1-tr.) fear, dread

iūdex, iūdicis *m.* juror, judge
obscurus, -a, -um dark, dim, obscure
pictūra, pictūrae *f.* picture, painting
poësis, poësis *f.* poetry; poem
propius (adv.) nearer, more closely
repetō (re- + petō) seek again, return to
semel (adv.) once, one time

18. Ovid, *Metamorphōses* V.190–94

Just as the hero Perseus resolves to use the Gorgon's head to rout his enemies, one of them, Nileus—who falsely claims to be descended from the river Nile—begins to taunt Perseus.

"adspice" ait "Perseu, nostrae prīmordia gentis:
magna ferēs tacitās sōlācia mortis ad umbrās,
ā tantō cecidisse* virō;" pars ultima vōcis
in mediō suppressa sonō est, adapertaque velle
ōra loqui crēdās, nec sunt ea pervia verbis.

190

*cecidisse, supply tē as subject accusative
adaperiō, adaperire, adaperivī, adaperitus
open wide
adspiciō (= aspicō), adspicere, adspexi.
adspēctus look toward, look at; behold
aiō (defective verb) say; ait = 3rd sing. pres.
act, indic.
ōs, ōris *n.* in sing. or pl. mouth
Perseus, Perseī *m.* Perseus, son of Zeus and
Danae who killed the Gorgon and rescued
Andromeda; Perseu = voc. sing.

pervius, -a, -um that makes a passage for, passable
prīmordia, *prīmordiōrum *n. pl.* beginnings,
origin; source
sōlācium, sōlāciū *n.* comfort, solace, relief
sonus, sonī *m.* sound, noise; utterance
supprimō, suppressere, suppressi, suppressus
press down, crush; check, block
tacitus, -a, -um silent
tantus, -a, -um so great
ultimus, -a, -um farthest, most remote; last, final

19. Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita* XXII.50.6

After the disastrous battle of Cannae, the remaining Roman soldiers were divided into two camps. In the smaller camp, the tribune urges his men to action.

P. Semprōnius Tudītānus tribūnus militum "capī ergō māvoltis," inquit, "ab avāris-
simō et crūdēlissimō hoste aestimārique capita vestra et exquīri pretia ab interro-
gantibus Rōmānus cīvis sis an Latīnus socius, ut ex tuā contumēliā et miserā alteri
honoris quaeratur? nōn tu,* sī quidem L. Aemili cōnsulis, qui sē bene morī quam
turpiter vivere māluit, et tot fortissimōrum virōrum quī circā eum cumulātū iacent
cīvēs estis. sed antequam opprimit lūx maiōraque hostium agmina obsaepiunt iter,
per hōs, quī inordinātī atque incompressi obstrepunt portis, ērumpāmus. ferro
atque audāciā via fit quamvis per cōnfertōs hostēs . . ."

*nōn tū, sc. capī mālēs; tu refers to each individ-
ual soldier in the group being addressed.

L. Aemilius, L. Aemiliū m. L. Aemilius (Paulus)
(consul 216 B.C.E.), one of the Roman leaders
at the disastrous battle of Cannae

aestimō (1-tr.) price, value, assess

agmen, agminis n. (battle) line; throng

antequam (conj.) before

avarus, -a, -um greedy, rapacious

caput, capitis n. head

circā (prep. + acc.) around, near

cōnfertus, -a, -um crowded, dense, packed close
together

contumēlia, contumēliae f. abuse

crūdēlis, crūdēle cruel

cumulō (1 tr.) pile up, heap

ergō (adv.) therefore

ērumpō, ērumpere, ērūpī, ēruptus break out
burst forth

exquīrō (ex- + quaerō), exquisire, exquisīvi,
exquisitus ask (about), inquire

fiō, fieri, factus sum, be made; fit = 3rd sing. pres.
act. indic.

honoris, honoris m. office, honor, respect

iaceō, iacere, iacui, — lie, rest lie dead

incompositus, -a, -um not in proper formation,
disorganized

inordinatus, -a -um not regularly arranged,
disordered

inquam (defective verb) say; inquit = 3rd sing.
pres. act. indic.

interrogō (1-tr.) ask, examine, interrogate

iter, itineris n. passage, road, route

Latīnus, -a, -um of or belonging to Latium,
an area in central Italy; Latin

miseria, miseriae f. misery

obsaepiō, obsaepire, obsaepsi, obsaeptus block
obstruct, shut off

obstrepō, obstrepere, obstrepsi, obstrepitum
make a loud noise in front of (+ dat.)

opprimō, opprimere, oppressi, oppressus press
down; suppress, overwhelm

porta, portae f. gate

pretium, pretii n. price

quamvis (adv.) even though

P. Semprōnius Tudītānus. P. Semprōniū
Tudītāni m. P. Sempronius Tuditanus (consul
204 B.C.E.), a military tribune at the battle of
Cannae

tot (indeclinable adj.) so many

tribūnus, tribūni m. tribune, military
commander

turpiter (adv.) foully; basely, shamefully

20. Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Morales* CVII.8

The philosopher muses on man's response to the ever-changing nature of things.

hanc rerum condicionem mutare non possumus; illud possumus, magnum sumere animum et viro bono dignum, quod fortiter fortuita patiamur et naturae consentiamus. natura autem hoc, quod vidēs, regnum mutationibus temperat; turbantur maria cum quieverunt; flant in vicem venti; noctem dies sequitur; pars caeli consurgit, pars mergitur. contrariis rerum aeternitas constat.

aeternitas, aeternitatis *f.* eternity

condicio, condicionis *f.* contract, agreement; condition

consentio (con- + sentio) be in harmony (with); assent (to)

consto, constare, constiti, constaturus stand still; be composed (of); depend (upon), consist (in) (+ abl.)

consurgō, consurgere, consurrexi, consurrectus stand up, rise

contrarius, -a, -um opposite, contrary

flō (1-ntr.) blow

fortuitus, -a, -um determined by chance, accidental, fortuitous

mergō, mergere, mersi, mersus plunge, dip; sink (below the horizon), go down

mutatio, mutationis *f.* change, alteration

mutō (1-tr.) change

quiescō, quiescere, quievi, quietus fall asleep; be at rest; subside

regnum, regni *n.* kingdom, realm

sumō, sumere, sumpsī, sumptus take up, seize; take on, assume

temperō (1-tr.) restrain; moderate, temper

turbō (1-tr.) stir up, confuse, throw into confusion

ventus, venti *m.* wind

—, vicis *f.* turn; succession, in vicem, in turn; against one another

Seneca's *Epistulae Morales* (*Letters Concerned with Ethics*) is a collection of 124 letters in which he attempts to answer questions concerning moral conduct and moral improvement. Written in a plain style, the *Epistulae* often end with pointed, epigrammatic *sententiae*.

21. Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Morales* CVII.11–12

The philosopher concludes a letter to his friend Lucilius, in which he encourages Lucilius to learn to accept life's unpredictability. The first line of the passage is a translation of a line from the Greek philosopher Cleanthes.

ducunt volentem fata, nolentem trahunt.

sic vivamus, sic loquamur; paratos nos inveniatur atque inopertos fatum. hic est magnus animus qui se ei tradidit; at contra ille pusillus et degener qui obluctatur et de ordine mundi male existimat et emendare mavult deos quam se. Vale.

at (conj.) but

degener, degeneris lowborn; degenerate, ignoble

emendō (1-tr.) correct, reform

existimō (1-tr.) reckon, suppose, think

impiger (= impiger) impigra, impigrum active, energetic

mundus, mundi *m.* universe, world

obluctor (1-intr.) struggle, resist

ordō, ordinis *m.* order

parō (1-tr.) prepare, make ready

pusillus, -a, -um very small, petty, mean

trahō trahere, traxi, tractus draw, drag; pull

22. Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnon* 466–76

Eurybates describes the beginning of a storm that overwhelms the Greek fleet as it returns from Troy.

nox prima caelum sparserat stellis, iacent
 deserta ventō vēla. tum murmur grave,
 maiōra minitans, collibus summis cadit
 tractūque longō lītus ac petrae gemunt;
 agitata ventis unda ventūris tumet
 cum subitō lūna conditur, stellae latent;
 nec ūna nox est: dēnsa tenebrās obruit
 caligō et omni lūce subductā fretum
 caelumque miscet, undique incumbunt simul
 rapiuntque pelagus infimo eversum solo
 adversus Eurō Zephyrus et Boreae Notus.

470

475

adversus, -a, -um turned toward, opposite, hostile, adverse (+ dat.)
 agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion; vex, harass
 Boreās, Boreae *m.* Boreas, the north wind
 caligō, caliginis *f.* dimness; fog, mist; darkness
 collis, collis, -ium *m.* hill
 condō, condere, condidī, conditus found, build; conceal; bury
 dēnsus, -a, -um thick, dense
 dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertus forsake, abandon, desert
 Eurus, Euri *m.* Eurus, the east wind
 ēvertō, ēvertēre, ēvertī, ēversus turn upside down, churn up
 fretum, freti *n.* strait; sea, (the) deep
 gero, gemere, genuī, gemitum groan, moan
 iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, — lie, rest, lie still
 incumbō, incumbere, incubuī, — fall (on), throw oneself (on), bear down (on)
 infimus, -a, -um lowest, bottom (of), depths (of)
 lateō, latēre, latuī, — (intr.) hide, lie hidden, be concealed
 lītus, litoris *n.* shore, beach
 lūna, lūnae *f.* moon
 minitor (1-tr.) threaten

misceo, miscēre, miscui, mixtus mix, stir up
 murmur, murmuris *n.* rumble, roar
 Notus, Notī *m.* Notus the south wind
 obruō, obruere, obrui, obrutus cover up, overwhelm
 pelagus, pelagi *n.* (deep) sea
 petra, petrae *f.* rock, boulder
 rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus tear away, carry off, consume
 simul (adv.) at the same time; together
 solum, soli *n.* soil; base, foundation
 spargō, spargere, sparsi, sparsus scatter, distribute
 stella, stellae *f.* star
 subduco (sub- + dūco) lead up (from below), remove, take away
 subitō (adv.) suddenly
 tenebrae, tenebrarum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows
 tractus, tractus *m.* dragging, trail, extent, expanse
 tumeō, tumēre, tumui, — swell
 unda, undae *f.* wave, water
 undique (adv.) from all sides, on all sides
 ventus, ventī *m.* wind
 Zephyrus, Zephyri *m.* Zephyrus, the west wind

Continuous Readings

1. Cicero, *In Catilinam* I 12-13

nunc iam* apertē rem publicam ūniversam petis, templa deōrum immortalīum, tēcta urbis, vitam omnium cīvium, Italiam tōtam ad exitium et vāstītātem vocās. quā rē, quoniam id quod est prīmum, et quod huius imperi disciplinaeque maiōrum proprium est, facere nōndum audeō, faciam id quod est ad[†] sevērītātem lēnius, ad[†] commūnem salūtem utilius. nam si tē interfici iusserō, residēbit in rē publicā reliqua coniūrātōrum manus; sīn tū, quod tē iam dūdum hortor, exieris, exhaustiētur ex urbe tuōrum comitum magna et perniciosā sentīna rei publicae. quid est, Catilīna? num dubitās id mē imperante facere quod iam tuā sponte faciēbās? exīre ex urbe iubet cōnsul hostem. interrogās mē num in exsiliū? nōn iubeō, sed sī mē cōnsulis, suādeō.

*nunc iam, now at last

†ad, *hæc*, with regard to, with a view to

apertē (adv.) openly

comes, comitis *m.* or *f.* companion, comrade

commūnis, commūne common

coniūrātor, coniūrātōris *m.* conspirator

cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsulū, cōnsultus take counsel, consult

disciplīna, disciplīnæ *f.* training

dūdum (adv.) some time ago before; iam

dūdum, for a long time now, long since

exhaustiō, exhaustire, exhausti, exhaustus drain dry

exēō (ex- + eō), exīre, exī or exīvi, exitum go out, depart

exitium, exitiū *n.* destruction, ruin

immortalis, immortale immortal

interrogō (inter- + rogō) (1-tr.) ask, examine, interrogate

lēnis, lēne mild, gentle

nōndum (adv.) not yet

perniciōsus, -a, -um destructive, ruinous

proprius, -a, -um one's own; peculiar (to), characteristic (of) (~ gen.)

reliquus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of)

resideō, residere, resēdi, — be left, remain

sentīna, sentīnæ *f.* bilgewater; cesspool; dregs,

■■■■■

sevērītās, sevērītātis *f.* gravity, seriousness, severity

sīn (conj.) but if

*spōns, *spontis *f.* (one's own) will

suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsus recommend, urge, advise

tēctum, tēcti *n.* roof; house

ūniversus, -a, -um all together, entire, whole

ūtilis, ūtile useful

vāstītās, vāstītātis *f.* devastation

2. Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae* 1-2

sed diū magnum inter mortalis certāmen fuit vīne corporis an virtute animi res militaris magis prōcēderet. nam et priusquam incipiās, cōsultō et, ubi cōsulueris, mātūrē factō opus est. ita utrumque* per sē indigēns; alterum alterius auxiliō eget.

2. Igitur initio rēgēs — nam in terris nōmen imperi id primum fuit — divorsi pars ingenium, alii corpus exercēbant; etiam tum vita hominum sine cupiditate agitābatur; sua† quoque satis placēbant. postea vērō quam in Asia Cyrus, in Graecia Lacedaemonii et Athēniēnsēs coepere urbis atque nātiōēs subigere, libidinem dominandi‡ causam belli habere, maxumam glōriam in maximo imperio putare, tum dēnum periculō atque negōtiis conpertum est in bello plurimum ingenium posse. quod si§ rēgum atque imperātorum animi virtūs in pace ita ut in bello valeret, aequābilis atque cōstantius sēsē rēs hūmānae habērent,¶ neque aliud aliō* ferri neque mutārī ac miscērī omnia cernerēs. nam imperium facile iis artibus

*utrumque = neut. sing. nom. of indef. pron., each thing (of two)

†sua refers to quoique, his/her own things.

‡dominandi = neut. sing. gen. of verbal noun of dominor (1-intr.) of being master, of ruling

§quod si (conj.) but if

¶aequābilis . . . sēsē habērent . . . would be more equable . . .

*aliō, here (adv.) to another place

aequābilis, aequābile consistent, equable
agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion; spend, pass
Asia, Asiae f. Asia (modern Asia Minor)

Athēniēnsis, Athēniēnsē Athenian; as subst., (an) Athenian

cernō, cernere, crēvi, crētus distinguish, determine, perceive

certāmen, certāminis n. competition; dispute, quarrel

—, —, coepi, coeptus (defective verb) began, have begun

conperiō (= comperiō), conperire, conperi, conpertus find out, learn

cōstāns, cōstantis firm, steady, invariable, constant

cōsulō, cōsulere, cōsului, cōsultus take counsel, consult, consider, plan

cōsultum, cōsulti n. resolution, plan

cupiditas, cupiditatis f. desire

Cyrus, Cŷri m. Cyrus, a Persian king

dēnum (adv.) at length, at last; precisely, only; tum dēnum, only then

divorsus (= diversus), -a, -um opposite, separate, different

egeō, egēre, egui, — lack, want, need (+ abl.)
exerceō, exercere, exercui, exercitus keep busy, occupy; train, exercise

hūmānus, -a, -um human

incipiō (in- + capiō) take on, begin; incipiās, subjunc. expressing anticipation, you can begin

indigēns, indigentis needy, not self-sufficient

initium, initii n. beginning

Lacedaemonius, -a, -um Lacedaemonian,

Spartan; as subst., (a) Spartan

libido (= libidō), libidinis f. desire, pleasure, passion, lust

mātūrē (adv.) quickly, in good time

maxumam = maximam

maximō = maximō

militāns, militāre military

miscēō, miscere, miscui, mixtus mix, stir up

mortalis, mortale mortal

mutō (1-tr.) change

nātiō, nātiōnis f. nation

negōtium, negōtiū n. business, (business) activity

nōmen, nōminis n. name

plūrumum = plurimum

postea . . . quam = postquam

priusquam (conj. + subjunc.) before

prōcēdō (prō- + cēdō) go forward, progress, succeed

quoique = masc./fem. sing. dat. of indef. pron., each or every man or woman

subigō (sub- + agō), subigere, subēgi, subāctus drive under, force; subdue, conquer

retinētur, quibus initō partum est. vērum ubi prō labōre dēsīdia, prō continentīā et aequitāte lubīdō atque superbia invāsere, fortūna simul cum moribus inmutātur. ita imperium semper ad optimum quemque* ā minus bonō trānsfertur. Quae hominēs arant, nāvīgant, aedificant, virtūtī omnia pārent. sed multī mortālēs, dēditi ventri atque somnō, indoctī incultūque vītā sicutī peregrīnantēs trānsiēre; quibus profectō contrā nātūrā corpus voluptātī, anima onerī fuit. eōrum ego vītā mortemque iuxta aestumō, quoniam dē utrāque† silētur. vērum enim vēro‡ is dēmum mihi vīvere atque frui animā vidētur, quī aliquō negōtīō intentus praecārī facinoris aut artis bonae fāmā quaerit. sed in magnā cōpiā rerum aliud alī nātūra iter ostendit.

*quemque = *masc. sing. acc. of indef. pron.*,
each man

†utrāque = *fem. sing. abl. of indef. pron.*, each
(of two)

‡vērum enim vēro but at the same time

aedificō (1-tr.) build

aequitās, aequitātis *f.* evenness, calmness; equity,
fairness

aestumō (= aestimō) (1-tr.) estimate, value,
reckon

aliquō = *neut. sing. abl. of indef. adj.*, some, any

arō (1-tr.) plough, till, cultivate

continentia, continentiae *f.* restraint, temper-
ance, moderation

dēdō (dē- + dō) give up, surrender, deliver;
dedicate

dēmum (adv.) at length, at last; precisely, only

dēsīdia, dēsīdiae *f.* idleness, inactivity, sloth

facinus, facinoris *n.* deed; crime

fruar, frui, fructus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)

incultus, -a, -um uncouth, rough, uncultivated

indoctus, -a, -um not learned, ignorant

initium, initii *n.* beginning

inmutō (= immutō) (1-tr.) alter, change

intentus, -a, -um stretched, attentive, intent,
occupied

invādō, invādere, invāsi, invāsus enter (hostilely),
invade, attack

iter, itineris *n.* passage; road, route

iuxta (adv.) near, nearby, in like manner, equally

lubīdō (= libīdō), libīdinis *f.* desire, pleasure,
passion, lust

mortālis, mortāle mortal

nāvīgō (1-tr.) sail

negōtium, negōtīi *n.* business

onus, oneris *n.* load, burden; trouble, difficulty

optimum = optimum

ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus or ostēnsus
present, show; offer

pariō, parere, peperī, partus give birth to, bear
(of a mother); create

peregrīnor (1-intr.) dwell abroad; be an alien;
travel abroad

praecārus, -a, -um very famous

profectō (adv.) in fact, actually; indeed, assuredly

retineō (re- + teneō), retinēre, retinui, retentus
keep hold of, retain, grasp

sicutī (conj.) just as

sileō, silēre, silui, — be silent; pass over in
silence

simul (adv.) at the same time

somnus, somni *m.* sleep

superbia, superbiae *f.* pride; arrogance, haughti-
ness

trānsēō (trāns- + eō), trānsire, trānsiī or trānsivī,
trānsitus go across, pass through

trānsferō (trāns- + ferō), trānsferre, trānstulī,
trānslātus carry across, shift

venter, ventris *m.* belly, stomach

voluptās, voluptātis *f.* pleasure, joy

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.506-17

forsitan et Priamī fuerint quae fāta requirās
 urbis uti captae cāsum convulsaque vidit
 limina tēctorum et medium in penetrālibus hostem,
 arma diu senior dēsuetā trementibus aevō
 circumdat nēquiquam umeris et inūtile ferrum
 cingitur, ac dēnsōs fertur moritūrus in hostīs.
 aedibus in mediis nudōque sub aetheris axe
 ingēns āra fuit iuxtāque veterrima laurus
 incumbēns ārae atque umbra complexa penātis.
 hīc Hecuba et nātae nēquiquam altāria circum,*
 praecipitēs ātrā ceu tempestāte columbae,
 condēnsae et dīvum† amplexae simulācra sedēbant

510

515

*altāria circum = circum altāria by anastrophe,
 the reversal in order of a preposition and its
 object

†dīvum = dīvōrum

aedēs, aedis, -ium *f.* sanctuary, shrine; in *pl.*,
 house, abode

aethēr, aetheris *m.* ether, the upper region of the
 sky, heaven

aevum, aevi *n.* age, lifetime

altāria, altārium *n. pl.* (high) altar (for sacrifice)

amplector, amplecti, amplexus sum embrace;
 clasp (for protection)

āter, ātra, ātrum black, dark

axis, axis *m.* axis

ceu (conj.) (in the same way) as, like

cingō, cingere, cinxī, cinctus gird, equip, put on,
 cingitur, translate with active meaning

circum (prep. + acc.) around

circumdō (circum- + dō) place (something)

around, put (something) on

columba, columbae *f.* dove

complector, complecti, complexus sum embrace;
 encircle, enclose

condensus, -a, -um close together, tightly packed

convellō, convellere, convelli, convulsus pull up
 (violently), tear up, wrench

dēnsus, -a, -um thick, dense; crowded together,
 closely packed

dēsuetus, -a, -um unfamiliar (from lack of use)
 forsitan (adv.) perhaps

Hecuba, Hecubae *f.* Hecuba, wife of Priam

hīc (adv.) here

incumbō, incumbere, incubui, — fall (on),
 throw oneself (on); lean (on)

inūtilis, inūtile unfit for use; useless

iuxtā (adv.) near, nearby; in like manner, equally

laurus, lauri *f.* laurel tree

līmen, līminis *n.* entrance, doorway, threshold

nāta, nātae *f.* daughter

nēquiquam (adv.) to no avail

nūdus, -a, -um naked, nude; bare, deserted

penātēs, penātium *m. pl.* penates, guardian

deities of a household or country

penetrāle, penetrālis, -ium *n.* inner part, innermost
 recess

praecipēs, praecipitis rushing forward, headlong

requirō (re- + quaerō), requirere, requisii or

requisivi, requisitus seek again; ask or
 inquire about

sedeō, sedere, sedi, sessurus sit, be seated

senex, senis old

simulācrum, simulācri *n.* image, statue

tēctum, tēcti *n.* roof; house

tempestās, tempestātis *f.* storm

tremō, tremere, tremui, — tremble, quiver,
 quake

umerus, umeri *m.* shoulder

utī = ut

vetus, veteris old, ancient, veterrima = *fem. sing.*
nom. of superlative adj.

4. Ovid, *Metamorphoses* 1.478–89

multi illam petēre, illa āversāta petentēs
 inpatiēns expersque virī nemora āvia lūstrat
 nec quid Hymēn, quid Amor, quid sint cōnūbia cūrat.
 saepe pater dixit: "generum mihi, filia, dēbēs,"
 saepe pater dixit: "dēbēs mihi, nāta, nepōtēs";
 illa velut crimen taedas exōsa iugalēs
 pulchra verēcundō suffūderat ōra rubōre
 inque patris blandis haerēns cervīce lacertīs
 "da mihi perpetuā, genitor cārissime," dixit
 "virginitāte fruī! dedit hoc pater ante Diānae."
 ille quidem obsequitur, sed tē decor iste quod optās
 esse vetat, vōtōque tuō tua forma repugnat

480

485

āversor (1-tr.) turn away from; reject
 āvius, -a, -um pathless, trackless
 blandus, -a, -um charming, ingratiating,
 seductive
 cervīx, cervicis *f.* neck
 cōnūbium, cōnūbii *n.* in sing. or pl. marriage,
 marriage rites
 crīmen, crīminis *n.* charge, accusation, crime
 cūrō (1-tr.) watch over; care
 decor, decōris *m.* good looks, beauty, grace
 exōsus, -a, -um hating, detesting (+ acc.)
 expers, expertis having no part, lacking
 experience
 forma, formae *f.* shape, form; beauty
 fruor, fruī, fructus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)
 gener, genen *m.* son-in-law
 genitor, genitōris *m.* father
 haereō, haerēre, haesi, haesurus cling, stick
 Hymēn (nom. only) Hymen, god of marriage;
 marriage
 inpatiēns, impatientis not enduring, intolerant

iugālis, iugale of or belonging to marriage,
 matrimonial, nuptial
 lacertus, lacerti *m.* (upper) arm
 lūstrō (1-tr.) move through, roam
 nemus, nemoris *n.* wood, forest
 nepōs, nepōtis *m.* or *f.* grandchild
 obsequor (ob- + sequor) comply (with),
 submit
 ōs, ōris *n.* in sing. or pl. mouth, face
 perpetuus, -a, -um continual, without inter-
 ruption; perpetual, everlasting
 repugnō (1-intr.) fight against, resist (+ dat.)
 rubor, rubōris *m.* redness, blush
 suffundō, suffundere, suffūdī, suffusus
 cover, fill, suffuse
 taeda, taedae *f.* torch
 velut (conj.) even as, just as
 verēcundus, -a, -um modest, restrained
 vetō, vetāre, vetui, vetitus forbid
 virginitās, virginitātis *f.* virginity; celibate life
 vōtum, vōti *n.* vow, prayer

§121. Unassimilated Forms, Archaic Spellings, and Syncopation

Unassimilated Forms and Archaic Spellings

Although classical Latin writers established strict rules of spelling and morphology for Latin words, many works that have survived indicate that these writers also allowed certain exceptions to the rules. Writers of both prose and poetry sometimes sought special effects of style by including certain words with **archaic spellings**. These forms had existed in the Latin of an earlier time, but they had gradually fallen out of use and been replaced by later spellings. In epic poetry these archaisms were felt to contribute to an appropriately august and elevated diction. In the works of the historian Sallust archaisms represented a deliberate rebellion against the Ciceronian standard and became a hallmark of his unique style. Even Cicero made use of such forms when their archaic feeling contributed to a desired stylistic effect.

One common type of archaism is the *unassimilated form* of a compound word.¹ An **unassimilated form** is a form in which the ordinary assimilation of two consonants does not occur or is not written.² For example:

adcellō accedō impius = impius

Other archaic spellings give evidence of how the pronunciation of vowels changed as Latin developed.

maximus = maximus (-i, -is) antiquo = antiquus (-us, -us)
vostra = vestra (-a, -e) suum = suum (-um, -um)

BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE UNASSIMILATED FORMS AND OTHER ARCHAIC SPELLINGS. IN ADDITION, LEARN TO RECOGNIZE THE FOLLOWING FORMS:

quois = cuius oīi = illi (dative singular)
quoi = cui ai = ae (genitive singular)
quom = cum (conjunction)

Syncopation of Forms in the Perfect Active System

Forms of the perfect active system of first- and second-conjugation verbs may be shortened by removing the *-v-* and the following vowel from the regular forms. This shortening is sometimes called **syncopation** (< Greek *synkopē*, "cutting short"), and forms that have been shortened are called **syncopated forms**. For example.

1. For an explanation of assimilation see the vocabulary notes of Chapter V.

2. With few exceptions, the earliest surviving copies of ancient works were written at least eight hundred years after they were originally produced. Therefore, while the existence of both unassimilated and assimilated forms suggests that words continued to be pronounced in both ways, nothing can be said with complete certainty.

3. Cf. the vocabulary note on the conjunction *cum*, p. 322.

amabŭ (< amāvisŭ)	optarim (< optāverim)
deleminŭ (< deleverim)	
cogitarim (< cogitāverim)	imperassemus (< imperāvissemus)
laudāro (< laudāverō)	deleŭ (< delevisŭ)

OBSERVATION

Any form of the perfect active system may be syncopated *except* the first person singular, third person singular, and the first person plural perfect active indicative. Third person plural perfect active indicative forms made with the ending *-ere* also cannot be syncopated.

Verbs of the third and fourth conjugations may also appear in shortened forms in the perfect active system, but these shortened forms do not always result from syncopation. For example:

audistŭ (< audīvisŭ)	audieris (< audīveris)
audissem (< audīvissem)	auduit (< audīvit)
audisse (< audīvisse)	audierant (< audīverant)
nōrās (< nōverās)	audierit (< audīverit)
nōrint (< nōverint)	

OBSERVATION

Some shortened perfect active system forms of the third and fourth conjugations are generally believed to be the result of syncopation (e.g., *audistŭ*, *audissem*, *audisse*, *nōrās*, *nōrint*). Others are thought to be formed from alternate (and earlier) third principal parts (e.g., *audieris* < *audī*). In such cases the short *-i-* that appears is part of the perfect active stem (e.g., *audi-* < *audī*).⁴

BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE THESE SHORTENED AND SYNCOPATED FORMS.

4. In third-conjugation verbs, the familiar third principal parts with a *-v-* are thought to have developed by analogy with the principal parts of other verbs. (Cf., for example, *petī* or *petīvī*; *quaesī* or *quaesīvī*). By the classical period forms derived from either principal part are common.

CHAPTER XIII

Vocabulary

- **nihilum, nihili** or ***nīlum, nīlī** *n.* nothing
- **pretium, pretiī** *n.* price, value
- **honor, honoris** *m.* honor, respect; (political) office
- **lūmen, lūminis** *n.* light, radiance; *in pl.*, eyes
- **scelus, sceleris** *n.* wicked deed, crime; villainy
- **vulnus, vulneris** *n.* wound
- **aestimō** (1-tr.) estimate, value
- **ex(s)pectō** (1-tr.) wait (for), await, expect
- **moror** (1-tr.) hinder, delay, wait
- **mūtō** (1-t.) change; take in exchange, give in exchange
- **emō, emere, ēmi, emptus** buy
- **faciō, facere, fēcī, factus** reckon (§128)
- **gradior, gradi, gressus sum** proceed, walk, step
- **ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum** go or come out
- **incipiō, incipere, incēpi, inceptus** take on, begin
- **perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus** destroy; lose
- **vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditus** sell
- **—, —, coepī, coeptus** (defective verb) began, have begun
- **fiō, fieri, factus sum** become, happen; be made, be done (§125)
- **cēterus, -a, -um** rest (of), remaining part (of), (the) other
- **grātus, -a, -um** charming, pleasing, grateful, pleased
- **ingrātus, -a, -um** unpleasant, displeasing; ungrateful, displeased
- **saevus, -a, -um** cruel, savage
- **tantus, -a, -um** so much, so great (§124)
- **quantus, -a, -um** how much, how great; as much, as great (§124)
- **tālis, tāle** such, of such a sort (§124)
- **quālis, quāle** what sort of; of which sort, as (§124)
- **tot** (indeclinable adj.) so many (§124)
- **quot** (indeclinable adj.) how many; as many (§124)
- **ad** (prep. + acc.) for the purpose of (§122)
- **antequam** (conj.) before (§123)
- **causā** (+ preceding gen.) for the purpose of for the sake of (§122)
- **dōnec** (conj.) while, as long as; until (§123)
- **dum** (conj.) while, as long as; until; provided that (§123)
- **dummodo** (conj.) provided that (§123)
- **grātiā** (+ preceding gen.) for the purpose of, for the sake of (§122)
- **modo** (conj.) provided that (§123)
- **priusquam** (conj.) before (§123)
- **quīa** (conj.) because (§123)
- **quod** (conj.) because (§123)
- **tam** (adv.) so (§124)

Vocabulary Notes

nilum, nīlū n. is a contracted form of *nihilum, nihīlū n.* Both words are commonly used as Genitives of Indefinite Value (see §128), Ablatives of Price (see §129), and Ablatives of Degree of Difference (see §111).

pretium, pretiū n. is often used as a Genitive of Indefinite Value (see §128) or an Ablative of Price (see §129).

honor, honoris m. may indicate the general notion of "respect" or "honor" or a more concrete mark of respect given to someone. It commonly refers to a political "office." The archaic nominative singular form *honōs* remains common throughout the classical period.

lūmen, lūminis n. is formed by the addition of the suffix *-men* to a stem of the verb *lūceō, lūcere, lūxi*, — (shine, emit light). In addition to the meaning "light" or "radiance" *lūmen* is often used metaphorically to mean the "light" of life or the "enlightenment" of literature, the arts, etc. It is also used in the plural, particularly in poetry, to mean "eyes" either because the eye is an opening that admits light or from the idea that glancing at something casts light upon the object.

scelus, sceleris n. is used to refer to a specific "wicked deed" or "crime," or it may refer more generally to the abstract idea of "villainy" or "wickedness."

aestimō, aestimāre, aestimāvī, aestimātus often appears with either a Genitive of Indefinite Value (see §128) or an Ablative of Price (see §129).

ex(s)pectō, ex(s)pectāre, ex(s)pectāvī, ex(s)pectātus is a transitive verb that may be used absolutely with the meaning "wait." It may also be followed by a temporal clause introduced by *dum* or *dōnec* (see §123). The *s* placed in parentheses in the vocabulary entry indicates that the word may be spelled either with or without an *s*.

moror, morārī, morātus sum may be used transitively (hinder, delay) or intransitively (delay, wait). It may also be followed by a temporal clause introduced by *dum* or *dōnec* (see §123).

mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī, mūtātus may mean "take in exchange" or "give in exchange" with an Ablative of Price (see §129). When it is used absolutely, *mūtō* means "change" in the sense of "undergo a change" or "become different."

Quis servitūtem libertatē mūtet?	Who would take slavery in exchange for freedom?
Quis libertatē servitūti mūtet?	Who would give freedom in exchange for slavery?

When the verb *faciō* is used with a Genitive of Indefinite Value (see §128), it is best translated as "reckon."

ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *ē-* to *gradior*. (For the prefix *ē-* see Appendix P.) THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF *GRADIOR* FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF *EGREDIOR*. WHEN A COMPOUND OF *GRADIOR* APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

incipiō, incipere, incēpī, incepius is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *in-*^[2] to *capiō*. (For the prefix *in-*^[2] see Appendix P.) *Incipio* is a transitive verb that most frequently appears with an Object Infinitive. In classical Latin the perfect active and perfect passive forms of *incipiō* are very rare. The forms of the defective verb —, —, *coepī, coeptus* are used instead. However, the perfect passive participle *inceptus*, -a, -um is commonly used, as is the noun derived from it *inceptum, inceptū n.*, "beginning," "undertaking."

perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *per-* to *dō*. (For the prefix *per-* see Appendix P.) *Perdō* may mean "destroy" or "cause ruin to" (people, things) or "lose" (people, troops, citizenship, beauty). It may also mean "waste" (resources, opportunities). The perfect passive participle *perditus*, -a, -um is frequently used as an adjective meaning "(morally) lost," "ruined," or "depraved." The adverb *perditē* means "recklessly," "desperately," or "ruinously."

—, —, *coepī, coeptus* is a defective verb. It has forms in the perfect active and perfect passive systems only. In classical Latin forms of *coepī* are regularly used instead of the perfect active and passive forms of *incipiō*.

cēterus, -a, -um is often used substantively to refer to the remaining part of a group or thing. The neuter singular (*cēterum*) of *cēterus*, -a, -um may be used as an Adverbial Accusative (see §126) to mean "for the rest," "moreover," or "in addition." In the historians it commonly has some adversative force (however that may be, but).

grātus, -a, -um and the compound adjective *ingrātus*, -a, -um (< *in-*^[2] + *grātus*, -a, -um) have both active and passive senses. (For the prefix *in-*^[2] see Appendix P.) The meanings given for these words in the vocabulary list reflect first their active senses and then their passive ones.

The preposition *ad* is regularly used with gerunds and gerundives to mean "for (the purpose of)" (see §122), but it may also have this sense with nouns or pronouns standing alone, particularly demonstratives.

Dum multa ad hoc fecerat. The leader had done many things for his purpose.

The words *causā* and *grātiā* are Ablatives of Cause used as prepositions that take the genitive case. The word in the genitive case *precedes* either *causā* or *grātiā*. These words most commonly appear with gerunds or gerundives (see §122) but they may also appear with nouns standing alone, particularly abstract nouns.

dummodo is a conjunction formed by the addition of the adverb *modo* to the conjunction *dum* and may be written as one or two words (*dummodo* or *dum modo*). It may introduce a Proviso clause (see §123), and, because of this combination, *modo* alone may also introduce a Proviso clause.

	Derivatives	Cognates
<i>cēterus</i>	etc. (et cetera)	he, him, her, it
<i>gradior</i>	digress, progress, congress	grade, degree
<i>grātus</i>	grace, grateful; gratify, gratis	bard(?)
	ingrate, agree, congratulate	
<i>mūtō</i>	mutate, commute; permutation	immune, mistake
<i>pretium</i>	praise; price, precious	interpret
<i>vulnus</i>	vulnerable	Valhalla, Valkyrie

The following sentences illustrate the uses of the gerund and the gerundive.

Mihi est amor scribendi. (gerund, Objective Gen.)

I have a love of writing.

Mihi est amor carminum scribendorum. (gerundive modifies *carminum*

I have a love of writing poems.

Objective Gen.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. When a gerund would take a direct object, the gerundive construction is usually preferred, as in the second sentence.
2. The Latin gerundive, an adjective modifying a noun, is translated into English as a gerund, a verbal noun, with a direct object.

Arma cepit ad pugnandum. (gerund expressing purpose with ad, for the purpose of)

He took up arms for the purpose of fighting.

Romam veni ad matrem videndam. (gerundive expressing purpose with ad)

I came to Rome for the purpose of seeing (my) mother.

Romam veni multa videndi causa. (gerund expressing purpose with causa, for the sake of)

I came to Rome for the sake of seeing many things.

OBSERVATION

In the third sentence a gerund with a neuter plural substantive as direct object is preferred to the gerundive construction to avoid ambiguity:

multorum videndorum causā

"for the sake of seeing many things"

or "for the sake of seeing many men"

Occasionally the gerundive construction is used to express purpose in the accusative case *without ad*. For example:

Caesar Quinto legato socios ducendos tradidit.

Caesar to Quintus this [tribe] and the allies to be led handed over.

Caesar handed over to this lieutenant Quintus the allies to be led.

Caesar handed over the allies to this lieutenant Quintus for leading.

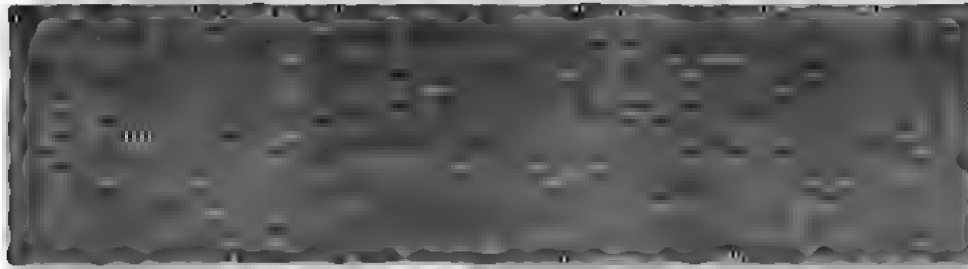
OBSERVATION

In such a construction the gerundive still expresses purpose, but it must be translated differently "to be _____ed" or "for _____ing."

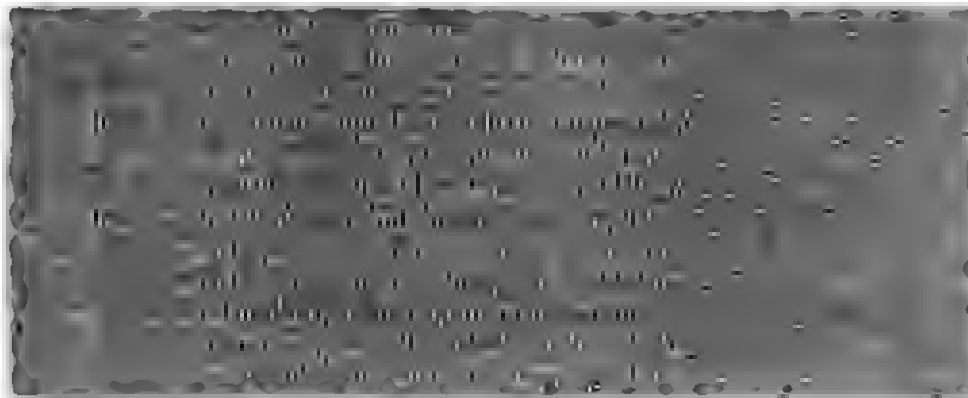
☛ DRILL 122 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§123. Subordinate Clauses III

Personal pronouns and participles are followed by verbs sometimes in the *indicative*, and sometimes in the *subjunctive* with a difference in meaning.¹ When any of these constructions is followed by an infinitive verb, the action of the verb is represented by the verbal action as actual or factual. When the verbal action is followed by a subjunctive verb, the verbal action is represented as alleged, apparent, or anticipated—that is, *nonfactual*.



Subordinate Clauses with Verbs in the Indicative Mood



OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first three sentences the actions in the subordinate clauses are presented as actually having occurred: you *did* use to love me, they *did* hear Cicero's words, and Cicero *did* complete his speech.
2. In the last sentence the reason given for Caesar's praise of his men is *vouched for* (by the writer of the sentence) as the *true* reason: his men *did* fight bravely, and *this* is why Caesar will praise them.



1. For subordinating conjunctions followed by verbs in the indicative mood see §48. For *cum* clauses see §117.

OBSERVATION

When the verb in the main clause is a past tense, the *present indicative*, the so-called "historical present," is regularly used with the conjunction *dum*, "while." This special use of the present indicative should be translated as an imperfect indicative.

Subordinate Clauses with Verbs in the Subjunctive Mood

When verbs in such subordinate clauses appear in the *subjunctive mood*, the writers or speakers represent the verbal actions as *nonfactual*.

In illo loco manebant *dum/donec* verba Ciceronis audirent.

They were remaining in that place until they *should* hear the words of Cicero.

Discessimus & foris *antequam/praequam* Cicerō orationem conficeret.

We departed from the forum *before* Cicero *could* complete (his) speech.

Caesar suos laudabit *quod/quia* fortiter pugnauerint.

Caesar will praise his own men *apparently because* they *fought* bravely.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The tenses of the subjunctive verbs in these subordinate clauses follow the rules of sequence.
2. In the first two sentences the actions of the verbs in the subordinate clauses are presented as *merely anticipated* and not as having actually occurred. In a temporal clause expressing anticipation with *dum* or *donec*, the English word "should" is used to translate a subjunctive verb in either primary or secondary sequence. In a temporal clause expressing anticipation with *antequam* or *praequam*, the English word "can" is used to translate a subjunctive verb in primary sequence, and "could" is used to translate a subjunctive verb in secondary sequence.
3. In the last sentence the reason given is *not vouched for* but is *merely surmised* by the writer or speaker or alleged by someone else. In such a causal clause, the English adverb "apparently" or "allegedly" is added to the translation.
4. The syntax, for example, of *audirent* in the first sentence is imperfect subjunctive, secondary sequence, temporal clause expressing anticipation, subsequent time. The syntax of *pugnauerint* in the third sentence is perfect subjunctive, primary sequence, clause of apparent or alleged cause, prior time.

Sometimes *antequam* and *praequam* are *divided*. For example:

Multa *ante/prae* expensis *quam* tunc minuscum vires.

Many things (d.o.) *sooner* you will try *than* your enemy (d.o.) you will die.

Sooner will you try many things *than* you can overcome your enemy.

You will try many things *before* you *will* overcome your enemy.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The conjunctions *antequam* and *praequam* are made of the comparative adverbs *ante* and *prae* (sooner) and the conjunction *quam* (than). When *antequam* or *praequam* is divided, each element may be translated separately, but the last translation given above, in which the conjunction is translated "before" where the *quam* appears, is to be preferred.
2. *antequam* and *praequam* may be split when followed by either the indicative or subjunctive mood.

Proviso Clauses

The conjunction *dum*, sometimes strengthened by the adverb *modo* "only," may introduce a subordinate clause stating a provision *under which* the event of the main clause can occur. Such a clause is called a **Proviso clause**. *Modo alone* may also introduce such a clause. The verb in a Proviso clause is always in the *subjunctive mood*. The particle *nē* is used for negation. For example:

Magnō me metu liberabis <i>dum modo</i> rex me atque te curus sit.	From great fear me (d.o.) you will free provided that he will be ruler and all he.
You will free me from great fear provided that he will be ruler and all he.	
Iulia poetas canentes audiat <i>dum verbum nē</i> dicat.	Let Julia poets (d.o.) singing listen to provided that a word (d.o.) she not say.
Let Julia listen to the poets singing provided that she not say a word.	

OBSERVATIONS

1. Subjunctive verbs in Proviso clauses follow the rules of sequence. The syntax, for example, of *sit* in the first sentence is present subjunctive, primary sequence, Proviso clause.
2. A Proviso clause is regularly translated with an English present subjunctive (e.g., "be" and "say" in the sentences above).²

☛ DRILL 123 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§124. Correlatives

Certain Latin adverbs and adjectives appear in two closely related forms.

Demonstrative	Exclamatory/Interrogative/Relative
<i>tam</i> (adv.) so	<i>quam</i> (adv.) how, as
<i>talis</i> (adj.) such, of such a sort	<i>qualis</i> (adj.) what sort of, of which sort, as
<i>tantus</i> (a.) -um so much, so great	<i>quantus</i> (a.) -um how much, how great, as much, as great
<i>tot</i> (indeclinable adj.) so many	<i>quot</i> (indeclinable adj.) how many, as many

The words in the column on the left are demonstrative because they *point out* a certain degree, amount, or quality, often in the answer to a question. The words in the column on the right function in three distinct ways. They may be used to make exclamations (exclamatory), to ask questions (interrogative), and to correlate with corresponding demonstrative words (relative). The following sentences illustrate these various functions.

<i>Quam altus est!</i>	How tall he is! (exclamatory)
<i>Quam altus est?</i>	How tall is he? (interrogative)
<i>Tam altus est.</i>	He is so tall (i.e., this tall). (demonstrative)
<i>Tam altus est quam pater.</i>	He is so tall as (this) father. (demonstrative/relative)

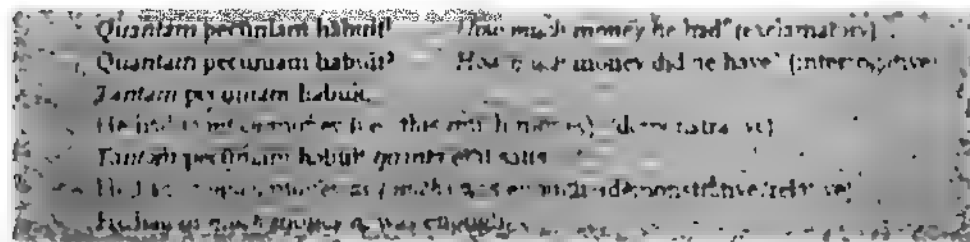
2. The English present subjunctive is the infinitive form of the verb with the word "to" omitted (e.g., "work," "complete," "do," etc.).

OBSERVATIONS

1. The only difference in Latin between the exclamatory and interrogative sentences is the punctuation.
2. In the last sentence *quam* is correlative with *tam*. A correlative is an adjective, adverb, or pronoun that corresponds with a parallel adjective, adverb, or pronoun in the same sentence. In this sentence *tam*, a demonstrative adverb, and *quam*, a relative adverb, are correlatives, and the whole complex sentence is a correlative sentence. *Quam* introduces a relative clause in which certain grammatical elements are elided. With no ellipsis the last example above would be written as follows:

Tam altus est quam altus est pater. He is so tall as tall (his) father is.

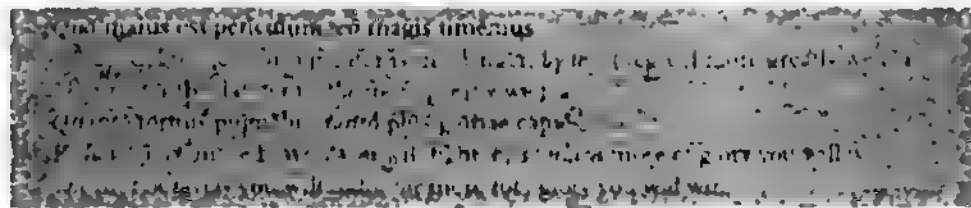
3. When *quam* is correlative with *tam*, an idiomatic English translation uses "as" to translate both *quam* and *tam*: He is as tall as (his) father.



OBSERVATION

In correlative sentences such as the last sentence, the relative adjective must agree in gender and number with its antecedent, but its case is determined by its syntax within the relative clause. Thus *quanta* is feminine and singular to agree with *pecuniam*, but it is *nominative* because it is the subject (sc. *pecunia*) of *erat*.

With adjectives or adverbs in the comparative degree,³ a correlative sentence may appear, usually with the relative clause preceding the main clause. For example:



OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first example above *quod*, a relative pronoun, and *et*, a demonstrative pronoun, are correlatives. The demonstrative *et* is commonly used in this construction but occasionally *hic* appears instead.
2. The syntax of each italicized word (*quod*, *et*, *magis*, *timendus*) in the sentences above is Ablative of Degree of Difference.
3. The second translations given above are to be preferred.

Correlatives in correlative sentences are often best translated idiomatically. Here is a list of the correlatives included in this chapter and their respective idiomatic translations:

3. This construction also appears (less frequently) with superlative adjectives or adverbs.

tam	quam	as	as	
talis	qualis	such	as	or of such a sort
tantus	quantus	as great	as	or as much
tot	quot	as many	as	
quo	eo (hoc)	the (more)	the (more)	

☛ DRILL 124 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§125. The Irregular Verb *fiō*

Fiō, fieri, factus sum "become, happen; be made, be done" is an irregular verb. The present system of *fiō* has *active forms with passive meanings*, and these forms supply the passive of the present system of *faciō*. The perfect system of *fiō* is supplied by the perfect passive system of *faciō*. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING IRREGULAR CONJUGATIONS:

	INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
	Present	Imperfect	Future	Present	Imperfect
Sing.					
1	<i>fiō</i>	<i>fiēbam</i>	<i>fiām</i>	<i>fiam</i>	<i>fierem</i>
2	<i>fis</i>	<i>fiēbas</i>	<i>fiēs</i>	<i>fiās</i>	<i>fierēs</i>
3	<i>fit</i>	<i>fiēbat</i>	<i>fiet</i>	<i>fiat</i>	<i>fieret</i>
Pl.					
1	<i>fiunt</i>	<i>fiēbamus</i>	<i>fiemus</i>	<i>fiamus</i>	<i>fieremus</i>
2	<i>estis</i>	<i>fiēbātis</i>	<i>fiētis</i>	<i>fiātis</i>	<i>fierētis</i>
3	<i>fiunt</i>	<i>fiēbant</i>	<i>fiēt</i>	<i>fiant</i>	<i>fierent</i>
Imperative	Sing.	fi	PL	fi	

OBSERVATIONS

- 1 The present, imperfect, and future indicative and present subjunctive conjugations of *fiō* are all formed with the stem *fi-*. By contrast, the present infinitive and imperfect subjunctive have a short *i-*. The imperfect subjunctive is formed with an imaginary present active infinitive form (**fiere*), the final *-e* of which is lengthened to form the stem (*fiēr-*).
- 2 The imperative forms *fi* and *fiē* are exceedingly rare in the Latin literature that survives.
- 3 *Fiō* has no participles.
- 4 When *fiō* means "become" or "be made," it may be accompanied by a Predicate Nominative or Predicate Adjective in the Nominative case. For example:

Rex fiat. Let him become/Let him be made king. (predicate nom.)
Misera puella fiet. The girl will become miserable. (predicate adj.)

☛ DRILL 125 MAY NOW BE DONE.

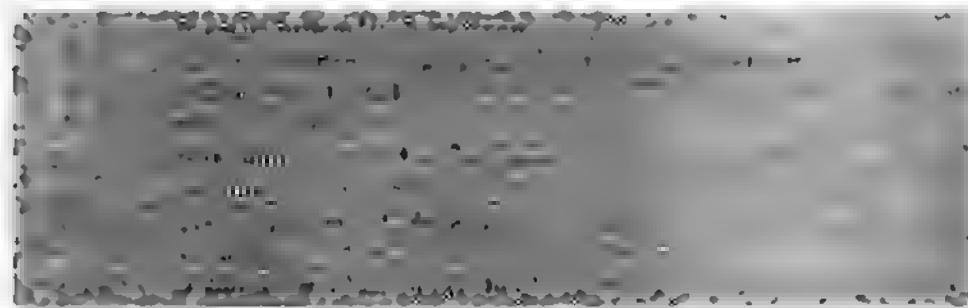
§126. Adverbial Accusative

When a noun, pronoun, or adjective in the accusative case is used adverbially to express the *extent* to which the action of a verb is performed, it is called an **Adverbial Accusative**. For example:



The syntax of each italicized word (*nihil tantum quantum*) is Adverbial Accusative.

Several nouns, pronouns, and adjectives in the singular accusative form are commonly used as Adverbial Accusatives. MEMORIZE THESE COMMON ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVES:



OBSERVATIONS

1. When a substantive adjective is used as an Adverbial Accusative, it is always neuter singular.
2. In PIE and in early Latin the accusative case originally expressed an idea of *extent* that *limited* the action of the verb. The Adverbial Accusative is developed from this original idea of the accusative (cf. the Accusative of Duration of Time).

§127. Accusative of Exclamation

When a noun in the accusative case is used to express an exclamation, it is called an **Accusative of Exclamation**. Such an accusative is often accompanied by an exclamatory adjective or adverb or by an interjection. For example:



The syntax of each italicized word (*virum me*) is Accusative of Exclamation.

OBSERVATION

The Accusative of Exclamation developed from the Accusative, Direct Object. It is understood as the direct object of an unexpressed thought or perception (e.g., What a man [I am thinking of]!).

§128. Genitive of Indefinite Value

With verbs of *considering*, *reckoning*, and *valuing*, certain words in the genitive case may express the *approximate worth or value* of something. This use of the genitive case is called the **Genitive of Indefinite Value**. For example:

Magnum consilium magni (pretii) habeo. (pretium, pretii n. price, value)
 Your advice (d.o.) of great value I consider.
 I consider your advice of great value.
Quis pecuniam plurius quam amorem faciat? (facio, facere)
 Who money (d.o.) for more than what love would reckon?
 Who would reckon money of more value than love?

The syntax of each italicized word (*magni, plurius*) is **Genitive of Indefinite Value**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each adjective in the sentences above is neuter singular genitive, either functioning as a substantive or modifying a usually unexpressed neuter singular noun meaning "value," *pretii*. The Genitive of Indefinite Value is closely related to the Genitive of Description (see §100).
2. Although the Latin word for "value" may be unexpressed, such a word should be added to the English translation of the Genitive of Indefinite Value.
3. Certain nouns appear as Genitives of Indefinite Value to express ideas of *worthlessness*. For example:

Eum nihili ducō. I consider him of no value (*nihilum, nihili n. nothing*)

§129. Ablative of Price

With verbs of *buying*, *selling*, *valuing*, and *exchanging*, certain words in the ablative case may express the *price at which* something is bought or sold. This use of the ablative case is called the **Ablative of Price**. For example:

Ista femina viro vitam auro vendidit. (vendo, vendere, vendidit, venditū n. sell)
 That contemptible woman of (her) husband the life (d.o.) for gold sold.
 That contemptible woman sold the life of her husband for gold.
Magnō (pretio) ab omnibus virtus aestimatur. (aestimo, [1. tr.] estimate, value)
 At a great (price) by all (people) excellence is valued.
 Excellence is valued at a great price by all people.

The syntax of each italicized word (*auro, magnō*) is **Ablative of Price**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Ablative of Price was originally used instead of the Genitive of Indefinite Value to express the *exact amount of money* for which something was bought or sold. Its uses were later extended to less precise ideas of cost or value.
2. Although the Ablative of Price is essentially an Ablative of Means, it is often better translated with the English prepositions "for" or "at (the price of)."

3. A wide variety of words may be conceived as the price or cost of something (e.g., *villā, patriā*) An adjective (e.g., *magnō, parvō*) used as an Ablative of Price either functions as a substantive or modifies a usually unexpressed neuter singular noun meaning "price," *pretiō*. However, four adjectives always appear in the Genitive of Indefinite Value rather than the expected Ablative of Price, *tanti, quanti, plūris* and *minoris*

☛ DRILL 126–129 MAY NOW BE DONE.

Short Readings

1. A fragment from the tragic poet Naevius

... ego semper plāris fēci

potiōremque habui libertātem multō quam pecūniam.

(NAEVIUS, *PALLIATAE FRAG.* 9–10)

potior, potius more powerful; more desirable, more precious

2. Amphitruo and his slave Sosia enter the stage, and Amphitruo accuses Sosia of lying

Amphitruo. Age ī tū secundum. *Sōsia.* Sequor, subsequor tē.

Amph. Scelestissimum tē arbitror. *Sōs.* Nam quam ob rem?

Amph. Quia id quod neque est neque fuit neque futurum est

mihi praedicās. (PLAUTUS, *AMPHITRUO* 551–54)

praedicō (1-tr) proclaim, declare

scelestus, -a, -um wicked

secundum (adv.) following, behind

subsequor (sub- + sequor) follow close behind

3. A slave recalls a Greek proverb.

... quem dī dīligunt

adulēscēns moritur, dum valet, sentit, sapit. (PLAUTUS, *BACCHIDĒS* 816–17)

adulēscēns, adulēscēntis young, youthful

diligō, dīligere, dilēxi, dilēctus value, esteem, love

sapio, sapere, sapit or sapivi, — be intelligent, show good sense

4. Mistaken for his twin brother, Menaechmus is reviled by his brother's parasite, Peniculus.

Menaechmus. Quis hic est, quī adversus it mihi? * *Peniculus.* Quid ais, homō

levior quam plūma, pessime et nēquissime,

flagitium hominis, subdole ac minimi preti? (PLAUTUS, *MENAECHMI* 487–89)

*The final -i of *mihi* here scans long

adversus (adv.) opposite, adversus ire, to go to meet (+ dat.)

aiō (defective verb) say; ais = 2nd sing. pres. act. indic.

flagitium, flagitiū n. shame, outrage, disgrace

nēquissimus, -a, -um most worthless worst

plūma, plūmae f. feather

subdolus, -a, -um deceitful, treacherous, sly

5. In explaining why he will not boast of his victories, Stratophanes, a soldier and buffoon, speaks about the trustworthiness of different kinds of witnesses.

plūris est oculātus testis ūnus quam auriti decem;

quī audiunt audita dicunt, quī vident plānē sciunt. (PLAUTUS, *TRUCULENTUS* 489–90)

auritus, -a, -um having ears

oculātus, -a, -um having eyes

plānē (adv.) plainly, clearly; obviously

testis, testis, -ium m. witness

6. The character Geta despairs

hoccin saeculum! ō scelera, ō genera sacrilega, ō hominem inpium!

(TERENCE, *ADELPHOE* 304)

hoccin = hocne' -ne, *here*, indicates an indignant statement

sacrilegus, -a, -um temple-robbing; sacrilegious

saec(u)lum, saec(u)li n. age generation

7. Chaerea concludes an account of a conversation with the long-winded Archimedes.

dum haec dicit, abiit hora. (TERENCE, *EUNUCHUS* 341)

hōra, hōrae f. hour

8. A fragment from the satirist Lucilius

"ō cūras hominum! ō quantum est in rēbus ināne!" (LUCILIUS, *SATURAE FRAG.* 9)

ināne, inānis -um n. empty space, void

9. Cicero comments on Athens and its great lawgiver, Solon.

prudentissima civitas Athēniensium, dum ea rerum potita est, fuisse traditur; eius porro civitatis sapientissimum Solōnem dicunt fuisse, eum qui lēgēs quibus hodiē quoque utuntur scripserit. (CICERO, *PRO S. ROSCIO AMERINO* 70)

Athēniensis, Athēniense Athenian

hodiē (adv.) today

porro (adv.) forward; hereafter; in turn further-more

potior, potiri, potitus sum be master (of), control (+ gen.)

prūdēns prūdētis showing foresight, prudent, sagacious

Solō(n), Solōnis m. Solon, sixth-century B.C.E. lawgiver

10. Cicero describes his reception when he arrived in Sicily to collect evidence against Verres.

nēmīni meus adventus labōri aut sūmptui neque publicē neque privātum fuit: vim in inquirendō tantam habui quantam mihi lēx dabat, nōn quantam habēre poteram istorum studio quos iste* vexārat. (CICERO, *IN VERREM* II 1.16)

*iste refers to Verres.

adventus, adventus m. arrival

inquirō (in- + quaerō), inquirere, inquisit or

inquisitū, inquisitus inquire into, investigate

privātum (adv.) in private, privately

sūmptus, sūmptūs m. expense, cost

vexō (1-tr.) trouble, disturb, harass

11. Cicero attacks Verres for one of his many illegal acts.

ēripis hērēditātem quae vēnerat ā propinquō, vēnerat testāmentō, venerat lēgibus; quae bona is qui testāmentum fēcerat huic Hērāclīō, aliquantō antequam est mortuus, omnia utenda ac possidenda trādiderat . . . (CICERO, *IN VERREM* II 2.46)

aliquantum, aliquantū n. a little, a small amount

ēripio, ēripere, ēripui, ēreptus tear away snatch away

Hērāclius, Hērāclī m. Heraclius

hērēditās, hērēditātis f. inheritance

possidēō, possidēre, possēdi, possessus occupy, take control of possess

propinquus, -a, -um near, close, *as subst.*, relative

testāmentum, testāmentī n. will

12. Cicero expresses his willingness to endure unpopularity now that Catiline has left the city est mihi tantū. Quirītēs, huius invidiae falsae atque iniquae tempestātem subīre, dum modo a vōbis huius horribilis belli ac nefarii periculum dēpellātur. dicātur sānē ēiectus esse a mē, dum modo eat in exsilium. sed mihi crēdite, nōn est iturus. (CICERO, *IN CATILINAM* II 15)

dēpellō (dē- + pellō), dēpellere, dēpulī, dēpulsus
drive away

horribilis, horribile terrifying, dreadful

nefarius, -a, -um unspeakable, wicked

Quirītēs, Quirītium *m. pl.* Quirites, the name for Roman citizens in their public capacity

sānē (adv.) by all means

subeō (sub- + eō), subire, subī or subīvī,

subitūrus undergo, endure

tempestās, tempestātis *f.* storm

13. After his return from exile Cicero describes the debt he owes to Pompey the Great.
huic ego hominī, Quirītēs, tantum dēbeō quantum hominem hominī dēbere vix fās est. (CICERO, *POST REDITUM AD POPULUM* 17)

Quirītēs, Quirītium *m. pl.* Quirites, the name for Roman citizens in their public capacity
vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly

14. Cicero asks a rhetorical question.

quid est ōrātōri tam necessārium quam vōx? (CICERO, *DE ORATōRE* I.251)

^avōx *here*, quality or tone of voice

necessārius, -a, -um necessary

15. A character in Cicero's dialogue about law explains the importance of imperium.
nihil porrō tam aptum est ad nūs condiōnemque nātūrae quod quom dīcō, lēgem ā mē dīcī intellegī volō—quam imperium, sine quō nec domus ūlla nec cīvītās nec gēns nec hominum universum genus stāre, nec rerum nātūra omnis nec ipse mundus potest. (CICERO, *DE LEGIBUS* III.2)

aptus, -a, -um suitable, fit

condiō, condiōnis *f.* contract, condition, situation

mundus, mundi *m.* universe, world

porrō (adv.) forward; hereafter; in turn, furthermore

universus, -a, -um entire, (taken as a) whole

16. Pleading before Caesar on behalf of one of Pompey's followers, Cicero appeals to Caesar's merciful side.

nihil est tam populāre quam bonitās, nūlla dē virtūtibus tuis plūrimīs nec* admirābilior nec* gravior misericordiā est. hominēs enim ad deōs nūllā rē propius accēdunt quam salutem hominibus dandō. (CICERO, *PRO LIGARIO* 37–38)

*These redundant negatives strengthen the negative idea.

admirābilis, admirābile astonishing; admirable, wonderful

bonitās, bonitātis *f.* (moral) goodness kindness, generosity

misericordia, misericordiae *f.* pity

populāris, populāre of the populus; popular, admired

propius (adv.) nearer

17. Cicero explains the importance of knowing Latin.

nōn enim tam praeclārum est scīre Latīnē quam turpe nescīre, neque tam* id
mihī orātōris bonī quam* cīvis Rōmānī proprium vidētur. (CICERO, *BRUTUS* 140)

*tam . . . quam . . . here, so much . . . as . . .

Latīnē (adv.) (in) Latin

praeclārus, -a, -um very famous; radiant beautiful

proprius, -a, -um one's own; peculiar (to), characteristic (+ gen.)

turpis, turpe foul ugly; base, shameful

18. One of the participants in a discussion about the soul's immortality makes his extreme position clear.

errāre mehercule mālō cum Platōne, quem tū quantū faciās sciō et quem ex tuō ore
admīror, quam cum istis* vēra sentire. (CICERO, *TUSCULANAE DISPUTATIONES* I.39)

*istis refers to philosophers who disagree with Plato and deny the immortality of the soul.

admīror (1-tr.) be astonished (at), wonder (at)

os, ōris n. mouth

Platō(n), Platōnis m. Plato

19. Cicero's translation of Simonides' epitaph for the Spartan dead at Thermopylae

Dīc, hospes, Spartae nōs tē hic vīdisse iacentēs,
dum sānctīs patriae lēgibus obsequimur.

(CICERO, *TUSCULANAE DISPUTATIONES* I.101)

hic (adv.) here

hospes, hospitīs m. guest, visitor, stranger

iaceō, iacēre, iacul. — lie, rest; lie dead

obsequor (ob- + sequor) comply with, submit to

sānctus, -a, -um inviolate blameless

Sparta, Spartae f. Sparta

20. After one character states that even wise men are affected by passionate emotions, another character indicates his disagreement with the following surprising statement.

Nē* ista glōriōsa sapientia nōn magnō aestimanda est, si quidem nōn multum dif-
fert ab insāniā. (CICERO, *TUSCULANAE DISPUTATIONES* III.8)

*nē, here (particle) always followed by a demonstrative, truly, assuredly

glōriōsus, -a, -um boastful, glorious, illustrious

insānia, insāniae f. madness, insanity

21. A suggestion worthy of Plato

demus igitur nōs huic* excolendōs patiāmurque nōs sārari.

(CICERO, *TUSCULANAE DISPUTATIONES* IV 38)

*huic refers to philosophy

excolō, excolere, excolui, excolutus cultivate, develop, improve

sārō (1-tr.) heal, cure

22. A famous anecdote about the Athenian statesman Themistocles

noctu ambulābat in públicō* Themistoclēs, quod somnum capere nōn posset,
quaerentibusque respondebat Miltiadis tropaeis se e somnō suscitāri.

(CICERO, *TUSCULANAE DISPUTATIONES* IV.44)

*in públicō, in (a) public (place)

Miltiadēs, Miltiadis *m.* Miltiades, an Athenian
commander at Marathon

noctū = nocte

somnus, somnī *m.* sleep

suscitō (1-tr.) cause to rise, rouse

Themistoclēs, Themistoclis *m.* Themistocles

tropaeum, trophaei *n.* trophy (set up to mark the
defeat of an enemy)

23. Meditating on how often philosophers have easily endured exile from their homelands, a character suggests a reevaluation of the importance of the state.

quanti vērō ista civitās aestimanda est, ex quā bonī sapientēsque pelluntur?

(CICERO, *TUSCULANAE DISPUTATIONES* V.109)

24. The character Cotta utters a wish while speaking against the tenets of Epicureanism

utinam tam facile vera invenire possem quam falsa convincere!

(CICERO, *DE NATURA DEORUM* I.91)

convincō (con- + vincō) overcome; prove wrong, refute

25. The character Balbus closes his presentation of the Stoic view of the gods.

maia enim et impia cōsuetūdō est contra deōs disputandī, sive ex animō id fit
sive simulātē. (CICERO, *DE NATURA DEORUM* II.168)

consuetudo, cōsuetudinīs *f.* practice, custom, habit

disputō (dis- + putō) (1-tr.) argue one's case, debate

simulātē (adv.) in pretence

sive (conj.) or if, whether; sive . . . sive . . . whether . . . or (if) . . .

26. Although Cicero has been sleeping more since retiring from politics, he claims that his own dreams have remained pretty much the same.

. . . nec tam multum dormiēns ullō somniō sum admonitus, tantis praesertim dē
rēbus, nec mihi magis umquam videor quam cum aut in forō magistrātūs aut in
curiā senātum videō, somniāre. (CICERO, *DE DIVINATIONE* II.142)

admoneō (ad- + moneō) remind, advise

cūria, cūriae *f.* (the) Curia, (the) senate house

dormiō, dormire, dormivi or dormi, dormitum

sleep, be asleep

magistrātus, magistrātūs *m.* office holder,
magistrate

praesertim (adv.) especially, above all

somniō (1-intr.) dream

somnium, somniū *n.* dream

27. Cicero adduces a famous Roman family as an example of how real glory endures.

Tiberius enim Gracchus, P. f.,* tam diū laudābitur dum memoria rērum
Rōmānārum manēbit . . . (CICERO, *DE OFFICIIS* II 43)

*P. f. = Publii filius

28. Cicero claims that Caesar often cited two lines of a Greek tragedy, which Cicero here translates.

nam si violandum est iūs, rēgnandī grātiā
violandum est; aliis rebus pietātem colās. (CICERO, *DE OFFICIIS* III.12)

colō, colere, colui, cultus cultivate
pietas, pietatis *f* sense of duty, dutifulness, piety
rēgnō (1-tr.) rule as king, reign
violō (1-tr.) violate, transgress against

29. Cicero pays his friend Atticus a compliment.

Rōmae enim videor esse cum tuās litterās legō et, ut fit in tantis rēbus, modo hoc
modo illud audīre. (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* II 15.1)

30. Cicero writes to Brutus about his opinion of the consuls for 43 B.C.E. and the young Octavian Caesar.

quālis tibi saepe scripsi cōsules, tālēs exstitērunt. Caesaris vērō puerī mīrifica in-
dolēs virtūtis. utnam tam facile eum flōrentem et honōribus et grātiā regere ac
tenere possimus quam facile adhuc tenuimus! (CICERO, *AD BRUTUM* 9.1)

adhūc (adv.) up to the present time
ex(s)istō, ex(s)istere, ex(s)istī. — stand out, appear; prove to be
flōreō, flōrēre, flōruī. — blossom, prosper, be at the height of one's power
indolēs, indolis *f* innate quality, nature (natural) tendency (for) (+ gen.)
mīrificus, -a, -um causing wonder amazing

31. While writing his autobiography, Cicero contemplates insulting two consuls, A. Gabinius and L. Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus, both of whom supported Clodius's prosecution of Cicero, which led to the latter's exile.

itaque mīrificum embolium cōgitō* in secundum librum meōrum temporum in-
clūdere dicentem Apollinem in concilio deōrum qualis reditus duōrum im-
perātōrum futūrus esset, quōrum alter exercitum perdīdisset, alter vendīdisset.

(CICERO, *AD QUINTUM FRATREM* III.1.24)

*cōgitō, here, have in mind, plan (+ inf.)
concilium, conciliū *n.* (popular) assembly, council
embolium, embolū *n.* interlude, insertion
inclūdō inclūdere, inclūsī, inclūsus enclose,
include

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly
mīrificus, -a, -um causing wonder, amazing
reditus, reditūs *m.* return

32. The poet laments man's irrational fear of death.

ō miserās hominum mentēs, ō pectora caeca!
quālibus in tenebris vitae quantisque periclis
degitur hoc aevi quodcumquest! . . . (LUCRETIUS, *DE RERUM NATURA* I.14–16)

aevum, aevi *n.* age, life(time)

dēgō (dē- + agō), dēgere, —, — spend, pass

periclis = periculis

quodcumque = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. adj.*, whatever

tenebrae, tenebrarum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows

33. Imitation is the sincerest form of flattery. (hendecasyllable)

Disertissime Rōmulī nepōtum,
quot sunt quotque fuēre. Marce Tullī,
quotque post aliīs erunt in annīs,
grātūās tibi maximās Catullus
agrt pessimus omnium poēta,
tantō pessimus omnium poēta,
quantō tū optimus omnium patrōnus. (CATULLUS XLIX)

disertus, -a. um well spoken, eloquent

nepōs, nepōtis *m.* grandson; descendant

patrōnus, patrōnī *m.* patron; defender

34. The poet states a paradox.

Ōdī et amō. quārē id faciam fortasse requīris.
nescio,* sed fieri sentiō et excrucior. (CATULLUS LXXXV)

*The final -ō of nesciō here scans *short*.

excruciō (1-tr.) torture

fortasse (adv.) perhaps

requirō (re- + quaerō) require, requis.i or requisivī, requisitus seek again, ask, inquire

35. The poet strives to express how much he loved Lesbia.

Nūlla potest mulier tantum sē dīcere amātam
vērē, quantum ā mē Lesbia amāta mea est.
nūlla fidēs ūllō fuit umquam foedere tanta,
quanta in amore tuō ex parte reperta meā est. (CATULLUS LXXXVII)

foedus, foederis *n.* agreement, treaty, pact

mulier, mulieris *f.* woman

reperiō, reperīre, reperī, repertus find, discover

36. The soldiers of the enemy break ranks to the benefit of Caesar's men.

ita sine ullō periculō tantam eōrum multitudinem nostrī interfecerunt quantum
fuit diēi spatium, . . . (CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ* II.11)

multitūdō, multitudinis *f.* multitude

spatium, spatii *n.* course, track, space, interval

37. Caesar explains why he thinks certain Gallic tribes surrendered so quickly.

nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallorum alacer ac promptus est animus, sic mollis ac
minimē resistēns ad calamitatēs ferendās mēns eōrum est.

(CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ* III.19)

alacer, alacris, alacre quick, swift; keen, eager

calamitās, calamitātis *f.* disaster, misfortune,

injury

Galli, Gallōrum *m. pl.* (the) Gauls

mollis, molle gentle, soft, mild

prōptus, -a, -um quick to respond, ready

resistō, resistere, resisti, — halt, make a stand,

resist

suscipio (sub- + capio) undertake, venture upon

38. In the territory of the Morini, Caesar—referring to himself in the third person—is about to launch an expedition to Britain.

dum in his locis Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte
Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnerunt qui sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō ex-
cusarent quod hominēs barbari et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti bellum populō
Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāset factūrōs pollicērentur. (CAESAR, *DE*
BELLŌ GALLICŌ IV.22)

barbarus, -a, -um foreign; barbarous, uncivilized

cōnsuetūdō, cōnsuetūdinis *f.* custom, usage

excūsō (1-tr.) excuse

imperitus, -a, -um inexperienced (in),

unacquainted (with) (+ gen.)

Morini, Morinōrum *m. pl.* (the) Morini, a Belgic

tribe

nāvis, nāvis, -ium *f.* ship

parō (1-tr.) prepare, make ready; get, obtain

polliceor, pollicēri pollicitus sum promise

superior, superius upper, higher; earlier

39. Several of Caesar's soldiers, against orders, leave their positions in the middle of a battle on land and sea and attempt to reach land on their own

pars eōrum studiō spectandī ferēbātur, pars etiam cupiditāte pugnandī.

([CAESAR], *BELLUM ALEXANDRINUM* 20)

cupiditās, cupiditātis *f.* desire

spectō (1-tr.) look at, observe

40. When he is recommending a harsh penalty against Catiline, Cato recalls an outstanding example of Roman austerity

apud maiores nostrōs T. Manlius Torquātus bellō Gallicō filium suum, quod is
contrā imperium in hostem pugnāverat, necārī iussit atque ille āgregius
adulēscēns inmoderātae fortitudinis* morte poenās dedit.

(SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 52)

*inmoderatae fortitudinis, *genitive expresses the charge*, for (his) unrestrained bravery
adulēscēns, adulēscētis, -ium *m.* young man
āgregius, -a -um outstanding, extraordinary
fortitūdō, fortitudinis *f.* bravery, fortitude

Gallicus, -a, -um Gallic
inmoderātus, -a, -um unrestrained, immoderate
T. Manlius Torquātus, T. Manlii Torquātū *m.*
T. Manlius Torquatus (dictator 353 B.C.E.)
necō (1 tr.) put to death, kill

41. The historian summarizes Cato's character.

esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat: ita, quō minus petēbat glōriam, eō magis illum
adsequēbātur. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 54)

assequor (ad- + sequor) go after, pursue

42. The historian compares Caesar and Cato.

Caesar dandō, sublevandō, ignōscundō, Catō nihil largiundo glōriam adeptus est.
in alterō miseris perfugium erat, in alterō malis perniciēs. illius facilitās, huius
cōstantia laudabātur. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 54)

adiptor, adipisci, adeptus sum reach, obtain,
gain, get
cōstantia, cōstantiae *f.* firmness, steadfastness,
resolution
facilitās, facilitātis *f.* facility, ease; indulgence
ignōscō (in- + nōscō), ignōscere, ignōvi, ignōtus
forgive, pardon, ignōscundō = archaic form of
ignōscendō

largior, largiri, largitus sum give (generously),
bestow; largiundō = archaic form of largiendō
perfugium, perfugii *n.* place of refuge, shelter,
sanctuary
perniciēs, perniciēi *f.* destruction, ruin, disaster
sublevō (1-tr.) raise; assist; make easier

43. A writer expresses indignation at a line in Cicero's poem about his consulship.

tamen aude dīcere: "O fortunātam nātam, mē cōsule, Rōmam!" tē cōsule
fortunātam, Cicerō? immō vērō infelicem et miseram . . .

([SALLUST], *IN M. TULLIUM CICERONEM* 5)

fortunātus -a, -um fortunate
immō vērō (adv.) no, even

44. A Roman proverb

Beneficium accipere libertātem est vendere. (PUBILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* B5)

beneficium, beneficii *n.* service, kindness; favor, benefit

45. A Roman proverb

Brevis ipsa vita est, sed malis fit longior. (PUBLIUS SYRUS *SENTENTIAE* B36)

46. After a refrain in a funeral song for the shepherd Daphnis, the poet gives evidence for the power of poetry.

ducite ab urbe domum, mea carmina, dūcite Daphnin.

carmina vel caelō possunt dēducere lūnam,

carminibus Cīrce sociōs mūtāvit Ulīxī, . . . (VERGIL, *ECLOGUES* VIII.68–70)

Cīrce, Cīrcēs *f.* Circe, a witch from Colchis who detained Odysseus and his men

Daphnis, Daphnidis *f.* Daphnis, Daphnin = *acc. sing.*

dedūcō (de- + ducō) lead down bring down

lūna, lūnae *f.* moon

Ulīxēs, Ulīās or Ulīxī *m.* Ulysses (Odysseus) vel (adv.) even

47. The poet concludes an enumeration of Aeneas's many trials.

tantae mōlis erat Rōmānam condere gentem. (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.33)

condō, condere, condidī, conditus found

mōlēs, mōlis, -ium *f.* mass, weight, burden; enterprise, responsibility

48. Aeneas describes a grim scene in a wall painting he discovers in Carthage

ter circum Iliacōs raptāverat Hectora mūrōs

exanimumque aurō corpus vendēbat Achilles. (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.483–84)

Achillēs, Achillis *m.* Achilles

circum (prep + acc.) around

exanimus, -a, -um lifeless

Hector, Hectoris *m.* Hector, Hectora = *acc. sing.*

Iliacus, -a, -um Iliac, Trojan

raptō (1-tr.) carry away by force; seize drag

ter (adv.) three times

49. Angry Dido feels that further appeals to Aeneas will be useless.

nam quid dissimulō aut quae mē ad maiōra reservō?

num flētū ingemuit nostrō? num lūmina flexit?

num lacrimas victus dedit aut miserātus amantem est? (VERGIL, *AENEID* IV.368–70)

dissimulō (1-tr.) conceal, pretend, dissemble

flectō, flectere, flexi, flexus bend, turn

flētus, flētus *m.* weeping, tears

ingemō, ingemere, ingemui, — groan, lament

lacrima, lacrimae *f.* tear

miseror (1-tr.) pity

reservō (1-tr.) save, hold back

50. The poet comments on the lives of words.

multa renāscuntur quae iam cecidēre cadentque

quae nunc sunt in honōre vocābula, si volet ūsus,

quem penes* arbitrium est et iūs et norma loquendī. (HORACE, *ARS POETICA* 70–72)

*quem penes = penes quem by anastrophe, the reversal in order of a preposition and its object

arbitrium, arbitriū *n.* power of decision,

determination, supervision, control

norma, normae *f.* standard

penes (prep + acc.) in the power of

renāscor (re- + nāscor) be reborn; be revived

ūsus ūsus *m.* use; usage

vocābulum, vocābulū *n.* word; term

51. The poet has been away from Rome and away from Cynthia.

nōn sum ego qui fueram: mūtāt via longa puellās.
 quantus in exiguō tempore fūgit amor!
 nunc primum longās sōlus cognōscere noctēs
 cōgor et ipse meis auribus esse gravis. (PROPERTIUS I.12.11–14)

auris, auris, -ium *f.* ear

cōgō (cō- + agō), cōgere, cōēgi, cōctus drive together, force, compel

exiguus, -a, -um small, slight, brief

52. Addressing his beloved Cynthia, the poet links love and mortality.

dum nōs fāta sinunt, oculōs satiēmus amōre:
 nox tibi longa venit, nec reditūra diēs. (PROPERTIUS II.15.23–24)

satiō (1-tr.) sate, satisfy

sinō, sinere sīi or sivi, situm allow, permit

53. The poet looks at the darker side of love.

litore quot conchae tot sunt in amōre dolōrēs;
 quae patimur, multō spicula felle madent. (OVID, ARS AMATORIA II.519–20)

concha, conchae *f.* shellfish, seashell

dolor, doloris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain

fel, fellis *n.* liver, (black) bile (the source of rage);

venom bitterness

litus, litoris *n.* shore, beach

madeō, madēre, —, — be wet, drip

spiculum, spiculi *n.* sharp point (of a weapon),

arrow; sting

54. The poet in exile comments with emotion on the death of his parents.

fēlices ambo tempestivēque sepulti,
 ante diem poenae quod periēre meae!
 me quoque fēlicem, quod nōn viventibus illis
 sum miser, et dē mē quod doluēre nihil! (OVID TRISTIA IV 10.81–84)

ambo, ambae, ambō (*pl. adj. and pron.*) both; ambo = *masc. nom. pl.*

doleō, dolēre, doliui, — suffer, grieve, feel pain

sepeliō, sepelire sepelivi or sepeliui, sepultus bury

tempestivē (*adv.*) opportune, at the right time

55. A tribune of the people, A. Verginius, concludes a speech intended to warn the people about Caeso Quinctius, a champion of the patricians

expectate dum cōsul aut dictātor fiat quem privātum viribus et audāciā rēgnan-
 tem vidētis. (LIVY, AB URBE CONDITA III 11.13)

dictātor, dictātōris *m.* dictator, an emergency officer with unlimited powers

privātus, -a, -um private; *as subst.*, private citizen

rēgnō (1 tr.) rule; act in a kingly way, tyrannize

56. Clytaemnestra laments both the horrors of the house of Atreus and the beginning of the Trojan war.

ō scelera semper sceleribus vincēns domus:

cruōre ventos emimus, bellum necē! (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNON* 169–70)

cruor, *cruōris* *m.* (fresh) blood, gore

nex, *necis* *f.* murder

ventus, *venti* *m.* wind

57. While plotting revenge against his brother, Thyestes, Atreus speaks to himself.

haec ipsa pollēns inclitī Pelopis domus

ruat vel in mē, dummodo in frātre ruat. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *THYESTES* 190–91)

inclitus, -a, -um famous, renowned

Pelops, *Pelopis* *m.* Pelops, son of Tantalus and father of Atreus and Thyestes

polleō, *pollēre*, —, — be powerful

ruō, *ruere*, *ruī*, *rutūrus* rush, fal. (with violence)

vel (adv.) even

58. The poet remarks on the curious fate of one of his little books.

Quem recitas meus est, o Fidentine, libellus;

sed male cum recitās, incipit esse tuus. (MARTIAL I.38)

Fidentinus, *Fidentum* *m.* Fidentinus, the addressee of the poem

libellus, *libelli* *m.* (little) book

recitō (1-tr.) read aloud (in public), recite

59. Unlike Romans of old, who were able to exercise the rights of free citizens all their lives, those of Pliny's generation have had this experience for a short time only.

breve tempus (nam tantō brevius omne quantō felicius tempus) quo libet scire

quid sīmus libet exercere quod scimus. (PLINY THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE* VIII 14.10)

exercēō, *exercēre*, *exercuī*, *exercitus* keep busy; exercise, perform

libet, *libēre*, *libuit* or *libitum est* it is pleasing, there is a desire

60. Pliny suggests to the new emperor Trajan a means of evaluating the character of the senators.

talēsque nōs crēde, quālis fāma cuiusque est.

(PLINY THE YOUNGER, *PANEGYRICUS* 62.9)

cuiusque = *masc. sing. gen. of indef. pron.*, each man

61. The historian describes the experience of repression under Domitian.

memoriam quoque ipsam cum vōce perdidissēmus si tam* in nostrā potestāte

esset obliviscī quam* tacere. (TACITUS, *DE VITA AGRICOLAE* 2)

*tam . . . quam . . . *here*, as much . . . as . . .

potestās, *potestātis* *f.* (legitimate) power

taceō, *tacēre*, *tacuī*, *tacitūrus* be silent, keep silent

62. The historian quotes this tortured sentence from a letter written by Tiberius to the senate as proof of the emperor's inner torment.

quid scribam vobis, patres conscripti, aut quō modō scribam, aut quid omninō
nōn scribam hōc tempore, dī mē deaeque peius perdant quam perire mē cōtidie
sentio si sciō. (TACITUS, *ANNALĒS* VI.6)

cōtidie (adv.) daily, every day

63. The historian comments on Tiberius's habit of consulting an astrologer.

sed mihi haec ac tāha audienti in incertō iudicium est fātōne rēs mortālium et ne-
cessitate immutabili an forte volvantur. (TACITUS, *ANNALĒS* VI.22)

immūtābilis, immūtābile unchangeable, unalterable

iudicium, iudiciū *n* judgment, opinion

mortālis, mortale mortal

necessitas, necessitātis *f* necessity

volvō, volvere, volvi, volūtus turn; determine

64. The historian reports one way Caesar found to keep up the population of the city.

omnisque medicinam Rōmae professōs et liberālium artium doctōrēs, quō liben-
tius et ipsi urbem incolerent et ceteri adpeterent, civitate donāvit.

(Suetonius, *VITA IULII* 42)

adpetō (ad- + petō) strive after, seek; make for

doctor, doctōris *m*. teacher

incolō, incolere incolui, — inhabit

libenter (adv.) gladly

liberālis, liberāle characteristic of a free man,
liberal

medicina, medicinae *f* medicine

profiteor, profiteri, professus sum profess; follow
as a pursuit, practice

65. The historian quotes from a letter of Augustus to Tiberius.

attenuātum tē esse continuātiōne labōrum cum audiō et legō, dī mē perdant nisi
cohorrescit corpus meum; tēque orō ut parcās tibi, . . . (Suetonius, *VITA TIBERII* 21)

attenuō (1-tr.) make thin, impair, weaken

cohorrēscō cohorrēscere, cohorruī, — shudder, shiver

continuātiō, continuātiōnis *f* continuance, prolongation

parcō, parcere, peperci, parsurus be merciful, be sparing (+ dat.)

66. According to the historian, these were Nero's last words.

quālis artifex pereō! (Suetonius, *VITA NERONIS* 49)

artifex, artificis *m*. artist

67. A young man's epitaph

Decem et octō annōrum nātus vixi ut potui bene, grātus parenti atque amicis omnibus. ioceris, ludās, hortor: hic summa est sevērītās. (CIL VI.16169)

hic (adv.) here, in this place

iocor (1-intr.) joke, jest

ludō, ludere, lūsī, lūsus play

parēns, parentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* parent

sevērītās, sevērītātis *f.* gravity, seriousness, severity

Longer Readings

1. Cicero, *Prō Archia* 13

Cicero concludes his defense of the time he has spent on literary pursuits.

quā re quis tandem mē reprehendat, aut quis mihi iūre suscēnseat, sī, quantum cēteris ad suās rēs obeundās, quantum ad fēstōs diēs lūdōrum celebrandōs, quantum ad aliās voluptātēs et ad ipsam requiem animī et corporis concēditur temporum, quantum alii tribuunt tempestivis conviviis, quantum denique alveolo, quantum pilae, tantum mihi egomet ad haec studia recolenda sūmpserō?

alveolus, alveoli *m.* gaming board

celebrō (1-tr) celebrate

concēdō (con- + cēdō) (tr.) concede, grant

convivium, convivium *n.* dinner party, banquet, feast

denique (adv.) finally, at last, in short, to sum up

egomet intensive form of ego

fēstus, -a, -um festal; fēstus diēs, festival day, holiday

lūdus, lūdī *m.* game, play, sport; in pl., (public) games

obeō (ob- + eō), obire, obīī or obīvi, obitus go to meet; enter into, take on

pila pilae *f.* ball

recolō, recolare, recolui, recultus cultivate again; resume, practice again

reprehendō, reprehendere, reprehendi,

reprehensus seize, catch; blame, censure

requiēs, requiētis *f.* rest, relaxation; requiem = *acc. sing.*

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take up, seize, take (and use)

suscēnseō, suscēnsēre, suscēnsui, — be angry with (+ dat.)

tempestivus, -a, -um timely, ripe, ready;

tempestivum convivium, sumptuous or elaborate dinner party (that starts early)

tribuō, tribuere, tribui, tributus grant, bestow, assign

voluptās, voluptātis *f.* pleasure, joy

2. Cicero, *Pro Archia* 14

The study of literature stands in an important relation to public and political life.

nam nisi multorum praeceptis multisque lictis mihi ab adulescentiā suāsissem nihil esse in vitā magnō opere* expetendum nisi laudem atque honestātem, in eā autem persequendā omnis cruciātus corporis, omnia pericula mortis atque exsilii parvī esse ducenda, numquam mē prō salūte vestrā in tot ac tantās dimicātiōēs atque in hōs profligātorum hominum cōtidiānōs impetūs obiēcissem. sed plēni omnes sunt librī, plēnae sapientium vōcēs, plēna exemplōrum vetustās; quae iacērent in tenebris omnia, nisi litterārum lūmen accēderet.† quam multās nobis imaginēs nōn solum ad intuendum vērū etiam ad imitandum fortissimōrum virōrum expressās scriptōrēs et Graeci et Latīni reliquērunt! quās ego mihi semper in administrandā rē pūblicā prōpōnēns animum et mentem meam ipsā cōgitatiōe hominum excellentium cōformābam.

*magnō opere magnopere

†accēdō, herz, be added

administrō (1-tr.) assist; manage, administer

adulescentia, adulescentiae f. youth, adolescence

cōgitatiō, cōgitatiōis f. thinking, reflection, thought

cōformō (1-tr.) shape, fashion

cōtidiānus, -a, -um daily

cruciātus, cruciātus m. torture, torment

dimicatiō, dimicatiōis f. battle, fight, struggle

excellēns, excellentis outstanding

exemplum, exempli n. example

expetō (ex- + petō) ask for, seek (after)

exprimō, exprimere, expressi, expressus squeeze out; stamp, portray, depict

Graecus, -a, -um Greek

honestās, honestātis f. honor, integrity

iaceō, iacēre, iacui, he, rest; lie dead

imāgō, imāginis f. image, likeness

imitor (1-tr.) practice, copy, imitate

impetus, impetūs m. attack, assault

intueor, intueri, intuitus sum look upon, gaze at; reflect upon, consider

Latīnus, -a, -um Latin

laus, laudis f. praise

obiēcō (ob- + iaciō) throw (in front of), throw (in the way of), interpose

persequor (per- + sequor) follow earnestly, pursue

plēnus, -a, -um full

praeceptum, praecepti n. advice, instruction, precept

profligatus -a, -um dissolute, depraved

propōnō (prō- + pōnō) exhibit, keep (before one), bear in mind, hold up (as an example)

scriptor, scriptoris m. writer

suādeō, suādere, suāsi, suāsum recommend, urge, advise; persuade (+ dat.)

tenebrae, tenebrarum f. pl. darkness, shadows

vetustās, vetustātis f. (old) age, antiquity

3. Cicero, *Pro Archia* 18–19

Cicero muses on the divine endowment of all poets.

atque sic et summis hominibus eruditissimisque accepimus ceterarum rerum studia ex doctrina et praeceptis et arte constare, poetam naturam ipsam valere et mentis viribus excitari et quasi divino quodam spiritu inflari. quam rem suam iure noster ille Ennius sanctos appellat poetas, quod quasi deorum aliquo dono atque munere commendati nobis esse videamur.

aliquo = neut. sing. abl. of indef. adj., some, any
appellō (1-tr.) name, call
commendō (1-tr.) entrust
constō (con- + stō), constare, constiti, constāturus stand, be established; (+ ex + abl.) consist in, rest on, be composed of
doctrina, doctrinae f. teaching, instruction
Ennius, Ennii m. Ennius
eruditus, -a, -um learned, accomplished

excitō (1-tr.) arouse
inflō (1-tr.) blow on, inspire
mūnus, muneris n. present, gift; tribute
praeceptum, praecepti n. advice, instruction, precept
quasi (adv.) as if, as it were
sāctus, -a, -um sacred, holy
spīritus, spīritūs m. spirit

4. Cicero, *Post Reditum ad Populum* 16

Cicero describes to the people the groundswell of support for him while he was in exile. He singles out one man's aid in particular.

ita me nudum a propinquis, nullam cognatione munitum, consules, praetores, tribuni plebis, senatus, Italia cuncta semper a vobis deprecata est, denique omnes qui vestris maximis beneficiis honoribusque sunt ornati, producti ad vos ab eodem, non solum ad me conservandum vos cohortati sunt, sed etiam rerum mearum gestarum auctores, testes, laudatores fuerunt. quorum princeps ad cohortandos vos et ad rogandos fuit Cn. Pompeius, vir omnium qui sunt, fuerunt, erunt, virtute, sapientia, gloria princeps: qui mihi unus tui privato amico eadem omnia dedit quae universae rei publicae, salutem, otium, dignitatem.

auctor, auctoris m. source, author
beneficium, beneficii n. service, kindness, favor
benefit
cognatio, cognationis f. kinship
cohortor (co- + hortor) (1 tr.) exhort, encourage
conservo (con- + servo) (1 tr.) keep from danger, save, preserve
cunctus, -a, -um all
denique (adv.) finally, at last; in short, to sum up
deprecor (1-tr.) beg mercy for; intercede for
dignitas, dignitatis f. dignity, rank, status
laudator, laudatoris m. praiser, character witness
muniō, munire, muniri or muni, munitus fortify; defend, protect
nudus, -a, -um naked, nude; bare, deserted
orno (1-tr.) dress, adorn, decorate; show respect (to)

otium, otii n. leisure
plebs, plebis f. (the) plebs, the general body of (nonpatrician) Roman citizens
praetor, praetoris m. praetor, a judicial official both in and outside of Rome
princeps, principis first, foremost, chief; as subst., leading man
privatus, -a, -um private
producō (pro- + ducō) bring forth, present
propinquus, -a, -um near, close; as subst., relative
testis, testis, -um m. or f. witness
tribunus, tribunī m. tribune, military commander; (plebeian) magistrate
universus, -a, -um all together entire, whole

The *Post Reditum ad Populum* was delivered by Cicero after his return from exile in 57. Cicero gives thanks to the people for their part in his recall, while at the same time recounting his role in important events of the past (notably, of course, the suppression of the Catilinarian conspiracy).

5. Catullus VIII (choliambic)

The poet has a heart-to-heart talk with himself.

Miser Catulle, dēsinās ineptīre,
 et quod vidēs perīsse perditum dūcās.
 fulsēre quondam candidi tibi* sōles
 cum ventitābās quō puella dūcēbat
 amāta nōbīs† quantum amābitur nūlla.
 ibi illa multa cum iocōsa fiēbant,
 quae tū volēbās nec puella nōlēbat,
 fulsēre vērē candidi tibi* sōlēs.
 nunc iam illa nōn volt: tū quoque inpotēns nōlī,
 nec quae fugit sectāre, nec miser vīve,
 sed obstināta mente perfer, obdūrā.
 valē, puella. iam Catullus obdūrat,
 nec te requiret nec rogabit invitam.
 at tū dolēbis, cum rogāberis nūlla.
 scelestā, vae tē, quae tibi manet vīta?
 quis nunc tē adībit? cui vidēberis bella?
 quem nunc amābis? cuius esse dicēris?
 quem bāsiābis? cui labella mordēbis?
 at tū, Catulle, destinatus obdura.

5

10

15

*The final *i* of *tibi* here scans long.

†nōbīs, Dative of Agent

adeō (ad- + eō), adire, adū, aditum approach
 at (conj.) but

bāsiō (1-tr.) kiss

bellus, -a, -um pretty, charming, lovely

candidus, -a, -um white, clear, bright, radiant

dēsinō, dēsinere, dēsī or dēsīvī, dēsītum stop,
 cease (+ inf.)

dēstinō (1-tr.) determine, resolve

doleō, dolēre, doli, — suffer, grieve, feel pain

fulgeo, fulgēre, fulsi, shine, gleam

ibi (adv.) there; then

ineptiō, ineptīre, —, — be silly, play the fool

inpotēns, inpotētis powerless

invitus, -a, -um unwilling

iocōsus, -a, -um full of jokes; laughable, funny

labellum, labellī n. (little) lip

mordeō mordēre, momordī, morsus bite, nibble

obdūrō (1-tr.) be hardened, hold out, persist, en-
 dure

obstinātus, -a, -um firmly set, determined, res-
 olute

quondam (adv.) at one time, once, formerly

requirō (re- + quaerō), requirere, requisī or re-
 quisīvi, requisītus seek again

scelestus -a, -um criminal, wicked, accursed

sector (1-tr.) keep following, chase

sōl, sōlis m. sun

vae (interj.) alas! woe!

ventitō (1 intr.) come often, keep coming

6. Catullus LXXXIV

The poet comments on the pronunciation of a certain Arrius.

"Chommoda" dicebat, si quādo "commoda" vellet*

dicere, et "insidiās" Arrius "hīnsidiās "

et tum mirifice spērābat se esse locūtum,

cum quantum poterat dixerat "hīnsidiās."

crēdō, sic māter, sic liber avunculus eius,

sic māternus avus dixerat atque avia

hōc missō in Syriam requiērant omnibus aurēs:

audībant[†] eadem haec lēniter et leviter,

nec sibi postillā metuēbant tāha verba,

cum subitō affertur nuntius horribilis:

Ionios flūctūs, postquam illūc Arrius isset,

iam non Ionios esse sed Hionios.

*vellet, *iterative subjunctive* (indicating repeated action), used to want

[†]audībant = audiēbant

afferō (ad- + ferō), afferre, attulī, allātus bring toward, bring forth, report

Arrius, Arrii *m.* Arrius

auris, auris, -ium *f.* ear

avia, aviae *f.* grandmother

avunculus, avunculi *m.* (maternal) uncle

avus, avi *m.* grandfather

commodum, commodi *n.* convenience, advantage

flūctus, flūctūs *m.* wave, billow

horribilis, horrible horrible, terrible

illūc (adv.) to that place, thither

Ionius, -a, -um Ionian

lēniter (adv.) gently, kindly

māternus, -a, -um maternal

metuō, metuere, metuī, — fear, dread

mirificē (adv.) wonderfully

nuntius, nuntiū *m.* messenger, message

postillā (adv.) afterward

quādo (adv.) at any time, ever

requiēscō, requiēscere, requiēvi, requiētum rest, find relief

subitō (adv.) suddenly

Syria, Syriae *f.* Syria

5

10

7. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.1

Caesar begins his commentary on the Gallic war.

Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Galli appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institutis, legibus inter sē differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garūnna flūmen, ā Belgis Matrona et Sēquana dividit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercatōrēs saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important; proximique sunt Germānis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Qua dē causa Helvēti quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtute praecedunt, quod ferē cōdiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt.

absum (ab- + sum) abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus be
away from
appellō (1-tr.) name, call
Aquitāni Aquitānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Aquitani
Belgae, Belgārum *m. pl.* (the) Belgae
Celtae, Celtārum *m. pl.* (the) Celts
commeō (1 intr.) go back and forth, travel
contendo, contendere, contendi, contentum
struggle, strive
continenter (adv.) continuously
cōdiānus, -a, -um daily
cultus, cultūs *m.* cultivation; sophistication;
luxury
dividō, dividere, divisi, divisus separate, divide
effeminō (1-tr.) emasculate, weaken
ferē (adv.) almost, nearly
flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream
Gallia, Galliae *f.* Gaul
Galli, Gallōrum *m. pl.* (the) Gauls
Garūnna, Garūnae *f.* (the) Garonne, a river in
southwestern Gaul
Germāni, Germānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Germans
Helvēti, Helvētiōrum *m. pl.* (the) Helvetii

hūmānitās, hūmānitātis *f.* (civilized) humanity;
humaneness, kindness
importō (1-tr.) carry in, import
incolō, incolere, incolui, — inhabit, dwell, live
institutum, institūtū *n.* custom, institution
lingua, linguae *f.* tongue; language
Matrona, Matronae *f.* (the) Marne, a river in
north-central Gaul
mercātor, mercātōris *m.* trader, merchant
pertineō (per- + teneō), pertinēre, pertinui,
pertentus be aimed at, pertain
praecedō (prae- + cēdō) (tr.) excel, surpass
prohibeō (prō- + habeō), prohibēre, prohibui,
prohibitus prevent, keep off, exclude
proptereā (adv.) because of this; proptereā quod,
because
proximus, -a, -um nearest
reliquus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of)
Rhēnus, Rhēnī *m.* (the) Rhine, a river in north-
eastern Gaul
Sequana, Sequanae *f.* (the) Seine, a river in
northern Gaul
trāns (prep. + acc.) across

8. Vergil, *Aeneid* 1.1-11

The poem of the *Aeneid*

Arma virumque canō, Troiae qui primus ab ōris
 Italiā, fātō profugus, Lāvīnaque vēnit
 litora, multum ille et terrīs iactātus et alrō
 vī superum, saevae memorem Iūnōnis ob iram.
 multa quoque et bellō passus, dum conderet urbem
 inferretque deōs Latīō; genus unde Latīnum
 Albānīque patrēs atque altae moenia Rōmae.
 Mūsa, mihi* causās memorā, quō numine laesō
 quidve dolēns rēgīna deum tot volvere cāsūs
 insignem pietāte virum, tot adire labores
 impulerit tantaene animīs caelestibus irae?

5

10

*The final -i of *mihi* here scans *long*
adeō (ad- + eō), *adire*, *adii*, *aditum* approach,
 encounter; undertake
Albānus, -a, -um Alban, of Alba Longa, a town in
 central Italy
caelestis, *caeleste*, heavenly, divine
condō, *condere*, *condidī*, *conditus* found
doleō, *dolēre*, *dolui*, — suffer; grieve (over),
 feel pain (at)
iactō (1-tr.) throw, toss; harass, torment
impellō (in- + pellō), *impellere*, *impulī*, *impulsus*
 strike against, beat; impel, drive
insignis, *insigne* distinguished, remarkable
laedō, *laedere*, *laesi*, *laesus* injure, harm; offend
Latīnus, -a, -um Latin, of Latium, an area in
 central Italy
Latium, *Latī* n. Latium, an area in central Italy
Lāvīnus, -a, -um Lavinian, of Lavinium, a town in
 central Italy

lītus, *litoris* n. shore, beach
memor, *memoris* mīndful, remembering
memorō (1-tr.) mention, recount, tell
Mūsa, *Mūsae* f. Muse
nūmen, *nūminis* n. divine power, divinity, divine
 spirit, numen
ōra, *ōrae* f. shore, coast
pietās, *pietātis* f. sense of duty, dutifulness,
 piety
profugus, -a, -um fugitive, fleeing; *as subst.*, exile;
 refugee
superī, *superōrum* m. pl. gods above; *superum*
 = *superōrum*
volvō, *volvere*, *volvi*, *volūtus* turn, turn over, roll;
 undergo
 -ve (enclitic conj.) or

9. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.3–13

Addressing Dido, queen of Carthage, Aeneas begins his narrative of the fall of Troy.

infandum, rēgina, iubēs renovāre dolōrem,
Troianās ut* opēs et lāmentābile rēgnum
ēruerint Danaī, quaeque ipse miserrima vidi
et quōrum pars magna fuī. quis tālia fandō
Myrmidonum Dolopumve aut dūri mīles Ulixī
temperet ā lacrimis? et iam nox ūmida caelō
praecipitat suādēntque cadentia sīdera somnōs.
sed si tantus amor cāsus cognōscere nostrōs
et breviter Troiae suprēmum audīre labōrem,
quamquam animus meminisse horret luctuque refūgit,
incipiam. . .

5

10

*ut, here (interrog adv.), how

Danaī, Danaōrum *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks

Dolopes, Dolopum *m. pl.* (the) Dolopes, a Greek
people from Thessaly

dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain

ēruō, ēruere, ēruī, ērutus uproot; destroy utterly
for (1-tr.) speak, utter

horreō, horrēre, horruī, stand up, bristle,
tremble, shudder

infandus, -a, -um unspeakable

lacrima, lacrimae *f.* tear

lāmentābilis, lāmentābile lamentable, arousing
lamentation

lūctus, lūctūs *m.* mourning

Myrmidones, Mymidonum *m. pl.* (the) Myrmi-
dons a people of Thessaly, followers of
Achilles

ops, opis *f.* power, in *pl.*, power, resources,
wealth

praecipitō (1-tr.) throw or hurl headlong; *intr.*,
fall headlong, plunge

refugiō (re- + fugiō), (turn and) flee, run away;
recoil

rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm

renovō (1-tr.) restore, renew, refresh, revive

sīdus, sīderis *n.* star

somnus, somnī *m.* sleep

suādeō, suādere, suāsī, suāsus recommend,
urge, advise

suprēmus, -a, -um final, last

temperō (1-tr.) restrain, hold back, refrain

Troianus, -a, -um Trojan

Ulixēs, Ulixī *m.* Ulysses (Odysseus)

ūmidus, -a, -um wet, moist; rainy

-ve (enclitic conj.) or

10. Horace, *Carmina* I 22 (Sapphic strophe)

The poet has special protection from dangers

Integer vitae scelerisque purus
 non eget Mauris iaculis neque arcu
 nec venenatis gravidā sagittis,
 Fusce, pharetrā,

sive per Syrtis iter aestuosās
 sive facturus per inhospitalem
 Caucasum vel quae loca fabulosus
 lambit Hydaspēs.

namque mē silvā lupus in Sabīnā,
 dum meam cantō Lalagēn et ultrā
 terminum cūris vagor expeditis,
 fūgit inermem,

aestuosus, -a, -um full of heat, burning,
 very hot
 arcus, arcūs *m.* bow
 cantō (1-tr.) sing (of)
 Caucasus, Caucasī *m.* (the) Caucasus mountains
 egeō, egēre egui, — lack, want, need (+ abl.)
 expeditō, expedire, expediti or expedit, expeditus
 let loose, set free; fetch out, unpack
 fabulosus, -a, -um full of fables; celebrated in
 fable
 Fuscus, Fuscī *m.* Fuscus, addressee of the poem
 gravidus -a, -um heavy, laden
 Hydaspēs Hydaspis *m.* (the) Hydaspes, a tribu-
 tary of the Indus River
 iaculum, iaculi *n.* javelin
 inermis, inerme unarmed, defenseless
 inhospitalis, inhospitāle inhospitable
 integer, integra, integrum untouched, whole;
 sound; blameless, virtuous
 iter, itineris *n.* journey
 Lalagē, Lalagēs *f.* Lalage; Lalagēn *acc. sing.*

lambō, lambere, —, — lick, lap
 lupus, lupī *m.* wolf
 Maurus, -a, -um Moorish, Moroccan
 pharetra, pharetrae *f.* quiver
 purus, -a, -um clean, pure, unstained
 Sabīnus, -a, -um Sabine (of a territory and people
 northeast of Rome)
 sagitta, sagittae *f.* arrow
 silva, silvae *f.* forest
 sive (conj.) or if, sive . . . sive . . . whether
 or if . . .
 Syrtis Syrtis, -ium *f. in sing. or pl.*, Syrtis, the
 name of a sandbar on the coast between
 Carthage and Cyrene
 terminus, terminī *m.* boundary line, boundary,
 limit
 ultrā (prep. + acc.) beyond, past, over, across
 vagor (1-intr.) wander
 vel (conj.) or
 venenatus, -a, -um filled with poison, poisonous

5

10

quāle portentum neque militāns
 Dauniās latus alit aesculētis
 nec Iubae tellūs generat, leōnum
 ārida nutrix.

15

pōne mē pigns ubi nulla campis
 arbor aestivā recreātur aurā,
 quod latus mundi nebulae malusque
 Iuppiter urget,

20

pōne sub currū nimium propinquū
 sōlis, in terrā domibus negātā:
 dulce ridentem Lalagēn amābō,
 dulce loquentem.

aesculētum, aesculētī *n.* oak forest

aestivus, -a, -um of summer

alō, alere, aluī, al(i)tus feed, nourish, support

arbor, arboris *f.* tree

āridus, -a -um dry; parched

aura, aurae *f.* breeze

currus, currus *m.* chariot

Dauniās *fem. sing. nom. of adj. used substantively.*

Daunia, Apulia, a province of southeast Italy

dulce (*adv.*) sweetly, pleasantly

generō (1 tr.) beget, create produce

Iuba, Iubae *m.* Juba, a Numidian king

Lalagē, Lalagēs *f.* Lalage; Lalagēn *acc. sing.*

lātus -a, -um broad, wide

latus, lateris *n.* side, flank

leō, leōnis *m.* lion

militāris, militāre military; warlike

mundus, mundi *m.* universe, world

nebula, nebulae *f.* mist, fog, cloud

negō (1-tr.) deny

nimium (*adv.*) too much, excessively

nūtrix, nūtrīcis *f.* nurse

piger, pigra, pigrum sluggish, inactive,
 unfruitful

portentum, portentī *n.* sign, omen, portent

propinquus, -a, -um near, close

recreō (1 tr.) revive, refresh

rideō, ridere, rīsī, rīsus smile, laugh

sōl, sōlis *m.* sun

tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land

urgeō, urgere, ursī, weigh down; press
 hard; threaten

11. Horace, *Ars Poetica* 136–55

The poet gives advice about poetic beginnings to the potential writer

nec sic incipiēs, ut scriptor cyclicus olim:

“Fortūnam Priamī cantabo et nobile bellum.”

quid dignum tantō feret hic prōmissor hiātū?

parturient montēs, nāscētur rīdīculus mus.

quantō rēctius hic, quī nīl mōlītur ineptē:

140

“Dīc mihi, Mūsa, virum, captae post tempora Troiae

quī mōrēs hominum multōrum vīdit et urbēs.”

nōn fūmum ex fulgōre, sed ex fūmo dare* lūcem

cōgitat† ut speciōsa dehinc mirācula prōmat,

Antīphatēn Scyllamque et cum Cyclope Charybdim;

145

nec reditum Diomēdis ab interitū Meleagrī

nec geminō bellum Troiānum orditur ab ōvō:

semper ad ēventum festīnat et in mediās rēs

non secus ac notas‡ audītorem rapit et quae

*dō, *here*, bring forward, produce

†cōgitō, *here*, have in mind, plan (+ inf.)

‡nōtus, -a, -um well known, famous, familiar

Antīphatēs, Antīphatae *m.* Antiphates, king of
the Laestrygonians, who tried to kill Odysseus

auditor, audītōris *m.* hearer, listener

cantō (1-tr) sing (of)

Charybdīs, Charybdīs *m.* Charybdis, a whirlpool,

Charybdīm = *acc. sing.*

cyclicus, -a, -um of the epic cycle of poems,

cyclic

Cyclōps, Cyclōpos or Cyclōpis *m.* (the) Cyclops

(Polyphemus)

dehinc (adv.) after this later, at a later stage

Diomēdēs, Diomēdis *m.* Diomedes, one of the

Greek heroes at Troy

eventus, ēventūs *m.* outcome, denouement

festīnō (1-intr.) hasten, proceed swiftly

fulgor, fulgōris *m.* brightness, radiance, splendor

fūmus, fūmī *m.* smoke, fumes

geminus, -a, -um twin-born, twin

hiātus, hiātūs *m.* gaping, (wide) opening chasm

ineptē (adv.) improperly, inappropriately

interitus, interitūs *m.* death, demise

Meleager, Meleagrī *m.* Meleager, whose story is

told by Phoenix in the *Iliad*

mirāculum, mirāculī *n.* amazing object, marvel,

wonder

mōlior, mōliri, mōlitus sum plan, set in motion,
begin

mūs, mūrīs *m.* mouse

Musa, Mūsae *f.* Muse

nōbilis, nōbile noble, remarkable; well known,
famous

olim (adv.) once, formerly

ordior, ordiri, orsus sum embark on, begin
(to speak or write of)

ōvum, ōvī *n.* egg

parturiō, parturire, parturivī, — be pregnant
with, be in labor

Priamus, Priamī *m.* Priam, king of Troy

prōmissor, prōmissōris *m.* promiser, guarantor

prōmō, prōmere, prōmpsi, prōptus bring

forth, bring into view

rapio, rapere, rapui, raptus tear away, carry off;
snatch up

rēctē rightly, correctly

reditus, reditus *m.* return; homecoming

ridiculus, -a, -um laughable, silly, ridiculous

scriptor, scriptōris *m.* writer

Scylla, Scyllae *f.* Scylla, a sea monster

secus (adv.) otherwise, differently; nōn secus ac
not differently than, exactly as if

speciōsus, -a, -um attractive; spectacular,
splendid

Troianus, a -um Trojan

dēspērat tractāta nitēscere posse relinquit
 atque ita mentitur, sic vērīs falsa remiscet,
 prīmō nē medium, mediō nē discrepet imum.
 tū, quid ego et populus mecum desideret audi,
 sī plausōnis egēs aulaea manentis et ūsque
 sessūrī dōnec cantor "vōs plaudite" dicat.

150

155

aulaeum, aulaei *n.* curtain (of a theater)
 cantor, cantōris *m.* singer (the person playing
 and singing the musical parts of a play)
 dēsiderō (1-tr.) long for, desire
 dēspērō (dē- + spērō) (1-tr.) despair (of)
 discrepō, discrepāre, discrepui or discrepāvi,
 — be out of harmony (with)
 egēō, egēre, egui, — be needy, lack, need
 (+ gen.)
 imus, -a, -um lowest, bottom (of), last, final
 mentior, mentūrī, mentitus sum lie, tell a lie

nitescō, nitescere, —, — begin to shine,
 become bright
 plaudō, plaudere, plausi, plausus clap the hands,
 applaud
 plausor, plausōris *m.* one who applauds
 remisceō, remiscere, —, remixtus *mix*
 sedeō, sedere, sedi, sessurus sit, be seated
 tractō (1 tr.) keep on dragging; deal with, discuss,
 treat
 ūsque (adv.) continuously

12. Propertius 1.1 8

The poet describes how he came to be in love with Cynthia.

Cynthia prima suis miserum mē cepit ocellis,
 contactum nullis ante cupidinibus.
 tum mihi cōstantis dēiēcit lūmina fastūs
 et caput impositis pressit Amor pedibus,
 dōnec mē docuit castās ōdisse puellās
 improbus et nullo vivere cōsiliō.
 ei mihi, iam tōtō furor hic nōn dēficit annō,
 cum tamen adversōs cōgor habere deōs.

5

adversus, -a, -um opposite, hostile, adverse
 caput, capitis *n.* head
 castus, -a, -um chaste
 cōgō (cō- + agō), cōgere, coēgi, coactus drive to-
 gether, force, compel
 cōstāns, cōstantis *firm, constant*
 contingō, contingere, contigi, contactus touch
 cupidō, cupidinis *f.* desire
 dēficiō (dē- + faciō) let down, fail; subside
 dēiciō (dē- + iaciō) throw down, cast down

doceō, docere docui, doctus teach
 ei (interj.) alas!
 fastus, fastūs *m.* pride, haughtiness, arrogance
 furor, furōris *m.* madness, passion
 impōnō (im- + pōnō) place or impose (on)
 improbus, -a, -um wicked, shameless; relentless
 ocellus, ocelli *m.* (little) eye
 pēs, pedis *m.* foot
 premō, premere, pressi, pressus press (hard);
 overpower

13. Propertius II.12

The poet ponders the artistic depiction of Love.

Quicumque ille fuit, puerum qui pinxit Amorem,

nōne putās mīrās hunc habuisse manūs?

is primum vidit sine sēnsū vivere amantes,

et levibus cūrīs magna perire bona.

īdem nōn frūstrā ventōsas addidit alas,

fēcit et* hūmānō corde volāre deum:

scīlicet alternā quoniam iactāmur in undā,

nostraque nōn ūllis permanet aura locīs.

et meritō hāmātīs manus est armāta sagittīs,

et pharetra ex umerō Cnōsia utrōque[†] iacet:

ante ferit quoniam tuti quam cernimus hostem,

nec quisquam ex illō vulnere sānus abit.

in mē tēla manent, manet et puerilis imāgō:

sed certē pennās perdidit ille suās;

evolat heu nostrō quoniam dē pectore nusquam,

assiduusque meō sanguine bella gerit.

*et in poetry is frequently placed in the position of -que.

[†]utrōque = *masc. sing. abl. of indef. adj., each (of two)*

addō (ad- + dō) add

āla, alae *f.* wing

alternus, -a, -um alternating

armō (1-tr.) equip (with arms), arm

assiduus, -a, -um continually present, busy; diligent, persistent

aura, aurae *f.* breeze

cernō, cernere, crēvī, cretus distinguish, perceive

Cnōsius, -a, -um of Cnossos, the ancient capital of Crete; Cretan

cor, cordis *n.* heart

ēvolō (1-intr.) fly out

feriō, ferire, —, — strike, hit

frūstrā (adv.) in vain

hāmātus, -a, -um hooked, barbed

hūmānus, -a, -um human

iaceō, iacere, iacuī, — he, rest, hang

iactō (1-tr.) throw, toss; harass, torment

imāgō, imāginis *f.* image, likeness

meritō (adv.) deservedly, with good reason

mīrus, -a, -um marvelous

nusquam (adv.) nowhere; on no occasion

penna, pennae *f.* wing

permaneō (per- + maneō) stay, remain; last long, endure

pharetra, pharetrae *f.* quiver

pingō, pingere, pinxi pictus paint, represent, depict

puerilis, puerile boyish, youthful

quicumque = *masc. sing. nom. of indef. pron., whoever*

quisquam = *masc./fem. sing. nom. of indef. pron., anyone*

sagitta, sagittae *f.* arrow

sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood

sānus, -a, -um healthy, sane

scīlicet (adv.) of course, no doubt, obviously

tūtus, -a, -um safe

umerus, umeri *m.* shoulder

unda, undae *f.* wave

ventōsus, -a, -um windy, full of wind; light rumble

volō (1-intr.) fly

quid tibi iucundumst siccis habitare medullis?

si pudor est, aliō* trāce tēla, puer!

intāctōs istō satius temptāre venēnō:

nōn ego, sed tenuis vapulat umbra mea.

quam si perdidideris, quis erit qui tālia cantet.

(haec mea Mūsa levis gloria magna tuast),

qui caput et digitōs et lūmina nigra puellae

et canat ut[†] soleant molliter ire pedēs?

*aliō, *here* (adv.) to another place, elsewhere

[†]ut, *here* (interrog. adv.) how

cantō (1-tr.) *sing* (of)

caput, capitis *n.* head

digitus, digitī *m.* finger

habitō (1-intr.) dwell, live; stay, remain

intāctus, -a -um untouched, unharmed; untried

iucundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable

medulla, medullae *f.* bone marrow; *in pl.* vitals, *marrows*

molliter (adv.) gently, softly, mildly

Mūsa, Mūsae *f.* Muse

niger, nigra, nigrum dark, black

pēs, pedis *m.* foot

pudor, pudōris *m.* shame, decency, modesty

satius more satisfying, better; satius = *neut. sing. nom.*

siccus, -a, -um dry

temptō (1-tr.) touch; try, test; attack, assail

tenuis, tenue thin, meager, slight poor, insignificant

trāciō (trāns- + iaciō) pierce; shoot

vapulo, vapulāre, vapulāvi, — be beaten, be flogged

venēnum, venēni *n.* poison

14. Propertius II 15 31–40

After a night of passion, the poet declares that he will love Cynthia come what may.

terra prius falsō partū dēlūdet arantis,
 et citius nigrōs Sōl agitābit equōs,
 flūminaque ad caput incipient revocāre liquōrēs,
 aridus et* siccō gurgite piscis erit,
 quam possim nostrōs aliō† trānsferre dolōrēs
 huius erō vivus, mortuus huius erō.
 quod‡ mihi si‡ interdum tāhs concēdere noctēs
 illa velit, vītae longus et annus erit.
 si dabit et multās, fiam immortalis in illis:
 nocte finā quivīs vel deus esse potest.

35

40

*et in poetry is frequently placed in the position of -que

†aliō, here (adv.) to another place, elsewhere

‡quod . . . si but if

agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion; drive

āridus, -a, -um dry; parched

arō (1-tr.) plough, till

caput, capitis *n.* head, source

citius (adv.) more quickly

concēdō (con- + cēdō) (tr.) concede, grant

dēlūdō, dēlūdere, dēlūsī, dēlūsus play false, mock, deceive

dolor, doloris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain

equus, equi *m.* horse

flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream

gurgis, gurgitis *m.* swirling water, eddy, whirlpool

immortalis, immortalē immortal

interdum (adv.) from time to time, occasionally

liquor, liquōris *m.* fluid, liquid, water

niger, nigra, nigrum dark, black

partus, partus *m.* birth, offspring; crop

piscis, piscis, -ium *m.* fish

quivīs = masc. sing. nom. of indef. pron., anyone

you wish, anyone at all

revocō (1-tr.) call back

siccus, -a, -um dry

Sōl, Sōlis *m.* Sun

trānsferō (trāns- + ferō), trānsferre, trānstulī, trānslātus carry across, transfer

vel (adv.) even

vivus, -a, -um living, alive

15. Ovid, *Metamorphoses* XIII.361-69

Odysseus boasts to Ajax, his rival for Achilles' armor, about the differences between them.

... tibi dextera bellō
 utilis, ingenium est quod eget moderamine nostrō,
 tū virēs sine mente geris, mihi cūra futūrī;
 tu pugnare potes, pugnandi tempora mecum
 ēligit Atridēs; tū tantum corpore prōdes,
 nōs animō; quantōque ratem quī temperat anteit⁴
 rēmigis officium, quantō dux milite maior,
 tantum ego tē superō. nec nōn* in corpore nostrō
 pectora[†] sunt potiora manu: vigor omnis in illis.

365

*nec nōn, *here*, likewise

[†]pectora, *here*, intellectual faculties

anteēō (ante- + eō), antea, antea or antea,

— go before, be better than, surpass

Atridēs, Atridae *m.* son of Atreus (either Agamemnon or Menelaus)

dexter, dextra, dextrum *right; as fem. subst*

(*sc. manus*) right hand; dextera = dextra

egeō, egēre, egui, — need, lack (+ abl.)

ēligō (ē- + legō), ēligere, ēlēgi, ēlēctus select, choose

moderāmen, moderāminis *n.* control, guidance

officium, officii *n.* obligation; duty, task

potior, potius more powerful; more precious

prōsum (prō- + sum), prōdesse, prōfui,

prōfutūrus be helpful be of use, be good (for),

prōdes 2nd sing. pres. act. indic.

ratis, ratis, -ium *f.* boat, ship

remex, rēmigis *m.* oarsman, rower

temperō (1-tr.) restrain, hold back; control

ūtilis, ūtile useful

vigor, vigōris *m.* liveliness, activity, vigor

4. The short vowels -e- and -i- of anteit are pronounced as the diphthong -ei-.

16. Ovid, *Tristia* III.7.45 -52

The poet in exile predicts his own fate.

ēn ego, cum patriā caream vōbisque* domōque,

45

raptaque sint adimī quae potuēre mihi,

ingeniō tamen ipse meō comitorque fruorque

Caesar in! hoc potuit iūris habēre nihil,

quolibet hanc saevō vītam mihi finiat ēnse,

mē tamen extinctō fāma superstes erit,

50

dumque suis victrix septem dē montibus orbem

prospiciet domitum Martia Rōma, legar.

*vōbīs refers to all Ovid's friends and acquaintances in Rome.

¹in, here, over

adimō, adimere, adēmī, adēptus remove, take away

comitō (1-tr.) accompany, attend

domō, domāre, domui, domitus subdue, tame

ēn (interj.) behold! look!

ēnsis, ēnsis m. sword

ex(s)tinguō, ex(s)tinguere, ex(s)finxi,

ex(s)inctus extinguish; annihilate, kill

finiō, finire, finivī or finii, finitus define; end, finish

fruor, frui, fructus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)

Martius, -a, -am of or belonging to Mars, Martial

orbis, orbis, -ium m. ring, circle; world

prōspiciō, prōspicere, prōspexi, prōspectus

survey, watch over, look out over

quolibet ~ *max. sing. nom. of indef. pron.*,

anyone (it pleases)

rapiō, rapere, rapui, raptus tear away, carry off

superstes, superstis remaining alive, surviving

victrix, victricis f. conqueror, victor

17. Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita* 1.56.9

The last princes of the Tarquins went to Delphi, the seat of Apollo's oracle, in order to ask a question on behalf of their father. They took with them a lowly Roman, M. Brutus. The historian describes a surprising turn of events.

is* tum ab Tarquinii ductus Delphos, ludibrium verius quam comes, aureum baculum inclusum corneo cavato ad id baculo tulisse donum Apollini dicitur, per ambages effigiem ingenii sui. quod postquam ventum est, perfectis patris mandatis cupidus incescit animos iuvenum sciscitandi ad quem eorum regnum Romanum esset venturum. ex infimo specu vocem redditam ferunt: imperium summum Romae habebit qui vestrum primus, o iuvenes, osculum matri tulerit. Tarquinii, ut Sextus qui Romae relictus fuerat,† ignarus responsi‡ expersque imperii esset, rem summam ope taceri iubent;§ ipsi inter se uter prior, cum Romam redisset, matri osculum daret, sorti permittunt.¶ Brutus alio¶ ratus spectare Pythicam vocem, velut si prolapsus cecidisset, terram osculo contigit, scilicet quod ea communis mater omnium mortalium esset.

*is refers to M. Brutus

†relictus fuerat = relictus erat

‡responsum, responsi n. answer response

§iubent, permittunt historical use of present tense; translate as perfect

¶alio, here (adv.), elsewhere, to another place, in another direction

ambages, ambagum f. pl. roundabout path

aureus, -a, -um golden made of gold

baculum, baculi n. staff, walking stick

Brutus, Bruti m. (M.) Brutus, legendary hero of early Rome

cavo (1-tr.) hollow out, make hollow

comes comitis m. or f. companion, comrade

communis, commune common, shared; held in common

contingō, contingere, contigi, contactus touch

corneus, -a, -um made of cornel wood

cupidō, cupidinis f. desire

Delphi Delphorum m. pl. Delphi

effigies, effigiei f. representation, statue; symbol

expers, expertis having no part (of)

ignarus, -a, -um not knowing, unaware

incēdō (in- + cēdō) (tr.) go in, enter; arise, come over

inclūdō, inclūdere, inclūsi, inclūsus enclose, seal

infimus -a, -um lowest, deepest, lowest part (of) depths (of)

iuvenis, iuvenis m. young man

ludibrium, ludibrii n. plaything, toy;

laughingstock

mandatum, mandati n. order, instruction

mortalis, mortale mortal

ops, opis f. power, ability, might, effort

osculum, osculi n. kiss

permittō (per- + mittō) entrust, commit

prolabor, prolabi, prolapsus sum slide or slip forward, slip down

Pythicus, -a, -um of Pytho (the oracle at Delphi),

Pythian, Delphic

reor, reri, ratus sum believe, think, imagine

reddō (red- + dō) give back, return

regnum, regni n. kingdom, realm; kingship, rule

scilicet (adv.) of course, no doubt, obviously

sciscitor (1-tr.) try to get to know by asking,

inquire

Sextus, Sexti m. Sextus (Tarquinius), one of the sons of Tarquinius Superbus, last king of

Rome

sors, sortis, -ium f. lot, portion, destiny

spectō (1-tr.) look at, observe; face, point

specus, specus m. cave, grotto, abyss, hollow

taceō, tacere, taci, taciturus be silent, keep silent; leave unmentioned

Tarquinii, Tarquinii m. Tarquinius, any male

member of the Tarquin family

velut (conj.) even as, just as

18. Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita* XXII.49.5

In 216 B.C.E. at Cannae in southern Italy, the Romans suffered one of their greatest military defeats in a battle against Hannibal and his Carthaginian army. In a single day most of the fifty thousand Romans who fought were killed. In the following passage Livy describes a meeting between L. Aemilius Paulus, one of the consuls in charge, and Cn. Lentulus, a military tribune. The final vestiges of the Roman army are being routed.

pepulērunt* tamen iam paucōs superantēs† et labōre ac vulneribus fessōs. inde dissipātī omnēs sunt, equōsque ad fugam qui poterant repetēbant. Cn. Lentulus tribunus militum cum praetervehēns equō sedentem in saxō, cruōre opplētum, cōnsulem vīdisset, "L. Aemili," inquit, "quem ūnum insontem culpae clādis hodiernae deī respicere dēbent, cape hunc equum, dum et tibi vīrium aliquid superest et comes ego tē tollere possum ac prōtegere. nē fūnestam hanc pugnam morte cōsulis fēceris; etiam sine hōc lacrimārum satis lūctūsque est."

**pepulērunt*, subject is the Carthaginians
 †*superō*, *here*, survive; *superantēs*, *sc. Rōmānōs*
L. Aemilius, *L. Aemili* *m.* L. Aemilius (Paulus)
 (consul 216 B.C.E.), one of the Roman leaders
 at the disastrous battle of Cannae
aliquid = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. pron.*,
 something
clādes, *clādis*, *-ium f.* slaughter, destruction
comes, *comitis m.* or *f.* companion, comrade
cruor, *cruōris m.* (fresh) blood, gore
culpa, *culpa* *f.* guilt, blame
dissipō (1-tr.) disperse, scatter
equus, *equi m.* horse
fessus, *-a*, *-um* weary, exhausted, worn out
fūnestus, *-a*, *-um* lamentable, grievous, polluted
hodiernus, *-a*, *-um* of this day, today's
inde (*adv.*) from there; thereupon, then
inquam (defective verb) say; *inquit* = 3rd sing.
pres. act. indic.
insons, *insonis* innocent, not guilty
lacrima, *lacrimae f.* tear

Cn. Lentulus, Cn. *Lentul* *m.* Cn. (Cornelius)
 Lentulus
lūctus, *lūctūs m.* mourning
opplēō, *opplēre* *opplēvī*, *opplētus* fill completely,
 fill up; cover completely
praetervehō, *praetervehere*, *praetervexī*,
praetervectus travel past, pass by
prōtegō, *prōtegere*, *prōtēxī*, *prōtēctus* cover,
 protect
pugna, *pugnae f.* fight, battle
repetō (*re-* + *petō*) seek again, get back
respicō, *respicere*, *respexi*, *respectus* look back
 at; show concern for; regard
saxum, *saxi n.* rock, stone
sedeō, *sedēre*, *sēdī*, *sessūrus* sit, be seated
supersum (*super-* + *sum*) superesse, superful.
 — remain, be left, survive
tollō, *tollere*, *sustuli* *sublātus* lift, raise; take
 away, carry off
tribūnus, *tribūn* *m.* tribune, military
 commander

19. Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita* XXXVIII 23.1

In 278 B.C. E. many Gauls had migrated to Asia Minor. Livy reports the terror of the Gauls after the Romans break into their camp during the Macedonian wars in 189.

patentibus iam portis, priusquam irrumperent victōrēs, fuga ē castris Gallōrum in omnēs partēs facta est. ruunt caeci per viās, per invia; nūlla praecipitia saxa, nūllae rūpēs obstant; nihil praeter hostem metuunt; itaque plerique praecipitēs per vāstam altitudinem prōlāpsi aut dēbilitātū exanimantur. cōsul captis castris direptione praedāque abstinet militem; . . .

abstineō (abs- + teneō), abstinēre, abstinuī,

abstentus hold back, restrain

altitūdō, altitudinis f. height

dēbilitō (1-tr.) weaken

direptiō, direptionis f. plundering, pillaging

exanimō (1-tr.) deprive of life, kill

Gallī, Gallōrum m. pl. (the) Gauls

invius, -a, -um impassable; invia, sc. loca

irumpō, irumpere, irrūpī, irruptus break in, burst in

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly

metuō, metuerē, metuī, — fear, dread

obstō (ob- + stō), obstāre, obstiti, obstātum stand in the way

pateō, patēre, patuī, — lie open

plērique, plēraque, plēraque very many, most

porta, portae f. gate

praeceps, praecipitis precipitous steep; rushing forward, headlong

praeda, praedae f. booty, plunder

prōlābor, prōlabi, prolāpsus sum fall forward

ruō, ruere, ruī, rutūrus rush

rūpēs, rūpis, -ium f. cliff, crag

saxum, saxi n. rock, stone

vāstus, -a, -um immense, vast

victor, victoris m. conqueror, victor

20. Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Mōrālēs* CVII.9

After stating that the law of nature is a continuous alternation of good and bad things, the philosopher suggests the proper human response.

ad hanc lēgem animus noster aptandus est; hanc sequātur. huic pāreat. et quaecumque fiunt, dēbuisse fieri putet nec velit obiurgāre nātūram. optimum est pati quod ēmendāre nōn possis, et deum, quō auctōre cuncta prōveniunt, sine murmurātiōne comitārī; malus miles est quī imperātōrem gemēns sequitur.

aptō (1-tr.) fit, adapt, attune

auctor, auctōris m. source, author

comitor (1-tr.) accompany, attend

cūctus, -a, -um all

ēmendō (1-tr.) correct; remedy, cure

gemō, gemere, gemuī, gemitum groan, moan

murmurātiō, murmurationis f. grumbling,

muttering

obiurgō (1-tr.) find fault with, reprimand

prōveniō (prō- + veniō) come forth, emerge, arise

quaecumque = neut. pl. nom. of indef. pron., whatever things

Continuous Readings

1. Cicero, *In Catilinam* I 13-14

quid est enim, Catilīna, quod tē iam in hāc urbe dēlectāre possit? in quā nēmō est, extrā istam coniuratiōnem perditōrum hominum, quī tē nōn metuāt, nēmō quī nōn ōderit. quae nota domesticae turpitūdinis nōn inusta vitāe tuae est? quod privātārum rerū dedecus nōn haeret in fāmā? quae libidō ab oculis, quod facinus ā manibus umquam tuīs, quod flāgitium ā tōtō corpore āfuit? cui tū adulescentulō quem corruptelārum inlecebris inretissēs nōn aut ad audaciam ferrum aut ad libidinem facem praetulisti? quid vērō? nūper cum morte superiōris uxōris novīs nuptiīs locum vacuēfēcissēs, nōne etiam aliō incredibili scelere hoc scelus cumulāvistī? quod ego praetermittō et facile patior silēri nē in hāc civitatē tantī facinoris immanitas aut existisse aut nōn vindicatā esse videātur. praetermittō ruīnās fortunārum tuārum quās omnis proximis Idibus tibi impendēre sentiēs: ad illa veniō quae nōn ad privātā ignominiam vitiorū tuōrum, nōn ad domesticā tuā difficultātem ac turpitūdinem, sed ad summā rem pūblicā atque ad omnium nostrum vitā salū temque pertinent.

^apraefērō, *here*, means both offer (*ferrum*) and carry in front (*facem*)
 absūm (ab + sum), abesse, āfui, āfutūrus be absent, be distant
 adulescentulus, adulescentulī *m.* (little) young man
 coniuratiō, coniuratiōnis *f.* conspiracy
 corruptela, corruptelae *f.* corruption, seduction
 cumulō (1-tr.) pile up, heap
 dedecus dēdecoris *n.* shame, disgrace
 dēlectō (1-tr.) delight, please, charm
 difficultās, difficultātis *f.* difficulty
 domesticus, -a, -um personal domestic
 existō, existere, existī, exist, arise, appear
 extrā (prep. + acc.) outside
 fax, facis *f.* firebrand, torch
 facinus, facinoris *n.* deed; crime
 flāgitium flāgitī *n.* shame, outrage, disgrace
 haereō, haerēre, haesi, haesurus cling, stick
 Idūs, Iduum *m. pl.* (the) Ides, fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October; the thirteenth of every other month
 ignominia, ignominiae *f.* dishonor, disgrace
 illecebra illecebrae *f.* attraction, allurement
 immānitās, immānitātis *f.* enormity
 impendē, impendēre, —, — hang over, threaten (+ dat.)

incredibilis, incredibile unbelievable
 inūrō, inūrere, inussī, inustus burn upon, brand upon (+ dat.)
 irrētiō irrētre, irrētīvi or irrētīl, irrētītus trap
 libidō, libidinis *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust
 metuo, metuere, metui, — fear, dread
 nota, notae *f.* mark, sign
 nūper (adv.) recently
 nuptiae, nuptiarum *f. pl.* marriage, wedding
 pertineō (per- + teneō), pertinēre, pertinui, pertentus be aimed at, pertain
 praetermittō (praeter- + mittō) pass over, omit
 privātus, -a, -um private
 proximus, -a, -um nearest; most recent, last
 ruīna, ruīnae *f.* downfall, ruin, destruction
 silēō, silēre, silui, — be silent; pass over in silence, leave unmentioned
 superior, superius upper, higher; previous
 turpitūdō, turpitūdinis *f.* ugliness; shameful, baseness
 uxor, uxōris *f.* wife
 vacuēfaciō, vacuēfacere, vacuēfēcī, vacuēfactus make empty
 vindicō (1-tr.) avenge, punish
 vitium, vitī *n.* vice, fault

2. Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae* 3

pulchrum est bene facere rei publicae, etiam bene dicere haud absurdum est; vel pāce vel bellō clārum fieri licet; et quī fecēre et quī facta aliorum scripsēre, multī laudantur. ac mihi quidem, tametsi haudquāquam pār glōria sequitur scriptōrem et auctōrem rerum, tamen in primis* arduom videtur rēs gestās scribere: primum quod facta dictis exaequanda sunt; dein quia plērique quae dēlicta reprehenderis malevolentia et invidia dicta putant ubi dē magna virtute atque glōriā bonōrum memorēs, quae sibi quisque† facilia factū‡ putat, aequō animō accipit, suprā ea veluti ficta prō falsis dūcit. Sed ego adulēscētulus initio, sicuti plēnque, studio ad rem publicam lātus sum, ibique mihi multa advorsa fuere. nam prō pudōre, prō abstinentiā, prō virtute audācia, largitiō, avāritia vigebant. quae tametsi animus aspernābatur insolēns malārum artium, tamen inter tanta vitia inbēcilla aetās ambitōne corrupta tenēbatur; ac mē, quom ab relicuōrum malis mōribus dissentīrem, nihilō minus⁴ honoris cupido eadem quae cēterōs fāma atque invidia vexabat.

*in primis, especially, above all; first

†quisque = masc/fem. sing. nom. of indef. pron., each person

‡factū neut. sing. abl. of verbal noun of facio, in (respect to) the doing, to do

⁴nihilō minus or nihilominus (adv.) no less, just as much

abstinentia, abstinentiae f. abstinence; self-restraint, integrity

absurdus, -a, -um discordant; inappropriate

adulēscētulus, adulēscētuli m. (little) young

■■■■

adversus, -a, -um opposite, hostile, adverse

aetās, aetātis f. age, time of life

ambitiō, ambitōnis f. flattery, adulation; desire for power ambition

arduus, -a, -um steep; difficult, arduous

aspernor (1-tr.) disdain, reject, despise

auctor, auctōris m. source, author, producer

avāritia, avāritiae f. greed, avarice

corruptō, corrumpere, corrupti, corruptus corrupt, bribe

cupido, cupidinis f. desire

dein (adv.) thereupon, then, next

dēlictum, dēlicti n. offense, crime

dissentio (dis- + sentio) differ, disagree

exaequo (1-tr.) make equal, equal

figo, fingere, finxi, fictus form, fashion, make; imagine

haud (adv.) not at all, by no means

haudquāquam (adv.) by no means whatever, not at all

ibi (adv.) there; then

inbēcillus, -a, -um weak, feeble

initium, initii n. beginning

insolēns, insolentis unaccustomed, unfamiliar

largitiō, largitiōnis f. generosity, largess; bribery licet, licere, licuit or licitum est (impersonal verb)

it is permitted

malevolentia, malevolentiae f. ill will, dislike, malevolence

memorō (1-tr.) mention, recount, tell; memorēs, Potential subjunctive with a generalized second person

pār, paris equal

plērique, plēraque, plēraque very many, most

pudor, pudōris m. shame, decency, modesty

relicuus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of)

reprehendō, reprehendere, reprehendi,

reprehēsus seize catch; blame, censure,

reprehenderis. Potential subjunctive with a generalized second person

scriptor, scriptōris m. writer

sicuti (conj.) just as

suprā (prep. + acc.) over, above, beyond

tametsi (conj.) notwithstanding that, although

vel (conj.) or; vel . . . vel . . . either . . . or . . .

veluti (conj.) even as, just as

vexo (1-tr.) trouble, disturb, harass

vigeō, vigere, vigeō, — be vigorous, thrive, flourish

vitium, vitii n. fault vice

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* II 518–32

ipsum autem sumptis Priamum iuvenālibus armīs
 ut vidit, "quae mēns tam dīra, miserrime coniunx,
 impulit his cingī tēlis? aut quō ruis?" inquit.
 "nōn tāli auxiliō nec dēfēnsōribus istis
 tempus eget; non, si ipse meus nunc adforet Hectōr.
 hūc tandem concēde; haec āra tuēbitur omnis,
 aut moriēre simul." sic ōre effāta recepit
 ad sēsē et sacrā longaeuum in sēde locāvit.
 ecce autem ēlapsus Pyrrhī dē caede Politēs,
 unus nātōrum Priamī, per tēla, per hostīs
 porticibus longīs fugit et vacua ātria lūstrat
 saucius. illum ardēns infestō vulnere Pyrrhus
 insequitur, iam iamque* manū tenet et premit hastā.
 ut tandem ante oculōs ēvāsīt et ōra parentum,
 concidit ac multo vītā cum sanguine fūdīt.

520

525

530

*iam iamque now all but .

adforet = adesset

adsum (ad- + sum), adesse, adfui, adfuturus
be present

ardeō, ardēre, arsi arsurus burn, be on fire

ātrium, ātrii n. atrium, the main room of a
Roman house; in sing. or pl., house, palace

caedēs, caedis, -ium f. slaughter

cingō, cingere, cinxī, cinctus gird, equip; cingī,
to gird oneselfconcēdō (con- + cēdō) concede, grant; withdraw
concidō (con- + cadō), concidere, concidi,

fall down (in dying), fall dead

coniūnx, coniugis m. or f. spouse; husband; wife

dēfēnsor, dēfēnsōris m. defender, protector

dīrus, -a, -um dire, dreadful, frightful

*effor (1-tr.) utter, say

egeō, egere, egui, — lack, want, need (+ abl.)

ēlabōr, elabi, elāpus sum shp out, steal away,
escape

ēvādō, ēvādere, ēvāsī, ēvāsūrus go out; emerge

fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, pour forth,
shed

hastā, hastae f. spear

Hectōr, Hectoris m. Hector, son of Priam

hūc (adv.) to this place, hither

impello (in + pellō), impellere, impulī, impulsus
drive, impel

infestus, -a, -um hostile

inquam (defective verb) say; inquit = 3rd sing.
pres. act. indic.insequor (in- + sequor) follow closely, pursue,
chase

iuvenālis, iuvenāle youthful

locō (1-tr.) place

longaevus, -a, -um of great age, ancient

lūstrō (1-tr.) roam through, traverse

ōs, ōris n. in sing. or pl., mouth; face

parēs, parentis, -ium m. or f. parent; parentum
= parentium

Politēs, Politis m. Polites, a son of Priam

porticus, porticus m. covered walk, colonnade

premo, premere, pressi, pressus press hard,
overpower

Pyrrhus, Pyrrhi m. Pyrrhus, son of Achilles

recipiō (re- + capiō) take back, receive

ruō, ruere, ruī rutūrus rush

sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred

sanguis, sanguinis m. blood

saucius, -a, -um wounded

sēdēs, sēdis, -ium f. seat

simul (adv.) at the same time

sumo, sumere, sumpsī, sumptus take up, seize;
take on, assume

tueor, tuērī, tuitus or tūtus sum look at, protect

vacuus, -a, -um empty

4 Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* 1.490–503

Phoebus amat vīsaeque cupit cōnūbia Daphnēs,
 quodque cupit, spērat, suaque illum dīrācula fallunt,
 utque levēs stipulae demptis adolentur aristas,
 ut facibus saepēs ardent, quās forte viātor
 vel nimis admōvit* vel iam sub luce† reliquit,*
 sic deus in flammās abūt, sic pectore tōtō
 ūritur et sterilem spērandō nūtrit amōrem.
 spectat inornātōs collō pendēre capillōs
 et “quid sī cōmantur?” ait. videt igne micantēs
 sideribus similēs oculōs, videt oscula, quae nōn
 est vīdisse satis; laudat digitōsque manūsque
 brachiaque et nūdōs mediā plūs parte lacertōs;
 sī qua‡ latent, meliōra putat fugit ōcior aurā
 illa levī neque ad§ haec revocantis verba resistit:

*admōvit, reliquit translate as present

†sub luce near daylight, near dawn

‡qua = neut. nom. pl. of indef. pron., any things
 laid, here, at

admoveō (ad- + moveō) move near

adoleō, adolēre, , adultus burn (ritually);
 destroy by fire, burnaiō (defective verb) say; ait = 3rd sing. pres. act.
 indic.

ardeō, ardēre, arsi, arsurus burn, be on fire; rage

arista, aristae f. beard of barley or corn; ear or
 spike (of a plant)

aura, aurae f. breeze

bracchium, brachii n. (lower) arm

capillus, capilli m. in sing. or pl. hair

collum, colli n. neck

cōmō, cōmere, cōmpsi, cōmptus make beautiful,
 adorn; do (hair)cōnūbium, cōnūbiū n. in sing. or pl. marriage,
 marriage ritesDaphnē, Daphnēs f. Daphne. Daphnēs = gen.
 sing.dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsi, dēemptus remove, take
 way; cut off

digitus, digitū m. finger

fallō, fallere, fefelli, falsus deceive, trick, fail

fax, facis f. firebrand, torch

flamma, flammæ f. flame

inornātus, -a, -um unadorned, plain

lacertus, lacertū m. (upper) arm

lateō, latēre, latui, hide, lie hidden,
 be concealed

micō (1-tr.) dart, flicker, flash

nimis (adv.) excessively, too

nudus -a, -um naked, nude

nūtriō, nūtrire, nūtrivi or nūtrī, nūtritus feed,
 nourish; encourage, foster

ōcior, ōcius more swift

dīrāculum, dīrāculi n. divine utterance, oracle

ōsculum, ōsculi n. kiss; in pl., lips

pendeō, pendēre, pependi, — hang,
 be suspended

Phoebus, Phoebi m. Phoebus (Apollo)

resistō, resistere, restiti, — halt, stop

revocō (re- + voco) (1-tr.) summon back, call back

saepēs, saepis f. (planted) hedge

sidus, sideris n. star

spectō (1-tr.) look at, observe

sterilis, sterile producing nothing; futile

stipula, stipulae f. stalk (of a plant)

ūrō, ūrere, ussi, ustus burn, scorch, inflame,

vel (conj.) or, vel . . . vel . . . either . . . or . . .

viātor, viātōris m. traveler

490^f

500

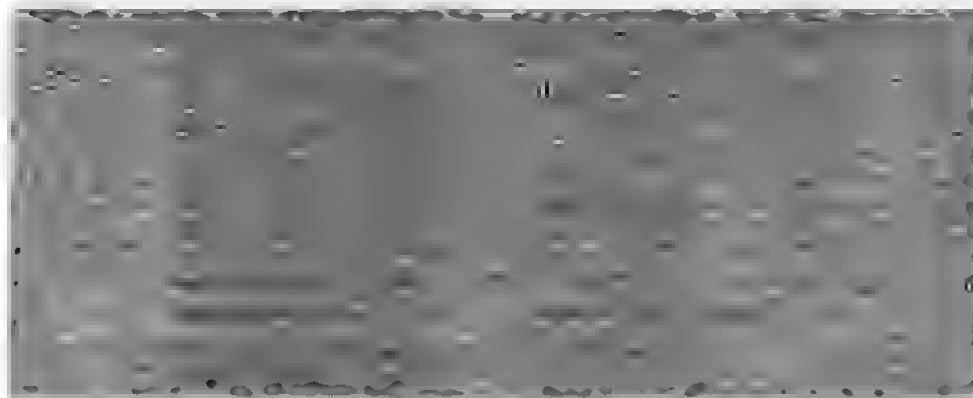
§130. Adverbs of Place

Vocabulary

<i>eō</i> (adv.) to that place, thither	<i>illī</i> (adv.) there, in that place
<i>eōdem</i> (adv.) to the same place	<i>illūc</i> (adv.) from there, thence
<i>hic</i> (adv.) here, in this place; at this time	<i>hinc . . . illinc . . .</i> on this side . . .
<i>hinc</i> (adv.) from here, hence; henceforth	on that side . . .
<i>hinc . . . hinc . . .</i> on this side . . .	<i>illūc</i> (adv.) to there, thither
on that side . . .	<i>inde</i> (adv.) from that place, from there,
<i>hūc</i> (adv.) to here, hither	thence; from that time, thereupon
<i>ibi</i> (adv.) in that place, there; then,	
thereupon	

MEMORIZE THESE VOCABULARY WORDS. Their meanings will not be given when they appear in the remainder of this book.

Certain common adverbs of place appear in these closely related forms:



The adverbs in the column on the left are demonstrative because they point out a place *where*, *from where*, or *to where*, often in the answer to a question. The adverbs in the column on the right may be used either to ask questions (interrogative) or to correlate with corresponding demonstratives (relative) (cf. §124). For example:



OBSERVATION

An idiomatic English translation of a sentence containing both a demonstrative and relative adverb of place often omits the translation of the demonstrative adverb, as in the second translation above

Short Readings

- 1 A freed prisoner of war agrees to help his present and former masters.

prō rotā mē ūtī licet:

vel egō hūc vel illūc vortor quō imperābitis. (PLAUTUS, *CAPTIVŪ* 369–70)

licet, licēre, licuit or **licitum** est it is permitted

rota, rotae *f.* wheel

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus turn

2. After revealing that Catiline's conspiracy is known to all, Cicero bids him depart.

quae* cum ita sint, Catilīna, perge quō coepistī: egredere aliquando ex urbe;
patent portae: proficiscere. (CICERO, *IN CATILINAM* I 10)

***quae**, *connective relative*, and , these things

aliquandō (*adv.*) at long last

pateō, patēre, patui, — he open

pergō, pergere, perrexī, perrectus proceed

porta, portae *f.* gate

3. The poet addresses a collection of bad poetry that he is about to discard.

vōs hinc intereā valēte abite

illūc, unde malum pedem attulistis. (CATULLUS XIV.21–22)

afferō (*ad-* + *ferō*), **afferre, attuli, allātus** bring, convey

intereā (*adv.*) meanwhile

pēs, pedis *m.* foot

- 4 After a detour to tend to ships damaged in a storm, Caesar resumes his pursuit of the Britons.

ipse eōdem unde redierat proficiscitur. (CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALLICO* V.11)

CHAPTER XIV

Vocabulary

lūna, lūnae *f.* moon

- **aetās, aetātis** *f.* age; lifetime; time
- **agmen, agminis** *n.* line (of march), column; army; multitude, throng
- auctōritās, auctōritātis** *f.* authority; influence
- nōmen, nōminis** *n.* name
- ōs, ōris** *n.* *in sing. or pl.* mouth; face
- sōl, sōlis** *m.* sun
- **aliquis, aliquid** (*indef. pron.*) someone, something, anyone, anything
- **aliqui, aliqua, aliquod** (*indef. adj.*) some, any
- **quis, quid** (*indef. pron.*) someone, something; anyone, anything
- **qui, qua, quod** (*indef. adj.*) some, any
- **quisquam, quicquam** (*indef. pron.*) someone, something; anyone, anything
- **quisque, quidque (quicque)** (*indef. pron.*) each or every man or woman, each or every thing
- **quique quaeque, quodque** (*indef. adj.*) each, every

spectō (1-tr.) look at, observe

- **accidō, accidere, accidi, —** happen
- **efficiō, efficere, effici, effectus** make; bring about
- metuō, metuere, metui, —** fear, dread
- **occidō, occidere, occidi, occāsūrus** fall, set; die
- **premō, premere, pressi, pressus** press (hard); overpower; check

➤ **opprimō, opprimere, oppressi, oppressus** press on; close; overwhelm, oppress

➤ **orior, oriri, ortus sum** rise, arise

➤ **absum, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus** be absent, be distant

➤ **adsum, adesse, adfui, adfutūrus** be present, be near

➤ **cōferō, cōferre, contuli, collātus** bring together, collect; compare; direct; confer (on)

➤ **licet, licēre, licuit** or **licitum est** it is permitted (§135)

➤ **oportet, oportēre, oportuit** it is proper, it is right (§135)

➤ **cūctus, -a, -um** all

➤ **reliquus, -a, -um** remaining, rest (of)

absēns, absentis absent

➤ **vetus, veteris** old

➤ **necesse** (*indecl. adj.*) necessary (§135)

adeō (*adv.*) to such or so great an extent, (so) very

haud (*adv.*) not at all, by no means

➤ **quodsi** (*conj.*) but if

➤ **vel** (*conj.*) or;

(*adv.*) even

vel . . . vel . . . either . . . or . . .

vix (*adv.*) scarcely, hardly

Vocabulary Notes

aetis, aetatis *f.* may mean "age" in the sense of the number of years one has lived or in the sense of the "age" or "period" in which one lives. It may also refer to: 1. the "lifetime" of a human being; 2. a particular "time of life" (old age, youth); or 3. "time."

agmen, agminis *n.* is a noun formed by the addition of the suffix *-men* to a stem of the verb *agō*, and its most general meaning is "a thing being driven." *Agmen* may be used of any "mass" of things (water, clouds, etc.) or of a "throng" or "body" of people moving or acting together. It may also carry a more specifically military sense, "(battle) line" or "column" of troops, both on the march and drawn up for battle.

aliquis, aliquid is an indefinite pronoun formed by the addition of the indefinite prefix *ali-* to *quis, quid*. Its declension is identical with that of *quis, quid*. Its corresponding adjective is *aliqui, aliqua, aliquod*, whose declension is identical with that of *qui, quae, quod* except for the feminine singular nominative (*aliqua*). MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR FORM AS PART OF THE VOCABULARY ENTRY.

Aliquis in the old: *Id est quoniam in the future (indri agem)*
Dānā aliqū dōtrabēti *You will be presented with something (quid-ā ad.)*

The use of the indefinite pronoun *quis, quid* is limited to subordinate clauses in which this pronoun follows such conjunctions as *si, nisi, num, ne, ut, and cum*. Its corresponding adjective is *qui, quae, quod*, whose declension is identical with that of *qui, quae, quod* except for the feminine singular nominative (*quae*) and the neuter plural nominative or accusative (*qua* or, less commonly, *quae*). MEMORIZE THESE IRREGULAR FORMS.

Quisquam, quicquam is an indefinite pronoun formed by the addition of the indefinite suffix *-quam* to *quis, quid*. Its declension is identical with that of *quis, quid* except for the assimilated neuter singular nominative or accusative (*quicquam*). The unassimilated form *quidquam* appears rarely. The corresponding indefinite adjective for *quisquam, quicquam* is supplied by *aliquis, -a, -um*.

quisquam, quicquam is used primarily in sentences containing or implying negation.

quisquam, quicquam is used primarily in sentences containing or implying negation.

In the second sentence the use of *quisquam* implies that to one "trust" Caroline.

quisque, quidque (quicque) is an indefinite pronoun formed by the addition of the indefinite suffix *-que* to *quis, quid*. Its declension is identical with that of *quis, quid* except for the alternate assimilated neuter singular nominative or accusative, *quicque*. Its corresponding adjective is *quisque, quaque, quodque*, whose declension is identical with *qui, quae, quod*.

quisque is often used with and placed immediately after the third-person reflexive pronoun *se, sui* or the reflexive-possessive adjective *suus, -a, -um*.

quisque is often used with and placed immediately after the third-person reflexive pronoun *se, sui* or the reflexive-possessive adjective *suus, -a, -um*.

When *quisque* appears in such sentences, the reflexive pronoun or reflexive-possessive adjective refers to the indefinite pronoun.

When *quidque* appears in the singular or plural with a superlative adjective, the resulting phrase may be translated into English with the plural and the English word "all."

quidque appears in the singular or plural with a superlative adjective, the resulting phrase may be translated into English with the plural and the English word "all."

accidō, accidere, accidit, — is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *ad-* to *cadō* and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. (For the prefix *ad-* see Appendix P.) *Accidō* is often used impersonally and may be accompanied by a Dative of Reference. For its use with Substantive *Ut* clauses see §133.

efficiō, efficere, effici, effectus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *ex-* to *faciō*. (For the prefix *ex-* see Appendix P.) For its use with Substantive *Ut* clauses see §133.

occidō, occidere, occidit, occiditrus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *ob-* to *cadō*, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. (For the prefix *ob-* see Appendix P.) While *occidō* may be used of any person or thing that falls, it is commonly used to mean "fall (into grief)," "be ruined," "die" (when the subject is a person), or "set" or "sink" (when the subject is a heavenly body). The present active participle of *occidō—occidēns, occidentis, "setting"*—may be used as a masculine substantive to refer to the "west" as a direction or as a part of the known world.

premō, premere, pressi, pressus is used in a wide variety of contexts and may be translated by a number of English equivalents. **Premō** may mean "press" in the sense of "exert pressure on" (inanimate objects, parts of the body). It may mean "press (hard)" in the sense of "propel," "drive," or "attack" (spears, people). It may also mean "overpower, overwhelm" (enemies, ships) or "overshadow," "cover" (often used of the sun or moon covered over by clouds or shadows). Finally, it may mean "check," "suppress," or "stop" (bodies of water, actions, voices).

opprimō, opprimere, oppressi, oppressus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ob-** to **premō**, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. (For the prefix **ob-** see Appendix P.) Its meanings and uses are similar to those of the simple verb **premō**. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF **PREMŌ** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF **OPPRIMŌ**. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **PREMŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

orior, oriri orsus sum is a fourth-conjugation, intransitive deponent verb. It may be used of heavenly bodies and mean "rise," or it may mean more generally "arise" or "come into being." In the present indicative it is usually conjugated as a third-conjugation i-stem verb (e.g., *oritur, not oritur*). **Orior** has an irregular future active participle *oriturus, -a, -um* (cf. *moriturus, -a, -um*). MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR FORM. The present active participle of **orior**—**oriens, orientis**, "rising" may be used as a masculine substantive to refer to the "east" as a direction or as a part of the known world. COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM **ORIOR** DO NOT EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING.

absūm, abesse, affui, affuturus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ab-** to **sum**. (For the prefix **ab-** see Appendix P.)

adsum, adesse, adfui, adfuturus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ad-** to **sum**. (For the prefix **ad-** see Appendix P.) **Adsum** often appears with a Dative with a Compound Verb. In legal contexts **adsum** may mean "be present as an advocate (for)." When the subject is a divinity, it may mean "be favorable (to) "

cōnferō, cōnferre, contuli, collātus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **con-** to **ferō**. (For the prefix **con-** see Appendix P.) The idiom *sē cōnferre* means "betake oneself " "go "

For the third person singular forms that appear in the principal parts of impersonal verbs such as *licet, licere, licuit* or *licitum est* and *oportet, oportere, oportuit* see §135. Many impersonal verbs have alternate third principal parts formed as impersonal passives (see §59).

The verb **licet** indicates what is legal or permitted. The verb **oportet** indicates what is proper or necessary in accordance with one's duty. *necesse est* means "it is necessary" in the sense of "it is compulsory."

cōnctus, -a, -um is a synonym of **omnis, omne**, but contains more of an idea of "all (joined) together." **Cōnctus, -a, -um** is more commonly found in the plural.

The adjective **reliquus, -a, -um** is related to the verb **relinquō**. It often refers to the remaining portion of things or people left over after certain things or people have been mentioned. It may often be translated "rest of "

Regina reliquam vitam bene agit. The queen will conduct the rest of (her) life well.

vetus, veteris means "old" as opposed to "young," and "old" or "experienced" as opposed to "new." Less commonly, **vetus** is synonymous with **antiquus, -a, -um** and means "old" in the sense of "of an earlier or ancient time." The ablative singular form is usually *vetere*. **Vetus** has an irregular superlative form **veterimus, -a, -um**. MEMORIZE THESE IRREGULAR FORMS. The comparative forms of **vetus** are extremely rare.

The conjunction **quodsi** (sometimes written as two words, **quod si**) is formed from the Adverbial Accusative of the relative pronoun **quod** (to the extent of which, as to which) and the conjunction **si**. It nearly always has adversative force and is best translated "but if."

The conjunction **vel** is used to mark an indifferent choice and thus should be distinguished from **aut**, which indicates mutually exclusive propositions.

Vel telo vel ferro pugnabo. I shall fight either with a spear or with a sword.

	Derivatives	Cognates
accidō	accident	
aetās	age; coetaneous	eternal; aught over; aye, longevity medieval; con
licet	illicit	
necesse	necessary	cēdō
nōmen	nominate; noun nomenclature	pseudonym, onomatopoeia, patronymic; synonymous
occidō	occident, occasion	
orior	orient; origin, abort	hormone, are; earnest
ōs	oral, oscillate; oratory orifice	
premo	reprimand; pressure; print	
sōl	solar, solarium, parasol, solstice	sun, south
spectō	aspect, speculum, spectrum	spy, espionage; telescope, episcopal
vetus	veteran, inveterate, veterinary	clesian

§131. Result Clauses

In both English and Latin, the result of an action is reported in a subordinate clause called a **Result clause**. A result may be understood as an event *likely* to follow upon the action of the main verb *or* as an event *actually occurring* or *actually having occurred*. In English, a result clause is introduced by the conjunction "that." In Latin, Result clauses are introduced by the conjunction *ut* and have their verbs in the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence. For example:

<i>Tam honestus est ut credas.</i> (likely result)
So honorable is he (with the result) that you would trust him.
He is so honorable (with the result) that you could trust him.
<i>Ita dixit ut sententiam intellegere.</i> (actual result)
In such a way she had spoken that (her opinion) I understood.
She had spoken in such a way (with the result) that I understood her opinion.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Result clauses began as independent sentences whose verbs were Potential subjunctives. For example:

Ei credās, Tam honestus est. You would trust him. He is so honorable

Such a paratactic arrangement of two thoughts easily became one sentence: *Tam honestus est ut ei credās* (He is so honorable that you would trust him). By the classical period, *both likely and actual* Result clauses had their verbs in the subjunctive mood—a reflection of the view of the subjunctive as simply the mood appropriate for certain subordinate clauses.

2. Result clauses are negated by *ut . . . nōn . . .*, *ut . . . nēmō . . .*, *ut . . . numquam . . .*, etc. They are *not* negated by *nē*.

3. The syntax of, for example, *intellegere*, is imperfect subjunctive, Result clause, secondary sequence.

4. For a Result clause that reports a *likely* result, as in the first sentence above, the subjunctive verb is translated with the English word "would." For a Result clause that reports an *actual* result, as in the second sentence, the subjunctive verb is translated as if it were indicative. The tense of the translation is determined by the relative time of the subjunctive to the main verb.

Result clauses are usually *signaled* by an *adverb or adjective of degree* in the main clause. Such words include:

<i>adeo</i> (adv.) to such an extent	
<i>ita</i>	<i>talis, tale</i>
<i>sic</i>	<i>tantus, -a, -um</i>
<i>tam</i>	<i>tot</i>

OBSERVATION

Occasionally a demonstrative such as *hic*, *iste*, *ille*, or *is* signals a Result clause and should be translated "such (a)."

When an actual result is reported in past time, a *perfect subjunctive that breaks the rules of sequence* may be used perhaps to emphasize the actual completion of the action. For example:

<i>Ita dixit ut sententiam intellexerim.</i>
She had spoken in such a way that I actually understood her opinion.

§132. Relative Clauses of Result

A blend of the idea of a Result clause with the idea of a Relative Clause of Characteristic (see §93) is called a **Relative Clause of Result**, in which *both* ideas are present. For example:

Quis est tam fortis *qui sine armis pugnet*?
 Who is of so brave a sort *who without arms fights*?
 Who is so brave *that he would fight without arms*?
 Nihil est tam difficile *quā intellegi possit*.
 Nothing is of so difficult a sort *that to be understood it is not able*.
 Nothing is so difficult *that it is not able to be understood*.

OBSERVATIONS

- 1 In each sentence the word *tam* signals a Result clause, but the word *quī/quā* instead of *ut* introduces a Relative Clause of Result. Each relative clause expresses an event that would *potentially or characteristically result* from the main clause.
- 2 In the second sentence, *quā* is used to introduce a negative Relative Clause of Result. Compare this use of *quā* to its use in Relative Clauses of Characteristic (§93).
- 3 The syntax of, for example, *pugnet*, is present subjunctive, Relative Clause of Result, primary sequence.
- 4 The second translations given above in which the relative pronoun is replaced in English by "that . . . he/it . . ." are to be preferred for clarity and simplicity. In addition, the English word "would" may be used in translating the subjunctive verb in a Relative Clause of Result, or the subjunctive verb may be translated as an indicative.

§133. Substantive Ut Clauses

A Result clause is an *adverbial clause* that modifies the action of the main verb as a whole (cf. Purpose clauses). Certain verbs and verb phrases appear with *noun clauses* called **Substantive Ut clauses**, which function as either subjects or direct objects (cf. Indirect Commands).¹ Some common expressions that introduce Substantive Ut clauses are:

<i>accidit</i>	it happens	(accidit, occidit, accidit, — Happen)
<i>fit</i>	it happens	
<i>fiere potest</i>	it is able to happen	it is possible
<i>efficere</i>	to bring it about	(efficio, efficere, effect, effectus bring about)
<i>facere</i>	to bring about	to see to it

OBSERVATION

The first three verbal expressions introduce **subject clauses**. The latter two introduce **object clauses**.

1. These noun clauses are sometimes known as **Substantive Clauses of Result**.

Substantive Ut clauses are negated by *ut . . . nōn*, *ut . . . nēmō*, etc. *Nē* may be used when a command or exhortation is being expressed. For example:

<i>Accidit ut Caesar copias per provinciam dūceret.</i>	It happened that Caesar (he) troops (d.o.) through the province was leading.
<i>Efficiam ut cives inter se non pugnent.</i>	I shall bring it about that the citizens among themselves not fight.
<i>Facite ne socio- reliquiis o milites.</i>	See to it that the allies (d.o.) you (pl.) abandon o soldiers.
	See to it that you (pl.) not abandon the allies o soldiers.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Substantive Ut clauses always have their verbs in the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence.
2. In the first sentence the clause *ut . . . dūceret* functions as the *subject* of the verb *accidit*. The entire subject clause is *what "happened."* The English pronoun "it" merely anticipates and refers to this subject clause.
3. In the second sentence the clause *ut . . . pugnent* functions as the *direct object* of the verb *efficiam*. The entire object clause is *what "I shall bring about."* The English pronoun "it" merely anticipates and refers to this object clause.
4. In the third sentence the Substantive Ut clause is introduced by *ne* because the equivalent of a negative Indirect Command is being expressed.
5. The syntax of, for example, *dūceret*, is *imperfect subjunctive*, Substantive Ut clause, secondary sequence.

☛ DRILL 131–133 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§134. Fore ut Construction

When a future passive verb is to be expressed in Indirect Statement, a periphrasis² is commonly used instead of the rare future passive infinitive.³ This periphrasis employs the future active infinitive of the verb *sum* (*fore*, *futūrum esse*) and a Substantive Ut clause with a verb in the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence. The same construction is used when a future active verb that lacks a fourth principal part is expressed in Indirect Statement. For example:

<i>Caesar dicit fore ut bellum mox conficiatur.</i>	Caesar says that it will be that the war be completed soon.
<i>Caesar dicit ut bellum mox conficiatur.</i>	Caesar says that the war will be completed soon.
<i>Sperabamus futūrum esse ut Caesar bellum mox conficere posset.</i>	We were hoping that it would be that Caesar the war (d.o.) soon to complete he able.
<i>Sperabamus ut Caesar bellum mox conficere posset.</i>	We were hoping that Caesar would be able to complete the war soon.

2. A periphrasis (< Greek *periphrasō*, speak around) is a roundabout way of saying something, a circumlocution (< *circumlocutiō*, speaking around).

3. For the formation of the future passive infinitive see §142, n. 4.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The noun clause introduced by *ut* in each sentence functions as the *subject* of the infinitive *fore* or *futūrum esse* in Indirect Statement. The *-um* ending on *futūrum* is neuter singular accusative to agree with the subject clause. The English pronoun "it" merely anticipates and refers to this subject clause.
2. Substantive *Ut* clauses following *fore* and *futūrum esse* are negated by *ut . . . nōn*, *ut . . . nēmō*, etc.
3. The syntax of, for example *posset* is imperfect subjunctive, Substantive *Ut* clause in a *fore ut* construction, secondary sequence.
4. The second translations given above are to be preferred because they combine the future tense expressed in the infinitives with the actions expressed in the subjunctive verbs. In primary sequence the word "will" and in secondary sequence the word "would" are used.

☛ DRILL 134 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§135. Impersonal Constructions I: *licet*, *necesse est*, and *oportet*

An **impersonal verb** is a verb that does not have a personal subject (cf. §59). Certain impersonal verbs that express ideas of *permission*, *necessity*, or *propriety* have forms in the third person singular, the infinitive, and (less commonly) the perfect passive participle. Three such verbs are:

licet, *licere*, *licitum est* it is allowed, it is permitted
necesse est it is necessary
oportet, *oportere*, *oportuit* it is proper, it is right

OBSERVATIONS

1. The first and third principal parts of *licet* and *oportet* are given in the *third person singular* because impersonal verbs appear in that person and number *only*. *Licet* has an alternate third principal part, *licitum est*, formed as an impersonal *passive*.
2. *Necesse est* is actually a compound of the indeclinable neuter singular adjective *necesse* (functioning as a predicate adjective) and a form of the verb *sum*. The form of *sum* may be any third person singular form (*necesse erat*, *necesse sit*, etc.) or an infinitive (*necesse esse*).

These three impersonal verbs frequently appear with a **Subject Infinitive** (see §27), which may have an expressed **Subject Accusative** (see §107). For example:

Licet in urbe manēre. (Subject Infinitive)
 It is permitted to remain in the city.
Necesse est eos in urbe manere. (Subject Accusative, Subject Infinitive)
 It is necessary for them to remain in the city.
Oportet eos in urbe manere. (Subject Accusative, Subject Infinitive)
 It was proper for them to remain in the city.
Oportet eos in urbe manere. (Subject Accusative, Subject Infinitive)
 It is proper that they remain in the city.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In these sentences the syntax of *manēre* is **Subject Infinitive**. In the second and third sentences the syntax of *eōs* is **Subject Accusative**.
2. In each translation given above the English word "it" merely anticipates and refers to the Subject Infinitive. The first sentence, for example, may also be translated "To remain in the city is permitted."

Licet and **necesse est** may also appear with a Dative of Reference and a Subject Infinitive. For example:

<i>Licet eis in urbe manere.</i>	Let it be permitted for them to remain in the city.
<i>Ei necesse erat in urbe manere.</i>	It was necessary for them to remain in the city.

OBSERVATION

The Dative of Reference that may appear with **licet** or **necesse est** expresses the person to whom an action is permitted or for whom an action is necessary. When a Subject Accusative—rather than a Dative of Reference—appears with **licet** and **necesse est**, it expresses the *subject* of the infinitive.

Licet, **necesse est**, and **oportet** also frequently appear with a Jussive subjunctive in parataxis.⁴ For example:

<i>Hic valet necesse est.</i>	Let might be strong; it is necessary.
<i>Noli fugere mecum morans oportet.</i>	Do not flee with me; it is proper that you die with me.

OBSERVATION

In these sentences two verbs stand paratactically with no subordination. The second English translations, which include the addition of the English conjunction "that" and make use of the English present subjunctive, are to be preferred for clarity.

☛ DRILL 135 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§136. Genitive of Characteristic

The Genitive of Possession is sometimes extended to express the person to whom a certain *characteristic* belongs. When this occurs, the genitive is called the **Genitive of Characteristic**.⁵ For example:

<i>Sapientis est pacem petere.</i>	Of a wise person it is peace (to seek). To seek peace is characteristic of a wise person.
------------------------------------	--

The syntax of the italicized word (*sapientis*) is **Genitive of Characteristic**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. A Genitive of Characteristic is often well translated with the addition of the word "characteristic" before the "of."
2. Subject Infinitives frequently appear in combination with Genitives of Characteristic.
3. Because the genitives of personal pronouns can be Partitive or Objective Genitive *only*, the possessive adjectives are often used to express an idea similar to the Genitive of Characteristic. For example

<i>Nō est fugere meum.</i>	To flee is not my thing. To flee is not characteristic of me.
----------------------------	--

4. Very rarely a Substantive Ut clause may appear as the subject of these impersonal verbs.
5. The Genitive of Characteristic is also known as the Predicate Genitive.

Short Readings

1. A fragment from the poet Naevius

pati necesse est multa mortālēs mala. (NAEVIUS, *PALLIATAE FRAG.* 106)

mortālis, mortāle mortal

2. Pseudolus, a crafty slave, criticizes Balho, a pimp who worships only money.

deōs quidem, quōs maxumē aequom est metuere, eōs minimī facit.*

(PLAUTUS, *PSEUDOLUS* 269)

*facit, subject is Balho

3. A fragment from the poet Ennius

quem metuunt odērunt; quem quisque odit perisse expetit.

(ENNIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE FRAG.* 348)

expetō (ex- + petō) ask for; desire

4. The character Hegio utters a truism.

quot hominēs tot sententiae: suos quoque mōs. (TERENCE, *PHORMIO* 454)

5. Later writers often cite this fragment spoken by Atreus in a tragedy of the poet Accius. Suetonius reports that Caligula said it about his subjects.

oderint dum metuant. (ACCIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE FRAG.* 204)

6. A fragment from the satirist

hominī amīcō et familiārī nōn est mentīrī meum. (LUCILIUS, *SATURAE FRAG.* 953)

familiāris, familiāre of one's household; of one's family

mentior, mentīrī, mentītus sum lie, tell a lie

7. The twenty-five-year-old Cicero explains why he believes he will win his case.

nōn enim, quem ad modum* putātis, omnia sunt in eloquentiā; est quaedam tamen

ita perspicua vērītās ut eam infirmāre nūlla rēs possit. (CICERO, *PRO QUINCTIO* 80)

*quem ad modum (rel. adv.) in what way, as

eloquentia, eloquentiae f. eloquence, rhetoric

infirmō (1-tr.) weaken; lessen; refute

perspicuus, -a -um clearly visible, plain, self-evident

vērītās, vērītātis f. truth

8. Cicero reflects on why men turn to crime.

L. Cassius ille, quem populus Rōmānus vērissimum et sapientissimum iūdicem putābat, identidem in causīs quaerere solēbat cui bonō fuisset.* sic vīta hominum est ut ad malefīcium nēmō cōnētur sine spē atque ēmolumentō accēdere.

(CICERO, *PRO S. ROSCIO AMERINŌ* 84)

*fuisse, subject is any particular crime

L. Cassius, L. Cassi m. L. Cassius

ēmolumentum, ēmolumentū n. benefit, advantage

identidem (adv.) again and again, repeatedly

iūdex, iūdicis m. juror, judge

malefīcium, malefīcū n. misdeed, crime

9. Cicero reproaches Verres directly for having attempted to deprive an upstanding Roman citizen in Sicily of his rights.

homō āmentissime, quid putāstī? impetrātūrum tē? quantī is ā cīvibus suis fieret, quantī auctōritās eius habērētur ignōrābās? (CICERO, *IN VERREM II* 4.19)

āmens, āmentis demented, insane

ignōrō (1-tr.) be ignorant, be unaware (of)

impetrō (1-tr.) obtain; succeed

10. After describing another incident in which Verres degraded the local nobility of Sicily, Cicero asks Verres a rhetorical question.

quis tam fuit illo tempore ferreus, quis tam inhūmānus praeter ūnum tē, qui nōn illōrum aetāte, nōbilitāte, miserā commovēretur? (CICERO, *IN VERREM II* 5.121)

commoveō (com- + moveō) move

ferreus, -a -um made of iron, hard-hearted, unfeeling

inhūmānus, -a, -um inhumane

miseria, miseriae f. misery

nōbilitās, nōbilitātis f. renown, nobility, excellence

11. Addressing the Roman people, Cicero summarizes the effects of the *Lēx Gabinia* (67 B.C.E.), which gave Pompey plenary powers to wipe out piracy in the Mediterranean sea.

itaque una lēx, ūnus vir, ūnus annus nōn modo vōs illā miserā ac turpitūdine liberāvit sed etiam effēcit ut aliquando vere vidērēmini omnibus gentibus ac nātiōnibus terrā manque imperāre. (CICERO, *DE LEGE MANILIA* 56)

aliquandō (adv.) sometimes, occasionally; at long last

miseria, miseriae f. misery

nātiō, nātiōnis f. nation

turpitudo, turpitūdinis f. ugliness; shamefulness, baseness

12. Cicero pays Q. Catulus a great compliment—before proceeding to disagree with him strongly.

etenim tālis est vir ut nūlla res tanta sit ac tam difficilis quam ille nōn et cōsiliō regere et integritāte tuērī et virtūte cōficere possit. (CICERO, *DE LEGE MANILIA* 59)

integritās, integritātis f. moral uprightness, integrity

tueor tuērī, tuitus or tūtus sum look at; protect, attend to

13. Cicero recalls an older sterner morality.

fuit, fuit ista quondam in hac re publicā virtus ut viri fortēs acriōribus suppliciis
civem perniciosum quam acerbissimum hostem coercerent.

(CICERO, *IN CATILINAM* I 3)

coerceō, coercere, coercui, coercitus restrain, check, suppress

perniciosus, -a, -um destructive

quondam (adv.) at one time, once, formerly

supplicium, supplicii n. punishment

14. Cicero characterizes Catline densively.

neque enim is es, Catilina, ut tē aut pudor umquam ā turpitudine aut metus ā
periculō aut ratio ā furōre revocānt. (CICERO, *IN CATILINAM* I 22)

furor furoris m. madness

pudor, pudoris m. shame, decency, modesty

ratio, rationis f. account, reason; rationality

revocō (1-tr.) call back

turpitudo, turpitudinis f. ugliness; shamefulness, baseness

15. At the very time of the Catilinarian conspiracy, Cicero pleads directly to Cato, one of the most important men behind the accusation of election fraud against Murena.

his tantis in rebus tantisque in periculis est tuum, M. Catō, quī mihi nōn tibi, sed
patriae nātus esse vidēris, vidēre quid agātur, retinēre adiutorem, dēfensōrem, so-
cium in rē publicā, cōsulem nōn cupidum, cōsulem –quod maximē tempus hoc
postulat—fortūnā cōstitūtum ad amplexandum otium, scientiā ad bellum geren-
dum, animō et ūsū ad quod velis negotium sustinendum. (CICERO, *PRO MURENA* 83)

adiutor, adiutoris m. helper, supporter

amplexor (1-tr.) embrace; value, esteem

cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstitui, cōstitutus set
up, establish; prepare

dēfensor, dēfensoris m. protector, defender

negotium, negotiū n. business

otium, otii n. leisure; peace

postulō (1-tr.) demand

retineō (re- + teneō) retinēre, retinui, retentus
keep hold of; retain; uphold, preserve

scientia, scientiae f. knowledge

sustineō (sub- + teneō), sustinēre, sustinui,
withstand, support, sustain

ūsus, ūsūs m. use, experience

16. Cicero makes a clever observation to bolster his point about the importance of praise

trahimur omnēs studiō laudis, et optimus quisque maximē glōriā dūcitur, ipsi illi
philosophi etiam in eis libellis quōs de contemnendā glōriā scribunt nōmen suum
inscribunt . . . (CICERO, *PRO ARCHIA* 26)

contemnō, contemnere, contempsī, contemptus

regard with contempt scorn, disregard

inscribō (in- + scribō) inscribe

laus, laudis f. praise

libellus, libelli m. (little) book

philosophus, philosophi m. philosopher

trahō, trahere, trāxi, tractus draw, drag

17. In the opening of his defense of Sestius, Cicero expresses to the jury his outrage at his opponents' strategy.

... per vōs nōbīs, per optimos viros optimis civibus periculum inferre cōnantur, et quōs lapidibus, quōs ferrō, quōs facibus, quōs vī, manū, cōpiis dēlēre nōn potuerunt, hōs vestrā auctoritatē, vestra religiōne, vestris sententiis sē oppressurōs arbitrantur. (CICERO, *PRO SESTIŌ* 2)

fax, facis *f.* firebrand, torch

lapis, lapidis *m.* stone

religiō, religiōnis *f.* religious constraint or fear; religious observance; sanctity scruple

18. Cicero praises Milo's belief that life and freedom must be defended—even with arms.

hoc* sentire prūdentiae est, facere fortitudinis; et sentire vērō et facere perfectae† cumulatæque virtūtis. (CICERO, *PRO SESTIŌ* 86)

*hoc, refers to Milo's belief

†perfectus, -a, -um perfect

cumulātus, -a, -um heaped up; vast, abundant

fortitūdō, fortitudinis *f.* bravery, fortitude

prūdentia, prūdentiae *f.* good sense, judgment, prudence

19. Cicero distinguishes between what is proper and what is permitted.

est enim aliquid quod nōn oporteat etiam sī licet; quicquid vērō nōn licet, certē nōn oportet. (CICERO, *PRO BALBŌ* 8)

quisquis, quidquid or quicquid (*indef. rel. pron.*) whoever, whatever

20. Marcus and Quintus conclude an exchange about the importance of law.

Marcus. Lēge autem carēns civitās estne ob id ipsum habenda nullō locō?

Quintus. Dīci aliter nōn potest.

Marcus. Necesse est igitur legem habēri in rēbus optimis.

Quintus. Prorsus adsentior. (CICERO, *DE LEGIBUS* II.12)

adsentior, adsentiri, adsensus sum agree

aliter (*adv.*) in another way, differently, otherwise

prorsus (*adv.*) thoroughly, in every respect, altogether

21. Cicero singles out Ser. Sulpicius Galba among a group of orators better at public speaking than at recording and refining their speeches in writing. He explains why this may be so

quem* fortasse vīs nōn ingent solum sed etiam animi et nātūralis quīdam dolor dīcentem incendēbat efficiēbatque ut et incitāta et gravis et vehemēns esset orātiō.

(CICERO, *BRUTUS* 93)

*quem, connective relative, antecedent is Galba
dolor, doloris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain; indignation

fortasse (*adv.*) perhaps

incendō, incendere, incendi, incensus set on fire; inflame, provoke

incitātus, -a, -um rushing; excited, intense

nātūralis, nātūrale natural

vehemēns, vehementis energetic, vigorous, powerful

22. Cicero praises the power of rhetoric.

sed nihil est tam incredibile quod nō dicendō fiat probābile, nihil tam horridum, tam incultum, quod nō splendēscat orātiōne et tamquam excolātur.

(CICERO *PARADOXA STŌICŌRUM* PREFACE 3)

excolō, excolere, excoluī, excultus cultivate,
improve, develop, decorate
horridus, -a, -um rough; rude, uncouth
incredibilis incredibile unbelievable
incultus, -a, -um not cultivated, unadorned,
lacking in refinement

probābilis, probābile acceptable, plausible,
credible
splendēscō, splendēscere, —, — become
bright, begin to shine
tamquam (conj.) as it were, so to speak

23. Cicero defines some important moral terms.

quicquid nō oportet, scelus esse, quicquid nō licet, nefās putāre debēmus.

(CICERO, *PARADOXA STŌICŌRUM* 3.25)

quisquis, quidquid or quicquid (indef. rel. pron.) whoever, whatever

24. An opinion about love

tōtus vērō iste quī volgō appellātur amor—nec hercule inveniō quō nōmine aliō
possit appellārī tantae levitātis est ut nihil videam quod putem cōferendum.

(CICERO, *TUSCULANAE DISPUTATIONES* IV.38)

appellō (1-tr.) name, call
levitās, levitātis f. lack of weight, lightness; unreliability, shallowness
volgō (adv.) publicly; commonly

25. What makes a man great?

nēmō igitur vir magnus sine aliquō adflātū divīnō umquam fuit.

(CICERO, *DE NATŪRĀ DEŌRUM* II.167)

adflātus, adflātis m. breath; inspiration

26. Having observed the nearly universal belief in the art of divination, Cicero's brother asks whether there will ever be an end to doubt on the subject.

an* dum bestiae loquantur expectāmus, hominum cōsentiente auctōritāte
contentī nōn sumus? (CICERO, *DE DIVINĀTIONE* I.84)

*an, here, introduces an indignant or surprised question expecting a negative answer, can it really be that . . .

bestia, bestiae f. beast, animal
cōsentīō (con- + sentiō) be in agreement, concur
contentus, -a, -um content, satisfied

27. The character Cato insists that the length of life is unimportant.

breve enim tempus aetātis satis longum est ad bene honestēque vivendum.

(CICERO, *DE SENECTŪTE* 70)

28. A reflection on the human soul

atque etiam cum hominis nātūra morte dissolvitur, cēterārum rērum perspicuum est quō quaeque discēdat; abeunt enim illuc omnia unde orta sunt, animus autem sōlus nec cum adest nec cum discessit, appāret. iam vērō vidētis nihil esse mortī tam simile quam somnum. (CICERO, *DE SENECTUTE* 80)

appāreō, appārēre, appāruī, appāritus be visible, be clear; appear, become evident
dissolvō, dissolvere, dissolvī, dissolutus undo, dissolve; set free
perspicuus, -a, -um clearly visible, plain, self-evident
somnus, somnī *m.* sleep

29. What value does Cicero place on farming?

omnium autem rērum ex quibus aliquid adquiritur nihil est agrī culturā melius, nihil ūberius, nihil dulcius, nihil homine, nihil hbero dignius.

(CICERO, *DE OFFICIIS* I 151)

adquirō (ad- + quaerō), adquirere, adquisī or adquisivī, adquisitus add to one's possessions, acquire
cultūra, culturāe *f.* cultivation
dulcis, dulce sweet, pleasant
ūber, ūberis rich, fertile

30. A rhetorical question about the limits to profit seeking

est ergo ulla rēs tantī aut commodum ūllum tam expetendum ut virī bonī et splendorem et nōmen āmittas? (CICERO, *DE OFFICIIS* III.82)

āmittō (ā- + mittō) send away; lose, let go
commodum, commodi *n.* advantage, benefit
ergō (adv.) therefore
expetō (ex- + petō) ask for, seek; desire
splendor, splendoris *m.* brightness, radiance, glory

31. In the first of his *Philippics* Cicero declares his resolve to speak his mind no matter the danger.

quid? dē reliquīs rēi pūblicae malis licetne dicere? mihi vērō licet et semper licēbit dignitātem tuērī, mortem contemnere, potestās modo veniendī in hunc locum* sit, dicendī periculum non recuso. (CICERO, *PHILIPPICS* I 14)

*hunc locum, *i.e.*, the senate house
contemnō, contemnere, contempsī, contemptus
regard with contempt, pay no heed to, disregard

dignitās, dignitātis *f.* rank, status, dignity
potestās, potestātis *f.* (legitimate) power
recuso (1-tr) decline, reject, refuse to accept
tueor, tuērī, tuitus or tūtus sum look at; protect

32. Cicero speaks after a scheduled embassy to Antony has been canceled. In an imagined debate, Cicero explains why he approves of the decision to cancel it

cuiusvis hominis est errare; nullius nisi insipientis perseverare in errore; posteriores enim cogitationes, ut aiunt, sapientiores solent esse. (CICERO, *PHILIPPICS XII* 5)

aiō (defective verb) say; aiunt 3rd pl. pres. act.
indic.
cogitatio, cogitationis f. thought
error, erroris m. mistake, error
insipiens insipientis unwise, foolish

perseverō (1-intr.) persist, persevere
posterior, posterius later
quavis, quaevis quodvis (indef. adj.) any . . . you
wish, any . . . at all

33. In the context of thinking about pernicious citizens and civil war, Cicero poses a theoretical question

sed hoc primum videndum est, patres conscripti, cum omnibusne pax esse possit an sit aliquod bellum inexpiabile, in quo pactio pacis lex sit servitus.

(CICERO, *PHILIPPICS XIII* 2)

inexpiabilis inexpiabile that cannot be atoned for, that cannot be appeased
pactio, pactiois f. agreement, arrangement

34. Immediately after his recall from exile Cicero asks Atticus to come to Rome to visit and advise him. The orator expresses concern about his own future.

tē exspecto et oro ut maturēs venire eoque animo veniās ut me tuō consilio egere non sinās. alterius vitae quoddam initium ordimur. iam quidam qui nos* absentis defendērunt incipiunt praesentibus occultē irasci, apertē invidere.

(CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* IV.1.8)

*nos refers to Cicero
apertē (adv.) openly
defendō, defendere, defendi, defensus defend
egere, egere, egui, — need, lack; be without
(+ abl.)
initium, initii n. beginning
invidere (in- + videre) envy; regard with ill will
(+ dat.)

irascor, irasci, —, — become angry
maturō (1 intr.) make haste, hurry (+ inf.)
occultē (adv.) secretly
ordior, ordiri, orsus sum embark on, commence
praesens, praesentis present
sinō, sinere, sibi or sibi, situs allow, permit

35. Cicero describes to Atticus his sense of alienation and despair once Pompey has fled to the East.

alia res nunc tota est, alia mens mea. sol, ut est in tua quadam epistula, excidisse mihi e mundo videtur. ut aegrotō, dum anima est, spes esse dicitur, sic ego, quoad Pompeius in Italia fuit, sperare non destiti. (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* IX.10.3)

aegrotus, -a, -um ill, sick
desistō, desistere, destiti, — cease
epistula, epistulae f. letter

excidō (ex- + cadō), excidere, excidi, — fall (out)
mundus, mundi m. world; sky
quoad (conj.) as long as. while

36. The beginning of a letter of Caesar to Cicero, quoted in a letter of Cicero to Atticus
 rectē augurāris dē mē (bene enim tibi* cognitus sum) nihil ā mē abesse longius
 crudēlitate. atque ego cum ex ipsā rē magnam capiō voluptātem tum meum factum
 probāri abs tē triumphō gaudiō. (CICERO, AD ATTICUM IX.16.1)

*tibi Dative of Agent

abs = ab

auguror (1-tr.) foretell, predict; surmise

crudēlitas, crudēlītātis f. cruelty

gaudium, gaudiū n. joy

probō (1-tr.) approve of

rectē (adv.) rightly, correctly

triumphō (1-intr.) celebrate a triumph; (tr.) exult
 (+ Indirect Statement)

voluptās, voluptātis f. pleasure, joy

37. Cicero informs his friend M. Marcellus about the limits on speech and action in the present state of the republic
 at tibi ipsi dicendum erit aliquid quod nōn sentiās aut faciendum quod nōn probēs.
 primum temporī* cēdere, id est necessitātī pārēre, semper sapientis est habitum.
 (CICERO, AD FAMILIARēs IV.9.2)

*tempus, here, occasion, circumstance

at (conj.) but

necessitas, necessitātis f. necessity

probō (1-tr.) approve of

38. A witticism from Varro

postrēmō nēmō aegrōtus quicquam somniat tam infandum quod nōn aliquis* dicat
 philosophus. (VARRO, MENIPPEAE FRAG. 122)

*aliquis, here, indef. pron. used adjectivally, some

aegrōtus, a, -um sick, diseased

infandus, -a, -um unspeakable

philosophus, philosophi m. philosopher

postrēmō (adv.) finally

somniō (1 tr.) dream (of)

39. The poet begins a reflection on the purpose and power of philosophy.

Suāve marī magnō turbantibus aequora ventis
 ē terrā magnum alterius* spectāre labōrem;
 nōn quia vexārī quemquamst iūcunda voluptās,
 sed quibus ipse mahs careās quia cernere suāvest.
 (LUCRETIVS, DE RERUM NĀTURĀ II.1-4)

*The -i- of alterius here scans short.

aequor, aequoris n. level surface; sea water

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus distinguish,

determine; perceive, observe

iūcundus -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable

suāvis, suāve sweet, pleasant

turbō (1-tr.) stir up, confuse, throw into
 confusion

ventus, venti m. wind

vexō (1-tr.) trouble, disturb, harass

voluptās, voluptātis f. pleasure, joy

40. The poet describes man's superstitious fear and its only medicine.

nam vel uti pueri trepidant atque omnia caecis
in tenebris metuunt, sic nōs in luce timēmus
interdum nihilō quae sunt metuenda magis quam
quae pueri in tenebris pavitant finguntque futura,
hunc igitur terrōrem animi tenebrāsque necessest
nōn radiū sōlis neque lūcida tēla diēi

discutiant, sed nāturae speciēs ratiōque. (LUCRETIVS, *DE RERUM NATŪRĀ* II.55–61)

discutiō, discutere, discussi, discussus shatter;
dissipate, dispel
fingō, fingere, finxi, fictus form, fashion, make;
imagine
interdum (adv.) from time to time, occasionally
lūcidus, -a, -um shining, bright, clear
pavitō (1-tr.) be in dread of, tremble at

radius, radii *m.* ray (of light)
ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason, reasoning;
rationale
tenebrae, tenebrarum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows
terror, terrōris *m.* (extreme) fear, terror
trepidō (1-intr.) tremble; panic
uti ~ ut

41. The poet describes how the earth, like all living things, is subject to decay and diminution of her powers.

iamque adeō frācta est aetās effētaque tellūs
vix animalia parva creat, quae cuncta creavit
saecula deditque ferarum ingentia corpora partū.

(LUCRETIVS, *DE RERUM NATŪRĀ* II.1150–52)

creō (1-tr.) create
effētus, -a, -um worn out
fera, ferae *f.* wild animal
frangō, frangere, frēgi, fractus break

partus, partūs *m.* birth
saec(u)lum, saec(u)li *n.* age, generation
tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth

42. The poet reports an inner conflict.

Hūc est mēns dēducta tuā mea, Lesbia, culpā,
atque ita sē officiō perdidit ipsa suō,
ut iam nec bene velle queat tibi, sī optima fias,
nec desistere amāre, omnia si faciās (CATULIUS LXXV)

culpa, culpa *f.* guilt, blame; fault
dēducō (dē- + ducō) lead down; bring down
dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstiti, — cease, stop
officiū, officiū *n.* obligation; sense of duty
queō, quire, quī or quīvī, — be able

43. The poet responds to his beloved's declaration.

Incundum, mea vīta, mīhi prōpōnis amōrem
 hunc nostrum inter nōs perpetuumque fore.
 dī magnī, facite ut vērē prōmittere possit,
 atque id sincēre dicat et ex animō,
 ut liceat nōbis tōtā perducere vitā
 aeternum hoc sānctae foedus amicitiae. (CATULLUS CIX)

aeternus, -a, -um eternal, everlasting
 foedus, foederis *n.* agreement, treaty, pact
 iocundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable
 perducō (per- + ducō) extend, prolong
 perpetuus, -a, -um continuous; everlasting

prōmittō (prō- + mittō) promise
 prōpōnō (prō- + pōnō) put forward; declare
 sānctus, -a, -um inviolate, blameless
 sincērē (adv.) faithfully, truly

44. Having just described various geographical constraints (mountains, lakes, rivers), Caesar reports their effects on the actions and feelings of the Helvetians.

his rebus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitīmīs bellum inferre
 possent; quā ex parte* hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre adficiēbantur
 (CAESAR, *DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ* I.2)

*quā ex parte and on this account
 adficiō (ad- + faciō) affect, stir, move strongly
 bellō (1-intr.) wage war, fight
 dolor, doloris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain

finitimus, -a, -um neighboring, nearby *as subst.*,
 neighbor
 lātē (adv.) widely, far and wide
 vagor (1-intr.) wander

45. Caesar explains his decision to cross the Rhine.

Germānicō bellō cōfectō, multis dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānse-
 undum. quārum illa fuit iūstissima: quod cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī
 ut in Galliam venīrent, suis quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et
 posse et audere populi Romāni exercitum Rhēnum trānsire.

(CAESAR, *DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ* IV 16)

Gallia, Galliae *f.* Gaul
 Germānī, Germānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Germans
 Germānicus, -a, -um German
 impellō (in- + pellō), impellere, impulī, impulsus
 push against; press upon; constrain, impel
 iūstus, -a, -um just, fair, right

Rhenus, Rhenī *m.* (the) Rhine, a river in
 northeastern Gaul
 statuō, statuere, statui, statutus cause to stand;
 decide
 trānseō (trāns- + eō), trānsire, trānsiī or trānsivī,
 trānsitus go across, cross

46. Caesar comments on a confused moment caused by a surprise attack of Germans.

nēmō est tam fortis quā rei novitāte perturbētur. (CAESAR, *DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ* VI.39)

novitās, novitātis *f.* newness novelty; unfamiliarity, unexpectedness
 perturbō (1-tr.) throw into confusion, upset, confound

47. On the eve of civil war Caesar hears that the citizens of Massilia have closed their gates to him and are siding with Pompey. He rushes to the city to negotiate with the Massilian leaders.

ēvocat ad sē Caesar Massiliā xv primōs * cum his agit^r ne initium inferendū bellī a Massiliensibus oriatur: debere eos Italiae totius auctoritatem sequi potius quam unius hominis voluntati obtemperare. reliqua, quae ad eorum sanandās mentes pertinere arbitrabatur, commemorat. (CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ CIVILI* I 35)

*primus, here used substantively, chief

†agō, here, treat, negotiate

commemorō (1-tr.) make mention (of)

ēvocō (ē- + vocō) (1-tr.) call out, summon out

initium, initii n. beginning

Massilia, Massiliae f. Massilia, a town in Gaul

Massiliensēs, Massiliensium m. pl. inhabitants of Massilia, Massilians

obtemperō (1-intr.) obey (+ dat.)

pertinere (per- + teneō), pertinere, pertinui,

pertentus pertam

potius (comparative adv.) rather

sānō (1-tr.) heal, make well

voluntas, voluntatis f. will

48. The historian explains why the consul Metellus proceeded cautiously through Numidia despite no outward signs of resistance.

nam in Iugurthā tantus dolus tantaque peritia locorum et militiae erat ut absēns an praesēns, pācem an bellum gerēns, perniciosior esset in incertō habēretur (SALIUST, *BELLUM IUGURTHAE* 46)

dolus, doli m. deceit, trick, cunning

Iugurtha, Iugurthae m. Jugurtha, king of Numidia

militia, militiae f. military service

peritia, peritiae f. knowledge (acquired through experience)

perniciōsus, -a, -um destructive, deadly

praesēns, praesentis present

49. The poet describes the lovesick Dido after the end of the banquet honoring Aeneas.

post ubi digressi, lumenque obscura vicissim
lūna premit suadentque cadentia sidera somnōs,
sōla domō maeret vacuā strātisque relictis
incubat. illum absēns absentem auditque videtque . . . (VIRGIL, *AENEID* IV.80-83)

digredior (dis- + gradior) go off, depart; separate;

digressi, subject is Dido and Aeneas

incubō, incubāre, —, incubitum lie on, recline on (+ dat.)

maereō, maerere, —, — grieve, mourn

obscurus, -a, -um dark, dim, obscure

sīdus, sideris n. star

somnus, somni m. sleep

strātum, strāti n. bedding, couch

suadeō, suadere, suāsi, suāsus urge, advise; persuade

vacuus, -a, -um empty

vicissim (adv.) in turn

50. The poet sets a romantic scene.

Nox erat et caelō fulgebat lūna serēnō
inter minōra sidera . . . (HORACE, *EPODES* 15.1-2)

fulgeō, fulgere, fulsi, — gleam, shine

serēnus, -a, -um calm, serene

sīdus, sideris n. star

51. The poet remarks on the advantages of delaying publication.

... dēlēre licēbit

quod nōn ēdideris, nescit vōx missa revertī. (HORACE, *ARS POETICA* 389–90)

ēdō (ē- + dō) emit; produce; publish

revertor, revertī, reversus sum turn back return

52. Cynthia is about to run off after a praetor from Illyria.

Tūne igitur demens, nec te mea cura moratur?

an* tibi sum gelidā vīhor Illyriā?

et tibi iam tantī, quicumque, iste videtur,

ut sine mē ventō quolibet ire velis? (PROPERTIUS I.8A.1–4)

*an, here, introduces an indignant or surprised question expecting a negative answer, can it really be that . . .

dēmēns, dēmentis insane, (raving) mad

gelidus, -a, -um very cold icy cold

Illyria, Illyriae f. Illyna, the territory of the Illyrians east of the Adriatic Sea

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque (indef. rel. pron.) whoever, whatever

quolibet quaelibet, quodlibet (indef. adj.) any . . . you wish, any . . . at all

ventus, venti m wind

vilis, vile worthless, cheap

53. Addressing Cynthia, the poet announces a momentous change.

Scribant dē tē alii vel sis ignōta licēbit . . . (PROPERTIUS II 11.1)

ignōtus, -a, -um unknown

54. The poet states his theme.

Sī quis in hōc artem populō non nōvit amandi,

hoc legat et lēctō carmine doctus amet

arte citae velōque ratēs rēmōque moventur,

arte levēs currūs, arte regendus amor (OVID, *ARS AMATORIA* I.1–4)

citus, -a, -um quick, swift

currus, currūs m. chariot

doceō docēre, docuī, doctus teach

ratis, ratis, -ium f. ship

rēmus, rēmī m. oar

55. Exiled to Tomis on the Black Sea, the poet comments on the locale and the native population.

sive locum spectō, locus est inamābilis, et quō
esse nihil tōtō tristius orbe potest,
sive hominēs, vix sunt hominēs hōc nōmine dignī,
quamque lupi saevae plus feritātis habent.
nōn metuunt lēgēs, sed cēdit vīnbus aequum,
victaque pugnāci iura sub ense iacent. (OVID, *TRISTIA* V.7b 43–48)

ēnsis, ēnsis *m.* sword

feritās feritātis *f.* wildness, fierceness, savagery,
brutality

iaceō, iacēre, iacui, — lie

inamābilis, inamābile unlovable, disagreeable,
unattractive

lupus, lupi *m.* wolf

orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; world

pugnāx, pugnācis fond of fighting, combative,
warlike

sive (conj.) or if; sive . . . sive . . . if . . . or if . . .

tristis, triste sad, gloomy, melancholy, grim

56. The poet describes the length of his banishment in epic terms.

at mihi iam videor patriā procul esse tot annis,*
Dardana quot Graio Troia sub hoste fuit.
stāre* putēs, adeō prōcēdunt tempora tardē . . (OVID, *TRISTIA* V 10 3–5)

*tot annis, here, for as many years

†stō, here, stand still

at (conj.) but

Dardanus, -a, -um Dardanian, Trojan

Graius, -a, -um Greek

prōcēdō (prō- + cēdō) go forward, progress

procul (adv.) at a distance, far

tardē (adv.) slowly

57. When the Romans are prevented by dusk from engaging the opposing army, an enemy taunts them from behind his battle line

“longiōre lūce ad id certāmen quod instat nōbīs opus est. crāstinō diē, oriente sōle
redite in aciem; erit cōpia pugnandi; ne timete.”* his vocibus inritatus miles in†
diem posterum in castra redūcitur,‡ longam venīre noctem ratus quae moram
certāmini faceret. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* III.2.9)

*nē timete = negative imperative

†in, here, until

‡redūcitur historical use of present tense;
translate as perfect

certāmen, certāminis *n.* contest; fight, battle

crāstinus, -a, -um of tomorrow; crāstinus diēs,
tomorrow

instō (in- + stō), instāre, institi, instāturus press
(hostilely); loom, threaten

inritō (1-tr) annoy, vex, irritate; arouse

posterus, -a, -um next, following

redūcō (re- + dūcō) lead back

reor, rēri, ratus sum believe, think, imagine

- 58 The historian reports that after the Romans retook certain towns in southern Italy from the Carthaginians, they distinguished themselves in a disgraceful way.

... tantum Pleminius Hamilcarem praesidiū praefectum,* tantum praesidiarū militēs Rōmānī Poenōs scelere atque avāritiā superāvērunt ut nōn armīs sed vitīs vidērētur certārī. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITĀ* XXIX.8.7)

*praefectus, praefectū *m.* commander, officer
 avāritia avāritiae *f.* greed, avarice
 certō (1-intr.) struggle, contend, strive
 Hamilcar, Hamilcaris *m.* Hamilcar Carthaginian commander
 Pleminius, Pleminiū *m.* (Q.) Pleminius, Roman military officer

Poenī, Poenōrum *m. pl.* (the) Phoenicians,
 (the) Carthaginians
 praesidiarius, -a, -um forming a guard or
 garrison
 praesidiū, praesidiū *n.* guard, garrison
 vitium, vitī *n.* vice, fault

59. Seneca quotes the second-century B.C.E. philosopher Posidonius, who explains why he objects to the inclusion of explanations and introductions in Plato's *Laws*.

lēgem enim brevem esse oportet, quō facilius ab imperītis teneātur.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE MORALES* XCIV.38)

imperītus, -a, -um inexperienced, unacquainted

- 60 Seneca quotes a line that is said to have made the audience look at Caesar. It was uttered by the writer and actor Decimus Laberius at the time of the civil war.

necesse est multōs timeat quem multū timent. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGI* IV.11.3)

61. Seneca reports how the Stoic philosopher Diogenes responded to being spit upon by one of his students during class.

tulit hoc ille lēniter et sapienter: "nōn quidem" inquit "irāscor, sed dubitō* tamen an oporteat irāscī." (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGI* V.38 1)

*dubito, *here*, wonder

inquam (defective verb) say inquit = 3rd sing. pres. act. indic.

irāscor, irāscī, —, become angry

lēniter (adv.) gently, mildly

sapienter (adv.) wisely

62. A definition and contemplation of death

mors dolorum omnium exsolūtiō est et finis ultra quem mala nostra nōn exeunt, quae nōs in illam tranquillitatem in quā antequam nāscerēmur iac uimus repōnit, si mortuōrum aliquis miseretur, et nōn nātōrum misereatur. mors nec bonum nec malum est; id enim potest aut bonum aut malum esse quod aliquid est; quod vērō ipsum nihil est et omnia in nihilum redigit, nūlli nōs fortunae trādit.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGI* VI.19.5)

dolor, doloris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain

exeo (ex- + eo), exire, exī or exīvi, exitum go out, exit

exsolūtiō, exsolūtiōis *f.* dissolution

iaceō, iacere, iacui, — lie, rest; lie dead

miseror, misereri, miseritus sum pity, take pity on (+ gen.)

redigō (red- + agō), redigere redēgi, redactus

drive back; restore, convert

repōnō (re- + pōnō) put or place back

tranquillitas, tranquillitatis *f.* calm, tranquility

ultrā (prep. + acc.) beyond

63. A character in a Senecan dialogue expresses his opinion on the nature of human life.

nihil est tam fallāx quam vita hūmāna, nihil tam insidiōsum: nōn meherculēs quisquam illam accēpisset nisi darētur ignōrantibus

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGI* VI.22.3)

fallāx, fallācis deceptive, treacherous

hūmānus, -a, -um human

ignōrō (I-tr.) be unaware (of), be ignorant (of)

insidiōsus, -a, -um treacherous, deceitful

64. The poet vividly characterizes Julius Caesar.

... sed Caesar in omnia praeceps,

nīl āctum crēdēs cum quid superesset agendum, ...

(LUCAN, *BELLUM CIVILE* II.656–57)

praeceps, praecipitis rushing forward, headlong

supersum (super- + sum), superesse, superfuī, superfutūrus remain, be left

65. The poet makes a concession.

Sexte, nihil debēs, nīl dēbēs, Sexte, fatēmur.

dēbet enim, sī quis solvere, Sexte, potest. (MARTIAL II.3)

solvō, solvere, solvi, solūtus loosen; free; pay

66. Pliny describes to Trajan the effect of his having made two well-respected senators consuls.

praecipuē tamen ex hōrum* cōsulātū nōn ad partem aliquam senātūs sed ad tōtum senātum tanta laetitia pervēnit ut eundem honōrem omnēs sibi et dedisse et accēpisse videantur. (PLINY THE YOUNGER, *PANĒGYRICUS* 62.1)

*hōrum refers to the two new consuls.

laetitia, laetitiae *f.* happiness

pervenio (per- + venio) arrive (at), reach, extend

praecipuē (adv.) especially, more than anything else

67. Pliny reassures the senators about the emperor Trajan's concern for them.

vōs ille* praesentēs, vōs etiam absentēs in cōsiliō habet. (PLINY, PANEGYRICUS 62.5)

*ille refers to Trajan.

praesēns, praesentis present

68. A battle between Roman troops and Batavians revolting in Germany

pugnātum longo agmine et incerto Marte donec praelium nox dirimeret.*

(TACITUS, HISTORIAE IV.35)

*The subjunctive in a subordinate clause in later Latin often does not express anticipation

dirimō, dirimere, dirēmī, dirēptus break up, dissolve

praelium = proelium

69. The historian reports an eclipse that stops a nascent mutiny of Roman troops prone to superstition

noctem minācem et in scelus ērupturam fors lenivit: nam lūna clārō repente caelō
visā languēscere. (TACITUS, ANNALĒS I 28)

ērupō, ērumpere, ērūpī, ēruptus break out, burst forth

languēscō, languēscere, languī, — grow weak, fail; wane

leniō, lenire, lenivī or lenī, lenītus moderate, calm, mitigate

mināx, minācis menacing, threatening

repente (adv.) suddenly, without warning

70. A group of Roman soldiers battling the Britons meets with a reversal

ubi ventum ad aggerem, dum missilibus certābatur, plus vulnerum in nos et
plēraeque caedēs oriēbantur. (TACITUS, ANNALĒS XII 35)

agger, aggeris *m.* earthwork; fortification, rampart

caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter

certō (1-tr.) struggle, contend, strive

missile, missilis -ium *n.* projectile

plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque very many, most

71. The biographer describes the changes made by Augustus to Rome.

urbem neque prō* maiestāte imperiī ornātam et inundātiōnibus incendiisque ob-
noxiam excoluit adeō ut iūre sit glōriātus marmoream sē relinquere quam latericiam
accēpisset. (Suetonius, VITA AUGUSTI 28)

*prō, here, in accordance with

excolō, excolere, excolui, excultus cultivate,

improve, develop, decorate

glōrior (1-tr.) boast

incendium, incendiū *n.* fire

inundātiō, inundātiōnis *f.* flood

latericius, -a, -um made of brick

maiestās, maiestātis *f.* dignity, majesty

marmoreus, -a, -um made of marble, marble

obnoxius, -a, -um exposed, vulnerable

ornō (1-tr.) dress, adorn, decorate

72. Macrobius comments on an aspect of Vergilian style.

vis audire illum tantā brevitate dicentem ut artāri magis et contrahi brevitas ipsa nōn possit? “Et campōs, ubi Troia fuit.” ecce paucissimīs verbīs maximam civitatem hausit et absorpsit, nōn reliquit illi nec* ruīnam. (MACROBIUS, SATURNĀLIA V.1.8)

*The redundant negative strengthens the negative idea.

absorbēs absorbēre, absorpsī, absorptus engulf, devour

artō (1-tr.) tighten, restrict, make narrow, reduce, compress

brevitās, brevitatīs f brevity

contrahō, contrahere, contrāxī, contractus

contract, reduce

hauriō, haurire, hausī, haustus drain, empty out,

consume

ruīna, ruīnae f. ruin(s)

Longer Readings

1 Cicero, *In Verrem* II 2.162

Cicero attacks Verres directly for his barbarous treatment of a Roman citizen.

cum ignēs ardentēsque lāminae cēterīque cruciātus admovebantur, si tē illius* acerba implōrātiō et vōx miserābilis nōn inhibēbat, nē civium quidem Rōmānōrum qui tūm aderant flētū et gemitū maximō commovēbāre? in crucem tū agere ausus es quemquam qui sē civem Rōmanum esse diceret?

*illius refers to one of Verres's victims.

admoveo (ad- + moveō) move toward; apply, inflict

ardeō, ardēre, arsi, arsurus burn, be on fire

commoveō (con- + moveō) disturb, trouble

cruciātus, cruciātus *m.* (instrument of) torture

crux, crucis *f.* wooden frame, cross

flētus, flētūs *m.* weeping, tears

gemitus, gemitūs *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)

implōrātiō, implōrātiōnis *f.* appeal, entreaty

inhibeo (in- + habeo), inhibēre, inhibui,

inhibitus hold back, restrain, check

lāmina, lāminae *f.* thin sheet of metal, blade

miserābilis, miserābile miserable, wretched

2. Cicero, *In Catilinam* I 1-2

Cicero opens his first speech against Catiline with a barrage of hostile questions directed at Catiline himself, who was present in the senate for the speech.

Quō ūsque tandem abūtēre, Catilīna, patientiā nostrā? quam diū etiam furor iste tuus nōs elūdet? quem ad finem sēsē effrēnāta iactābit audācia? nihilne tē nocturnum praesidium Palātī, nihil urbis vigiliae, nihil timor populi, nihil concursus bonōrum omnium, nihil hic mūnitissimus habendī senātūs locus, nihil hōrum ōra voltūsque mōvērunt? patēre tua cōnsilia nōn sentīs, cōnstrictam iam hōrum omnium scientiā tenērī coniūrātiōnem tuam nōn vidēs? quid proximā, quid superiōre nocte ēgeris, ubi fueris, quōs convocāveris, quid cōnsilī cēperis quem nostrum ignōrāre arbitrāris? ō tempora, ō mōres! senātus haec intellegit, cōsul videt; hic tamen vivit. vivit? immō verō etiam in senātum venit, fit pūblicī cōnsilī particeps, notat et dēsignat oculis ad caedem unum quemque nostrum.

abūtōr (ab- + ūtor) abuse (+ abl.)

caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter

concursum, concursus *m.* gathering

coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis *f.* conspiracy

cōnstringō, cōnstringere, cōnstrinxī, cōnstrictus restrain

convocō (con- + vocō) (1-tr.) summon or call together

dēsignō (1-tr.) point out

effrēnātus, -a, -um unbridled, unrestrained

elūdō, elūdere, elūsi, elūsus mock

furor, furōris *m.* madness

iactō (1-tr.) throw, hurl

ignorō (1-tr.) be unaware of, fail to recognize

immō verō (adv.) no, even

mūnitus, -a, -um well fortified, well defended

nocturnus, -a, -um at night, nocturnal

notō (1-tr.) mark

Palātium, Palātī *n.* (the) Palatine (hill)

particeps, participis *m.* participant, sharer

pateō, patēre, patui, — lie open

patientia, patientiae *f.* endurance, patience

praesidium, praesidii *n.* guard, garrison

proximus, -a, -um nearest; most recent, last

scientia, scientiae *f.* knowledge

superior, superius (comparative adj.) upper; previous, earlier

ūsque (adv.) continuously, all the way (to);

quō ūsque, (up) to what point, how far

vigilia, vigiliae *f.* watch (divided into four segments to cover a night)

vultus, vultūs *m.* expression; face

3. Cicero, *Pro Lēge Māniliā* 14–16

Cicero explains how even the threat of war affects the provinces, particularly Asia, one of the wealthiest.

itaque haec vōbīs prōvincia, Quirītēs, si et bellī utilitatem et pācis dignitatem retinēre
vultis, nōn modo ā calamitatē sed etiam ā metū calamitātis est dēfendenda. nam in
cēteris rēbus cum vēnit calamitās, tum dētrimentum accipitur; at in vectigālibus nōn
solum adventus mali sed etiam metus ipse adfert calamitatem. nam cum hostium
cōpiae nōn longē absunt, etiam si inruptiō nūlla facta est, tamen pecua relinquuntur,
agrī cultūra dēseritur, mercātorum nāvigatiō conquiescit. ita neque ex portu neque ex
decumis* neque ex scriptūrā vectigal cōservārī potest; quārē saepe tōtius annī frūc-
tus unō rūmōre periculī atque unō bellī terrōre amittitur

*decumus *here, as subst., tenth, (a type of) tax*
afferō (ad- + ferō), afferre, attuli, allātus bring to-
ward, bring forth

adventus, adventūs *m.* arrival

amittō (ā- + mittō) send away, lose

at (conj.) but

calamitās, calamitātis *f.* disaster, misfortune, in-
jury

conquiescō, conquiescere, conquievi, — rest;
cease

cōservō (con- + servō) (1 tr.) preserve thor-
oughly, maintain

cultūra, cultūrae *f.* cultivation

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendi, dēfensus protect,
defend

dēserō, dēserere, dēserui, dēsertus abandon,
desert, forsake

dētrimentum, dētrimenti *n.* harm

dignitās, dignitātis *f.* rank, status, dignity

fructus, fructus *m.* profit, benefit, revenue

inruptiō, inruptiōnis *f.* assault, incursion

itaque (conj.) and so, and therefore

mercātor, mercātōris *m.* merchant, trader

nāvigatiō, nāvigatiōnis *f.* sailing, voyaging

pecua, pecuum *n. pl.* farm animals

portus, portūs *m.* harbor, port

Quirītēs, Quirītiū *m. pl.* Quirites, the name for
Roman citizens in their public capacity

retineō (re- + teneō), retinēre, retinui, retentus
keep hold of, retain

scriptūra, scriptūrae *f.* writing; tax

terror, terrōris *m.* fear, terror

utilitās, utilitātis *f.* usefulness advantage

vectigal vectigālis, -ium *n.* (tax) revenue

In 66 B.C.E. Cicero delivered the *De Lēge Māniliā* endorsing a bill that was meant to strengthen Pompey's hand in dealing with Rome's enemies in the East.

4. Cicero, *Ad Familiāres* VII.1.3

Cicero writes to his friend Marius about the barbarity of the *vēnātiōnēs*, the hunting portion of Roman games.

sed quae potest hominī esse politō delectātiō cum aut homō imbecillus ā valentissimā bestiā laniātur aut praeclāra bestia vēnābulō trānsverberātur³ quae tamen, si videnda sunt, saepe vīdistī, neque nōs quī haec spectāvimus quicquam novi vidimus. extrēmum elephantōrum diēs fuit. in quō admirātiō magna vulgī atque turbae, delectātiō nūlla exstītit; quīn etiam* misericordia quaedam cōsecuta est atque opiniō eius modī: esse quandam illī bēluae cum genere hūmānō societātem.

*quīn etiam, introduces a correction of something just said, no, even

admirātiō, admirātiōnis f. wonder, astonishment

bēlua, bēluae f. beast

bestia, bestiae f. beast, animal, creature

cōsequor (con- + sequor) follow (as a consequence)

delectātiō, delectātiōnis f. (source of) delight, amusement

elephantus, elephantī m. elephant

ex(s)istō, ex(s)istere, ex(s)itī, — stand out,

appear, emerge

extrēmus, -a, -um last

hūmānus, -a, -um human

imbecillus, -a, -um weak, feeble

laniō (1-tr.) tear savagely, mutilate

misericordia, misericordiae f. pity

opiniō, opiniōnis f. opinion, belief

politus, -a, -um polished; refined

praeclārus, -a, -um very famous; splendid, magnificent

societas, societatis f. fellowship, society; (close) relationship, connection

trānsverberō (1-tr.) strike so as to pierce through, transfix

turba, turbae f. crowd

vēnābulum, vēnābulī n. hunting spear

vulgus, vulgī n. common people, (the) multitude

Cicero's letters *Ad Familiāres* in sixteen books are addressed to a wide variety of friends and acquaintances and treat of many subjects. Also included in the collection are replies from many of the addressees. The *Ad Familiāres* may have been edited for publication by Cicero's freedman and secretary, Tiro

5. Catullus XII (hendecasyllable)

The poet addresses an acquaintance with an annoying habit.

Marrūcīne Asinī, manū sinistrā
 nōn bellē ūteris in iocō atque vinō:
 tollis lintea neglegentiōrum.
 hoc salsum esse putās? fugit tē,* inepte:
 quamvis sordida rēs et invenustast.
 nōn crēdis mihi? crēde Polliōnī
 fratn, qui tua furta vel talentō
 mūtārī velit: est enim lepōrum
 differtus puer ac facētiārum.
 quārē aut hendecasyllabōs trecentōs
 exspectā, aut mihi linteum remitte;
 quod mē nōn movet aestimātiōne,
 vērūmst mnēmosynum meī sodālis.
 nam sūdāria Saetaba ex Hibēris
 mīserunt mihi mūnerī Fabullus
 et Verānius: haec amem necessest
 ut Verāniolum meum et Fabullum.

5

10

15

*fugit tē, *sc.*, ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* reason
 aestimātiō, aestimātiōnis *f.* value, (monetary)
 worth
 bellē (adv.) prettily, neatly, becomingly
 differtus, -a, -um stuffed, filled full (+ gen.)
 Fabullus, Fabullī *m.* Fabullus
 facētiāe, facētiārum *f. pl.* wit, drollery, humor
 furtum, furtī *n.* theft, robbery
 hendecasyllabī, hendecasyllabōrum *m. pl.*
 hendecasyllables
 Hibēri, Hibērōrum *m. pl.* Iberians, Spaniards
 ineptus, -a, -um silly, inept, foolish
 invenustus, -a, -um ungraceful, inelegant
 iocus, iocī *m.* jest, joke
 lepor, lepōris *m.* pleasantness, charm
 linteum, linteī *n.* linen cloth, napkin
 Marrūcīnus Asiniūs, Marrucīnī Asinī *m.*
 Marrucinus Asinius
 mnēmosynum, mnēmosynī *n.* remembrance,
 token

mūnus, mūneris *n.* present, gift
 neglegēs, neglegentis careless, heedless
 Polliō, Polliōnis *m.* Pollio
 quamvis (adv.) as you will, ever so
 remittō (re- + mittō) send back, return
 Saetabus, -a, -um of Saetabis, a town in Spain;
 Spanish
 salsus, -a, -um salty; witty
 sinister, sinistra, sinistrum left
 sodālis, sodalis, -ium *m.* comrade, companion
 sordidus, -a, -um dirty; mean, vulgar
 sūdārium, sūdārī *n.* cloth, napkin
 talentum, talentī *n.* talent, a sum of money
 tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublatus lift, raise; take
 away, carry off
 Verāniolus, Verāniolī *m.* (dear) little Veranius
 Verānius, Verānī *m.* Veranius
 vinum, vinī *n.* wine

6. Lucretius, *De Rerum Natura* I.199–207

The poet summarizes one of the most important principles of nature.

dēnique cūr hominēs tantōs nātūra parāre
 nōn potuit, pedibus quī pontum per vada possent
 trānsire et magnōs manibus divellere montis
 multaque vivendō vītalia vincere saecula,
 sī nōn materiēs quia rēbus reddita certast
 gignundis, ē quā cōnstat quid possit oriri?
 nil igitur fieri dē nilō posse fatendumst,
 sēmine quandō opus est rēbus, quō quaeque creātae
 aeris in tenerās possint prōferrier aurās.

200

205

āēr, āeris *m.* air

aura, aurae *f.* breeze

cōnstō (con- + stō), cōnstāre, cōnstilī, —
 stand still; be composed (of), consist (in);
 be fixed

creō (1-tr.) create, conceive

dēnique (adv.) finally

divellō, divellere, divellī, divulsus tear apart,
 tear up

gignō, gignere, genui, genitus beget, produce;
 gignundis = archaic form of gignendis

māteriēs, māteriē *f.* matter, material, primal
 substance

parō (1-tr.) prepare, furnish, produce

pēs, pedis *m.* foot

pontus, ponti *m.* sea

prōferō (prō- + ferō), prōferre, prōtulī, prōlātus
 bring forth; *in passive*, come forth, emerge;

prōferrier = archaic form of prōferri

quando (conj.) since

reddō (red- + dō) give back; render

saec(u)lum, saec(u)lī *n.* age, generation

sēmen, sēminis *n.* seed

tener, tenera, tenerum tender, soft, delicate

trānseō (trans- + eō) trānsire, trānsū or trānsivī,
 trānsitus go across, cross

vadum, vadī *n.* shallow shoal; *in pl.*, waters
 (of the sea)

vītālīs, vītālē living, vital; life-giving

7. Caesar, *De Bellō Gallicō* I.39

The effect on Caesar's men of rumors about the Germans

dum paucōs diēs ad* Vesontiōnem rei frūmentāriae commēatusque causā morātur,[†] ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātorum, qui ingentī magnitudine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibili virtūte atque exercitatiōne in armis esse praedicābant—saepe numerō sēsē cum his congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse—tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animosque perturbāret. hic primum ortus est ā tribūnis militum, praefectis[‡] reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesarem secūti nōn magnum in rē militāri usum habēbant. quōrum alius aliā causā inlātā, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret, petēbat ut eius voluntāte discēdere liceret; nōnnūlli pudōre adducti ut timōris suspiciōnem vitārent remanēbant. hi neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre[§] poterant; abditī in tabernāculis aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suis commūne periculum miserābantur. vulgō tōtis castris testāmenta obsignābantur. hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulatim etiam īī qui magnum in castris usum habēbant, militēs centuriōnēsque quique equitātui praeerant, perturbābantur.

*ad, *here*, at, near

†morātur, subject is Caesar

‡praefectus, praefecti *m.* commander, officer

§teneō, *here* hold back

abditus, -a, -um hidden

adducō (ad- + ducō) lead (toward); induce, influence

centuriō, centuriōnis *m.* centurion, an officer commanding a century

commēatus, commēātus *m.* cargo, provisions

commūnis, commūne common, shared

congregior (con- + gradior) approach, join battle

equitātus, equitātus *m.* cavalry

exercitiō, exercitiōnis *f.* training, exercise; skill, proficiency

familiāris, familiāre belonging to one's household; well known, familiar; *as subst.*, friend, intimate

fingō, fingere, finxi, fictus form, fashion; make (up), simulate; compose

frūmentārius, -a, -um of grain;

rēs frūmentāria, grain supply, supplies

Galli, Gallōrum *m. pl.* (the) Gauls

Germāni, Germānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Germans

incrēdibilis, incrēdibile unbelievable

interdum (adv.) from time to time, occasionally

lacrima lacrimae *f.* tear

magnitūdō, magnitūdinis *f.* magnitude, size

mediocriter (adv.) to a moderate degree

mercātor, mercātoris *m.* merchant, trader

militāris, militāre military; rēs militāris, military affairs, military practice

miseror (1-tr.) pity

necessārius, -a, -um necessary

nōnnūlli, -ae, -a a number, not a few, some

numerus, numeri *m.* number; saepe numerō, often (in respect to number)

obsignō (1-tr.) affix a seal to, seal

occupō (1-tr.) seize

paulatim (adv.) little by little

percontatiō, percontatiōnis *f.* interrogation

perturbō (1-tr.) upset, disturb, agitate

praedicō (1-tr.) proclaim, declare

pudor, pudōris *m.* shame, decency, modesty

queror, queri, questus sum complain, protest; lament

remaneo (re- + maneo) remain

subitō (adv.) suddenly

suspiciō, suspiciōnis *f.* suspicion; trace

tabernāculum, tabernāculi *n.* tent

testāmentum, testāmenti *n.* will

tribūnus, tribūni *m.* tribune, military commander

usus, usūs *m.* use, experience

Vesontiō, Vesontiōnis *f.* Vesontio the chief town of the Sequani, a Gallic tribe

vitō (1-tr.) avoid

voluntās, voluntātis *f.* will; willingness, approval

vulgō (adv.) commonly; all together, en masse

vultus, vultūs *m.* expression, countenance; face

8. Caesar, *De Bello Gallico* IV 1

A profile of the Suebi, a German tribe

Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. hī centum pāgōs habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causa suis ex finibus ēdūcunt. reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt. hī rursus invicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. sic neque agri cultura nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur. sed prīvātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. neque multum frumentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt multumque sunt in vērātīōnibus. quae res et cibī genere et cōtīdianā exercitātīōne et libertate vitae, quod a pueris* nullō officiō aut disciplinā adsuēfacti nihil omnīnō contrā voluntatem faciunt, et vīrēs alit et immānī corporum magnitudīne hominēs efficit. atque in eam sē cōnsuetūdinem adduxērunt ut locus frigidissimus neque vestītus praeter pellēs habeant quicquam, quārum propter exiguītatem magna est corporis pars aperta, et laventur in flūminibus.

**ī pueris*, here, from boyhood
addūcō (ad- + dūcō) lead (toward)
assuēfaciō, *assuēfacere*, *assuēfēcī*, *assuēfactus*
 make accustomed, accustom
alō, *alere*, *alut*, *al(i)tus* feed, nourish
aperitus, -a, -um open; exposed, uncovered
armātus, *armātū* m. armed man, soldier
bellicōsus, -a -um warlike, fond of war
bellō (1-intr.) wage war
cibus, *cibī* m. food
colō, *colere*, *colui*, *cultus* cultivate, tend; farm
cōnsuetūdō, *cōnsuetūdīnis* f. practice, custom, habit
cōtīdianus, -a, -um daily
cultura, *cultūrae* f. cultivation
disciplīna, *disciplīnae* f. training
ēdūcō (ē- + dūcō) lead out
exercitātīō, *exercitātīōnis* f. physical exercise, practice
exiguītas, *exiguītatis* f. smallness, scantiness
flumen, *flūminis* n. river, stream
frigidus, -a, -um cold, icy
frumentum, *frumentū* n. grain
Germānī, *Germānōrum* m. pl. (the) Germans
immānis, *immāne* enormous, tremendous

intermittō (inter- + mittō) interrupt
 —, *vicis* f. turn; succession; invicem, in turn, against one another
lac, *lactis* n. milk
lavō, *lavare* or *lavere*, *lavī*, *lautus* or *lōtus* wash;
 in passive, wash oneself
magnitūdō, *magnitūdīnis* f. size, magnitude
officiū, *officiī* n. obligation; duty, task
pāgus, *pāgī* m. district
pecus, *pecoris* n. (herd) animal, livestock
pellis, *pellis*, -ium f. (animal) skin, hide
privātus, -a, -um private
quotannis (adv.) yearly, every year
ratio, *rationis* f. account, reason; method, way
remanēō (re- + manēō) remain
rursus (adv.) again
sēparātus, -a, -um separate
singulī, -ae, -a individual
Suēbī, *Suēbōrum* m. pl. (the) Suebi, a German tribe
usus *usūs* m. use, experience, practice
vērātīō, *vērātīōnis* f. hunting (activity)
vestītus, *vestītūs* m. clothes, clothing
voluntās, *voluntātis* f. will, intention; choice

9. Caesar, *De Bellō Gallicō* V.44

Caesar reports on a rivalry between two of his centurions.

erant in eā legiōne fortissimi virī centuriōnēs qui iam primis ordinibus adpropinquarent, Titus Pullō et Lucius Vorēnus. hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habebant uter alteri anteferrētur, omnibusque annis dē locō summīs simultātibus contendebant. ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerimē ad* mūnitiōnēs pugnārētur, "quid dubitās," inquit, "Vorene? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtutis expectās? hic diēs dē nostris contrōversiis iūdicābit." haec cum dixasset, prōcēdit[†] extrā mūnitiōnēs quāque[‡] hostium pars cōfertissima est visa, inrumpit. nē Vorenius quidem sesē tum vallo continet, sed omnium veritus existimātiōnem subsequitur mediocri spatiō relictō Pullō pilum in hostēs inmittit atque ūnum ex multitudine prōcurrentem trāicit. quō percussō exanimātōque hunc scūtis prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversi tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. trānsfigitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfigitur, āvertit hic casus vaginam et gladium ēducere conanti dextram morātur manum impeditumque hostēs circumsistunt succurrit inimicus illi Vorēnus et labōranti

*ad, here, at, near

†prōcēdit, historical present tense, used here and in several subsequent verbs to add vividness; may be translated as present or past

‡quā, here (adv.), where

anteferrō (ante- + fero), anteferre, antetuli,

antelātus place or rank above, prefer

appropinquō (1-intr.) approach; be close (to) (+dat)

āvertō, avertere, āverti, āversus turn (something) away

balteus, baltei *m.* shoulder band, sword belt

centuriō, centuriōnis *m.* centurion

circumsistō, circumsistere, —, — surround

cōfertus, -a, -um crowded, dense, packed close together

coniciō (con- + iaciō) throw (together), cast

contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus

struggle

contineō (con- + teneō), continēre, continui,

contentus hold in, contain

contrōversia, contrōversiae *f.* dispute

dēfigō, dēfigere, dēfixi, dēfixus embed, bury, stick

dexter, dextra, dextrum right

ēducō (ē- + ducō) lead forth; draw

exanimō (1-tr) deprive of life, kill

existimātiō, existimātiōnis *f.* opinion judgment

extrā (prep. + acc.) outside

facultās, facultātis *f.* ability, power; opportunity, possibility

inmittō (in- + mitto) send in, send against

impediō, impedire, impedivi or impedii,

impeditus obstruct, hinder, impede

inquam (defective verb) say; inquit = 3rd sing.

pres. act. inquit

inrumpo, inrumpere, irrūpi, inruptus break in
burst into

iūdicō (1-tr) judge, determine

mediocris, mediocre moderate, fairly small

multitudo, multitudinis *f.* multitude

munitiō, munitiōnis *f.* fortification

ordō, ordinis *m.* order, rank

percutiō, percutere, percussī, percussus strike

perpetuus, -a, -um continual

pilum, pili *n.* spear, javelin

probō (1-tr.) prove, demonstrate

prōcēdō (prō- + cēdō) proceed, advance

prōcurrō, prōcurrere, prō(cu)curri, prōcursum

run forward, run out in front

prōgredior (prō- + gradior) go forward, advance

prōtegō, prōtegere, prōtexi, prōtectus protect,
defend

Titus Pullo, Titi Pullōnis *m.* Titus Pullo

scūtum, scūti *n.* shield

simultās, simultātis *f.* quarrel, feud

spatium, spatii *n.* space, interval

subsequor (sub- + sequor) follow close behind

succurrō, succurrere, succurri, succursum run to

aid, assist, help

trāiciō (trāns- + iaciō) pierce, transfix

trānsfigō, trānsfigere, trānsfixi, trānsfixus pierce

through

ūniversus, -a, -um all together

vāgīna, vāgīnae *f.* sheath

vallum, valli *n.* palisade (of stakes), fortification

vereor, verērī, veritus sum be in awe of, show

respect to; dread, fear

verutum, veruti *n.* (short) throwing spear

Lucius Vorenius, Lūci Vorēni *m.* Lucius Vorenius

subvenit. ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multītūdō convertit; illum verūtō trānsfixum arbitrantur. Vorēnus gladiō rem comminus gerit atque unō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius instat, in locum inferiōrem dēiectus concidit. huic rursus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs complūribus interfectis summā cum laude intrā mūnitiōnēs sē recipiunt. sic fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit, ut alter alteri inimicus auxiliō salutisque esset neque diiūdicārī posset uter utrī virtute antefendus vidērētur.

ambō, ambae ambō (pl. adj. and pron.) both;

ambō = masc. pl. nom.

antefendō (ante- + ferō), anteferre, antetuli,

antelātus place or rank above, prefer

certāmen, certāminis n. contest; fight, battle

circumveniō (circum- + veniō) (tr.) surround

comminus (adv.) in close contact, at close

quarters, hand to hand

complūrēs, complūra or compluria several, very many

concidō (con- + cadō), concidere, concidi, — fall down, collapse

cōnfestim (adv.) immediately

contentiō, contentiōnis f. effort; rivalry; conflict

convertō, convertere, converti, conversus reverse;

change; sē convertere, to direct oneself

dēiciō (dē- + iaciō) throw or push down

diiūdicō (1-tr.) settle, decide

incolumis, incolume unharmed; safe

inferior, inferius lower

instō (in- + stō), instāre, institi, instātūrus press

(hostilely), press on, pursue

intrā (prep. + acc.) within

laus, laudis f. praise

multītūdō, multītūdinis f. multitude

mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis f. fortification

prōpellō (prō- + pellō), prōpellere, prōpuli,

prōpulsus push forward, repel

Pullō, Pullōnis m. Titus Pullo

recipiō (re- + capiō) take back; sē recipere,

to withdraw

rursus (adv.) again

subsidium, subsidii n. aid, help

subveniō (sub- + veniō) come to the aid (of),

assist

trānsfigō, trānsfigere, trānsfixi, trānsfixus pierce through

uterque, utraque, utrumque (indef. pron.) each (of two)

versō (1-tr.) twist, keep turning round

verūtum, verūtū n. (short) throwing spear

Vorēnus, Vorēni m. Vorenus

10. Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae* 8

The historian identifies an important difference between the Athenians and the Romans.

sed profectō fortūna in omnī rē dominātur; ea rēs cūctās ex libidine magis quam ex vērō celebrat obscuratque. Athēniēnsium rēs gestae, sicuti ego aestumo, satū amplae magnificaeque fuēre, vērū aliquantō minōrēs tamen quam fāmā feruntur, sed quia prōvenēre ibi scriptōrum magna ingenia, per terrārum orbem Athēniēnsium facta prō maxumīs celebrantur, ita eōrum quī fēcere virtūs tanta habetur quantum eam verbīs potuēre extollere praeclāra ingenia. at populō Rōmānō numquam ea cōpia fuit, quia prūdentissimus quisque maxumē negotiōsus erat, ingenium nēmō sine corpore exercēbat, optumus quisque facere quam dīcere, sua ab aliīs bene facta laudārī quam ipse aliorum narrāre mālēbat.

aliquantō (adv.) somewhat, not a little

amplus, -a, -um great, distinguished

at (conj.) but

Athēniēnsēs, Athēniēnsium *m. pl.* Athenians

celebrō (1-tr.) make famous

dominor (1-intr.) be master, hold sway rule

exercēō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus keep busy, occupy; train, exercise

extollō, extollere, —, — raise up, elevate; praise

libidō, libidinis *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust

magnificus, -a, -um magnificent, splendid

narrō (1-tr.) narrate, tell (of)

negotiōsus, -a, -um busy, occupied, devoted to business

obscurō (1-tr.) make obscure, cover up

orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; orbis terrārum, circle of lands, world

praeclārus, -a, -um very famous

profectō (adv.) in fact, actually; indeed, assuredly

prōveniō (prō- + veniō) come forth appear

prūdēns, prūdētis wise, sensible, clever

scriptor, scriptōris *m.* writer

sicuti (conj.) just as

11. Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae* 25

The historian describes a fascinating woman from a noble family who was involved in the Catilinarian conspiracy.

sed in illis* erat Sempronia, quae multa saepe virilis audaciae facinora commiserat. haec mulier genere atque forma, praeterea virō, liberis† satis fortunata fuit; litteris Graecis, Latinis docta, psallere, saltare elegantius quam necesse est probae, multa alia, quae instrumenta luxuriae sunt. sed ei cariōra semper omnia quam decus atque pudicitia fuit; pecuniae an fama minus parceret haud facile discerneres; libidō sic accēnsa ut saepius peteret viros quam peteretur. sed ea saepe antehac fidem prodiderat, creditum‡ abŭraverat, caedis cōnsicia fuerat: luxuriā atque inopiā praeceps abierat. verum ingenium eius haud absurdum: posse versus facere, iocum movēre, sermōne tūti vel modestō vel molli vel procaci; prorsus multae facētie multusque lepōs inerat.

**illis* refers to a number of women who were under Catiline's sway

†*liberi*, *here*, children

‡*creditum*, *crediti* *n.* that which has been entrusted (for safekeeping), loan

abŭrō (1-tr.) falsely deny knowledge of under oath

absurdus, -a, -um discordant; inappropriate

accendō, *accendere*, *accendi*, *accensus* set on fire, kindle; stir up, arouse

antehac (adv.) before this time, previously

caedēs, *caedis*, -ium *f.* slaughter; murder

committō (con- + *mittō*) join, engage in, commit

cōnscius, -a, -um sharing knowledge, privy (to) (+ gen.)

decus, *decoris* *n.* esteem, honor, glory; *decorum*

discernō, *discernere*, *discrēvi*, *discrētus* separate,

distinguish, determine

doctus, -a, -um learned, educated, erudite

eleganter (adv.) gracefully, in a refined manner

facētie, *facētiarum* *f. pl.* wit, drollery, humor

facinus, *facinoris* *n.* deed; crime

forma, *formae* *f.* shape, form; beauty

fortunatus, -a, -um fortunate

Graecus, -a, -um Greek

inopia, *inopiae* *f.* poverty, destitution

instrumentum, *instrumenti* *n.* equipment; instrument

insum (in- + *sum*), *inse*, *infi*, — be in

iocus, *ioci* *m.* joke

Latinus, -a, -um Latin

lepōs, *lepōris* *m.* pleasantness, charm

libidō, *libidinis* *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust

luxuria, *luxuriae* *f.* extravagance, excess, luxury

modestus, -a, -um restrained, temperate, mild

mollis, *molle* gentle, mild, soft

mulier, *mulieris* *f.* woman

parcō, *parcere*, *pepercī*, *parsurus* be merciful, be sparing (+ dat.)

praeceps, *praecipitis* rushing forward, headlong

praeterea (adv.) besides, furthermore, in addition

probus, -a, -um excellent, upright, virtuous

procax, *procacis* undisciplined, licentious; lively;

frivolous

prōdō (prō- + *dō*) abandon, betray, forsake

prorsus (adv.) in fact, all in all, in sum

psallō, *psallere*, —, — play on the cithara (or lyre)

pudicitia, *pudicitiae* *f.* chastity, virtue

saltō (1-intr.) dance

Sempronia, *Semproniae* *f.* Sempronia

sermo, *sermonis* *m.* speech, (style of) conversation

versus, *versus* *m.* verse, line (of poetry)

virilis, *virile* of or belonging to a man, masculine, virile

12. Vergil, *Eclogues* II.63–68

The lovesick shepherd Corydon speaks to his unattainable beloved, Alexis

torva leaena lupum sequitur, lupus ipse capellam,
flōrentem cytisum sequitur lascīva capella,
tē Corydōn, ō Alexi: trahit sua quemque voluptas.
aspice, arātra iugō referunt suspēnsa iuvenct,
et sōl crēscētis dēcēdēns duplicat umbrās:
mē tamen ūrit amor; quis* enim modus adsit amōnī?

65

*quis, interrog. pron. used adjectivally
Alexis, Alexis *m.* Alexis = voc. sing.
arātrum, arātri *n.* plough
aspiciō, aspicerē, aspect, aspectus look (toward),
behold
capella, capellae *f.* she-goat
Corydōn, Corydōnis *m.* Corydon
crēscō crēscere, crēvi, crētus grow, increase
cytisus, cytisi *m.* or *f.* clover
dēcēdō (dē- + cēdō) go down
duplicō (1-tr.) double
flōrēō flōrēre, flōrui, — bloom, blossom

iugum, iugī *n.* yoke
iuvenctus, iuvencti *m.* bull ox
lascīvus -a, -um playful, naughty, free from
restraint
leaena, leaenae *f.* lioness
lupus, lupi *m.* wolf
suspendō, suspendere, suspendi, suspēnsus
hang up, suspend
torvus, -a, -um fierce
trahō, trahere, trāxi, tractus draw, drag; attract
ūrō, ūrere, ussi, ustus burn; inflame; consume
voluptās, voluptātis *f.* pleasure, joy

13. Vergil, *Eclogues* IV 18–25

The poet addresses a child whose birth will initiate a new golden age on earth.

at tibi prīma, puer, nullō mūnuscula cultū
errantis hederās passim cum baccare tellūs
mixtaque rīdentī colocāsia fundet acanthō.
ipsae lacte domum referent distenta capellae
ūbera, nec magnōs metuent armenta leōnēs;
ipsa tibi blandōs fundent cūnābula flōres.
occidet et serpēns, et fallāx herba venēni
occidet; Assyrium vulgō nāscētur amōmum.

20

25

acanthus, acanthi *m.* bear's foot acanthus
amōmum, amōmi *n.* balsam
armentum, armenti *n.* herd (of cattle)
Assyrius, -a, -um Assyrian
at (conj.) but
baccar, baccaris *n.* baccar, the plant cyclamen
blandus, -a, -um charming, seductive, soothing
capella, capellae *f.* she-goat
colocāsium, colocāsii *n.* Egyptian bean
cultus, cultūs *m.* cultivation
cūnābula, cūnābulōrum *n.* pl. cradle
distentus, -a, -um swollen, distended
fallāx fallācis deceitful treacherous
flōs, flōris *m.* flower

fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, pour forth
hedera, hederæ *f.* ivy
herba, herbae *f.* grass; plant; herb
lac, lactis *n.* milk
leō, leōnis *m.* lion
miscēō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus mix
mūnusculum, mūnusculi *n.* small gift
passim (adv.) everywhere
rīdēō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsus smile
serpēns, serpentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* serpent, snake
tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land
ūber, ūberis *n.* udder
venēnum, venēni *n.* poison
vulgō (adv.) commonly

14. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.657–63

Aeneas reports what he said in response to his father's refusal to join the family in fleeing from Troy.

mēne efferre pedem, genitor, tē posse relictō
spērāsti tantumque nefās patriō excidit ōre?
sī nihil ex tantā superis placet urbe relinqui,
et sedet hoc* animō peritūraeque addere Troiae
tēque tuōsque iuvat, patet istī iānuā lētō,
iamque aderit multō Priamī dē sanguine Pyrrhus,
nātum ante ōra patris, patrem quī obtruncat ad† ārās.

660

*hoc, *here*, scans as if it were spelled **hocc**
†ad, *here*, at, near
addō (ad- + dō) add
efferō (ex- + ferō), efferre, extulī, elātus
bear forth
excidō (ex- + cadō), excidere, excidī, —
fall (from)
genitor, genitoris *m.* father
iānuā, iānuae *f.* door; doorway, entrance
iuvō, iuvāre, iuvī, iūtus help, assist; please

lētum, lētī *n.* death, destruction
obtruncō (1-tr.) slay, slaughter, butcher
patēō, patēre, patuī, — lie open
patrius, -a -um of a father, paternal
pēs, pedis *m.* foot
Pyrrhus, Pyrrhī *m.* Pyrrhus, son of Achilles
sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood
sedēō, sedēre, sēdī, sessūrus sit, be seated,
be fixed
superī, superōrum *m. pl.* (the) gods above

15. Vergil, *Aeneid* IV.382–87

Enraged Dido concludes her speech to Aeneas after he has claimed that the gods have ordered him to leave her realm.

spērō equidem mediis, sī quid pia nūmina possunt,
supplicia hausūrum scopulis et nomine Didō
saepe vocātūrum. sequar ātis ignibus absēns
et cum frīgida mors animā sēdūxerit artūs,
omnibus umbra locis aderō. dabis, improbe, poenās.
audiam et haec Mānīs veniet mihi fāma sub imīs.

385

artus, artūs *m.* joint (of the body), limb
āter, ātra, ātrum black, dark
frīgīdus, -a, -um cold, icy
hauriō haurīre, hausī, haustus (rarely, hausus)
drink (in), absorb, hausūrum, *sc.* tē
improbus, -a, -um wicked; shameless
imū, -a, -um lowest, deepest
Mānēs, Mānium *m. pl.* Manes, spirits of the
dead; the underworld

nūmen, nūminis *n.* divine power, divinity, divine
spirit, numen
scopulus, scopulī *m.* projecting rock, boulder,
crag
sēdūcō (sē- + dūcō) lead away, separate
supplicium, supplicī *n.* punishment

16. Horace, *Carmina* III.9 (Asclepiadean)

A dialogue between former lovers

Dōnec grātus eram tibi

nec quisquam* potior bracchia candidae

cervici iuvenis dabit,

Persarum vigui rēge beātor.

"dōnec nōn aliā magis

arsisti neque erat Lydia post Chloēn,

multi Lydia nōmnis

Rōmānā vigui clārior Ilia."

mē nunc Thrēssa Chloē regit,

dulcis docta modos† et citharae sciēns,

prō quā nōn metuam mori,

si parcent animae fāta superstiti.

"mē torret face mātua

Thūrinī Calais filius Ornytū,

prō quo bis patiar mori,

si parcent puerō fata superstiti."

*quisquam, indef. pron. used adjectivally

†modos, here, *Accusative of Respect*, in (respect to) measures or verses

ardeo, ardere, arsi, arsurus burn, be on fire

beātus, -a, -um happy, blessed, fortunate

bis (adv.) two times, twice

bracchium, brachiū n. (lower) arm

Calais, Calais m. Calais

candidus, -a, -um white, clear, bright, radiant

cervix, cervicis f. neck

Chloē, Chloēs f. Chloe, Chloēn = acc. sing.

cithara, citharae f. cithara; lute

doctus, -a, -um learned, skilled, clever

fax, facis f. firebrand, torch

Ilia, Iliae f. Ilia, mother of Romulus and Remus

iuvenis, iuvenis m. or f. young man, young woman

Lydia, Lydiae f. Lydia

mūtus, -a, -um shared, reciprocal, mutual

Ornytus, Ornytū m. Ornytus

parcō, parcere, peperci, parsurus be merciful, be sparing (+ dat.)

Persae, Persarum f. pl. (the) Persians

potior, potius more powerful, preferable

superstes, superstitis standing by, present; surviving

Thrēssa, Thrēssae f. (a) Thracian woman

Thūrinus, -a, -um of Thurii, a city in southern Italy

torreō, torrere, torruī, tostus parch, roast, scorch, burn

vigeō, vigere, vigui, — be vigorous, thrive, flourish, live

5

10

15

quid si prisca redit Venus
 diductosque iugo cogit aeneo,
 si flava excutitur Chloë
 reiectaeque patet ianua Lydiae?

20

"quamquam sidere pulchrior
 ille est, tu levior cortice et improbo
 iracundior Hadria,
 tecum vivere amem, tecum obeam libens."

aeneus, -a, -um of bronze, bronze
 Chloë, Chloës *f.* Chloe
 cōgō (cō- + ago), cōgere, cōgē, cōactus drive
 together, force, compel
 cortex, corticis *m. or f.* cork
 diducō (dis- + ducō) draw apart, separate
 excutiō, excutere, excussī, excussus snake off,
 cast out
 flavus, -a, -um golden-yellow, flaxen, blond
 Hadria, Hadriae *m. or f.* Adriatic sea
 ianua, ianuae *f.* door

improbus, -a, -um wicked; shameless; relentless
 iracundus, -a, -um irascible, angry, moody
 iugum, iugī *n.* yoke
 libens, libentis willing, glad
 Lydia, Lydiae *f.* Lydia
 obeō (ob- + eō), obire, obī or obīvī, obitus go to
 meet; fall, perish, die
 pateō, patēre, patuī, — lie open
 priscus, -a, -um of former times, old, ancient
 reiciō (re- + iaciō) throw back, reject
 sidus, sideris *n.* star

17. Propertius II.19.1–8

The poet imagines that a stay in the country will keep Cynthia safe from romantic entanglements

Etsi me invito discēdis, Cynthia, Rōmā,
 laetor quod sine me dēvia rūra colēs.
 nullus erit castus iuvenis corruptor in agris,
 qui te blanditiis nōn sinat esse probam;
 nulla* neque ante tuās oriētur rixa fenestrās,
 nec tibi clāmātae somnus amārus erit.
 sola eris et solōs spectābis, Cynthia, montēs
 et pecus et finēs pauperis agricolae.

5

*The redundant negative strengthens the negative idea.
 amārus, -a, -um bitter, harsh
 blanditia, blanditiae *f.* ingratiating speech, blandishment; in *pl.*, sweet nothings
 castus, -a, -um free from vice, moral, chaste
 clāmō (1-tr.) shout for; call by name
 colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate, tend; inhabit
 corruptor, corruptoris *m.* corrupter, seducer
 Cynthia, Cynthiae *f.* Cynthia
 dēvius, -a, -um out of the way, remote, secluded

fenestra, fenestrae *f.* window
 invitus, -a, -um unwilling
 iuvenis, iuvenis young
 laetor (1-mtr.) rejoice, be glad, be delighted
 pauper, pauperis poor
 pecus, pecoris *n.* herd animal, livestock
 probus, -a, -um excellent, upright, virtuous
 rixa, rixae *f.* altercation, brawl
 sinō, sinere, sī or sīvī, situs allow, permit
 somnus, somni *m.* sleep

18. Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita* II.46.3-7

The historian describes a battle between the Romans and the Etruscans—particularly those from the city of Veii. Three members of the Fabii give evidence of Roman bravery

vix explicandī ordinis spatium Etruscis fuit cum pilis inter primam trepidationem abiectis temere magis quam emissis, pugna iam in manus, iam ad gladios, ubi Mars est atrocissimus, venerat. inter primores genus Fabium insigne spectacula exemploque civibus erat. ex his Q. Fabium—tertio hic anno ante consul fuerat—principem in confertos Veientes euntem ferox viribus et armorum arte Tuscus, incautum inter multas versantem hostium manus, gladio per pectus transfigit; telo extracto praeceps Fabius in vulnus abiit.* sensit utraque acies unius viri casum, cedebatque inde Romanus cum M. Fabius consul transiit iacentis corpus obiectaque parmam, “hoc iurastis” inquit, “milites, fugientes vos in castra redituros? adeo ignavissimos hostes magis timetis quam Iovem Martemque per quos iurastis? at ego iniuratus aut victor revertar aut prope te hic, Q. Fabi, dimicans cadam.” consuli tum Caeso Fabius, prioris anni consul: “verbisne istis, frater, ut pugnent, te

**abedō*, here, fall over

*i*per, here (in oaths) by

abiciō (ab- + *iaciō*) cast away, throw away, cast down

at (con.) but

atrox, *atrocis* dark, gloomy; cruel, fierce

confertus -a, -um crowded, dense, packed close together

dimicō (1-intr.) contend, fight

emittō (ē- + *mittō*) send forth, hurl, cast

Etrusci, *Etruscorum* m. pl. (the) Etruscans

exemplum, *exempli* n. example

explicō (1-tr.) unfold, unfurl; spread out, extend

extrahō *extrahere*, *extrāxi*, *extractus* draw out, extract

Fabius, -a, -um of the Fabii, Fabian

Caeso Fabius, *Caesonis Fabii* m. Caeso Fabius

M. Fabius, *M. Fabii* m. M. Fabius

Q. Fabius, *Q. Fabii* m. Q. Fabius

ferox, *ferocis* fierce, savage; high-spirited, defiant

iaceō, *iacere*, *iacui*, — lie; lie dead

ignāvus, -a, -um lazy; cowardly, spiritless;

ignoble

incautus, -a, -um heedless, unaware

iniuratus, -a, -um not having taken an oath, unsworn

inquam (defective verb) say; *inquit* = 3rd sing. pres. act. indic.

insignis *insigne* prominent, eminent, distinguished

iūrō (1-intr.) take an oath, swear

obiciō (ob- + *iaciō*) put in the way, interpose

ordō, *ordinis* m. order; row, line, arrangement; (battle) order

parma, *parmae* f. (small, round) shield (carried by infantry)

pilum, *pili* n. (heavy) javelin

praeceps, *praecipitis* headlong, head first

primores, *primorum* m. pl. leading men, front ranks

princeps, *principis* first, in front

prope (prep + acc.) near

pugna, *pugnae* f. battle

revertor, *reverti*, *reversus sum* turn back; return

spatium, *spatii* n. space; (space of) time, interval

spectaculum, *spectaculi* n. sight, spectacle

temere (adv.) by chance, at random; rashly

transfigō, *transfigere*, *transfidi*, *transfixus* pierce

transiliō, *transilire*, *transilui*, — leap across, jump over

trepidatio, *trepidationis* f. alarm, agitation, confusion, consternation

Tuscus, -a, -um Tuscan, Etruscan

uterque, *utroque*, *utrumque* (indef. adj.) each (of two)

Veientes, *Veientium* m. pl. the people of Veii, Veians

versō (1-intr.) turn, twist, whirl about

victor, *victoris* m. victor, conqueror

impetrāturum crēdis? di impetrābunt per* quos iūravēre; et nōs, ut decet procerēs, ut Fabiō nōmine est dignum, pugnandō potius quam adhortandō accendāmus militum animōs." sic in primum† infēnsīs hastis prōvolant duo Fabii, tōtamque mōvērunt sēcum aciem.

*per, *here* (in oaths), by

†primum, *primi* n. front line

accendō, *accendere*, *accendī*, *accēnsus* set on fire, kindle; stir up, arouse

adhortor (1-tr.) encourage, urge on

decet, *decēre*, *deciūt* (impersonal verb) it becomes, it befits

Fabius, -a, -um of the Fabii, Fabian

hasta, *hastae* f. spear

impetrō (1-tr.) obtain by entreaty; persuade

infēnsus, -a, -um hostile, threatening

iūrō (1-intr.) take an oath, swear

potius (comparative adv.) rather

procerēs, *procerum* m. pl. leading men, leaders

prōvolō (1-intr.) fly out, fly forth; rush forward

19. Lucan, *Bellum Civile* IX.961-69

The poet describes Caesar visiting the ruins of Troy.

Sigēasque petit⁺ fāmae mīrātor harēnās
 et Simoēntis aquas et Graiō nobile busto
 Rhoetion et multum dēbentis vātibus umbrās.
 circumit exustae nōmen memorābile Troiae
 magnaue Phoebeī quaerit vestigia mūri.
 iam silvae sterilēs et putrēs rōbore trunci
 Assaraci pressere domos et templa deorum
 iam lassā rādice tenent, ac tōta teguntur
 Pergama dumētis. etiam periēre ruīnae.

965

⁺petit, subject is Caesar

aqua, aquae *f.* water

Assaracus, Assaraci *m.* Assaracus, king of Troy

bustum, busti *n.* funeral pyre; grave mound,
 tomb

circumēō (circum- + eō), circumīre, circumī
 circumitus go around, encircle

dumēta, dūmētōrum *n. pl.* thorns, thickets,
 bushes

exurō, exurere, exussī, exustus destroy by fire,
 burn completely

Graius, -a, -um Greek

harēna, harēnae *f.* sand

lassus, -a, -um exhausted, weary, tired
 memorābilis, memorābile memorable

mīrātor, mīrātōris *m.* admirer

nōbilis, nōbile noble, renowned, famous

Pergama, Pergamōrum *n. pl.* Pergama, citadel
 of Troy

Phoebeus, -a, -um of or associated with Phoebus
 (Apollo)

putris, putre decomposed, rotten, putrid

rādix, radicis, -ium *f.* root

Rhoetion, Rhoetii *n.* Rhoetion, a town near Troy

rōbur, rōboris *n.* oak tree; timber; strength,
 firmness

ruīna, ruīnae *f.* ruin

Sigēus, -a, -um of or belonging to Sigeum,
 a town near Troy; Trojan

silva, silvae *f.* forest

Simois, Simoēntis *m.* (the river) Simois near
 Troy

sterilis, sterile barren, sterile

tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctus cover

truncus, trunci *m.* (tree) trunk

vātēs, vātis, -ium *m. or f.* prophet; bard, poet

vestigium, vestigiū *n.* trace, remnant, vestige

Marcus Annaeus Lucānus (39 - 65 C.E.) was the nephew of Seneca the Younger and served as a quaestor under Nero. Discovered in a plot to kill the emperor, he was forced to take his own life. Lucan's epic style is marked by vivid and rapid narration, elegant and sometimes artificial language, and a pessimistic tone strongly in contrast to Vergil's *Aeneid*.

The *Pharsalia* or *Bellum Civile* is an epic poem in ten books, which begins with Caesar's crossing of the Rubicon and recounts the closing episodes of Rome's civil wars. Many books are devoted to the exploits of Caesar and Pompey, their final rift, and Pompey's murder in Egypt.

20. Petronius, *Satyricon* 37

A first-time guest at a wealthy man's dinner party has asked the identity of a woman scurrying about the dining room. A veteran guest offers a description of the host's wife and of the host, Trimalchio.

"uxor," inquit, "Trimalchiōnis, Fortūnāta appellātur, quae nummōs modio mētūtur. et modo modo quid fuit? ignōscet mihi genius tuus, nōluissēs* dē manū illius pānem accipere. nunc, nec quid nec quare, in caelum abiit et Trimalchiōnis topanta est. ad summam,[†] merō meridiē sī dixerit illi tenebrās esse, crēdet. ipse nescit quid habeat, adeō saphūtus est; sed haec lupātria prōvidet omnia, est ubi nōn putes. est sicca, sōbria, bonōrum cōsiliōrum —tantum auri vidēs—est tamen malae linguae, pīca pulvināris. quem amat, amat; quem nōn amat, nōn amat. ipse[‡] fundōs habet, quā[§] milvi volant, nummōrum nummōs. argentum in ostiārī illius cellā plūs iacet quam quisquam in fortūnis habet. familia vērō babae babae, nōn meherculēs putō decumam partem esse quae dominum suum nōverit.

*nōluissēs, verb. in apodosis of Past Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence (protasis is omitted)

†ad summam, here, in short, to sum up

‡ipse refers to Trimalchio

§quā, here (adv.), where

appellō (1-tr.) name, call

argentum, argenti n. silver; silver plate

baeae babae (interj.) exclamation indicating

surprise and admiration babae! babae!

(< Greek *babai! babai!* transliterated into Latin)

cella, cellae f. small room, storeroom

Fortūnāta, Fortūnātae f. Fortunata

familia, familiae f. household; family slaves

fundus, fundi m. (piece of) land; farm, estate

genius, geniū m. genius, tutelary deity of a person or place; divine nature, spiritual part

iaceō, iacere, iacui, — he (open); be at hand

ignōscō (in- + nōscō), ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtus forgive, pardon (+ dat.)

inquam (defective verb) say inquit = 3rd sing. pres. act. indic.

lingua, linguae f. tongue; language

lupātria, lupātriae f. *lupatrina*, abusive term for a woman whore

merō meridiē (adv.) right at noon, at noon exactly

mētior, mētiri, mēnsus sum measure; mete (out)

milvus, milvi m. kite (bird of prey)

modius, modii m. *modius*, a Roman grain measure; peck

nummus, nummi m. *nummus*, a Roman coin

ostiārius, ostiārī m. doorkeeper, porter

pānis, pānis, -ium m. bread

pīca, pīcae f. magpie

prōvideō (prō- + videō) see to, attend to

pulvināris, pulvināre of or pertaining to a cushion or pillow; resting on a couch,

pīca pulvināris, apparently a gossiping bird

saphūtus, -a, -um very rich (< Greek *zaploutos* transliterated into Latin)

siccus, -a, -um dry

sōbrius, -a, -um sensible, sober; cautious

tenebrae, tenebrarum f. pl. darkness, shadows

topanta (indeclinable noun) everything

(< Greek *ta panta* transliterated into Latin)

Trimalchiō, Trimalchiōnis m. Trimalchio

uxor, uxoris f. wife

volo (1-intr.) fly

As identified by the historian Tacitus in his *Annals*, Petronius lived during the reign of Nero in the first century c. e. In the course of describing Petronius's protracted suicide—compelled by his loss of favor with Nero—the historian gives to Petronius the title *arbiter elegantiae* (master of culture) and thereby suggests what role Petronius may have played in Neronian society. It is likely that this Petronius was the author of the work entitled the *Satyricon*.

From the surviving fragments the *Satyricon* appears to have been a long work of prose fiction recounting the Odyssean and surreal adventures of three young men. The fragments are written in a mixed literary style that includes many allusions to and parodies of other works of Latin and Greek literature. Since many of the characters are drawn from the common life of the Greek settlements in southern Italy, the *Satyricon*'s fragments are a valuable source of information about colloquial Latin, the *sermō cottidiānus* (daily speech), of the first century c. e. The largest fragment, usually referred to as the *Cena Trimalchiōnis* (Banquet of Trimalchio), contains vivid speeches in character by many of the dinner guests, for the most part successful businessmen of the upper middle class.

Continuous Readings

1. Cicero, *In Catilinam* I 15 - 16

potestne tibi haec lūx, Catilīna, aut huius caelī spiritus esse iucundus, cum sciās esse hōrum nēmīnem quī nesciat tē pridē Kalendās Iānuāriās Lepidō et Tullō cōsulibus stetisse in Comitīō cum tēlō, manum cōsulū et principū cīvitātis interficiendōrum causā parāvisse, scelerī ac furōrī tuō nōn mentem aliquam aut timorem tuum sed fortūnam populī Rōmānī obstitisse? ac iam illa omittō—neque enim* sunt aut obscura aut nōn multa commissā postea—quotiens tu mē designātum,† quotiēns vērō cōsulem interficere cōnātus es! quot ego tuās petitiōnēs ita coniectās ut vitārī posse nōn vidērentur parvā quādam dēclīnātiōne et, ut aiunt, corpore effūgī! nihil agis, nihil adsequeris, neque tamen‡ cōnārī ac velle dēsistis. quotiēns iam tibi extorta est ista sīca dē manibus, quotiēns excidit cāsū aliquō et elāpsa est! quae quidem quibus abs tē initiāta sacrīs ac dēvota sit nescio, quod eam necesse putās esse in cōsulis corpore dēfigere.

*neque enim for . . . not . . .

†designātum, *n.*, cōsulem

‡neque tamen and yet . . . not . . .

abs = ab

assequor (ad- + sequor) gain, reach, attain

aiō (defective verb) say; aiunt = 3rd pl. pres. act. indic

Comitium, Comitii *n.* (the) Comitium, place where the assembly met

commissum, commissi *n.* offense, crime

coniciō (con- + iaciō) throw (together), cast, bring

dēclīnātiō, dēclīnātiōis *f.* swerving, swerve

dēfigō, dēfigere dēfixi, dēfixus fix, plant

dēsīgnātus, -a, -um elect, appointed (but not yet installed)

dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstiti, — cease, leave off

dēvoveō, dēvovere, dēvovi, dēvotus dedicate

effugiō (ex- + fugiō) flee from, escape

elābor, elābi, elāpus sum slip out

excidō (ex- + cadō), excidere, excidi, — fall or slip from

extorqueō, extorquere, extorsi, extortus twist out
furor, furoris *m.* madness

Iānuārius, -a, -um of January

initiō (1-tr.) consecrate

iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable

Kalendae, Kalendārum *f. pl.* (the) Kalends, the first day of a month

Lepidus, Lepidi *m.* Lepidus

obscurus, -a, -um dark, dim, obscure; uncertain
obstō (ob- + stō), obstāre, obstiti, obstātum stand in the way; hinder, block

omittō (ob- + mittō) disregard, pass over

parō (1-tr.) prepare; get

petitiō, petitiōis *f.* attack, thrust

postea (adv.) after, afterward

pridē (prep. + acc.) on the day before

prīnceps, prīncipis first, foremost, chief;

as subst., leading man

quotiēns (adv.) how many times

sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred

sīca, siccae *f.* dagger

spiritus, spiritus *m.* breath, breeze

Tullus, Tulli *m.* Tullus

vito (1 tr.) avoid

2. Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae* 4

igitur ubi animus ex multis miseris atque periculis requievit et mihi relicuam aetatem a re publica procul habendam decerni, non fuit consilium socordia atque desidia bonum otium contere, neque vero agrum colendo aut venando, servilibus officiis, intentum aetatem agere; sed a quo incepto studioque me ambitio mala detinuerat, eodem regressus statui res gestas populi Romani carptim, ut quaeque memoria digna videbantur, perscribere, eo magis quod mihi a spe, metu, partibus rei publicae animus liber erat. igitur de Catilinae coniuratione quam verissimum poterō* paucis† absolvam; nam id facinus in primis‡ ego memorabile existimo sceleris atque periculi novitate. de quoque hominis moribus pauca prius explananda sunt quam initium narrandi faciam.

*quam verissimum poterō = quam verissimum

†paucis, sc. verbis

‡in primis, here, especially, above all; first

absolvō, absolvere, absolvi, absolutus finish,

complete; sum up, describe briefly

ambitio, ambitionis f. flattery, adulation, desire

for power, ambition

carptim (adv.) in parts, separately

colō, colere, colui, cultus cultivate, tend; colendo

= archaic form of colendo

coniuratio, coniurationis f. conspiracy

conterō, contere, contrivi, contritus grind, wear

out; consume, spend

decerno, decernere, decerni, decretus determine,

decide, decree

desidia desidia f. idleness, inactivity, sloth

detineo (de + teneo), detinere, detinui, detentus

hold back, detain, hinder, prevent

existimo (ex- + aestimo) (1-tr.) reckon, suppose,

estimate

explanō (1-tr.) make plain, make clear, explain

facinus, facinoris n. deed, crime

initium initii n. beginning

intentus -a, -um stretched, attentive, intent

memorabilis, memorabile worthy of being

remembered, remarkable

miseria miseriae f. misery

narrō (1-tr.) narrate, tell (of), describe

novitas novitatis f. newness, strangeness

officium, officii n. obligation; duty, task

otium, otii n. leisure, idleness

perscribō (per- + scribō) write a detailed or full

account of

procul (adv.) at a distance, far

regredior (re- + gradior) go back, return

relicuam = archaic form of reliquam

requiescō, requiescere, requievi, requietum

(take a) rest; desist

servilis servile of or belonging to a slave, servile

socordia, socordiae f. laziness, indolence,

inactivity

statuō, statuere, statui, statutus cause to stand,

set up, establish; decide

venor (1 intr.) hunt

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.533-46

hic Priamus, quamquam in mediā iam morte tenētur,

nōn tamen abstinuit nec vōcī iraeque pepercit:

"at tibi prō scelere," exclāmat, "prō tālibus ausis*

535

dī, sī qua est caelō pietās quae tālia cūret,

persolvant grātēs dignās et praemia reddant

dēbita, quī nātī cōram mē cernere lētum

fēcisti et patriōs foedāsti funere vultus.

at nōn ille, satum quō tē mentiris, Achillēs

540

tālis in† hoste fuit Priamō; sed iūra fidemque

supplicis ēruvuit corpusque exsanguē sepulcrō

reddidit Hectoreum meque in mea regna remisit."

sic fātus senior tēlumque imbelles sine ictū

coniēcit, raurō quod prōtinus aere repulsum,

545

et summō clipeī nēquiquam umbōne pependit.

*ausum, ausi n. bold deed, exploit; crime,

outrage

†in, here, in the case of

Achillēs, Achillis m. Achilles

abstinēō (abs- + tinēō), abstinēre, abstinui,

abstentus hold back, restrain, refrain

aes, aeris n. copper, bronze

at (conj.) but

cernō, cernere, crēvi, crētus distinguish, deter-
mine, perceive; see

clipeus, clipeī m. shield

coniēcō (con- + iēcō) throw (together), cast

cōram (adv.) face to face, in person

cūrō (1-tr.) watch over, look after

ērubescō, ērubescere, ērubui, — blush

(for shame); feel shame in the presence of

exclāmō (1-intr.) cry out

exsanguis, exsanguē bloodless

foedō (1-tr.) befoul, defile

for (1-tr.) speak, utter

fūnus, fūneris n. in sing. or pl. funeral (proces-
sion); death

grātēs, grātium f. pl. thanks

Hectoreus, -a, -um of Hector, Hector's

ictus, ictūs m. thrust, blow

imbellis, imbelles not suited to warfare, unwarlike

lētum, lētū n. death, destruction

mentior, mentiri, mentitus sum lie, tell a lie

nēquiquam (adv.) to no avail, in vain

parcō, parcere, peperci, parsurus be merciful,
be sparing (+ dat.)

patrius, -a, -um of or belonging to a father,
paternal

pendeō, pendere, pependi, — hang, be sus-
pended

persolvō, persolvere, persolvi, persolutus pay in
full; render

pietās, pietātis f. sense of duty, dutifulness, piety

praemium, praemii n. reward, prize

prōtinus (adv.) immediately, straightway

raucus, -a, -um harsh-sounding, noisy, raucous

reddō (red- + dō) give back, return; hand over,
deliver

rēgnum, rēgni n. kingdom, realm

remittō (re- + mittō) send back

repellō (re- + pellō), repellere, reppuli, repulsus
push back, repel

serō, serere, sēvi, satus sow; engender, beget

senex, senis old

sepulcrum, sepulcri n. tomb, grave

supplex, supplicis suppliant

umbō, umbōnis m. boss (of a shield)

vultus, vultūs m. expression, countenance; in pl.,
face

4. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I 504–39

“nympha, precor, Pēnēi, manē! nōn īnsequor hostis;
 nympha, manē! sic agna lupum, sic cerva leōnem,
 sic aquilam pennā fugiunt trepidante columbae,
 hostēs quaeque suōs: amor est mihi causa sequendi!
 mē miserum! nē prona cadas indignave laedi
 crūra notent sentēs et sim tibi causa doloris!
 aspera, quā* properas, loca sunt: moderatius, orō,
 curre fugamque inhibē, moderātius īnsequar ipse.
 cui placeās inquīre tamen: nōn incola montis,
 nōn ego sum pāstor, nōn hīc armenta gregēsque
 horridus observō. nescīs, temeraria, nescīs
 quem fugiās, ideōque fugis: mihi Delphica tellūs

505

510

515

*quā, *here* (adv.) where
 agna, agnae *f.* lamb
 aquila, aquilae *f.* eagle
 armentum, armenti *n.* herd
 asper, aspera, asperum harsh, fierce; pitiless
 cerva, cervae *f.* deer; doe
 columba, columbae *f.* dove
 crūs crūris *n.* leg
 currō, currere, cucurri, cursum run, rush
 Delphicus, -a, -um Delphic, of Delphi, a Greek
 town and seat of Apollo's oracle
 dolor, doloris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain
 grex, gregis *m.* or *f.* flock
 horridus, -a, -um rough, wild; horrible
 ideō (adv.) for this reason; therefore
 inhibeō (in- + habeō), inhibēre, inhibui,
 inhibitus hold back, check, restrain
 inquīrō (in- + quaerō), inquīrere, inquīsīi or
 inquīsīvi, inquīsītus inquire into, investigate
 īnsequor (in- + sequor) follow closely, pursue

laedō, laedere, laesi, laesus injure, harm
 leō, leōnis *m.* lion
 lupus, lupi *m.* wolf
 moderātē (adv.) moderately, temperately
 notō (1 tr.) mark; scar
 nympha, nymphae *f.* nymph, a semidivine spirit
 observō (ob- + servō) (1-tr.) watch over, guard,
 observe
 pāstor, pāstoris *m.* shepherd
 Pēnēis, Pēnēidos descended from the river god
 Peneus, Pēnēi = *fem. sing. voc.*
 penna, pennae *f.* wing
 precor (1-tr.) pray
 prōnus, -a, -um (leaning) forward, headlong
 properō (1-intr.) hasten, rush
 sentis, sentis, -ium *m.* briar, bramble
 tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land
 temerārius, -a, -um rash
 trepidō (1-intr.) tremble
 -ve (enclitic conj.) or

et Claros et Tenedos Pataræaque rēgia servit;
 Iuppiter est genitor; per mē quod eritque fuitque
 estque patet, per mē concordant carmina nervis.
 certa quidem nostra est, nostrā tamen ūna sagitta
 certior, in vacuō quae vulnera pectore fēcit!
 inventum* medicīna meum est, opiferque per orbem
 dicor, et herbārum subiecta potentia nobis.
 ei mihi, quod nullis amor est sānābilis herbis
 nec prōsunt dominō, quae prōsunt omnibus, artēs!"
 plura locūtūrum timidō Pēnēia cursū
 fugit cumque ipsō verba imperfecta reliquit,
 tum quoque visa decēns; nudābant corpora[†] venti,

520

525

**inventum, inventi n.* discovery, invention

[†]*corpora, here, limbs*

Claros, *Clari f.* Claros, a town in Ionia

concordō (1-intr.) be in harmony

cursus, *cursus m.* running, run

decēns, *decentis* becoming, graceful

ei (interj.) *expression of anguish, o' alas!*, ei mihi,
 woe is me!

genitor, *genitoris m.* father

herba, *herbae f.* grass; plant; herb

imperfectus, -a, -um unfinished, incomplete

medicīna, *medicīnae f.* medicine

nervus, *nervi m.* sinew, (bow-)string, string
 (of an instrument)

nūdō (1-tr.) make naked, bare, lay bare

obvius, -a, -um in the way, face to face; moving
 against, opposed in direction

opifer, *opifera, opiferum* aid-bringing

orbis, *orbis, -ium m.* ring, circle; world

Patarēus, -a, -um of Patara, a city in Asia Minor

pateō, *patere, patui, —* lie open be revealed

Pēnēus, -a, -um of Peneus (a river god)

potentia, *potentiae f.* power, influence

properō (1-intr.) hasten, rush

prōsum (*prō- + sum*), *prōdesse, prōfui, prō-*

futurus be an aid, benefit

rēgia, *rēgiae f.* palace; royal seat, capital

sagitta, *sagittae f.* arrow

sānābilis, *sānābile* able to be healed, curable

serviō, *servire, servivi or servii, servitum* be a
 slave, serve (+ dat.)

subiciō (*sub- + iaciō*) place below; make subject

Tenedos, *Tenedi f.* Tenedos, an island off Troy

timidus, -a, -um fearful, afraid, timid

vacuus, -a, -um empty; idle; free, available; care-
 free, disengaged

ventus, *venti m.* wind

obviaque adversās vibrābant flāmina vestiēs,
 et levis impulsōs retrō dabat aura capillōs,
 auctaque forma fugā est. sed enim nōn sustinet ultrā
 perdere blanditiās iuvenis deus, utque monēbat
 ipse Amor, admissō sequitur vestigia passū.
 ut canis in vacuō leporem cum* Gallicus arvō
 vidit,* et hic praedam pedibus petit, ille salutem;
 alter inhaesūrō similis iam iamque† tenēre
 spērat et extētiō stringit vestigia rostrō,
 alter in ambiguō est an sit comprēnsus, et ipsīs
 morsibus ēripitur tangentiaque ora relinquit:
 sic deus et virgō est, hic spē celer, illa timōre.

*cum . . . vidit whenever . . . sees

†iam iamque at any time now

admittō (ad- + mittō) admit; let go, release

adversus, -a, -um opposite, opposing

ambiguū, ambiguū n. ambiguity; in ambiguō,

in an ambiguous state, in doubt

arvum, arvī n. (ploughed) field

augēō, augēre, auxi, auctus grow, increase

aura, aurae f. breeze

blanditia, blanditiae f. ingratiating speech, bland-

ishment; in pl., sweet nothings

canis, canis m. or f. dog

celer, celeris, celere swift, fast

capillus, capilli m. in sing. or pl. hair

comprendō, comprehendere, comprehendī,

comprēnsus take hold of, seize, catch

ēripio, ēripere, ēripui, ēreptus tear away, snatch
 away

extēndō, extendere, extendī, extēntus or extēnsus

make taut, stretch out

flāmen, flāminis n. blast, gust (of wind); breeze

forma, formae f. shape, form; beauty

Gallicus, -a, -um of Gaul, Gallic

impellō (in + pellō), impellere, impulī, impulsus

push against; press upon

inhaereō, inhaerere, inhaesi, inhaesūrus hold on
 tightly, stick, cling

iuvenis, iuvene young

lepus, leporis m. hare

morsus, morsūs m. bite; in pl., teeth, jaws

obvius, -a, -um in the way, face to face; moving

against, opposed in direction

passus, passūs m. pace, step, stride

pēs, pedis m. foot

praeda, praedae f. booty, plunder; prey

retrō (adv.) toward the rear, backward

rostrum, rostrī n. snout, muzzle

stringō, stringere, strinxī, strinctus graze, skim,

touch lightly

sustineō (sub- + teneō), sustinere, sustinui, —

withstand, endure

tangō, tangere, tetigi, tāctus touch; reach

ultrā (adv.) beyond, further, more; in negative

clauses, any more, any longer

vacuus, -a, -um empty

ventus, ventī m. wind

vestigium, vestigiī n. footprint, track, trace

vestis, vestis, -ium f. clothing, garment

vibrō (1-tr.) (cause to) move to and fro or flap

virgō, virginis f. maiden, virgin

CHAPTER XV

Vocabulary

- **caput, capitis** *n.* head
- **nūmen, nūminis** *n.* divine power, divinity, divine spirit, numen
- **orbis, orbis, -ium** *m.* ring, circle
 - **orbis terrārum**, world
- **vultus, vultūs** *m.* *in sing. or pl.* expression; face
- **circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus** place round, surround
- **for** (1-tr.) speak, say
- **obstō, obstāre, obstitī, obstātum** stand in the way; hinder, block (§138)
- **vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus** forbid (§138)
- **dēterreō, dēterrēre, dēterruī, dēterrītus** deter, prevent (§138)
- **prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus** prevent; prohibit, forbid (§138)
- **vereor, verērī, veritus** sum be in awe of, show respect to; dread, fear (§137)
- **cingō, cingere, cīnxi, cīctus** surround; gird (on oneself)
- **cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitutus** set up, establish; decide
- **rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus** seize, tear away, carry (off)
 - **ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus** tear away, snatch away
- **solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus** loosen, free, release; dissolve
- impediō, impedire, impeditvī or impediī, impeditus** hinder, impede (§138)
- interest, interesse, interfuit** it is important, it concerns (§139)
- **miseret, miserēre, miseruit or miseritum est** it moves (one) to pity (§139)
- paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit** it causes (one) to repent or regret (§139)
- piget, pigēre, piguit** it disgusts (one), it irks (one) (§139)
- **pudet, pudēre, puduit or puditum est** it makes (one) ashamed (§139)
- rēfert, rēferre, rētulit** it is important, it concerns (§139)
- **taedet, taedēre, taesum est** it makes (one) tired or sick (§139)
- celer, celeris, celere** swift
- dulcis, dulce** sweet, pleasant
- turpis, turpe** foul, ugly; base, shameful
- nē** (conj.) introduces positive Fear clause, that (§137)
- quān** (conj.) introduces Prevention clause, that . . . not, from (§138)
- **quod** (conj.) the fact that
- **quōminus** (conj.) introduces Prevention clause, by which the less, from (§138)
- ut** (conj.) introduces negative Fear clause, that . . . not (§137)

Vocabulary Notes

In addition to meaning "head," *caput, capitis n.* may mean the "life" of a man, particularly in oaths and when representing the price paid for an offense. *Caput* is also used, with affection or contempt, to refer to the entire "person."

nūmen, nūminis n. is a noun formed by the addition of the suffix *-men* to a stem of the verb **nuō, *nuere, *nuī, *nūtus, "nod."*¹ *Nūmen* may mean the "divine will" that approves of or lies behind events or actions, or it may mean more generally the "divine power," "divinity," or "(divine) spirit" that each god possesses.

orbis, orbis, -ium m. may indicate many circular shapes (ring, circle, sphere, ball, disk). The idiom *orbis terrarum* (occasionally *orbis terrae*) is so common that sometimes *orbis* unmodified by a genitive form of *terra* may also mean "world."

vultus, vultūs m. may refer to a particular facial "expression" or more generally to a person's "countenance" or "appearance" (with an emphasis on the appearance of the face). In both the singular and the plural it may indicate a person's "face." When *vultus* is used in combination with *os*, *vultus* refers to the upper portion of the face, and *os* to the lower.

circumdō, circumdare, circumdēī, circumdatus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *circum-* to *dō* (For the prefix *circum-* see Appendix P.) It may appear with an Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb (see §144). *Circumdō* may also mean "place" something (Accusative, Direct Object) "around" something (Dative with a Compound Verb).

for, fārī, fātus sum is cognate with *fāma*. *For* is far more common in poetry than in prose. It may take an Accusative, Direct Object or introduce a direct quotation. It does not introduce Indirect Statement. *For* is often used of the utterances of gods and occasionally of humans when they are speaking prophetically. The noun *fātum* is in origin a substantive of the neuter perfect passive participle of this verb (a having been spoken thing). COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM *FOR* DO NOT EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING. WHEN A COMPOUND OF *FOR* APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

obstō, obstāre, obstitī, obstātum is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *ob-* to *stō*. (For the prefix *ob-* see Appendix P.) It exhibits regular vowel weakening in the third principal part. *Obstō* may take a Dative with a Compound Verb and may introduce a Prevention clause (see §138).

vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus is an irregular first conjugation verb. For constructions with *vetō* see §138.

deterreo, deterreere, deteruī, deterritus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *dē-* to *terreo*. (For the prefix *dē-* see Appendix P.) *Deterreo* may introduce a Prevention clause (see §138).

prohibeo, prohibere, prohibuī, prohibitus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *prō-* to *habeo*. (For the prefix *prō-* see Appendix P.) It exhibits regular vowel weakening in all four principal parts. For constructions with *prohibeo* see §138.

vereor, verēī, veritus sum may introduce a Fear clause (see §137), and while it may mean "fear" or "dread," it often means "show respect for" or "be in awe of" those who are greater in rank or being (gods, parents, kings). It has a broader meaning than *timeo*, a verb that reports fear but not awe or reverence. COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM *VERBOR* DO NOT EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING.

cingō, cingere, cinxī, cinctus often appears with an Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb (see §144). It may also be used to mean "surround" or "encircle" something (Accusative, Direct Object) with something (Ablative of Means). COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM *CINGO* DO NOT EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING.

constituo, constituere, constitui, constitutus has a broad range of meanings, which include "station" or "draw up" (soldiers, troops); "establish" or "build" (towers, altars); "make" or "create" (the human race, laws, peace); and "fix," "appoint," or "agree upon" (a price, a specific day, boundaries). When *constituo* means "decide," it is followed by an Object Infinitive.

rapio, rapere, rapuī, raptus describes the violent action of seizing and carrying off things or people. It is also used to mean "(sexually) violate" or "rape."

eripio, eripere, eripuī, ereptus is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix *ē-* to *rapio*. (For the prefix *ē-* see Appendix P.) It exhibits regular vowel weakening in all four principal parts. Although *eripio* is a synonym of *rapio*, it is also used to mean "snatch" or "rescue" (from danger, death). THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ALL COMPOUNDS OF *RAPIO* FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF *ERIPIO*. WHEN A COMPOUND OF *RAPIO* APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

¹ While the simple verb **nuō* does not occur in the Lat. n. that survives, several compounds (e.g., *abnuō, adnuō, innuō*, and *renuō*) are common.

The basic meaning of *solvō*, *solvere*, *solvī*, *solutus* is "loosen" or "untie" (bonds, ropes). Its extended meanings include "free," "release," or "relax" (persons, souls, limbs). Finally, *solvō* is used to mean "resolve," "acquit," or "discharge" (problems, debts, vows, legal charges). COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM *solvō* DO NOT EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING. WHEN A COMPOUND OF *solvō* APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

miseret miserēre, *miseruit* or *miseritum est* has two third principal parts, which are equivalent in meaning. Both are extremely rare in the Latin that survives.

pudet, *puḋēre*, *puḋuit* or *puḋitum est* has two third principal parts, which are equivalent in meaning. *Puḋitum est* is extremely rare.

The third principal part of *taedet*, *taedēre*, *taesum est* appears only once in the Latin that survives. Slightly more frequent is the compound form *pertaesum est*.

When *quod* means "the fact, that," it introduces a noun clause with a verb in the indicative mood. Such a clause may be used with the impersonal verbs *paenitet*, *piget*, and *pudet* (see §139), but *quod*-the-fact-that clauses also appear frequently with other verbs or in apposition to a variety of nouns or pronouns.

Eius facinus fortissimum meminerimus, quod vulnere accepto vitam consulis servavit.
We shall remember his very brave deed, the fact that, with a wound received, he saved the consul's life.

quominus is a compound conjunction made up of the relative pronoun *quō* (by which degree) and the comparative adverb *minus* (less). It is often written as two separate words (*quō minus*). The use of *quominus* to introduce Prevention clauses (see §138) reflects their origins as Purpose clauses.

	Derivatives	Cognates
<i>cingō</i>	<i>cinch</i> , <i>succinct</i>	
<i>caput</i>	<i>capital</i> , <i>capitulate</i> ; <i>captain</i> ; <i>chapter</i> ; <i>head</i> <i>chief</i> ; <i>decapitate</i>	
<i>orbis</i>	<i>orb</i> ; <i>orbit</i>	
<i>paenitet</i>	<i>penitent</i>	
<i>rapīō</i>	<i>rape</i> ; <i>rapt</i> ; <i>ravish</i> ; <i>raven</i> ; <i>rapid</i>	
<i>solvō</i>	<i>dissolve</i> , <i>solute</i>	<i>forlorn</i> , <i>-less</i> ; <i>loose</i> ; <i>lose</i> ; <i>analysis</i>
<i>taedet</i>	<i>tedium</i>	
<i>vereor</i>	<i>reverse</i>	<i>wary</i> ; <i>aware</i> , <i>steward</i> , <i>guard</i>

§137. Fear Clauses

A verb or other expression of fearing may introduce a subordinate clause that expresses the thing feared. Such a clause, called a Fear clause, is introduced by the conjunction *ut* (that . . . not) or *nē* (that) and has its verb in the subjunctive mood according to the rules of sequence. For example:

<i>Magnopere metuit ne filius in bello moriatur.</i>
Greatly he fears that (his) son in war will die.
He greatly fears that his son will die in war.
<i>Pater timebat ut filius ex bello non disset.</i>
The father was fearing that (his) son (not) from the war had not returned.
The father was fearing that his son had not returned from the war.
<i>Una cura socios movebat: ne Romanis auxilium non mitterent.</i>
One concern the allies (s.o.) was stirring up: that the Romans aid (s.o.) were not sending/would not send.
One concern was stirring up the allies: that the Romans were not sending/would not send aid.

OBSERVATIONS

1. A Fear clause was originally an independent sentence whose verb was an Optative subjunctive expressing a wish in relation to a feeling of fear

Magnopere metuit. Nē filius in bellō moriatur.

He greatly fears. If only his son would not die in war.

Such a paratactic arrangement easily became one sentence

Magnopere metuit ne filius in bellō moriatur.

He greatly fears that his son will die in war

The apparent reversal of the English translations of *ut* and *nē* can be accounted for in this way

What one wishes would happen one fears will not happen (*ut*).

What one wishes would not happen one fears will happen (*nē*).

2. In the third sentence above *nē . . . nōn* (that . . . not) is used to introduce a negative Fear clause. In early Latin the conjunction *ut* introducing such a clause is much more common than *nē . . . nōn*. By the classical period *nē . . . nōn* is much more common than the simple *ut*, and it is regularly used when the expression of fearing is *negated*. For example:

Nōn metuō nē domum post bellum filius nōn redeat.

I do not fear that my son will not return home after the war.

3. The subjunctive verbs in Fear clauses follow the rules of sequence. Thus the syntax of, for example, *moriatur* is present subjunctive, Fear clause, primary sequence. In this sentence the present tense of the subjunctive indicates an action that is *subsequent* to the action of the main verb.² Such a fear for the future may be expressed more emphatically with an active periphrastic.

Magnopere metuit nē filius in bellō moritūrus sit.

He greatly fears that his son is going to/will die in war.

² Although the present subjunctive may also indicate an action that is simultaneous with the main verb, sense makes this less likely in this sentence.

4. In the second sentence above the subjunctive *redisset* is *pluperfect* to indicate an action that is prior to the action of the main verb. In the third sentence *mitterent* is *imperfect* to indicate an action that is either simultaneous with or subsequent to the action of the main verb. The tense of the English translation is determined by the relative time of the subjunctive to the main verb.

☛ DRILL 137 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§138. Prevention Clauses

A verb of hindering or preventing may introduce a subordinate clause that expresses the action hindered or prevented. Such a clause, called a **Prevention clause**, is introduced by the conjunction *quōminus*, *nē*, or *quā* and has its verb in the subjunctive mood according to the rules of sequence. For example:

Quid tibi obstat *nē* Rōmā discōdās? (obstō, obstāre, obstāvi, obstātum stand in the way, hinder, block)

What hinders you in order that from Rome you may not depart?

What hinders you from departing from Rome?

Timor mē dēterrūit quōminus in senātū bene dicerem.

Fear deterred me by which the less in the Senate I might speak well. (deterren

dēterrēre dēterrui dēterrui deter: prevent)

Fear deterred me from speaking well in the Senate.

Bellum non dēterrēbit quā agricolae in agris labōrent.

War will not prevent that the farmers in the fields not work.

War will not prevent the farmers from working in the fields.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Prevention clauses closely resemble Purpose clauses. (Cf. the use of *nē* to introduce negative Purpose clauses and of *quō* to introduce Purpose clauses containing a comparative adjective or adverb.)

2. When the main clause is *negated*, or when negation is implied, the Prevention clause is introduced by the conjunction *quā* (as in the third sentence) or, less frequently, by *quōminus*. When the main clause is *not negated*, the Prevention clause is introduced by *quōminus* or *nē*.

3. The English words "from . . . ing" (employing the English gerund) are used in translating Prevention clauses. Sometimes the *subject of a Prevention clause* is better translated as the *direct object of the verb of preventing*, as in the third sentence.

Certain verbs of prohibiting or forbidding are not followed by a Prevention clause but regularly take an Object Infinitive with a Subject Accusative. For example.

Cicero sine prohibuit eos ut iniquitēre. (prohibeo, prohibere, prohibui, prohibitus

prevent, prohibit, forbid)

Cicero prohibuit eos ut iniquitēre. (prohibeo, prohibere, prohibui, prohibitus

Cicero prohibuit eos ut iniquitēre. (prohibeo, prohibere, prohibui, prohibitus

Idem de his loquitur. (vetō, vetāre, vetui, vetitus forbid)

Idem de his loquitur. (vetō, vetāre, vetui, vetitus forbid)

OBSERVATION

Object Infinitives that follow verbs such as *prohibeō* and *vetō* may be translated with the English words "from _____ing" or "to _____" according to correct English usage.

☛ DRILL 138 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§139. Impersonal Constructions II: *miseret*, *paenitet*, *piget*, *pudet*, *taedet*, *rēfert*, *interest*

Two groups of impersonal verbs, those expressing emotions and those expressing concern or interest, have a variety of words and constructions that may function as their *subjects*.

Verbs Expressing Emotion

miseret, miserere, miserui or *miseruimus* it moves (one) to pity
paenitet, paenitere, paenitu it causes (one) to repent or regret
piget, pigere, piguit it disgusts (one), it firs (one)
pudet, pudere, puduit or *puduitum est* it makes (one) ashamed
taedet, taedere, taesum est it makes (one) tired or sick

OBSERVATION

The first and third principal parts of these verbs are given in the *third person, singular* because impersonal verbs appear in that person and number only. *Miseret* and *pudet* have alternate third principal parts formed as impersonal passives. The third principal part of *taedet* is also an impersonal passive.

The *person affected* by an emotion is expressed by an Accusative, Direct Object, and the *cause* or *object* of the emotion is regularly expressed in the *genitive* case. For example:

Illarum me miseret.

Those women move me to pity.
 I pity those women.

Num Catilinam scelus paenituit?

(His) crimes did not cause Catiline to
 repent, did they?

Catiline did not repent his crimes, did he?

OBSERVATION

Because the syntax of Latin sentences using these verbs is so different from the way English would express similar ideas, literal translations should be avoided. Translations such as the second ones given above are to be preferred.

With the verbs *paenitet*, *piget*, and *pudet* the genitive that expresses the cause or object of the emotion may be replaced by two other constructions:

1. Subject Infinitive (with or without a Subject Accusative)
2. Subject clause introduced by the conjunction *quod*, "the fact that"

For example:

<i>Te pudeat haec dicere.</i> (Subject Infinitive)
Let saying these things make you ashamed.
Let it shame you to say these things.
<i>Euni paenitebat quod nos reliquerat.</i> (subject clause introduced by quod)
The fact that he had abandoned us was causing him to regret.
He was regretting the fact that he had abandoned us.

Verbs Expressing Concern or Interest

<i>reŕert, reŕerre, reŕultat</i> it is important, it concerns
<i>interest, interesse, interfuit</i> it is important, it concerns

The person to whom something is important or of concern is regularly expressed by the feminine singular ablative of a possessive adjective: *meā, nostrā, tuā, or vestrā*.³ The person concerned may also be expressed in the genitive case. The cause or object of concern may be expressed by any of these:

1. Neuter pronoun in the nominative case
2. Subject Infinitive (with or without a Subject Accusative)
3. Substantive Ut clause (subject clause); negative = *nē*
4. Indirect Question

For example:

<i>Idne hoc reŕert?</i> (neuter pronoun)
Is this thing important to you?
<i>Mea reŕert audire tuam sententiam.</i> (Subject Infinitive)
To hear your opinion is important to me.
<i>Mea maxime interest ut quam primum discedas.</i> (Substantive Ut clause)
It concerns me very greatly that you depart as soon as possible.
<i>Omniū interfereat quid consili consules caperent.</i> (Indirect Question)
It was important to all people what (if) plan the consuls were to form.
What plan the consuls were forming was important to all people.

OBSERVATIONS

1. *Reŕert* is a compound verb formed by the addition of *rē* (feminine singular ablative of *rēs*) to the verb *ferō*. The feminine singular ablative of the possessive adjective in each of the first two sentences agrees with this prefixed *rē*: "it bears in respect to my situation (your situation)."
2. In the third sentence the feminine singular ablative of the possessive adjective (*meā*) is used with *interest* by analogy with the usage with *reŕert*. The genitive of the person concerned was originally used with *interest* only, but also by analogy occasionally appears with *reŕert*.
3. Literal English translations of sentences with *reŕert* and *interest* should be avoided. Translations such as those given above are to be preferred.

☛ DRILL 139 MAY NOW BE DONE.

3. The reflexive-possessive adjective *sui* is used rarely with *reŕert* or *interest* in Indirect Statement. In such situations, *sui* refers to the subject of the verb that introduces the Indirect Statement.

§140. Direct and Indirect Reflexives

Reflexive pronouns and reflexive-possessive adjectives have been said to *refer to the subjects of the clauses or sentences in which they appear* (see §44). A reflexive so used may be called a **direct reflexive**. When a reflexive word in a subordinate clause points *outside* its own clause to the *subject of the main verb*, it is called an **indirect reflexive**.

When the subject of an infinitive in Indirect Statement is different from the subject of the main verb, a reflexive pronoun or reflexive-possessive adjective appearing within the Indirect Statement may be either a direct or an indirect reflexive. For example:

Rex sensit civēs suam urbem regere nō posse.	(direct reflexive)
The king perceived that the citizens were not able to rule <i>their</i> own city.	
Rex sensit civēs se ōdisse.	(indirect reflexive)
The king perceived that the citizens hated <i>him</i> .	

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence *sua* is a direct reflexive because it refers to *civēs*, the subject of the clause in which *sua* appears. In the second sentence *se* is an indirect reflexive because it refers to *rēx*, the subject of the main clause.
2. Context helps to determine whether a reflexive is direct or indirect. Sometimes the intensive adjective *ipse* modifies a reflexive pronoun and identifies it as direct or indirect. For example

Rex sensit civēs *se ipsos* ōdisse. (direct reflexive)
The king perceived that the citizens hated *themselves*.

In subordinate clauses such as Purpose clauses, Indirect Commands, and Indirect Questions, reflexive pronouns and reflexive-possessive adjectives are often *indirect* reflexives. That is, they refer to the *subjects of the main clauses* rather than to the subjects of the subordinate clauses in which they appear. For example:

Imperator milites hortatus est ut gloriā sibi caperent.
The commander urged the soldiers that they win glory <i>for him</i> .
Caesar nescit cur socii suis verbis parere nōint.
Caesar does not know why the allies are unwilling to obey <i>his</i> words.

Sometimes reflexives are freely used to refer to grammatical elements that are *not the subject* of any clause, and in certain authors, direct *and* indirect reflexives are found within the same clause. For example:

Ariovistus respondit . . . nēminem sēcum sine *sua* perniciē contendisse. (Caesar, *De Bellō Gallicō* I 36)

contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus struggle perniciēs, perniciēs *f.* destruction, ruin

Ariovistus answered . . . that no one had contended with *him* without *his own* ruin.

OBSERVATION

In this sentence *se* is an indirect reflexive referring to Ariovistus, the subject of the main verb. *Sua* is a direct reflexive referring to *nēminem*, the subject of the Indirect Statement.

☛ DRILL 140 MAY NOW BE DONE.

§141. Subjunctive by Attraction

It has been observed that subordinate clauses in Indirect Statement regularly have their verbs in the subjunctive to indicate that the clause is part of the original direct statement (see §108). Sometimes the subjunctive mood is also used in clauses that are subordinate to infinitives *not* in Indirect Statement or to other clauses with verbs in the subjunctive. A subjunctive verb so used is called the **Subjunctive by Attraction** and follows the rules of sequence. For example:

Sapientis est fugere ubi periculum sentiat.

It is characteristic of a wise man to flee when he perceives danger.

Scisne quid pater priusquam mortuus sit dixit?

Do you know what the father said before he died?

Hortabatur ut eadem quae dixisset dicerem.

She was urging that I say the same things that she had said.

OBSERVATIONS

- 1 The information in a subordinate clause with a Subjunctive by Attraction is *essential* to the thought of the clause or infinitive on which it depends. For example, the clause *ubi periculum sentiat* in the first sentence indicates the *essential circumstance* under which a wise man would flee. An indicative verb in such a clause would indicate *nonessential* information.
- 2 The syntax of, for example, *dixisset* is *pluperfect subjunctive, Subjunctive by Attraction, secondary sequence (prior time)*.

§142. Supine

In addition to the infinitive and the gerund, there is a third *verbal noun* in Latin called the **supine**, which appears in *only two forms*, the *accusative singular* and the *ablative singular*. The stem for the supine of *all verbs* may be obtained by dropping the ending from the fourth principal part. To this stem the endings **-um** (accusative) and **-ū** (ablative) are added. For example:

4th Principal Part	Stem	Accusative Supine	Ablative Supine
lectus	lect-	lectum	lectū
visus	vis-	visum	visū

OBSERVATION

The endings of the supine have been borrowed from the fourth declension masculine/feminine endings.

Each case of the supine has only *one syntactic function*. The accusative supine *expresses purpose with a verb of motion* (or a verb implying motion). The ablative supine is an *Ablative of Respect*. For example:

Hostes oppugnatum patriam nostram veniunt.

The enemies are coming for the purpose of attacking/for attacking our country.

Deus superat—si hoc fas est dictū.

He surpasses the gods—if this thing is right in respect to saying/to say.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The accusative supine in the first sentence appears with a verb that expresses motion, *veniunt*. It takes a direct object, *patriam*. The accusative supine is translated “for the purpose of _____ing” or “to _____.”⁴
2. The ablative supine may be translated literally, “in respect to _____ing,” but an adverbial use of the English infinitive, “to _____,” will often be more idiomatic.

§143. Accusative of Respect

Many Roman poets (and a few prose writers as well) chose to imitate Greek syntax in Latin for two distinct uses of the accusative case, *each* of which is sometimes called the **Greek Accusative**.

When a noun in the accusative case is used to qualify or limit an adjective (often a perfect passive participle), it is called the **Accusative of Respect**.⁵ For example:

<i>Aeneās</i>	<i>ōs umerōsque deō similis</i>	(<i>umerus</i> , <i>umerus</i> , <i>shoulder</i>)
<i>Aeneās</i>	<i>similar to a god in (respect to) (his) face and shoulders</i>	(<i>Vergil</i> , <i>Aeneid</i> I.589)
<i>hōc concussa metu mentem</i>	(<i>concubō</i> , <i>concitere</i> , <i>concussī</i> , <i>concussus</i> , <i>strike</i>)	
<i>(She) having been struck in respect to (her) mind by this fear</i>	(<i>Vergil</i> , <i>Aeneid</i> XII.168)	

The syntax of each italicized word (*ōs*, *umerōs*, *mentem*) is **Accusative of Respect**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Accusative of Respect developed from the idea of *extent* inherent in the accusative case. Thus, for example, *ōs umerōsque deō similis* means “similar to a god to the extent of (his) face and shoulders,” “similar to a god as far as his face and shoulders.”
2. The Accusative of Respect is similar in sense to the more common Ablative of Respect (see §39).
3. Sometimes the noun in the Accusative of Respect is an adjective used as a substantive. For example: *omnia sapiēns*, “wise in (respect to) all things.”

§144. Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb

In addition to the active and passive voices, ancient Greek has a *middle* voice, whose forms are most often identical to those of the passive. The middle voice in Greek, which frequently takes a direct object, is often used for actions that benefit or physically affect the subject.⁶ Certain *passive* verb forms in Latin are used to represent Greek *middle* voice verbs and so may take an Accusative, Direct Object. For example.

4. The rare future passive infinitive (see §104) is made with the accusative supine and the impersonal passive infinitive of *ēū*. For example: *Putō eum captum iri* (I think that there is a going to capture him, I think that he is going to be captured).

5. The Accusative of Respect is also known as the Accusative of the Part Affected.

6. The existence of the middle voice in Greek is a remnant of the system of voice in IE, which had active and middle voices *only*. Many deponent verbs in Latin—verbs with passive forms that take direct objects—were in original middle voice verbs.

Ferrum cingitur. (cingo; cingere; cinct, cinctus surround; gird [oneself])

He girds a sword on himself. (Vergil, *Aeneid* II.511)

... *cinctus (est) honore caput.* (caput, capitis *n.* head)

(He) surrounded (his) head with honor. (Ovid, *Ars Amatoria* III.392)

The syntax of each italicized word (*ferrum, caput*) is Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb.

OBSERVATION

Although *cingitur* and *cinctus (est)* are *passive* in form, they should be considered *middle* the subject of each *performs* the action of the verb, and each verb takes an Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb. Verbs that mean "put on" or "take off" (clothing, armor) may take such an accusative.

§145. Historical Infinitive

In vivid narration the present infinitive may appear in place of a finite verb in the imperfect or perfect tense (simple past). An infinitive so used, usually with a *subject* in the *nominative* case, is called a **Historical Infinitive**.⁷ For example:

Rōmāni ex omnibus partibus, signo dato, oppugnare.
The Romans from all parts, with the signal having been given, attacked.
Caecilina in prima acie stare, socios hortari.
Caecilina was standing in the first battle line; he was encouraging his allies.
Augusto mortuo, in urbe timere, in provinciis bellum expectare.
With Augustus having died, in the city people were afraid, in the provinces people were expecting war.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence the present active infinitive *oppugnare* stands for a perfect active indicative verb, *past* time, *simple* aspect. In the second sentence *stare* and *hortari* stand for imperfect active indicative verbs, *past* time, *progressive* aspect. Context helps to determine which past tense a historical infinitive represents.
2. The *subjects* of the Historical Infinitives in the first two sentences are *nominative*. The *nominative* subject of a Historical Infinitive is an *exception* to the general rule that subjects of infinitives are in the accusative case (see §107).
3. In the third sentence the Historical Infinitives *timere* and *expectare* appear without subjects. Such a usage emphasizes the verbal action *alone*. However, when a Historical Infinitive appears without a subject, a subject must be supplied (e.g. people, men, soldiers, they).
4. Several Historical Infinitives often appear together when a scene of intense activity is reported. Historical Infinitives may also appear in combination with finite verbs.

DRILL 141–145 MAY NOW BE DONE.

⁷ The Historical Infinitive may look back to the earliest stage of the verb's development, in which a verbal noun (the infinitive) with no endings to indicate person and number was placed with a noun subject simply to name the action being performed.

Short Readings

1. Sosia, Amphitruo's slave, remains firm in the face of his master's threats to cut out his tongue.

tamen quin loquar haec uti facta sunt hic,

numquam ullō modō mē potes dēterrere. (PLAUTUS, *AMPHITRUO* 559–60)

utī = ut

2. Megadorus describes his uncomfortable relationship with his would-be father-in-law, Euclio.

. . . fastidit mei

quia videt mē suam amicitiam velle: mōre hominum facit;

nam sī opulentus it peritum pauperioris grātiā,

pauper metuit congregiri, per metum male rem gent.

idem, quandō occasiō illaec periit, post sēro cupit. (PLAUTUS, *AVULUARIA* 245–49)

congregior (con- + gradior) go near, approach,

congregiri = archaic form of congregi

fastidiō, fastidire, fastidivi or fastidii, fastiditus

be scornful (of), disdain (+ gen.); subject

is Euclio

illaec = archaic form of illa

occasiō, occasiōis f. opportunity, chance

opulentus, -a, -um rich

pauper, pauperis poor

quandō (conj.) when

sēro (adv.) late, post sēro, too late

3. After doing all the talking, the slave Olympio won't let Chalinus answer.

abeō intrō taedet tui sermōnis. (PLAUTUS, *CASINA* 142)

intrō (adv.) within, inside

sermō, sermōnis m. speech, talk, conversation

4. After explaining his plan of having one girl pretend to be two, Palaestrio lists possible excuses to avoid any request to see both girls at the same time

facilest: trēcentae possunt causae conligi:

"nōn domist, abiit ambulātum, dormit, ornātur, lavat,

prandet, potat: . . ." (PLAUTUS, *MILES GLORIOSUS* 250–52)

colligō (con- + legō), colligere, collēgi, collēctus

collect, amass

dormiō, dormire, dormivi or dormiit, dormitum

sleep, be asleep

lavō, lavāre or lavere, lāvī, lautus or lōtus wash

(oneself)

ornō (1-tr.) prepare, arrange; dress, beautify

potō (1-tr.) drink

prandeō, prandere, prandi, prānsus eat breakfast;

eat lunch

5. Antipho's daughter Panegyris explains to her father why neither she nor her two sisters are willing to be remarried. (The three sisters are waiting for their long lost husbands)

Pan. Stultitast, pater, vēnātum dūcere invītās canēs.

hostis est uxor, invita quae viro nuptum datur.

Ant. Certumne est neutram vostrārum* persequi imperium patris?

Pan. Persequimur, nam quō[†] dedisti[‡] nuptum, abire nolumus.

(PLAUTUS, *STICHUS* 139–42)

*vostrārum, sc. sorōrum

[†]quō = ab eō cui

[‡]dedisti, sc. nōs as direct object

canis, canis *m.* or *f.* dog

invītus, -a, -um unwilling

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nuptus marry (of a woman)

persequor (per- + sequor) follow earnestly, conform to

stultitia stultitiae *f.* foolishness, stupidity

uxor, uxōris *f.* wife

vēnor (1-intr.) go hunting, hunt

- 6 A despairing Cassandra addresses her mother, Hecuba.

mater, optumārum multo mulier melior mulierum,

missa sum[†] superstitiōsis hariolatiōnibus;

mē Apollō fātis fandis dēmentem invitam ciet.

virginēs vereor aequālīs, patris meī meum factum pudet,

optumī viri. mea māter, tui mē miseret, meī piget.

optumam prōgeniem Priamō peperistī extrā mē. hoc dolet.

(ENNIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE FRAG.* 34–39)

[†]mittō *here*, drive

aequālīs, aequāle equal, of the same age

ciēō, ciēre, civi, citus rouse, stir up

dēmēns, dēmentis insane, (raving) mad

doleō, dolēre, dolui, — cause pain, be painful

extrā (prep. + acc.) outside, except

hariolatiō, hariolatiōnis *f.* prophecy

invītus, -a, -um unwilling

mulier, mulieris *f.* woman

pariō, parere, peperī, partus give birth to, bear

prōgeniēs, *prōgeniē *f.* offspring, progeny

superstitiōsus, -a, -um ecstatic, exalted

virgō, virginis *f.* maiden, virgin

7. A fragment from a lost Ennian tragedy, *Erechtheus*

lapideō sunt corde multī quōs nōn miseret nēminis.*

(ENNIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE FRAG.* 140)

*The redundant negative strengthens the negative idea.

cor, cordis *n.* heart

lapideus, -a, -um (made of) stone

8. The poet employs alliteration to describe a gory death in battle.

ōscitat in campis caput ā cervīce revolsum

sēmianimēsque micant oculi lūcemque requirunt. (ENNIUS, *SĒD. INC. FRAG.* 483–84)

cervix, cervicis *f.* neck

micō, micāre, mikuī, quiver, dart, flicker

ōscitō (1-intr.) gape

requirō (re- + quaerō), requirere, requisū or

requisivī, requisitus try to find, look for

revellō, revellere, revelli, revulsus tear, tear away

sēmianimis, sēmianime half alive; the first *l-* of

sēmianimēs is consonantal

9. Micio discusses with his brother Demea the delinquent behavior of Demea's son Aeschinus.

Micio. quid fēcit? *Demea.* quid ille fēcerit? *quem neque pudet
quicquam neque metuit quemquam neque lāgem putat
tenēre sē illam . . . (TERENCE, *ADELPHOS* 84–86)

*fēcerit, perfect subj in implied Indirect Question, sc. Rogāsne

10. Parmenio describes Philumena's behavior toward her mother-in-law, Sostrata, since being forced to move into her mother-in-law's house.

Parmenio. sī quandō ad eam* accesserat†
cōnfābulatum, fugere ē cōnspectū ilicō,
vidēre nōlle . . . (TERENCE, *HECYRA* 181–83)

*eam refers to Philumena.

†sī quando . . . accesserat = cum . . . accesserat subject is Sostrata

cōnspectus, conspectus *m.* (range of) sight, view

cōnfābulor (1-intr.) converse, have a talk

ilicō (adv) at once, immediately

11. In love with a prostitute, the young and poor Phaedria tries to get the pimp Dorio to listen to his excuses one more time.

Phaedria. audi quod dicam. *Dorio.* at enim taedet iam audire eadem mīlēns.
Ph. at nunc dicam quod lubenter audias. *Do.* loquere, audiō.
(TERENCE, *PHORMIO* 487–88)

at (conj.) but

libenter (adv.) gladly

mīlēns (adv.) a thousand times

12. While advocating that Pompey be given command in the east, Cicero explains and decries the attitude of many nations toward Rome.

difficile est dictū, Quiritēs, quantō in odiō sīmus apud exterās nātiōnēs propter
eorum quōs ad eās per hōs annōs cum imperiō mīsimus libidinēs et iniuriās.
(CICERO, *PRO LĒGE MĀNILIĀ* 65)

exter, extera, exterum external, foreign

iniūria, iniūriae *f.* injury, injustice

libidō, libidinis *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust

nātiō, nātiōnis *f.* nation

Quiritēs, Quiritium *m. pl.* Quirites, the name for Roman citizens in their public capacity

- 13 Cicero imagines what the populace would say to the prosecutor M. Juventus Laterensis if it were able to speak with one voice. Juventus was quaestor in Cyrene in 63 B.C.E., the year of the Catilinarian conspiracy.

"Dēsiderāunt tē," inquit, "oculī mei, cum tū essēs Cyrēnīs; mē enim quam sociōs tuā frui virtūte malēbam, et quō plus intererat, eō plus aberat ā mē, cum tē nōn vidēbam " (CICERO, *PRŌ PLANCIO* 13)

Cyrēnae, Cyrēnārum *f. pl.* Cyrene, a town in northwest Libya

dēsiderō (1-tr.) long for, desire

fruo frui, fructus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)

inquam (defective verb) say inquit = 3rd sing. pres. act. indic.

- 14 Cicero pauses in a speech to comment on the value of his own friendship.

etenim ego de me tantum audeo dicere amicitiam meam voluptatī plūribus quam praesidiō fuisse, mēque vehementer vitāe meae paenitēret si in meā familiāritate locus esset nemini nisi litigiōso aut nocentī. (CICERO, *PRŌ PLANCIO* 82)

familiāritās, familiāritātis *f.* close friendship

litigiōsus, -a, -um fond of going to law, litigious

nocētus, nocētis harmful, guilty

praesidium, praesidiū *n.* guard; defense, protection

vehementer (adv.) violently, strongly

voluptās, voluptātis *f.* pleasure, joy

15. After he speaks about appropriate embellishment in oratory, Crassus notes that much depends on the makeup of the audience and other factors.

rēfert etiam quī audiant, senātus an populus an rūdicēs: frequentēs an paucī an singulī, et quālēs: ipsīque ōrātorēs quā sint aetate, honōre, auctoritate, dēbet vidēri; tempus, pācis an bellī, festinātiōnis an ōtiī. (CICERO, *DE ŌRĀTORĒ* III.211)

festinātiō, festinātiōnis *f.* haste, hurry

frequēns, frequentis crowded; present in crowds

iūdex, iūdicis *m.* juror, judge

ōtium, ōtiū *n.* leisure

singuli, -ae, -a individual, single, one at a time

16. Scipio, a character in Cicero's dialogue, recalls a story about the newborns, Romulus and Remus.

1s* igitur, ut nātus sit, cum Remō frātre dīctur ab Amūliō, rēge Albānō, ob labefactandī rēgnī timōrem ad[†] Tiberim expōnī iussus esse . . . (CICERO, *DE RE PUBLICA* II.4)

*is refers to Romulus.

[†]ad, *here*, at, near

Albānus, -a, -um of or belonging to Alba Longa, a Latin city predating Rome; Alban

Amūlius, Amūliū *m.* Amulius, legendary king of Alba Longa

expōnō (ex- + pono) place out; expose, abandon

labefactō (1-tr.) weaken, undermine

rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm; kingship, rule

Tiberis, Tiberis *m.* (the) Tiber, a river that flows through Rome; Tiberim = *acc. sing.*

17. Cicero recalls an outstanding trait of the orator Hortensius.

primum memoria* tanta -quantam in nullo cognovisse me arbitror ut quae
seculum commentatus esset, ea sine scripto† verbis eisdem redderet quibus cogi-
tasset (CICERO, BRUTUS 301)

*memoria, n. of Hortensius

†scriptum, scripti n. writing, script

commentor (1-tr.) prepare beforehand, practice

reddo (red- + do) give back, reproduce, repeat

18. Cicero explains why an orator must have a thorough knowledge of history

nescite autem quid antequam natus sis acciderit, id est semper esse puerum. quid
enim est aetas hominis nisi ea memoria rerum veterum cum superiorum aetate
contextitur? (CICERO, ORATOR 120)

contexto, contexere, contextui, contextus weave together, connect, link

superior, superius upper; previous, earlier

19. Referring to the long, fortunate life of the Persian king Cyrus, Cato speaks about the pur-
suits of old age.

hac igitur fortuna frui licet senibus nec aetas impedit quo minus et ceterarum rerum
et in primis* agri colendi studia teneamus usque ad ultimum tempus senectutis
(CICERO, DE SENECTUTE 60)

*in primis, here, especially, above all

colo, colere, colui, cultus cultivate, tend

fruo, frui, fructus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)

senectus, senectutis f. old age

senex, senis old; as masc. subst., old man

ultimus -a, -um farthest; last, final

usque (adv.) continuously, all the way

20. One of the most important laws of friendship

haec igitur lex in amicitia sancitur, ut neque rogemus* res turpes nec faciamus*
rogati. turpis enim excusatio est et minime accipienda cum in ceteris peccatis.
tum si quis contra rem publicam se amici causa fecisse fateatur.†

(CICERO, DE AMICITIA 40)

*ut . . . rogemus . . . faciamus Substantive Ut clause in apposition to lex

†fateor, here, claim

excusatio, excusationis f. excuse, justification

peccatum, peccati n. error, mistake; offense

sancio, sancire, sancti, sanctus ratify, confirm

21. The speaker stresses the importance of polished writing.

fieri autem potest ut recte quis sentiat et id quod sentit politè eloqui non possit; sed mandare quemquam litteris cogitationes suas, qui eas nec disponere nec illustrare possit nec delectatione aliqua allicere lectorem, hominis est intemperanter abutentis et otio et litteris. (CICERO, *TUSCULANAE DISPUTATIONES* I.6)

abutor (ab- + utor) abuse (+ abl.)

allicio allicere, allēxi, allēctus entice, attract, lure

cogitatio, cogitationis *f.* thought

delectatio delectationis *f.* delight

dispono (dis- + pono) arrange

eloquor (ē- + loquor) speak

illustratio (1-tr.) illuminate, make clear

intemperanter (adv.) immoderately

lector, lectoris *m.* reader

mandō (1-tr.) entrust, commit

otium, otii *n.* leisure

polite (adv.) in a polished way

recte (adv.) rightly, correctly

22. With a series of rhetorical questions Cicero expresses his exasperation at Antony's actions.

omniane bonis viris quae facere possunt facienda sunt, etiamne* si turpia, si perniciosa erunt, si facere omnino non licebit? quid autem turpius aut foedius aut quod minus deceat quam contra senatum, contra civis, contra patriam exercitum ducere? quid vero magis vituperandum quam id facere quod non liceat? licet autem nemini contra patriam ducere exercitum . . . (CICERO, *PHILIPPICS XIII* 14)

*-ne implies that the preceding question must be repeated

deceat, decēre, decuit it is becoming it is proper

foedus, -a, -um foul, loathsome, atrocious

perniciōsus, -a, -um destructive

vituperō (1 tr.) find fault with, criticize

23. A paragraph from a letter to Atticus on the unsavory state of affairs in the Roman Republic

dē rē publicā nihil habeo ad tē scribere* nisi summum odium omnium hominum in eos qui tenent omnia mutatonis tamen spes nulla. sed, quod facile sentiās, taedet ipsum Pompeium eumque vehementer paenitet. non provideo satis quem exitum futurum putem; sed certē videntur haec aliquot eruptura. (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* II.22.6)

*scribere, here, infin. expressing purpose

aliquot (adv.) in some direction

erumpo, erumpere, erūpi, eruptus break out, burst forth

exitus, exitus *m.* outcome

mutatio mutatonis *f.* change

provideo (pro- + video) foresee

vehementer (adv.) violently, strongly

24. A passage from a letter of Caesar to Cicero quoted in a letter of Cicero to his friend Atticus

neque illud me movet: quod si qui a me dimissi sunt discessisse dicuntur ut mihi rursus bellum inferrent; nihil enim malo quam et me mei similem esse et illos sui. (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* IX.16.2)

dimittō (dis- + mittō) send away, let go

rursus (adv.) again

25. In a letter to Atticus, Cicero admits implicitly to sharing in a common conceit.

nēmō umquam neque* poēta neque* ōrātor fuit quī quemquam meliōrem quam
sē arbitrārētur. (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* XIV.20.3)

*The redundant negatives strengthen the negative idea.

26. After admonishing Cicero not to let his grief over the death of his daughter keep him from actively participating in political life at a time of crisis, Sulpicius finally shows a little restraint.

plūra mē ad tē dē hāc rē scribere pudet, ne videar prūdētiaē tuāe diffidere.
(CICERO, *AD FAMILIARēs* IV.5.6)

diffidō, diffidere, —, diffisum lack confidence in, have no faith in (+ dat.)
prūdētia, prūdētiaē f. good sense, judgment, prudence

27. Cicero writes to Tiro, his freedman, secretary, and friend.

sic habētō,* mī Tīrō, nēmīnem esse quī mē amet quin idem tē amet; et cum tuā et
meā maximē interest tē valēre, tum multis est cūrae. (CICERO, *AD FAMILIARēs* XVI.4.4)

*habētō, 2nd sing. fut. act. imper., (ye shall) consider
Tīrō, Tīrōnis m. Tiro

28. Caesar reports an early contact between himself and the Aedui, a Gallic tribe.

Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs* dēfendere nōn possent, legātōs ad Caesarem mittunt†
rogātum auxilium . . . (CAESAR, *DE BELLō GALLICō* I.11)

*iīs, refers to the Helvetians, a Gallic tribe
†mittunt, historical use of present tense; translate as perfect
Aeduī, Aeduōrum m. pl. (the) Aedui, a Gallic tribe
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendi, dēfēnsus protect, defend

29. When explaining his reasons for crossing the Rhine and pursuing war against certain German tribes, Caesar mentions a plea of one tribe allied to him.

Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amicitiam
fēcērant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret quod graviter
ab Suēbīs premerentur. (CAESAR, *DE BELLō GALLICō* IV.16)

obses, obsidis m. or f. hostage
Suēbī, Suēbōrum m. pl. (the) Suebi, a group of German tribes
Trānsrhēnānī, Trānsrhēnānōrum m. pl. those living across the Rhine
Ubiī, Ubiōrum m. pl. (the) Ubii, a German tribe

- 30 While on the march, the legions of Q. Titurius Sabinus and L. Aurunculeius Cotta are ambushed by the Eburones, a Belgic tribe led by Ambiorix. Several lieutenants are seriously injured.

hīs rēbus permōtus Q. Titurius cum procul Ambiorigem suōs cohortantem cōspexisset, interpretem suum Cn. Pompeium ad eum mittit* rogātum ut sibi mīlitibusque parcat. (CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ* V 36)

*mittit, historical use of present tense, here introduces both secondary (cōspexisset) and primary (parcat) sequence, the latter to emphasize the Indirect Command

Ambiorix, Ambiorigis *m.* Ambiorix
cohortor (co- + hortor) (1-tr) exhort, encourage
cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspexi, conspectus
perceive, observe

interpretes, interpretis *m.* or *f.* go-between, agent
interpreter

parcō, parcere, peperci parsūrus be merciful, be sparing (+ dat.)

permovēō (per- + movēō) thoroughly move, disturb

Cn. Pompeius, Cn. Pompeiī *m.* Gn. Pompey
procul (adv.) at a distance, from a distance
Q. Titurius, Q. Tituriī *m.* Q. Titurius

31. Caesar summarizes the military situation after he has pursued and hemmed in the troops led by Afranius and Petreius, two of Pompey's generals.

sī proelium committerētur, propinquitās castrōrum celerem superatis ex fuga receptum dabat.* hac de causa cōstituērat signa inferentibus resistere, prior proeliō nōn lacessere. (CAESAR, *DE BELLŌ CIVILI* I 82)

*dabat, imperf. indic. used for vividness in apodosis of Present Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence

committō (con- + mittō) join, engage in
lacessō, lacessere, lacessi or lacessivi, lacessitus
challenge, provoke, rouse

propinquitās, propinquitātis *f.* nearness, proximity

receptus, receptus *m.* withdrawal, retreat

resistō, resistere, restiti, — halt, make a stand
against, resist (+ dat.)

32. Varro discusses the precise meaning of the verb for

fātur is qui primum homo significābilem ore mittit vōcem. ab eō, antequam ita fāciant, pueri dicuntur infāntēs; cum id faciunt, iam fārī.

(VARRO, *DE LINGUĀ LATĪNĀ* VI.52)

infāns, infāntis not speaking; *as subst.*, infant

significābilis, significābile capable of conveying meaning, meaningful

33. The historian describes the scene after Marius and the Roman forces win a bloody battle against Jugurtha, a Numidian king.

tum spectāculum horribile in campis patentibus: sequi, fugere, occidī, capi; equi atque viri adfecti, ac multi vulneribus acceptis neque fugere posse neque quietem pati, nūti modo ac statim concidere . . . (SALLUST, *BELLUM JUGURTHAE* 101)

affligō, affligere, afflū, afflictus dash, strike, cast down; injure, shatter

concidō (con- + cadō) fall down, collapse, fall dead

equus, equi *m.* horse

horribilis, horribile terrifying, dreadful

nutor, nūti, nūsus or nīsus sum rest upon, rely upon; make an effort, strive

occidō, occidere, occidī, occisus kill, slaughter

pateō, patēre, patui, — lie open

quies, quietis *f.* rest, repose; inaction

spectāculum, spectāculi *n.* sight, spectacle

statim (adv.) immediately

34. The historian describes the surprising fusion of the fugitive Trojans and the native people of Italy.

hī* postquam in ūna moenia convēnere, dispari genere, dissimili linguā, alius aliō mōre viventēs, incredibile memorātū est quam facile coaluerint; ita brevī multitudō diversa atque vaga concordia civitas facta erat. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 6)

*hī refers to the Trojans and the native Italians

†brevī, sc. tempore

coalēscō, coalēscere, coalui, coalitum grow

together, combine, coalesce

concordia, concordiae *f.* harmony

conveniō (con- + veniō) come together

dispār, disparis unequal, different

diversus, -a, -um different

incrēdibilis, incredibile unbelievable, incredible

lingua, linguae *f.* tongue; language

memorō (1-tr.) recount, recall, tell

multitūdō, multitudinis *f.* multitude, mob

vagus, -a, -um roaming, wandering

35. The historian describes the virtue of the citizen of the early Roman Republic.

sē quisque hostem ferire, mūrum ascendere, conspici dum tale facinus faceret, properābat. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 7)

ascendō, ascendere, ascendi, ascēsus climb up, ascend, scale

cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspexi, cōspectus perceive, observe

facinus, facinoris *n.* deed

feriō, ferire, —, — strike, hit

properō (1-tr.) hasten, rush; be eager; hurry to bring it about that

36. After the historian describes the moral decline in Roman society, he comments on how Catiline made use of the situation

in tantā tamque corruptā civitate Catilina, id quod factū facillimum erat, omnium flāgitiorum atque facinorum circum sē tamquam stipātorum catervas habebat.

(SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 14)

caterva, catervae *f.* throng, crowd, troop

circum (prep. + acc.) around

corruptus, -a, -um corrupt

facinus, facinoris *n.* deed; crime

flāgitium, flāgitii *n.* shame, outrage, disgrace

stipātor, stipātoris *m.* bodyguard, attendant

tamquam (conj.) as it were, as if

37. Speaking in the senate in the debate about punishment for the Catilinarian conspirators, a young Julius Caesar credits the ancestors with good judgment.

maiores nostri, patres conscripti, neque consili neque audaciae umquam egredi;
neque illis superbia obstabat quod minus aliena instituta, si modo proba erant, imi-
tarentur. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILINAE* 51)

alienus, -a, -um belonging to another; alien,
foreign

egredi, egredi egredi, — lack, want, need (+ gen.)

imitator (1-tr.) copy, follow imitate

Institutum, instituti n. practice, custom, usage

probus, -a, -um excellent, well-developed; upright,
virtuous

superbia, superbiae f. pride; arrogance,

haughtiness

38. Queen Dido graciously welcomes a band of surviving Trojans.

tum breviter Didō vultum demissa profatur:

"soluite corde metum, Teucri, secludite curas," (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.561 -62)

cor, cordis n. heart; mind

demitto (de- + mitto) let down, drop

profatur (pro- + for) speak out

secludo, secludere, seclusi, seclusus separate; put away

Teucri, Teucrorum m. pl. descendants of Teucer, Teucrians, Trojans

39. Aeneas describes the dreadful appearance of Hector's ghost

ei mihi, qualis erat, quantum mutatus ab illo

Hectore qui redit exuvias indutus Achilli

vel Danaum Phrygiōs iaculatus puppibus ignis! (VERGIL, *AENEID* II.274-76)

Achilles, Achilli m. Achilles

Danaī, Danaōrum m. pl. Danaans, Greeks;

Danaum = gen. pl.

ei (interj.) expression of anguish, o! alas!, ei mihi,
woe is me!

exuviae, exuviarum f. pl. (stripped) armor

Hector, Hectoris m. Hector, son of Priam

iaculor (1-tr.) strike, throw, hurl

induo, induere, indui indutus put on, clothe,
dress

Phrygius, -a, -um of or belonging to Phrygia (the
region around Troy), Phrygian, Trojan

puppis, puppis, -ium f. stern (of a boat); ship

40. Aeneas describes the effects of hearing the ghostly voice of a former Trojan comrade,
Polydorus.

tum vero ancipiti mentem formidine pressus

obstupui steteruntque* comae et vox faucibus haesit. (VERGIL, *AENEID* III.47-48)

*steterunt = archaic form of steterunt

anceps, ancipitis two-headed, double; wavering,
doubtful

coma, comae f. in sing. or pl. hair

faucēs, faucium f. pl. jaws gullet, throat

formido, formidinis f. fear, terror

haereō, haerere. haesi, haesus stick, cling, hold
fast (+ dat.)

obstupescō, obstupescere, obstupui, — be
stupefied, be dumbstruck

41. The poet describes Aeneas's perplexity after he has been commanded by Mercury to leave Carthage.

heu quid agat? quō nunc rēginam ambire furem
audeat adfātū? quae prima exordia sūmat?
atque animum nunc hūc celerem nunc dīvidit illūc

in partisque rapit variās perque omnia versat. (VERGIL, *AENEID* IV 283–86)

affātus, affātus *m.* address, utterance

ambiō (*ambi-* + *eō*), *ambire*, *ambi* or *ambiv*,

ambitus go around

dividō, dividere, *divisi*, *divisus* separate, divide

exordium, exordii *n.* starting point, beginning

furō, furere, —, —, — rage, rave

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūptus take up, seize

varius, -a, -um varied, changeable, conflicting

verso (1-tr.) twist, keep turning

42. The poet describes Mercury as he appears to Aeneas in a dream.

huic sē forma dēi vultū redeuntis eōdem
obtulit in somnis rursusque ita visa monēre est,
omnia Mercuriō similis, vōcemque colōremque*

et crinis flāvōs et membra decōra iuventa. . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* IV.556–59)

*colōremque elides into next line.

color, colōris *m.* color

crinis, crinis, *crinis m.* in *sing.* or *pl.* hair

decōrus, -a, -um becoming, honorable, seemly

flāvus, -a, -um golden-yellow flaxen blond

forma, formae *f.* shape, form

iuventa, iuventae *f.* youth (fulness)

membrum, membri *n.* limb

offerō (*ob-* + *fero*), *offerre*, *obtuli*, *oblatus* put in
(one's) path; offer, present, reveal

rursus (*adv.*) again

somnus, somni *m.* sleep; dream

43. Pallas, son of King Evander, greets Aeneas and his companions, who have come to Evander's pastoral kingdom seeking aid for the war in Italy.

. . . "iuvenēs, quae causa subēgit

ignōtās temptāre viās? quō tenditis?" inquit.

"qui genus? unde domō? pācemne huc fertis an arma?" (VERGIL, *AENEID* VIII.112–14)

ignōtus -a, -um unknown

inquam (defective verb) say inquit 3rd *sing.*

pres. act. indic.

iuvenis, iuvenis *m.* young man

subigō (*sub-* + *agō*), *subigere*, *subēgi*, *subāctus*

incite, impel

temptō (1-tr.) try, test, attempt

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus or **tēsus** stretch
out extend; aim, head

44. Abandoned by Theseus on the island of Naxos, Ariadne ponders her situation.

quid faciam? quō sōla ferar? vacat insula cultū.

nōn hominum vidē, nōn ego facta boum.

omne latus terrae cingit mare; nāvita nusquam,

nūlla per ambiguas puppis itūra viās. (OVID, *HEROIDES* X.59–62)

ambiguus, -a, -um wavering, doubtful;

untrustworthy, treacherous

bōs, bovis *m.* or *f.* bull, cow; in *pl.*, cattle,

boum = *gen. pl.*

cultus, cultūs *m.* cultivation; civilization

latus, lateris *n.* side

nāvita = nauta

nusquam (*adv.*) nowhere

puppis puppis, -ium *f.* stern (of a boat); ship

vacō (1-*intr.*) be empty, be without (+ *abl.*)

45. The poet reveals why women go to public games and why men may wish to go there, too.

spectātum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsae. (OVID, *ARS AMATORIA* I.99)

46. The poet describes the moment when the water nymph Salmacis fell in love with Her maphroditus.

nunc perlūcenti circumdata corpus amictū

mollibus aut foliis aut mollibus incubat herbīs,

saepe legit flōrēs. et tum quoque forte legēbat,

cum puerum vidit visumque optāvit habēre. (OVID, *METAMORPHOSES* IV.313–16)

amictus, amictūs *m.* mantle, cloak

flōs, flōris *m.* flower

folium, foli *n.* leaf

herba, herbae *f.* small plant, herb, grass

incubō, incubāre, — incubitum lie on, recline

on (+ *dat.*)

mollis, molle gentle, mild, soft

perlūcēs, perlūcēre, —, — be transparent,

be translucent; shine

47. Could the poet write prose?

saepe pater dixit, “studium quid inūtile temptās?

Maeonides nullās ipse reliquit opes.”

mōtus eram dictis, tōtōque Helicōne relictō

scribere temptābam verba solūta modis.

sponte suā carmen numerōs veniēbat ad aptōs,

et quod temptābam scribere versus erat. (OVID, *TRISTIA* IV.10.21–26)

aptus, -a, -um composed, fitted together; ready,
fitting

Helicōn, Helicōnis *m.* Mount Helicon (in
Boeotia), sacred to Apollo and the Muses

inūtilis, inūtile useless

Maeonidēs, Maeonidae *m.* (a) Maeonian or
Lydian man; Homer

numerus, numeri *m.* number, rhythm, meter

*ops, opis *f.* power; in *pl.* resources, wealth

*spōns, *spontis *f.* will, volition

temptō (1-*tr.*) test; try, attempt

versus, versūs *m.* verse, line (of poetry)

48. The exiled poet addresses his wife.

barbara mē tellūs orbisque novissima* magni
sustinet et saevō cinctus ab hoste locus.
hinc ego trācerer—neque enim mea culpa cruenta est—
esset, quae dēbet, sī tibi cūra meī. (OVID, *TRISTIA* V.2.31–34)

*novissima, *here*, most remote, extreme
barbarus, -a, -um foreign, strange; barbarous,
uncivilized
cruentus, -a, -um bloody
culpa, culpae *f.* guilt, blame; fault, offense

sustineō (sub- + teneō), sustinēre, sustinui,
support, sustain
tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land
trāciō (trāns- + iaciō) transport, transfer

49. The exiled poet resorts to prayer.

adloquor ēn absēns absentia nūmina supplex,
sī fās est hominī cum love posse loquī. (OVID, *TRISTIA* V.2.45–46)

adloquor (ad- + loquor) address
ēn (interj.) behold! look!
supplex, supplicis suppliant, humble

50. The poem informs a friend in Rome how the poet in exile feels about him.

nec patriam magis ille* suam dēsiderat et quae
plūrima cum patriā sentit abesse sibi,
quam vultūs oculōsque tuōs, ō dulcior illō
melle, quod in cerīs Attica ponit apis. (OVID, *TRISTIA* V.4.27–30)

*ille refers to the poet.
apis, apis, -ium *f.* bee
Atticus, -a, -um Attic, Athenian

cēra, cērae *f.* beeswax; wax cell; in pl., honeycomb
dēsiderō (1-tr.) long for, desire
mel, mellis *n.* honey

51. The exiled poet makes a confession.

ille ego Rōmānus vātēs—ignōscite, Mūsae!—
Sarmaticō cōgor plūrima mōre loquī.
ēn pudet et fateor, iam dēsuetūdine longā
vix subeunt ipsī verba Latīna mihi.
nec dubitō quīn sint et in hōc nōn pauca libellō
barbara: nōn hominis culpa, sed ista loci. (OVID, *TRISTIA* V.7.55–60)

barbarus, -a, -um foreign, strange; barbarous,
uncivilized
cōgō (cō- + agō), cōgere, cōgē. cōactus drive
together, force, compel
culpa, culpae *f.* guilt, blame; fault
dēsuetūdō, dēsuetūdinis *f.* disuse, want of
practice
ēn (interj.) lol behold! see!
ignōscō (in- + nōscō), ignōscere, ignōvi, ignōtus
forgive, pardon

Latīnus, -a, -um Latin
libellus, libelli *m.* (little) book
Mūsa, Musae *f.* Muse
Sarmaticus, -a, -um Sarmatian, of Sarmatia, a
region between the Vistula and Don rivers
subeō (sub- + eō), subire, subī or subivī,
subitūrus go under; come up to; occur
vātēs, vātis, -ium *m.* or *f.* prophet, bard, poet

52. A plan of Tarquinius Priscus, fifth of the legendary kings of Rome, and an event that disrupted it

mūrō quoque lapideō circumdāre urbem parābat cum Sabīnum bellum coeptis* intervenīrēt, adeōque ea subita rēs fuit ut prius Aniēnem trānsīrēt hostēs quam obviam īre ac prohibēre exercitus Rōmānus posset. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* I.36.1)

*coeptum, coepti *n.* undertaking, enterprise
scheme

Aniēn, Aniēnis *m.* (the) Anio, a river in northern Latium

intervenīō (inter- + veniō) interrupt

lapideus, -a -um (made of) stone

obviam (adv.) in the way of, so as to meet;

obviam īre, to go to meet

parō (1-tr) prepare, make ready

Sabīnus, -a, -um Sabine (of a territory and people northeast of Rome)

subitus, -a, -um sudden

trānsēō (trāns- + eō), trānsīre, trānsīrē or trānsīvī,

trānsitus go across

53. The historian describes the consul Volumnius's experience in fighting the Sallentinī, a Samnian people living in the heel of Italy.

Volumnium prōvinciae* haud paenituit. multa secunda proelia fēcit; aliquot urbēs hostium vī cēpit. praedae erat largitor et benignitatem per sē grātam comitāte adiuvābat militemque[†] hīs artibus fēcerat et periculī et labōris avidum. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* IX.42.5)

*prōvincia, here, task, assignment

[†]mīles, here, collective singular, soldiery, soldiers

adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiuvī, adiutus help, assist,
augment, enhance

aliquot (indecl. adj.) several

avidus, -a, -um greedy, eager hungry (for)
(+ gen.)

benignitās, benignitātis *f.* kindness, benevolence,
generosity

comitās, comitātis *f.* friendliness, charm

largitor, largitōris *m.* bestower, giver

praeda, praedae *f.* booty, plunder

secundus, -a, -um favorable

Volumnius, Volumnī *m.* Volumnius

54. After describing a tremendous Roman victory over the Carthaginians in 207 B.C.E., the historian recounts a horrific moment in the Roman camp.

C. Claudius cōsul cum in castra redisset, caput Hasdrubalis quod servātum cum cūrā attulerat prōici ante hostium statōnēs, captivosque Āfrōs vinctōs ut erant ostendī, duōs etiam ex iis solūtōs īre ad Hannibalem et exprōmere quae ācta essent iussit. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XXVII.51.11)

Āfer, Āfra, Āfrum African

afferō (ad- + ferō), afferre, attulī, allātus bring
with one

C. Claudius C. Claudī *m.* C. Claudius (consul
207 B.C.E.)

captivus, captivī *m.* prisoner of war, captive

exprōmō, exprōmere, exprōmpsi, exprōmptus
bring forth disclose, reveal

Hasdrubal, Hasdrubalis *m.* Hasdrubal,

Carthaginian general and brother of Hannibal
ostendō, ostendere, ostendi, ostentus or ostēnsus
present, show

prōiciō (prō- + iaciō) throw forward, fling

statīō, statīōnis *f.* guard post

vinciō, vincire, vinxī, vinctus bind, join, fetter

55. When Hannibal is crossing the Appenines near the end of winter, he and his troops are overwhelmed by a violent storm.

tum vērō ingentī sonō caelum strepere et inter horrendōs fragōrēs micāre ignēs;
capti auribus et oculis metū omnēs torpēre; tandem effūsō imbre, cum eō magis ac-
cēnsa vis ventī esset, ipsō illō quō dēprēnsī erant locō castra ponere necessariū
vīsum est. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XXI.58.5)

accendō accendere, accendī, accēnsus set on fire,
kindle; stir up, arouse

auris, auris, -ium *f* ear

dēprendō, dēprendere, dēprendi, dēprēnsus seize
(suddenly); overtake, catch

effundō, effundere, effūdī, effūsus pour out;
send forth

fragor, fragōris *m* crash, roar

horrendus, -a, -um terrible, tremendous

imber, imbris, -ium *m* rain, shower; (rain-)water

micō, micāre, micuī, — dart, flicker, flash

necessārius, -a, -um necessary

sonus, sonī *m* sound, noise

strepō, strepere, strepuī, strepitum make a loud
noise, crash

torpeō, torpēre, —, — be struck numb, be
paralyzed

ventus, ventī *m* wind

56. The historian describes a particularly narrow pass through a mountain range.

haec una militaris via est, quā trādūcī exercitūs, sī nōn prohibeantur, possint.

(LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XXXVI.15.11)

militāris, militāre military, for soldiers

trādūcō (trāns- + dūcō) lead across

57. The leader of the Achaeans, allies of Rome involved in a dispute with the Spartans, concludes an appeal.

verēmur quidem vos, Rōmānī, et sī ita vultis, etiam timēmus: sed plūs et verēmur et
umēmus deōs immōrtālēs. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XXXIX.37.17)

immortalis, immortāle immortal

58. About to assume the governorship of Nearer Spain, Tl. Sempronius describes the nature of the people in that province and the challenges that lie ahead for him.

dictu quam re facilius est prōvinciam ingeniō ferōcem rebellātricem cōfēcisse *
paucae civitātēs, ut quidem ego audiō, quās vicīna maximē hiberna premēbant, in
iūs diciōnemque vēnerunt, ulteriōrēs in armīs sunt. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITA* XL.35.13)

*cōficiō, here, subdue, pacify

diciō, diciōnis *f* sovereignty sway, power

ferōx, ferōcis fierce, savage; high-spirited, defiant

hiberna, hibernōrum *n. pl.* winter quarters,

winter (military) camp

rebellātrix, rebellātricis rebellious

ulterior, ulterius farther more distant

vicīnus, -a, -um neighboring

- 59 M. Servilius addresses the soldiers who are preventing the triumph of their general, L. Aemilius Paulus, after his victory in Macedonia. A jealous rival had roused the soldiers' resentment against Paulus, who had refused to let his troops indiscriminately seize booty after the victory.

aliquis est Rōmae, praeter Perseā, qui triumphārī dē Macedonibus nōlit: et eum nōn isdem manibus discerpitis quibus Macedonas vicistis? vincere vos prohibuisset si potuisset, qui triumphantis urbem inire prohibet. (LIVY, *AB URBE CONDITĀ* XLV.38.2)

discerpō, discerpere, discerpsī, discerptus tear to pieces

Perseus, Perseos *m.* Perseus, last king of Macedonia; Perseā = *acc. sing.*

ineo (in + eo), inire inī or inīvi, initus enter

triumphō (1-intr.) celebrate a triumph, triumph

Macedones, Macedonum *m. pl.* Macedonians, a people of northern Greece; Macedonas *acc. pl.*

60. Seneca concludes a letter to Lucilius, in which he has argued about the advantage of what many fear most.

negā nunc magnum beneficium esse natūrae quod necesse est morī.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE MORĀLES* CI.14)

beneficium, beneficū *n.* service, kindness; favor, benefit

negō (1-tr.) deny

61. Clytaemnestra urges herself to action.

accingere, anime: bella nōn levia apparās.

scelus occupandum est; pigra, quem expectās diem?

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 192-93)

accingō (ad + cingō) gird

apparō (1-tr.) prepare for, plan

occupō (1-tr.) seize; occupy; take up

piger, pigra, pigrum sluggish, slow; idle, lazy

62. While consoling his friend Polybius, whose brother has recently died, Seneca reminds him of a parallel from history.

quid tibi referam Scīpiōnem Āfricānum, cui mors frātris in exiliō nuntiāta est?

is frāter, qui ēripuit frātre[m] carceri, nōn potuit eripere fatō.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGI* XI.14.4)

carcer, carceris *m.* prison

nuntiō (1-tr.) announce, report

Scīpiō Āfricānus, Scīpiōnis Āfricāni *m.* (P. Cornelius) Scipio Africanus (consul 205 B.C.E.)

- 63 Quintilian recalls an opinion of Socrates.

. . . Socrates inhonestam sibi credidit orationem quam ei Lysias reo composuerat . . .

(QUINTILIAN, *INSTITUTIO ORATORIA* II.15.30)

compōnō (com- + pōnō) put together; compose

inhonestus, -a, -um dishonorable disgraceful

Lysias, *Lysiae* m. Lysias, an Athenian orator and contemporary of Socrates

reus, *rei* m. defendant

Sōcratēs, *Sōcratis* m. Socrates

64. The satirist urges more care in the raising of a son than in preparing for a guest

grātum est quod patriae civem populōque dedisti,

sī facis ut patriae sit idōneus, ūtilis agris,

ūtilis et bellōrum et pācis rēbus agendis.

plūrimum enim intererit quibus artibus et quibus hunc tū

mōribus instituās . . . (JUVENAL, *SATURAE* XIV.70–74)

idōneus, -a, -um suitable, apt, capable

instituō, *instituere*, *instituī*, *institutus* instruct, train, educate

ūtilis, *ūtile* useful

65. The beginning of a speech by Agricola to his troops before battle

septimus annus est, commilitonēs, ex quo virtūte et auspiciis imperi Rōmāni,

fidē atque operā vestrā Britanniam vicistis. tot expeditiōibus, tot proeliis, seu forti-

tūdine adversus hostis seu patientia ac labore paene adversus ipsam rērum nā-

tūram opus fuit, neque mē militum neque vōs ducis paenituit.

(TACITUS, *DE VITA AGRICOLAE* 33)

adversus (prep. + acc.) in opposition to, against,
in the face of

auspiciū, *auspicij* n. augury, omen

Britannia, *Britanniae* f. Britain

commilitō, *commilitōnis* m. fellow soldier

expeditiō, *expeditiōnis* f. military operation,
expedition

fortitūdō, *fortitudinis* f. bravery, fortitude

opera, *operae* f. effort, work

paene (adv.) nearly, almost

patientia, *patientiae* f. endurance hardiness

seu (conj.) or .f. whether; seu . . . seu . . .

whether . . . or (if) . . .

66. After recording the differing traditions about the emperor Galba's last words, the historian appends a tart remark.

nōn interfuit occidentium quid diceret.* (TACITUS, *HISTORIAE* I.41)

*diceret, subject is Galba

occidō, *occidere* *occidī*, *occisus* kill, slaughter

67. The historian describes a battle between Roman forces and the Cherusci, a German tribe led by the fierce Arminius, whose first attempt to break through the line of Roman archers had been rebuffed.

nisū tamen corporis et impetū equī pervāsīt. oblitus faciem suā cruōre nē nōsceretur. quīdam adgnitum ā Chaucīs inter auxilia Rōmāna agentibus* ēmissumque trādidērunt. (TACITUS, ANNĀLES II.17)

*agō, *here*, do service

adgnōscō (ad- + nōscō), adgnōscere, adgnōvī,
adgnitus recognize, identify

Chaucī, Chaucōrum *m. pl.* (the) Chauci, a
German tribe

cruor, cruōris *m.* blood, gore

ēmittō (ē- + mittō) set free, release

equus, equī *m.* horse

faciēs, faciēs *f.* face; appearance

impetus, impetūs *m.* attack, onset, rush; vigor,
force

nisus, *nīsūs *m.* exertion, effort

oblinō, oblinere, oblēvī, oblitus smear, coat, cover

pervādō, pervādere, pervāsī, pervāsus pass
through, penetrate, prevail; pervāsīt, *subject is*
Arminius

68. The historian recounts an old story indicating the extent of the emperor Tiberius's frustration with the senate.

memoriae prōditur Tiberium, quotiēs cūriā ēgrederetur, Graecīs verbīs in hunc modum ēloquī solitum "ō hominēs ad servitūtem parātōs!" scilicet etiam illum qui libertātem publicam nōllet tam prōiectae servientium patientiae taedēbat. (TACITUS, ANNĀLES III.65)

cūria, cūriae *f.* the Curia, the senate house

ēloquor (ē- + loquor) utter, say

Graecus, -a, -um Greek

parō (l- + t-) prepare

patientia, patientiae *f.* endurance, patience;
submissiveness

prōdō (prō- + dō) hand down, transmit

prōiectus, -a, -um prominent; abject, groveling

quotiēs(n)s (rel. adv.) as often as, whenever

scilicet (particle) to be sure, no doubt, of course

serviō, servīre, servīvi or servīi, servītum be a
slave, be enslaved

Tiberius, Tiberii *m.* Tiberius, adopted son of and
successor to Augustus

Longer Readings

1. Cicero, *Pro S. Roscio Amerino* 56–57

Cicero likens prosecutors to the geese and dogs maintained at public expense in order to guard the Capitoline hill.

anseribus cibaria publice locantur et canes aluntur in Capitolio ut significant si* fures venerint. at fures internoscere non possunt, significant tamen si* qui noctu in Capitolium venerint et, quia id est suspiciosum, tametsi bestiae sunt, tamen in eam partem† potius peccant quae est cautior. quod si luce quoque canes latrent cum deos salutatum aliqui venerint, opinor, eis crura suffringantur quod acres sint etiam tum cum suspicio nulla sit. simillima est accusatorum ratio. alii vestrum anseres sunt qui tantum modo‡ clamant, nocere non possunt, alii canes qui et latrare et mordere possunt. cibaria vobis praebere videmus; vos autem maxime debetis in eos impetum facere qui merentur. hoc populo gratissimum est. deinde, si volentis, etiam tum cum veri simile erit aliquem commisisse, in suspicionem latratote; id quoque concedi potest. sin autem sic agitis ut arguat is aliquem patrem occidisse neque dicere

*si, here, introduces Indirect Question

†in eam partem . . . quae . . . to that side that . . .

‡tantum modo only, merely

accusator, accusatoris *m.* prosecutor

alo, alere alui al(i)tus feed, nourish

anser, anseris *m.* or *f.* goose

arguo, arguere, argui, argutus charge, allege

at (conj.) but

bestia, bestiae *f.* beast, animal

canis, canis *m.* or *f.* dog

Capitolium, Capitolii *n.* (the) Capitoline hill

cautus, -a, -um cautious

cibaria, cibarium *n.* *pl.* ration or allowance of

food provided to animals; provisions

clamo (1-intr.) shout, make a noise

committo (con- + mitto) commit (an offense);

break a law, offend

concedo (con- + cedo) (tr.) concede, grant

crus, cruris *n.* leg

deinde (adv.) then, thereupon; next

fur, furis, ium *m.* thief, robber

impetus, impetus *m.* attack, assault

internoscere (inter- + noscere), internoscere,

internovi, internotus distinguish; pick out (from others)

latro (1-intr.) bark; make a noise; latratote =

2nd, *pl. fut. act. imper.*, (ye shall) bark

loco (1-tr.) place

mereor, mereri, meritus sum deserve

mordeo, mordere, momordi, morsus bite,

wound (with the teeth)

noceō, nocere, nocui, nociturus be harmful,

harm, do harm

noctū = nocte

occido, occidere, occidi, occisus kill

opino (1-tr.) suppose, imagine, think

pecco (1-intr.) make a mistake, err

potius (adv.) rather

praesto, praestare, praestui, praestitus furnish,

provide

ratio, rationis *f.* account, reason; reasoning; way,

method

saluto (1-tr.) say hello, call upon, pay one's

respects (to)

significo (1-tr.) indicate, signify

sin (conj.) but if

suffrago, suffragere —, — break the

lower part of

suspicio, suspicionis *f.* suspicion; reason for sus-

picion

suspiciosus, -a, -um suspicious

tametsi (conj.) even though

possitis aut quā rē aut quō modō, ac tantum modo* sine suspiciōne latrābitis, crūra quidem vōbīs nēmō suffringet, sed, sī ego hōs† bene nōvi, litteram illam‡ cui vos usque eō inimīcī estis ut etiam Kal. omnis ōderitis ita vehementer ad caput adfigent ut postea nēmīnem aliū nisi fortūnās vestrās accūsāre possitis

***tantum modo** only, merely

†**hos** refers to the judges

‡**litteram illam** that infamous letter, K, for **kalumniātor**, false accuser; *a prosecutor could be so branded if he was found guilty of bringing false charges*

accusō (1-tr.) blame, find fault with; charge, accuse

affigō, affigere, affixi, affixus fix, fasten, attach
crūs, crūris n. leg

Kalendae, Kalendārum f. pl. the Kalends, the first day of a month, Kal. = **Kalendās**

latrō (1 intr.) bark; make a noise

postea (adv.) after, afterward

suffringō, suffringere, —, — break the lower part of

suspiciō, suspiciōnis f. suspicion, reason for suspicion

usque (adv.) continuously; all the way (to);

usque eō, to such an extent, so

vehementer (adv.) violently, strongly

While Sulla ruled Rome as a dictator in 80 B.C.E., young Cicero defended S. Roscius Amerinus against charges of murdering his own father. Roscius had been framed by those who had arranged the murder, two of his father's relatives conspiring with a freedman of Sulla to acquire the property of the dead man. The *Pro S. Roscio Amerino* shows Cicero's rhetorical style in the making amid a complex political situation.

2. Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputatiōes* 1.9

In the hope that a discussion about death may be presented more suitably, Cicero offers an imitation of a Socratic dialogue.

Auditor. Malum mihi videtur esse mors.

Magister. Iisne, qui mortui sunt, an iis, quibus moriendum est?

A. Utrisque.

M. Est miserum, igitur, quoniam malum.

A. Certè.

M. Ergo et illi quibus evenit iam ut morerentur et illi quibus eventurum est miseri.

A. Mihi ita videtur.

M. Nemo ergo non miser.

A. Prorsus nemo.

M. Et quidem, si tibi constare vis, omnes, quicumque nati sunt eruntve, non solum miseri, sed etiam semper miseri. nam si solos eos dicerēs miserōs quibus moriendum esset, nēminem tū quidem eōrum qui viverent exciperēs (moriendum est enim omnibus), esset tamen miseriae finis in morte. quoniam autem etiam mortui miseri sunt, in miseriam nascimur sempiternam. necesse est enim miserōs esse eos qui centum milibus annōrum ante occiderunt, vel potius omnis, quicumque nati sunt.

auditor, auditiōis *m.* listener

cōnstō (con- + stō), cōnstāre, cōstiti, —
stand still; be consistent with (+ dat.)

ergō (adv.) therefore

eveniō (ē + veniō) come out, turn out, here,
introduces Subst. Ut clause

excipio (ex- + capio) take out, exclude

magister, magistri *m.* teacher

miseria, miseriae *f.* misery

potius (adv.) rather

prorsus (adv.) thoroughly, in every respect,
altogether

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque (indef.
pron.) whoever, whatever

sempiternus, -a, -um everlasting, perpetual

uterque, utraque, utrumque (indef. pron.) each
(of two), both

-ve (enclitic adv.) or

3. Cicero, *Ad Familiāres* V 15

Cicero responds to a letter from his friend L. Lucceius (praetor 67 B.C.E.), politician, lawyer, historian, and an ally of Cicero during the Catilinarian conspiracy. Beset by ill health, Lucceius wrote to Cicero in order both to console him in his grief over the recent death of his daughter Tullia and to encourage him to attend to the business of the crumbling Roman Republic.

M. CICERO S. D. L. LUCCEIO Q. F.*

Omnis amor tuus ex omnibus paribus se ostendit in iis literis quas a te proxime accēpi, nōn ille quidem mihi ignōtus sed tamen grātus et optātus; dicerem "iūcundus" nisi id verbum in[†] omne tempus perdidissem, neque ob eam ūnam causam quam tū suspicāris et in quā mē lenissimīs et amantissimīs verbīs ūtens re graviter accūsās, sed quod illius tanti vulneris quae remedia esse debebant ea nūlla sunt. quid enim? ad amīcōsne cōfugiam? quam multī sunt? habuimus enim ferē commūnīs; quōrum alii occiderunt, alii nescio quō[‡] pactō obduruērunt. tecum vīvere possem equidem et maximē vellem. vetustās, amor, cōsuētūdō, studia paria—quod vinculum, quaesō, dēest nostrae coniūctiōnī? possumusne igitur esse ūnā?[§] nec mehercule intellegō quid impediāt; sed certē adhūc nōn sumus cum essēmus vicinī in Tusculānō, in Puteolānō. nam quid dicam in urbe, in quā, cum forum commūne sit, vicinitās nōn requiritur?

*Q. F. = Quīntū filiō

[†]in, here, expressing expected duration, for

[‡]nescioquī, nescioquae, nescioquod (indef. adj.)
sometimes written as two words, I-don't-know-
who, I-don't-know-which, some . . . or other

[§]ūnā (adv.) together

accuso (1-tr.) find fault with, censure

adhūc (adv.) up to the present time; still

commūnis, commūne common, shared; held in
common

cōfugio (con- + fugio) flee for refuge or safety

coniūctiō, coniūctiōnis f. union, bond

cōsuētūdō, cōsuētūdinis f. custom, usage

dēsum (dē- + sum), dēesse, dēfui, —

be absent be lacking, be missing

ferē (adv.) almost, nearly

ignōtus, -a, -um unknown

iūcundus -a, -um pleasing, delightful agreeable

lēnis, lēne mild gentle

L. Lucceius, L. Luccei m. L. Lucceius

obdūrēscō, obdūrēscere, obdūruī, — become
hard(ened), become callous

ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus or

ostēsus present, show; offer

pactum, pacti n. means, manner, method, way

pār, parīs equal; similar

proximē (adv.) most recently

Puteolānum, Puteolānī n. Puteolanum, an estate
at or near Puteoli, a town near Naples

quaesō, [‡]quaesere, —, — seek pray for;

1st sing. pres. act. indic., I ask you, please

remedium, remediī n. remedy, cure

requirō (re- + quaerō), requirere, requisitū or

requisitū, requisitus seek again; call for, need

suspīcor (1-tr.) imagine, suspect

Tusculānum, Tusculānī n. Tusculanum, an

estate (particularly Cicero's estate) at or near

Tusculum, a town in Latium

vetustās, vetustātis f. (old) age, antiquity

vicinitās, vicinitātis f. proximity nearness

vicinus, -a, -um neighboring, as subst., neighbor

vinc(u)lum, vinc(u)lī n. bond, chain, link

sed cāsū nescio quō* in ea tempora nostra aetās incidit ut, cum maximē flōrēre nōs oportēret, tum vivere etiam pudēret. quod enim esse poterat mihi perfugium spoliātō et domesticis et forēnsibus ornāmentis atque sōlāciis? litterae, crēdō quibus ūtor adsiduē; quid enim aliud facere possum? sed nescio quō* modō ipsae illae excludere mē ā portū et perfugiō videntur et quasi exprobrāre quod in eā vitā maneam in quā nihil īnsit nisi propāgātiō miserrimī temporis.

Hīc tu mē abesse urbe mirāns, in quā domus nihil dēlectāre possit, summum sit odium temporum, hominum, forī, cūriāe? itaque sic litterīs ūtor, in quibus cōsūmō omne tempus, nōn ut ab his medicinam perpetuam sed ut exiguam obliuionem doloris petam. quod si id ēgissēmus ego atque tū quod nē in mentem quidem nōbis veniebat propter cottidiānōs metūs et omne tempus ūnā† fuissēmus, neque mē valētūdō tua offenderet neque tē maeror meus. quod, quantum fieri poterit, cōsequāmur. quid enim est utrique nostrum aptius? propediem tē igitur vidēbō.

*nescioquī, nescioquae, nescioquod (indef. adj.)
sometimes written as two words, I-don't-know-
who, I-don't-know-which, some . . .
or other

†ūnā (adv.) together

aptus, -a, -um suitable, fit(ting), appropriate

assiduē (adv.) continually, constantly

cōsequor (con- + sequor) follow after, pursue

cōsūmō, cōsumere, cōsumpsī, cōsumptus
wear away, consume; spend, pass

cottidiānus, -a, -um daily

cūria, cūriāe f the Curia, the senate house

dēlectō (1-tr.) delight, please, charm

dolor, doloris m. grief, sorrow, pain

domesticus, -a, -um personal, domestic

excludō, excludere, exclusī, exclusus keep out,
exclude, debar

exiguus, -a, -um small, slight, brief

exprobrō (1-tr.) bring up as a reproach

flōrēō, flōrēre, flōruī, — blossom; prosper;

be at the height of one's power

forēnsis, forēnse of or belonging to the forum,
forensic; public

incidō (in- + cadō), incidere, incidi, incāsūrus
fall into, pass; slip

īnsim (in- + sum), īnesse, īnsuī, — be in;
be present, be contained

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly

maeror, maerōris m. grief, sorrow, mourning

medicīna, medicīnae f. medicine; treatment, cure

miror (1-tr.) admire, marvel at, be astonished

obliuio, obliuionis f (state of) forgetfulness,
oblivion

offendō, offendere, offendi, offēnsus trouble,
upset, give offense to, annoy

ornāmentum, ornāmentū n. adornment, embell-
ishment; distinction, honor

perfugium, perfugiū n. place of refuge, shelter,
sanctuary

perpetuus, -a, -um continuous, without interrup-
tion; perpetual, everlasting

portus, portūs m. harbor; refuge, haven

propāgātiō, propāgātiōnis f. continuation, prolon-
gation

propediem (adv.) before long, any day now, very
soon

quasi (adv.) as (if), as (it were)

sōlācium, sōlāciū n. comfort, solace, relief

spoliō (1-tr.) strip, rob

uterque, utraque, utrumque (indef. pron.) each
(of two)

valētūdō, valētūdinis f health; illness, indispo-
sition

4. Catullus III (hendecasyllable)

A mock tragic dirge

Lugēte, ō Venerēs Cupīdinesque,
 et quantumst hominum venustiorum^{*}
 passer mortuus est meae puellae,
 passer, dēliciae meae puellae,
 quem plūs illa oculis suis amābat:
 nam mellitus erat suamque nōrat
 ipsam^{*} tam bene quam puella mātrem,
 nec sēsē ā gremiō illius[†] movebat,
 sed circumsiliēns modo huc modo illūc
 ad sōlam dominam usque pīpiābat.
 quī nunc it per iter tenebricōsum
 illuc, unde negant redire quemquam.
 at vōbīs male sit, malae tenebrae
 Orcī, quae omnia bella[‡] devorātis:
 tam bellum[‡] mihi passerem abstulistis.
 o factum male, ō miselle passer!
 tuā nunc operā meae puellae
 flendo turgidulū rubent ocellī.

5

10

15

^{*}ipsa, here, mistress[†]The second -l- of illius here scans short.[‡]bellus, -a, -um pretty, charming, lovely

at (conj.) but

circumsiliō, circumsilire, —, — leap about,
hop

dēliciae, dēliciārū f. pl. delight, darling, beloved

dēvorō (1-tr.) swallow up, gulp down, devour

domina, dominae f. mistress

fleō, flēre, flēvi, flētus weep (for)

gremium, gremiī n. bosom; lap

iter, itineris n. passage road, route

lūgēō, lūgēre, lūxi, lūctus mourn (for); grieve,
lament

mellitus, -a, -um honey sweet

misellus, -a, -um wretched (little), pitiable

negō (1-tr.) deny, say . . . not

ocellus, ocelli m. (little) eye

opera, operae f. effort, work; in abl., fault

Orcus, Orci m. Orcus, god of the underworld
(= Dis)

passer, passeris m. sparrow

pīpiō (1-intr.) chirp, cheep, peep

rubeō, rubēre, —, — be red

tenebrae, tenebrarū f. pl. darkness, shadows

tenebricōsus, -a, -um full of shadows, gloomy

turgidulus, -a, -um swollen (little)

ūsq̄ue (adv.) continuously

venustus -a, -um charming, pleasing

5. Caesar, *De Bello Gallico* 1.44

Caesar reports the German king Ariovistus's response to a series of Caesar's demands.

Ariovistus ad postulata Caesaris pauca respondit, de suis virtutibus multa praedicavit: transisse Rhenum sese non sua sponte, sed rogatum et accessum a Gallis; non sine magna spe magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquisse; sedes habere in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendium capere iure belli, quod victores victis imponere consueverint. non sese Gallis, sed Gallios sibi bellum intulisse; omnes Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venire ac contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias uno a se proelio pulsas ac superatas esse.

accessō, accessere, accessit or accessivi, accessitus
send for, summon; invite

Ariovistus, Ariovisti *m.* Ariovistus, a German king

concedō (con- + cēdō) (*tr.*) concede, grant

consuēscō, consuēscere, consuēvi, consuētus ac-
custom, habituate; in perfect active and passive,
be accustomed; consueverint, *perf. subj. as if in*
primary sequence

Gallia, Galliae *f.* Gaul

Galli, Gallorum *m. pl.* (the) Gauls

imponō (in- + pōnō) place on, impose on

obses, obsidis *m. or f.* hostage

postulatum, postulati *n.* demand

praedicō (1-*tr.*) proclaim, declare

praemium, praemii *n.* reward, prize

propinquus, -a, -um near, close; *as subst.*, relative
Rhēnus, Rhēni *m.* (the) Rhine, a river in north-
eastern Gaul

sēdēs, sēdis, -ium *f.* seat; home, abode

*spōns, *spontis *f.* (one's own) will

stipendium, stipendii *n.* tax, tribute

trānseō (trāns- + eō), trānsire, trānsi or trānsivī,
trānsitus go across, cross

victor, victoris *m.* conqueror, victor

voluntās, voluntātis *f.* will, intention; choice

6. Caesar, *De Bellō Gallicō* V.14

Caesar reports on practices of the Celtic tribes that he observed in Britain.

ex hīs* omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōsuētūdine. intenōrēs plērīque frumenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. omnes vērō sē Britannī vitrō inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hoc horribiliorēs sunt in pugnā adspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsa praeter caput et labrum superius. uxōres habent dēnī duodēnīque inter sē commūnēs et maximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum liberīs.† sed sī quī sunt ex iīs nātī, eōrum habentur liberi,† quo primum virgo quaeque dēducta est.

*hīs refers to the tribes of Britain.

†liberī, *here*, children

aspiciō, aspicere, aspexī, aspectus look at, look upon behold

Britannī, Britannōrum *m. pl.* (the) Britons
(inhabitants of Britain)

caeruleus, -a, -um (sky) blue

Cantium, Cantī *n.* Cantium, a town in Britain

capillus, capillī *m.* hair

carō, carnis *f.* flesh, meat

color, colōris *m.* color

commūnis, commūne common, shared; held in common

cōsuētūdō, cōsuētūdinis *f.* custom, usage

dēducō (dē- + dūcō) lead away; bring home
(as one's bride)

dēnī, dēnae, dēna ten together

duodēnī, duodēnae, duodēna twelve together

frūmentum, frūmentī *n.* grain

Gallicus, -a, -um of Gaul, Gallic

horribilis, horribile terrifying, dreadful

hūmānus, -a, -um human, humane, civilized

incolō, incolere, incolui, —→ inhabit

inficiō (in- + faciō) dye

interior, interius situated farther from the coast,
more remote

labrum, labrī *n.* lip

lac, lactis *n.* milk

maritimus, -a, -um of or belonging to the sea;
situated near the sea, coastal

parēns, parentis, -ium *m. or f.* parent

pellis, pellis, -ium *f.* (animal) skin, hide

plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque very many, most

prōmittō (prō- + mittō) send forth, let grow long

pugna, pugnae *f.* fight, battle

rādō, rādere, rāsī, rāsus scrape; shave

regiō, regiōnis *f.* region, locality

serō, serere, sēvī, satus plant, sow

superior, superius upper

uxor, uxōris *f.* wife

vestiō, vestīre, vestīvī or vestī, vestitus clothe,
dress

virgō, virginis *f.* maiden, virgin

vitrū, vitrī *n.* woad, a plant from which a blue
dye is made; blue dye

7. Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthae* 12

The historian describes how Jugurtha's soldiers murdered King Hiempsal in his house.

quī* postquam in aedis irrumpere, divorsī rēgem quaerere, dormientis aliōs, aliōs occurrentis interficere, scrutārī loca abdita, clausa effringere, strepitū et tumultū omnia miscere, quom interim Hiempsal reperitur† occultans sē tuguriō mulieris ancillae, quō initio pavidus et ignārus loci perfugerat. Numidae caput eius, utī iussī erant, ad Iugurtham referunt.†

*quī, connective relative referring to Jugurtha's soldiers

†reperitur, referunt, historical use of present tense; translate as perfect

abdō (ab- + dō) hide, conceal, keep secret

aedēs, aedis, -ium f. sanctuary, shrine, in pl., house, abode

ancilla, ancillae f. maidservant

claudō, claudere, clausi, clausus close, shut, close up

diversus, -a, -um different, separate

dormiō, dormire, dormivi or dormiī, dormitum sleep, be asleep

effringo, effringere, effrēgi, effractus break off, break open

Hiempsal, Hiempsalis m. Hiempsal, an African king and cousin of Jugurtha

ignārus, -a, -um not knowing, unacquainted (with) (+ gen.)

initium, initii n. beginning

interim (adv.) meanwhile

irrumpō, irrumpere, irrūpi, irruptus break (in), burst (into)

Iugurtha, Iugurthae m. Jugurtha, a Numidian king

misceō, miscere, miscui, mixtus mix, throw into confusion

mulier, mulieris f. woman

Numidae, Numidarum m. pl. (the) Numidians

occultō (1 tr.) hide, conceal

occursō (1-tr.) run to meet, rush against, oppose

pavidus, -a, -um fearful

perfugiō (per- + fugiō) flee (for refuge)

reperiō, reperire repperi, repertus find, discover

scrutator (1 tr.) ransack, search, investigate

strepitus, strepitus m. noise

tugurium, tugurii n. hut, cottage, small dwelling

tumultus, tumultus m. commotion, tumult,

panic

utī = ut

8. Sallust *Bellum Catilinae* 36

The historian reflects on the terrible power of the Catilinarian conspiracy.

ea tempestate mihi imperium populi Romani multo maxime miserabile visum est. quoniam quomodo ad occasum ab ortu solis omnia domita armis parerent, domi otium atque divitiae, quae prima mortales putant, adfluere, fuere tamen cives qui seque remque publicam obstinatis animis perditum irent. namque duobus senati decretis ex tanta multitudinem neque praemio inductus coniurationem patefecerat neque ex castris Catilinae quisquam omnium discesserat: tanta vis morbi atque uti tabes plerosque civium animos invaserat.

affluō affluere **affluxī**, **affluxus** flow toward,
flow in; abound
coniuratiō, **coniuratiōnis** *f.* conspiracy
dēcrētum, **dēcrēti** *n.* decree
divitiae, **divitiarum** *f. pl.* wealth, riches
domō **domāre**, **domui**, **domitus** tame, subdue,
conquer
inducō (**in-** + **dūcō**) lead in; persuade, induce
invādō, **invādere**, **invāsī**, **invāsus** enter (hostilely);
invade, attack
miserābilis, **miserābile** pitiable, wretched
morbus, **morbi** *m.* sickness, disease
mortalis, **mortale** mortal

multitudo, **multitudinis** *f.* multitude
obstinātus, **-a**, **-um** determined, resolute,
inflexible
occāsus, **occāsūs** *m.* falling, setting
ortus, **ortūs** *m.* rising
ōtium, **ōtīi** *n.* leisure; peace
patefaciō, **patefacere** **patefēcī**, **patefactus** lay
open, disclose, expose
plērique, **plēraeque**, **plēraque** very many, most
praemium, **praemii** *n.* reward
tābēs, **tābis** *f.* wasting away, decay; plague
tempestās, **tempestātis** *f.* storm; time
uti = **ut**, as if as it were

9. Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae* 60–61

With frequent use of the historical present, the historian vividly describes the final battle between Catiline's forces and those loyal to Rome. He then concludes his monograph with a description of the battle's aftermath.

sed ubi omnibus rēbus explorātis Petreius tubā signum dat, cohortis paulatim incēdere iubet; idem facit hostium exercitus. postquam eō ventum est unde ā ferentāriis proelium committi posset, maxumō clāmōre cum infestis signis concurrunt; pīla omittunt, gladiis rēs geritur. veterānī, pristinae virtūtis memorēs, comminus ācriter instāre, illi haud timidi resistunt: maxumā vī certātur. intereā Catilīna cum expeditis in primā aciē vorsārī, laborantibus succurrere, integrōs pro saucius arcessere, omnia prōvidere, multum ipse pugnāre, saepe hostem ferire: strēnuī militis et boni imperātōris officia simul exequēbātur. Petreius, ubi videt Catilinam contrā ac* ratus

*contrā ac different from, otherwise than
arcessō, arcessere, arcessū or arcessivī, arcessitus
send for, summon
certō (1-intr.) struggle, contend, strive
clāmōr, clāmōris *m.* shout, shouting; noise
cohors, cohortis, -ium *f.* company of soldiers,
division of an army, cohort
comminus (adv.) in close contact, at close quar-
ters, hand to hand
committō (con- + mittō) join, engage in; enter
upon, commence
concurrō, concurrere, concurrī, concursus rush
together, charge
ex(s)equor (ex- + sequor) perform, execute,
accomplish
expeditus, expediti *m.* light-armed soldier
explorō (1-tr.) examine, investigate
ferentārius, ferentārū *m.* light-armed troop
feriō, ferire, —, — strike, hit
incēdō (in- + cēdō) go in, enter; advance
infestus, -a, -um hostile, harmful
instō (in- + stō), instāre, institi, instāturus press
(hostilely), press on, pursue
integer, integra, integrum untouched; unhurt;
fresh, vigorous

intereā (adv.) meanwhile
memor, memoris mindful, remembering
(+ gen.)
officiū, officiū *n.* obligation; duty, task; function
omittō (ob- + mittō) let loose, let go, let fall
paulatim (adv.) little by little, gradually
Petreius, Petreū *m.* (M.) Petreius, leader of the
Roman troops who defeated Catiline at
Pistoria
pīlum, pili *n.* heavy javelin (of the Roman
infantry)
pristinus, -a, -um ancient; former; original
prōvideō (prō- + videō) foresee; provide for, see to
reor, rēri, ratus sum believe, think, imagine
saucius, -a, -um wounded
simul (adv.) at the same time
strēnuus, -a, -um active, vigorous, energetic
succurrō, succurrere, succurrī, succursum run to
aid, assist, help (+ dat.)
timidus, -a, -um fearful, afraid, timid
tuba, tubae *f.* horn, (war) trumpet
versor (1-intr.) remain, stay
veterānus, -a, -um old, veteran, as subst., veteran
(soldier)

erat, magnā vi tendere, cohortem praetōriam in mediōs hostis inducit eōsque perturbātōs atque aliōs alibi resistentis interficit. deinde utrimque ex lateribus cēterōs adgreditur. Manlius et Faesulanus in primis pugnantes cadunt. Catilina postquam fūsās cōpiās sēque cum paucis relicuom videt, memor generis atque pristinae suae dignitātis in cōnfertissimōs hostis incurrit ibique pugnāns cōnfoditur. sed cōnfectō proeliō, tum vērō cerneret quanta audacia quantaque animi vis fuisset in exercitū Catilinae. nam ferē quem quisque vivos pugnandō locum cōperat, eum amissa anima corpore tegebat. pauci autem, quos medios cohors praetoria disiēcerat, paulō divorsius,* sed omnēs tamen advorsis vulneribus conciderant. Catilina vērō

*paulō divorsius, sc. conciderant, had fallen a little more spread out
adversus, -a, -um turned toward, received in front
aggredior (ad- + gradior) assault, attack
alibi (adv.) elsewhere, in another place
amittō (ā- + mittō) send away; lose
cerno, **cernere**, **crēvi**, **crētus** distinguish, determine, perceive, see
cohors, **cohortis**, -ium *f.* company of soldiers, division of an army, cohort
concidō (con- + cadō), **concidere**, **concidī**, — fall down, collapse, fall lifeless, die
cōnfertus, -a, -um crowded, dense, packed close together
cōnfodiō, **cōnfodire** **cōnfodi**, **cōnfossus** dig thoroughly, pierce, transfix
deinde (adv.) then, thereupon, next
dignitās, **dignitātis** *f.* dignity, rank, status
disicio (dis- + iaciō) break, rout, disperse
diversē (adv.) scattered, in different directions
Faesulanus, -a, -um of or belonging to Faesulae, a city in Etruria; as *subst.*, the Faesulan, referring to a commander of part of Catiline's troops

ferē (adv.) almost, nearly, for the most part
fundō **fundere**, **fūdī**, **fusus** pour out, pour forth; rout, disperse; slay
incurro (in- + currō), **incurrere** **incucurrī**, **incursum** rush (into), attack
inducō (in- + ducō) bring (in), lead (in)
ingenuus, -a, -um natural, freeborn
latus, **lateris** *n.* side, flank
Manlius, **Manlii** *m.* (C.) Manlius, centurion under Sulla, leader of Catiline's army
memor, **memoris** mindful, remembering (+ gen.)
perturbō (1-tr.) throw into disorder, confuse, disturb
praetōrius, -a, -um of or belonging to the praetor, praetorian
pristinus, -a, -um ancient, former, original
relicuom = archaic form of **reliquum**
resistō, **resistere**, **restitī**, — oppose, resist
tegō, **tegere**, **tēxi**, **tēctus** cover
tendō, **tendere**, **tetendi**, **tentus** or **tēnsus** stretch out, extend, strain, exert oneself, contend
timidus, -a -um fearful, afraid, timid
utrimque (adv.) from both sides, on both sides
vivus, -a, -um living, alive

longē ā suis inter hostium cadāvera repertus est, paululum etiam spīrāns ferō-
ciamque animī, quam habuerat vīvos, in voltū retinēns postrēmō ex omnī cōpiā*
neque in proeliō neque in fugā quisquam† civis ingenuos captus est: ita cūctī suae
hostiumque vitāe iuxtā pepercerant. neque tamen exercitus populī Rōmānī laetam
aut incruentam victōriam adeptus erat. nam strēnuissimus quisque aut occiderat in
proeliō aut graviter volnerātus discesserat. multī autem, qui ē castrīs visundī aut spo-
liandī grātiā prōcesserant, volventēs hostilia cadāvera amicum aliī, pars hospitem aut
cognātum reperiēbant; fuēre item quī inimicōs suōs cognōscerent. ita variē per
omnem exercitum laetitia, maeror, lūctus, atque gaudia agitābantur.

*cōpia, *here*, number; body of men

†quisquam, *indef. pron. used adjectivally*

adiſcor, adīſcī, adeptus sum reach, obtain,
get

agitō (1 tr.) stir up, set in motion, arouse

cadāver, cadāveris *n.* corpse

cognātus cognātī *m.* kinsman, relative

diversē (adv.) scattered, in different directions

ferōcia, ferōciae *f.* fierceness, savagery

gaudium, gaudī *n.* joy

hospes, hospitis *m.* guest, visitor, stranger; host

hostilis, hostile of or belonging to an enemy,
hostile

incruentus, -a, -um bloodless

ingenuus, -a, -um natural, freeborn

item (adv.) similarly, in turn, likewise

iuxtā (adv.) near, nearby; in like manner, equally

laetitia, laetitiae *f.* happiness

lūctus, lūctūs *m.* mourning

maeror, maerōris *m.* grief, sorrow, mourning

parcō, parcere, peperci, parsūrus be merciful,
be sparing (+ dat.)

paululum (adv.) a little

postrēmō (adv.) finally

prōcēdō (prō- + cēdō) go forward, advance

reperiō, reperire, repperi, repertus find, discover

retineō (re- + teneō), retinēre, retinui, retentus
keep hold of, retain, grasp

spīrō (1-tr.) breathe

spoliō (1-tr.) strip; plunder, pillage

strēnuus, -a, -um active, vigorous, energetic

variē (adv.) variously, differently, in different
ways

victōria, victōriae *f.* victory

visō, visere, visi, visus go to see, visit; view;

visundī = archaic form of visendī

vīvus, -a, -um living, alive

volvō, volvere, volvi, volūtus turn, turn over

vulnerō (1-tr.) wound

10. Vergil, *Aeneid* XI.816 - 31

The poet describes the death of Camilla, leader of a band of Volscian warrior-maidens fighting on the side of Turnus. The Trojan Arruns has wounded her with his spear.

illa manū moriens telum trahit, ossa sed inter*

ferreus ad† costās altō stat vulnere mucrō.

lābitur exsanguis, lābuntur frīgida lēto

lūmina, purpureus quondam color ōra reliquit.

tum sic expīrāns Accam ex aequālibus ūnam

820

adloquitur, fida ante aliās quae sola Camillae

quicum partīrī cūrās, atque haec ita fātur:

"hāctenus, Acca soror, potui: nunc vulnus acerbum

cōnficit, et tenebrīs nigrēscunt omnia circum.

effuge et haec Turnō mandāta novissima† perfer:

825

succēdat pugnae Troiānōsque arceat urbe.

iarnque valē." simul hīs dictīs linquēbat habēnās

ad terram nōn sponte fluēns. tum frīgida toto

paulātīm exsolvit sē corpore, lentaque colla

et captum lēto posuit caput, arma relinquēns,

830

vītaque cum gemitū fugit indignāta sub umbrās.

*ossa . . . inter = inter ossa by anastrophe, the reversal in order of a preposition and its object

†ad, here, at, near

*novissima, here, last

Acca, Accae *f.* Acca, sister of Camilla

aequālis, aequāle equal, like, *as subst.* contemporary, fellow

alloquor (ad- + loquor) address

arceō, arcēre, arcuī. — keep away, hold out

Camilla, Camillae *f.* Camilla

circum (adv.) all round, round about

collum, collī *n.* in *sing. or pl.*, neck

color, colōris *m.* color

costa, costae *f.* rib

effugio (ex- + fugio) flee away

exsanguis, exsangue bloodless; lifeless

exsolvo (ex- + solvo) set loose, release

expirō (1-intr.) breathe out, exhale, expire

ferreus, -a, -um (made of) iron

fidus, -a, -um trustworthy, faithful

fluō, fluere, fluxi, fluxus flow, stream; fall

frigidus, -a, -um cold

gemitus, gemitus *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)

habēna, habēnae *f.* rein

hāctenus (adv.) as far as this, thus far

indignātus, -a, -um angered, reluctant

lābor, lābi, lāpsus sum slip; slide, glide, fall

lentus, -a, -um pliant, supple, yielding

lētum, lēti *n.* death

linquō, linquere, liqui, — forsake, give up, relinquish

mandātum, mandāti *n.* charge, command, order

mucrō, mucronis *m.* sharp point

nigrēscō, nigrēscere, — become black, grow dark

os, ossis *n.* bone

partior, partiri, partitus sum divide, distribute,

share; partiri, Historical Infinitive

paulātīm (adv.) little by little, gradually

pugna, pugnae *f.* battle, fight

purpureus, -a, -um dark red, rosy, ruddy

quicum = quicum

quondam (adv.) once, formerly

simul (adv.) at the same time

*spōns, *spontis *f.* (one's own) will

succēdō (sub- + cēdō) draw near

tenebrae, tenebrarum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows

trahō, trahere, trāxi, tractus draw, drag; draw out, pull out

Troiani, Troianorum *m. pl.* Trojans

11. Vergil, *Aeneid* XII.938–52

The end of the *Aeneid*: after Turnus begs for his life, Aeneas hesitates.

. . . stetit ācer in armīs

Aenēās volvēns oculōs dextramque repressit;
 et iam iamque* magis cūctantem flectere sermō 940
 coeperat, infēlix umerō cum apparuit altō
 balteus et nōtīs† fulsērunt cingula bullis
 Pallantis puerī, victum quem vulnere Turnus
 strāverat atque umerīs inimicum insigne gerēbat.
 ille, oculīs postquam saevī monimenta doloris 945
 exuviāsque hausit, furīs accēnsus et irā
 terribilis: “tūne hunc spoliīs indūte meōrum
 ēripiāre mihi?‡ Pallas te hōc vulnere, Pallās
 immolat et poenam scelerātō ex sanguine sūmit.”
 hoc dicēns ferrum adversō sub pectore condit 950
 fervidus; ast illī solvuntur frīgore membra
 vītaque cum gemitū fugit indignata sub umbrās.

*iam iamque, at any time now, now almost

†nōtus, here, well-known

‡The final -i of mihi here scans long

accendō, accendere, accendi, accēnsus inflame,
 burn

adversus, -a um turned toward, opposite; hostile
 apparēō, apparēre, apparui, apparitum be visible,
 be clear; appear, become evident

ast (conj.) but

balteus, baltei m. shoulder band, sword belt
 bulla, bullae f. boss or raised ornament, knob,
 stud

cingulum, cinguli n. band

condo, condere, condidi, conditus found; build;
 bury

cūctor, cūctārī, cūctātus sum hesitate, delay;
 cūctantem, sc. Aenēān

dexter, dextra, dextrum right; as fem. subst.
 (sc. manus) right hand

dolor, doloris m. grief, sorrow, pain

exuviae, exuviarum f. pl. (stripped) armor, spoils
 fervidus, -a, um seething, burning; passionate,
 furious

flectō, flectere, flexi, flexus bend, soften,
 influence

frīgus, frigoris n. cold, chill

fulgeō fulgēre, fulsi, — shine, gleam

furiae, furiarum f. pl. madness, mad desire,
 frenzy

gemitus, gemitūs m. groan(ing), moan(ing)

hauriō, haurire, hausī, haustus drink (in), absorb
 immolō (1-tr.) offer (someone) in sacrifice, kill

(someone) in the manner of a sacrifice

indignātus, -a, -um angered, reluctant

induo induere, indui, indutus put on, clothe,
 dress

insigne, insignis, -ium n. emblem, decoration

membrum, membri n. limb

monimentum, monimenti n. token, reminder

Pallās, Pallantis m. Pallas, son of Evander and
 comrade of Aeneas

reprimō (re- + premō) push back, repress; check,
 hold back

sanguis, sanguinis m. blood

scelerātus, -a, -um wicked, criminal

sermō, sermōnis m. speech

spolium, spoliū n. booty, spoil

sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātus strew; lay low,
 slay, kill

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take up, seize;
 exact

terribilis, terrible terrifying, frightening

umerus, umerī m. shoulder

volvō, volvere, volvi, volutus turn, turn over, roll

12. Horace, *Carmina* 1.37 (Alcaic strophe)

On the death of Cleopatra

Nunc est bibendum, nunc pede libero
pulsanda tellūs, nunc Saliaribus
ornare pulvinar deōrum
tempus erat dapibus, sodālēs.

antehāc⁸ nefās dēprōmere Caecubum
cellis avitus, dum Capitoliō
rēgīna dēmentis ruīnās
funus et* imperio parabat

contāminātō cum grege turpium
morbō virōrum, quidlibet inpotēns
spērāre fortunāque dulci
ēbria. sed minuit furōrem

5

10

*et in poetry is frequently placed in the position
of -que

antehāc (adv.) before this time, previously

avitus, -a, -um of a grandfather, ancestral

bibō, bibere bibī, — drink

Caeculum, Caecubi n. Caecuban wine (from the
plac. of Caecubum in Latium)

Capitolium, Capitoliū n. (the) Capitoline hill

cella, cellae f. storeroom

contaminō (1-tr.) defile, pollute

daps, dapis f. feast, banquet

dēmēns, dēmentis insane, (raving) mad

dēprōmō, dēprōmere, dēprōmpti, dēprōmptus
bring out, draw forth

ēbrius, -a, -um drunk, intoxicated

fūnus, fūneris n. in sing. or pl. funeral (proces-
sion), ruin, destruction; death

furor, furoris m. madness

grex, gregis m. flock, herd; swarm crowd

inpotēns, inpotētis powerless, helpless; unre-
strained, unbridled

minuō, minuire, minui, minūtus reduce,
diminish

morbis, morbi m. sickness, disease

ornō (1-tr.) dress adorn, decorate

parō (1-tr.) prepare

pēs, pedis m. foot

pulso (1 tr.) strike, beat

pulvinar, pulvināris n. couch (for a statue of
a god)

quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet (indef. pron.) any-
one or anything it pleases; anyone, anything

ruīna, ruīnae f. downfall, ruin, destruction

Saliaris, Saliare Salian, of the Salii a college of
priests of Mars noted for their sumptuous pro-
cessions through the city every March

sodālis, sodālis, -ium m. comrade companion

tellūs, tellūris f. earth, land

8. The vowels -e- and -ā- of antehāc here elide into a single sound -ā-. This internal elision is called *synizesis* (< Greek *synizesis*, collapse)

vix ūna sospes nāvis ab ignibus
mentemque lymphātam Mareōticō
redēgit in vērōs timōrēs
Caesar ab Italiā volantem

15

rēmīs adurgēns, accipiter velut
mollis columbās aut leporem citus
vēnātor in campis nivālis
Haemoniae, daret ut catēnīs

20

fātale mōnstrum: quae generosius
perīre quaerēns nec muliebriter
expāvit ēnsem nec latentīs
classe citā reparāvit ōrās,

accipiter, accipitris *m.* bird of prey, hawk
adurgēō, adurgēre, —, — press on, pursue
closely
catēna, catēnae *f.* chain
citus, -a, -um swift, fast
classis, classis, -ium *f.* fleet
columba, columbae *f.* dove
ēnsis, ēnsis *m.* sword
expavēscō, expavēscere, expāvi, — become
frightened of, take fright at
fātālis, fātāle destined, fated; deadly, dangerous
generōsē (adv.) nobly
Haemonia, Haemoniae *f.* Haemonia, old name
of Thessaly
lateō, latēre, latuī, — hide, be hidden, be con-
cealed
lepus, leporis *m.* hare
lymphātus, -a, -um frenzied, deranged

Mareōticum, Mareōtici *n.* Mareotic wine (from
Mareotis in Egypt)
mollis, molle gentle, mild, soft
mōnstrum, mōnstri *n.* omen, portent; monster
muliebriter (adv.) like a woman
nāvis, nāvis, -ium *f.* ship
nivālis, nivāle snowy
ōra, ōrae *f.* shore, coast
redigō (red- + agō), redigere, redēgi, redāctus
bring back (down), force, subdue
rēmus, rēmi *m.* oar
reparō (1-tr.) recover; take in exchange
sospes, sospitis safe, unharmed, spared
triumphus, triumphī *m.* (a) triumph, the proces-
sion through Rome of a victorious general
velut (conj.) even as just as
vēnātor, vēnātoris *m.* hunter
volō (1-intr.) fly

ausa et iacentem visere rēgiam
 voltū serēnō, fortis et asperās
 tractāre serpentēs, ut ātrum
 corpore conbiberet venēnum,

25

dēliberātā morte ferōcior:
 saevis Liburnis scilicet invidens
 prīvāta dēdūcī superbō
 nōn humilis mulier triumphō.

30

asper, aspera, asperum harsh, fierce, pitiless
 āter atra, ātrum black, dark
 combibō, combibere, combibī, — drink
 (deeply)
 dēdūcō (dē- + dūcō) lead down; bring back
 (to Rome)
 dēliberō (1-tr.) weigh, consider; resolve, deter-
 mine
 ferōx ferōcis fierce, savage; high-spirited, defiant
 iaceō, iacere, iacui, lie, rest, lie in ruins
 invidēō (in- + videō) envy, be jealous; begrudge,
 refuse
 Liburna, Liburnae f. (a) Liburnian galley
 mulier, mulieris f. woman

privātus, -a, -um private; *as subst.*, ordinary
 citizen
 rēgia, rēgiae f. royal residence, palace
 scilicet (particle) to be sure, no doubt, of course
 serēnus, -a, -um calm, serene
 serpēs, serpentis -ium m. or f. serpent
 superbus, -a, -um proud; haughty
 tractō (1-tr.) keep on dragging; touch, handle
 triumphus, triumphī m. (a) triumph, the proces-
 sion through Rome of a victorious general
 venēnum, venenī n. poison
 visō, visere, vīsī, visus go to see, visit, view

13. Horace, *Carmina* III.30 (Asclepiadean)

The poet reflects on his achievements

Exēgi monumentum aere perennius
 rēgālique sitū pŷramidum altius,
 quod nōn imber edāx, nōn Aquilō impotēns
 possit dīruere aut innumerabilis
 annōrum seriēs et fuga temporum.
 nōn omnis moriar multaque pars mei
 vitābit Libitinam: ūsque ego posterā
 crēscam laude recēns, dum Capitōlium
 scandet cum tacitā virgine pontifex:

5

aes, aeris *n.* copper, bronze; money

Aquilo, Aquilōnis *m.* Aquilo, the north wind

Capitōlium, Capitōlii *n.* (the) Capitoline hill

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, cretus grow increase

dīruō, dīruere, dīruī, dīrutus demolish, destroy

edāx, edācis corrosive

exigō (ex- + agō), exigere, exēgi, exactus drive
 out finish, complete

imber, imbris *m.* rain; water

impotēns, impotentis powerless, helpless,
 unrestrained, unbundled

innumerābilis, innumerābile innumerable

laus, laudis *f.* praise

Libitina Libitinae *f.* Libitina, goddess of corpses,
 at whose temple the registers of deaths were
 kept

monumentum, monumenti *n.* monument

perennis, perenne everlasting, perpetual,
 perennial

pontifex, pontificis *m.* priest; pontifex

posterus, -a, -um later, following, future

pŷramis, pŷramidis *f.* pyramid

recēns, recentis recent, fresh, new

rēgālis, rēgale royal, kingly

scandō, scandere, —, — climb, mount,
 ascend

seriēs, seriēi *f.* series, chain

situs, sitūs *m.* position, structure; neglect, decay

tacitus, -a, -um silent

ūsque (adv.) continuously

virgō, virginis *f.* maiden, virgin

vitō (1-tr) avoid

dicar, qua* violens obstrepit Aufidus
 et quā* pauper aquae Daunus agrestium
 rēgnāvit populōrum, ex humili potēns
 princeps Aeolium carmen ad Italōs
 dēdūxisse modōs. sūme superbiam
 quaesitam meritis et mihi Delphicā
 laurō cinge volens, Melpomene, comam.

10

15

*quā, *here* (adv.), where

Aeolius, -a, -um Aeolic, Aeolian, of Aeolia,
 a region in northwest Asia Minor, supposed
 birthplace of Greek lyric poetry

agrestis, agreste rustic

Aufidus, Aufidī *m.* (the) Aufidus (river)
 (in Apulia)

coma, comae *f.* hair

Daunus, Daunī *m.* Daunus, legendary king of
 Apulia (Horace's home district)

dēdūcō (dē- + dūcō) lead down, introduce;
 convert, adapt

Delphicus, -a, -um Delphic, of Delphi
 impotēns, impotentis powerless, helpless;
 unrestrained, unbridled

Italus, -a, -um Italian

laurus, laurī *f.* laurel

Melpomenē, Melpomenēs *f.* Melpomene, a Muse

meritum, meriti *n.* merit; service

obstrepiō, obstrepere, obstrepiū, obstrepitus roar

pauper, pauperis poor

potēns, potentis powerful

princeps, principis first

rēgnō (1-tr.) rule, rule over (+ gen.)

situs, sitūs *m.* position, structure; neglect, decay

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take (up), adopt
 as suitable

superbia, superbiae *f.* pride; haughtiness, arro-
 gance

violēns, violentis violent, forceful

14. Propertius II.29a

The poet receives an unusual escort back to his beloved.

Hesternā, mea lūx, cum pōtus nocte vagārer,
nec mē servōrum dūceret tūlla manus,

obvia, nescio quot* puerī, mihi turba, minutī,
vēnerat† (hos vetuit me numerāre timor);

quōrum alii faculās, alii retinēre sagittās,
pars etiam vīsast vincla parāre mihi.

sed nūdī fuerant.† quōrum lascīvior unus
“arripite hunc,” inquit, “nam bene nōstis eum.

hic‡ erat, hunc mulier nōbīs irāta locāvit.”
dixit, et in collō iam mihi nōdus erat.

hic§ alter iubet in medium prōpellere, at alter
“intereat, quī nōs nōn putat esse deōs!

5

10

*nescio quot, I-don't-know-how-many, some
†vēnerat, fuerant, pluperfects used to express a
sudden action; translate as perfects
‡hic, here, scans as if it were spelled hicc
arripō, arripere, arripui, arreptus grasp, take
hold of, seize; arrest
at (con.) but
collum, collī n. neck
facula, faculae f. (little) torch
hesternus, -a, -um of or belonging to yesterday;
hesterna nox, last night
inquam (defective verb) say; inquit = 3rd sing.
pres. act. indic.
intereō (inter- + eō), interfīre, interfī, interitūrus
perish, die
irātus, -a, -um angry, irate
lascīvus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from re-
straint
loco (1 tr.) place, assign

minutus, -a -um small, tiny, minute
mulier, mulieris f. woman
nōdus, nōdī m. knot; (knotted) rope
nūdus, -a, -um naked, nude
numerō (1-tr.) number, count
obvius, -a -um in the way, face to face; moving
against, opposed in direction
parō (1-tr.) prepare, make ready
pōtō, pōtāre, pōtāvi, pōtātus or pōtus drink intox-
icating drinks; perf. pass. part. with active mean-
ing, having drunk, being drunk
prōpello (pro- + pello), propellere, propuli,
prōpulsus push forward, propel; compel to go
retinēō (re- + teneō), retinēre, retinui, retentus
keep hold of, retain, grasp
sagitta, sagittae f. arrow
turba, turbae f. crowd
vago (1-intr.) wander
vinc(u)lum, vinc(u)li n. bond, chain

haec tē non meritum totās exspectat in* horās:

at tū nescio quam† quaeris, inepte, forīs.

quae cum Sīdoniae nocturna ligāmina mitrae

15

solverit atque oculos mōverit illa gravīs,

afflābunt tibi nōn Arabum dē grāmīne odōrēs,

sed quōs ipse suis fēcit Amor manibus.

parcite iam, frātrēs, iam certōs spondet amōrēs;

et iam ad mandātam vēnimus ecce domum.”

20

atque ita mī iniectō dixerunt rursus amictū:

“i nunc et noctēs disce manere domi.”

*in, here, expressing duration, for

†nescioquī, nescioquae, nescioquod (indef. adj.),
sometimes written as two words, I-don't-know-
who, I don't-know-which, some . . . or other

afflō (1-intr.) blow, breathe (upon) (+ dat.)

amictus, amictūs m. mantle, cloak

Arabēs, Arabum m. pl. Arabians, Arabs

discō, discere didici — learn (how) (+ inf.)

forīs (adv.) out of doors, outside; abroad

grāmen, grāminis n. grass, herb

hōra, hōrae f. hour

ineptus, -a, -um having no sense of what is fit-
ting, foolish

iniciō (in- + iaciō) throw upon

ligāmen ligāminis n. fastening string

mandō (1-tr.) entrust, commit; assign, order

mereor, merēri, meritus sum deserve, earn

mī = mihi

mitra, mitrae f. (eastern) headdress

nocturnus, -a, -um at night, nocturnal

odor, odōris m. odor, scent

parcō, parcere, peperci, parsūrus be merciful, be
sparing (+ dat.)

rursus (adv.) again

Sīdonius -a, -um of Sidon, a Phoenician city
famed for its export of purple dye

spondeō spondere, spopondi, spōnsus pledge

15. Ovid, *Metamorphoses* I.253–73

When mortal men reached the Iron Age of greed and crime Jupiter decided to destroy the human race and begin again.

iamque erat in tōtās sparsurus fulmina terrās;
sed timuit nē forte sacer tot ab ignibus aethēr
conciperet flammās longusque ardēsceret axis.
esse quoque in fātīs reminiscitur adfore tempus
quō mare, quō tellūs correptaque rēgia caeli
ardeat et mundi molēs obsessa laboret.
tēla repōnuntur manibus fabricāta Cyclōpum;
poena placet diversa, genus mortāle sub undīs
perdere et ex omnī nimbōs dēmittere caelō.
prōtinus Aeoliīs Aquilōnem claudit in antrīs

255

260

Aeolius, -a, -um of Aeolus, ruler of the winds;

Aeolian

aethēr, aetheris *m.* aether or ether, the upper
region of the sky; heaven

antrum, antri *n.* cave, cavern

Aquilō, Aquilōnis *m.* Aquilo, the north wind

ardeō, ardēre, arsi, arsūrus burn, be on fire

ardescō, ardēscere, —, — become inflamed,
begin to burn

axis, axis, -ium *m.* (celestial) axis, pole

claudō, claudere, clausi, clausus close, shut; con-
fine, enclose

concupiō (con- + capiō) take on, absorb, catch

corripiō (con- + rapiō) snatch up, seize; ignite

Cyclōps, Cyclōpos *m.* one of the Cyclopes, the
fabulous giants of Sicily

dēmittō (dē- + mittō) send down

diversus, -a, -um different

fabricō (1-tr.) fashion, forge

flamma, flammae *f.* flame

fulmen fulminis *n.* lightning; thunderbolt

mōlēs, mōlis, -ium *f.* (huge) mass

mortālis, mortāle mortal

mundus mundi *m.* universe, world

nimbus, nimbi *m.* rain cloud

obsideō obsidēre, obsēdi, obsessus besiege,
beset, assault

prōtinus (adv.) immediately, straightway

rēgia, rēgiae *f.* royal house, palace

reminiscor, reminiscī, — recall, recollect

repōnō (re- + pōnō) put back, put down, put away

sacer sacra, sacrum sacred

spargō, spargere, sparsi, sparsus scatter,
sprinkle; shower; cast

tellūs tellūris *f.* earth, land

unda, undae *f.* wave

et quaecumque fugant inductās flāmina nubes
 emittitque Notum. madidīs Notus ēvolat ālis,
 terribilem piceā tēctus cāligine vultum;
 barba gravis nimbīs, cānis fluit unda capillis;
 fronte sedent nebulae, rōrant pennaēque sinūsque.
 utque manū lātē pendentia nūbila pressit,
 fit fragor. hinc dēnsī funduntur ab aethere nimbī,
 nuntia Iūnōnis, variōs indūta colōrēs,
 concipit Iris aquās alimentaue nubibus adfert.
 sternuntur segetēs et dēplōrāta colōnī
 vōta iacent, longique perit labor inritus annī.

265

270

afferō (ad- + ferō), afferre, attulī, allātus bring,
 add
 aethēr, aetheris *m.* *aether* or *ether*, the upper
 region of the sky, heaven
 āla, ālae *f.* wing
 alimentum, alimentī *n.* nourishment
 aqua, aquae *f.* water
 barba, barbae *f.* beard
 cāligō, cāliginis *f.* darkness; mist, fog
 cānus, -a, -um white gray
 capillus, capillī *m.* in sing. or pl. hair
 colōnus, colōnī *m.* settler; farmer
 color, colōris *m.* color
 concipiō (con- + capiō) catch, take up
 dēnsus, -a, -um thick, dense
 dēplōrō (1-tr.) weep, lament, cry over
 ēmittō (ē- + mittō) send out, release
 ēvolō (1-intr.) fly out
 flāmen, flāminis *n.* blast, gust (of wind)
 fluo, fluere, fluxī, fluxus flow run
 fragor, fragōris *m.* crash, roar, din
 frōns, frontis -ium *f.* forehead, brow
 fugō (1 tr.) put to flight, rout
 fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, pour forth
 iaceō, iacēre, iacui, — he, rest; lie in ruins
 inducō (in- + dūcō) bring in; draw over, spread
 over
 induo, induere, induī, indūtus put on, clothe,
 dress

Iris, Iridis *f.* Iris female messenger goddess
 (of the rainbow)
 inritus, -a, -um useless, vain
 lātē (adv.) widely far and wide
 madidus, -a, -um wet, drenched, dripping
 nebula, nebulae *f.* mist, fog, cloud
 nimbus, nimbī *m.* rain cloud
 Notus, Notī *m.* Notus, the south wind
 nūbēs, nūbis, -ium *f.* cloud
 nūbila, nūbilōrum *n. pl.* (rain) clouds
 nuntia, nuntiae *f.* (female) messenger
 pendeō, pendēre, pependī, hang, be sus-
 pended
 penna, pennaē *f.* feather, wing
 piceus, -a, -um pitch black
 quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque (indef.
 rel. adj.) whatever
 rōrō (1-intr.) shed moisture, drip
 sedeō, sedēre sēdi, sessūrus sit
 segēs, segitis *f.* field; crop
 sinus, sinūs *m.* curve; fold
 sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātus strew, spread out,
 scatter
 tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus cover
 terribilis, terribile terrifying, frightening
 unda, undae *f.* wave
 varius, -a, -um various, different
 vōtum, vōti *n.* vow, prayer, desire hope pledge

16. Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita* 1.13.1–5

In need of wives for his male citizens, Romulus had arranged for the capture and forced marriage of many women from the nearby Sabines. When the Sabines later attacked Rome, these women became the peacemakers.

tum Sabinae mulherēs, quārum ex iniuriā bellum ortum erat, crīnibus passīs scissaque veste, victō malis muliebrī pavōre, ausae sē inter tēla volantia inferre, ex trānsversō impetū factō dirimere infestās acies, dirimere iras, hinc patres, hinc virōs orantes nē sanguine sē nefando soceri generique respergerent, nē parricidiō macularent partūs suōs, nepōtum illī, hī liberum* prōgeniem. “Si adfinitātis inter vōs, si cōnubiū piget, in nōs vertite irās; nōs causa bellī, nōs volnerum ac caedium virīs ac parentibus sumus; melius peribimus quam sine alteris vestrum viduae aut orbae vivēmus.” movet res cum multitudine tum ducēs; silentium et repentina fit quies; inde ad foedus faciendum ducēs prōdeunt, nec pācem modo sed civitatem unam ex duabus faciunt, regnum cōsociant, imperium omne cōferunt Rōmam. na gemit nātā urbe, ut Sabinis tamen aliquid darētur Quiritēs ā Curibus appellātī.

*liberī, *here*, children; liberum = liberōrum
 affinitās, affinitātis *f.* relationship by marriage
 appellō (1-tr.) name, call
 caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter, killing
 cōsocio (1-tr.) unite
 cōnubiū, cōnubiū *n.* marriage
 crīnis, crīnis, -ium *m.* in sing. or *pl.* hair
 Curēs, Curium *m. pl.* Cures, a Sabine town
 dirimō, dirimere, dirēmī, dirēptus break apart,
 separate, divide
 foedus, foederis *n.* pact, treaty
 geminō (1-tr.) double
 gener, generī *m.* son-in-law
 impetus, impetus *m.* attack, assault, onrush
 infestus, -a, -um hostile, dangerous
 iniūria, iniūriae *f.* injury, injustice
 maculō (1-tr.) stain, defile, pollute
 muliebris, muliebre of a woman, womanly
 mulier, mulieris *f.* woman
 multitūdō, multitūdinis *f.* multitude, populace
 nefandus, -a, -um unspeakable, abominable
 nepōs, nepōtis *m.* grandson
 orbus, -a, -um bereft, bereaved, childless,
 orphaned
 pandō, pandere, pandī, passus spread, extend,
 dishevel
 parēs, parentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* parent

parricidium, parricidī *n.* murder (of parents or
 kinsmen), parricide
 partus, partūs *m.* birth, offspring
 pavor, pavōris *m. pl.* trembling; fear, dread
 prōdeō (prō- + eō) prōdīre, prōdī, prōditurus
 go or come forward
 prōgeniēs, *prōgeniē *f.* offspring, progeny
 quies, quietis *f.* quiet
 Quiritēs, Quiritium *m. pl.* Quirites, the name for
 Roman citizens in their public capacity
 rēgnū, rēgnī *n.* realm, kingdom; rule, kingship
 repentinus, -a, -um sudden
 respergō, respergere, respersī, respersus
 besprinkle; defile
 Sabinus, -a, -um Sabine; *as subst. pl.*, (the)
 Sabines
 sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood
 scindō, scindere, scidī, scissus rend, tear
 silentium, silentiū *n.* silence
 socer, socerī *m.* father-in-law
 trānsversus, -a, -um crosswise transverse;
 ex trānsversō, from the flank
 vertō, vertere, vertī, versus turn
 vestis, vestis -ium *f.* clothing, garment
 viduus, -a, -um bereft, bereaved, spouseless
 widowed
 volō (1-intr.) fly

17. Petronius, *Satyricon* 45

A dinner guest tires of hearing the complaints of another guest and decides to interrupt.

"ōrō tē," inquit Echlōn centōnārius, "melius loquere. 'modo sic, modo sic,' inquit rūsticus; varium porcum perdiderat. quod hodiē nōn est, crās erit: sic vīta trūdītur, nōn meherculēs patria melior dīcī potest* sī hominēs habēret. sed labōrat hōc tempore, nec haec sōla. nōn dēbēmus dēlicātī esse, ubique† medius caelus‡ est. tū sī aliubi fueris, dīcēs hīc porcōs coctōs ambulāre. et ecce habitūrī sumus mūnus excellentē in trīduō diē fēstā; familia nōn lanistīcia, sed plūrimī libertī. et Tītus noster magnum animum habet et est caldicerebrius: aut hoc aut illud, erit quid§ utique. nam illi domesticus sum, nōn est mixcix. ferrum optimum datūrus est, sine fugā, carnarium in medio. ut amphitheāter videat.

*potest, pres. indic. used for vividness in apodosi of Present Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence

†ubique (adv.) everywhere

‡caelus = caelum

§quid = aliquid

aliubi (adv.) in another place, in other places, elsewhere

amphitheāter (= amphitheātrum), amphitheātri m. oval theater, amphitheater

caldicerebrius, -a, -um hot headed, impetuous

carnarium, carnariū n. meat rack; slaughter-house; carnage, butchery

centōnārius, centōnariū m. maker of patchwork, rag seller, man who uses mats to extinguish fires

coquō, coquere, coxi, coctus cook, bake, boil, roast

crās (adv.) tomorrow

dēlicātus, -a, -um self-indulgent; hard to please; fastidious

domesticus, -a, -um belonging to the family; familiar

Echlōn, Echlonis m. Echion

excellēns, excellentis superior, excellent;

excellente = neut. sing. acc.

familia, familiae f. household; troop, group

fēstus, -a, -um festal; fēsta or fēstus diēs festival day, holiday

hodiē (adv.) today

inquam (defective verb) say inquit = 3rd sing. pres. act. indic.

lanisticus, -a, -um belonging to a lanista, a trainer of gladiators; gladiatorial

libertus, liberti m. freedman

mixcix (unknown) given to half-measures (?)

mūnus, mūneris n. present, gift; public show, spectacle, entertainment

porcus, porci m. pig

rūsticus, rūstici m. country man, peasant, rustic

trīduum, trīdui n. period of three days

trūdo, trūdere, trūsi, trūsus shove, push; drive on utique (adv.) in any case, at any rate, at least, certainly

varius, -a, -um varied; multicolored, mottled; spotted

18. Tacitus, *De Vita Agricolae* 46

The reverent conclusion of the biography of the historian's father-in-law

sī quis* piōrum mānibus locus, sī, ut sapientibus placet, nōn cum corpore extinguntur magnae animae, placidē quiēscās,† nōsque domum tuam ab infirmō dēsideriō et muliebribus lamentis ad contemplatiōnem virtutum tuarum vocēs, quās neque lūgēri neque plangi fās est. admiratiōne tē potius et immortalibus laudibus et, si nātūra suppeditet, similitūdine colāmus: is vērus honōs, ea coniunctissimī cuiusque pietās. id filiae quoque uxōrique praecēperim, sic patris, sic maritī memoriam venerārī, ut omnia facta dictaque eius sēcum revolvant, formamque ac figuram animī magis quam corporis complectantur, nōn quia intercedendum putem‡ imaginibus quae marmore aut aere finguntur, sed, ut vultūs hominum, ita simulācra vultūs imbecilla ac mortālia sunt, forma mentis aeterna, quam tenēre et exprimere nōn per aliēnam māteriam et artem, sed tuis ipse mōribus possis. quidquid

*quis, indef. pron. used adjectivally

†quiēscās, addressee is the deceased Agricola

‡putem, subjunctive in a clause of rejected reason; translate as indicative

admiratiō, admiratiōnis *f.* wonder; admiration, veneration

aes, aeris *n.* bronze

aeternus, -a, -um eternal, everlasting

aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another, foreign

colō, colere, colui, cultus inhabit; cultivate; adorn; cherish

complector, complecti, complexus sum embrace, cling to; comprehend, remember

coniunctus, -a, -um linked together; closely associated, related

contemplatio, contemplatiōnis *f.* contemplation, consideration

dēsiderium, dēsideriū *n.* desire; regret; longing

extinguō, extinguere, extinxī, extinctus extinguish; annihilate

exprimō (ex- + premō) express

figūra, figurāe *f.* form, composition; appearance

fingō, fingere, finxi, fictus form, fashion, make

forma, formae *f.* form, appearance; state, kind

imāgō, imāginis *f.* image, likeness; bust

imbecillus, -a, -um weak, feeble; fragile

immortalis, immortalē immortal

infirmus, -a, -um weak, feeble; ineffectual

intercedō (inter- + cēdō) intervene, interfere, obstruct, oppose

lamenta, lamentorum *n. pl.* wailing, weeping

laus, laudis *f.* praise

lūgēd, lūgēre, lūxi, lūctus mourn (for); grieve, lament

mānēs, mānium *m. pl.* Manes, spirits of the dead; shade (of a particular person)

maritus, maritī *m.* husband

marmor, marmoris *n.* marble

māteria, māteriae *f.* material, matter

mortalis, mortālē mortal

muliebris, muliebre of a woman, womanly

pietās, pietatis *f.* dutifulness; loyalty

placidē (adv.) calmly, quietly

plangō, plangere, plāxi, plāctus beat

(the breast), mourn (for), bewail

potius (comparative adv.) rather

praecipiō (prae- + capiō) advise, instruct

quiēscō quiēscere, quiēvi, quietum be asleep; rest

quisquis, quidquid/quicquid (indef. rel. pron.) whoever, whatever

revolvō, revolvere, revolvī, revolutus go back over; review, recall

similitūdō, similitūdinis *f.* similarity, resemblance, likeness

simulācrum, simulacrī *n.* likeness, image; statue

suppeditō (1-tr.) support; supply; be available, be adequate

uxor, uxōris *f.* wife

veneror (1-tr.) revere, venerate

ex Agricolā amāvimus, quidquid mirāti sumus, manet mānsūrumque est in animīs hominum in aeternitate temporum, fāmā rerum; nam multōs veterum velut inglō-
nōs et ignōbilis obliviō obruit: Agricola posteritātī nārrātus et trāditus superstes erit.

aeternitās, aeternitātis *f.* eternity
Agricola, Agricolae *m.* Agricola
ignōbilis ignōbile unknown, undistinguished
inglōrius, -a, -um lacking renown, obscure
mīror (1-tr.) admire, marvel at
nārrō (1 tr.) narrate, tell (of); describe
obliviō obliviōnis *f.* act or state of forgetting or
being forgotten oblivion

obruō, obruere, obruī, obrutus cover up, bury
posteritās, posteritātis *f.* later generations,
posterity
quisquis, quidquid/quicquid (indef. rel. pron.)
whoever, whatever
superstes, superstitis surviving, lasting
velut (conj.) even as, just as, as if

19. Tacitus, *Dialogus de Oratoribus* 25

In a discussion of contemporary oratory's enormous debt to the great speakers of past ages, one participant grants the vigor and variety of the old orators but insists that for both the Greeks and the Romans one greatest period can be identified.

sed quō modō* inter Atticōs orātōrēs primae[†] Dēmostenē tribuuntur, proximum locum Aeschines et Hyperidēs et Lysiās et Lycurgus obtinent, omnium autem concessū haec orātōrum aetās maximē probātur, sic apud nōs Cicerō quidem cēterōs eōrundem temporum disertōs antecessit, Calvus autem et Asinius et Caesar et Caelius et Brūtus iūre et priōribus et sequentibus antepōnuntur. nec rēfert quod inter se speciē differunt, cum genere cōsentiant. adstrictior Calvus, numerōsior Asinius, splendidior Caesar, amārior Caelius, gravior Brūtus, vehementior et plēnior et

*quō modō, *here, correlative with sic, in the way in which*

†primae, *sc. partēs, first place*

adstrictus, -a, -um constricted, restrained *terse*

Aeschinēs, Aeschinīs *m.* Aeschines, Athenian orator of the fourth century B.C.E.

amārus, -a, -um bitter; acrimonious; biting, caustic

antecēdō (ante- + cēdō) (tr.) go before, precede; surpass *excel*

antepōno (ante- + pōnō) place before, rank ahead of

Asinius, Asiniū *m.* (C.) Asinius (Pollio), Roman writer and orator of the first century B.C.E.

Atticus, -a, -um Attic, Athenian

Brutus, Brūtū *m.* (M. Junius) Brutus, Roman orator and politician of the first century B.C.E.

Caelius, Caeliū *m.* (M.) Caelius (Rufus), Roman orator and advocate of the first century B.C.E.

Calvus, Calvī *m.* (M. Licinius) Calvus, Roman orator and poet of the first century B.C.E.

concessus, concessūs *m.* permission, leave; agreement, concession

cōsentitiō (con- + sentiō) be in agreement; be similar

Dēmostenēs, Dēmostenis *m.* Demosthenes, Athenian orator of the fourth century B.C.E.

disertus, -a, -um skilled in speaking, eloquent
Hyperidēs, Hyperidis *m.* Hyperides, Athenian orator of the fourth century B.C.E.

Lycurgus, Lycurgi *m.* Lycurgus, Athenian orator of the fourth century B.C.E.

Lysias, Lysiae *m.* Lysias, Athenian orator of the fifth and fourth centuries B.C.E.

numerōsus, -a, -um plentiful, abundant; harmonious, rhythmical

obtinēō (ob- + teneō), obtinēre, obtinui, obtentus have a hold on

plēnus, -a, -um full, abundant; sonorous; covering the whole range

probō (1-tr.) approve of, commend, esteem

proximus, -a, -um nearest, next

splendidus, -a, -um bright, shining, vivid

tribuō tribuere, tribui, tributus grant, bestow, assign

vehemēns, vehementis energetic vigorous, forceful

valentior Cicerō: omnēs tamen eandem sānitātem ēloquentiae prae sē ferunt, ut, si omnium pariter librōs in manum sumpseris, sciās, quamvis in diversis ingeniīs, esse quandam iūdicī ac voluntātis similitūdinem et cognātiōnem. nam quod invicem sē obtrectāverunt et sunt aliqua epistulis eōrum inserta, ex quibus mūtua malignitās dētegitur, nōn est orātōrum vitium, sed hominum. nam et Calvum et Asinium et ipsum Cicerōnem crēdō solitōs et invidēre et livēre et cēteris hūmānae infirmitātis vitīis adfici: solum inter hōs arbitror Brūtum nōn malignitāte nec invidiā, sed simpliciter et ingenuē iūdicium animī suī dētēxisse. an* ille Cicerōnī invideret, quī mihi vidētur nē Caesarī quidem invisisse?

*an, here, introduces an indignant or surprised question expecting a negative answer, can it really be that . . .

afficiō (ad- + faciō) affect, influence
 Asinius, Asinī m. (C.) Asinius (Pollio)
 Brūtus, Brūtī m. (M. Junius) Brutus
 Calvus, Calvī m. (M. Licinius) Calvus
 cognātiō, cognātiōnis f. kinship, affinity
 dētegō, dētegere, dētēxi, dētēctus uncover, disclose, reveal
 diversus -a, -um different
 ēloquentia, ēloquentiae f. eloquence, rhetoric
 epistula, epistulae f. letter
 hūmānus, -a, -um human
 infirmitās, infirmitātis f. weakness, sickness
 ingenuē (adv.) in a manner befitting a freeborn person; honorably, generously
 inserō, inserere, inserui insertus put in, insert, include
 —, vicis f. turn; succession, invicem in turn, against one another

invideō (in- + videō) envy, be jealous of
 iūdicium, iūdicī n. judgment, opinion
 liveō, livēre, —, — be livid, be envious or jealous
 malignitās, malignitātis f. ill-will, spite, malice
 mūtus, -a, -um shared, reciprocal, mutual
 obtrectō (1-tr) criticize maliciously, disparage, belittle
 pariter (adv.) equally; together, side by side
 prae (prep. + abl.) in front of, before; prae sē ferre, exhibit, display
 quamvis (conj.) although
 sānitās, sānitātis f. healthiness soundness
 similitūdō, similitūdinis f. similarity
 simpliciter (adv.) simply
 sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sumptus take up, seize
 vitium vitīi n. vice, fault
 voluntās, voluntātis f. will, intention; choice

The *Dialogus de Oratoribus* (Dialogue About Orators), which may date from around 100 c.e., is modeled on Ciceronian philosophical dialogues and is written in a Ciceronian style that contrasts dramatically with the elliptical, unbalanced style of Tacitus's other surviving works. The interlocutors in the *Dialogus* discuss rhetoric generally and treat in particular the interesting question of the relation between flourishing oratory and political turmoil.

Continuous Readings

1 Cicero, *In Catilinam* I 16–17

nunc vērō quae tua est ista vita? sic enim iam tecum loquar, nōn ut odiō permōtus esse videar, quō dēbeō, sed ut misericordiā, quae tibi nūlla dēbetur vēnistī paulō ante in senātum. quis tē ex hāc tantā frequentiā, tot ex tuis amīcis ac necessariis salūtāvit? si hoc post* hominum memoriā contigit nēmīni, vōcis expectās contumēliam, cum sis gravissimō iūdicīō taciturnitātis oppressus? quid, quod† adventū tuō ista subsellia vacuēfacta sunt, quod omnes cōsulārēs quī tibi‡ persaepe ad caedem cōstitutī fuērunt,§ simul atque adsēdistī, partem istam subselliōrum nūdā atque inānem reliquērunt, quō tandem animō tibi ferendum putās? servī mehercule meī si mē istō pactō metuerent ut te metuunt omnes cives tui, domum meam relinquendam

*post, here, since

†quid, quod, what about the fact that

‡tibi, here, Dative of Agent

§cōstitutī fuērunt cōstitutī sunt

adventus, adventūs *m.* arrival

assido, assidere, assēdi. — sit down

caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter

cōsulārīs, cōsulārīs, -ium *m.* ex-consul

contingō, contingere, contigī, contactus happen, befall (+ dat.)

contumēlia, contumēliae *f.* abuse, insult

frequentia frequentiae *f.* crowd

inānis, ināne empty

iudicium, iūdicīū *n.* judgment, opinion

misericordia, misericordiae *f.* pity

necessārius -a, -um necessary; as *subst.*, relative, friend, client, patron

nūdus, -a, -um naked, nude; bare, deserted

pactum pactī *n.* stipulation; way, manner

permoveo (per + moveō) thoroughly move

persaepe (adv.) very often

salūtō (1-*tr.*) greet, hail, salute

simul atque (conj.) as soon as

subsellium, subsellī *n.* bench, seat

taciturnitās, taciturnitātis *f.* silence

vacuēfaciō, vacuēfacere, vacuēfēcī, vacuēfactus (make) empty

putārem: tū tibi urbem nōn arbitrāris? et sī mē meis cīvibus iniūriā suspectum tam graviter atque offēsum vidērem, carēre mē aspectū civium quam infestis omnium oculis cōspici māllem: tū, cum cōscientiā scelerum tuorum agnōscās odium omnium iustum et iam diū tibi dēbitum, dubitās quōrum mentis sēnsūque vulnerās, eōrum aspectum praesentiamque vitāre? sī tē parentēs timērent atque ōdissent tui neque eōs ratiōne ullā plācāre possēs, ut opīnor, ab eōrum oculis aliquo* concēderēs. nunc tē patria, quae commūnis est parēns omnium nostrum, ōdit ac metuit et iam diū nihil tē iūdicat nisi dē parricidiō suō cōgitāre: huius tū neque auctōritātem verēbere nec iūdicium sequēre nec vim pertimēscēs?

*aliquō, *here* (adv.), to some place

agnōscō (ad- + nōscō), agnōscere, agnōvī, agnitus
recognize

aspectus, aspectūs *m.* sight

commūnis, commūne common, shared

concēdō (con- + cēdō) concede; go away

cōscientia, cōscientiae *f.* awareness

cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspexī, cōspectus

catch sight of, perceive, observe

infestus, -a, -um hostile

iniuria, iniūriae *f.* injury, injustice; iniūriā, *abl.*

sing. as adv., unjustifiably, unjustly

iūdicium, iūdicīū *n.* judgment, opinion

iūdicō (1-tr.) form an opinion, judge

iustus, -a, -um just, fair, right

offēsus, -a, -um offensive

opīnor (1-tr.) suppose, imagine, think

parēns, parentis, -um *m.* or *f.* parent

parricidium, parricidiū *n.* murder

pertimēscō, pertimēscere, pertimui, —

become very afraid, take fright; thoroughly
fear

plācō (1-tr.) appease, calm

praesentia, praesentiae *f.* presence

ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; way, method

suspectus, -a, -um viewed with suspicion,

suspect

vitō (1-tr.) avoid

vulnerō (1-tr.) wound

2. Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae* 5

L. Catilina, nōbilī genere nātus, fuit magnā vī et animī et corporis, sed ingemō malō prāvoque, huic ab adulēscientiā bella intestina, caedēs, rapīnae, discordia cīvīlis grāta fuēre, ibique iuventūtem suam exercuit. corpus patiēns inediae, algōris, vigiliae suprā quam quoiquam crēdibile est. animus audāx, subdolus, varius, quoius rei lubet* simulātor ac dissimulātor, aliēni adpetēns, sui profusus, ardens in cupiditātibus; satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum. vāstus animus inmoderāta, incrēdibilia, nimis alta semper cupiebat. hunc post dominātionem L. Sullae libidō maxuma invāserat rei pūblīcae capiundae;† neque id quibus modis adsequerētur, dum sibi rēgnum parāret, quicquam pēnsī habēbat agitābātur magis magisque in dies‡ animus ferox inopia rei familiaris et cōnscentiā scelerum, quae utraque iīs

*quī . . . libet, quae . . . libet, quod . . . libet

(indef. adj.) any . . . it pleases

†capiundae = archaic form of capiendae

‡in dies day by day

adulēscientia, adulēscientiae f. youth, adolescence

agito (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion, vex, harass

algor, algōris m. cold

aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another

appetēns, appetentis desirous (of), greedy (for)

(+ gen.)

ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn, be on fire; rage

assequor (ad- + sequor) gam, reach, attain

audāx, audācis bold, daring, confident, auda-

cious, presumptuous, rash

caedēs, caedis, -ium f. slaughter

cīvīlis, cīvīle of or connected with citizens, civil

cōnscentia, cōnscentiae f. consciousness, awareness

crēdibilis, crēdibile believable, credible

cupiditās, cupiditātis f. desire

discordia, discordiae f. discord, dissension, conflict

dissimulātor, dissimulātōris m. dissembler, concealer

dominātiō, dominātiōnis f. absolute rule, tyranny

eloquentia, eloquentiae f. eloquence

exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus keep busy, occupy; exercise, train

familiaris, familiāre of or belonging to the household; rēs familiaris, (one's) private property, estate, patrimony

ferōx, ferōcis fierce, savage; high-spirited, defiant
inmoderātus, -a, -um without measure, unre-

strained excessive

incrēdibilis, incrēdibile unbelievable

inedia, inediae f. lack of food

inopia, inopiae f. lack of resources, poverty, lack

intestīnus -a, -um internal

invādō, invādere, invāsi, invāsus enter (hostilely); take hold of

iuventūs, iuventūtis f. youth, early manhood

libidō, libidinis f. desire, pleasure, passion, lust

nimis (adv.) excessively, too

nōbilis, nōbile noble

parō (1-tr.) prepare, get

pēnsū, pēnsī n. weight; importance

prāvus, -a, -um twisted, corrupt, perverse

profusus, -a, -um generous, lavish

rapīna, rapīnae f. plundering, pillaging

rēgnū, rēgnī n. kingdom, realm, kingship, rule

simulātor, simulātōris m. feigner, pretender

subdolus, -a, -um somewhat crafty, cunning

supra (adv.) above, beyond, further, more

uterque, utraque utrumque (indef. pron.) each (of two)

varius, -a, -um varying, changeable

vastus, -a, -um desolate, vast, immense, ravaged

vigilia, vigiliae f. wakefulness

artibus auxerat, quās suprà memorāvī incitābant praetereā corruptī civitātis mōrēs, quōs pessuma ac divorsa inter sē mala, luxuria atque avaritia, vexābant. rēs ipsa hortārī vidētur, quoniam dē mōribus civitātis tempus admonuit, suprà repetere ac paucīs* institūta maiōrum domū militiaeque, quō modō rem publicam habuerint quantamque reliquerint, ut† paulātim immūtāta ex pulcherrimā <atque optimā> pessuma ac flāgitiosissima facta sit, disserere.

*paucis, sc. verbis

†ut, here (interrog. adv.), how

admoneō (ad- + moneō) bring to mind, remind, suggest

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus grow increase

avaritia, avaritiac f. greed, avarice

corrumpō, corrumpere, corrūpī, corruptus corrupt

dissero, disserere, disserui dissertus examine, discuss, treat

diversus, -a, -um opposite, separate, different

flāgitiosus, -a, -um shameful, disgraceful, infamous

immūtō (in- + mūtō) (1-tr.) change, alter, transform

incitō (1-tr.) rouse, excite, urge forward

institūtum, institūtū n. custom, institution

luxuria, luxuriaef. extravagance excess, luxury

memorō (1 tr.) mention recount, tell

militia, militiaef. military service; militiae = loc.

paulātim (adv.) little by little, gradually

praetereā (adv.) besides, furthermore, in addition

repetō (re- + petō) seek again, seek back

suprà (adv.) above, beyond; further, more

vexō (1 tr.) trouble, disturb, harass

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.547 - 58

cui Pyrrhus: "referēs ergō haec et nuntius ibis
 Pēlidae genitōrī. illi mea trīstia facta
 dēgeneremque Neoptoleum nārrāre mementō.
 nunc morere " hoc dīcēns altāria ad* ipsa tremēntem
 traxit et in multō lapsantem sanguine nati,
 implicuitque comam laevā, dextrāque coruscum
 extulit ac lateri capulō tenus abdidit ēnsem.
 haec finis Priamī fatōrum, hic exitus illum
 sorte tulit¹ Troiam incēnsam et prōlāpsa videntem
 Pergama, tot quondam populis terrisque superbum
 rēgnātōrem Asiae. iacet ingēns litore truncus,
 āvulsūque umeris caput et sine nōmine corpus.

550

555

*ad, here, at, near

īferō, here, carry away

abdō (ab- + dō) hide, put away; plunge, bury

altāria, altārium *n. pl.* (high) altar (for sacrifice)Asia, Asiae *f.* Asia, a Roman province (Asia Minor)

āvellō, āvellere, āvelli or āvolō, āvulsus tear away

capulus, capulī *m.* sword handle, hiltcoma, comae *f.* haircoruscus, -a, -um quivering; glittering, gleaming
 flashing

dēgener, dēgeneris low-born; degenerate

dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *as fem. subst.*

(sc. manus), right hand

ēnsis, ēnsis *m.* sword

ergō (adv.) therefore

exitus, exitūs *m.* departure; end, conclusionefferō (ex- + ferō), efferre, extuli, ēlātus carry out;
 raisegenitor, genitōris *m.* father

iaceō, iacēre, iacui, — lie, rest; lie dead

implicō, implicāre, implicāvi or implicui,

implicātus or implicitus entwine, enfold;

take hold of

incendō, incendere, incendi, incēnsus set on fire,
 (cause to) burnlaevus, -a, -um left *as fem. subst.* (sc. manus),
 left hand

lāpsō (1-intr.) lose one's footing, slip

latus, lateris *n.* side, flanklitus, litoris *n.* shore, beach

nārrō (1-tr.) tell, say; describe

Neoptolemus, Neoptolemī *m.* Neoptolemus,
 son of Achilles (= Pyrrhus)nuntius, nuntii *m.* messengerPēlīdēs, Pēlidae *m.* son of Peleus, AchillesPergama, Pergamōrum *n. pl.* Pergama, citadel
 of Troyprōlabor, prōlābi, prōlāpsus sum slip forward;
 gave way, collapsePyrrhus, Pyrrhī *m.* Pyrrhus, son of Achilles
 (= Neoptolemus)

quondam (adv.) at one time, once, formerly

rēgnātor, rēgnātōris *m.* ruler, king, lordsanguis, sanguinis *m.* bloodsors, sortis, -ium *f.* lot, portion; destiny

superbus -a, -um proud, haughty

tenus (prep. + preceding abl.) (right) up to,
 as far as

trahō, trahere, trāxi, tractus draw, drag

tremō, tremere, tremui, — tremble, quiver,
 quake

trīstis, trīste sad, gloomy, melancholy, grim

truncus, truncī *m.* trunk, torsoumerus, umerī *m.* shoulder

4. Ovid, *Metamorphoses* I.540-67

qui tamen insequitur pennīs adiūtus amoris,	540
ōcior est requiemque negat tergōque fugācis	
inminet et crīnem sparsum cervicibus adflat.	
viribus absūptis expalluit illa citaeque	
victa labōre fugae spectāns Pēneidas undās	
"fer, pater," inquit "opem! sī flūmina nūmen habētis,	545
quā nimium placui, mutandō perde figūrā!"	547
vix prece finitā torpor gravis occupat artūs,	
mollia ringuntur tenuī praecordia librō, [†]	
in frondem crīnēs, in rāmōs bracchia crēscunt,	550
pēs modo tam vērōx pigris rādicibus haeret,	
ōra cacūmen habet: remanet nitor ūnus in illā	
hanc quoque Phoebus amat positāque in stīpite dextrā	
sentit adhūc trepidāre novō sub cortice pectus	

*A line is missing because of textual corruption.

[†]liber, here, (inner) bark (of a tree)

absūmō, absūmere, absūmpsī, absūptus

use up, spend; exhaust

adhūc (adv.) up to the present time; still

adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiuvī, adiūtus aid, assist;

strengthen, nounish

afflō (1-tr.) breathe upon

artus, artūs *m.* joint (of the body), limb

bracchium, brachii *n.* (lower) arm

cacūmen, cacūminis *n.* peak, top (of a tree)

cervix, cervicis *f.* in *sing.* or *pl.* neck

citus, -a, -um swift

cortex, corticis *m.* or *f.* outer covering of a tree, bark

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus grow, increase

crinis, crinis, -ium *m.* in *sing.* or *pl.* hair

dexter, dextra, dextrum right; as *fem. subst.*

(*sc. manus*), right hand

expallēscō, expallēscere, expallui, — turn pale

figūra, figurāe *f.* form, shape, appearance

finiō, finire, finivī or finī, finitus end, complete, conclude

flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream

frōns, frondis *f.* foliage, leafy bough

fugāx, fugācis fugitive fleeing, running away

haerēō, haerēre, haesi, haesurus cling, stick

(+ *dat.*)

immineō, imminere, — — hang over,

threaten (+ *dat.*)

inquam (defective verb) say; inquit = 3rd *sing.*

pres. act. indic.

insequor (in- + sequor) follow closely, pursue, chase

mollis, molle gentle, mild, soft

negō (1-tr.) deny, refuse

nimium (adv.) too much, excessively

nitor, nitōris *m.* brightness, splendor

occupō (1-tr.) seize; occupy

ōcior, ōcius swifter

ops, opis *f.* aid, help

Pēneis, Pēneidos *of or belonging to the river god*

Peneus, Peneidas = *fem. pl. acc.*

penna, pennae *f.* wing

pēs, pedis *m.* foot

Phoebus, Phoebi *m.* Phoebus (Apollo)

piger, pigra, pigrum sluggish, inactive, slow

praecordia, praecordiōrum *n. pl.* (lower) chest,

breast

*prex, *precis *f.* prayer

rādix, radicis *f.* root

rāmus, rāmi *m.* branch

remaneo (re- + maneo) remain

requies, requietis *f.* rest, respite; requiem = *acc. sing.*

spargō, spargere, sparsi, sparsus scatter,

distribute

stīpes, stīpitūs *m.* trunk (of a tree)

tenuis tenue thin, slight, slender

tergum, tergi *n.* back

torpor, torporis *m.* loss of power, numbness

trepidō (1-intr.) tremble

unda, undae *f.* wave

vērōx, vērōcis rapid, swift, speedy

complexusque suis rāmōs ut membra lacertis 555
 ōscula dat lignō; refugit tamen oscula lignum.
 cui deus "at, quoniam coniūnx mea nōn potes esse,
 arbor eris certē" dixit "meal semper habebunt
 tē coma, tē citharae, tē nostrae, laure, pharetrae;
 tū ducibus Latīs adenis, cum laeta triumphum 560
 vox canet et visent longas Capitolia pompās,
 postibus augustis eadem fidissima custōs
 ante forēs stābis mediamque* tuebere quercum,
 utque meum intōnsīs caput est iuvenāle capillīs,
 tū quoque perpetuōs semper gere frondis honōrēs!" 565
 finierat Paeān: factis modo laurea rāmīs
 adnuit utque caput visa est agitāsse cacūmen.

*medius, *here* in the middle

adnuō, adnuere, adnuī, adnūtum *nod* (in agree-
 ment), assent

agitō (1-tr) stir up, set in motion, shake

arbor, arboris *f.* tree

at (conj.) but

augustus, -a, -um solemn, venerable majestic,
 august

cacūmen, cacūminis *n.* peak, top (of a tree)

capilli, capilli *m.* in *sing.* or *pl.* hair

Capitōlia, Capitōliōrum *n. pl.* (the) Capitoline
 hill, site of the Temple of Jupiter Optimus

Maximus and the end point of a triumph

cithara, citharae *f.* cithara; lute

coma, comae *f.* hair

coniūnx, coniugis *m.* or *f.* spouse husband, wife

complector complecti, complexus sum embrace

custōs custōdis *m.* or *f.* guardian, protector,
 sentry

fidus -a, -um trustworthy

finiō, finire, finivī or finivī finitus end, complete,
 conclude

foris, foris -ium *f.* door, in *pl.* double doors

frōns, frondis *f.* foliage, leafy bough

intōnsus, -a, -um uncut, unshorn

iuvenālis, iuvenāle of or belonging to a young
 man, youthful, young

lacertus lacerti *m.* (upper) arm

Latius -a, -um of Latium, Latin, Roman

laurea laureae *f.* laurel tree

laurus, lauri *f.* laurel tree; sprig or branch of
 laurel

lignum, ligni *n.* wood

membrum, membri *n.* limb

ōsculum, ōsculi *n.* kiss

Paeān, Paeānis *m.* Paeon, a Greek god (= Apollo)

perpetuus, -a, -um continuous, without interrup-

tion; perpetual, everlasting

pharetra, pharetrae *f.* quiver

pompa, pompae *f.* (ceremonial) procession,

parade

postis, postis, -ium *m.* doorpost, jamb

quercus, quercūs *f.* oak tree oak wreath

rāmus, rāmī *m.* branch

refugiō (re- + fugio) flee shun

triumphus, triumphī *m.* (a) triumph, the proces-

sion through Rome of a victorious general;

a ritual cry that accompanies a triumph

tueor, tuērī, tuitus or tutus sum look at; protect

visō, visere, vīsī, visus go to see; view, behold

LATIN TO ENGLISH VOCABULARY

Note: Numbers in parentheses refer to the chapter (6, e.g.) or section (§16, e.g.) in which the vocabulary word is introduced.

ā, ab (prep. + abl.) (away) from (1); (prep. + abl.) by (3)

A. = Aulus, Aulī m. Aulus (§16)

abēō, abire, abīī or abīvi, abitum go away (5)

absēns, absentis absent (14)

absum, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus be absent, be distant (14)

ac or **atque** (conj.) and (what's more) (3)

accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum go or come to, approach (5)

accidō, accidere, accidi, — happen (14)

accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptus receive; accept; hear (of), learn (of) (5)

ācer, ācris, ācre sharp, keen, fierce (8)

acerbus, -a, -um bitter; harsh (7)

aciēs, aciēī f. sharp edge; keenness; battle line (8)

ad (prep. + acc.) toward, to (1); (prep. + acc.) for the purpose of (13)

adeō (adv.) to such or so great an extent, (so) very (14)

adsum, adesse, adfui, adfutūrus be present be near (14)

Aenēas, Aenēae m. Aeneas; **Aenēan** = acc. sing.; **Aenēā** = voc. sing. (§16)

aequus, -a, -um level, even; equitable, just; calm, tranquil (10)

aestimō (1-tr.) estimate, value (13)

aetās, aetātis f. age; lifetime; time (14)

ager, agri m. field (1)

agmen, agminis n. line (of march), column; army; multitude, throng (14)

agō, agere, ēgi, āctus drive; do; spend, conduct (4)

causam agere (idiom) to conduct or plead a case (4)

grātiās agere (idiom) to give thanks (12)

age, agite, used to strengthen other commands, come on! (§32)

agricola, agricolae m. farmer (1)

aliquī, aliqua, aliquod (indef. adj.) some, any (14)

aliquis, aliquid (indef. pron.) someone, something; anyone, anything (14)

alius, alia, aliud other, another (9)

alter, altera, alterum the other (of two) (9)

altum, alti n. deep sea, height (4)

altus, -a, -um tall, high; deep (4)

ambulō (1-intr.) walk (2)

amicitia, amicitiae f. friendship (5)

amicus, -a, -um friendly (+ dat.) (3)

amicus, amici m. friend (3)

amō (1-tr.) love (2)

amor, amoris m. love (6)

Amor, Amōris *m.* Love, Amor (§60)

an (conj.) introduces an alternative question, or; introduces an indirect question, whether (12)

... an ... whether ... or ... (12)

anima, animae *f.* breath; life force; soul (1)

animal, animālis, -ium *n.* animal (6)

animus, animī *m.* (rational) soul, mind spirit; in *pl.*, strong feelings (2)

annus, annī *m.* year (8)

ante (adv.) before, earlier, previously; (prep. + acc.) before; in front of (7)

antequam (conj.) before (13)

antiquus, -a, -um old, ancient (6)

M. Antōnius, M. Antōnii *m.* Marcus Antonius Marc Antony (§16)

Apollō, Apollinis *m.* Apollo (§60)

App. = Appius, Appii *m.* Appius (§16)

Appius Appii *m.* Appius (§16)

apud (prep. + acc.) at, near; at the house of, in the presence of; among (10)

āra, ārae *f.* altar (7)

arbitror (1-tr.) judge, consider, think (11)

arma, armōrum *n. pl.* arms, weapons (2)

ars, artis, -ium *f.* skill, art; guile; trick (7)

Athēnae, Athēnārum *f. pl.* Athens (6)

atque or ac (conj.) and (what's more) (3)

auctoritās, auctoritātis *f.* authority; influence (14)

audācia, audāciae *f.* boldness, recklessness, audacity (11)

audeō, audēre, ausus sum dare (8)

audiō, audīre, audīvī, auditus hear, listen (to) (4)

aufero, auferre, abstuli, ablatus carry away, take away, remove (7)

Aulus, Auli *m.* Aulus (§16)

aurum aurī *n.* gold (1)

aut (conj.) or; aut ... aut ... either ... or ... (7)

autem (postpositive conj.) however; moreover (6)

auxilia, auxiliōrum *n. pl.* auxiliary troops (4)

auxilium, auxiliū *n.* aid, help (4)

Bacchus, Bacchi *m.* Bacchus (§60)

bellum, belli *n.* war (1)

bellum gerere (idiom) to wage war (4)

bene (adv.) well (5)

bene velle (idiom) to wish well (12)

bonus, -a, -um good (3)

brevis, breve short, brief (11)

C. = Gaius, Gaii *m.* Gaius (§16)

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum fall, sink; die (10)

caecus, -a, -um blind, hidden, secret, dark (9)

caelum, caeli *n.* sky, heaven (4)

Caesar, Caesaris *m.* Caesar (§60)

campus, campī *m.* (flat) plain (11)

canō, canere, cecinī, cantus sing (of) (4)

capiō, capere, cēpi, captus take (up), capture; win (4)

cōnsilium capere (idiom) to form a plan (4)

caput, capitis *n.* head (15)

careō, carēre, carui, cariturus lack, be without, be free from (+ abl.) (6)

carmen, carminis *n.* song, poem (6)

Carthāgō, Carthāginis *f.* Carthage (6)

cārus, -a, -um precious; dear (to) (+ dat.) (7)

castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (military) camp (11)

castra movēre (idiom) to break camp (11)

castra pōnere (idiom) to pitch or make camp (11)

casus, cāsus *m.* fall; occurrence, chance, misfortune (10)

Catīlina, Catīlinae *m.* Catiline (§16)

Catō, Catōnis *m.* Cato (§60)

Catullus, Catulli *m.* Catullus (§16)

causā (+ preceding gen.) for the purpose of, for the sake of (13)

causa, causae *f.* reason, cause; case (4)

causam agere (idiom) to conduct or plead a case (4)

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum go, move; yield; withdraw (5)

celer, celeris, celere swift (15)

centēsimus, -a, -um hundredth (§91)

centum (indeclinable adj.) hundred (§91)

Cerēs, Cereris *f.* Ceres (§60)

certē (adv.) surely, certainly; at least (7)

certō (adv.) surely, certainly (7)

certus, -a, -um sure, certain, reliable (7)

cēterus, -a, -um rest (of), remaining part (of), (the) other (13)

Cicerō, Cicerōnis *m.* Cicero (§60)

cingo, cingere, cinxī, cinctus surround; gird (on oneself) (15)

circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus place round; surround (15)
 cīvis, cīvis, -ium *m.* or *f.* citizen (6)
 cīvitas, cīvitatīs *f.* state, citizenry; citizenship (7)
 clārus, -a, -um bright, clear; famous (4)
 Cn. = Gnaeus, Gnaei *m.* Gnaeus (§16)
 —, —, coepī, coeptus (defective verb) began, have begun (13)
 cōgitō (1-tr.) think, ponder (2)
 cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus come to know, learn; *in perfect*, know (10)
 cōferō, cōferre, contulī, collātus bring together, collect, compare; direct; confer (on) (14)
 sē cōferre (idiom) to betake oneself, to go (14)
 cōficiō, cōficere, cōfecī, cōfectus accomplish, complete (12)
 cōnor (1-tr.) try, attempt (8)
 cōnsilium, cōnsiliū *n.* deliberation; plan, advice; judgment (1)
 cōnsilium capere (idiom) to form a plan (4)
 cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstitui, cōstitutus set up, establish; decide (15)
 cōsul, cōsulis *m.* consul (8)
 cōsulātus, cōsulatus *m.* consulship (8)
 contrā (adv.) face to face; in opposition, in turn; (prep. + acc.) facing, against, contrary to (10)
 cōpia, cōpiae *f.* wealth, abundance; *in pl.*, troops, forces (7)
 Corinna, Corinnae *f.* Corinna (§60)
 L. Cornēlius Sulla, L. Cornēlii Sullae *m.* Lucius Cornelius Sulla (§16)
 Cornēlius Tacitus, Cornēlii Taciti *m.* Cornelius Tacitus (§16)
 corpus, corporis *n.* body (6)
 Crassus, Crassi *m.* Crassus (§16)
 crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus trust, believe (+ dat.) (11)
 cum (prep. + abl.) with (1); (conj.) when, since; although (12)
 cūctus -a, -um all (14)
 Cupidō, Cupidinis *m.* Cupid, Amor (§60)
 cupidus, -a, -um desirous (+ gen.) (4)
 cupiō cupere, cupī or cupīvī, cupītus desire, long for, want (7)
 cūr (interrog. adv.) why (2)

cūra, cūrae *f.* care, concern; anxiety (2)
 Cynthia, Cynthiae *f.* Cynthia (§60)
 D. = Decimus, Decimī *m.* Decimus (§16)
 dē (prep. + abl.) (down) from; about, concerning (1)
 dea, deae *f.* goddess (1)
 dēbeō, dēbere, dēbui, dēbitus owe; ought (2)
 decem (indeclinable adj.) ten (4)
 decimus, -a, -um tenth (§91)
 Decimus, Decimī *m.* Decimus (§16)
 dēlēō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus destroy (10)
 dēterreō, dēterrere, dēterrui, dēterritus deter, prevent (15)
 deus, dei *m.* god (1)
 Diāna, Diānae *f.* Diana (§60)
 dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus say, speak, tell (4)
 dictum, dicti *n.* word; saying (6)
 Didō, Didōnis *f.* Dido (§60)
 diēs, diēi *m.* or *f.* day (8)
 differō, differre, distulī, dilātus carry in different directions, scatter; postpone, defer, (*intr.*) differ, be different (7)
 difficilis, difficile difficult (8)
 difficiliter or difficulter (adv.) with difficulty (8)
 dignus, -a, -um worthy (of) (+ abl.) (12)
 diligētia, diligētia *f.* diligence, attentiveness (3)
 Dis, Dis *m.* Dis, Pluto (§60)
 discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum go away, depart (5)
 dissimilis, dissimile dissimilar, unlike, different (+ gen. or dat.) (11)
 diū (adv.) for a long time (11)
 diūtius (adv.) longer (11)
 diūtissimē (adv.) longest (11)
 divīnus, -a, -um belonging to the gods, divine (§60)
 divus, -a, -um deified, divine (§60)
 dō, dare dedī, datus give grant (2)
 poenās dare (idiom) to pay the penalty (2)
 vēla dare (idiom) to set sail (2)
 dominus, domini *m.* master, lord (1)
 domus, domi *f.* house, home (6)
 domus, domūs *f.* house home (8)
 dōnec (conj.) while, as long as; until (13)
 dōnō (1-tr.) give; present, reward (2)
 dōnum, dōni *n.* gift (1)
 dubitō (1-tr.) hesitate; doubt (12)

dubium, dubiū *n.* doubt, hesitation (12)
dubius, -a, -um doubtful (12)
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus lead; consider (4)
dulcis, dulce sweet, pleasant (15)
dum (conj.) while, as long as; until; provided that (13)
dummodo (conj.) provided that (13)
duo, duae, duo two (§91)
dūrus, -a, -um hard; harsh (5)
dux, ducis *m.* or *f.* leader (10)

ē, ex (prep. + abl.) (out) from (1)
ecce (interj.) lo! behold! look
efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus make, bring about (14)
ego mei (personal pron.) I; me (4)
—, mei (reflexive pron.) myself (5)
ēgredior, egredi, ēgressus sum go or come out (13)
ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus throw out, expel; **sē ēicere** (idiom) to rush forth (11)
emō, emere, ēmi, emptus buy (13)
enim (postpositive conj.) in fact, indeed; for (2)
eō (adv.) to that place, thither (§130)
eō, ire, īi or īvi, itum go (3)
eodem (adv.) to the same place (§130)
equidem (adv.) indeed, certainly; for my part (4)
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripiū, ēreptus tear away, snatch away (15)
errō (1-intr.) wander; err, make a mistake (2)
et (conj.) and; et . . . et . . . both . . . and . . .; (adv.) even, also (1)
etenim (conj.) and indeed; for in fact (2)
etiam (adv.) also, even; still (7)
etsi (conj.) although (5)
exercitus, exercitūs *m.* army (8)
experior, experiri, expertus sum test; try; experience (8)
ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliū *n.* exile, banishment (9)
ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) wait for, await, expect (13)

facile (adv.) easily, readily (8)
facilis, facile easy (8)
facio, facere, feci, factus make; do (4), reckon (13)
factum, facti *n.* deed (1)
falsō (adv.) falsely (7)

falsus, -a, -um deceptive, false (7)
fāma, fāmae *f.* report, rumor; reputation, fame (1)
fās (indeclinable noun) *n.* (what is divinely) right; (what is) permitted (12)
fateor, fatēri, fassus sum confess, admit (8)
fātum, fātī *n.* destiny, fate; *in pl.* (often), death (5)
fēlix, fēlicis fortunate, happy (8)
fēmina, fēminae *f.* woman; wife (1)
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring, bear, carry; endure (5)
lēgem ferre (idiom) to pass a law (9)
sē ferre (idiom) to proceed (quickly), to go (5)
ferrum, ferrī *n.* iron; sword (1)
fidēs, fidei *f.* faith, trust; trustworthiness; confidence (8)
filia, filiae *f.* daughter (1)
filius, filii *m.* son (1)
finis, finis, -ium *m.* or *f.* end, limit, boundary *in pl.*, territory (10)
fiō, fieri **factus** sum become, happen; be made, be done (13)
for (1-tr.) speak, say (15)
fore = futūrus, -a, -um esse (11)
fors, fortis, -ium *f.* chance, luck (12)
fortis, forte brave; strong (8)
fortūna, fortūnae *f.* fortune, chance (7)
forum, fori *n.* public square, marketplace, forum (3)
frāter, frātris *m.* brother (6)
fuga, fugae *f.* flight (8)
fugiō, fugere, fugi, fugitūrus flee (7)

Gaius, Gaii *m.* Gaius (§16)
gens, gentis, -ium *f.* nation, people; clan, family (12)
genus, generis *n.* descent, origin; race, stock; kind, sort (10)
gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus bear; manage, conduct; perform (4)
bellum gerere (idiom) to wage war (4)
gladius, gladii *m.* sword (1)
glōria, glōriae *f.* renown, glory (4)
Gnaeus, Gnaei *m.* Gnaeus (§16)
Gracchus, Gracchi *m.* Gracchus (either of the Gracchi brothers) (§16)
gradior, gradi, gressus sum walk, step (13)

Graecia, Graeciae *f.* Greece (§16)
grātiā (+ preceding gen.) for the purpose of, for the sake of (13)
grātia, grātia *f.* favor, kindness; gratitude, thanks (12)
grātiās agere (idiom) to give thanks (12)
grātiām or **grātiās habēre** (idiom) to feel grateful (12)
grātiām or **grātiās referre**
 (idiom) to render thanks, to return a favor (12)
grātus, -a, -um charming, pleasing; grateful, pleased (13)
gravis, grave heavy, deep; important, serious, severe (9)
habēō, habēre, habuī, habitus have, hold; consider (2)
grātiām or **grātiās habēre** (idiom) to feel grateful (12)
orātiōnem habēre (idiom) to make a speech (10)
Hannibal, Hannibalis *m.* Hannibal (§60)
haud (adv.) not at all, by no means (14)
herc(u)le (interj.) by Hercules! (§71)
heu (interj.) alas! o!
hic (adv.) here, in this place; at this time (§130)
hic, haec, hoc (demonstr. adj./pron.) this; these (8)
hinc (adv.) from here, hence; henceforth;
hinc . . . hinc . . . on this side . . . on that side . . .; **hinc . . . illinc . . .** on this side . . . on that side . . . (§130)
homō, hominis *m.* human being, man; *in pl.*, people (6)
honestus, -a, -um honorable, respectable (10)
honor or **honōs, honōris** *m.* honor, respect; (political) office (13)
Q. Horātius Flaccus, Q. Horātii Flacci *m.*
 Quintus Horatius Flaccus, Horace (§16)
hortor (1-tr.) urge, encourage, exhort (9)
hostis, hostis, -ium *m.* (public) enemy (6)
hūc (adv.) to here, hither (§130)
humilis, humile humble (11)
iacio, iacere, iēcī, iactus throw; utter; lay, establish (11)
iam (adv.) now; by now, by then, already (9)

ibi (adv.) in that place, there; then, thereupon (§130)
idem, eadem, idem same (9)
igitur (postpositive conj.) therefore (11)
ignis, ignis, -ium *m.* fire (11)
īlium, īlii *n.* Ilium, Troy (§16)
ille, illa, illud (demonstr. adj./pron.) that; those (8)
illuc (adv.) there, in that place (§130)
illinc (adv.) from there, thence, hinc . . .
illinc . . . on this side . . . on that side . . . (§130)
illuc (adv.) to there, thither (§130)
impediō, impedire, impedivī or **impediti, impeditus** hinder, impede (15)
imperātor, imperātoris *m.* commander, general (11)
imperium, imperii *n.* power, authority, command; empire (3)
impero (1-intr.) give an order, order, command (+ dat.) (9)
impius, -a, -um disloyal, wicked (5)
in (prep. + acc.) into, onto, against; (prep. + abl.) in, on (1)
inceptum, incepti *n.* beginning, undertaking (13)
incertō (adv.) uncertainly (7)
incertus, -a, -um unsure, uncertain, unreliable (7)
incipiō, incipere, incēpi, inceptus take on, begin (13)
incola, incolae *m.* or *f.* inhabitant (3)
inde (adv.) from that place, from there, thence; from that time, thereupon (§130)
indignus, -a, -um unworthy (of) (+ abl.) (12)
infelix, infelicitis unfortunate, unhappy (8)
inferō, inferre, intuli, illātus carry (into); inflict (on) (12)
ingenium, ingenii *n.* ability talent; disposition (7)
ingens, ingentis huge (8)
ingrātus, -a, -um unpleasant, displeasing; ungrateful, displeased (13)
inimicitia, inimicitiae *f.* enmity, hostility; *in pl.*, unfriendly relations, enmity (5)
inimicus, -a, -um unfriendly, hostile (+ dat.) (3)
inimicus, inimici *m.* (personal) enemy (3)
iniquus, -a, -um uneven; inequitable, unjust (10)

insidiae, insidiarum *f. pl.* ambush, plot, treachery (7)
insula insulae *f.* island (1)
intelligō, intelligere, intellēxi, intellēctus understand (6)
inter (prep. + acc.) between, among, during (6)
interest, interesse, interfuit it is important, it concerns (15)
interficiō, interficere interfēcī, interfectus kill (5)
inveniō invenire, invēnī inventus find, discover (11)
invidia, invidiae *f.* envy, jealousy; ill-will, resentment (4)
ipse, ipsa, ipsum (intensive adj.) -self, -selves; very (5)
ira, irae *f.* anger, wrath (2)
is, ea, id (demonstr. adj.) this, that; these, those; (personal pron.) he, she, it; they, him, her, it, them (4)
iste, ista, istud (demonstr. adj./pron.) that (of yours), those (of yours) (8)
ita (adv.) in this manner, thus, so (7)
Italia, Italiae *f.* Italy (1)
rubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus order (2)
Iūlia, Iūliae *f.* Julia (§16)
C. Iūlius Caesar, C. Iūlii Caesaris *m.* Gaius Julius Caesar (§60)
Iūnō, Iūnōnis *f.* Juno (§60)
Iuppiter, Iovis *m.* Jupiter (§60)
iūre (adv.) rightly, justly (6)
iūs, iūris *n.* right, law; judgment; court (6)

L = Lūcius, Lūciī *m.* Lucius (§16)
labor, labōris *m.* work; effort, hardship (10)
labōrō (1-intr.) work; suffer, be distressed (2)
laetus, -a, -um happy (3)
Latīnus, Latīnī *m.* Latinus (§60)
laudō (1-tr.) praise (3)
lēgātus, lēgātī *m.* legate, envoy, lieutenant (10)
legiō, legiōnis *f.* legion (11)
legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus gather; choose; read (6)
Lesbia, Lesbiae *f.* Lesbia (§60)
levis, leve light; trivial; fickle (9)
lēx, lēgis *f.* law
lēgem ferre (idiom) to pass a law (9)
liber, libera, liberum free (3)

liber, Liberī *m.* Liber, Bacchus (§60)
liber, libri *m.* book (1)
liberō (1-tr.) free, liberate (6)
libertās, libertatis *f.* freedom (9)
licet, licēre, licuit or *licitum est* it is permitted (14)
M. Licinius Crassus M. Liciniū Crassī *m.* Marcus Licinius Crassus (§16)
littera, litterae *f.* letter (of the alphabet); *m. pl.*, letter epistle; literature (12)
Livia, Liviae *f.* Livia (§16)
locus, locī *m.* place; *loca, locōrum* *n. pl.* places (8)
longē (adv.) a long way, far; by far (11)
longus, -a, -um long; far; long-standing; far-reaching (11)
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum speak (11)
Lūcius, Lūciī *m.* Lucius (§16)
lumen, luminis *n.* light, radiance, *m. pl.*, eyes (13)
luna, lunae *f.* moon (14)
lux, lūcis *f.* light, daylight (11)
prīmā lūce (idiom) at daybreak (11)

M. = Marcus, Marcī *m.* Marcus (§16)
M' = Manius, Manī, m. Manius (§16)
magis (adv.) more greatly (11)
magnopere (adv.) greatly (10)
magnus, -a, -um large, big; great (3)
maior, maius (adj.) greater (11)
maiōrēs, maiōrum *m. pl.* ancestors (11)
male (adv.) badly (5)
male velle (idiom) to wish ill (12)
mālō, mālle mālū, — want more, prefer (12)
malus, -a, -um bad, evil (3)
maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus remain, stay; await (7)
Manius, Manī, m. Manius (§16)
manus, manūs *f.* hand; band, troop (8)
Marcus, Marcī *m.* Marcus (§16)
*mare, maris, *-ium* *n.* sea (6)
Mars, Martis *m.* Mars (§60)
māter, mātris *f.* mother (6)
maximē (adv.) most greatly; especially (11)
maximus, -a, -um greatest (11)
medius, -a, -um middle (of); *as subst.*, midst (10)
mehercule or *meherculēs* (inter.) by Hercules! (§71)
—, mei (reflexive pron.) myself (5)

melior, melius (adj.) better (11)
melius (adv.) better (11)
memini, meminisse (defective verb) remember, be mindful (of) (5)
memoria, memoriae *f.* memory (12)
mēns, mentis, -ium *f.* mind; intention, purpose; attitude (6)
Mercurius, Mercuri *m.* Mercury (§60)
metuō, metuere, metui, — fear, dread (14)
metus, metus *m.* fear, dread, anxiety (9)
meus, -a, -um my, mine (4); my (own) (5)
mī, masc. sing. voc. of meus, -a, -um (4)
mīles, militis *m.* soldier (6)
mīlle; mīlia, mīlium thousand (§91)
mīllēsīmus, -a, -um thousandth (§91)
Minerva, Minervae *f.* Minerva (§60)
minimē (adv.) least; not at all (11)
minimus, -a, -um smallest (11)
minor, minus (adj.) smaller (11)
minus (adv.) less (11)
miser, misera, miserum wretched, pitiable, miserable (3)
miseret, miserere, miseruit or miseritum est it moves (one) to pity (15)
mittō, mittere, mīsi, missus send (4)
modo (adv.) only, just; now, just now (12); (conj.) provided that (13)
modus, modi *m.* measure; limit; rhythm, meter, manner, way (9)
quō modō in what manner, how (9)
moenia, moenium *n. pl.* (city) walls (6)
moneō, monere, monui, monitus warn, remind; advise (9)
mōns, montis, -ium *m.* mountain (12)
mōnstrō (1-tr.) show, point out (2)
mora, morae *f.* delay (3)
morior, mori, mortuus sum die (8)
moror (1-tr.) hinder, delay, wait (13)
mors, mortis, -ium *f.* death (7)
mōs, mōris *m.* custom, practice; in *pl.* (sometimes), character (10)
mōtus, mōtus *m.* motion, movement; disturbance (8)
moveō, movere, movi, motus set in motion, stir (up), move (2)
mox (adv.) soon; then (3)
multum (adv.) much, a lot (5)
multus, -a, -um much, many (3)
mūrus, mūrī *m.* wall (11)

mūtō (1-tr.) change; take in exchange, give in exchange (13)
nam (conj.) for (2)
namque (conj.) for in fact (2)
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum be born (10)
nātūra, nātūrae *f.* nature (6)
nātus, nātī *m.* son (10)
nauta, nautae *m.* sailor (1)
-ne (interrog. enclitic particle) added to the first word of a question (2)
-ne . . . an . . . whether . . . or . . . (12)
nē (adv.) not (7); (conj.) introduces negative Purpose clause, in order that . . . not (9); introduces negative Indirect Command, that . . . not (9); (conj.) introduces positive Fear clause, that (15)
nē . . . quidem not . . . even (4)
nec or neque (conj.-adv.) and not; neque/nec . . . neque/nec . . . neither . . . nor . . . (2)
necesse (indeclinable adj.) necessary (14)
nece (conj.) in Indirect Question, or not (12)
nefās (indeclinable noun) *n.* (what is divinely) forbidden, sacrilege (12)
nēmō, nēminis *m. or f.* no one (10)
Neptunus, Neptuni *m.* Neptune (§60)
neque or nec (conj.-adv.) and not; neque/nec . . . neque/nec . . . neither . . . nor . . . (2)
Nerō Claudius Caesar, Nerōnis Claudii Caesaris *m.* Nero Claudius Caesar, Nero (§60)
nesciō, nescire, nescivī or nesci, nescitus not know (11)
neuter, neutra, neutrum neither (of two) (9)
nihil or nīl (indeclinable noun) *n.* nothing (3)
nihilum, nihīl or nīlum, nīlī *n.* nothing (13)
nisi (conj.) if . . . not, unless (5)
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, — be unwilling, not want, not wish (12)
nōlī, nōlite (+ inf.) do not (12)
nōmen, nōminis *n.* name (14)
nōn (adv.) not (2)
nōn solum . . . sed/vērū etiam . . . not only . . . but also . . . (7)
nōnne (interrog. particle) introduces a direct question expecting the answer "yes" (12)
nōnus, -a, -um ninth (§91)

nōs, nostrum/nostrī (personal pron.) we; us (4)
nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus come to know, learn; *in perfect*, know (10)
noster nostra, nostrum our, ours (4); our (own) (5)
 —, **nostrum/nostrī** (reflexive pron.) ourselves (5)
novem (indeclinable adj.) nine (§91)
novus, -a, -um new; strange (6)
nox, noctis, -ium f. night (8)
nūllus, -a, -um not any, no (9)
num (interrogative particle) *introduces a direct question expecting the answer "no"; introduces an Indirect Question*, whether (12)
nūmen, nūminis n. divine power, divinity, divine spirit, numen (15)
numquam (adv.) never (6)
nunc (adv.) now (3)

ō (interj.) O (1)
ob (prep. + acc.) on account of, because of (9)
oblīviscor, oblīviscī, oblītus sum forget (+ gen.) (12)
obstō, obstāre, obstītī, obstātum stand in the way; hinder block (15)
occidēns, occidentis m. west (14)
occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsurus fall, set; die (14)
octāvus, -a, -um eighth (§91)
octō (indeclinable adj.) eight (§91)
oculus, oculī m. eye (9)
ōdī, ōdisse (defective verb) hate (5)
odium, odī n. hatred (3)
omnīno (adv.) entirely; *in negative or virtual negative statements or questions*, at all (8)
omnis, omne every; all (8)
oportet, oportēre, oportuit, it is proper, it is right (14)
oppidum, oppidī n. town (1)
opprimō, opprimere **oppressī, oppressus** press on; close; overwhelm, oppress (14)
oppugnō (1-tr.) attack (10)
optimē (adv.) best (11)
optimus, -a, -um best (11)
optō (1-tr.) desire; choose (2)
opus, operis n. work, need (10)
opus est there is need of (+ abl. or nom.) (10)

ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis f. oration, speech (10)
ōrātiōnem habēre (idiom) to make a speech (10)
ōrātor, ōrātōris m. speaker (10)
orbis, orbis, -ium m. ring, circle (15)
orbis terrārum world (15)
oriēns, orientis m. east (14)
orior, orīrī, ortus sum rise, arise (14)
ōrō (1-tr.) pray (for), beg (for) (12)
ōs, ōris n. *in sing. or pl.* mouth; face (14)
P. Ovidius Nāsō, P. Ovidii Nāsonis m.
 Publius Ovidius Naso, Ovid (§60)

P. Publius, Publī m. Publius (§16)
paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit it causes (one) to repent or regret (15)
pāreō, pārēre, pārui, pāritūrus be obedient, obey (+ dat.) (9)
pars, partis, -ium f. part; *in sing. or pl.*, (political) faction (7)
parum (indeclinable subst.) too little, not enough; (adv.) too little, inadequately (11)
parvus, -a, -um small, little (3)
pater, patris m. father (6)
pator, pati, passus sum experience, suffer, endure; permit, allow (9)
patrēs cōscriptī voc. pl. enrolled fathers, senators (6)
patria, patriae f. country, homeland (1)
pauci, paucae, pauca few (6)
paulum, *pauli n. small amount, a little (11)
pāx pācis f. peace; favor (9)
pectus, pectoris n. chest, breast; heart (10)
pecūnia, pecūniae f. money (1)
peior, peius (comparative adj.) worse (11)
peius (comparative adv.) worse (11)
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus push, drive (off) (9)
per (prep. + acc.) through (4)
perditē (adv.) recklessly, desperately, ruinously (13)
perditus, -a, -um (morally) lost, ruined, depraved (13)
perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus destroy; lose (13)
pereō, perire, periī, peritūrus pass away, be destroyed; perish, die (11)
perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus suffer, endure; report (10)

- perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus**
complete, accomplish (5)
- periculum, periculī n.** danger (1)
- pessimē (adv.)** worst (11)
- pessimus, -a, -um** worst (11)
- petō, petere, petū or petivī, petitus** ask for, seek; attack (7)
- piget, pigēre, piguit** it disgusts (one), it irks (one) (15)
- pius, -a, -um** dutiful, loyal (5)
- placeō, placēre, placui, placitum** be pleasing, please (+ dat.) (9)
- plūrimē (adv.)** most (11)
- plūrimus, -a, -um** most (11)
- plūs (adv.)** more (11)
- plūs; plūrēs, plūra (adj.)** more (11)
- poena, poenae f.** punishment, penalty (2)
- poenās dare (idiom)** to pay the penalty (2)
- poēta, poētae m.** poet (1)
- Cn. Pompeius Magnus, Cn. Pompeiū Magnū m.** Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, Pompey the Great (§16)
- pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus** put, place; set aside (4)
- populus, populī m.** (the) people; populace (3)
- M. Porcius Catō, M. Porciū Catōnis m.** Marcus Porcius Cato, Cato the Elder or Cato the Censor (§60)
- possum, posse, potuī, —** be able, can (2)
- post (adv.)** after(ward), later; behind; (prep. + acc.) after; behind (7)
- postquam (conj.)** after (5)
- praefērō, praeferre, praetuli, praelātus** prefer (to) (12)
- praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus** put in charge (of) (12)
- praesum, praeesse, praefui, praefuturus** be in charge (of) (12)
- praeter (prep. + acc.)** beyond; except (12)
- premō, premere, pressī, pressus** press (hard); overpower; check (14)
- pretium, pretiī n.** price value (13)
- Priamus, Priami m.** Priam (§60)
- primum (adv.)** first; for the first time (11)
- quam primum** as soon as possible (11)
- primus, -a, -um** first (§91)
- primā lūce (idiom)** at daybreak (11)
- prior, prius (adj.)** earlier (11)
- prius (adv.)** before, sooner (11)
- priusquam (conj.)** before (13)
- prō (prep. + abl.)** in front of; on behalf of, for; in return for, instead of (3)
- proelium, proeliī n.** battle (5)
- proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum** set out, set forth (10)
- prohibeō, prohibere, prohibui, prohibitus** prevent; prohibit, forbid (15)
- Sex. Propertius, Sex. Propertiī m.** Sextus Propertius (§60)
- propter (prep. + acc.)** on account of, because of (3)
- prōvincia, prōvinciae f.** province (3)
- pūblicus, -a, -um** public (8)
- Publius, Publiū m.** Publius (§16)
- pudet, pudere, puduit or puditum est** it makes (one) ashamed (15)
- puella, puellae f.** girl (1)
- puer, puerī m.** boy (1)
- pugnō (1-mtr.)** fight (3)
- pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum** beautiful handsome (3)
- putō (1-tr.)** think, suppose (11)
- Q. = Quintus, Quintī m.** Quintus (§16)
- quaerō, quaerere, quaesī or quaesivī, quaesitus** search for, seek, ask (9)
- quālis, quāle** what sort of; of which sort, as (13)
- quam (adv.)** as, how; (conj.) than (11)
- quam ob rem (adv.)** on account of which thing, why; therefore (9)
- quam primum** as soon as possible (11)
- quamquam (conj.)** although (5)
- quantus, -a, -um** how much, how great; as much, as great (13)
- quārē (adv.)** because of which thing, why, therefore (9)
- quartus, -a, -um** fourth (§91)
- quattuor (indeclinable adj.)** four (§91)
- que (enclitic conj.)** and (1)
- quī, qua, quod (indef. adj.)** some, any (14)
- quī, quae, quod (interrog. adj.)** what . . . , which . . . (9)
- quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.)** who which, that (9)
- quia (conj.)** because (13)

- quīdam, quaedam, quiddam** (indef. pron.)
(a) certain person, (a) certain thing (10)
- quīdam, quaedam, quoddam** (indef. adj.)
(a) certain (10)
- quidem** (adv.) indeed, certainly; at least (4)
ne . . . **quidem** not even (4)
- quīn** (rel. adv.) introduces Relative Clause of
Characteristic, who, that . . . not (10);
(conj.) introduces Doubting clause, that
(12), (conj.) introduces Prevention clause,
that . . . not, from (15)
- quīnque** (indeclinable adj.) five (§91)
- quintus, -a, -um** fifth (§91)
- Quintus, Quinti** *m.* Quintus (§16)
- quīque, quaeque, quodque** (indef. adj.)
each, every (14)
- quis, quid** (interrog. pron.) who, what (9);
(indef. pron.) someone, something; any-
one, anything (14)
- quisquam, quicquam** (indef. pron.) some-
one, something; anyone, anything (14)
- quisque, quidque (quicque)** (indef. pron.)
each/every man/woman, each/every
thing (14)
- quō** (rel. adv.) to where, whither (10),
(interrog. adv.) to where, whither (12)
- quod** (conj.) because (13); (conj.) the fact
that (15)
- quodsi** (conj.) but if (14)
- quōminus** (conj.) introduces Prevention
clause, by which the less, from (15)
- quō modō** in what manner, how (9)
- quoniam** (conj.) since, because (5)
- quoque** (adv.) also, too (8)
- quot** (indeclinable adj.) how many, as
many (13)
- rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus** seize, tear away,
carry (off) (15)
- redeō, redire, rediī, reditum** go back,
return (5)
- referō, referre, rettulī, relātus** bring back;
report (10)
grātiam or **grātiās** *referre* (idiom) to
render thanks, to return a favor (12)
- rēfert, rēferre, rētulit** it is important, it con-
cerns (15)
- rēgīna, rēgīnae** *f.* queen (1)
- regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus** rule control (4)
- relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus** leave
(behind), abandon (8)
- reliquus, -a, -um** remaining, rest (of) (14)
- Remus, Remi** *m.* Remus (§16)
- rēs, rei** *f.* thing; property; matter, affair;
activity; situation (8)
- rēs gestae, rērum gestārum** *f. pl.* accom-
plishments; history (8)
- rēs novae, rērum novārum** *f. pl.* revolu-
tion (8)
- rēs pública, rei públicae** *f.* republic (8)
- respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respon-
sus** answer (2)
- rēx, regis** *m.* king (6)
- rogō** (1-tr.) ask (for) (12)
- Rōma, Rōmae** *f.* Rome (6)
- Rōmānī, Rōmānōrum** *m. pl.* (the)
Romans (3)
- Rōmānus, -a, -um** Roman (3)
- Rōmulus, Rōmulī** *m.* Romulus (§16)
- rūmor, rūmōris** *m.* rumor (12)
- rūs, rūris** *n.* in sing. or pl. country(side) (6)
- saepe** (adv.) often (8)
- saepius** (adv.) more often (11)
- saepissimē** (adv.) most often (11)
- saevus, -a, -um** cruel, savage (13)
- C. Sallustius Crispus, C. Sallusti** *Crispi* *m.*
Gaius Sallustius Crispus, Sallust (§16)
- salūs, salutis** *f.* safety; health (§71)
- salūtem dicere** to say "greetings," to say
hello (§71)
- salvē/salvēte** hello! good day! (§71)
- sapiēns, sapientis** wise (11)
- sapientia, sapientiae** *f.* wisdom (2)
- satis** or **sat** (indeclinable subst.) enough;
(adv.) enough, sufficiently (10)
- scelus, sceleris** *n.* wicked deed, crime; vil-
lainy (13)
- sciō, scire, scivī** or **scū, scītus** know (11)
- scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptus** write (4)
- secundus, -a, -um** second (§91)
- sed** (conj.) but (2)
- semper** (adv.) always (3)
- Semprōnia, Semprōniae** *f.*
Sempronia (§16)
- C. Semprōnius Gracchus, C. Semproni**
Gracchi *m.* Gaius Sempronius
Gracchus (§16)
- Ti. Semprōnius Gracchus, Ti. Semproni**
Gracchi *m.* Tiberius Sempronius
Gracchus (§16)
- senātus, senātus** *m.* senate (8)

- sēnsus, sēnsūs** *m.* perception, feeling; sense (11)
sententia, sententiae *f.* thought, feeling, opinion (4)
sentiō, sentire, sēnsi, sēnsus perceive, feel (4)
septem (indeclinable adj.) seven (§91)
septimus, -a, -um seventh (§91)
sequor, sequi, secutus sum follow (8)
Ser. = Servius, Servi *m.* Servius (§16)
L. Sergius Catilina, L. Sergii Catilinae *m.* Lucius Sergius Catilina, Catiline (§16)
servitūs, servitūtis *f.* slavery (6)
Servius, Servi *m.* Servius (§16)
servō (1-tr.) save, preserve (10)
servus, servi *m.* slave (1)
sex (indeclinable adj.) six (§91)
Sex. = Sextus, Sexti *m.* Sextus (§16)
sextus, -a, -um sixth (§91)
Sextus, Sexti *m.* Sextus (§16)
sī (conj.) if (5)
sic (adv.) thus, so, in this way, in such a way (5)
signum, signi *n.* sign, signal; standard (11)
similis, simile similar (+ gen. or dat.) (11)
sine (prep. + abl.) without (3)
socius, -a, -um allied (4)
socius, socii *m.* ally, comrade (4)
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun (14)
soleō, solēre, solitus sum be accustomed (11)
solum (adv.) only (7)
solus, -a, -um alone, only (9)
solvō,olvere, solvi, solutus loosen, free, release; dissolve (15)
soror, sorōris *f.* sister (6)
Sp. = Spurius, Spuri *m.* Spurius (§16)
speciēs, *speciei *f.* appearance, aspect (8)
spectō (1-tr.) look at, observe (14)
spērō (1-tr.) hope (for) (12)
spēs, spei *f.* hope (9)
Spurius, Spuri *m.* Spurius (§16)
stō, stāre, stetī, statum stand; stand fast, endure (10)
studium, studiī *n.* zeal, enthusiasm; pursuit, study (2)
sub (prep. + acc.) under, up to; (prep. + abl.) under; at the foot of; near (6)
—, sui (reflexive pron.) himself herself, itself; themselves (5)
Sulla, Sullae *m.* Sulla
sum, esse, fui, futurus be; exist (2)
summus, -a, -um highest; top (of); last, final (11)
superō (1-tr.) overcome, conquer; surpass (3)
suus, -a, -um his (own), her (own), its (own); their (own) (5)
T. = Titus, Titi *m.* Titus (§16)
Tacitus, Taciti *m.* Tacitus (§16)
taedet, taedēre, taesum est it makes (one) tired or sick (15)
tālis, tāle such, of such a sort (13)
tam (adv.) so (13)
tamen (adv.) nevertheless (5)
tandem (adv.) finally, at last, in questions and commands, pray, I ask you, then (9)
tantus, -a, -um so much, so great (13)
tēlum, tēli *n.* spear; weapon (11)
templum, templi *n.* temple (7)
tempus, temporis *n.* time (8)
teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentus hold, grasp; keep, possess; occupy (3)
terra, terrae *f.* land, earth (3)
terreō, terrēre, terrui, territus terrify, frighten (7)
tertius, -a, -um third (§91)
Ti. = Tiberius, Tiberii *m.* Tiberius (§16)
Tiberius, Tiberii *m.* Tiberius (§16)
timeō, timēre, timui, — fear, be afraid (of) (2)
timor, timōris *m.* fear (6)
Titus, Titi *m.* Titus (§16)
tot (indeclinable adj.) so many (13)
tōtus, -a, -um whole (9)
trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus hand over, surrender; hand down (7)
trēs, tria three (§91)
Troia, Troiae *f.* Troy (§16)
tū, tuī (personal pron.) you (4)
—, tuī (reflexive pron.) yourself (5)
Tullia, Tulliae *f.* Tullia (§16)
M. Tullius Cicerō, M. Tullii Ciceronis *m.* Marcus Tullius Cicero (§60)
tum or tunc (adv.) then, at that time (12)
Turnus, Turni *m.* Turnus (§60)
turpis, turpe foul, ugly; base, shameful (15)
tuus, -a, -um your, yours (4); your (own) (5)
ubi (conj.) when (5); (interrog. adv.) where, when (5); (rel. adv.) where (10)
ullus, -a, -um any (9)

umbra, umbrae *f.* shadow, shade (7)
 umquam (adv.) ever (6)
 unde (rel. adv.) from where, whence (10);
 (interrog. adv.) from where, whence (12)
 unus, -a, -um one; only (9)
 urbs, urbis, -ium *f.* city (6)
 ut (conj.) as; when (5); (conj.) *introduces Purpose clause, in order that (9); introduces Indirect Command, that (9); (conj.) introduces negative Fear clause, that . . . not (15)*
 uter, utra, utrum (interrog. adj.) which (of two) (9)
 utinam (particle) *introduces an Optative subjunctive (7)*
 ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum use; experience, enjoy (+ abl.) (10)
 utrum (interrog. particle) *introduces the first question of a double direct or Indirect Question (12)*
 utrum . . . an . . . whether . . . or . . . (12)
 valde (adv.) strongly
 vale/valete greetings! farewell! (§71)
 valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus be strong, be able; be well, fare well (§71)
 C. Valerius Catullus, C. Valerī Catullī *m.*
 Gaius Valerius Catullus (§16)
 validus, -a, -um strong; healthy (4)
 vel (conj.) or; vel . . . vel . . . either . . . or . . . (adv.) even (14)
 vēlum, vēli, n. sail (2)
 vēla dare (idiom) to set sail (2)
 vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditus sell (13)
 venio, venire, vēnī, ventum come (4)
 Venus, Veneris *f.* Venus (§60)
 verbum, verbī *n.* word (1)
 vereor, verēri, veritus sum be in awe of, show respect to; dread, fear (15)

P. Vergilius Marō, P. Vergiliū Marōnis *m.*
 Publius Vergilius Maro, Vergil (§60)
 vērō (adv.) certainly, indeed; but (in fact) (7)
 vērum (conj.) but (7)
 vērus, -a, -um real, true (7)
 Vesta, Vestae *f.* Vesta (§60)
 vester, vestra, vestrum your (pl.), yours (pl.) (4); your (pl.) (own) (5)
 —, vestrum/vestri (reflexive pron.) yourselves (5)
 vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus forbid (15)
 vetus, veteris old (14)
 via, viae *f.* way, road, street (1)
 videō, vidēre, vidi, visus see (2); *in passive, be seen; seem (3)*
 vincō, vincere, vici, victus conquer, overcome (7)
 vir, virī *m.* man, husband (1)
 virtūs, virtūtis *f.* manliness, courage; excellence, virtue (7)
 vīs, —, -ium *f.* force, power; violence; *in pl., (physical) strength (6)*
 vīta, vītae *f.* life (2)
 vivō, vivere, vixī, victūrus live, be alive (6)
 vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly (14)
 vocō (1-tr.) call, summon; name (2)
 volō, velle, voluī, — be willing, want, wish (12)
 bene velle (idiom) to wish well (12)
 male velle (idiom) to wish ill (12)
 vōs, vestrum/vestri (personal pron.) you (pl.) (4)
 —, vestrum/vestri (reflexive pron.) yourselves (5)
 vōx, vōcis *f.* voice; word (7)
 Vulcānus, Vulcānī *m.* Vulcan (§60)
 vulnus, vulneris *n.* wound (13)
 vultus, vultūs *m.* *in sing. or pl.* expression; face (15)

MORPHOLOGY APPENDIX

Note: Forms in brackets are not introduced in this book.

Verbs

First Conjugation

Principal Parts: *vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus*

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present			Active	Passive
	Active	Passive		
			<i>Singular</i>	
1	<i>vocō</i>	<i>vocor</i>	1 <i>vocem</i>	<i>vocer</i>
2	<i>vocās</i>	<i>vocāris/vocāre</i>	2 <i>vocēs</i>	<i>vocēris/vocēre</i>
3	<i>vocat</i>	<i>vocātur</i>	3 <i>vocet</i>	<i>vocētur</i>
			<i>Plural</i>	
1	<i>vocāmus</i>	<i>vocāmur</i>	1 <i>vocēmus</i>	<i>vocēmur</i>
2	<i>vocatīs</i>	<i>vocāminī</i>	2 <i>vocētīs</i>	<i>vocēmīni</i>
3	<i>vocant</i>	<i>vocantur</i>	3 <i>vocent</i>	<i>vocentur</i>
<hr/>				
Imperfect			Active	Passive
	Active	Passive		
			<i>Singular</i>	
1	<i>vocābam</i>	<i>vocābar</i>	1 <i>vocārem</i>	<i>vocārer</i>
2	<i>vocābās</i>	<i>vocābāris/vocābāre</i>	2 <i>vocārēs</i>	<i>vocārēris/vocarēre</i>
3	<i>vocābat</i>	<i>vocābātur</i>	3 <i>vocāret</i>	<i>vocārētur</i>
			<i>Plural</i>	
1	<i>vocābāmus</i>	<i>vocābāmur</i>	1 <i>vocārēmus</i>	<i>vocārēmur</i>
2	<i>vocābātīs</i>	<i>vocābāminī</i>	2 <i>vocarētīs</i>	<i>vocārēmīni</i>
3	<i>vocābant</i>	<i>vocābantur</i>	3 <i>vocārent</i>	<i>vocārentur</i>

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Future			
Active	Passive		
	<i>Singular</i>		
1 vocābō	vocabor		
2 vocābis	vocāberis/vocābere		
3 vocābit	vocābitur		
	<i>Plural</i>		
1 vocābimus	vocābimur		
2 vocābitis	vocābimini		
3 vocābunt	vocābuntur		
Perfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	<i>Singular</i>		
1 vocāvī	vocātus, -a, -um sum	1 vocāverim	vocātus, -a, -um sim
2 vocāvisti	vocātus, -a, -um es	2 vocāveris	vocātus, -a, -um sis
3 vocāvit	vocātus, -a, -um est	3 vocāverit	vocātus, -a, -um sit
	<i>Plural</i>		
1 vocāvimus	vocāti, -ae, -a sumus	1 vocāverimus	vocāti, -ae, -a simus
2 vocāvistis	vocāti, -ae, -a estis	2 vocāveritis	vocāti, -ae, -a sitis
3 vocāverunt/ vocāvēre	vocāti, -ae, -a sunt	3 vocāverint	vocāti, -ae, -a sint
Pluperfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	<i>Singular</i>		
1 vocaveram	vocatus, -a, -um eram	1 vocavissem	vocātus, -a, -um essem
2 vocaveras	vocātus, -a, -um erās	2 vocavissēs	vocātus, -a, -um essēs
3 vocāverat	vocātus, -a, -um erat	3 vocavisset	vocātus, -a, -um esset
	<i>Plural</i>		
1 vocāverāmus	vocāti, -ae, -a erāmus	1 vocāvissēmus	vocāti, -ae, -a essēmus
2 vocāverātis	vocāti, -ae, -a erātis	2 vocāvissētis	vocāti, -ae, -a essētis
3 vocaverant	vocati, -ae, -a erant	3 vocāvissent	vocati, -ae, -a essent
Future Perfect			
Active	Passive		
	<i>Singular</i>		
1 vocāverō	vocātus, -a, -um erō		
2 vocaveris	vocātus, -a, -um eris		
3 vocāverit	vocātus, -a, -um erit		
	<i>Plural</i>		
1 vocāverimus	vocāti, -ae, -a erimus		
2 vocāveritis	vocāti, -ae, -a eritis		
3 vocāverint	vocāti, -ae, -a erunt		

Participle		
	Active	Passive
Present	vocāns, vocantis	
Perfect		vocātus, -a, -um
Future	vocātūrus, -a, -um	vocandus, -a, -um
Infinitive		
	Active	Passive
Present	vocāre	vocārī
Perfect	vocāvisse	vocātus, -a, -um esse
Future	vocātūrus, -a, -um esse	[vocātum īrī]
Imperative		
Present	Active	Passive
Singular	2 vocā	vocāre
Plural	2 vocāte	vocāminī
[Future	Active	Passive
Singular	2 vocātō	vocātor
	3 vocātō	vocātor
Plural	2 vocātōte	
	3 vocantō	vocantor]

Second Conjugation

Principal Parts: *moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus*

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present			Active	Passive
Active	Passive			
		<i>Singular</i>		
1 <i>moveō</i>	<i>moveor</i>		1 <i>moveam</i>	<i>movear</i>
2 <i>movēs</i>	<i>movēris/movēre</i>		2 <i>moveās</i>	<i>moveāris/moveāre</i>
3 <i>movent</i>	<i>movētur</i>		3 <i>moveat</i>	<i>moveātur</i>
		<i>Plural</i>		
1 <i>movēmus</i>	<i>movēmur</i>		1 <i>moveāmus</i>	<i>moveāmur</i>
2 <i>movētis</i>	<i>movemini</i>		2 <i>moveātis</i>	<i>moveāmini</i>
3 <i>movent</i>	<i>moventur</i>		3 <i>moveant</i>	<i>moveantur</i>
Imperfect			Active	Passive
Active	Passive			
		<i>Singular</i>		
1 <i>movēbam</i>	<i>movēbar</i>		1 <i>movērem</i>	<i>movērer</i>
2 <i>movēbās</i>	<i>movēbāris/movēbāre</i>		2 <i>movērēs</i>	<i>movērēris/movērēre</i>
3 <i>movēbat</i>	<i>movēbātur</i>		3 <i>movēret</i>	<i>moveretur</i>
		<i>Plural</i>		
1 <i>movēbāmus</i>	<i>movēbāmur</i>		1 <i>movērēmus</i>	<i>movērēmur</i>
2 <i>movēbātis</i>	<i>movēbāmini</i>		2 <i>moverētis</i>	<i>movērēmini</i>
3 <i>movēbant</i>	<i>movēbantur</i>		3 <i>movērent</i>	<i>movērentur</i>

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Future			
Active	Passive		
	<i>Singular</i>		
1 movēbō	movēbor		
2 movēbis	movēberis/movēbere		
3 movēbit	movēbitur		
	<i>Plural</i>		
1 movēbimus	movēbimur		
2 movēbitis	movēbiminī		
3 movēbunt	movēbuntur		
Perfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
		<i>Singular</i>	
1 movī	mōtus, -a, -um sum	1 mōverim	mōtus, -a, -um sim
2 mōvistī	mōtus, -a, -um es	2 mōveris	mōtus, -a, -um sis
3 mōvit	mōtus, -a, -um est	3 mōverit	mōtus, -a, -um sit
		<i>Plural</i>	
1 mōvimus	mōtī, -ae, -a sumus	1 mōverimus	mōtī, -ae, -a simus
2 mōvistis	mōtī, -ae, -a estis	2 mōveritis	mōtī, -ae, -a sitis
3 mōvērunt/mōvēre	mōtī, -ae, -a sunt	3 mōverint	mōtī, -ae, -a sint
Pluperfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
		<i>Singular</i>	
1 moveram	mōtus, -a, -um eram	1 mōvissem	mōtus, -a, -um essem
2 mōverās	mōtus, -a, -um erās	2 mōvissēs	mōtus, -a, -um essēs
3 mōverat	mōtus, -a, -um erat	3 mōvisset	mōtus, -a, -um esset
		<i>Plural</i>	
1 moverāmus	mōtī, -ae, -a erāmus	1 mōvissēmus	mōtī, -ae, -a essēmus
2 mōverātis	mōtī, -ae, -a erātis	2 mōvissētis	mōtī, -ae, -a essētis
3 mōverant	mōtī, -ae, -a erant	3 mōvissent	mōtī, -ae, -a essent
Future Perfect			
Active	Passive		
	<i>Singular</i>		
1 mōverō	mōtus, -a, -um erō		
2 mōveris	mōtus, -a, -um eris		
3 mōverit	mōtus, -a, -um erit		
	<i>Plural</i>		
1 mōverimus	mōtī, -ae, -a erimus		
2 mōveritis	mōtī, -ae, -a eritis		
3 mōverint	mōtī, -ae, -a erunt		

Participle		
	Active	Passive
Present	movēns, moventis	
Perfect		mōtus, -a, -um
Future	mōtūrus, -a, -um	movendus, -a, -um
Infinitive		
	Active	Passive
Present	movēre	movērī
Perfect	mōvisse	mōtus, -a, -um esse
Future	mōtūrus, -a, -um esse	[mōtum īrī]
Imperative		
Present	Active	Passive
Singular	2 movē	movēre
Plural	2 movēte	movēmini
[Future	Active	Passive
Singular	2 movētō	movētor
	3 movētō	movētor
Plural	2 movētōte	
	3 moventō	moventor]

Third Conjugation

Principal Parts: regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present			Active	Passive
Active	Passive			
		<i>Singular</i>		
1 regō	regor	1 regam	regar	
2 regis	regeris/regere	2 regās	regāris/regāre	
3 regit	regitur	3 regat	regātur	
		<i>Plural</i>		
1 regimus	regimur	1 regāmus	regāmur	
2 regitis	regimini	2 regātis	regāmini	
3 regunt	reguntur	3 regant	regantur	
Imperfect				
Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		<i>Singular</i>		
1 regēbam	regēbar	1 regerem	regerer	
2 regēbās	regēbāris/regēbāre	2 regerēs	regerēris/regerēre	
3 regēbat	regēbātur	3 regeret	regerētur	
		<i>Plural</i>		
1 regēbāmus	regēbāmur	1 regerēmus	regerēmur	
2 regēbātis	regēbāmini	2 regerētis	regerēmini	
3 regēbant	regēbantur	3 regerent	regerentur	

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Future			
Active	Passive		
	<i>Singular</i>		
1 regam	regar		
2 regēs	regēris/regere		
3 reget	regētur		
	<i>Plural</i>		
1 regēmus	regēmur		
2 regētis	regēmini		
3 regent	regentur		
Perfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
		<i>Singular</i>	
1 rēxi	rēctus, -a, -um sum	1 rexerim	rēctus, -a, -um sim
2 rēxisti	rēctus, -a, -um es	2 rēxeris	rēctus, -a, -um sis
3 rēxit	rēctus, -a, -um est	3 rēxerit	rēctus, -a, -um sit
	<i>Plural</i>		
1 reximus	recti, -ae, -a sumus	1 rexerimus	recti, -ae, -a simus
2 rēxistis	rēcti, -ae, -a estis	2 rēxeritis	rēcti, -ae, -a sitis
3 rēxerunt/rēxere	rēcti, -ae, -a sunt	3 rēxerint	rēcti, -ae, -a sint
Pluperfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
		<i>Singular</i>	
1 rēxeram	rēctus, -a, -um eram	1 rēxissem	rēctus, -a, -um essem
2 rēxerās	rectus, -a, -um eras	2 rexisses	rectus, -a, -um essēs
3 rēxerat	rēctus, -a, -um erat	3 rēxisset	rēctus, -a, -um esset
	<i>Plural</i>		
1 rēxerāmus	rēcti, -ae, -a erāmus	1 rēxissēmus	rēcti, -ae, -a essēmus
2 rēxerātis	recti, -ae, -a eratis	2 rexissetis	recti, -ae, -a essētis
3 rēxerant	rēcti, -ae, -a erant	3 rēxissent	rēcti, -ae, -a essent
Future Perfect			
Active	Passive		
	<i>Singular</i>		
1 rēxerō	rēctus, -a, -um erō		
2 rēxeris	rēctus, -a, -um eris		
3 rēxerit	rēctus, -a, -um erit		
	<i>Plural</i>		
1 rēxerimus	rēcti, -ae, -a erimus		
2 rēxeritis	rēcti, -ae, -a eritis		
3 rēxerint	rēcti, -ae, -a erunt		

Participle		
	Active	Passive
Present	regēns, regentis	
Perfect		rēctus, -a, -um
Future	rectūrus, -a, -um	regendus, -a, -um
Infinitive		
	Active	Passive
Present	regere	regī
Perfect	rēxisse	rēctus, -a, -um esse
Future	rectūrus, -a, -um esse	[rēctum īrī]
Imperative		
Present	Active	Passive
Singular	2 rege	regere
Plural	2 regite	regimini
[Future	Active	Passive
Singular	2 regitō	regitor
	3 regitō	regitor
Plural	2 regitōte	
	3 reguntō	reguntor]

Third I-stem Conjugation

Principal Parts: capiō, capere, cēpi, captus

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
		<i>Singular</i>	
1 capiō	capior	1 capiam	capiar
2 capis	caperis/capere	2 capiās	capīaris/capiāre
3 capit	capitur	3 capiat	capīātur
		<i>Plural</i>	
1 capimus	capimur	1 capiāmus	capīāmur
2 capitis	capimini	2 capiātis	capīāmini
3 capiunt	capiuntur	3 capiant	capīantur
Imperfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
		<i>Singular</i>	
1 capiebam	capiebar	1 caperem	caperer
2 capiebās	capiebāris/capiebāre	2 caperēs	caperēris/caperēre
3 capiebat	capiebātur	3 caperet	caperētur
		<i>Plural</i>	
1 capiebāmus	capiebamur	1 caperēmus	caperēmur
2 capiebātis	capiebāmini	2 caperētis	caperēmuni
3 capiebant	capiebantur	3 caperent	caperentur

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Future			
Active	Passive		
<i>Singular</i>			
1 capiam	capiar		
2 capiēs	capiēris/capiēre		
3 capiet	capiētur		
<i>Plural</i>			
1 capiēmus	capiemur		
2 capiētis	capiēmini		
3 capient	capientur		
<hr/>			
Perfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
<i>Singular</i>			
1 cepi	captus, -a, -um sum	1 ceperim	captus, -a, -um sim
2 cēpisti	captus, -a, -um es	2 cēperis	captus, -a, -um sis
3 cēpit	captus, -a, -um est	3 cēperit	captus, -a, -um sit
<i>Plural</i>			
1 cēpimus	capti, -ae, -a sumus	1 cēperimus	capti, -ae, -a sumus
2 cēpistis	capti, -ae, -a estis	2 cēperitis	capti, -ae, -a sitis
3 cēperunt/cēpēre	capti, -ae, -a sunt	3 cēperint	capti, -ae, -a sint
<hr/>			
Pluperfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
<i>Singular</i>			
1 ceperam	captus, -a, -um eram	1 cepissem	captus, -a, -um essem
2 cēperās	captus, -a, -um erās	2 cēpissēs	captus, -a, -um essēs
3 cēperat	captus, -a, -um erat	3 cēpisset	captus, -a, -um esset
<i>Plural</i>			
1 ceperāmus	capti, -ae, -a eramus	1 cepissemus	capti, -ae, -a essēmus
2 cēperātis	capti, -ae, -a erātis	2 cēpissētis	capti, -ae, -a essētis
3 cēperant	capti, -ae, -a erant	3 cēpissent	capti, -ae, -a essent
<hr/>			
Future Perfect			
Active	Passive		
<i>Singular</i>			
1 cēperō	captus, -a, -um erō		
2 cēperis	captus, -a, -um eris		
3 cēperit	captus, -a, -um erit		
<i>Plural</i>			
1 ceperimus	capti, -ae, -a erimus		
2 cēperitis	capti, -ae, -a eritis		
3 cēperint	capti, -ae, -a erunt		

Participle

	Active	Passive
Present	capiēns, capientis	
Perfect		captus, -a, -um
Future	captūrus, -a, -um	capiendus, -a, -um

Infinitive

	Active	Passive
Present	capere	capī
Perfect	cēpisse	captus, -a, -um esse
Future	captūrus, -a, -um esse	[captum īrī]

Imperative

	Active	Passive
Present		
<i>Singular</i>		
2	cape	capere
<i>Plural</i>		
2	capite	capimini
Future		
<i>Singular</i>		
2	capitō	capitor
3	capitō	capitor
<i>Plural</i>		
2	capitōte	
3	capiuntō	capiuntor]

Fourth ConjugationPrincipal Parts: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus****INDICATIVE****SUBJUNCTIVE****Present**

Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		<i>Singular</i>		
1 audiō	audior		1 audiam	audiar
2 audis	audiris/audīre		2 audiās	audiāris/audiāre
3 audit	audītur		3 audiat	audiātur
		<i>Plural</i>		
1 audīmus	audīmur		1 audiāmus	audiāmur
2 audītis	audīmini		2 audiātis	audiāmini
3 audiunt	audiuntur		3 audiant	audiantur

Imperfect

Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		<i>Singular</i>		
1 audiēbam	audiēbar		1 audīrem	audīrer
2 audiēbās	audiēbāris/audiēbāre		2 audīrēs	audīrēris/audīrēre
3 audiēbat	audiēbātur		3 audīret	audīrētur
		<i>Plural</i>		
1 audiēbāmus	audiēbāmur		1 audīrēmus	audīrēmur
2 audiēbātis	audiēbāmini		2 audīretis	audīrēmini
3 audiēbant	audiēbantur		3 audīrent	audīrentur

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Future			
Active	Passive		
Singular			
1 audiam	audiar		
2 audiēs	audiēris/audiēre		
3 audiet	audiētur		
Plural			
1 audiēmus	audiēmur		
2 audiētis	audiēmini		
3 audient	audientur		
<hr/>			
Perfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
Singular			
1 audivī	audītus, -a, -um sum	1 audiverim	audītus, -a, -um sim
2 audivistī	audītus, -a, -um es	2 audiveris	audītus, -a, -um sis
3 audivit	audītus, -a, -um est	3 audiverit	audītus, -a, -um sit
Plural			
1 audivimus	audītī, -ae, -a sumus	1 audiverimus	audītī, -ae, -a simus
2 audivistis	audītī, -ae, -a estis	2 audiveritis	audītī, -ae, -a sitis
3 audivērunt/audivēre	audītī, -ae, -a sunt	3 audiverint	audītī, -ae, -a sint
<hr/>			
Pluperfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
Singular			
1 audiveram	audītus, -a, -um eram	1 audivissem	audītus, -a, -um essem
2 audiverās	audītus, -a, -um erās	2 audivissēs	audītus, -a, -um essēs
3 audiverat	audītus, -a, -um erat	3 audivisset	audītus, -a, -um esset
Plural			
1 audiverāmus	audītī, -ae, -a erāmus	1 audivissēmus	audītī, -ae, -a essēmus
2 audiverātis	audītī, -ae, -a erātis	2 audivissētis	audītī, -ae, -a essētis
3 audiverant	audītī, -ae, -a erant	3 audivissent	audītī, -ae, -a essent
<hr/>			
Future Perfect			
Active	Passive		
Singular			
1 audiverō	audītus, -a, -um erō		
2 audiveris	audītus, -a, -um eris		
3 audiverit	audītus, -a, -um erit		
Plural			
1 audiverimus	audītī, -ae, -a erimus		
2 audiveritis	audītī, -ae, -a eritis		
3 audiverint	audītī, -ae, -a erunt		
<hr/>			
Participle			
	Active	Passive	
Present	audiēns, audientis		
Perfect		audītus, -a, -um	
Future	audītūrus, -a, -um	audiendus, -a, -um	

Infinitive		
	Active	Passive
Present	audire	audiri
Perfect	audivisse	auditus, -a, -um esse
Future	auditurus, -a, -um esse	[auditum iri]
Imperative		
Present	Active	Passive
Singular	2 audi	audire
Plural	2 audite	audimini
[Future	Active	Passive
Singular	2 auditō	auditor
	3 auditeō	auditor
Plural	2 auditote	
	3 audiuntō	audiuntor]

Irregular Verbs

Principal Parts: sum, esse, fui, futurus

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	Imperfect	Future	Present	Imperfect
<i>Present</i>		<i>Singular</i>		
1 sum	eram	erō	sim	essem
2 es	erās	eris	sīs	essēs
3 est	erat	erit	sit	esset
		<i>Plural</i>		
1 sumus	erāmus	erimus	simus	essēmus
2 estis	erātis	eritis	sītis	essētis
3 sunt	erant	erunt	sint	essent
<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>Future Perfect</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
		<i>Singular</i>		
1 fui	fueram	fuerō	fuerim	fuissem
2 fuisti	fuerās	fueris	fueris	fuissem
3 fuit	fuerat	fuerit	fuerit	fuisset
		<i>Plural</i>		
1 fuimus	fuerāmus	fuerimus	fuerimus	fuissemus
2 fuistis	fuerātis	fueritis	fueritis	fuissetis
3 fuerunt/fuere	fuerant	fuerint	fuerint	fuisissent
<i>Participle:</i>	Future Active: futurus, -a, -um			
<i>Infinitive:</i>	Present Active: esse Perfect Active: fuisse Future Active: futurus, -a, -um esse or fore			
<i>[Imperative</i>	<i>Present Active</i>	<i>Future Active</i>		
Singular	2 es	2 estō	3 estō	
Plural	2 este	2 estote	3 suntō]	

Principal Parts: possum, posse, potuī, —

<i>Present</i>	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Future Singular</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>
1 possum	poteram	potero	possim	possem
2 potes	poterās	poteris	possis	possēs
3 potest	poterat	poterit	possit	posset
		<i>Plural</i>		
1 possumus	poterāmus	poterimus	possimus	possēmus
2 potestis	poterātis	poteritis	possitis	possētis
3 possunt	poterant	poterunt	possint	possent
		<i>Future Perfect Singular</i>		
<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>Future Perfect Singular</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
1 potuī	potueram	potuerō	potuerim	potuissem
2 potuisti	potueras	potueris	potueris	potuisses
3 potuit	potuerat	potuerit	potuerit	potuisset
		<i>Plural</i>		
1 potuimus	potuerāmus	potuerimus	potuerimus	potuissēmus
2 potuistis	potuerātis	potueritis	potueritis	potuissētis
3 potuerunt/ potuēre	potuerant	potuerint	potuerint	potuissent
<i>Infinitive</i>	Present Active: posse		Perfect Active: potuisse	

Principal Parts: eō, ire, ī, or ivi, itum

<i>Present</i>	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Future Singular</i>	<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>
1 eō	ibam	ibō	eam	īrem
2 īs	ibās	ibis	eās	irēs
3 it	ibat	ibit	eat	iret
		<i>Plural</i>		
1 īmus	ibāmus	ibimus	eāmus	irēmus
2 itis	ibātis	ibitis	eātis	irētis
3 eunt	ibant	ibunt	eant	irent

INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>	<i>Future Perfect Singular</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Pluperfect</i>
1 <i>iī/iṽi</i>	<i>ieram/iveram</i>	<i>ierō/iverō</i>	<i>ierim/iverim</i>	<i>issem/ivissem</i>
2 <i>istī/ivistī</i>	<i>ierās/iverās</i>	<i>ieris/iveris</i>	<i>ieris/iveris</i>	<i>issēs/ivissēs</i>
3 <i>iit/it/ivit</i>	<i>ierat/iverat</i>	<i>ierit/iverit</i>	<i>ierit/iverit</i>	<i>isset/ivisset</i>
		<i>Plural</i>		
1 <i>iīmus/iṽmus/ivimus</i>	<i>ierāmus/iverāmus</i>	<i>ierimus/iverimus</i>	<i>ierimus/iverimus</i>	<i>issēmus/ivissēmus</i>
2 <i>istis/ivistis</i>	<i>ierātis/iverātis</i>	<i>ieritis/iveritis</i>	<i>ieritis/iveritis</i>	<i>issētis/ivissētis</i>
3 <i>iēruni/iēre iverunt/ivēre</i>	<i>ierant/iverant</i>	<i>ierint/iverint</i>	<i>ierint/iverint</i>	<i>issent/ivissent</i>

Participle		
	Active	Passive
Present	<i>iēns, euntis</i>	
Perfect		<i>itum</i>
Future	<i>itūrus, -a, -um</i>	<i>eundum</i>
Infinitive		
	Active	Passive
Present	<i>ire</i>	<i>[irī]</i>
Perfect	<i>isse/ivisse</i>	<i>itum esse</i>
Future	<i>itūrus, -a, -um esse</i>	
Imperative		
	<i>Present Active</i>	<i>[Future Active</i>
Singular	2 <i>i</i>	2 <i>itō</i> 3 <i>itō</i>
Plural	2 <i>ite</i>	2 <i>itōte</i> 3 <i>euntō</i>]

Principal Parts: *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Present</i>			
<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
		<i>Singular</i>	
1 <i>ferō</i>	<i>feror</i>	1 <i>feram</i>	<i>ferar</i>
2 <i>fers</i>	<i>ferris/ferre</i>	2 <i>ferās</i>	<i>ferāris/ferāre</i>
3 <i>fert</i>	<i>fertur</i>	3 <i>ferat</i>	<i>ferātur</i>
		<i>Plural</i>	
1 <i>ferimus</i>	<i>ferimur</i>	1 <i>ferāmus</i>	<i>ferāmur</i>
2 <i>fertis</i>	<i>ferimini</i>	2 <i>ferātis</i>	<i>ferāmini</i>
3 <i>ferunt</i>	<i>feruntur</i>	3 <i>ferant</i>	<i>ferantur</i>

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Imperfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
<i>Singular</i>			
1 ferēbam	ferēbar	1 ferrem	ferer
2 ferēbās	ferēbāris/ferēbāre	2 ferrēs	ferērīs/ferēre
3 ferēbat	ferēbātur	3 ferret	ferretur
<i>Plural</i>			
1 ferēbāmus	ferēbāmur	1 ferrēmus	ferremur
2 ferēbātis	ferēbāminī	2 ferrētis	ferreminī
3 ferēbant	ferēbantur	3 ferrent	ferrentur
Future			
Active	Passive		
<i>Singular</i>			
1 feram	ferar		
2 ferēs	ferērīs/ferēre		
3 feret	feretur		
<i>Plural</i>			
1 ferēmus	ferēmur		
2 ferētis	ferēminī		
3 ferent	ferentur		
Perfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
<i>Singular</i>			
1 tulī	lātus, -a, -um sum	1 tulerim	latus, -a, -um sim
2 tulistī	lātus, -a, -um es	2 tuleris	lātus, -a, -um sis
3 tulit	lātus, -a, -um est	3 tulerit	lātus, -a, -um sit
<i>Plural</i>			
1 tulimus	lāti, -ae, -a sumus	1 tulerimus	lāti, -ae, -a simus
2 tulistis	lāti, -ae, -a estis	2 tuleritis	lāti, -ae, -a sitis
3 tulerunt/tulēre	lāti, -ae, -a sunt	3 tulerint	lāti, -ae, -a sint
Pluperfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
<i>Singular</i>			
1 tuleram	lātus, -a, -um eram	1 tulissem	lātus, -a, -um essem
2 tulerās	lātus, -a, -um erās	2 tulissēs	lātus, -a, -um essēs
3 tulerat	lātus, -a, -um erat	3 tulisset	lātus, -a, -um esset
<i>Plural</i>			
1 tulerāmus	lāti, -ae, -a erāmus	1 tulissēmus	lāti, -ae, -a essēmus
2 tulerātis	lāti, -ae, -a erātis	2 tulissētis	lāti, -ae, -a essētis
3 tulerant	lāti, -ae, -a erant	3 tulissent	lāti, -ae, -a essent

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
uture Perfect			
Active	Passive		
Singular			
1 tulerō	lātus, -a, -um erō		
2 tuleris	lātus, -a, -um eris		
3 tulerit	lātus, -a, -um erit		
Plural			
1 tulerimus	lāti, -ae, -a erimus		
2 tuleritis	lāti, -ae, -a eritis		
3 tulerint	lāti, -ae, -a erunt		
Participle			
	Active	Passive	
Present	ferēns, ferentis		
Perfect		lātus, -a, -um	
Future	lāturus, -a, -um	ferendus, -a, -um	
Infinitive			
	Active	Passive	
Present	ferre	ferri	
Perfect	tulisse	lātus, -a, -um esse	
Future	lāturus, -a, -um esse	[lātum iri]	
Imperative			
Present	Active	Passive	
Singular	2 fer	ferre	
Plural	2 ferte	ferimini	
[Future	Active		
Singular	2 fertō	fertor	
	3 fertō	fertor	
Plural	2 fertōte	—	
	3 feruntō	feruntur]	

Principal Parts: volō, velle, voluī, —
 nōlō, nōlle, nōlul, —
 mālō, mālle, mālul, —

INDICATIVE ACTIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE		
Present					
			<i>Singular</i>		
1 volō	nōlō	mālō	velim	nōlim	mālim
2 vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs	velis	nōlis	mālis
3 vult	nōn vult	māvult	velit	nōlit	mālit
			<i>Plural</i>		
1 volumus	nōlumus	mālumus	velimus	nōlimus	mālimus
2 vultis	non vultis	māvultis	velitis	nōlitis	mālitis
3 volunt	nōlunt	mālunt	velint	nōlint	mālint

INDICATIVE ACTIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE

Imperfect

			<i>Singular</i>			
1	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam	vellem	nōllem	māllem
2	volēbās	nōlēbās	mālēbās	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
3	volebat	nolebat	mālēbat	vellet	nōlit	māllet
			<i>Plural</i>			
1	volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
2	volēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
3	volēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant	vellent	nōllent	māllent

Future

			<i>Singular</i>		
1	volam	*nōlam	*mālam		
2	volēs	nōlēs	mālēs		
3	volet	nōlet	mālet		
			<i>Plural</i>		
1	volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus		
2	volētis	nōlētis	mālētis		
3	volent	nolent	malent		

Perfect

			<i>Singular</i>			
1	volui	nolui	mālu	voluerim	noluerim	māluerim
2	voluisti	noluisti	mālisti	volueris	nolueris	mālueris
3	voluit	noluit	māluit	voluerit	noluerit	māluerit
			<i>Plural</i>			
1	voluimus	noluimus	māluimus	voluerimus	noluerimus	māluerimus
2	voluistis	noluistis	māluistis	volueritis	nolueritis	mālueritis
3	voluērunt/ voluere	noluērunt/ noluere	māluērunt/ māluere	voluerint	noluerint	māluerint

Pluperfect

		<i>Singular</i>				
1	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem
2	voluerās	nōluerās	māluerās	voluissēs	nōluisssēs	māluisssēs
3	voluerat	nōluerat	māluerat	voluisset	nōluisset	māluisset
		<i>Plural</i>				
1	voluerāmus	nōluerāmus	māluerāmus	voluissēmus	nōluisssēmus	māluisssēmus
2	voluerātis	nōluerātis	māluerātis	voluissētis	nōluisssētis	māluisssētis
3	voluerant	nōluerant	māluerant	voluissent	nōluisissent	māluisissent

INDICATIVE ACTIVE

Future Perfect

	<i>Singular</i>	
1 voluerō	nōluerō	māluero
2 volueris	nōlueris	mālueris
3 voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
	<i>Plural</i>	
1 voluerimus	nōluerimus	māluerimus
2 volueritis	nōlueritis	mālueritis
3 voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

Participle: Present Active: volēns, volentis; nōlēns, nōlentis

Infinitive: Present Active: velle, nōlle, malle

Perfect Active: voluisse, nōluisse, māluisse

Imperative Present Active: nōlī (2nd sing.), nōlite (2nd pl.)

fīō, fierī, factus sum

INDICATIVE ACTIVE

<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>		<i>Future</i>		<i>SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE</i>	
			<i>Singular</i>		<i>Present</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>
1 fīō	fīebam		fīam		fīam	fīerem
2 fīs	fīebās		fīēs		fīās	fīerēs
3 fīt	fīebat		fīet		fīat	fīeret
			<i>Plural</i>			
1 fīmus	fīebāmus		fīemus		fīāmus	fīerēmus
2 fītis	fīebātis		fīētis		fīātis	fīerētis
3 fīunt	fīebant		fīent		fīant	fīerent
<i>Infinitive:</i>	Present Active: fierī					
<i>Imperative</i>	Present Active: fī (2nd sing.), fīte (2nd pl.)					

Nouns

First Declension

puella, puellae f.*Singular*

Nom.	puella
Gen.	puellae
Dat.	puellae
Acc.	puellam
Abl.	puella
Voc.	puella

Plural

Nom./Voc.	puellae
Gen.	puellarum
Dat.	puellis
Acc.	puellās
Abl.	puellis

Second Declension

servus, servī m.**puer, puerī m.****periculum, periculī n.**

M./F.

N.

servus	puer	periculum
servī	puerī	periculī
servō	puerō	periculō
servum	puerum	periculum
servō	puerō	periculō
serve	puer	periculum
<hr/>		
servī	puerī	pericula
servōrum	puerōrum	periculōrum
servīs	puerīs	periculīs
servōs	puerōs	pericula
servīs	puerīs	periculīs

Third Declension

miles, militis m.**urbs, urbis, -ium f.****corpus, corporis n.****animal, animālis, -ium n.**

M./F.

M./F. I-stem

N.

N. I-stem

Singular

Nom./Voc.	miles	urbs	corpus	animal
Gen.	militis	urbis	corporis	animālis
Dat.	militi	urbī	corporī	animālī
Acc.	militem	urbem	corpus	animal
Abl.	milite	urbe	corpore	animālī

Plural

Nom./Voc.	militēs	urbēs	corpora	animālia
Gen.	militum	urbium	corporum	animālium
Dat.	militibus	urbibus	corporibus	animālibus
Acc.	militēs	urbēs/urbīs	corpora	animālia
Abl.	militibus	urbibus	corporibus	animālibus

Fourth Declension

mōtus, mōtūs *m.*cornū, cornūs *n.*

	M./F.	[N.]
<i>Singular</i>		
Nom./Voc	mōtus	cornū
Gen.	mōtūs	cornūs
Dat.	mōtuī/mōtū	cornū
Acc.	mōtum	cornū
Abl.	mōtū	cornū
<i>Plural</i>		
Nom./Voc.	mōtūs	cornua
Gen.	mōtuum	cornuum
Dat.	mōtibus	cornibus
Acc.	mōtūs	cornua
Abl.	mōtibus	cornibus]

Fifth Declension

rēs, rei *f.*aciēs, aciēi *f.*

	Stem ends in consonant	Stem ends in vowel
	rēs	aciēs
	rei	aciēi
	rei	aciēi
	rem	aciem
	rē	aciē
<i>Plural</i>		
Nom./Voc.	rēs	aciēs
Gen.	rērum	aciērum
Dat.	rēbus	aciēbus
Acc.	rēs	aciēs
Abl.	rēbus	aciebus

Adjectives and Pronouns

First-Second-Declension Adjectives

bonus, bona, bonum

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum

<i>Singular</i>	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bono	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō
Voc.	bone	bona	bonum	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>Plural</i>						
Nom./Voc.	boni	bonae	bona	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Gen.	bonōrum	bonarum	bonōrum	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonis	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bonōs	pulchros	pulchrās	pulchra
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs	pulchris	pulchrīs	pulchris

Third-Declension Adjectives

With three nominative singular forms. ācer, ācris, ācre

With two nominative singular forms. fortis, forte

<i>Singular</i>	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom./Voc	ācer	ācris	ācre	fortis	fortis	forte
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	fortis	fortis	fortis
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	fortī	fortī	fortī
Acc.	acrem	acrem	acre	fortem	fortem	forte
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	fortī	fortī	fortī
<i>Plural</i>						
Nom./Voc	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria	fortēs	fortēs	fortia
Gen.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium	fortium	fortium	fortium
Dat.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	ācrēs/ācrīs	ācrēs/ācrīs	ācria	fortēs/ fortis	fortes/ fortis	fortia
Abl.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus

With one nominative singular form: ingēns, ingentis; vocāns, vocantis

<i>Singular</i>	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	ingens	ingens	ingens	vocans	vocāns	vocāns
Gen.	ingentis	ingentis	ingentis	vocantis	vocantis	vocantis
Dat.	ingentī	ingentī	ingentī	vocantī	vocantī	vocantī
Acc.	ingentem	ingentem	ingēns	vocantem	vocantem	vocāns
Abl.	ingentī	ingentī	ingentī	vocantī/ vocante	vocantī/ vocante	vocantī/ vocante
<i>Plural</i>						
Nom./Voc.	ingentēs	ingentēs	ingentia	vocantēs	vocantēs	vocantia
Gen.	ingentium	ingentium	ingentium	vocantium	vocantium	vocantium
Dat.	ingentibus	ingentibus	ingentibus	vocantibus	vocantibus	vocantibus
Acc.	ingentēs/ ingentis	ingentēs/ ingentis	ingentia	vocantēs/ vocantis	vocantēs/ vocantis	vocantia
Abl.	ingentibus	ingentibus	ingentibus	vocantibus	vocantibus	vocantibus

Comparative Adjectives

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	pulchrior	pulchrior	pulchrius	pulchriōrēs	pulchriōrēs	pulchriōra
Gen.	pulchriōris	pulchriōris	pulchriōris	pulchriōrum	pulchriōrum	pulchriōrum
Dat.	pulchriōrī	pulchriōrī	pulchriōrī	pulchriōribus	pulchriōribus	pulchriōribus
Acc.	pulchriōrem	pulchriōrem	pulchrius	pulchriōrēs/ pulchriōrīs	pulchriōrēs/ pulchriōrīs	pulchriōra
Abl.	pulchriōre/ pulchriōrī	pulchriōre/ pulchriōrī	pulchriōre/ pulchriōrī	pulchriōribus	pulchriōribus	pulchriōribus

Demonstrative Adjectives and Pronouns

hic, haec, hoc

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	haec	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

ille, illa, illud

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

is, ea, id

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	ea	id	ei/ī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	ei	ei	ei	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs

iste, ista, istud

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
Gen.	istius	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Acc.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Abl.	istō	ista	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

Personal Pronouns

First Person	ego, meī
	nōs, nostrum/nostrī
Second Person	tū, tuī
	vōs, vestrum/vestrī

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
Gen.	meī	nostrum/nostrī	tuī	vestrum/vestrī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

Third Person is, ea, id

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī/li	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	earum	eorum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	ea	eo	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs	eīs/iīs

Reflexive Pronouns

First Person	—, meī
	—, nostrum/nostrī
Second Person	—, tuī
	—, vestrum/vestrī
Third Person	—, suī

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Sing./Pl.</i>
Nom.	—	—	—	—	—
Gen.	meī	nostrum/nostrī	tuī	vestrum/vestrī	suī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē/sēsē
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē/sēsē

Intensive Adjective

ipse, ipsa, ipsum

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsorum	ipsarum	ipsorum
Dat.	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsos	ipsas	ipsa
Abl.	ipso	ipsa	ipso	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

Relative Pronoun

qui, quae, quod

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quorum	quarum	quorum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quos	quas	quae
Abl.	quo	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

Interrogative Pronoun and Adjective

quis, quid

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>		
	M./F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quis	quid	qui	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	quorum	quarum	quorum
Dat.	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quid	quos	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

qui, quae, quod

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quorum	quarum	quorum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quos	quas	quae
Abl.	quo	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives

aliquis, aliquid (pron.)*Singular*

	M./F.	N.	
Nom.	aliquis	aliquid	Does not occur in the plural
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	
Dat.	alicui	alicui	
Acc.	aliquem	aliquid	
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā	

aliqui, aliqua, aliquod (adj.)*Singular*

	M.	F.	N.	
Nom.	aliqui	aliqua	aliquod	Does not occur in the plural
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius	
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui	
Acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod	
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō	

quis, quid (pron.)*Singular*

	M./F.	N.
Nom.	quis	quid
Gen.	cuius	cuius
Dat.	cui	cui
Acc.	quem	quid
Abl.	quō	quō

Plural

M.	F.	N.
qui	quae	quae
quōrum	quarum	quōrum
quibus	quibus	quibus
quōs	quās	quae
quibus	quibus	quibus

quī, qua, quod (adj.)*Singular*

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	qua	quod
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius
Dat.	cui	cui	cui
Acc.	quem	quam	quod
Abl.	quō	quā	quō

Plural

M.	F.	N.
quī	quae	qua
quōrum	quārum	quōrum
quibus	quibus	quibus
quōs	quās	qua
quibus	quibus	quibus

quisquam, quicquam (pron.)*Singular*

	M./F.	N.	
Nom.	quisquam	quicquam (quidquam)	Does not occur in the plural
Gen.	cuiusquam	cuiusquam	
Dat.	cuiquam	cuiquam	
Acc.	quemquam	quicquam (quidquam)	
Abl.	quōquam	quōquam	

quisque, quidque (pron.)

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>		
	M./F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quisque	quidque (quicque)	quique	quaeque	quaeque
Gen.	cuiusque	cuiusque	quorumque	quarumque	quorumque
Dat.	cuique	cuique	quibusque	quibusque	quibusque
Acc.	quemque	quidque (quicque)	quosque	quasque	quaeque
Abl.	quodque	quaque	quibusque	quibusque	quibusque

quique, quaeque, quodque (adj.)

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quique	quaeque	quodque	quique	quaeque	quaeque
Gen.	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque	quorumque	quarumque	quorumque
Dat.	cuique	cuique	cuique	quibusque	quibusque	quibusque
Acc.	quemque	quamque	quodque	quosque	quasque	quaeque
Abl.	quoque	quaque	quodque	quibusque	quibusque	quibusque

quidam, quaedam, quiddam (pron.)

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quidam	quaedam	quiddam	quidam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	quorundam	quarundam	quorundam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quiddam	quosdam	quasdam	quaedam
Abl.	quodam	quadam	quodam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

quidam, quaedam, quoddam (adj.)

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quidam	quaedam	quoddam	quidam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	quorundam	quarundam	quorundam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quoddam	quosdam	quasdam	quaedam
Abl.	quodam	quadam	quodam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

Irregular Adjectives

First-Second-Declension Adjectives Irregular in the Singular Only

alius, alia, aliud
 alter, altera, alterum
 neuter, neutra, neutrum
 nullus, -a, -um
 solus, -a, -um
 totus, -a, -um
 ullus, -a, -um
 unus, -a, -um
 uter, utra, utrum

<i>Singular</i>	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
Gen.	tōtius	tōtius	tōtius
Dat.	tōti	tōtī	tōtī
Acc.	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
Abl.	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō

idem, eadem, idem

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	idem	eadem	idem	idem/eidem	eadem	eadem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eidem	eidem	eidem	isdem/eisdem	isdem/eisdem	isdem/eisdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	isdem/eisdem	isdem/eisdem	isdem/eisdem

Adverbs

Adverbs in the Positive Degree Formed from First-Second-Declension Adjectives

acerbē < acerbus, -a, -um

pulchrē < pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum

Adverbs in the Positive Degree Formed from Third-Declension Adjectives

fortiter < fortis, forte

Adverbs in the Comparative Degree

acerbius < acerbus, -a, -um

pulchrius < pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum

fortius < fortis, forte

Adverbs in the Superlative Degree

acerbissimē < acerbus, -a, -um

pulcherrimē < pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum

fortissimē < fortis, forte

APPENDIX P

Prefixes may be used to form compound verbs, nouns, adjectives, or adverbs. In the list of prefixes below the first form given is the *unassimilated* form. It is followed, where applicable, by forms of the prefix that may occur according to fixed rules of assimilation and compensatory lengthening. The meanings given are the general meanings associated with these prefixes, and often one may guess the meanings of compound words with a knowledge of these meanings and the meanings of the simple word to which a prefix has been joined.

In this list prefixes that may be used separately as adverbs, prepositions, or both are *italicized*.

ā-, *ab-*, *abs-*, *au-* from, away from; at a distance; completely, thoroughly;
indicates absence

ad-, *ac-*, *af-*, *ag-*, *al-*, *ar-*, *as-*, *at-* to, toward;
against; upon; near; *intensifier*

ante- before; in front

circum- around, round about

com-, *co-*, *col-*, *con-*, *cor-* (< *cum-*) together
(with); completely

dē- down from; utterly

dis-, *dī-*, *dif-* apart; in different directions

ē-, *ex-*, *ef-* out, away; thoroughly

in^[1] in, on; against

in^[2], *il-*, *im-*, *ir-* not

inter- between, at intervals; to the bottom

ob-, *oc-*, *of-*, *op-* to meet, toward; against

per- through; thoroughly

post- after

prae- in front; ahead; *with adjectives*,
indicates preeminence in the quality, very

praeter- past; by; beyond

prō-, *pro-*, *prōd-* forward, forth; in front of

re-, *red-* back; again

sē- apart

sub-, *suc-*, *suf-*, *sum-*, *sup-*, *sur-*, *sus-*
under; up from under; somewhat

super- over, above

trāns- across

INDEX OF AUTHORS AND PASSAGES

A boldfaced citation indicates a Longer Reading or a Continuous Reading. An asterisk next to a page number indicates that a biography of an author or a description of a work appears with the passage.

- Accius, *Tragoediae* frag. 204, 428; frag. 214, 230; frag. 296, 160; frag. 667, 137
- L. Afranius, *Togatae* 298–99, 166*
- Augustus, *Res Gestae Divi Augusti, Proem*, 1–2, 257*
- Aulus Gellius, *Noctēs Atticae* IX 2.4, 43; X.3.17, 200; XII.11, 288, XII.13 16, 338
- Caecilius Statius, *Palliatae* frag. 163, 196
- Caesar
De Bello Civilī I.35, 438, I.82, 488; II.27, 334
De Bello Gallico I.1, 203*; I.1, 398; I.2, 437; I.11, 487; I.24–25, 246, I.39, 450; I.44, 505; I.52, 233, II.11, 386; III.19, 386; IV.1, 451; IV.15, 346; IV.16, 437; IV.16, 487; IV.22, 386; IV.25, 347; V.14, 506; V.36, 488; V.44, 452–53; VI.11, 334; VI.37, 285 (bis); VI.39, 437; VI.40, 234; VI.40, 334, VII.17, 334; VII.40, 234
- [Caesar], *Bellum Alexandrinum* 20, 386
- Cato
De Agri Cultūra 5, 160; 61, 96
- De Rhetoricā* frag. 15, 160
- Orationēs* frag. 71, 196
- Catullus I, 293; III, 504; V 1, 137; VIII, 396; XII, 448; XIII, 294; XLV, 343–44, XLV.20, 61; XLVI, 245; XLIX, 385, LXIX, 344, LXXII, 345, LXXV, 436; LXXXIV, 397; LXXXV, 385; LXXXVII, 385; XCII, 202*, CIX, 437
- Cicero
Acadēmica I.18, 99*
- Ad Atticum* II.15.1, 384, II.22.6, 486, IV.1.8, 434, VII.3.4, 198, VII.25.1, 161; IX.10.3, 434; IX.16.1, 435; IX.16.2, 486; X.12.1, 284; XII.16.1, 486; XII.18.1, 333, XII.39.2, 334, XIV.20.3, 487; XV.1.1, 233
- Ad Brūtiū* 9.1, 384
- Ad Familiāres* IV.1.2, 233; IV.5.6, 487; IV.9.2, 435; V.15, 502–3, VII.1.3, 447*; VII.24.1, 161; XIII.1.5, 284; XIV.5.2, 96; XVI.4.4, 487
- Ad Quintum frātre* II.10.3, 233, III.1.24, 384
- Brūti* 65, 232; 93, 431; 140, 382; 301, 485
- De Amicitia* 14, 137; 40, 485
- 52–53, 197; 54, 197; 102, 161; 103, 232
- De Consulātū Suo* frag. 11, 137
- De Divinātiōe* I.84, 432; II.77, 284; II.142, 383
- De Finibus* IV.34, 201*
- De Haruspiciū Respōnsis* 62, 160
- De Inventiōe* I.80, 331
- De Lege Mānistia* 56, 429; 59, 429
- De Legibus* I.18, 231; II.5, 333; II.12, 431; III.1, 241*; III.2, 333; III.2, 381
- De Natura Deōrum* I.91, 383, I.117, 197, II.140, 242; II.167, 77; II.167, 432; II.168, 383
- De Officiis* I.35, 132; I.115, 16, 198; I.151, 433; II.43, 384; III.12, 384; III.82, 433; III.114, 232
- De Oratore* I.127, 283; I.251, 381; II.24, 341; II.174, 283, II.178, 291*; III.211, 484
- De Re Publicā* II.4, 484; III.34, frag. 2, 231
- De Senectūte* 11, 141*; 37, 243; 60, 485; 70, 432; 80, 433
- Divinatio in Caecilium* 19, 201*

- Cicero (continued)
In Cautinam I 1–2, 445 3
 430; 6, 282; 6, 332; 9, 332;
 11, 309*, 12–13, 359, 13,
 231; 13–14, 413; 15–16,
 464; 16–17, 528 29; 20,
 231 22, 430, 27, 291
In Cautinam II 1, 240*; 15,
 381; 17, 332, 27, 332
In Cautinam IV 17, 282
In Verrem II 1.16, 380; 2.46,
 380 2.162, 340*; 2.162
 445 4 5, 282; 4 14, 197
 4.15, 160; 4.19, 429; 5 121,
 429
Orator 120, 485; 226–27,
 292*
Paradoxa Stoicorum Preface
 3, 432; 3 25, 432; 4.30,
 115*, 5 33, 283, 5.34, 342,
 5.36, 241
Philippics I 14, 433
Philippics IV 9, 161
Philippics V 24 25, 233 50
 284
Philippics VI 7, 198; 19 333
Philippics VII 4, 198
Philippics XII 5, 434
Philippics XIII 2, 434; 14, 486
Post Reditum ad Populum 2,
 283; 16, 395*; 17, 381
Pro Archia 13, 393; 14, 394,
 16, 166*; 18–19, 395, 19
 341; 26, 430
Pro Balbo 8, 431
Pro Caelio 77, 231
Pro Lege Manilia 14–16,
 446*; 20, 230, 65, 483
Pro Ligario 37 38, 381
Pro Milone 11, 113
Pro Murena 30, 290*; 36,
 282, 76, 96; 83, 430
Pro Plancio 13, 484; 82 484
Pro Quinctio 80, 428
Pro Rege Deiotaro 32, 232
Pro S. Roscio Amerino 56–57,
 499–500*; 70, 380; 84, 429
Pro Sestio 2, 431; 73, 332, 86
 431
Timaeus 21, 333
Tusculanae Disputationes I 1,
 283; I 6, 486; I 9, 501; I.18
 283; I 28, 77; I.34, 167*;
 I 39, 382; I.94, 284; I 101,
 382; II.65, 242; III.8, 382;
 III 56 61; IV.38, 382;
 IV.38, 432; IV 44, 382;
 V.109, 382
CII VI.7595, 98; VI 16169, 392;
 IX.5785, 114; X.7658, 98
- Cornelius Nepos
Vita Alcibiadis 7, 285
Vita Attici 6, 335
Vita Hannibalis 7, 113
- Ennius
Annāles I 1, 196; I 3, 113
 I.37–42, 165*; I.104 96;
 V 156, 230; VI.202, 230,
 VIII.248–51, 239; IX.309,
 165
sēd. inc. frag. 459 165, frag.
 483–84, 482; frag 513,
 196
Tragediae frag 34–39, 482,
 frag. 140, 482; frag. 348,
 428; frag 351, 160
Epicedion Drusi 359–60, 199
- Florus, *Epitoma Bellorum
 Omnium* I.31, 308*
- Horace
Ars Poetica 31, 163; 70–72,
 388, 136 55, 403 4,
 323–26, 301*, 361–65,
 355; 385, 236, 389–90, 439
Carmina I 5, 298; I.11, 352;
 I.22, 401–2; I.23, 254*;
 I.37, 514–16; II 9, 299–
 300; III.9, 458–59; III.30,
 517 18, IV 7, 353 54
Epistulae I 4.12–14, 286;
 I.8.17, 97, I.11.25–30,
 203*, I 16.51–52, 138;
 II.1.156–57, 336
Epodes 15 1–2, 438
Sermōnes I.3.33–34, 163;
 I.6.62 64, 235, I.9.57 60,
 172*, II.7.28–29, 199,
 II.7.117, 163
- Juvenal, *Saturae* III.41, 337;
 VIII.83, 337, VIII.244, 164,
 X.283–88, 259*; X.356,
 337, XIII.159–60, 337;
 XIV.70–74, 497
- Livius Andronicus, *Odyssey*
 frag. 1, 77
- Livy, *Ab Urbe Condita* I.13.1–5,
 523; I.36.1, 494, I.56.9,
 410; II.40.8, 164, II.46.3–
 7, 460–61; III 2 9, 440;
 III.11.13, 389; III.15.6,
 139, III 25.9, 236; V 49.3
 61; V.49.6, 304; IX 42 5,
 494; XXI.58.5, 495,
 XXII.39.11, 174*,
 XXII.49.5, 411;
 XXII.49.10, 305;
 XXII 50.3 236; XXII.50.6,
 356; XXII 51 4, 287;
 XXIV 25.8, 287;
 XXVII 16.1, 164;
 XXVII 51 11, 494;
 XXIX 8.7, 441; XXX.30.18
 306; XXXV.19.6, 139,
 XXXVI 15 11, 495;
 XXXVIII.23.1, 412;
 XXXIX.37.17, 495;
 XXXIX 51 9, 139;
 XL.35.13, 495, XLI.4.6
 287; XLV 38.2, 496
 Lucan, *Belium Civile* I.128, 237;
 II.656–57, 441; III.39,
 288, IX.961–69 462*
 Lucilius, *Saturae* frag. 9, 380
 frag. 620, 230; frag. 953,
 428
 Lucretius, *De Rerum Natura*
 I 1–9, 244; I.14–16, 385;
 I.199–207, 449; II.1–4,
 435; II 55 61, 436,
 II 75–79 202*;
 II.1150 52, 436;
 III.970 71, 198,
 V.783–85, 244
 Macrobius, *Saturnalia* V.1.8,
 444
 Martial, I.32, 78*; I.38, 390;
 II.3, 441; II.80, 200; VII.3,
 200, VIII 73.5 8, 142;
 XII.46, 200
 Naevius
alia carmina epica 64.1–4,
 339*
Palladas frag. 9–10, 379;
 frag. 106, 428
Tragediae frag. 37, 113
 Ovid
Amōres III.9.37–42, 255;
 III 11.35, 97;
 III.11.39–40, 115*
Ars Amatoria I.1–4, 439, I.7,
 336; I.61–66, 301; I 99,
 492; I.113–24, 256*;
 II 519 20, 389; III 263,
 286
Heroides X.59 62, 492;
 XIV.92, 138; XVII.253–54,
 286
Metamorphoses I.1–4, 173;
 I.5–9, 206; I.253–73,
 521–22 I.428 29, 199,
 I 452–62, 261; I.463–77,
 313; I.478–89, 363;

- I 490–503, 416. I.504–39, 467–69; I.540–67, 533–34; IV.313–16, 492; IV.428, 336; V.190–94, 355; VII.17–23, 302; XI.141 43, 116*; XIII.340–41, 163; XIII.361–69, 408; XIV.744 46, 116
Remedia Amoris 648, 199
Tristia I.1.1, 114; II. 421 30, 303*; II.557–58, 139; III.7.43–44, 236; III.7.45–52, 409; IV.10.21–26, 492; IV.10.81–84, 389; V.2.31–34, 493; V.2.45–46, 493; V.4.27 30, 493; V.7.55–60, 493; V.7b 43–48, 440; V.10.3–5, 440
- Petronius, *Satyricon* 37, 463*; 45, 524
 Phaedrus, *Fabulae Aesopiae* V.10.9, 199
 Plautus
Amphitruus 358, 137, 551–54, 379, 559–60, 481; 835, 331
Aulularia 103, 96; 170 196; 245–49, 481
Bacchides 816 17, 379
Boeotia frag. 1–9, 290
Captivi 142–43, 331, 461–63, 289* 617, 331; 750, 160; 862–64, 196
Casina 3 6, 289*; 142, 481
Menaechmi 487–89, 379
Mercator 320 61
Miles Gloriosus 33–35, 238*; 42–46, 238; 250–52, 481
Mostellaria 51 52, 331
Persa 729, 230; 762, 282
Pseudolus 269, 428
Stichus 139–42, 482; 731, 77
Trinummus 55–56, 230, 65, 113
Truculentus 489–90, 379
 Pliny the Younger
Epistulae VI.16 3, 288; VIII.14.10, 390
Panegyricus 62 1, 442, 62.5, 443; 62.9, 390
 Propertius, I.1–8, 404; I.8a 1 4, 439; I.8b.39–40, 163; I.11.23–26, 206; I.12.11–14, 389; II.1.3 4, 163; II.5.16, 199; II.8.1–6, 206; II.8.7–12, 17–20, 172–73; II.11.1, 439; II.12, 405–6; II.15.23–24, 389; II.15.29 30, 236; II.15.31 40, 407; II.15.50, 163; II.16.1–2, 141*; II.19.1–8, 459; II.22a 14, 199; II.29a, 519–20; II.34 65–66, 286
 Publius Syrus, *Sententiae* A8, 137; A14, 96; A16, 138; A22, 77; A36, 77; A42, 234; B5, 387, B36, 388; M9, 335; M28, 335, P35, 335; S29 335
 Quintilian, *Institutio Oratoria* I.4.22, 139; II.15 30, 497; IV.5.13, 97; IX.3.85, 200; X.1.59, 288; X.1.93, 337; X.7.21, 337
Rhetorica ad Herennium II.35, 282, IV.52, 331
 Sallust
Bellum Catilinae 1, 310; 1 2, 360–61; 3, 161; 3, 414; 4, 465, 5, 234; 5, 530–31; 6, 247–6, 489; 7, 489, 8, 454; 9, 285; 14, 489; 20, 334; 20, 167*; 25, 455; 36, 508; 51, 490, 52, 387; 54, 387 (bis); 58, 285; 60–61, 509–11
Bellum Jugurthae 2, 247*; 12, 507; 14, 294; 46, 438; 60, 138, 101, 489; 110, 348
 [Sallust], in M. Tullium
Ciceroem 5, 387
 Seneca the Elder, *Controuersiae* I.1 14, 287, IX.5.1, 199
 Seneca the Younger
Agamemnon 73, 77; 79–86, 207*, 116, 97; 138–40, 336; 152, 164; 169 70, 390; 192–93, 496; 251–52, 114; 259 97, 302, 97, 435–36, 164; 466–76, 358, 507–11, 259; 517–18, 164; 698–709, 208; 722, 97
De Beneficiis III.14.3, 336
Dialogi III.18 1, 337; IV 11.3, 441; IV.31.4, 307*; V.38.1, 441, VI.19.5, 441; VI.22 3, 441; IX.3.8, IX.17.10, 200; 288; XI.6.5, 114 XI.14 4, 496
Epistulae Morales II.6, 287; IX 6.6, 336; XCIV.38, 441; CI.14, 496; CVII.8, 357*; CVII.9, 412; CVII.11–12, 357
Hercules Furans 1–4, 174; 46–48, 141; 181–85, 117*
 Phaedra 607, 287; 978 80, 200
 Thyestes 190–91, 390
 Silius Italicus, *Punica* XI 3–4, 237
 Suetonius
De Grammaticis et Rhetoribus 22, 140
Vita Augusti 28 443
Vita Caligulae 30, 140
Vita Claudii 21, 237
Vita Iulii 37, 140; 42, 391
Vita Neronis 49, 391
Vita Tiberii 21, 391
 Tacitus
Annales I.1. 209*; I.28, 443; II.17, 498; III.65, 498, VI 6, 391; VI.22, 391; XII.35, 443
De Vita Agricolae 1, 175*; 2, 390; 33, 497; 42, 237, 46, 525 26
Dialogus de Oratoribus 25, 526 27*
Historiae I.41, 497; IV 26, 338; IV.35, 443; V.11, 139
 Terence
Adelphoe 84–86, 483; 304, 380
Andria 194, 43
Eunuchus 41, 230; 341, 380; 732, 137
Heauton Timoroumenos 77, 282
Hecyra 181–83, 483
Phormio 138, 331, 454, 428, 487–88, 483; 541, 230
 Terentianus Maurus, *De Syllabis* 1286, 98
 Varro
De Lingua Latina VI 52, 488; VI.77, 78*
De Re Rustica III.1, 137
Menippeae frag. 122, 435
 Velleius Paterculus, *Historia Romana* II 17, 237
 II.18.1–3, 258*
 Vergil
Aeneid I.1, 77, I.1–4, 251; I.1 11, 399; I.12–13, 114, I 33, 388; I.133–34 162; I.198–99, 285; I.200–203, 168* I.483–84, 388, I 544–45, 286; I 561–62, 490; II.3–13, 400; II.26–34, 169; II.40–56,

Vergil (continued)

- Aeneid* 295-96; II.65-74
 204; II.274-76, 490;
 II.289, 235, II.290-94,
 170; II.324-27, 170;
 II.354, 198; II.479-90,
 260; II.491-505, 311-12,
 II.506-17, 362; II.518-32,
 415, II.533-46, 466,
 II.547-58, 532; II.657-63,
 457; III.47-48, 490;
 III.374-80, 297; IV.80-
 83, 438, IV.283-86, 491,
 IV.360-61, 162; IV.368-
 70, 388. IV.376-81, 171,
 IV.382-87, 457; IV.556-
 59, 491, IV.651-58, 205,
 IV.659-60, 162; VI.126-
 29, 171; VI.391, 335,
 VI.847-53, 349; VII.44-
 45, 286; VII.266, 198;
 VIII.112-14, 491;
 VIII.364-65, 162; IX.641,
 138, X.284, 235,
 X.466-72, 252; X.501-2
 235; X.743-44, 162;
 XI.816-31, 512
 XII.92-102, 253; XII.146,
 138, XII.435-36, 235;
 XII.653-57, 297, XII.657-
 71, 350-51; XII.894-95,
 162; XII.938-952, 513
Eclogues I.35, 198; I.83, 335,
 II.63-68, 456; III.64-65,
 138, IV.4-7, 248* IV.18-
 25, 456; V.4, 285; VIII.68-
 70, 388; IX.32-36, 348
 X.69, 161
Georgics I.505-14, 249*;
 II.401-2, 113, II.490-99,
 250; III.242-44, 251;
 IV.525-27, 235

GENERAL INDEX

Note: Subentries for Morphology and Syntax appear at the end of entries for parts of speech.

- Ablative case, introduction, 17
 - Absolute, 226
 - of Accompaniment, 17
 - of Cause, 110
 - of Comparison, 280
 - of Degree of Difference, 280
 - of Description, 229
 - of Instrument or Means, 17
 - of Manner, 58
 - of Means or Instrument, 17
 - of Origin, 229
 - of Personal Agent, 57;
 - replacing Dative of Agent with passive periphrastic, 228
 - of Place From Which, 111
 - of Place Where, 111
 - of Price, 377
 - of Respect 76, supine as
 - Ablative of Respect, 478
 - of Separation, 110
 - of Time When, 159
 - of Time Within Which, 159
- Ablaut, definition, 63
- Accentuation, 7
- Accusative case, introduction, 17
 - Adverbial Accusative, 376
 - Direct Object, 17
 - Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb, 479
 - Double Accusative, 320
 - of Duration of Time, 158
 - of Exclamation, 376
 - Greek Accusative, 479
 - of Place To Which, 112
 - Predicate, 26
 - Predicate Adjective in the, 52; in Indirect Statement, 273
 - of Respect, 479
 - Subject Accusative, of an
 - Indirect Statement, 273;
 - with infinitive in constructions other than Indirect Statement, 274
 - of the supine to express purpose, 478
- Adjectives, introduction, 50
 - cardinal numbers, 210
 - comparative degree of, 276
 - constructions with the comparative and superlative degrees of, 280
 - demonstrative, 153. *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*, 153, *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*, 183; *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, 154; *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, 153; special uses of, 154
 - demonstratives *talis*, *tale*, *tantus*, -a, -um; *tot*, 373; used with and without correlatives, 373
 - indefinite *aliqui*, *aliqua*, *aliquod*, 420
 - indefinite *qui*, *qua*, *quod*, 420
 - indefinite *quique*, *quaeque*, *quodque*, 420
 - intensive *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, 89
 - interrogative *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, 194
 - irregular comparison of, 279
 - irregular with genitive in -*fus*, 194
 - ordinal numbers, 210
 - participles (verbal adjective). *See* Participles
 - possessive, 74
 - quam* used as a conjunction to express comparison, 280
 - quam* used to express the highest possible degree of an adjective or adverb, 281
 - reflexive-possessive, 89
 - superlative degree of, 277
 - vocabulary entries of
 - first-second-declension adjectives, 48, 50
 - vocabulary entries of third-declension adjectives 151
- Morphology: comparative degree of, 276, comparison of, 276, first-second-declension, 50; irregular comparison of, 279; irregular with genitive in -*fus*, 194, third-declension, 151
- Syntax: Noun Adjective Agreement, 51; Predicate, 52, Substantive Use of, 52

- Adverbial clause, Purpose clause as, 189
- Adverbs, introduction, 90
- constructions with the comparative and superlative degrees of, 280
- demonstrative *tam*, 373
- of Place, 417
- quam* used as a conjunction to express comparison, 280
- quam* used to express the highest possible degree of an adjective or adverb, 281
- Relative *quam* used with or without correlatives, 373
- Morphology: comparative degree of, 277; comparison of, 277; formed from first-second declension adjectives, 90; formed from third declension adjectives, 152; irregular comparison of, 279; superlative degree of, 278
- Alphabet, 4
- Aphaeresis, definition, 61
- Apposition, Appositive, definitions, 59
- Archaic Spellings, 364
- Aspect, definition, 28
- completed, 28
- progressive, 28
- repeated, 28
- simple, 28
- Assimilation (of prefix to simple verb), definition, 80
- Causal clause, definition, 92
- Ablative Absolute as equivalent of, 226
- introduced by conjunctions with the indicative mood, 91
- introduced by *cum*, 327
- participle as equivalent of, 225
- Circumstantial clause, definition, 225
- Ablative Absolute as equivalent of, 226
- introduced by *cum*, 327
- participle as equivalent of, 225
- Cognate, definition, 14
- Compensatory Lengthening, definition, 122
- in *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*, 183
- Compound verbs, definition, 80
- Concessive clause, definition, 92
- Ablative Absolute as equivalent of, 226
- introduced by conjunctions with the indicative mood, 91
- introduced by *cum*, 327
- participle as equivalent of, 225
- Conditional clause, definition, 92
- Ablative Absolute as equivalent of, 226
- introduced by conjunctions with the indicative mood, 91
- participle as equivalent of, 225
- Conditional Sentence, definition, 93
- Future Less Vivid (FLV), 134
- Future More Vivid (FMV), 94
- Future More Vivid with Emphatic Protasis (FMVF), 94
- Mixed conditional sentences, definition, 134
- Mixed Contrary-to-Fact, 135
- Mixed Future, 135
- Past Contrary-to-Fact, 134
- Past Simple, 93
- Present Contrary-to-Fact, 134
- Present Simple, 93
- summary of conditional sentences with verbs in the indicative mood, 95
- summary of conditional sentences with verbs in the subjunctive mood, 135
- Conjunctions, Coordinating, definition, 13
- Postpositive, definition, 27
- Subordinating, definition, 91
- Consonants, 4
- fricatives, definition, 7
- liquids, definition, 7
- mutics, definition, 7
- nasals, definition, 7
- stops, definition, 7
- Coordination, definition, 185
- Correlatives, 373
- idiomatic translations of, 374
- used with comparative adjectives or adverbs, 374
- cum* clause, 327
- Dative Case, introduction, 16
- of Advantage, 136
- of Agent with the passive periphrastic, 228
- with Compound Verb, 330
- of Disadvantage, 136
- Double Dative construction, 136
- of Indirect Object, 16
- with an intransitive verb, 195
- of the Possessor, 38
- of Purpose, 136
- of Reference, 16
- of Reference in a Double Dative construction, 136
- Deliberative subjunctive, 324
- Denominative verb, definition, 26
- Derivative, definition, 14
- Diphthongs, 6
- Direct question, 323
- Deliberative subjunctive, 324
- double direct question, 323
- words introducing, 323
- Doubting clause, 327
- Enclitic, definition of, 13
- es*, *ire*, *it* or *itum*, 60
- Morphology: imperative, 69
- irregular future passive participle, 222; irregular perfect active indicative, 84; irregular pluperfect active subjunctive, 128; irregular present active indicative system, 60; irregular present active participle, 222; irregular present active subjunctive, 127
- Fear clause, 473
- ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *latus*, 87
- Morphology: imperative, 69; irregular present active participle, 228; irregular present indicative system, 87
- fiō*, *fieri*, *factus sum*, Morphology, 375
- fore ut construction, 425
- Genitive case, introduction, 16
- of Characteristic, 427
- of Description, 228
- of Indefinite Value, 377
- Objective, 72; with Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting, 81

- Partitive (= of the Divided Whole), 71; used with adjectives and adverbs in the superlative degree, 281; used with *plūs*, 279
 of Possession, 16
 Subjective, 71
 Gerunds and Gerundives, introduction, 369
 accusative of used to express purpose with *ad*, 369
 genitive of used to express purpose with *causā* or *gratiā*, 369
 Greetings, 143
- Historical Infinitive, 480
 Historical present with the conjunction *dum*, 371
 Hortatory subjunctive, 131
 Hypotaxis, definition, 185
- Idem*, *eadem*, *idem*, 183
 idiom, definition, 25
 Imperative, introduction, 69
 future imperative of *meminī* (*mementō*, *mementōte*) used as present, 82
 future imperative of *sciō* (*scitō*, *scitōte*) used as present, 267
nōlī and *nōlīte* with infinitive to express negative command, 329
 present imperative of all verbs, 69
 present or perfect subjunctive used as negative command, 131
 present subjunctive as positive imperative, 131
 Impersonal constructions with *licet*, *necesse est*, *oportet*, 424; with *miseret*, *paenitet*, *piget*, *pudet*, *taedet*, 475; with *refert*, *interest*, 476
 Impersonal passive, 112
 Indicative
 definition and introduction, 29
 use in subordinate clause in Indirect Statement, 275
 Indirect Command, 188
 Indirect Question, 325
 double Indirect Question, 326
 Indirect Statement, 272
- Infinitive, definition, 37
 Morphology, overview, 269;
 of active and passive periphrastics, 270; of deponent and semi-deponent verbs, 155;
 of present passive, 68
 Syntax: Complementary, 37;
 Historical, 480; in Indirect Statement, 272; Object, 38; relative time of in Indirect Statement, 272;
 Subject, 59
 Interjections, 143
ipse, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, 89
- Jussive subjunctive, 131
- Locative case, 111
 Long Vowel Rule, full form of, 54
- mālō*, *mālle*, *mālui*, —, —, —
 Morphology, 328
 Meter, introduction 176
 Alcaic, 318
 Archilochian, 317
 Asclepiadean, 316
 Choliambic (Limping Iambic), 315
 Dactylic Hexameter, 176
 Elegiac Couplet, 177
 Hendecasyllable, 315
 Sapphic Strophe, 316
 Morphology, definition, 9.
See also specific parts of speech (Adjectives, Adverbs, Nouns, Verbs, etc.)
- Names, in the first and second declension, 44
 in the third declension, 118
cognōmen, *nōmen*, *praenōmen*, definitions, 44
 List of most common *praenōmina*, 44
nōlō, *nōlle*, *nōlui*, —, —, —
 Morphology, 328
nōlī and *nōlīte* with infinitive to express negative command, 329
- Nominative case, introduction, 15
 Predicate Adjective in the, 52
 Predicate Nominative, 15
 Subject, 15
 Noun clause, Indirect Command as, 188
- Nouns, introduction, 15. *For noun syntax see individual cases*
 abstract noun, definition, 15, 63
 case, 15; summary of cases, 18
 collective noun, definition, 15, 48
 common noun, definition, 15
deus, irregular declension of, 12
 finding the stem of a noun, 19
 five declensions, 18
 gender, 15; common gender, definition, 48
 number, 15
 proper noun, definition, 15
 verbal noun, definition, 15;
 infinitive as, 37
vis, irregular third declension noun, 109
 Morphology: first declension, 19; second declension masculine/feminine, 21; second declension neuter, 22; third declension masculine/feminine, 107; third declension i-stem masculine/feminine, 108; third declension i-stem neuter, 108; fourth declension masculine/feminine, 149; fourth declension neuter, 149; fifth declension, 150
 Numbers, 210
- Optative subjunctive, 132
- Parataxis, 185
 Participles, definition, 221
 future active and passive used in active and passive periphrastics, 227
 perfect passive participle used as an adjective, 105; used in perfect passive system, 103
 relative time of, 224
 Morphology: overview, 221; of deponent and semi-deponent verbs, 222

- Participles (continued)
 Syntax: Ablative Absolute, 226; attributive, 224; circumstantial, 225
 Penult, Law of the, 8
 Possession, expressions of compared, 39
 possum, posse, potui, —, 34
 Morphology: present active indicative system, 34; present active subjunctive, 127
 Postpositive, definition, 27
 Prepositions, overview, 12
 Prevention clause, 474
 Principal parts in this book, 25
 Pronouns, introduction, 73
 demonstrative, 153; hic, haec, hoc, 153; ille, illa, illud, 154; iste, ista, istud, 153;
 indefinite aliquis, aliquid, 420
 indefinite quis, quid, 420
 indefinite quisquam, quicquam, 420
 indefinite quisque, quidque (quicque), 420
 interrogative quis, quid, 193
 personal, 73
 reflexive, 87
 relative qui, quae, quod, 189; special features of, 191
 Pronunciation, 3
 Proviso, clause of, 373
 Purpose
 accusative of gerund or gerundive used to express purpose with ad, 369
 accusative of supine to express purpose, 478
 genitive of gerund or gerundive used to express purpose with causā or grātiā, 369
 Purpose clause, 185
 Relative Clause of Purpose, 218
 quam used to express the highest possible degree of an adjective or adverb, 281
 Relative
 adjectives quālis, quāle; quantus, -a, -um; quot, 373
 adverb quam, 373
 pronoun qui, quae, quod, 189
 Relative clause, introduction, 189
 of Characteristic, 219
 of Purpose, 218
 restrictive and nonrestrictive, comparison of, 191
 of Result, 424
 Result clause, introduction, 423
 with perfect subjunctive breaking rules of sequence, 423
 Relative Clause of Result, 424
 Rhetorical figures, 262
 Rhotacism, definition, 35
 in future active indicative of sum, 36
 in imperfect active indicative of sum, 35
 in the plural of vls, 109
 Root, definition, 14
 Sentence
 complex sentence, definition, 91
 compound sentence, definition, 91
 conditional sentence, definition, 91
 simple sentence, definition, 91
 Sequence of tenses, 186
 breaking of rules of sequence in Result clause, 423
 Stem
 finding the perfect active stem, 83
 finding the present stem, 31
 finding the stem for nouns, 19
 Subjunctive, Morphology. *See* Verbs, Morphology
 Subjunctive, syntax. *See* Verbs, Syntax, or *under individual items*
 Subjunctive by Attraction, 478
 Subordination, definition, 185
 Substantive Ut clause, introduction, 424
 with accidit, fit, fieri potest, efficere, facere, 424
 fore ut construction, 425
 sum, esse, fui, futurus, 34
 meanings of, 36
 Morphology: imperative, 69; irregular present active indicative system, 34; irregular present active subjunctive, 127
 Supine, introduction, 478
 ablative of as Ablative of Respect, 478
 accusative of to express purpose, 478
 Syllabification, 7
 Syncopation, 364
 Syncope, 91
 Synopsis, definition, 56
 I. present active and passive indicative, 56
 II. present active and passive indicative, infinitive, and imperative, 70
 III. present indicative system, perfect active indicative system, infinitive, and imperative, 86
 IV. indicative, infinitive, and imperative, 106
 V. indicative, subjunctive, infinitive, and imperative, 130
 VI. indicative, subjunctive, participles, infinitives, and imperative, 223
 VII. complete, 271
 of deponent verbs, 157
 of semideponent verbs, 158
 Syntax, definition, 9. *See also specific parts of speech* (Adjectives, Adverbs, Nouns, Verbs)
 Temporal clause, definition, 92
 Ablative Absolute as equivalent of, 226
 introduced by conjunctions with the indicative mood, 91
 introduced by cum, 327
 introduced by dum, donec, antequam, priusquam, 371
 participle as equivalent of, 225
 Unassimilated Forms, 364
 Verbs, introduction, 28
 absolute use of, 37
 aspect, 28; completed, 28; progressive, 28; repeated, 28; simple, 28
 assimilation (of prefix to simple verb), definition, 80
 compound verb forms, definition, 103; omission of sum in, 105

- compound verbs, definition, 80
- conjugation, definition, 31
- copulative verb, definition, 15
- defective verb, definition, 81
- denominative verb, definition, 26
- deponent verb, definition, 155; vocabulary entries of, 147, 155
- finite form, definition, 28
- four conjugations, 31
- gerunds and gerundives, introduction and use, 369
- imperative, definition, 29; introduction, 69
- inceptive verb, definition, 215
- inchoative verb, definition, 215
- indicative, definition, 29; compared with subjunctive, 125; tenses of, 29
- infinitive, definition, 30, 37
- infix, definition, 29
- intransitive, definition, 37
- linking verb, definition, 15
- mood, definition, 29; imperative, introduction, 69; indicative, introduction, 29; subjunctive, introduction, 125
- number, 28
- participle, definition, 103, 221; future active and passive participles used in active and passive periphrastics, 227; perfect passive participle used as an adjective, 105; perfect passive participle used in perfect passive system, 103
- periphrastics, active and passive, definition, 227
- person, 28
- prefixes (of compound verb), 80, 575
- principal parts, 30; principal parts in this book, 25
- semideponent verbs, definition, 157; vocabulary entries of, 147, 157
- stem, finding the present, 31; finding the perfect active, 83
- subject-verb agreement, 28
- subjunctive, definition, 29; compared with indicative, 125; tenses of, 125
- tense, 28; overview of indicative tenses, 29
- transitive, definition, 37; distinguishing transitive and intransitive verbs, 37
- verb of perception, definition, 272
- vocabulary entries of verbs, 30; fourth principal parts of transitive and intransitive verbs, 25
- voice, definition, 29; passive, introduction, 53
- vowel weakening in compound verbs, 80
- Morphology
- active personal endings, 32
 - gerunds and gerundives, introduction and declension of, 369
 - imperative: present active and passive of all verbs, 69; future imperative of *meminī* (*mementō*, *mementōte*) used as present, 82; future imperative of *sciō* (*scītō*, *scītōte*) used as present, 267
 - indicative: present active of first and second conjugations, 32; present passive of first and second conjugations, 54; present active of third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations, 65; present passive of third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations, 65; imperfect active of first and second conjugations, 32; imperfect passive of first and second conjugations, 54; imperfect active of third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations, 66; imperfect passive of third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations, 66; future active of first and second conjugations, 34; future passive of first and second conjugations, 54; future active of third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations, 67; future passive of third, third i-stem, and
- fourth conjugations, 67; perfect active indicative of all verbs, 83; perfect passive indicative of all verbs, 103; pluperfect active indicative of all verbs, 84; pluperfect passive indicative of all verbs, 104; future perfect active indicative of all verbs, 85; future perfect passive indicative of all verbs, 104
- infinitive, overview, 269; of active and passive periphrastics, 270; of deponent and semideponent verbs, 269; present passive, 68
 - participle, overview, 221; of deponent and semideponent verbs, 222
 - passive personal endings, 54
 - perfect active personal endings, 83
 - perfect active system, definition, 83
 - perfect passive system, definition, 103
 - periphrastics, active and passive, 227
 - present system, definition, 31; subjunctive; present active and passive of all verbs, 125; imperfect active and passive of all verbs, 127; perfect active of all verbs, 128; pluperfect active of all verbs, 128; perfect passive of all verbs, 129; pluperfect passive of all verbs, 129
- Syntax
- causal, definition, 92; Ablative Absolute as equivalent of, 226; introduced by conjunctions with the indicative mood, 91; introduced by *cum*, 327; introduced by *quod*, *quia*, 371; participle as equivalent of, 225
 - circumstantial, definition, 225; Ablative Absolute as equivalent of, 226; introduced by *cum*, 327; participle as equivalent of, 225

Verbs (continued)

Syntax

- concessive, definition, 92; Ablative Absolute as equivalent of, 226; introduced by conjunctions with the indicative mood, 91; introduced by *cum*, 327; participle as equivalent of, 225
- conditional, definition, 92; Ablative Absolute as equivalent of, 226; introduced by conjunctions with the indicative mood, 91, 93; participle as equivalent of, 225
- conditional sentence, definition, 93; Future Less Vivid (FLV), 134; Future More Vivid (FMV), 94; Future More Vivid with Emphatic Protasis (FMVE), 94; Mixed conditional sentences, definition, 134; Mixed Contrary-to-Fact, 135; Mixed Future, 135; Past Contrary-to-Fact, 134; Past Simple, 93; Present Contrary-to-Fact, 134; Present Simple, 93; summary of conditional sentences with verbs in the indicative mood, 95; summary of conditional sentences with verbs in the subjunctive mood, 135
- cum* clause, 327
- Doubting, 327
- Fear, 473; relation of to Indirect Question, 473
- fore ut* construction, 425
- gerunds and gerundives, introduction, 369; accusative of used with *ad* to express purpose, 369; genitive of used with *causā* or *gratiā* to express purpose, 369
- imperative, introduction, 69; *nōlī* and *nōlīte* with infinitive to express nega-

- tive command, 329; present subjunctive as positive imperative, 131; present or perfect subjunctive used as negative command, 131
 - impersonal constructions with *licet*, *necesse est*, *oportet*, 426; with *miseret*, *paenitet*, *piget*, *pudet*, *taedet*, 475; with *refert*, *interest*, 476
 - impersonal passive, 112
 - independent subjunctives, introduction, 131; Deliberative, 324; Deliberative in Indirect Question, 326; Hortatory, 131; Jussive, 131; Optative, 132; present or perfect subjunctive used as negative imperative, 131; present subjunctive as positive imperative, 131; Potential, 131; summary of three independent uses of the subjunctive mood, 133
 - indicative, use in subordinate clause in Indirect Statement, 275
 - Indirect Command, 188
 - Indirect Question, 325; Double Indirect Question, 326
 - Indirect Statement, 273; personal construction of, 274; verb of perception, definition, 272
 - infinitive: Complementary, 37; Historical, 453; in Indirect Statement, 272; *nōlī* and *nōlīte* with infinitive to express negative command, 329; Object, 38; relative time of, 272; Subject, 59
 - participle: Ablative Absolute, 226; attributive, 224; circumstantial, 224; relative time of, 224
 - Prevention, 474
 - Proviso, 373
 - Purpose, 185
 - Relative Clause of Characteristic, 219
 - Relative Clause of Purpose, 218
 - Relative Clause of Result, 424
 - relative, 189
 - Result, 423; with perfect subjunctive breaking rules of sequence, 423
 - sequence of tenses, 185; breaking of rules of sequence in Result clause, introduction, 423
 - Subjunctive by Attraction, 428
 - subordinate clause, definition, 91
 - subordinate clause in Indirect Statement, 275
 - Substantive *Ut* clause, introduction, 424; with *accidit*, *fit*, *fieri potest*, *efficere*, *facere*, 424
 - temporal, definition, 92; Ablative Absolute as equivalent of, 226; introduced by *cum*, 327; introduced by *dum*, *dōnec*, *antequam*, *priusquam*, 371; introduced by conjunctions with the indicative mood, 91; participle as equivalent of, 225
- videā*, *vidēre*, *vidī*, *visus*, uses of in passive voice, 58
- vis*, irregular third declension noun, 109
- Vocabulary, definition, 9
- Vocative Case, 18
- Voice. *See* Verbs
- volō*, *velle*, *voluī*, —, Morphology, 328
- Vowels, 5
- Vowel weakening in compound verbs, 80
- Word order, Latin, 39
- Balance, 40
- Chiasmus, 41
- Economy, 41
- Ellipsis, 41
- Emphasis, 40